



UNIV. OF  
TORONTO  
LIBRARY





# The Brut.

---

Early English Text Society.

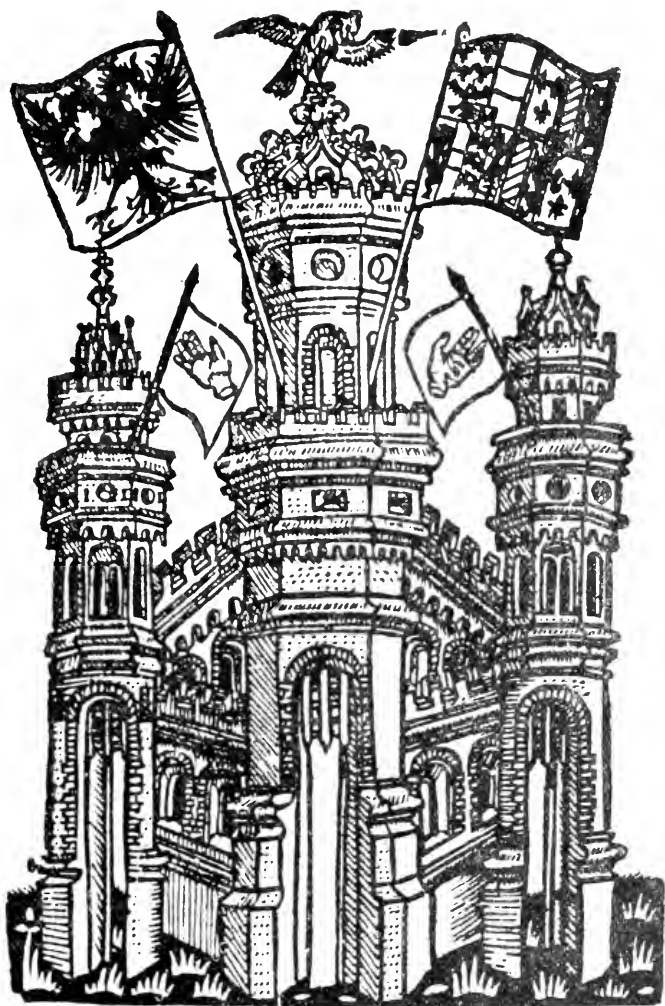
Original Series, 131.

1906.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

¶ Here ben endyd the Cronycales of the Reame of Englonde with their  
 apperteignaunces. Enprentyd En the Duchye of Braband. in the towne  
 of Andelwarpe En the yere of ovr lord .M.cccc.xciii. By maistir Gerard  
 de leew. a man of grete wysedom in all maner of kunnyng: whych nowe  
 is come from lyfe vnto the deth / which is grete harme for many a poure  
 man. On whos soule god almyghty for hys hygh grace haue mercy

A M E N



COLOPHON TO "THE CHRONICLES OF ENGLAND," PRINTED BY  
 GERARD LEEW OF ANTWERP, 1493.

PHILOLOGIE nämlich ist jene ehrwürdige Kunst, welche von ihrem Verehrer vor Allem eins heischt, bei Seite gehen, sich zeit lassen, still werden, langsam werden —, als eine Goldschmiedekunst und Kennerschaft des Wortes, die lauter feine vorsichtige Arbeit abzuthun hat und Nichts erreicht, wenn sie es nicht *lento* erreicht. Gerade damit aber ist sie heute nöthiger als je, gerade dadurch zieht sie und bezaubert sie uns am stärksten, mitten in einem Zeitalter der “Arbeit”, will sagen : der Hast, der unanständigen und schwitzenden Eilfertigkeit, das mit Allem gleich “fertig werden” will, auch mit jedem alten und neuen Buche :—sie selbst wird nicht so leicht fertig, sie lehrt *gut* lesen ; das heisst langsam, tief, rück und vorsichtig, mit Hintergedanken, mit offen gelassenen Thüren, mit zarten Fingern und Augen lesen.<sup>1</sup>

FRIEDRICH NIETZSCHE.

<sup>1</sup> Philology is that venerable art which demands one thing above all from its worshipper, to go aside, to take one's time, to become silent, to become slow —, as a goldsmith's art and connoisseurship of the word, which has to execute nothing but fine delicate work and which achieves nothing if it does not achieve it *lento*. Just that it is what makes it more necessary to day than ever, just by this it attracts and charms us most in the midst of an age of “work”, *i. e.* of haste, of indecent and sweating hurry which wants “to have done” with everything in a moment, with any old and new book too :—while itself it is not so easily at an end ; it teaches to read well ; that means to read slowly, deeply, with consideration and carefully, with reservations, with open doors, with delicate fingers and eyes.

10  
LKE

# The Brut

OR

## The Chronicles of England,

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, PH.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND  
GLOSSARY.

PART I.

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY  
BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LIMITED,  
DRYDEN HOUSE, 43, GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

1906.

3.54.1  
0 3 4

Fl.  
III  
A.  
131

Original Series, No. 131.

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

To  
His Excellency Dr. Karl Schenkel,

GROSSHERZOGL. BAD. STAATSMINISTER,

THIS WORK IS INSCRIBED

BY THE EDITOR.

## ERRATA.

- p. 92. The heading must be : *Edelf, Argentil and Curan.*
- |                   |   |   |   |
|-------------------|---|---|---|
| p. 121.           | „ | „ | <i>Edmund's</i> instead of <i>St. Edmund's.</i>   |
| p. 122.           | „ | „ | <i>K. Edmund's</i> instead of <i>K. Edward's.</i> |
| p. 143.           | „ | „ | <i>Maude</i> instead of <i>Maud.</i>              |
| p. 150.           | „ | „ | <i>Leave out the date</i> A.D. 1172.              |
| p. 154.           | „ | „ | „ „ „ A.D. 1216.                                  |
| p. 177, 178, 179. | „ | „ | <i>Henry III</i> instead of <i>Henry II.</i>      |



## PREFACE.

I PROPOSE to include in a couple of volumes, of which the present is the first, an edition of the work commonly called *The Brut of England*, or *The Chronicles of England*. The entire Chronicle with its continuations embraces a period from the legendary time of Albina and Brutus to A.D. 1479, while the first part which forms the contents of this volume closes with the battle of Halidon Hill in 1333. The first part of our Chronicle is a mere translation of the French *Brut d'Angleterre*. Of this work there are two independent English translations, of which I have chosen the earlier and anonymous one for publication, for reasons which are fully explained in the general Introduction which will form the last volume of this edition.

After 1333 we have a certain number of original English continuations. The first of these, finishing with the death of Edward III in 1377, represents the same version in all MSS. But after that date we have several continuations which are quite independent of each other. Of these the most important ones have been chosen for publication.

Very few of these continuations can with any certainty be ascribed to a known author; most of them exist only in copies of MSS. which have perished or dropt out of sight. But the question of authorship ceases to be of paramount importance, when the information contained in the text can be thoroughly tested by contemporary writers, as is the case in the present Chronicle.—  
 “The value of such portions of the narrative as are incapable of external authentication, depends on the generally faithful character of the context where it has been so proved.

As history, the first part possesses much original value in its later parts after the accession of Edward II; while in several of the continuations the narrative becomes even that of a contemporary.

As literature, the Chronicle is as worthless—except a few

inserted poems—as a mediæval Chronicle possibly can be. But nobody will expect to stop a wedding-guest by reciting mediæval history.

For everything else, the reader of these pages is referred to the final Introduction. This will contain a list, description and classification of 167 MSS. in French, English and Latin, 147 of which I have been able to examine myself; and some remarks about the language of the most important English texts; then a history of the study of the *Brut*, an analysis of the different French versions and their sources, a description of the two English translations, and an examination of the original English continuations and their sources; finally, a list of the 13 printed editions between 1400 and 1528, a description of the Latin versions, and a chapter on the influence of the *Brut* on later writers.<sup>1</sup> Besides that, I shall give a fair number of notes, mostly containing illustrations from contemporary writers, to explain the historical value of the facts related in the *Brut*. A Glossary of the more uncommon words and an Index of Proper Names will form the end.

It now remains to describe the MSS. which have been used for the present volume. They are three in number, designated respectively by the letters R, O and D.

R = MS. Rawl. B. 171 (Bodl.), which forms the text of this volume, represents the oldest English copy of the *Brut* known to me. The hand shows the time of writing to be about 1400. As the MS. wants the first leaves, these have been taken from MS. Douce 323.

O = MS. Douce 323 (Bodl.), a late, but very accurate transcript written in the beginning of the second half of the 15th century. It has been used too for the collation of the whole text, as well as

D = MS. Trin. College, Dublin, 490, which was written in the beginning of the 15th century.

Appendix A which closes this volume contains the poetical description of the battle of Halidon Hill which forms the end of the second translation. The text is printed from the two only existant MSS. of this version, MS. Harley 4690 and MS. Arundel LVIII in the College of Arms in London.

<sup>1</sup> An abstract of this Introduction has appeared in German under the title: *Geschichte und Quellen der mittel englischen Prosachronik: The Brute of England oder The Chronicles of England*. Marburg. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

Further details about the MSS. employed will be found in the final Introduction.

In conclusion, I have to record my obligations to those to whom I have been indebted for various acts of kindness and assistance in the course of the whole work. Their number is indeed very great. Among these I will mention in the first place Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall, whose kindness and most valuable experience are always placed so courteously at the service of those who require them. Much attention and help I have besides received from Professor Alois Brandl in Berlin. Nor must I omit publicly to acknowledge the useful hints forwarded to me by Professor Priebisch, Professor Brandin, Dr. Wylie and Dr. Imelmann. For the loan of their MSS., I am highly under obligation to the Earl of Leicester of Holkham, and to Mr. William Wynne of Peniarth (co. Merioneth). To Mr. John Edwards in Glasgow I am indebted for information about the MS. in his possession, and to the Rev. P. Henderson Aitken for information about the MSS. kept in the Hunterian Museum in Glasgow. Finally I have to thank the authorities of the British Museum,—that Mecca of all scholars which has become my second home,—the Bodleian Library, the University Library in Cambridge, various Colleges in Oxford and Cambridge, Trinity College, Dublin, Lambeth Palace, the College of Arms, the Society of Antiquaries, the Inner Temple, Lincoln's Inn, Stadtbibliothek Hamburg, Bibliothèque Nationale, Mazarine and Geneviève in Paris. To Mr. Falconer Madan of the Bodleian, and especially to Mr. John A. Herbert of the British Museum, I am under great obligations for the continuous and ready aid of their great paleographical knowledge.

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE.

*Marburg a/L., December 1906.*



## SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

### *The Prolog.*

[KING DIOCLICIAN weds his 33 daughters to 33 kings. The daughters despise their husbands. When Dioclician scolds them, they kill their husbands. Albine and her sisters put to sea. They reach Albion, and breed giants by the devil] ... .. pp. 1-4

### *Chapters 1-10.*

Of Eneas, his son Ascanius, and his grandson Sylveyn. Of Brut, Sylveyn's son. His banishment and his success in Greece. Brut wins Gennogen, King Pandras's daughter. He is bidden by Diana to go to the isle of Albion. He conquers Gascony, and builds Castle Tours. Landing at Totness. Cornwall is given to Coryn. Foundation of New-Troy. Albanak gets Scotland, Camber gets Wales. Death of Brut. King Lotryn drives out Hunber and marries Guentolen, Coryn's daughter. Lotryn's death. Estrilde is drowned by Guentolen. King Madan. Menpris slays Manlyn, his brother. King Ebrac conquers France. King Brut Greneshal. King Leyl. King Lud Ludibras

pp. 5-16

### *Chapters 11-20.*

King Bladud. King Leir and his three daughters. Cordeil becomes Queen of France. Leir's retinue is cut down by Corneil and Rigan. Leir goes to France to see Cordeil. Leir made king again. Cordeil reigns in England. Morgan and Conedag. King Raynolde. King Gorbodian. Porrex is slain by Ferrex. Ferrex is murdered by his mother. Four kings in Britain. Donewall becomes the only king

pp. 16-24

### *Chapters 21-30.*

Belyn and Brenne. Brenne gets Norse help to invade Belyn. Belyn defeats King Gutlagh of Denmark. He makes four causeways across the country. He and Brenne invade France. Rome is conquered. King Corinbatrus subdues Denmark. Spaniards settle in Ireland. King Guentolen. King Seisel. His successors Kymor, Howan, Morwith, Grandobodian. The bad King Artogaile becomes good ... pp. 24-29

### *Chapters 31-40.*

King Hesider and his Brothers. Thirty-three kings reign after him, the last being called Ely. King Lud. Origin of the name of London

and of Ludgate. King Cassibalam. He drives Julius Cæsar out of Britain, B.C. 55. The Earl of London calls him back. Cæsar subdues the English. King Androgen. King Kembelyn. Claudius invades Britain, and is beaten, A.D. 41. King Ginder is slain in the battle. Armogwer weds Claudius's daughter, and is made king ... pp. 30-35

*Chapters 41-50.*

King Westmer of Britain. He gives Scotland to Berynger's men. They make a raid into Ireland for women. King Coil. King Lucie. Britain becomes Christian, A.D. 156. Britain a long time without a king. Astlepades chosen king. Coil slays him, and becomes his successor. King Constance. Constantine becomes Emperor of Rome. Octovian is made king. Maximian weds his daughter, and becomes his successor. He gives Little Britain to Conan Meriedok. Conan sends to Cornwall for maidens, in order to people his country. The Eleven Thousand British Virgins. They are driven to Cologne, and martyred by Gowan and Elga ... pp. 36-44

*Chapters 51-60.*

Gowan invades England. Gracian drives him out, and is crowned king after Maximian's death. Gowan comes back, but is slain by Constantine. Constantine made king. Britain turns Christian. Constance made king by Vortiger's help. Vortiger causes Constance to be murdered. Vortiger is made king. Constance's brothers are carried to Little Britain. Engist, Horn, and other Saxons, land in Kent. Engist's Thongcastle. His daughter Ronewenne. Wassail and Drinkhail. Vortiger weds Ronewenne. Vortimer made king by the Britons. Ronewenne causes Vortimer to be poisoned. Vortyger made king again. Engist's treachery, and his conquest of Britain. Britain called Engist's land. Vortiger goes to Wales ... pp. 44-56

*Chapters 61-70.*

Vortiger sends for the child Merlin. Merlin and his mother talk with Vortiger. Merlin explains the signification of the two Dragons under the Castle. His prophecy. Aurilambros and Uter arrive in Britain. Vortiger flees. Vortiger and Engist are slain. King Aurilambros. Merlin moves the Giants' stones from Ireland and makes Stonehenge. Guillomer of Ireland's invasion. Aurilambros poisoned. A star appears after his death. Merlin tells its signification. Uther Pendragon crowned. His two Dragons. Relief of York. The siege of Tintagel ... pp. 56-66

*Chapters 71-80.*

Uther begets Arthur on Igerne, and weds her. He defeats Octa and Ossa. He is poisoned by the Saxons. Arthur is made king. He defeats Cheldrik and Hoel. Their treachery. Arthur beats the Saxons at Bath. Merlin's prophecies. Arthur defeats Guillomer of Ireland,

and grants mercy to the Scots. He weds Gunnore, and conquers all Ireland. Fame of Arthur's Court. The foundation of the Round Table. Arthur fights and kills Frolle, and wins Paris. He divides France among his Knights. Arthur's feast. The Roman Emperor's summons to him ... .. pp. 66-82

*Chapters 81-90.*

Arthur's defiant answer. The Roman Emperor and he prepare to fight. Arthur's followers. He slays the Spanish Giant who ravished and killed fair Elyne. He beats the Romans, and buries his own slain. Mordred is traitorous, and rebels against Arthur. He fights Arthur at sea, and flees to Cornwall. He is beaten by Arthur and slain. Arthur himself wounded to death. He appoints Constantyne king. Constantyne's war with Mordred's sons ... .. pp. 82-91

*Chapters 91-100.*

King Adelbriht and King Edelf. Argentil married to Curan. King Conan. King Certif. The Saxons ask Gurmond for help. Gurmond and the Saxons drive out the Britons. Chichester taken. "Britain" changed to "England." The seven kingdoms. Pope Gregory and the English children. St. Austin lands in Kent, A.D. 596. Adelbriht baptized. St. Austin and the rays' tails. Wales refuses St. Austin and the Pope. It is to be invaded. King Brecyval of Leicester slain. Cadwaladre made King of the Britons. He and Elfrid are friends. Quarrel between Edwyne and Cadwalayn ... .. pp. 91-101

*Chapters 101-110.*

King Oswold is killed, A.D. 642. Peanda seizes his land. Peanda beaten by Oswy, A.D. 655. Oswyn beaten by Oswy. Ossa becomes chief of all kings of England. King Alfred's Chronicles. King Osbriht rapes Buerne's wife. Buerne defies King Osbriht, and seeks Danish help. The Danes kill Osbriht, and take York. They ravage England, and martyr St. Edmund, A.D. 866. Hubba and Hungar take Reading. At last the Danes are beaten, and pray for peace. Danes at Chippenham, A.D. 877. Alfred defeats the Danes. The Danish king baptized, A.D. 878. Alfred's reign and books. Edward, his son, made king, A.D. 900. The Danes come again to England... .. pp. 101-112

*Chapters 111-120.*

The Kings Athelstan, Edmund, Eldred and Edwin fight the Danes. The good King Edgar sole king, A.D. 959. Ethelwold deceives King Edgar about Estrilde. Ethelwold is killed, and Edgar weds Estrilde. Edgar and Archbishop Dunstan. Edgar's death, A.D. 975. Edward the Martyr is murdered at Corfe, A.D. 978. Eldred crowned by Dunstan. Sweyn and the Danes invade England, A.D. 994. Death of Sweyn, A.D. 1014. King Eldred fights Cnut. Cnut and Edmund Ironside share England, A.D. 1016. Edmund is killed, and his murderer drowned.

Cnut sends Edmund's sons to Denmark to be murdered. Edward, Edmund's son, marries the daughter of the King of Hungary. Cnut conquers Norway, A.D. 1028. He tries to stop the Thames. His death, A.D. 1035      ...      ...      ...      ...      ...      ... pp. 112-124

*Chapters 121-130.*

King Harold Harefoot reigns. Hardicanute succeeds him. He recalls his mother to England. His death, A.D. 1042. The English send into Normandy for Alfred and Edward. Godwin has Prince Alfred murdered. Accession of Edward the Confessor, A.D. 1042. He reproaches Godwin for the death of his brother. He forgives Godwin, and weds his daughter. His miraculous sight of King Sweyn. Miraculous appearance of St. John to pilgrims. Their journey to Edward. King Edward's death, A.D. 1066      ...      ...      ...      ... pp. 125-134

*Chapters 131-140.*

Harold is made king. His oath to Duke William. He breaks it. William invades England and slays Harold, A.D. 1066. William crowned King of England. William the Conqueror dies, William the Red succeeds, A.D. 1087. Quarrel with Archbishop Anselm. The Dreams of and about the king. Rufus shot. Henry Beaulerc reigns, A.D. 1100. Henry's church disputes. He conquers Normandy. War with Louis of France, A.D. 1109-1113. Henry's sons drowned, A.D. 1120. His daughter Maud comes to England. Henry I's death. Stephen succeeds him, A.D. 1135. He takes Lincoln, A.D. 1141. The Empress Maude escapes from Oxford. Maude's son Henry gets Normandy, A.D. 1144, and arrives in England, A.D. 1149. King Stephen dies, A.D. 1153  
pp. 134-147

*Chapters 141-150.*

Henry II's coronation, A.D. 1154. He invades Wales. Thomas à Becket made primate, A.D. 1162. Becket quits England, A.D. 1164. War between king and primate, A.D. 1165-1170. Thomas à Becket slain, A.D. 1170. Henry and his sons. Henry II dies, A.D. 1189. The loss of the Holy Land. The Crusade. Richard I and the Crusade. He is imprisoned, A.D. 1192. His return to England. He is wounded to the Death at Castle Gaillard, A.D. 1199. King John, his successor, loses Normandy. Langton becomes Archbishop, A.D. 1207. England interdicted by the Pope's order. Compromise between the Pope and King John. John refuses to restore the Church's goods, and ruins the Cistercians. The Pope's Demands. John's exceptions to them. The Pope's legates declare the Excommunication of England. A clerical coiner is set free by Pandolf. King John gives in to the Pope, A.D. 1213  
pp. 147-163

*Chapters 151-160.*

King John's deed of surrender to the Pope. The exiled papists come back. The King welcomes Archbishop Langton. The seven



years' interdict is ended. The King's misdeeds. He grants Magna Charta, A.D. 1215. The Barons conspire against him. The crown offered to Louis of France. Louis invades England. King John poisoned by a Swineshead monk, A.D. 1216. Henry III succeeds him. Progress of the war. Wales is interdicted. Louis defeated at Lincoln, A.D. 1217. French fleet is destroyed [off Sandwich]. Treaty between Henry III and Louis. Henry confirms King John's Charter, A.D. 1217. Henry marries, A.D. 1236. Granting of new charters. The Barons' war. Battle of Lewes, A.D. 1264. Battle of Evesham, A.D. 1265. Battle of Chesterfield, A.D. 1266. Siege of Kenilworth. The exiled rebels are forgiven, A.D. 1267. Henry III's death, A.D. 1272. Merlin's prophecy of Henry III ... .. pp. 163-178

*Chapters 161-170.*

Edward I crowned. Coronation festivities. Edward's first campaign against Lewelyn of Wales, A.D. 1277. The second Welsh campaign, A.D. 1278. Bad coinage reformed. Lewelyn's third rebellion, A.D. 1282. Lewelyn is slain. David, Prince of Wales, rebels against Edward. Execution of David, A.D. 1283. Edward subdues Wales. Revolt of Rys ap Meriedok, A.D. 1287. Punishment of bad judges, A.D. 1289. Expulsion of the Jews, A.D. 1290. The claimants to the Scottish throne. Edward declares Balliol King of Scotland, A.D. 1292. The Normans at Dover, A.D. 1293. The defenders of Gascony taken by the French, A.D. 1294. Balliol rebels, A.D. 1295. Turberville's deceit. Siege of Berwick, A.D. 1296. Edward I and his long shanks. Balliol is beaten at Berwick Castle. English victory at Dunbar, A.D. 1296. Mock-song against the Scots. Edward forgives Balliol and the rebel Scots. The Scots choose Wallace their king, A.D. 1297. Wallace's truce with France. He defeats the English at Stirling Bridge. Edward ravages Scotland. He defeats the Scots at Falkirk, A.D. 1298

pp. 179-194

*Chapters 171-180.*

King Edward marries Margaret of France, A.D. 1299. The third campaign against Scotland, A.D. 1303. Stirling Castle surrenders, A.D. 1304. Ordinance of Trailbaston, A.D. 1305. Edward imprisons his son. Wallace is hanged, A.D. 1305. Robert Bruce claims the crown of Scotland, and repudiates Edward I. Comyn opposes Bruce. Bruce kills Comyn, and is crowned king, A.D. 1306. Edward prepares for a fresh conquest of Scotland ... .. pp. 194-200

*Chapters 181-190.*

Edward I invades Scotland. Bruce defeated [at Methven], A.D. 1306. Sir Symond Frisell is hanged, and the Earl of Athol taken. Bruce flees to Norway. Edward I prepares for his death, A.D. 1307. Merlin's prophecies about him. Edward II his successor. He weds Princess Isabel of France, and is crowned, A.D. 1308. Piers Gaveston. His

unpopularity and pride. He is sent to Ireland. Gaveston's return condoned by Parliament at Stamford, A.D. 1309. Murder of Gaveston, A.D. 1312. Bruce's return to Scotland. He defeats Edward II at Bannockburn, A.D. 1314. Mock-song of the Scotch maidens. John Tanner. Berwick taken, A.D. 1318. Two Cardinals robbed in England, A.D. 1317. Great Famine in England, A.D. 1315-1317. The Scots plunder Northumberland ... \* ... pp. 200-210

*Chapters 191-200.*

Scotland interdicted, A.D. 1318. The younger Hugh le Spenser is made the King's chamberlain. Renewed attack on Scotland. The English defeated in the White Battle at Myton, A.D. 1319. Hugh le Spenser's pride. The harm done by the Spensers. The Spensers exiled, A.D. 1321. The father curses the son. Recall of the Spensers, A.D. 1322. Siege of Leeds, A.D. 1321. Thomas of Lancaster outlawed. Siege of Tickhill Castle raised by the King. Robert Holond's treachery. Thomas of Lancaster and the rebels go to Burbridge, A.D. 1322. Thomas tries to win over Sir Andrew Hecela. Battle of Burbridge. Humphrey de Bohun slain. Thomas of Lancaster taken. Mixt races in England. Thomas imprisoned at Pontefract. He is scandalously treated and beheaded, A.D. 1322. Other rebels executed. The triumph of the Spensers. They advise a renewed attack on the Scots. The English are defeated at Byland, A.D. 1322. Lord Carlisle taken and disgraced for his treachery. His execution, A.D. 1323 ... pp. 210-228

*Chapters 201-210.*

Miracles for the Martyr, St. Thomas of Lancaster. The pilgrimages to his tomb stopped by the advice of the Spensers. Sir Roger Mortimer escapes from the Tower, A.D. 1323. The King seizes the Queen's lands. He sends his Queen to France to make peace. His son Edward does homage to Charles IV. Edward II exiles his Queen and Prince Edward, A.D. 1325. The Spensers' conspiracy against Queen Isabel and her son. Queen Isabel proposes to invade England. Edward II's preparations against his wife and son, A.D. 1326. Landing of Isabel and Mortimer. Bishop Stapleton and his two Squires are beheaded. King Edward is taken prisoner. The Spensers are hanged, and other traitors beheaded. The Nobles agree to depose Edward II, A.D. 1327. The Nobles, Bishops and Knights disclaim him  
pp. 228-242

*Chapters 211-220.*

Prophecies of Merlin about Edward II. Edward III crowned, A.D. 1327. England happy under him. Attempt to set Edward II free. Abortive Scottish campaign. Mock-song of the Scotch. The Scots invade England. A fine army opposes them. Through Mortimer's treachery, the Scots escape at Stanhope Park. Two moons appear. Two Popes elected. Edward II murdered in Corfe Castle, A.D. 1328.

Edward III weds Philippa of Hainault. The shameful peace of Northampton between the English and Scotch. Bruce's son to be King of Scotland. Queen Isabel becomes hated. Robert of Holand is killed. Demands of the objectors to Queen Isabel's doings. Her opponents give in. Henry of Lancaster and his followers exiled. Edward III does homage for Guienne. Mortimer's ambition. Contrast between the King of Folly and King Arthur ... pp. 242-262

*Chapters 221-223.*

Edmund of Woodstock gets leave to seek for Edward II, A.D. 1329. Sir John Daverel betrays him. Isabella appeals to Edward III to kill Edmund of Woodstock. He is arrested, tried for treason, and beheaded, A.D. 1330. Pride and avarice of Roger Mortimer. Edward III's council plan their defence. The secret passage into Nottingham Castle. Mortimer is taken and condemned to death, A.D. 1330. "Sir John Turnetabard." Edward Balliol is imprisoned in France. Preparations to make Edward Balliol King of Scotland. Edward III gives him leave to go to Scotland, A.D. 1332. He lands there, and routs the Earl of Fife. His speech to his men. He beats his Scotch opposers. A coming battle. Balliol routs the Scots. The Fleming pirate Crab. Balliol is crowned King of Scotland, and does homage to Edward III. Attempt to murder him. He and Edward III besiege Berwick, A.D. 1333. The Scots offer to surrender Berwick if help does not come soon. The Scots make ready to fight. The five wards of their army. The English rout them at Halidon Hill, 19 July 1333 ... pp. 263-286

The longer Romance of the Battle of Halidon Hill ... pp. 287-289

A shorter fragmentary version of the same ... p. 289



# The Brut, a Chronicle of England.

[MS. Douce 323, Bodleian Library.]

[THE PROLOG.]<sup>1</sup>

[How King Dioclisian wedded his 33 Daughters to 33 Kings whom they afterwards murdèrd; and how these Widows came to England, & had children by the Giants of the land.]

4  
8  
12  
16  
20  
24  
**I**N<sup>3</sup> the noble lande of Surrye<sup>4</sup> ther was a noble kyng and myghty, & a man of grete renoun, þat me calleð Dyoclician, þat wel and worthily hym gouernede, & rewlede thurgh his noble chiualrye, so þat he conquered alle þe landes abowte hym, so that almoste aȝ þe kynges of þe world to hym were entendaunt. ¶ Hyt befell thus, þat this Dioclician spoused a gentyl damysele þat was wondyr fayr, þat was hys Eemys doughter, Labana; & sche loued hym as reson wolde, so þat he gate vpon here xxxiiij doughtres, of þe which þe eldest me called Albyne. And þese<sup>5</sup> Damysels, whan þey comyn in-to<sup>6</sup> Age, bycomen<sup>7</sup> so fayre þat it was wondyr. ¶ Wherefore this Dioclician anon lete make A sompnyng, & comaundid by his lettres þat Alle þe kyngys þat heldyn of hym schulde come at A certayn day, as in his lettres was<sup>8</sup> conteyned, to make A ryal feste. At which day, þedir þey comyn, & brought with hem Amyralles, Prynces & Dukes, & noble Chiualrye. þe feste was ryally Arayd; & þere þey lyved in ioy and mertle y-now, that it was wonder to wete.

¶ And hit befelle þus, þat þis Dioclician þoughte maryen his Doughtres among aȝ þo knyghtys<sup>9</sup> þat tho were at that solemnyte;

<sup>1</sup> The text to the end of Chapter V is taken from MS. Douce 323, as it is wanting (except just the latter part of Chapter V, which is too blurred and indistinct to be copied) in MS. Rawlinson B 171. The collation following is of MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin 490 (D). <sup>2</sup> leaf 1.

<sup>3</sup> D has this heading: Her may a man hure How Engelande was ferst callede Albyon and through whome it hade the name.

<sup>4</sup> Syrrie    <sup>5</sup> þis    <sup>6</sup> vnto    <sup>7</sup> bicom    <sup>8</sup> were    <sup>9</sup> kynges  
BRUT. B

2 *King Dioclician's Daughters despise their Husbands.* [PROL.

and so they spoken<sup>1</sup> & dede, that Albyne, his eldest doughter,  
& alle here<sup>2</sup> sustres, richely were maryed vnto xxxiiij kynges<sup>3</sup> that  
wer<sup>4</sup> lordes of gret honour, & Also power, at þis solempnite. And  
whanne þe solempnite was done, euery kyng nome his wyf, & lad 4  
hem into here owne cuntre, and there maad hem quene. ¶ And  
hit byfelle þus aftyrwarð, þat þis dame Albyne bycome so stoute  
& so sterne, þat sche told litel prys of her lord, And of hym hadde  
scome and dyspite, and wolde not done his wyll, but wolde haue 8  
here owne wyf in diuerses<sup>5</sup> maners. And aH her other sustres,  
eche on<sup>6</sup> bere hem so euil a-yens here lordes, þat it was wonder  
to wete. ¶ And for-as-mych as hem thought<sup>7</sup> þat here housebondes  
were not<sup>8</sup> of so hye *parage* comen as here fadyr. ¶ But tho kynges 12  
þat were her lordes, wolde haue chastyset<sup>9</sup> with fayr speche &  
byhestes, & also for<sup>8</sup> ziftes, and warnyd hem in fayr maner vpon  
aH loue and frenschipe þat þei scholde Amende hir<sup>10</sup> lithir condi-  
cions; but al it was for nouzt, for they deden her owne wil in aH 16  
þyng<sup>11</sup> þat hem lykede & hadde of power. wherfore þo xxxiiij  
kynges, vpon A tyme, and oftyn-tymes, beten here wyfes, for þey  
wende that þei wolde haue Amended here tacches and here wykkyd  
thewes; but of such condicions þei were þat, for fayr speche & 20  
warnyng, þei deden the <sup>12</sup>wors, & for betynges <sup>13</sup>eft-sone mych<sup>13</sup>  
wors. Wherfore þe kyng þat hadde wedded Albyne, wrote þe  
tacches & þe<sup>8</sup> condicions of his wyf Albyne, & þe *lettre* sent to  
Dioclician, her fader. ¶ And whenne þe<sup>8</sup> other kynges herde that 24  
Albynes lord had sent *lettre* to Dioclician, anon þey sente *lettres*  
enseled with here seeles [of] þe condicions and þe tacches of here  
wyfes.

¶ Whanne þe Kyng Dioclician saw & herde so many pleyntes 28  
of his doughters, he was<sup>8</sup> sore a-schamed, & bycome wonder Angry  
& wroth to-ward his doughters, & þought boþe nyght & day how  
he þo myghte amende hit þat þey so mysdede. ¶ And anon sente  
his *lettres* vnto þo xxxiiij<sup>14</sup> kynges, þat þey schulde come to hym, 32  
& brynge *with* hem here wyfes, euerychoñ at a certayn day, for he  
wolde þere chastise hem of here wikkydnes, if he myghte in eny  
maner wyse. So þat þe kynges comen AH at þe<sup>15</sup> day & tyme þat

<sup>1</sup> spoken

<sup>2</sup> her opere

<sup>3</sup> knyghtes *struck out, and kynges written after it.*

<sup>4</sup> weren

<sup>5</sup> diuerse

<sup>6</sup> euerycheon

<sup>7</sup> þouzt nouzt

<sup>8</sup> om.

<sup>9</sup> chastisede ham

<sup>10</sup> her maners þat wer so

<sup>11</sup> þinges

<sup>12</sup> leaf 1, back.

<sup>13-13</sup> eftesones michel

<sup>14</sup> xxxti

<sup>15</sup> her

þo was sette bytween hem; & þ<sup>e</sup> Kyng Dioclician hem vndir-fenge<sup>1</sup>  
 with mychel honour, & made A solempne feste to aH þat were  
 vndir his lordschipe. And þ<sup>e</sup> thrid day of þat<sup>2</sup> solempnyte, þ<sup>e</sup>  
 4 kyng Dioclician sente for<sup>3</sup> his xxxij doughtres, þat þei schulde  
 come & speke with hym in his chambre. & whenne þey were  
 comen, he spak<sup>4</sup> vn-to hem of here wikkydnes & of here cruelte,  
 & dispitously<sup>4</sup> hem reprouet<sup>4</sup> And vndirnam,<sup>5</sup> & to hem he sayde  
 8 þat, 3if þei wolde not be<sup>6</sup> chastise<sup>6</sup>, þei schulde his loue lese for  
 euermore. ¶ And whanne þ<sup>e</sup> ladies herd<sup>7</sup> al this, þei becomen<sup>8</sup>  
 abasshet & gretly a-schamed; & to here fadir þey seyd þat þei  
 wolde make al amendes; & so þey departet<sup>9</sup> out from here fadres<sup>9</sup>  
 12 chambre. and Dame Albyne, þat was þ<sup>e</sup> eldest suster, lad hem aH  
 into her chambre, & þo made voide al þat were þerin, so þat no  
 lyf was among<sup>10</sup> hem but sche & here sustres y-fere.<sup>11</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> saide  
 þis Albyne ¶ “My fair sustres, ful weel 3e<sup>12</sup> knowiþ þat þ<sup>e</sup> kyng  
 16 oure fadir, vs hath reprouy<sup>12</sup>, schamed & dispise<sup>13</sup>,<sup>13</sup> for encheson  
 to make vs obedient vn-to oure housbandes; but certes þat schal y  
 neuere, whiles þat I lyve, seth þat I<sup>14</sup> am come<sup>14</sup> of a more hyere  
 kynges blod þan my<sup>15</sup> housband is.” & whan sche had so seyd,  
 20 aH here sustres seyd þe same. ¶ And þo seyd Albyne: “ful  
 wel y wot, fayr sustres, þat oure housbandes haue playnet<sup>16</sup> vnto  
 owre fadir vpon vs, wherfore he hath<sup>16</sup> þus vs<sup>16</sup> foul reprouet<sup>16</sup>  
 & dispise<sup>16</sup>. wherfore, sustres, my counseil is þat, þis nyght,  
 24 when owre housbandes ben abed,<sup>17</sup> aH we with on assent cutten  
 here throtes, & þan we mow be in pees of hem, & better we mowe  
 do þis þing vndir our fadres power þan elles-where.” & anon  
 AH þ<sup>e</sup> ladies<sup>18</sup> consentid<sup>18</sup> and graunted vnto þis counceil. ¶ And  
 28 whan nyght was comyn, þ<sup>e</sup> lordes & ladies wente to bedde, & anon  
 as here lordes were in<sup>19</sup> slepe, þei cutte<sup>20</sup> aH here housbandes  
 throtes, & so they slowen hem aH.

¶ whan þat Dioclician<sup>21</sup> her fader herd<sup>21</sup> of þis þing, <sup>22</sup>he by-  
 32 come<sup>22</sup> hugely wroth A-3ens his Doughtres, & anon wolde hem aH  
 haue brent; but Alle þ<sup>e</sup> barouns & lordes of Sirrye conceilyd hym  
 not so for-to don suche sternys to his owne doughtres, but onlych  
 schulde voide þ<sup>e</sup> land of hem for euermore, so þat þei neuere  
 36 schulde come a3en; & so he dede. ¶ And anon Dioclician, þat

<sup>1</sup> vnderfong<sup>t</sup>      <sup>2</sup> þe      <sup>3</sup> after      <sup>4</sup> despitely      <sup>5</sup> vndenam  
<sup>6</sup> bene      <sup>7</sup> harden      <sup>8</sup> bicom      <sup>9</sup> fader<sup>r</sup>      <sup>10</sup> amonges      <sup>11</sup> infere  
<sup>12</sup> we      <sup>13</sup> despitede      <sup>14-14</sup> comen      <sup>15</sup> myn      <sup>16-16</sup> vs þus  
<sup>17</sup> in bede      <sup>18</sup> leaf 2.      <sup>19</sup> on      <sup>20</sup> cotten      <sup>21</sup> Dioclician þe kyng<sup>r</sup>  
<sup>22-22</sup> om.

was here fadir,<sup>1</sup> commaundid hem to gon in-to schipe, & deliuary<sup>2</sup> to hem vitailles for half a<sup>2</sup> 3eer. and when þis was don, aH þ<sup>e</sup> sustryn<sup>3</sup> went in-to Shipe, & saylled forth in þ<sup>e</sup> See, & be-toke alle her frendes to Appolyn, þat was her goð. And so long þey sailled<sup>4</sup> in þ<sup>e</sup> See, til at þe laste þei come<sup>4</sup> & aryued in an yle þat was aH wyldernes. ¶ And when dame Albyne was come to þat land, & aH her sustres, þis Albyne went first<sup>5</sup> owt of þ<sup>e</sup> shipe,<sup>5</sup> & sayde to here oper sustres: “for-as-mich,” quod<sup>6</sup> sche, “as I am þ<sup>e</sup> eldest<sup>8</sup> suster of aH þis cumpanye, & first þis land haue takyn, & for-as-meeche as myn<sup>7</sup> name is Albyne, y wil þat þis land be called Albyon, after myn owne name;” & anon aH here Sustren<sup>3</sup> her graunted with a<sup>2</sup> good wyll. 12

¶ Tho wenten owt aH þ<sup>e</sup> Sustres of þ<sup>e</sup> Shippe, & tokyn þ<sup>e</sup> lond Albyon, as here Suster called hit; & þere þei wente vp and doun, and founde neiþer man ne woman ne child, but wyld bestes of diuers<sup>8</sup> kyndes. ¶ And whan here vitaiH<sup>9</sup> were dispendid, & hem faylled, þei fedde hem with erbes & frutes in seson of þ<sup>e</sup> 3eer, & so þey lyued<sup>10</sup> as þei beste myght. And after þat, þei tokyn flessch of diuers<sup>8</sup> beestys, and bycomen wondir fatte, and so þei desirid<sup>11</sup> mannes cumpanye and mannys kynde þat hem faylled; and for hete they woxen wondir coraious of kynde<sup>5</sup> þat hem faylled,<sup>5</sup> so þat þey desirid<sup>11</sup> more mannys cumpanye þan eny other solas or merthe. 20

¶ Whanne þe DenyH that perceyued and wente by diuers<sup>8</sup> contres, & nome bodyes of þ<sup>e</sup> eyre & likyng natures shad of men, & come in-to þ<sup>e</sup> land of Albyon and lay by þe<sup>12</sup> wymmen, and schad tho natures vpon hem, & they conceined, and after þei broughten<sup>13</sup> forth Geauntes, of þe which on me called Gogmagog, and anoper Laugherigan, & so þei were nompned by diuers<sup>14</sup> names; & in þis manere they comen forth, and weren<sup>15</sup> boren horrible Geauntes in Albion; & þey dwellyd in Cauns & in hulles at here wiH, & had þ<sup>e</sup> lond of Albyon as hem liked, vn-to þ<sup>e</sup> tyme þat Brut Arryved & come to Tottenesse, þat was in þ<sup>e</sup> Ile of Albyon. and þere þis Brut conqueryd & scomfyted these<sup>16</sup> geaunte3 aboueseyd. 36

Here endeth þe prolog of Albyon, þat þo was an Ile. and herkeneth<sup>18</sup> now how Brute was geten, & how he slow,

<sup>1</sup> fader anon      <sup>2</sup> om.      <sup>3</sup> sustres      <sup>4</sup> comen      <sup>5-5</sup> om.  
<sup>6</sup> quod      <sup>7</sup> my      <sup>8</sup> diuerses      <sup>9</sup> vitailles  
<sup>10</sup> leneden      <sup>11</sup> desirden      <sup>12</sup> þo      <sup>13</sup> brou3t      <sup>14</sup> diuerse3  
<sup>15</sup> wer      <sup>16</sup> þe      <sup>17</sup> leaf 2, back.      <sup>18</sup> herkeþ



ferst his Modir, & Afterward his fadir; & how he Con-  
quered Albyon, þat After he nepned Brytaigne, after his<sup>1</sup>  
name, þat now is y-calleð<sup>2</sup> Engelon, After þe name of  
4 Engist of Saxoyne. *Capitulo Primo.*

**I**N the noble Cyte of gret Troye, þer was a noble knyght & <sup>3</sup>a  
myghty, & <sup>3</sup>a man of gret power, þat me callyd Eneas. And  
whan þe Cytee of Troye was lost & dystroyed thurgh hem of  
8 Greek, þis Eneas, with al his mayn <sup>4</sup>fled<sup>5</sup> thens, & come in-to  
Lumbardye, þat þo was lord & gouernour of þat land a kyng þat  
me calleð<sup>6</sup> Latyme, and another kyng þo was þat me calleð<sup>6</sup>  
Turocelyn, þat stronglich<sup>7</sup> werred vpon þis Kyng Latyme, þat  
12 often-tymes ded hym moche<sup>8</sup> sorowe & myche<sup>9</sup> harm. ¶ And  
whan þis Kyng Latyme herde þat Eneas was come,<sup>10</sup> he vndirfonge  
hym with myche<sup>11</sup> honour, and hym withhelde, for-as-myche as he  
had herd of hym, and wist wel þat he was a noble knyght, & a  
16 worthy of body and of his dedes. ¶ This Eneas helpe Kyng  
Latyme in his werre; & shortly for-to telle, so weel & worthily  
he ded, þat he slogh Turocelyn, & descomphyted al<sup>12</sup> his peple.  
And whan al this was don, kyng Latyme gaf al þat land þat was  
20 Turocelyns, & gaf it to Eneas in mariage with Lamane, his  
doughter, the moost fayr creature þat eny manne wiste; & so þei  
louede<sup>13</sup> to-gider in ioy & myrthe aH here lyvys tyme.

¶ Hit bifel thus, þat Eneas dide, as God wolde. & whanne  
24 that he was ded, Asquanius his Sone, þat come with hym from  
Troye, vndirfenge<sup>14</sup> þe land, and helde it al his lyvys tyme. ¶ And  
after, he weddid A wyf, & vpon here<sup>15</sup> begate A Sone þat me  
callyd Sylveyn. And this Sylveyn, whan he conde<sup>16</sup> some reson  
28 of man, vnwetyng his fadir, & aȝens his wyl, aqueynted<sup>17</sup> with a  
damyseH þat was Cosyn to Lamane þat was Kyng Latymes  
doughter, the quen þat was Eneas wyf, and brought þe damyseH with  
Chylde. ¶ And whan Asquanius his<sup>18</sup> fader<sup>18</sup> wiste,<sup>18</sup> anon he  
32 lete enquire of the <sup>19</sup>wyset maystres,<sup>19</sup> & of þe <sup>20</sup>grettest Clerks,<sup>20</sup>  
what child þe damysele schulde bryng forth. & þey Answered &  
seyde þat sche schuld bryng forth a Sone þat schuld qwelle boþe  
fader & moder; & so he dede; for his modir dyde in beryng<sup>21</sup> of

<sup>1</sup> his owen    <sup>2</sup> callede    <sup>3-3</sup> om.    <sup>4</sup> meny    <sup>5</sup> MS. fledde fled  
<sup>6</sup> cleped    <sup>7</sup> strongly    <sup>8</sup> miche    <sup>9</sup> om.    <sup>10</sup> comen    <sup>11</sup> michel  
<sup>12</sup> and aH    <sup>13</sup> loueden    <sup>14</sup> vnderfonge    <sup>15</sup> her he    <sup>16</sup> couþe  
<sup>17</sup> aqueynte him    <sup>18-18</sup> wist þerof    <sup>19-19</sup> gret clerkes  
<sup>20-20</sup> wisest men    <sup>21</sup> bryngeng forth

hym. ¶ And whan þis Child was born, his fadir lete calle hym Brut; and þ<sup>e</sup> maystres sayd<sup>1</sup> þat þe Child schulde do<sup>2</sup> mych harm & sorowe in many diuers<sup>3</sup> places; & after, he schulde come to gret<sup>4</sup> honour and worschipe. ¶ This Kyng Asquanius deide whan 4 god wolde; & Sylveyn his sone receyued þe land, & made hym wonderlich wel be-louyd among his puple. <sup>5</sup>And<sup>6</sup> whan Brut, þat was Sylveynes sone, was xv 3eer olde, he went vpon A day with his fadir to<sup>7</sup> pley & solace; & as this Brut schulde schete<sup>8</sup> 8 vnto an hert, his Arwe mys-happed & glacede; And so there Brut quelled his fader.

**How Brut was dryue<sup>9</sup> out of þ<sup>e</sup> land, &<sup>10</sup> held hym in Greke.**  
*Capitulo ij<sup>o</sup>.* 12

**A**nd whan this myschaunce byfalle was, þ<sup>e</sup> people of þ<sup>e</sup> land made sorowe ynow, & were <sup>11</sup>an-Angryd<sup>11</sup>; & for encheson þerof þei dreven Brut out of þ<sup>e</sup> land, & wolde not suffre hym among<sup>12</sup> hem. and he Saw þat he moste<sup>13</sup> not Abyde, & went 16 fro thens in-to þ<sup>e</sup><sup>14</sup> Greek; & þer he fonde vij<sup>M</sup> men þat were of þ<sup>e</sup> lynage & kynrede of Troy, þat <sup>15</sup>weren come<sup>15</sup> of gret block, as þ<sup>e</sup> story telleth<sup>16</sup> as of men and<sup>14</sup> wommen & childryn, þe wheche weren<sup>17</sup> aH holden in thraldom and bondage [by] ¶ the<sup>18</sup> Kyng 20 Pandras of Greek, for the deth of Achilles, þat was betrayed and slayn at Troye.

This Brut was a wondir fair man, & a strong, & A <sup>19</sup>luge of his Age, & of glad chere and semblaunt, and also worthy of body, & 24 was wel beloued among his puple. This Kyng Pandras herde speke of his goodnesse & his condicions, & anon made hym dweH with hym, so þat Brut be-come wondir pryve & mych belouyd with þ<sup>e</sup> kyng, so þat longtyme Brut dwellyd with þe kyng. ¶ So at<sup>20</sup> last 28 þei of Troy & Brut spoken to-gedre<sup>21</sup> of kynrede & of lynage & of Aqueyntauce, & þer<sup>14</sup> pleyneð hem vnto Brut of her sorowe &<sup>22</sup> her bondeage, & of meny other schames þat þ<sup>e</sup> [Kyng] Pandras<sup>23</sup> hem don. & to Brut þei seyde<sup>24</sup> vpon A tyme: “3e ben A lord of oure 32

<sup>1</sup> saiden      <sup>2</sup> done      <sup>3</sup> diuerses      <sup>4</sup> miche

<sup>5</sup> leaf 3. *In the right hand top corner of this page is written, in a contemporary hand: ‘Bonus es, domine, et in bonitate tua Iudicas terram.’*

<sup>6</sup> A sic.      <sup>7</sup> forto      <sup>8</sup> shote      <sup>9</sup> dryuen      <sup>10</sup> And how he

<sup>11–11</sup> sore agreuede      <sup>12</sup> amonges      <sup>13</sup> miȝt      <sup>14</sup> om.

<sup>15–15</sup> wer comen      <sup>16</sup> telleþ of ham      <sup>17</sup> wer      <sup>18</sup> MS. ¶ The

<sup>19</sup> an      <sup>20</sup> at þe      <sup>21</sup> to-gederes      <sup>22</sup> and of

<sup>23</sup> Pandras hade      <sup>24</sup> saiden

lynage, & A strang<sup>r</sup> man & a myghty. <sup>1</sup>be <sup>3e1</sup>oure Avowe & oure lord, & we wyl become <sup>3</sup>oure men, & <sup>3</sup>oure comandement<sup>2</sup> done in alle maner thyng<sup>3</sup>; and brynge <sup>3e</sup> vs out of this wrechidnes & <sup>4</sup>bondage, & fyght we with <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> kyng; for thurgh <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> grace of <sup>4p<sup>e</sup></sup> grete<sup>4</sup> god we schul hym ouerecome; & we schul make <sup>3ou</sup> kyng<sup>r</sup> of <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> land, & to <sup>3ow</sup> done homage, & of <sup>3ow</sup> we schullen holde<sup>5</sup> euermore."

8 Brut hadde <sup>po</sup> gret pyte of hir bondage <sup>pat</sup> <sup>pei</sup> were brought Inne, And pryvyly<sup>6</sup> went hym from <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> kynges Court; & aH <sup>po</sup> <sup>pat</sup> were of Troy went & put hem in-to wodes and Into Moun-  
teynes, and hem helde, & sent to Kyng Pandras <sup>pat</sup> he schulde <sup>3eue</sup>  
12 hem leue safely for-to wende out of <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> londe, for <sup>pei</sup> nolde<sup>7</sup> no lenger dwelle in his bondage. ¶ The Kyng Pandras wax so<sup>8</sup> sore anoyed, & <sup>po</sup> swore that he wolde sle hem echon,<sup>9</sup> & ordeyned a gret power, & wente towardes<sup>10</sup> hem aH for-to fight. but Brut  
16 & his men <sup>11</sup>anon manly<sup>11</sup> hem defended, & fersly foghten & quelled aH <sup>pe</sup> kynges men, <sup>pat</sup> non<sup>12</sup> of hem Ascaped, & took<sup>r</sup> <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> kyng, & hym helden<sup>13</sup> in pryson, & ordeyne<sup>14</sup> counceyl between hem what <sup>pei</sup> myght do.<sup>15</sup> Sum seyde <sup>pat</sup> he schuld be put to deth, &  
20 summe seyde <sup>pat</sup> he schulde be exyled out of <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> land, & summe seyde <sup>pat</sup> he schulde be brent.<sup>16</sup> ¶ And <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> spak a wyse knyght <sup>pat</sup> me cleped<sup>17</sup> Menprys, & seyde to Brut & to<sup>18</sup> aH <sup>po</sup> of Troy: "yf Kyng Pandras wold <sup>3elde</sup> hym, & haue his lyf, y counceyl <sup>pat</sup> he  
24 <sup>3eue</sup> vnto Brut, <sup>pat</sup> is our Duke & oure souerayn, his daughter Gennogen to wyf, & in Marriage with here an hundrid Shippes wel arayed, & al his tresour of gold & of syluer, of corn,<sup>19</sup> of wyn, & as myche as vs nedith for<sup>18</sup> to haue of o thing & of o<sup>per</sup>; & <sup>pan</sup> go<sup>18</sup>  
28 we out of <sup>pis</sup><sup>20</sup> land, & ordeine we vs land elles-where; for we, ne non of our kynrede <sup>pat</sup> comen<sup>21</sup> after vs, schuld<sup>22</sup> neuer haue pees in <sup>pis</sup> land amonges hem of Grek<sup>r</sup>; for we haue sleyn so meny of her knyghtes & of o<sup>per</sup> frendes, <sup>pat</sup> euermor<sup>r</sup> werre & coniect  
32 schuld be Amonges vs." ¶ Brut <sup>po</sup>, & his folk, consentyd wel to <sup>pis</sup><sup>23</sup> counceyl; & <sup>pis</sup> ping <sup>pei</sup> tolden to<sup>24</sup> Kyng Pandras. ¶ And <sup>p<sup>e</sup></sup> kyng, for-to haue his lyf, graunted as meche as <sup>pei</sup> axed, & anon <sup>3af</sup> vn-to Brut, Gennogen his Doughter, to wyf, & <sup>pe</sup> hundred

1—1 bene	2 comandement	3 pinges	4—4 om.
5 holde for	6 priueliche	7 wolde	5 po
10 towarde	11—11 manliche	12 noman	9 euerchon
14 leaf 3, back.	15 done	16 bracide	13 helde
18 om.	19 corn and	17 callede	22 shul
23 pat	24 to pe	20 his	21 comeþ

sheppes, with as myche as hem neded<sup>1</sup> of aH vitalles, as byfore was ordeyned.

Brut þo toke<sup>2</sup> his wyf, & aH his men þat forsoke þe lond of Greek, & wenten hem vnto þ<sup>e</sup> see & hadden wedir at wyH, & 4 comen þ<sup>e</sup> prid day in-to An Ile þat me calleþ<sup>3</sup> Loegers. ¶ Brut anon sent of his men a<sup>4</sup> land, for-to aspye þ<sup>e</sup> maner of þe<sup>5</sup> Cuntre. & þey founden an olde Cyte al wasted & forlete, þat nas þer-in nor<sup>6</sup> man ne woman, ne no thing dwellynge; & In þ<sup>e</sup> Myddyl of þis 8 Cytee þey founden an olde Temple of a fayr lady þat me called Diane þ<sup>e</sup> Goddesse. and þei 7 comen aȝen vnto Brut,<sup>7</sup> & told hym what þei had seyn & founden, & counceyled hym to go & do<sup>8</sup> sacrifice to<sup>9</sup> Dame Diane, for she was wont<sup>10</sup> to ȝeue answeere of 12 what þing þat<sup>6</sup> euere men prayed here, & namely vn-to hem þat her honoured with sacrifice. ¶ Brut went to þat ymage, & seyde: “Dyane, noble goddes, lady þat al þing hast in<sup>6</sup> myght & in þy power, wyndes, watres, wodes, felde, & al thinges of þe world, & 16 al maner bestes þat þer-In ben! to ȝow y make my prayer, þat ȝe me counceyle & telle where & in what place y schal haue a conuenable dwellynge for me & for my peple; & þer y schal make, in<sup>11</sup> honour of ȝow, a wel fayr temple, & a noble, wheryn ȝe schul 20 euermore be honoured.” ¶ When he had don his prayer, Dyane Auswerid in this manere: “Brut,” quod sche, “go euenforth þy wey ouer þ<sup>e</sup> see in-to Fraunce, toward þ<sup>e</sup> west, & þer ȝe schul fynde an Ile þat is called 12 Albyon; and þat Ile is bycompassed al with 24 þ<sup>e</sup> see, & no man may come þer-In but<sup>13</sup> it be by schippes; and in þat lond were wont to be Geauntȝ; but<sup>14</sup> it is not so, but al wyldirnesse; and þat lande to ȝou is destynyed, & ordeigned for ȝow & for ȝoure peple.”

28

### How Coryn bycome Brutes man, & how Kyng Goffar was discomfited. *Capitulo iij<sup>o</sup>.*

Whan Brut herde þis Answere of Dyane þ<sup>e</sup> Goddes, anon he lete þ<sup>e</sup> Ancres wynd vp, & sayled in-to þ<sup>e</sup> hye see. & 32 whan he & his men had sayled xx dayes & more, þei founden fast bysyde<sup>15</sup> a coste of þ<sup>e</sup> see thre hundred men of þe lynage & kyurede of Troy, & her souerayn & her mayster of aH, men<sup>16</sup> Called Coryn.

<sup>1</sup> nedeth<sup>2</sup> nome<sup>3</sup> callede<sup>4</sup> on<sup>5</sup> om.<sup>6</sup> neyther<sup>7-7</sup> come vnto brut aȝeyne<sup>8</sup> doñ<sup>9</sup> vnto<sup>10</sup> wonede<sup>11</sup> in þe<sup>12</sup> leaf 4.<sup>13</sup> but if<sup>14</sup> but now<sup>15</sup> bisides<sup>16</sup> me

¶ And when Brut wyste whens þei were, he þo vndirfong hem with mychel ioy in-to his Shepys, & hem lad forth *with* hym. This Coryn þo bycome Brutes man, & to hym dede fewte & homage. 4 & so long þei sayled forth þan<sup>1</sup> in þ<sup>e</sup> See tul they come<sup>2</sup> to Gascoign; & anon þei arryued<sup>3</sup> in þ<sup>e</sup> hauene of Liegers, & þer þei dwellidde viij dayes, hem for-to rest,<sup>3</sup> & her sayles to Amend<sup>4</sup>, þer as <sup>4</sup>nede was.<sup>4</sup>

8 Tydyng sone come to Kyng Goffar, þat was lord of þ<sup>e</sup> land, how þat myche<sup>5</sup> folk<sup>6</sup> of *straunge* land weren Arryued in his land in þ<sup>e</sup> hauene of Liegers; wherfore he was sore Angred<sup>7</sup> & anoyed þat þey comen & aryued in his land *withoute*<sup>8</sup> leue. and anon he 12 ordeigned<sup>9</sup> power <sup>7</sup>hem to dryven<sup>7</sup> owt, & to<sup>8</sup> shende; but Kyng Goffar was discomfyted<sup>8</sup>, & al<sup>8</sup> his folk<sup>8</sup>, & hym-self fledde in-to ffraunce to seche help & socour. ¶ And in þat tyme regned in Fraunce xij kynges; & þ<sup>e</sup> elleueneth<sup>9</sup> assembled a gret power for-to 16 helpe Goffar for-to fight azens Brut. Goffar dwelled with hem of Fraunce half a<sup>8</sup> zere & more. And Brut in þ<sup>e</sup> mene-tyme, & his companye, destroyed<sup>9</sup> al þ<sup>e</sup> land<sup>9</sup> of Gascoigne, & lete take al þ<sup>e</sup> tresour þat Kyng Goffar hadde, & lete brynge it in-to his Shippes.

20 And þis Brut fonde in þat<sup>10</sup> lond a fayr place & a couenable; & þer Brut<sup>11</sup> made a fayr CasteH & a strong. whan þat was don, Kyng Goffar come fro Fraunce, & <sup>12</sup>xj kynges *with* hym, & brougten<sup>13</sup> xx M<sup>t</sup> men for-to fight *with* Brut & his companye. And Brut 24 hadde but vij M<sup>t</sup> men & thre hundred. Netheles, whan þ<sup>e</sup> to osten metten to-gider,<sup>14</sup> Brutes folk—thurgh help of hym-self,<sup>15</sup> & of Turyn his Cosyn, & of Coryn þat wel & manly<sup>16</sup> hym defended & fought; so þat in litil tyme þei hadde quelled of þ<sup>e</sup> Frenssh-men to 28 M<sup>t</sup> & mo; & þo þat were lyue<sup>17</sup> fledden away. ¶ And in this batayle Turyn, þat was Brutes Cosyn, was sleyn, & Brut lete hym entere worthyly,<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup>whan he had space & leysur, in þ<sup>e</sup> CasteH þat he had made, & þo lete [calle hit] Castel Tours <sup>20</sup>after his owne 32 name<sup>20</sup> þat þere was entered. & 3it in-to þis day þer is a noble Cytee þat is called Tours.

Whan Kyng Goffar wiste þat Turyn was ded, he come agen with his men, & after 3af a strong battaylle vn-to<sup>21</sup> Brut; but Brut & 36 his<sup>8</sup> men were so wery <sup>22</sup>of fyghtynge<sup>22</sup> þat þey myghte no lengere

<sup>1</sup> om.    <sup>2</sup> comen    <sup>3</sup> resten    <sup>4-4</sup> was nede    <sup>5</sup> michel  
<sup>6</sup> wipoute is    <sup>7-7</sup> him to dryue    <sup>8</sup> om.    <sup>9</sup> endeleeueþ    <sup>10</sup> þe  
<sup>11</sup> Brus    <sup>12</sup> w[ith]    <sup>13</sup> brouzt    <sup>14</sup> togederes    <sup>15</sup> ham-self  
<sup>16</sup> manliche    <sup>17</sup> ou lyf    <sup>18</sup> worthelich    <sup>19</sup> leaf 4, back.  
<sup>20-20</sup> for þe name of Turyne    <sup>21</sup> to    <sup>22-22</sup> forfoztyn

endure; but maugre hym & al his, Brut & his men went in-to his CasteH with aH his men, and made þ<sup>e</sup> ȝates fast for-to saue hem-self, & for-to take counceiH amonges hem what were best to<sup>1</sup> done. ¶ Brut & Coryn nome counceiH, & ordeigneH þat Coryn pryuyly 4 shuld gon out <sup>2</sup>at a Posterne of þ<sup>e</sup> CasteH,<sup>2</sup> with half his men, & schuld go<sup>3</sup> & bussH hem in A wode til amorowe,<sup>4</sup> so þat in þ<sup>e</sup> mornyng, whan Brut schuld fyght with his enemyes, Coryn schulde come with hes folk in þat o<sup>5</sup> syde, & sle and do aH þ<sup>e</sup> harme þat he 8 myght. And amorow<sup>6</sup> in þ<sup>e</sup> dawnenge, Brut went out of þ<sup>e</sup> CasteH, & faught with his enemyes, & þey hem fersly defendiH. but with-Inne a litil tyme Brut & his folk hadden<sup>7</sup> slayn viij C of Goffars men; And þo come Coryn fro þe busschement, & smote to grounde, 12 he & his Cumpanye, al þat wold stande or Abyde, so þat Kyng Goffar & his folk were discomfited, & faste they gunne to fle. ¶ And Brut & Coryn, with here companye, fresshly hem pursued, & quelled of hem mo in<sup>8</sup> fleyng þan þei dede in<sup>8</sup> batayH. And in 16 þat manere Brut hadde þ<sup>e</sup> victorie. And neþeles Brut made myche sorowe for his Cosyn Turyn, þat þer was slayn, & for oþer also þat he had lost of his men, "þat is to seyne,<sup>9</sup> vij C and xv, þe which 10[he] noblich<sup>10</sup> lete entere in þ<sup>e</sup> CasteH of Tours, þer þat he had 20 entered Turyn his Cosyn.

**How Brut Aryued at Tottenes in þe Ile of Albyon; & of þ<sup>e</sup> Bataylle þat<sup>11</sup> was between Coryn & Gogmagog. Capitulo quarto.**

24

**W**han al þis was done, Brut wolde no lengere þer dwelle for to<sup>12</sup> fight, ne mo lese of his peple, for Kyng Goffarys peple myght euery day encrece mo & mo, & Brutes lassen; & therfore he nome aH his men, & went vnto þ<sup>e</sup> See, & hadde wynd & wedir at 28 wille. and þ<sup>e</sup> v day afterward they aryued in an hauene of Totnesse, & comen<sup>13</sup> in-to þ<sup>e</sup> Ile of Albion; & þer þey founde neiþer man ne woman, as þ<sup>e</sup> story telleþ,<sup>14</sup> but Geauntz; & þey woned in hulles and in<sup>15</sup> Caues. Brut saw þ<sup>e</sup> land was fayr, & at his likynge, 32 & good also for hym & for his folk, as Dyane þ<sup>e</sup> goddes had hym behyght. þo was Brut wonder glad, & lete assemble vpon a day al his folk, to make a solempne sacrifice & a gret feste in honour

<sup>1</sup> for-to      <sup>2-2</sup> of the castel at a posterne      <sup>3</sup> gone      <sup>4</sup> on þe morw  
<sup>5</sup> on      <sup>6</sup> amorn      <sup>7</sup> hade      <sup>8</sup> in þe      <sup>9-9</sup> om.      <sup>10-10</sup> nobliche he  
<sup>11</sup> þai sic      <sup>12</sup> om.      <sup>13</sup> come      <sup>14</sup> telles      <sup>15</sup> om.

& reuerence of Dyane,<sup>1</sup> þurght whas counceiH he was come<sup>2</sup> in-to þat land.

And whan they had her solempnyte maad, as þey<sup>3</sup> vpon a day  
4 were<sup>4</sup> at mete, þer come yn vpon hem sodenly xxx Geauntz, &  
quellyd<sup>5</sup> of Brutes men xxx. Brut & his men<sup>4</sup> anon stertyn vp,  
& his men<sup>6</sup> foughten with þe Geauntz, & quellyd hem euerychon  
but o<sup>7</sup> Geaunt, þat was Mayster of hem aH, þat me called Gogmagog,  
8 þat was strengier<sup>8</sup> & heyer þan eny of þe other Geauntz; & Brut  
kepte hym, & sauyl his lyf, for encheson þat he schulde wrastle  
with Coryn, for Coryn was grettere & hugere þan eny of Brutes  
men fro<sup>9</sup> þe gerdel stede vpward. ¶ Gogmagog & Coryn vndertook  
12 <sup>10</sup>to wrastelyn<sup>10</sup> y-fere; & so to-gider þey wrasteled long tyme, but  
at þe last Gogmagog helde Coryn so fast þat he brak ij rybbys of<sup>11</sup>  
his syde, wherfore Coryn was sore agreuyd, & nome þo Gogmagog  
betwene his Armes, & cast hym down vpon a roche, so þat  
16 Gogmagog brak al to peeces, & so he dyde in eviH deth; & þerfore  
þe place is called ȝit in-to<sup>12</sup> þis day 'þe sawte of Gogmagog.'

& þo ȝaf Brute al þat<sup>13</sup> Cuntre to Coryn; & Coryn<sup>14</sup> called  
[hit]<sup>4</sup> after his<sup>15</sup> name 'Cornewayle'; & his men he called 'Corne-  
20 wayles' & [so] schul<sup>16</sup> men of þat Cuntre be called for euermore.  
And in þat Cuntre dwellyd Coryn & his men, & made Tounes  
& houses,<sup>17</sup> & enhabite<sup>18</sup> þe land at her<sup>19</sup> wylle.

#### How Brut made London, & Called þis land Brytaine, & 24 Scotland Albyne, & Walys Camber. Capitulo quinto.

**B**Rut and his men wenten forth & <sup>20</sup>sought aboute in diuers<sup>20</sup>  
places wher they myghte fynde a good place & a conenable  
þat þey myghte [make] in a Cytee for hym and for his folk, so at þe  
28 laste þey come<sup>21</sup> by a fayr Ryuer<sup>22</sup> þat is<sup>23</sup> called þe<sup>24</sup> Tamyse; &  
þer Brut be-gan a fayre Cyte <sup>24</sup>for hym & for his folk,<sup>24</sup> & lete calle  
it 'þe new Troye,' in mynde & remembraunce of þe gret Troye, for<sup>25</sup>  
which place aH her lynage was comen. ¶ And þis Brut lete felle  
32 adoun wodes, & lete erylle & sowe londes, & done mow medes<sup>26</sup> for  
sustinaunce of hym & of his peple. & he departed þe land to hem,  
so þat eche<sup>27</sup> of hem had a certayn place for to dwelle vpon. And

<sup>1</sup> Diane þe Goddes      <sup>2</sup> comen      <sup>3</sup> þai were      <sup>4</sup> om.      <sup>5</sup> leaf 5.  
<sup>6</sup> men and      <sup>7</sup> on      <sup>8</sup> stronge      <sup>9</sup> fram      <sup>10—10</sup> forto wasteH  
<sup>11</sup> in      <sup>12</sup> vnto      <sup>13</sup> þis      <sup>14</sup> Coryn it      <sup>15</sup> his owen      <sup>16</sup> shullep  
<sup>17</sup> house      <sup>18</sup> iuhabite      <sup>19</sup> his      <sup>20—20</sup> souȝten forthe in diuerses  
<sup>21</sup> comen      <sup>22</sup> Ryuer side      <sup>23</sup> was      <sup>24—24</sup> om.      <sup>25</sup> fram  
<sup>26</sup> medowes      <sup>27</sup> eneryche

Brut lete Calle al<sup>1</sup> þis land Britaigne, after his owne name, & his folk<sup>2</sup> he lete calle Britouns. ¶ And þis Brut had geten on<sup>2</sup> his wyf Gennogen iij sones þat were worthy of dedes:<sup>3</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> firste me<sup>4</sup> callyð Lotryn, þ<sup>e</sup> secounde Albanac,<sup>5</sup> & þ<sup>e</sup> thryd kambyr. ¶ And 4 Brut bare Crowne in þ<sup>e</sup> Cyte of newe Troye xx 3eer after tyme<sup>6</sup> the Cyte was made; & ther he made þe lawes þat þ<sup>e</sup> Britouns holdeþ<sup>7</sup>: & þis Brut was wondirly weel byloued among aH men; & Brutes Sones also loueden wonderly<sup>1</sup> wel to-gydere.<sup>8</sup> 8

¶ And whan<sup>1</sup> Brut had sowte aH þ<sup>e</sup> lonk in lengthe &<sup>9</sup> brede, he fonde A land þat ioyned to Brytaigne in þ<sup>e</sup> north; and þat land Brut 3af to Albanac his sone, and he lete calle yt Albanye after his<sup>10</sup> name, þat<sup>10</sup> now is called Scotland. ¶ And Brut 12 fonde anothir Cuntre toward þ<sup>e</sup> west; & þat he 3af to Cambre his other<sup>11</sup> sone, & he<sup>1</sup> lete calle yt Cambre aftr his name, & now is called Walys. And whan Brut had regnyd xx 3eer, as byfore<sup>12</sup> is sayd, he dyde in þ<sup>e</sup> Cytee of newe Troy, & 16 þere his Sones hym entered with mychil honour. And Lotryn, Brutes sone, was Crowned kyng with myche<sup>13</sup> solempnyte of aH þ<sup>e</sup> land of Brytaigne. And after, whan he was Crowned, Albanak & Camber, his too brethryn, went a3en in-to here owne 20 Cuntre, & leuedyn with myche<sup>13</sup> honour, & Lotryn here brother regned & was kyng and gouerned þ<sup>e</sup> land wel & wysely, for he was a good man, & wondir wel belonyd of aH his land.

¶ And it befel so þat Albanac dwelde in his owne land with 24 myche<sup>13</sup> honour & worschepe.

And so come Kyng Humbar of Hunland with a gret power & strengthe, & Arryved in Albanye, & wolde haue conqueryd þ<sup>e</sup> land, & bygan to werre vpon Albanak, & hym quelled in bataylle. 28 Whan Albanac was slayn, þe folk of þ<sup>e</sup> land flye vn-to Lotryn, & told hym, for he was Kyng of Brytaigne, how þat his brother was slayn, & prayed hym of help for-to Auenge his brotherys deth. Lotryn anon lete asemble aH þ<sup>e</sup> Brytouns of Kent, of<sup>14</sup> Douorre, 32 vn-to Derewent, of Northfolk & Southfole, of Kestefen & of Lyndeseye; & whan they were aH Assembled, þei spedde faste toward her enemyes for to 3ene hem bataylle. ¶ Lotryn had sent to Camber, his Brother, þat he schuld come also to hym with aH 36 þ<sup>e</sup> power that he myght, hym for-to helpe; & so he dede, with good

<sup>1</sup> om.      <sup>2</sup> of      <sup>3</sup> bodyes      <sup>4</sup> in sic      <sup>5</sup> albac      <sup>6</sup> tyme þat  
<sup>7</sup> helden      <sup>8</sup> togederes      <sup>9</sup> and in      <sup>10-10</sup> owen name and  
<sup>11</sup> leaf 5, back.      <sup>12</sup> MS. fyfore      <sup>13</sup> michel      <sup>14</sup> fro



with.<sup>1</sup> So þei comen aH to-gedres, & nome her wey priuily<sup>2</sup> for to seche Humbar wher þey myghte hym fynde. ¶ And so it byfel þat þis Humbar was besides a water þat was a gret Ryuer, with  
4 his folk, hym for to dysport; and þo come Lotryn & Camber his brother, with aH his<sup>3</sup> folk sodeynly, or þat eny of þat oþer it wyste.

¶ And whan Humbar saw hem<sup>4</sup> come, he was sore adraek, 8 forasmyche as his men wist it not, & also þey were vnarrayed.<sup>5</sup> And anon Humbar for drede, leþ<sup>6</sup> in-to þ<sup>e</sup> water & drenchyd hymself, & so deide: he & his men weren<sup>7</sup> aH y-slayn,<sup>8</sup> þat non<sup>9</sup> of hem ascaped. And þerfore is þat<sup>10</sup> water called Humbar, & euer-  
12 more schalbe, for encheson þat Kyng Humbar was þer-In drenched.

¶ And after þat, Lotryn wente to here shippes, & toke þer<sup>10</sup> gold & siluer, and as myche as he fand vn-to hym-self; & aH þat other pylfre he 3af vn-to other folk of þ<sup>e</sup> ost. & þei founden<sup>11</sup> in  
16 oon of þo<sup>10</sup> shippes A fayr DamyseH þat was Kyng Humbarys doughter; & me called her Estrilde. ¶ And whan Lotryn saw here, he took here with hym for here fayrnesse, and for here, was  
on<sup>12</sup> taken for loue, & wolde haue weddid here. <sup>13</sup>þis tydynges come to Coryn: anon he thought to Auenge hym vpon Lotryn, for-as-meeche as Lotryn had made couenaunt for-to spowsen<sup>14</sup> Corynys doughter, þat me called Guentolen. ¶ And Coryn in haste wente to<sup>15</sup> hym, vn-to<sup>16</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> Newe Troye, & þus sayd to Lotryn:  
24 “¶ Now certes,” quok he, “3e rewarden<sup>17</sup> me ful eucl for aH þ<sup>e</sup> paynes þat I suffryd & hadde many tymes for Brut, 3oure fader; & therfore I wyl now Auenge me vpon 3ow;” & drow his fauchon an hye, and wold haue slayn Lotryn, but þ<sup>e</sup> DamyseH went  
28 be-twen hem, & made hem acorded in þis manere, þat Lotryn schuld spouse Guentolen, þat was Corynys doughter; and so Lotryn dede, and neþeles, þei he had spoused Corynys doughter pryuylich, he come to Estrilde, & brought here with childe, & gate  
32 on here A doughter þat me called Abraham. ¶ hyt byfel anon after, þat Coryn dide; & anon as he was ded, Lotryn forsook Guentolen his wyf, & made Estrylde quene. And Guentolen went þens al in wrathe in-to Cornewaylle, & seised aH þ<sup>e</sup> land  
36 in-to her hand, for-as-mych as sche was here Fadrys eyr, & vndirfonge feautes & homages of aH þ<sup>e</sup> men of þ<sup>e</sup> land, and after

<sup>1</sup> wille and    <sup>2</sup> priueliche    <sup>3</sup> her    <sup>4</sup> him    <sup>5</sup> vnarmede  
<sup>6</sup> lap    <sup>7</sup> wer    <sup>8</sup> slayne    <sup>9</sup> noman    <sup>10</sup> þe    <sup>11</sup> fonde  
<sup>12</sup> ouere    <sup>13</sup> leaf 6.    <sup>14</sup> sponse    <sup>15</sup> vnto    <sup>16</sup> to    <sup>17</sup> rewarde

Assembled a gret oste & a gret pöwer, for-to be<sup>1</sup> vpon Lotryn auenged, þat was her lord, and to hym come, & 3af hym A Strong bataiH. & þer was Lotryn slayn, & his men descomfited, þ<sup>e</sup> v 3eer of his Reigne. ¶ Guentolen lete take Estrilde, and Abraham here 4 dougter, and bynde<sup>2</sup> boþ<sup>e</sup> hondes and fete, & caste hem in-to a water; & so þey were drenchyd; wherfore þat water was euermore called<sup>3</sup> after, 'Abraham,' after þ<sup>e</sup> name of þ<sup>e</sup> damyseH þat was Estrildes dougter; & englissh-men called<sup>4</sup> þat water Seuerne, & 8 Walssh-men <sup>5</sup>called þat water<sup>5</sup> Abraham, into þis day. ¶ And whan þis was don, Guentolen lete Crowne her quene of þat land, & gouerned þ<sup>e</sup> land ful weH & wysely vnto þ<sup>e</sup>6 tyme þat Madhon her Sone, þat Lotryn had begete vpon here, wer<sup>7</sup> of xx 3er Age, þat he 12 myghit be kyng; so þat þ<sup>e</sup> qwen regned xv 3eer; & þo lete she crowne here sone; & he regned & gouerned þ<sup>e</sup> land wel & honourably; & sche wente in-to CornewaiH, & þer sche dwelliH al her lyves<sup>7</sup> tyme. 16

**Of Kyng<sup>st</sup> Madhan, how he regnede in pees al his lif; and of Menpris and of Manlyn his sones; and how Menpris slough Manlyn his broþer, and how wolfes drow him al to peces.**

¶ **Capitulo Sexto.**

20

**W**Hen Madhan hade regnede xxx<sup>ti</sup> 3ere, he deide, and liþ<sup>9</sup> at newe Troye, and he<sup>10</sup> hade ij sones: þat on me callede Menpris, and þat op<sup>ere</sup> Manlyn; and þise ij breþ<sup>er</sup>ne, after here fadres deth, stryuen faste for þe lande; and Menpris, for enchesouñ 24 þat he was eldest, wolde haue hade al þat<sup>11</sup> Londe; and Manlyn wolde nouzt suffren<sup>12</sup> him, so þat þai token a day of loue and of accorde; and at þis day Menpris lete quelle his broþ<sup>er</sup> þrouz tresouñ, and him-self afterward helde þe lande, and anone lete crowne him 28 kyng, and regnede, and after, he<sup>13</sup> bicom so luper a man þat he destroyede in a while alle þe men of his lande. ¶ and at þe last he bicom so wickede and so leccherous, þat he forsoke his owen wif, & vsede þe synne of Sodomye; wherfore almighty God was 32 wroþ,<sup>14</sup> and oppoñ him toke vengeance. ¶ ffor vppon a day, as he went in a wode in<sup>15</sup> huntynge, he loste <sup>16</sup>his fole,<sup>16</sup> and went

<sup>1</sup> bene      <sup>2</sup> bonde      <sup>3</sup> calle      <sup>4</sup> callen      <sup>5-5</sup> calleþ it.

<sup>6</sup> that      <sup>7</sup> lif

<sup>8</sup> leaf 1, back. The text here is from MS. Rawlinson B. 171, and the collations are of MS. Trinity College, Dublin, 490 (D), and MS. Douce 323 (O).

<sup>9</sup> leaf 2.      <sup>10</sup> om. D.      <sup>11</sup> þe D.      <sup>12</sup> suttre O.      <sup>13</sup> om. O.

<sup>14</sup> wrot D.      <sup>15</sup> on O.      <sup>16-16</sup> MS. his fole his fole

allone vp and douñ criyng' after his men ; and þere come wolfes,  
and alto-drowe him into pecis ; and þo he hade regnede xxiiij 3er'.  
and when his peple wist þat he was dede, þai made ioye ynow, and  
4 anone made Ebrak<sup>1</sup> his sone kyng ; and he regnede with michil  
honour'.

Of Kyng<sup>cr</sup> Ebrac,<sup>1</sup> how he conquerede ffraunce, and bigate xx<sup>ti</sup>  
sones and xxij douȝtres. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septimo.

8 **T**His Ebrac regnede .lx. 3er', and<sup>2</sup> stronge man was, &<sup>2</sup> miȝty,  
and þis Ebrac, prouȝ his miȝt, and helpe of his Britons,  
conquerede al ffraunce, and wan þere so miche golde and siluer' þat,  
when he come<sup>3</sup> aȝeyne into þis<sup>4</sup> lande, he made a noble citee, and  
12 after' his name lete calle it Ebrac, <sup>5</sup>after' his name,<sup>5</sup> þat now is  
callede Euerwik'. and þis king<sup>6</sup> Ebrac made þe castel of Maydenes  
þat now is clepede Edenburgh. This kyng' hade xx sones and  
xxij douȝ<sup>7</sup>tres, be diuerse wymmen geten ; and þe sones were callede  
16 as 3e shul hure ; <sup>8</sup> Brut Greneshal, Margand, Seisel, Morghwith  
Flenghan, Bladud, Iakyn, Kymbar', Rocelyn, Spadogh, Godeherl,  
Thormnan, Eldaugh, Iorkanghut, Haybor, Ketyne, Rother', Kaier',  
& Assaruth. ¶ And þe doughtres highten as 3e shul hur' after :<sup>9</sup>  
20 Elegyne, Ymmogen, Oghdas, Guenbran, Guardiche, Angarel,  
Guentolde, Tangustel, Gorghon', Michel, Medham, Mailour', Ondur',  
Cambredan, Rogan, Reuthely, Neest', Cheghem, Scadud', Gladus,  
Heberhyn, Abalaghe, and Blandan : and<sup>10</sup> þise were þo<sup>10</sup> xxij  
24 douȝtres ; and þe breþerne bicom gode knyȝtes and worþi in meny  
contres.

Of þe<sup>11</sup> Kyng<sup>cr</sup> Brut Greneshal, þe ferste sone of Ebrac the<sup>12</sup>  
kyng.<sup>13</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octauo.

28 **A**fter' þe deth of Kyng<sup>cr</sup> Ebrac, regnede Brut Greneshal, his sone  
xxx 3er',<sup>14</sup> þat was<sup>15</sup> Ebrakes ferst sone,<sup>16</sup> þat wel and noblye  
regnede . and <sup>17</sup>when tyme come,<sup>17</sup> he deide, and ¶ liþ at ȝork'.

Of kyng Leyl. ¶ Capitulo. ¶ Nono.

32 **A**Nd when<sup>18</sup> Brut Greneshal was dede, regnede his sone  
Leil xxij 3ere ; and he made a faire toune, and lete calle it  
Karleil after his name, and was a worþi man, and miche bilouede

<sup>1</sup> Ebras D.    <sup>2</sup> and a DO.    <sup>3</sup> came O.    <sup>4</sup> þe D.    <sup>5-5</sup> om. DO.  
<sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 2, back.    <sup>8</sup> here after.    <sup>9-9</sup> om. D.    <sup>10</sup> þe D.  
<sup>11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12</sup> om. O.    <sup>13</sup> The 2 eldest sons are here put into 1.  
<sup>14</sup> 3er and D.    <sup>15</sup> om. D.    <sup>16</sup> sone was D.  
<sup>17-17</sup> when tyme come D.    þe tyme come O, when tyme R.  
<sup>18</sup> MS. when when

of his people, and when he hade regnede xxij [years]<sup>1</sup> he deide, and liþ at Karleil. ¶ And in his tyme renede Kyng Salamon in *Jerusalem*, þat made þe noble temple; and to him come to *Ierusalem*, Sibille, Quene of Saba, for-to hure and see if it were soþe þat 4 men spoken<sup>2</sup> of þe grete noble and<sup>3</sup> wisdome, and of<sup>4</sup> witte of Kyng<sup>5</sup> Salamon: and she founde it soth þat men hade here tolde.

**Of Kyng Lud Ludibras, þat was Kyng Leiles sone. ¶ Capitulo**  
**x<sup>mo</sup>.** 8

<sup>5</sup> **A**Nd<sup>6</sup> after<sup>7</sup> þis Kyng Leil, regnede his sone Lud Ludybras, þat made þe citee of Kaunterbery and of Wynchestre; and he regnede xiiij 3ere, and deide, and lith at Wynchestre.

**Of þe kyng<sup>7</sup> Bladuc,<sup>8</sup> þat was Ludybras sone, regnede,<sup>9</sup> and 12**  
**was a gode man and a nygromancer<sup>1</sup>. Capitulo xi<sup>mo</sup>.**

**A**Nd<sup>10</sup> after<sup>7</sup> þis Lud Ludebras, regnede Bladud his sone, a grete nigromancer<sup>1</sup>; and prouz his crafte of nigromancie he made þe meruailous hote bathe, as þe gest telleþ, & he regnede 16<sup>11</sup> xxj 3ere,<sup>11</sup> and he<sup>12</sup> lith at þe<sup>13</sup> newe Troye.

**Of<sup>14</sup> Kyng<sup>5</sup> Leir, and of þe ansuere of his 3ongest douȝter<sup>1</sup>, þat**  
**graciously was mariede to þe Kyng of Fraunce. C. xij.**

**A**fter<sup>7</sup> þis Kyng Bladud, regnede Leir<sup>1</sup> his sone; and þis Leir<sup>20</sup> made þe toune of Leycestre, and lete calle þe toune after his name; and he gouernede þe lande wel and [nobly]. ¶ þis kyng Leir<sup>1</sup> hade iij doughtres: þe first highte Gonorille, þe secunde Rigan, and þe þridde Cordeile; and þe 3ongest doughter<sup>1</sup> was 24 fairest<sup>1</sup> and best of<sup>1</sup> condiciouns. ¶ þe king<sup>1</sup> here fader<sup>1</sup> bicomē an olde man, and wolde þat his<sup>15</sup> doughtres were mariede or þat he deide. but first he þought<sup>1</sup> assaye whiche of ham<sup>16</sup> louede him most<sup>1</sup> and best<sup>1</sup>; for she þat louede him best shulde<sup>17</sup> best 28 bene<sup>18</sup> mariede. and he axede of þe first dought[er] how miche she<sup>19</sup> louede him<sup>19</sup>; and she ansuerede and saide, ‘bette þan here owen

<sup>1</sup> 3er D. 3eer O.    <sup>2</sup> spok D.    <sup>3</sup> and of D.    <sup>4</sup> of þe O.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 3.  
<sup>6</sup> *In the margin is this note, in an ancient hand: Lud Ludibras yt byldyd ca[n]terbery.*    <sup>7</sup> om. O.    <sup>8</sup> bladuc D. bladud O.    <sup>9</sup> regne D.  
<sup>10</sup> *In the margin, in an ancient hand: he mayd y<sup>e</sup> hoyt b[ath]. The edge of this page has evidently been cut off.*  
<sup>11—11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12</sup> om. D.    <sup>13</sup> om. DO.    <sup>14</sup> Of þe O.  
<sup>15</sup> his DO. here R.    <sup>16</sup> his douȝtres D.    <sup>17</sup> shul D.    <sup>18</sup> be DO.  
<sup>19—19</sup> him louede D, hym loued O.

lif.' "Now certes," quod<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>þe fader',<sup>2</sup> "þat is a<sup>3</sup> grete loue."  
 ¶ þo axede he of þe secunde doughter', how miche she him louede;  
 and she saide, 'more, and passing al þe creatures leuyng<sup>4</sup> of þe  
 4 worlde.' "ma foy,"<sup>5</sup> quod þe fader', "y may no more axen."  
 ¶ And þo axede he of þe priddre doughter', how miche she  
 him louede. "certes, fader'," <sup>6</sup>quod she, "my sustres haue tolde  
 3ow glosyng wordes; but for-soþe y shal tel 3ow<sup>7</sup> treuþ: for y  
 8 loue 3ow as miche as <sup>8</sup>me oweþ<sup>8</sup> to loue my fader; and<sup>9</sup> forto  
 bryng 3ow more in certeyne how loue goþ, I shal 3ow telle, for-as-  
 miche as 3e bene<sup>10</sup> worþe, as muche<sup>11</sup> shal 3e bene<sup>12</sup> louede." ¶ The  
 kyng here fader wende þat she hade scornede him, and bicomē  
 12 wonder wroth, and swore by heuen and erþe þat she shulde neuer  
 haue goode of him; but his douztres þat louede him so miche  
 shulde be wel anauncede and mariede. and þe ferste doughter  
 he mariede to Mangles, King of Scotlande; And þe secunde he  
 16 mariede to Hanemos, Erl of Cornewaile; and so<sup>13</sup> þai ordeynede  
 and speke<sup>14</sup> bituene ham þat þai shulde departe þe reaune bituene  
 ham too, after þe dep of Leir'<sup>15</sup> her' fader', ¶ So þat Cordeil his  
 3ongest doughter shulde noþing' haue of his lande. but þis Cordeil  
 20 was wonder' faire, and of so<sup>15</sup> goode condicions and maners, þat þe  
 Kyng of Fraunce, Agampe, <sup>16</sup>herde of here<sup>16</sup> speke, and sent to þe  
 Kyng Leir', he[r] fader', for to haue her' vnto wif, and prayede him  
 þerof. And Kyng' Leir here fader' sent him worde þat he hade  
 24 departede the lande <sup>17</sup>to his ij opere<sup>17</sup> douztres, and saide he  
 nade<sup>18</sup> no more lande wherwif <sup>19</sup>her' forto<sup>19</sup> marie.<sup>20</sup> ¶ And when  
 Agampe herde þis ansuere, he sent anone a3eyne to Leir', and  
 saide þat he axede noþing wif here, but oneliche<sup>21</sup> heir' cloping  
 28 and oneliche heir' body; and anone<sup>3</sup> Kyng' Leire here fader' sent  
 here ouer þe see to þe Kyng' of France; and he resceyuede here  
 wif michel<sup>22</sup> worship and wif <sup>23</sup>michel solempnite,<sup>23</sup> & made here  
 Quene of Fraunce.

<sup>1</sup> quod D.<sup>2-2</sup> he O.<sup>3</sup> om. D.<sup>4</sup> om. DO.<sup>5</sup> fey O.<sup>6</sup> leaf 3, back.<sup>7</sup> 3ow soth and D.<sup>8-8</sup> y owe D. I owe O.<sup>9</sup> MS. and and.<sup>10</sup> beth D. be O.<sup>11</sup> somiche D. so mych O.<sup>12</sup> be DO.<sup>13</sup> þo O.<sup>14</sup> spak D.<sup>15</sup> om. O.<sup>16-16</sup> Of her herde D.<sup>17-17</sup> vn-to his opere too O.<sup>18</sup> hade D. hadde O.<sup>19-19</sup> he miȝt her D.<sup>20</sup> maryen O<sup>21</sup> only O.<sup>22</sup> miche D. mych O.<sup>23-23</sup> miche solempnite her spousesed D. mych solempnyte her spousesed O.

How Kyng Leir<sup>1</sup> was dryuen out of his<sup>1</sup> lande prou<sup>3</sup> his owen<sup>2</sup> folye; and how Cordeil his 3ongest daughter halpe him in his nede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Terciodecimo.

<sup>3</sup> **T**Hus it bifel<sup>4</sup> afterwarde, þat þo ij eldest doughtren<sup>5</sup> wolde <sup>4</sup> nouȝt abide til þat Leir<sup>1</sup> here fader were<sup>6</sup> dede, but werrede oppon him whiles þat<sup>7</sup> he leuede, and miche sorwe and shame him dede; wherfore þai binome him holly þe reaume, and bituene ham hade ordeynede þat one of ham shulde haue Kyng Leir<sup>1</sup> to<sup>8</sup> sojourne <sup>8</sup> al his lif tyme, with xl knyȝtes and heir squyers, þat he might worshipfully gone<sup>9</sup> & ryde whider þat he wolde, <sup>10</sup>and into<sup>10</sup> what contre þat him likede, to playe and to solacen. ¶ So þat Managles Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Scotlande, hade Kyng<sup>1</sup> Leir<sup>1</sup> with him in þe maner þat<sup>11</sup> is <sup>12</sup> 12 aboue-saide,<sup>12</sup> and, or opere half ȝere were passede, Corneil his eldest douȝter, þat was Quene of Scotland, was so annoyed <sup>13</sup> wip him and wip<sup>13</sup> his peple, þat anone she and here lorde <sup>14</sup> spoken to-gederes,<sup>14</sup> wherfor his knyȝtes half,<sup>15</sup> and his squyers,<sup>16</sup> fram him were gone, <sup>16</sup> 16 and nomo lefte but oneliche xxx. And when<sup>15</sup> þis was done, Leire biganne forto<sup>17</sup> make miche sorwe, for enchesoun þat his state was enpeirede, and men hade of him more scorne and despite þan euer þai hade biforne; wherfore he nyst what forto<sup>18</sup> done; and at þe <sup>20</sup> last þouȝt þat he wolde wende into Cornewaile, to Rigan his opere doughter. ¶ And when he was comen,<sup>19</sup> þe erl and his wif, þat was Leires doughter, him welcomede, and with him made miche ioye; and þere he duelled with xxx knyȝtes and squyers. And he made<sup>20</sup> <sup>24</sup> 24 nought duelled with þere scarsly tuelf moneȝ, þat his doughter of him<sup>21</sup> nas ful, and of his company; and her lorde and she, of him hade scorne and despite, so þat fram<sup>22</sup> xxx knyȝtes<sup>7</sup> þai brouȝten vnto x, and afterwarde v; and so þere lefte wip him nomo. ¶ Þo <sup>28</sup> 28 made he<sup>15</sup> sorwe ynow, and<sup>23</sup> saide, sore wepyng, ‘allas þat euer he come into þat Lande!’ and saide, ‘ȝitte hade me bene bettere forto<sup>6</sup> haue duelled with my first doughter [and anon went þens aȝeyne to his first douȝter].’<sup>24</sup> But anone as she saw him come, <sup>32</sup> 32 she swore by God and<sup>25</sup> his holy names, and by as miche as she might, þat he shulde haue nomo wip him but one<sup>26</sup> knyȝt, if<sup>27</sup> he

<sup>1</sup> þis O.      <sup>2</sup> om. DO.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 4.      <sup>4</sup> fel DO.      <sup>5</sup> douȝters D.

<sup>6</sup> was D.      <sup>7</sup> om. D.      <sup>8</sup> forto D.      <sup>9</sup> go DO.

<sup>10-10</sup> in D. into O.      <sup>11</sup> as DO.      <sup>12</sup> above-yseyd O.

<sup>13-13</sup> of DO.      <sup>14-14</sup> spoken to-gidre O.      <sup>15</sup> om. O.

<sup>16</sup> Squyers half O.      <sup>17</sup> to O.      <sup>18</sup> to D.      <sup>19</sup> come O.

<sup>20</sup> hade D.      <sup>21</sup> his O.      <sup>22</sup> fro D.      <sup>23</sup> leaf 4, back.

<sup>24</sup> supplied from D.      <sup>25</sup> and by D. & by O.      <sup>26</sup> o DO.      <sup>27</sup> if þat O.

wolde þere<sup>1</sup> abide. ¶ þo bigan Leir<sup>2</sup> aȝeyn to<sup>2</sup> wepe, and made  
 muche sorwe, and saide þo : “allas ! now to longe haue y leuede, þat  
 þis sorwe and meschief is<sup>3</sup> now to me<sup>3</sup> falle ; for now<sup>4</sup> y am<sup>4</sup> poer<sup>4</sup>,  
 4 and<sup>5</sup> some tyme y<sup>2</sup> was ryche ; but now haue y no frende ne kyn  
 þat me wil do<sup>6</sup> eny maner<sup>6</sup> goode. ¶ But when<sup>7</sup> y was ryche, alle  
 men me honourede<sup>8</sup> and worsshepede<sup>8</sup> ; and now euery man hath  
 of me scorne and despite ! and now y wote wel þat Cordeil, my  
 8 ȝonge<sup>9</sup> doughter<sup>9</sup>, saide me treuþ when she suide ‘as michel<sup>10</sup> as y  
 hade, <sup>11</sup>so michel<sup>11</sup> shulde y<sup>12</sup> be louede’<sup>12</sup> ; and all þe while þat y  
 hade goode, þo was y belouede and honourede for my rychesse ; but  
 my ij doughtres me glosede þo, and now of me þai sette litel pris,  
 12 and soþ tolde me Cordeil, but y wolde nouȝt bileue it, ne vnder-  
 stonde, and perfore y lete here go<sup>13</sup> fro me as a þing þat y sette  
 litel pris of ; and now wote y neuer<sup>14</sup> what forto done, seþ my  
 ij doughtres haue me<sup>14</sup> þus desceyuede,<sup>15</sup> þat y so michel<sup>16</sup> louede ;  
 16 and now moste me<sup>17</sup> nedes seche<sup>18</sup> here þat is in an opere lande, þat  
 lightly y lete here go fro me without<sup>19</sup> eny reward<sup>19</sup> of ȝiftes ; and she  
 saide þat<sup>14</sup> ‘she louede me as miche as she outh<sup>20</sup> here fader<sup>20</sup>, bi al  
 maner resouñ’ ; and þo y shulde haue axede of here no more ; and  
 20 þo þat me opere-wise bihiȝten þrouȝ here faire<sup>21</sup> speche, now haue  
 me desceyuede !”

¶ In þis maner<sup>22</sup> Leir<sup>22</sup> longe tyme him bigan<sup>22</sup> to make his mone ;  
 and at þe last he shoope him to þe see, and passede ouer into  
 24 France, and axede and aspielde wher the Quene myȝt be founde ;  
 and men tolde where þat she was. <sup>23</sup>¶ And when he come to<sup>24</sup> þe  
 citee þat she was in, priueliche<sup>25</sup> he sent his Squyer<sup>26</sup> vnto þe quene,  
 to tel her<sup>27</sup> þat heir<sup>27</sup> fader<sup>27</sup> was comen<sup>27</sup> to<sup>28</sup> her<sup>27</sup> for grete nede. ¶ And  
 28 when þe squyer<sup>28</sup> come to<sup>28</sup> þe quene, he tolde her<sup>28</sup> euery dele of heir<sup>28</sup>  
 sustres fram þe bigynnyng vnto þe ende. ¶ Cordeil þe Quene  
 anone nome golde and siluer, grete plente, and toke it to<sup>28</sup> þe squyer<sup>28</sup>,  
 iñ conseile þat he shulde go and bere it vnto here fader<sup>28</sup>, and þat he  
 32 shulde go into a certeyn Citee, and him arreyen, baþen and wessen,

<sup>1</sup> om. O.      <sup>2</sup> om. DO.      <sup>3-3</sup> to me now DO.

<sup>4-4</sup> am y D.      am I O.      <sup>5</sup> pat O.      <sup>6</sup> done D.

<sup>7</sup> whan þat O.      <sup>8-8</sup> om. D.      <sup>9</sup> ȝongest D.

<sup>10</sup> as mich D.      as mych O.      <sup>11-11</sup> as miche D.      so mych O.

<sup>12-12</sup> bene bilouede D.      be belouyd O.      <sup>13</sup> go DO.

<sup>14</sup> om. D.      <sup>15</sup> destroyed D.      <sup>16</sup> miche D.      mych O.

<sup>17</sup> y O.      <sup>18</sup> sechen O.      <sup>19</sup> withouten D.

<sup>20</sup> ought D.      owt O.      <sup>21</sup> fals O.      <sup>22</sup> gan D.      <sup>23</sup> leaf 5.

<sup>24</sup> into D.      <sup>25</sup> priuely D.      pryuyly O.      <sup>26</sup> Squyer DO.      Squyers R.

<sup>27</sup> come O.      <sup>28</sup> vnto D.

and þan come <sup>1</sup>aʒeyne<sup>2</sup> to<sup>1</sup> her<sup>3</sup>, and bryng<sup>4</sup> with him an honest company of knyʒtes, xl. at þe leste, with here meny; and þenne he shulde<sup>5</sup> sende to<sup>4</sup> here lorde þe kyng<sup>6</sup>, and sayen þat he <sup>5</sup>was comen<sup>5</sup> forto speke with his douʒter<sup>7</sup>, and him to<sup>6</sup> seene. ¶ And when þe <sup>4</sup>kyng and þe quene <sup>7</sup>herde þat,<sup>7</sup> wiþ michel<sup>8</sup> honour <sup>9</sup>þai comen,<sup>9</sup> and him resceynede.<sup>10</sup> þe kyng of Fraunce<sup>11</sup> lete sende þo<sup>12</sup> þrouʒ al his reaume, and commandede þat alle men <sup>13</sup>to him shulde<sup>13</sup> bene<sup>14</sup> entendaunt, to Leire, þe Quenes fader, in al<sup>15</sup> maner þing<sup>15</sup> as it were <sup>8</sup>to him-self. ¶ when Leir hade duelleded þere a monþe and more, he tolde to<sup>16</sup> þe kyng and to þe Quene his doughter<sup>17</sup>, how his ij<sup>17</sup> eldeste douʒtres hade him seruēde. ¶ Agampe anone lete ordeyne a grete hoste of Fraunce, and sent it into Britaigne with Leir<sup>18</sup>, þe <sup>12</sup>Quenes fader<sup>18</sup>, forto conquere his lande aʒeyne, and his kyngdome; and Cordeil also come with her<sup>18</sup> fader into Britaigne, forto haue þe reaume after her fadres deth. And anon þai went to shippe, and passede þe see, and come into Britaigne, and fauʒt<sup>19</sup> wiþ þe felons, <sup>16</sup>and ham scomfitede<sup>20</sup> & quellede. And Leir<sup>21</sup> þo hade his lande aʒeyne, and after leuede iij ʒere, and helde<sup>21</sup> his reaume in pees, and afterwarde deide; & Cordeil his doughter him lete entere wiþ michel<sup>22</sup> honour at Leycestre.

**<sup>23</sup>How Morgan and Conenedag<sup>24</sup> þat were Neueus to Cordeil, werrede oppon here, and put here into prison. C. xiiij.**

**W**hen þat Kyng Leir<sup>25</sup> was dede, Cordeil his ʒongest douʒtre helde and hade þe lande v ʒere; and in þe mene tyme <sup>24</sup>deide here Lorde Agamp, þat was Kyng of Fraunce; and after his deth she lefte<sup>25</sup> widue. ¶ And þo come Morgan and Conenedag<sup>26</sup>, þat were Cordeiles sustres sones, and to here hade enuy, for-asnliche þat<sup>26</sup> her aunt shulde haue þe lande; so þat bituene ham þai <sup>28</sup>ordeynede a grete power<sup>27</sup>, and vppoñ here werrede gretlich; and

<sup>1-1</sup> vnto D. <sup>2</sup> After aʒeyne MS. has with he underlined for erasure.

<sup>3</sup> shal D. <sup>4</sup> vn-to O. <sup>5-5</sup> wer come O. <sup>6</sup> & O.

<sup>7-7</sup> harde tel þat he come D. herd þat he come O.

<sup>8</sup> mych O. <sup>9-9</sup> om. DO.

<sup>10</sup> resceynede wiþ michel honour D. receyued with mych honour O.

<sup>11</sup> ffrance þo D. france þo O. <sup>12</sup> om. DO.

<sup>13-13</sup> shulde to hym O. <sup>14</sup> be D. <sup>15</sup> MS. al al.

<sup>16</sup> om. O. <sup>17</sup> tweyne O. <sup>18</sup> her O. him R.

<sup>19</sup> fouʒten D. foughtyn O. <sup>20</sup> descomfitede D.

<sup>21</sup> hade D. <sup>22</sup> myche O. <sup>23</sup> leaf 5, back.

<sup>24</sup> Conedag throughout DO. <sup>25</sup> lyued O. <sup>26</sup> as DO.



neuer<sup>1</sup> þai rest<sup>1</sup> til þat þai hade here taken,<sup>2</sup> and put her<sup>3</sup> vnto deth.<sup>3</sup> ¶ And þo Morgan and Conenedag<sup>4</sup> seisede al þe lande, and departede<sup>4</sup> bituene ham, and þai helde it xij zere. ¶ And <sup>5</sup>when the<sup>5</sup> xij zere were gone,<sup>6</sup> þere bigon bituene ham a grete debate, so þat þai werrede strongely in-fere,<sup>7</sup> and eueryche<sup>8</sup> of ham dede opere miche disese, ffor Morgan wolde haue hade alle þe lande fram<sup>9</sup> biþende Humber<sup>9</sup>, þat Conedag<sup>4</sup> helde; but he come aþeynes him with a strong<sup>4</sup> power<sup>9</sup>, so þat Morgan derst nouzt abide, but fley away into Walys; and Conenedag pursuede him, and toke him, and quelde him. ¶ þo come Conenedag aþeyne, and seisede al þe lande into his hande, and helde hit, and regnede after<sup>9</sup>, xxxij<sup>10</sup> zere, and þo deide, and liþ at New Troye.

<sup>11</sup>Of Rynallo,<sup>11</sup> þat was Conedag<sup>us</sup> sone: <sup>12</sup>how he<sup>12</sup> regnede after<sup>9</sup> his fader<sup>9</sup>; and in his tyme it raynede bloode iij daies, in <sup>13</sup>tokenyng of gret<sup>13</sup> deth. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinto-desimo.

<sup>14</sup>And after<sup>9</sup> þis Conenedag,<sup>14</sup> regnede Rynallo<sup>15</sup> his sone, an<sup>16</sup> Wise knyzt, and an<sup>17</sup> hardy and<sup>18</sup> curteise, þat wel and nobly gouernede þe lande, and wonder<sup>9</sup> wel made him bi<sup>19</sup>louede of al <sup>20</sup>maner<sup>9</sup> folc. and in his tyme it raynede bloode þat lastede<sup>20</sup> iij dayes, as God<sup>4</sup> wolde; and sone after<sup>9</sup> þere come a<sup>21</sup> gret deth of peple, for hostes with-out noumbre of peple fouzten til þat þai were dede, Wherof no man myzt ham lette til þat almyzty God<sup>4</sup> þerof <sup>24</sup>tok mercy and pitee; and tho gan it cesse. and þis Raynolde regnede xxij zere, & deide, & ¶ liþ at þork.

How Gorbodian regnede in pees, þat was Rynallo<sup>22</sup> sone; and after, he<sup>23</sup> deide, and liþ at þork<sup>4</sup> C. xvj<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>28</sup>After þis Ryuallo,<sup>24</sup> regnede Gorbodyan<sup>25</sup> his sone xv zere, and deide and lith at þork<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>1-1</sup> rest neuer D. þey restyd O. <sup>2</sup> take D.

<sup>3-3</sup> into prisoun deth D. to deth O. <sup>4</sup> partede it D.

<sup>5-5</sup> when þo D. þo O. <sup>6</sup> ygone D. <sup>7</sup> y-fere O. <sup>8</sup> eche O.

<sup>9</sup> fro D. <sup>10</sup> xxx D. <sup>11-11</sup> How Raynolde D. How regnold O.

<sup>12-12</sup> om. DO. <sup>13-13</sup> tokene of O.

<sup>14</sup> Raynolde in error for Conedag D. <sup>15</sup> Reynolde D. Regnold<sup>4</sup> O.

<sup>16</sup> a DO. <sup>17</sup> a D. <sup>18</sup> and a D. <sup>19</sup> leaf 6.

<sup>20</sup> last O. <sup>21</sup> om. O. <sup>22</sup> Raynaldes D. reynoldes O. <sup>23</sup> om. O.

<sup>24</sup> Raynolde D. Regnold<sup>4</sup> O. <sup>25</sup> Gordobodian D.

How Gorbodian<sup>1</sup> hade ij sones, & how<sup>2</sup> þat on slough þat opere, forto haue þe heritage; & how Ydoyne her<sup>3</sup> moder quellede þat opere, wherfore þe lande was destroyede. ¶ Capitulo ¶ xvij<sup>mo</sup>.

4

When þis Gorbodian<sup>1</sup> was dede, <sup>3</sup>his ij sones<sup>3</sup> þat he hade, bi come<sup>4</sup> stoute men<sup>5</sup> and proude, & euer<sup>6</sup> werrede to-geder<sup>7</sup> for þe lande: þat one, men<sup>6</sup> called Ferre<sup>3</sup>,<sup>7</sup> and þat opere Porrex; and þis Ferre<sup>3</sup> wolde haue hade al the lande, but þat opere wolde nouzt<sup>8</sup> suffren<sup>8</sup> him. Ferre<sup>3</sup> hade a felounes hert<sup>9</sup>, and þouzt þrouz tresoun<sup>5</sup> slee his broþere; but priuely<sup>9</sup> he went into Fraunce, and þere abode with þe <sup>10</sup>kyng Syward<sup>10</sup> til oppon a tyme þat he come azeine, and fauzt wip his broþer Ferre<sup>3</sup><sup>11</sup>; but ful euel it hapede þo, for he was <sup>12</sup>slayn ferst. ¶ When Ydoyne, here<sup>12</sup> moder, wist þat Porrex was dede, she made grete sorwe, for enchesoun þat she louede him more þan <sup>13</sup>þat opere,<sup>13</sup> and þouzt him forto<sup>14</sup> quelle. priuely<sup>15</sup> she come to here sone oppon a nyzt wip ij knyfes, and þerwip cotte his þrote, <sup>16</sup>and þe body also into smale pecis. Who herde euer<sup>2</sup> soche a cursede moder<sup>1</sup>, þat quellede with here <sup>16</sup>owen hondes here owen sone! and Longe tyme after<sup>17</sup> Laste þe reprove<sup>17</sup> & shame to þe moder<sup>1</sup> þat, for enchesoun of þat o sone. mordrede þat opere, and so loste ham <sup>20</sup>bothe.

How iiij kynges curteisely<sup>18</sup> helde al Britaigne; and whiche beth<sup>19</sup> here names. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octodesimo.

When þise ij breþerne were so dede, þai made Lefte bihynde <sup>24</sup>ham noo<sup>20</sup> sone ne doughter<sup>1</sup>, ne none opere of þe kynrede þat might haue þe heritage. &<sup>21</sup> for-asmiche as þe strongest men dryuen and descomfitede<sup>22</sup> þe feblest<sup>1</sup>, and token<sup>23</sup> al here landes, so þat in euery contre þai hade grete werre and stryfe. ¶ But amonge<sup>24</sup> <sup>28</sup>alle opere þinges, þere were amonges ham in þe contre þat ouercome<sup>25</sup> alle þe<sup>26</sup> opere; and þrouz heir<sup>1</sup> strengþ and<sup>27</sup> myzt þai nomen and token<sup>28</sup> al þe landes; and eueryche<sup>29</sup> of ham tok a certeyne contre; and in his contre lete calle him kyng<sup>1</sup>. ¶ And on of ham, men<sup>30</sup> <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Gordobodian D. <sup>2</sup> om. O.

<sup>3-3</sup> *Written twice in MS. and struck out the second time.*

<sup>4</sup> bycomen so O. <sup>5</sup> om. D. <sup>6</sup> me D. <sup>7</sup> Ferre<sup>3</sup> DO.

<sup>8</sup> suffre DO. <sup>9</sup> priuelicche D. <sup>10-10</sup> kynges Styward<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>11</sup> Porre<sup>3</sup> O. <sup>12</sup> his D. <sup>13-13</sup> þe tofer O. <sup>14</sup> for O.

<sup>15</sup> priuely and priuely D. prynyly And priuily O. <sup>16</sup> leaf 6, back.

<sup>17</sup> repref<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>18</sup> curteisliche D. <sup>19</sup> ben O. <sup>20</sup> neyþere D. nother O.

<sup>21</sup> and for and D. <sup>22</sup> Seomfitede D. seomfited<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>23</sup> toke D.

<sup>24</sup> amonges D. <sup>25</sup> ouercomen O. <sup>26</sup> þo D. <sup>27</sup> and here D. her O.

<sup>28</sup> tok D. <sup>29</sup> eche O. <sup>30</sup> me DO.

called Stater<sup>1</sup>; and he was Kyng<sup>t</sup> of Scotland; and þat opere me  
 callede Dunwal,<sup>2</sup> and he was Kyng<sup>t</sup> of Loegers, and of alle þe  
 landes<sup>3</sup> þat was Lotrynes, <sup>4</sup> Brutes sone.<sup>4</sup> ¶ Þe þridde, men<sup>5</sup> callede  
 4 Rudak<sup>t</sup>, and he was Kyng of Walys; and þe iii<sup>j</sup><sup>e</sup> me callede Cloten,  
 and he was Kyng<sup>t</sup> of Cornewaile. ¶ But þis Cloten shulde haue  
 hade al þe lande, he<sup>6</sup> resoun for þere was no man þat wist none so  
 ryȝthful heire<sup>7</sup> as he was; but þo<sup>8</sup> þat were strongest sette litel by  
 8 ham þat were of lasse estate, and þerfor þis Cloten hade no more  
 lande amonges ham þan onliche<sup>9</sup> ¶ Cornewaile.

**Of Kyng Donewall,<sup>10</sup> þat was Cloteneȝ sone, and how he hade  
 wonne þe lande. ¶ Capitulo xix<sup>o</sup>.**

12 **T**His Cloten hade a sone þat me clepede<sup>11</sup> Donewal, þat, after þe  
 deth of his fader<sup>t</sup>, bicom an hardy man, and a faire and a  
 curteise, so þat he passede alle þe kynges of Britaigne of fairenesse  
 and of worþinesse. ¶ And<sup>12</sup> as he was knyght, he <sup>13</sup> Wiste wel<sup>14</sup>  
 16 when his fader<sup>t</sup> leuede<sup>15</sup> he was moste ryghtful heire of al<sup>7</sup> þe lande,  
 and shulde haue hade it by resoun; but opere kynges þat were of  
 more strengþ þan he, binome him<sup>16</sup> his lande. ¶ And afterwarde þis  
 Donebande ordeynede him powere, and ferst conquerede al þe lande  
 20 of Loegers; and after<sup>17</sup> he wolde haue conquerede al<sup>7</sup> Scotland  
 and Walys; and Stater<sup>18</sup> wip his men come, and ȝaf him<sup>19</sup> bataile;  
 and Rudak come aȝeyne wip his Walshemen forto helpe him; But  
 so it bifel þat Rudak<sup>t</sup> was slayn,<sup>20</sup> and Skater<sup>t</sup> also, in pleyne bataile;  
 24 and so Donewal hade þe victorie, and conquerede al þe lande, and<sup>21</sup>  
 wel mayntenede it in pees and<sup>22</sup> quyete, þat neuer<sup>t</sup> bifore it was so  
 wel mayntenede.

**How Donewal was þe ferst kyng þat euere Werede crone of<sup>t</sup>  
 28 golde in Britaigne. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo.**

**T**His<sup>23</sup> Donewal lete<sup>24</sup> make him<sup>24</sup> a crone of golde, and werede  
 þe crowne oppon his heuede, as neuer<sup>t</sup> kyng dede bifore; and  
 he ordeynede a statute þat, <sup>25</sup> hade a man done<sup>25</sup> neuer so miche

<sup>1</sup> Scater D. Skater O. <sup>2</sup> Dawallier DO. <sup>3</sup> lande D. land O.

<sup>4-4</sup> that was Bruteȝ sones D. þat was Brutes sones O.

<sup>5</sup> me DO. <sup>6</sup> by DO. <sup>7</sup> om. D. <sup>8</sup> þai D. þei O. <sup>9</sup> only O.

<sup>10</sup> Donebande throughout DO. <sup>11</sup> callede D. called<sup>t</sup> O.

<sup>12</sup> And anon DO. <sup>13</sup> leaf 7. <sup>14</sup> wel þat O. <sup>15</sup> leuede þat D.

<sup>16</sup> om. O. <sup>17</sup> aftyrward O. <sup>18</sup> Skater DO.

<sup>19</sup> ham D. <sup>20</sup> quelled D. quel<sup>t</sup> O. <sup>21</sup> and þo D. <sup>22</sup> & in D.

<sup>23</sup> In the margin is written by an ancient hand: Donwall we . . . y<sup>e</sup> first  
 crowne . . . ordeyned y<sup>e</sup> temp[le] a savgard for m . . . The edge of the page has  
 been cut away. <sup>24-24</sup> hym done make O. <sup>25-25</sup> a man do O.

harne, and he might come into þe temple, þere<sup>1</sup> shulde no man him misdo, but gone<sup>2</sup> þerin sauf and in pees, and afre gone<sup>2</sup> into what contre þat he wolde, withouten<sup>3</sup> eny harne; and if eny man sette hande oppoñ<sup>4</sup> him, he þan shulde lese his lif. ¶ And þis Donewal<sup>4</sup> made þe toune of Malmesbury, and þe toune of þe Vise; & when he hade regnede wel and nobly<sup>5</sup> .xl. ȝere, he deide, & liþ at newe Troye.

**How Brenne and Belyn departede bituene ham þe lande, after<sup>8</sup> 8  
þe deth of Donewal, hir<sup>9</sup> fader<sup>9</sup>; & of þe werre. Capitulo  
xxj<sup>o</sup>.**

**A**Nd after<sup>9</sup> þat þis Donewal was [dede],<sup>6</sup> his sones þat he hade, departede þe lande bituene ham as her<sup>9</sup> fader hade ordeynede; 12 so þat Belyn, his eldest sone, hade al the lande<sup>7</sup> a þis halfe Humber, and his broþer<sup>8</sup> Brenne hade al <sup>a</sup>þe lande fram Humber<sup>9</sup> vnto<sup>10</sup> Scotland; but for-asmich as<sup>11</sup> Belyn hade þe better<sup>9</sup> parte, Brenne þerfor wax wroþ, and wolde haue hade more of þe lande; and 16 Belyn his broþer wolde graunt him nomore; Wherfor contak and werre aroos bituene<sup>12</sup> ham ij. But Brenne þe ȝonger broþer hade no myzte ne strengþ aȝeyn<sup>3</sup> Belyn; and þerfor Brenne, þrouȝ conseil of his fole, went fram<sup>13</sup> þens into Norway, to þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> Elsinges, and 20 prayede him of helpe and of socoure forto conquere al þe lande<sup>14</sup> of Britayn<sup>14</sup> vppon Belyn his broþer, oppoñ þat couenaunt, þat he wolde haue his douȝter to wyf; and þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> Elsinges<sup>15</sup> him grauntede. ¶ Belyn, anone as his broþer was gone to<sup>16</sup> Norway, he 24 seisede into his hande al þe lande of Northumberland, and toke al þe castelles,<sup>17</sup> and lete ham arraie, and also kepe þe costes of þe see, þat Brenne shulde nouȝt arryue in no side but þat he were take. ¶ The Kyng Elsinges lete assemble a grete hoste, and delyuerede 28 his doughter<sup>9</sup> to Brenne, and alle þe peple þat he hade ordeynede. And þis damisel, Samye, hade longe tyme louede a kyng<sup>4</sup> þat me callede Gutlag<sup>18</sup>; and to him she tolde al here counseil, how þat Brenne shulde here haue, and here lede wiþ him for euermore, and 32 so he<sup>19</sup> shulde her lese, but if þat she myȝt forsake Brenne. ¶ And

<sup>1</sup> om. DO.<sup>2</sup> go D.<sup>3</sup> with-oute O.<sup>4</sup> on D.<sup>5</sup> worthelye D. worthyly O.<sup>6</sup> dede DO.

om. R.

<sup>7</sup> lande of brytayn D. land of Britaigne O.<sup>8</sup> om. O.<sup>9</sup> leaf 7, back.<sup>10</sup> into D.<sup>11</sup> þat O.<sup>12</sup> bituenes D.<sup>13</sup> fro DO.<sup>14—14</sup> om. DO.<sup>15</sup> Elsyng<sup>4</sup> O.<sup>16</sup> vnto D.<sup>17</sup> casteH O.<sup>18</sup> Gutlaghen D.<sup>19</sup> corrected from ȝe in MS.

when Gutlagh herde þise tydynges,<sup>1</sup> he lay forto asprie Brenne, wip  
 also<sup>2</sup> meny shippes as he myzt haue, so þat þo<sup>3</sup> ij fletes <sup>4</sup>metten  
 to-gederes,<sup>4</sup> and longe tyme foughten, so þat Brenne and his shippes  
 4 turnede azeine, and were descomfitede; and Kyng Gutlagh toke  
 Samye, and put here into<sup>5</sup> shippe, and Brenne shamefully fleye<sup>6</sup>  
 þens as a man descomfitede. ¶ And Gutlagh wolde haue went into  
 his<sup>7</sup> countree; but þere come oppoñ <sup>8</sup>him a stronge tempest, þat .v.  
 8 dayes Laste, so þat þrouz þat tempest he was dryuen into Britaigne  
 with iij shippes, and wip no mo. and þo þat keppe<sup>9</sup> þe costes of  
 þe see token Gutlagh and Samye, and alle his folc, and ham pre-  
 sentede vnto<sup>10</sup> Belyn, and he<sup>3</sup> put ham into<sup>11</sup> prision.

12 **How Belyn<sup>12</sup> delyuerede<sup>13</sup> out of þis lande Kyng Gutlagh of  
 Dennemarc, and Samye. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Secundo.**

**H**It<sup>14</sup> was nouzt longe after<sup>1</sup>, þat Brenne ne come azeine with a  
<sup>15</sup>stronge meny,<sup>15</sup> and sent to his broþer Belyn, þat he shulde  
 16 zelde azeine his lande to his wif and to his folc, & his castelles<sup>16</sup>  
 also, or elles he wolde destroye his lande. Belyn drade no þing  
 his<sup>17</sup> manace, and wolde no þing done<sup>18</sup> after þat he saide. Where-  
 fore Brenne come with his folc, and fauht with him<sup>19</sup>; and Brenne  
 20 was descomfitede, and his folc slayne, and him-self fleede wip xij  
 men into Fraunce. ¶ And þis Belyn, þat was Brennes broþer,  
 went <sup>20</sup>þen vnto<sup>20</sup> 3ork, and toke<sup>21</sup> counseil what he myzt done,<sup>22</sup>  
 wip Kyng Gutlagh; for Kyng<sup>1</sup> Gutlagh proferede <sup>23</sup>to bicomē<sup>23</sup> his  
 24 man, and to holde his lande of him, zeldyng by 3ere <sup>24</sup>Mt ti of siluer<sup>24</sup>  
 for euer<sup>1</sup>-more; and for sikernesse of þis couenaunt<sup>1</sup> to bene holde,  
 Gutlaghe shulde bryng him gode hostages, and to him shulde done  
 homage, and al his folc, and 3itte he<sup>3</sup> shulde suere oppon the book<sup>1</sup>  
 28 þat þise couenauntes shulde <sup>25</sup>nouzt bene broken<sup>25</sup> ne falsede.  
 ¶ Belyn þo, by counseil of his folc, grantede him his axing<sup>1</sup>; and so  
 Gutlagh bicomē his man; and Belyn vnderfonge of him his homage  
 by othe, and by wrytyng<sup>1</sup> þe same couenauntz. ¶ And oppoñ

<sup>1</sup> tydyng<sup>1</sup> D. tydyng O. <sup>2</sup> as DO. <sup>3</sup> om. O.

<sup>4-4</sup> mettes to-geder D. mettyn to-gidere O. <sup>5</sup> in-to his O. <sup>6</sup> fly O.

<sup>7</sup> his owen D. his owne O. <sup>8</sup> leaf 8. <sup>9</sup> kepten O. <sup>10</sup> to O.

<sup>11</sup> om. D. in O. <sup>12</sup> Brenne O. <sup>13</sup> drof DO. <sup>14</sup> Syt sic O.

<sup>15-15</sup> grete nauye D. gret meyne O. <sup>16</sup> casteñ DO.

<sup>17</sup> his malyce ne his O. <sup>18</sup> do D. <sup>19</sup> Belyn D. hym Belyn O.

<sup>20-20</sup> þo to DO. <sup>21</sup> nome DO. <sup>22</sup> do O.

<sup>23-23</sup> Gutlagh forto ben D. <sup>24-24</sup> a M<sup>t</sup> pound<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>25-25</sup> neuer be broke D. neuere be brokyn O.

<sup>1</sup>pis Couenant<sup>1</sup> King<sup>r</sup> Gutlagh tok<sup>2</sup> Samye and his folc, and went pennes, and turnede azeyn <sup>3</sup>to Dennemarc. ¶ Euermore after<sup>r</sup> were the couenauntes Halden, and þe truage paiede, til þe tyme þat Hauelok was Kyng of Denmare, and also of þis lande, þrouz his wif <sup>4</sup>Gildeburchie, þat he hade spousesede, for she was þe ryzt heire of þis lande. ¶ þis Belyn duelledede þo in pees, and worshepliche<sup>4</sup> him helde amonges<sup>5</sup> his barons; and he made iiij real waies, one fram<sup>6</sup> þe Est into<sup>7</sup> West, and þat was callede Watlyngstrete; and anoþere <sup>8</sup>fram<sup>6</sup> þe North into þe South, þat was callede Ikenyle strete; and ij opere waies he made in bossinge þrouz-oute the lande: þat one is callede Fosse, and þat opere Fossedik; and he mayntenede wel þe gode Lawes þat Doneband<sup>r</sup> his fader<sup>r</sup> hade made and ordeynede in <sup>12</sup>his tyme, as bifore is saide.

How accorde was made bituene Brenne and Belyn, through  
Cornewenne, hire moder<sup>r</sup>. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Tercio.

**B**Renne, that was Belynes<sup>8</sup> broþer, hade longe tyme duelledede in <sup>16</sup>Fraunce, and þere hade conquerede a grete lordeship þrouz marriage, for he was Due of Burgoyne þrouz þe douzter of þe<sup>9</sup> due Fewyn þat he hade spousesede, þat was right heire of þe lande. and þis Brenne ordeynede a grete power<sup>r</sup> of his folc and also of Fraunce, <sup>20</sup>and come into þis lande forto feight with Belyn his broþer. and Belyn come azeynes him with a stronge powere of Britons, and þo wolde haue zeue<sup>10</sup> him bataile; but heir<sup>r</sup> moder<sup>r</sup> Cornewenne, þat tho Leuede,<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>herde þat<sup>12</sup> þe o<sup>13</sup> broþer wolde <sup>14</sup>haue destroyedede<sup>14</sup> þat <sup>24</sup>opere, and went bituene here sones, and <sup>15</sup>ham made<sup>15</sup> accordede wip miche peyne; so þat at þe laste, þo ij breþerne, with miche<sup>16</sup> blisse, went to-geder<sup>r</sup> into newe<sup>17</sup> Troye, þat now is callede London, and þere þai duelledede al a zere; and after, þai toke<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup>Heire conseile <sup>28</sup>for to go conquere al Fraunce; and so thai deden,<sup>20</sup> & brent tounes, and destroyedede al<sup>21</sup> þe lande boþe in lengþ and in Brede. and þe Kyng of Fraunce zaf ham bataile wip his powere; but he was ouercomen,<sup>22</sup> and zaf truage vnto<sup>23</sup> Belyn and to his broþer. ¶ And <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> pis couenauntes D. these couenauntes O. <sup>2</sup> nome DO.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 8, back. <sup>4</sup> worshipfullich D. warschipfully O.

<sup>5</sup> amonge D. Among O. <sup>6</sup> fro O. <sup>7</sup> into þe DO.

<sup>8</sup> Belyn his O. <sup>9</sup> om O. <sup>10</sup> zeuen O.

<sup>11</sup> leuede hade D. lyved<sup>r</sup> had O. <sup>12-12</sup> MS. herde þat herde þat.

<sup>13</sup> to O. <sup>14-14</sup> destroye D. dystroye O. <sup>15-15</sup> made hem O.

<sup>16</sup> nichel D. <sup>17</sup> grete D. gret O. <sup>18</sup> nome DO. <sup>19</sup> leaf 9.

<sup>20</sup> dede O. <sup>21</sup> om. DO. <sup>22</sup> ouercome DO. <sup>23</sup> to DO.

after<sup>1</sup> þat, þai<sup>1</sup> went forþe<sup>1</sup> to Rome, and conquerede Rome, and al  
Lumbardy and Germaine, and toke homages and feautees of <sup>2</sup>þe  
fole of þe Erles,<sup>2</sup> barons, and<sup>3</sup> alle opere; and after<sup>1</sup>, þai comen<sup>4</sup>  
4 into þis lande of Britaigne, and duelled with here Britounes in  
ioye and reste. and þo made Brenne þe toune of Bristow; and siþ  
he went ouer<sup>5</sup> þe<sup>5</sup> see into his owen lordeshippe, and þere duelled  
al his lif. and Belyn duelled atte Newe Troye; and þere he made  
8 a faire gate þat is clepede<sup>6</sup> Billyngesgate, after<sup>1</sup> his owen name. and  
when þis Belyn hade regnede noble<sup>7</sup> xj 3ere,<sup>8</sup> he deide, & ¶ liþ at  
newe Troye.

How Kyng Corinbatrus quellede þe Kyng of Dennemarc, for  
12 enchesoun þat he wolde nouȝt paye him his truage.  
¶ *Capitulo xxiiij<sup>to</sup>.*

And after<sup>1</sup> þis Belyn, regnede his sone Corinbatrus, a gode man  
and <sup>9</sup>a worþi. and<sup>9</sup> þe Kyng of Denmare wolde nouȝt paye  
16 him his truage, þat is to seyn, <sup>10</sup>M<sup>1</sup> ti,<sup>10</sup> as he <sup>11</sup>hade sworne<sup>11</sup> by  
oth forto paye hit, and also be writyng <sup>12</sup>of<sup>12</sup> recorde,<sup>12</sup> to Belyn his  
fader<sup>1</sup>. wherfore he was euel<sup>13</sup> paiede and wroþ, and assemblede a  
grete hoste of Britons, and went into Dennemarc and slough þe  
20 Kyng Gitelagh, and brouȝt þe lande in subieccioun al new, and toke  
of fole feautees and homages, and after went aȝeyne into his lande.  
¶ And as he come forthe bi Orkeneye, he fonde xxx shippes ful of  
men and of wymmen, bisides þe coste<sup>14</sup> of þe see, and þe kyng  
24 axede what þai were.<sup>15</sup> an Erl, that was maistre of ham<sup>16</sup> alle,  
curteisely ansuerede vnto the kyng, and saide þat þai were exiled  
oute of Spaygne,<sup>17</sup> and so þai hade trauailede half<sup>18</sup> 3ere and more  
in þe see, to weten<sup>19</sup> if þai myȝt fynde eny kyng, or<sup>20</sup> eny lorde,<sup>21</sup>  
28 þat of ham wolde haue pitee or mercy, to 3eue ham eny lande in  
eny contre wherin þai might duelle and haue reste, and bi come his  
liege men, and to him wolde done<sup>22</sup> homage and feautees<sup>23</sup> whiles  
þat he leuede, and to his heires after<sup>1</sup> him, and of him and of his  
32 heires holde<sup>24</sup> þat londe <sup>25</sup>for euermore.<sup>25</sup> ¶ And when þe kyng þis

<sup>1-1</sup> wenten boþe D.<sup>2-2</sup> Erles and D. erls O.<sup>3</sup> and of DO. <sup>4</sup> come O. <sup>5</sup> þer O. <sup>6</sup> callede D. called O.<sup>7</sup> nobli D. nobly O.<sup>8</sup> 3er and iiij monȝes D. 3eer & iiij monethes O. <sup>9-9</sup> worthi D.<sup>10-10</sup> a M<sup>1</sup> pound O. <sup>11-11</sup> swore O. <sup>12-12</sup> reoordede D. recorded O.<sup>13</sup> ylle O. <sup>14</sup> costes O. <sup>15</sup> were And O. <sup>16</sup> them O.<sup>17</sup> leaf 9, back. <sup>18</sup> half a O. <sup>19</sup> wete O. <sup>20</sup> in O. <sup>21</sup> lande O.<sup>22</sup> do D. <sup>23</sup> feaute DO. <sup>24</sup> holden DO. <sup>25-25</sup> om. DO.

herde, he hade pite of ham, and ȝaf ham an Ile al wilderness, þere þat noman was duellyng, saf oneliche<sup>1</sup> wilde bestes. and þe Erl þankede miche þe kyng, and bicom his man, and dede him feaute and homage, and tok<sup>2</sup> alle his fole, and went into þe same 4 Ile. and þe Erl<sup>3</sup> me callede Irlanyal; and þerfore<sup>4</sup> he lete calle þe lande Irlande, after his owen name. ¶ The kyng þo, Corinbatrus, come aȝeyne into þis Lande, and regnede xxv ȝere; & after, he deide, and liþ at newe ¶ Troye. 8

**How þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> Guentolen regnede in godenesse,<sup>5</sup> & wel gouernede þe lande al his lifyme.<sup>6</sup> ¶ Capitulo vicesimo Quinto.**

**A**Nd when Corinbatrus was dede, regnede Guentolen his sone, a man of goode condiciouns, and wel bilouede; and he 12 gouernede þe lande wel and wiseliche,<sup>7</sup> and he regnede xxvj ȝere, and after, deide, and lith at newe Troye.

**How Kyng Seisel regnede, and wel gouernede þe lande after Guentolen. ¶ Capitulo xxvj<sup>to</sup>.** 16

**A**Nd after þis<sup>4</sup> Guentolen, regnede his sone Seisel wel and worþely, and wel gouernede þe lande as his fader had done biforne him; and he regnede xv ȝere, and after,<sup>8</sup> deide, and lith at newe Troye. 20

**How Kymore regnede after Seisel his fader; and he bigate Howan, þat<sup>9</sup> regnede after him.<sup>8</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Septimo.**

**A**Nd after þis<sup>8</sup> Seisel, regnede his sone Kymor wel and nobly<sup>10</sup> 24 xix ȝere in pees; and Howan his sone x ȝere, and deide, and liþ at Herbaldoun.

**How Kyng<sup>4</sup> Morwith deide prouȝ meschaunce, prouȝ<sup>11</sup> a beste for his wickednesse. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo ¶ Octauo.** 28

**A**Nd<sup>8</sup> after þis Howan, regnede Morwith; and he<sup>4</sup> bicom wicked, and so sterne, til at þe laste, grete vengeance come to him; for as he went on<sup>12</sup> a tyme bi þe seeside,<sup>13</sup> he mette a grete

<sup>1</sup> only O.      <sup>2</sup> nome DO.      <sup>3</sup> kyng O.      <sup>4</sup> om. O.      <sup>5</sup> pees O.  
<sup>6</sup> lyf O.      <sup>7</sup> wysely O.      <sup>8</sup> om. DO.      <sup>9</sup> leaf 10.  
<sup>10</sup> nobliche D.      noblich O.      <sup>11</sup> of O.      <sup>12</sup> vppon D.      vpon O.  
<sup>13</sup> syde O.



beste, þat was blac, and horrible and hidouse; and he wende þat it had bene a whale of þe see, and bent an Arweblast,<sup>1</sup> and wolde haue slayne þat<sup>2</sup> best wiþ a quareH; but he miȝt nouȝt smyte hit. 4 and when he hade shotte alle his quarelles,<sup>3</sup> þe beste anone come to him in grete haste, and him deuoured alif; and so he deide for his wickednesse, þrouȝ vengeance of Gode, after þat he hade regnede ix ȝere.

8 Of Grandobodian, þat was Morwitheȝ sone, þat made the tounne of Cambruge. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Vicesimo Nono.

A fter þis Morwith was dede, þe Britouns cronede Grandobodian his sone; 4 and þis Grandobodian<sup>4</sup> longe tyme regnede in 12 godenesse, and made temples and tounes; and þis Grandobodian made þe tounne of Cambrugge and þe tounne of Grantham, and was wel bilouede of ryche and of pore,<sup>5</sup> for he<sup>5</sup> honourede þe riche and halpe þe poer'. ¶ This Grandobodian hade iiij sones, Artogaile, 16 Hesider', Higamus, and Petiter', and when he hade regnede xj ȝere, he deide, & liþ at newe Troye.

Of Artogaile, þat was Grandobodian<sup>us</sup> sone: how he was made kyng', & siþ put adoune for his<sup>6</sup> wickednesse. ¶ Capitulo 20 Tricesimo.

A fter Grandobodian, regnede his sone Artogaile v ȝere; and 7 he bicom so wicked and so sterne, þat þe Britons wolde nouȝt snffre him to bene<sup>8</sup> kyng', but put him adoune, and made 24 Hesider his broþer kyng'; and he bicom so gode and mereyable þat men him callede 'kyng of pitee.' and when he hade regnede v ȝere, he hade so[miche]<sup>9</sup> pitee of his broþer Artogaile, þat was kyng bifore; and anone he forsok his dignite, and toke his broþer þe 28 crone aȝeyne, and made him kyng' aȝeynes<sup>10</sup> al þe<sup>11</sup> barons wille of Britaigne.<sup>11</sup> and afterwarde, þis Artogaile bicom so gode of condiciouns þat he was wel bilouede of al þe lande; for he bicom so debonoure and free, and dede right and resouñ to alle maner' 32 man; <sup>12</sup> and he regnede vj ȝere, and deide, and lith at Grauntham.

<sup>1</sup> arweblaster D.      <sup>2</sup> þe O.

<sup>3</sup> corrected from querelles in MS. quareH O.

<sup>4-4</sup> om. D. & þis Grandobodyan his sone O.

<sup>5-5</sup> for he DO. for R.      <sup>6</sup> om. O.      <sup>7</sup> leaf 10, back.      <sup>8</sup> be DO.

<sup>9</sup> gret O.      <sup>10</sup> aȝen O.

<sup>11-11</sup> britons wille D. brytoñs wyH O.      <sup>12</sup> of men DO

How Hesider was made kyng<sup>r</sup> after<sup>r</sup> þe deth of Artogaile <sup>1</sup>his  
¶ broþer.<sup>1</sup> *Capitulo xxxj<sup>o</sup>.*

**A**fter þe deth of Artogaile, the Britounes crounede an-<sup>o</sup>þere  
tyme Hesider<sup>r</sup>; but his ij breþern Higamus and Petiter<sup>r</sup> <sup>4</sup>  
haden of him grete despite, and eke scorne, and ordeynede ham  
helpe forto werre oppoñ þe kyng her<sup>r</sup> broþer. and so þai token him,  
and put<sup>2</sup> him into prisoun, the secunde zere of his regne; and þai  
departede al Britaign bituene ham ij. but Higamus leuede but vij <sup>8</sup>  
zere; and þo hadde Petitur<sup>r</sup> al þe lande; and he made þe toune of  
Pikeryng<sup>r</sup>, and after deide, þe secunde zere of his regne, & liþ at  
Pikeryng<sup>r</sup>,

How þe Britouns token<sup>3</sup> Hesider<sup>r</sup> oute of Prisoune, and made <sup>12</sup>  
him kyng þe þridde tyme. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ <sup>4</sup>*Tricesimo*  
*Secundo.*<sup>4</sup>

**A**nd when þis Petitur was dede, the Britons toke<sup>5</sup> anone right<sup>r</sup>  
Hesider, and made him kyng þe þridde tyme, and þo <sup>16</sup>  
<sup>6</sup>regnede he<sup>6</sup> in pees xiiij zere, & after deide, and liþ at Karleil.

How xxxiiij kynges regnede in pees, eche after<sup>r</sup> <sup>o</sup>þere, after <sup>7</sup>þe  
deth of Hesider<sup>r</sup>. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Tricesimo Tercio.*

**A**fter<sup>8</sup> þe deth of Hesider<sup>r</sup>, regnede xxxiiij Kynges, eche after<sup>r</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
<sup>o</sup>þere, in pees; and wiþout eny longe taryng<sup>r</sup> y shal <sup>9</sup>tel  
ham alle,<sup>9</sup> and how longe euery<sup>10</sup> of ham regnede, as þe story  
telleþ. ¶ The ferste kyng<sup>r</sup> of þo xxxiiij me clepede<sup>11</sup> Gorbodia,  
and he regnede xij zere. ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede Morgan ij <sup>24</sup>  
zere; ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede Eigamus<sup>12</sup> vij zere; ¶ and after<sup>r</sup>  
him regnede Idwalan viij zere; ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede Rohugo  
xj zere; ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede Voghen xiiij zere; ¶ and  
<sup>13</sup>after him regnede<sup>13</sup> Katil xv zere; ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede<sup>14</sup> <sup>28</sup>  
Porrex ij zere; ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede Cheryn xvij zere;  
[; & after him regned Coil xij zere]<sup>15</sup> ¶ and after<sup>r</sup> him regnede  
Sulgenis xiiij zere; ¶ and after him regnede Esdad xx<sup>ti</sup> zere;

<sup>1-1</sup> *om.* D.    <sup>2</sup> *om.* D.    puttyn O.    <sup>3</sup> *nomen* DO.    <sup>4-4</sup> xxxiiij D.

<sup>5</sup> *nomen* DO.    <sup>6-6</sup> regned he DO.    regnede R.    <sup>7</sup> *leaf* 11.

<sup>8</sup> And aftir O.    <sup>9-9</sup> hem aþt telle O.    <sup>10</sup> eneryche D.    eche O.

<sup>11</sup> callede D.    Called O.

<sup>12</sup> *It is impossible to distinguish n and u in these MSS. This might be*  
*Eiganius, Eiganius, Eigamus, etc. D and O have Eighnaus or Eighnaus.*

<sup>13-13</sup> after him regnede D.    after him regned O.    after R.

<sup>14</sup> *om.* O.    <sup>15</sup> *supplied from* D.

¶ And after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Andragie xvij zere; ¶ And after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Vran<sup>1</sup> v zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Elind<sup>1</sup> ij zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Eldagan xv zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regnede  
 4 Claten xij zere; ¶ & after him regnede Quirgund<sup>1</sup> viij zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Morian vj zere; and after him regnede Bledaghe iij zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Caph j zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regned Gen ij zere; ¶ and after<sup>1</sup> him regnede Seisel and Kyng  
 8 Bleð xxj zere; ¶ and Kyng Grabreth<sup>2</sup> xj zere; ¶ and Archinal xiiij zere; <sup>3</sup>and Erol xxx zere; ¶ And Rodengu <sup>4</sup>xxxij zere; and<sup>4</sup> Herter v zere,<sup>3</sup> ¶ and Hampir<sup>1</sup> vj zere, And Carpoir<sup>1</sup> vij zere. ¶ and Digneile iij zere, ¶ and Samuel xxiiij zere, ¶ and Rede  
 12 ij zere, ¶ and Ely vij mouneps; and þis Ely hade iij sones, Lud, Cassabilam, and Enmyon.

**How Luð was made kyng<sup>1</sup> after þe dep of Ely his fader.**

¶ Capitulo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Quarto.

16 <sup>5</sup> **A**fter þe dep of Ely, regnede Lud his sone, and gouernede wel þe lande, and miche honourrede gode folc, and temprede and amendit wickede folc. ¶ This Lud louede more to duelle at Troye þan at<sup>6</sup> eny opere place of þe lande; Wherefore þe name of<sup>7</sup>  
 20 Troye was lafte,<sup>8</sup> and þo<sup>9</sup> was callede þe citee of<sup>9</sup> Ludstan; but now<sup>10</sup> þat name is chaungede prou<sup>3</sup> variance of *lettres*, and now is callede London. ¶ and<sup>11</sup> þis kyng made in the citee a faire gate, and callede it Ludgate, after<sup>1</sup> his name; and þe folc of þe citee lete  
 24 hight<sup>12</sup> Loundres, and when he hade regnede xj zere, he deide, and liþ at London. and he hade ij zonge sones, Andraghen and Gormace<sup>13</sup>; but þai coup neipere speke ne go, for zeugeþ; & þerfore þe Britons crowneþ a stronge knyzt þat me called <sup>14</sup>Lud, þat was  
 28 Cassibalamus<sup>14</sup> broþer, and made him kyng of Britagne.

**How þe Britons grantede to Cassibalam, þat was Ludes broþer, þe land: <sup>15</sup>in whas time Iulius<sup>16</sup> come ij tymes forto conquere þe lande.<sup>15</sup> ¶ Capitulo Tricesimo ¶ quinto.**

32 **A**fter þe dep of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Luð, regnede his broþer Cassibalam, and bicome a goode man, and miche bilouede of his Britons, so þat, for his godenesse and curtesye, þai grantede him þe reaume for-

<sup>1</sup> vrian D. Vryan O.

<sup>2</sup> Trabreth DO.

<sup>3-5</sup> om. O.

<sup>4-4</sup> xxxij zer<sup>1</sup> D. xxxij and R.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 11, back.

<sup>6</sup> in O.

<sup>7</sup> of the new D. of newe O.

<sup>8</sup> lafte D.

left O.

laste R.

<sup>9-9</sup> þe citee callede D. was þe Citee cald O.

<sup>10</sup> om. DO.

<sup>11</sup> om. D.

<sup>12</sup> hit D. yt O.

<sup>13</sup> Tormace DO.

<sup>14-14</sup> sic in all three MSS.

<sup>15-15</sup> om. O.

<sup>16</sup> Iulius Cesar<sup>1</sup> D.

euermore, to him and to his heires. ¶ And the kyng, of his gode-  
 nesse, lete norisshe worpliche bope <sup>1</sup>this broþeres sones, þe childerne  
 of Lud<sup>1</sup>; And after<sup>2</sup>, made þe eldeste sone Erl of Cornwaile, and þat  
 opere Erl of Londoñ. ¶ And while þis kyng Cassibalam regnede, <sup>4</sup>  
 come Iulius Cesar, þat was Emperoure of Rome into þis lande, with  
 a power of Romayns, and wolde haue hade þis lande þrouz strengþ;  
 but Cassibalam him ouercome in bataile, þrouz helpe <sup>2</sup>of þe<sup>3</sup>  
 Britons, and drof him oute of þis Lande; and<sup>4</sup> went azeyne to <sup>8</sup>  
 Rome, and assemblede<sup>5</sup> grete power anoþer tyme, and come azeyne  
 into þis lande forto zeue bataile to Cassibalam; but he was des-  
 comfitede þrouz strengþ of þe Britons, and þrouz<sup>6</sup> helpe of þe erle of  
 Cornwaile, and<sup>7</sup> þe Erl of londoñ, his broþer, and þrouz helpe of <sup>12</sup>  
 Gudian, Kyng of Scotland, and of<sup>8</sup> Corbande, Kyng of north Wales,  
 and of Bretaile, Kyng of Southwalys. and in þis bataile was slayne  
 Nemion, þat was Cassibalamus broþer, wherfore he made miche  
 sorwe; and so went Iulius Cesar oute of þis lande with a fewe of<sup>9</sup> <sup>16</sup>  
 Romayns þat were lefte a-lif; And þo Cassibalam went azeyne to  
 Londoñ, and made a fest vnto alle his fole þat þo hade <sup>10</sup>him  
 holpen<sup>10</sup>; and when þe<sup>11</sup> fest was done, eche man went into here<sup>12</sup>  
 owen contree. 20

Of þe debate þat was bituene Cassibalam and þe Erle of  
 Londoñ; <sup>13</sup>& of þe truage þat was payede<sup>14</sup> to Rome.<sup>13</sup>  
 ¶ Capitulo xxxvj<sup>to</sup>.<sup>15</sup>

**A**Nd after, hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat <sup>16</sup>þe gentil-men<sup>16</sup> of <sup>24</sup>  
 þe kynges householde and <sup>17</sup>þe gentelmen<sup>17</sup> of þe Erles house-  
 holde of Londoñ, after mete went in-fere<sup>18</sup> forto playe; and þrouz  
 debate þat arose amonges<sup>19</sup> ham, Enelyn, þat was þe erles broþer<sup>20</sup>  
 of Londoñ, quellede Irenglas þat was þe kynges cosyn; wherfore þe <sup>28</sup>  
 kyng swore þat Enelyn shulde bene<sup>21</sup> houget; but þe Erle of  
 Londoñ, þat was Enelynes lorde, wolde nouzt suffren<sup>22</sup> hit; wher-  
 fore þe kyng<sup>23</sup> was wroth towarde<sup>23</sup> þe Erl, and pouzt him<sup>24</sup> destroye.  
 and priuely<sup>25</sup> þe Erl sent *lettres* to Iulius Cesar þat he shulde come <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> sones that wer<sup>2</sup> Lud his broþeres D. Sones þat were lud his brothrys O.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 12. <sup>3</sup> om. O. <sup>4</sup> and he DO. and R. <sup>5</sup> Assembled a O.

<sup>6</sup> purgh þe O. <sup>7</sup> and of D. <sup>8</sup> om. DO. <sup>9</sup> of his D. om. O.

<sup>10-10</sup> holp him D. hym holpe O. <sup>11</sup> þat DO. <sup>12</sup> his DO.

<sup>13-13</sup> om. O. <sup>14</sup> paye D. <sup>15</sup> xxxvj<sup>to</sup> D. <sup>16-16</sup> a gentilman D.

<sup>17-17</sup> a gentil-man D. gentylmen O. <sup>18</sup> y-fere D. <sup>19</sup> among O.

<sup>20</sup> cosyn D. Cosyn O. <sup>21</sup> he DO. <sup>22</sup> soffre D. <sup>23</sup> towardes O.

<sup>24</sup> hym to O. <sup>25</sup> prinlich D.

into þis lande forto <sup>1</sup>helpe him, and <sup>1</sup>helpe avenge him <sup>2</sup>oppon þe Kyng, and he wolde helpe him with al his myzte. ¶ And when þe Emperoure herde þis tydynges, <sup>3</sup>he was ful glade, and ordeynede <sup>4</sup>a stronge power, and come azeyne þe þridde tyme into þis land; and þe Erl of Londone halpe him wip vij M<sup>t</sup> men. and at þe þridde tyme was Cassibalam ouercomen <sup>4</sup>and descomfitede, and made pees to þe Emperoure for <sup>5</sup>ij <sup>6</sup>M<sup>t</sup> ti <sup>6</sup>of siluer, zeldyng by zere for <sup>8</sup>truage for þis lande for euermore. and after half <sup>7</sup>zere passede, the Emperoure went to Rome, and þe Erl of London wip him, for he derste nouȝt abide in þis lande. and after, Cassibalam regnede xvij zere in pees, and þo <sup>8</sup>deide, þe xxvij zere of his regne, and lithe atte  
12 ȝork<sup>t</sup>.

How þe lordes of þe lande, after þe deth of Cassibalam, for encheson þat he hade none heire, made Andragen kyng<sup>t</sup>.

*Capitulo ¶ xxxvij<sup>mo</sup>.*

16 **A**fter þe deth of Cassibalam, for-asmiche as he hade none <sup>9</sup>heire of his body, þe lordes of þe lande, by commune assent, cronede Androgen, Erl of Cornewaile, and made him kyng<sup>t</sup>; and he regnede wel <sup>10</sup>worthely, and was a gode man, and wel gouernede  
20 þe lande. and when he hade regnede viij zere, he deide, & lip at London.

Of Kymbalyn, þat was Andragen<sup>us</sup> sone, a gode man, <sup>11</sup>and wel gouernede þe lande. <sup>11</sup>*Capitulo xxxviij.*

<sup>12</sup>*Natiuitas Christi<sup>12</sup>*

24 **A**fter þe deth of Andragen, regnede Kembelyn his sone, þat was a gode man, and wel gouernede þe lande in miche prosperite and in <sup>13</sup>pees al his lifes <sup>14</sup>tyme. ¶ And in his tyme was born Ihesus Crist oure saueoure, of þat swete virgine Marie. <sup>15</sup>¶ þis  
28 Kyng <sup>16</sup>Kembelyn hade ij sones, Ginder and Armoger, gode knyȝtes and worthi. <sup>17</sup>And when þis Kyng Kembelyn hade regnede xxij zere, he deide, and lip at London.

Of Kyng Gynder, þat was Kembalynes sone, þat wolde nouȝt  
32 paye þe truage to Rome <sup>11</sup>for the lande þat Cassibalam hade grantede <sup>11</sup>; & how he was slayne of a Romaine.  
*Capitulo xxxix<sup>o</sup>.*

<sup>1-1</sup> om. D.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 12, back.

<sup>3</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>4</sup> ouercom D.

ouercome O.

<sup>5</sup> with D.

<sup>6-6</sup> M<sup>t</sup> of ti O.

<sup>7</sup> half a DO.

<sup>8</sup> þo he O.

<sup>9</sup> no O.

<sup>10</sup> wel and DO.

<sup>11-11</sup> om. O.

<sup>12-12</sup> om. DO.

<sup>13</sup> om. O.

<sup>14</sup> lif D. lyve O.

<sup>15</sup> Marie y-blessede mot she be Amen D.

<sup>16</sup> om. D.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 13.

**A**Nd after þe deþ of þis Kembalyn, regnede Ginder' his sone, a gode man and a worpi; and <sup>1</sup>he was of so hie<sup>1</sup> hert þat he wolde nouȝt paye to Rome þat truage þat Kyng Cassibalam hade grantede vnto Iulius Cesar'; wherfore þe Emperoure þat was þo, þat<sup>2</sup> 4 me callede<sup>3</sup> Claudius Cesar',<sup>4</sup> was sore annoyede, and ordeynede a grete power' of Romay[n]s, and come into þis lande forto conquere þe truage þrouȝ strength, and haue it of þe kyng'; but þe kyng Gynder', and Armoger' his broþer, gadrede a grete hoste ifere of 8 Britouns, and ȝaf bataile to þe Emperour Claudius, and quelled<sup>5</sup> of Romains grete plente. ¶ The Emperour hade a Stiwarde þat me clepede<sup>6</sup> Hamon, þat saw þat her' peple was faste slayne<sup>7</sup>: priuely<sup>8</sup> he<sup>2</sup> caste awai his owen arnes, and toke<sup>9</sup> the Armes of a 12 dede Briton, and armede him wiþ his armure, and come into þe bataile to þe kyng', and saide in þis maner': "Sire, beth of gode hert, for Godes loue, for þe Romayns þat beþe<sup>10</sup> ȝour' enemys anone shullen<sup>11</sup> bene<sup>12</sup> slayn and descomfitede euerychon."<sup>13</sup> ¶ and þe 16 kyng ȝaf no kepe ne rewarde to his speche, for encheson of þe arnes þat he hade oppoñ him, and wende it<sup>14</sup> hade bene<sup>15</sup> a Britoune; but þe traitoure<sup>16</sup> euer' helde him<sup>16</sup> nexte þe kyng', and priueliche,<sup>17</sup> vnder' þe shulders<sup>18</sup> of his armure,<sup>19</sup> he smote þe kyng, 20 Wherfore he was dede anone,<sup>20</sup> and fel doune vnto<sup>21</sup> þe erþe.

When Armoger' saw his broþer dede,<sup>22</sup> he caste away his Armeȝ, and toke<sup>23</sup> to him his broþeres Armes, and come into þe bataile amonge þe Britons, and bade hertly forto<sup>24</sup> fyght, and faste laide<sup>25</sup> 24 adoune þe Romaines. and for þe arnes, þai wende<sup>26</sup> it hade bene<sup>27</sup> Kyng<sup>5</sup> Gynder', þat arst was slayne, þat þai wist nouȝt, and þo gonne þe Britons hertly feiȝten,<sup>28</sup> and quelled<sup>29</sup> þe Romayns; so<sup>29</sup> at þe last þe Emperour forsoke<sup>30</sup> þe felde, and fley as faste as þai<sup>31</sup> miȝt 28 into þe citee of Wynchestre. and þe false traitour Hamonde, þat hade quelled<sup>32</sup> þe kyng', faste anone gane forto flee in<sup>33</sup> al þe haste þat he miȝt; and Armoger', þe kynges broþer, pursuede him ful fersly<sup>33</sup> wiþ a ferse herte, and drof him vnto<sup>34</sup> þe water', and þere 32

<sup>1-1</sup> so hie of D.    <sup>2</sup> om. O.    <sup>3</sup> clept O.    <sup>4</sup> Cesar & he O.  
<sup>5</sup> om. D.    <sup>6</sup> called DO.    <sup>7</sup> y-slayn O.    <sup>8</sup> pryueliche D.  
<sup>9</sup> nome DO.    <sup>10</sup> ben O.    <sup>11</sup> shul D.    <sup>12</sup> schul O.  
<sup>13</sup> be O.    <sup>14</sup> echeon O.    <sup>15</sup> he DO.    <sup>16</sup> be O.  
<sup>17-16</sup> helde hym euer O.    <sup>17</sup> priuely D.    <sup>18</sup> pryuely O.    <sup>19</sup> shulder D.  
<sup>20</sup> Armes DO.    <sup>21</sup> om. DO.    <sup>22</sup> to D.    <sup>23</sup> leaf 13, back.  
<sup>24</sup> nome DO.    <sup>25</sup> om. D.    <sup>26</sup> to O.    <sup>27</sup> lay D.    <sup>28</sup> ley O.  
<sup>29</sup> wende that D.    <sup>30</sup> be þe O.    <sup>31</sup> fyght O.    <sup>32</sup> so þat O.  
<sup>33</sup> took O.    <sup>34</sup> he DO.    <sup>35</sup> with O.    <sup>36</sup> fast D.  
<sup>37</sup> in-to O.

he<sup>1</sup> toke him, and anone smote of <sup>2</sup>boþe heuede,<sup>2</sup> hendes, and feete,  
and hewe þe body halto pecis, and þo caste it into þe water<sup>3</sup>;  
Wherefore þat water was callede Hamondeshausen; and after,<sup>3</sup> þere  
4 was made a faire toun þat ȝitte [standeth] þat<sup>4</sup> is callede South-  
ampton. ¶ And afterwarde, Armoger<sup>5</sup> went to Wynchestre forto<sup>5</sup>  
seche Claudius Cesar<sup>6</sup> þe Emperour; and þere Armoger<sup>6</sup> him toke.

¶ And Claudius þe Emperour, þrouȝ conseil of his Romayns þat  
8 with him were lefte alyf, made pees wiþ Armoger<sup>7</sup> in þis maner as  
ȝe shulleþ<sup>7</sup> hure, þat is to seyne, how<sup>6</sup> þat Claudius þe emperour  
shulde ȝeue to Armoger<sup>8</sup>, Gennen<sup>8</sup> his<sup>9</sup> douȝter, forto haue to wif,  
so þat þis lande fro þat tyme afterwarde shulde be in þe Emperoureȝ  
12 power<sup>9</sup> of Rome, oppoñ suche couenant, þat<sup>10</sup> none Emperour of  
Rome shulde take none oþere truage of þis lande, but oneliche  
feaute; and so þai were accordede. ¶ And oppoñ <sup>11</sup>þis couenant,<sup>11</sup>  
Claudius Cesar<sup>12</sup> sent to Rome for his douȝter Gennen; and when  
16 she was comen,<sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup>Claudius Cesar<sup>13</sup> ȝaf her<sup>13</sup> to Armoger to Wif;  
and Armoger<sup>14</sup> spoused here at Londoñ with michel<sup>14</sup> solempnite  
and merþe; and þo was Armoger cronede, and made Kyng<sup>15</sup> of  
Britaigne.

20 Of Kyng<sup>16</sup> Armoger, in whas<sup>15</sup> tyme seynt Peter prechede in  
Antyoche, wiþ oþere apostlis in diuerses<sup>16</sup> contres. <sup>17</sup>Ca-  
pitulo xl.<sup>17</sup>

24 **T**His Kyng Armoger<sup>18</sup> regnede wel, and worthely<sup>18</sup> þe lande  
gouernede, and Claudis Cesar<sup>19</sup>, in remembrance of þis<sup>19</sup>  
accorde, and for reuerence and honour of his doughter, made in  
þis lande a fare toun and a faire castel, and lete calle <sup>20</sup>þe  
toun<sup>20</sup> after<sup>20</sup> his owen<sup>21</sup> name 'Claucestre,' þat now is callede  
28 Gloucestr'. and when þis was al done, þe Emperoure toke<sup>22</sup> his  
leue, and<sup>23</sup> went aȝeyne to Rome; and Armoger<sup>24</sup> was þo<sup>24</sup> kyng<sup>24</sup>,  
and gouernede þe lande wel and nobli al his lif tyme. ¶ and this  
Armager<sup>25</sup> gete a sone on his wif, þat<sup>25</sup> was callede<sup>25</sup> Westmere. and

<sup>1</sup> thay D.      <sup>2-2</sup> boþe heede D.    his hed O.      <sup>3</sup> afterward O.

<sup>4</sup> and D.      <sup>5</sup> to O.      <sup>6</sup> om. D.      <sup>7</sup> shul D.    schul O.

<sup>8</sup> Gelmen or perhaps Gelingen or Gelnien O.      <sup>9</sup> his fair D.    his fayre O.

<sup>10</sup> that neuer afterwarde D.    þat neuere aftirward O.

<sup>11-11</sup> þese couenauntes O.      <sup>12</sup> come O.      <sup>13</sup> leaf 14.

<sup>14</sup> miche D.    mych O.      <sup>15</sup> who D.      <sup>16</sup> diuerse D.    diuers O.

<sup>17-17</sup> xl<sup>o</sup> Capitulo O.      <sup>18</sup> worthely and D.    worthyly & O.      <sup>19</sup> his O.

<sup>20-20</sup> MS. þe lande toun, with lande underlined for erasure.    yt O.

<sup>21</sup> om. DO.      <sup>22</sup> nome DO.      <sup>23</sup> and þo DO.      <sup>24-24</sup> þo was DO.

<sup>25-25</sup> Called was O.

whiles þat þis Armoger' regnede, seynt Peter<sup>1</sup> prechede in Antioche ; and þere he hade<sup>2</sup> made a noble cherche, in þe whiche he satte ferste in his chier', and þere he duelledede vij 3ere.<sup>3</sup> after', he<sup>2</sup> went to Rome, and was made Pope, til þat Nero þe Emperour lete him 4 martre. & þo prechede openly al þe Apostlis, in diuerses<sup>4</sup> landes, þe ryzt fay.<sup>5</sup> ¶ And when Armoger' hade regnede xxiiij 3ere, he deyde, and lith at London.

**How Kyng<sup>st</sup> Westmer 3af to Berynger' an Ilande forlete; and 8 þere þis Beringer' made þe toune of Berwik. Capitulo xlj.**

**A**Nd after' þis Armoger', regnede his sone Westmer', a gode man, and a worpi of body, and wel gouernede þe lande. ¶ Hit bifelle so þat tydynges<sup>6</sup> come to him oppon<sup>7</sup> a day, þat þe Kyng<sup>8</sup> 12 Rodrik' of Gascoigne was comen<sup>9</sup> into þis lande wiþ an huge noumbre of peple, and was duellyng' in Steynesmore. and when Kyng Westmer' herde þo tydyngus, he lete assemble<sup>10</sup> a grete<sup>10</sup> host of Britons, and come to þe<sup>8</sup> Kyng' Rodrik', and 3af him bataile. and 16 Kyng Westmer' quelledede Rodrik wiþ his owen hondes in pleyne bataile; and when þat<sup>2</sup> kyng Rodrikes men saw þat here Lorde was dede, þai 3olden ham alle to þe<sup>8</sup> Kyng Westmer', and bicomme his men for euermore; and he 3af ham a contre þat was forlete, wher-in 20 þai myzt duelle; and þider' þai went, and duelledede þere al here lifes<sup>11</sup> tyme; and ix Ū men þere<sup>12</sup> were of ham, and nomo<sup>13</sup> lefte alif at þat bataile. Here governour and her' prince, me callede Berynger'; and anone he biganne a toune, þat þai myzt þerein duelle<sup>14</sup> and haue 24 resceyt, and lete calle þe toune Berwik' vp<sup>15</sup> Twede; and þere þai duelledede, and bicomme riche. but þai nade<sup>16</sup> no wymmen amanges ham, and þe Britons wolde nouzt 3eue here douztres to þo<sup>17</sup> Straungers; Wherefore þai went ouere þe see into Irland, and brouzt 28 with ham Wymmen, and ham þo spousede; but þe men coupe<sup>18</sup> nouzt<sup>19</sup> vnderstonde<sup>20</sup> þe langage<sup>21</sup> ne þe speche of þe wymmen, neyþer<sup>22</sup> þe wymmen of þe men, and þefore þai<sup>23</sup> speken to-gederes<sup>23</sup> as scottes; and aftirwarde, prouz chaungeyng of her' 32

<sup>1</sup> In the margin in a contemporary handwrriting: Peter was at Rome in nero[s] ty[me]: the edge of the page has evidently been cut off.

<sup>2</sup> om. DO.

<sup>3</sup> 3eer & O.

<sup>4</sup> diuerse D. diuers O.

<sup>5</sup> feyth O.

<sup>6</sup> tydyng DO.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 14, back.

<sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9</sup> come O.

<sup>10-10</sup> an huge O.

<sup>11</sup> lif D.

<sup>12</sup> þat O.

<sup>13</sup> noman D.

<sup>14</sup> om. D.

<sup>15</sup> vpon O.

<sup>16</sup> hadde O.

<sup>17</sup> þe D.

<sup>18</sup> coude O.

<sup>19</sup> nouzt þo D.

<sup>20</sup> vndirfonge O.

<sup>21</sup> lange D.

<sup>22</sup> ne O.

<sup>23-23</sup> spoken to-geder' D. speke to-gidere O.



langages,<sup>1</sup> in al Fraunce þei were callede þo<sup>2</sup> Scottes: and so <sup>3</sup>þai shal be callede<sup>3</sup> for euermore.

**How Kyng Westmer' Lete arere a stone in þe entryng<sup>4</sup> of West-**  
 4 merland, þere þat he slouȝt Rodrik'; & þere he biganne  
 ferste Housyng'. ¶ **Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo<sup>5</sup> ¶ Secundo.**

**A** Nd after' this bataile þat is aboue-saide, when Rodrik <sup>6</sup>Was  
 dede, Kyng Westmer', in remembraunce of his Victorie, lete  
 8 arere þere, bisides þe way, a grete stone<sup>7</sup> in<sup>8</sup> hye,—& ȝitte it  
 standeþ,<sup>9</sup> and euermore shal stande,—and Lete graue in þe stone  
 lettres þat þus saide: 'The Kyng Westmere of Britaigne quelled  
 in þis place Rodrik' his enemy.' ¶ And þis Westmere was þe first  
 12 man þat made tounes<sup>10</sup> and hous in Engeland. and at þat stone  
 bigynneth<sup>11</sup> Westmerland, þat Westmer' lete calle after' his owen  
 name. and<sup>12</sup> when Westmer' hade so done,<sup>13</sup> he duelled al his Lif  
 tyme in þat contre of Westmerland, for he louede þat contre more<sup>14</sup>;  
 16 and when he hade regnede xxv ȝere, he deide. & liþ at ¶ Karleile.

**Of Kyng Coil, þat was Westmeres sone, þat helde his lande in**  
 pees<sup>15</sup> his lif-tyme. ¶ **Capitulo xl Tercio.**

20 **A** fter þis Kyng Westmer', regnede his sone Coil, a goode man  
 and a worþi, and of gode condicions, and wel gouernede his  
 lande, and of alle<sup>16</sup> men he hade loue and pees; and in his tyme  
 was neuer kontak, debate, ne werre in Britayn; and he regnede and  
 was kyng' in pees al his lif-tyme. & When he hade <sup>17</sup>bene kyng<sup>17</sup>  
 24 xj ȝere, he deide, and liþ at ȝork'.

**How Kyng Lucye regnede after' Coel<sup>18</sup> his fader', þat<sup>19</sup> was a**  
 gode man; and after', he<sup>12</sup> bicom cristen. ¶ **Capitulo xl**  
 ¶ **Quarto.**

28 **A** fter' Kyng<sup>20</sup> Coel, regnede Lucie his sone, þat was a gode man  
 to God and to al þe peple. he sent to Rome, to Apostle  
 Eulenchie, þat þo was, and seide þat he wolde bicom a cristen  
 man, and resceyue baptisme<sup>21</sup> in þe name of God, and turne to þe

<sup>1</sup> langage sic D.      <sup>2</sup> om. D. þe O.

<sup>3-3</sup> shulleþ þe folc of that contraie D. schul þat folk of þat Cuntre O.

<sup>4</sup> Entre O.      <sup>5</sup> Quinquagesimo D.      <sup>6</sup> leaf 15.      <sup>7</sup> toune D.

<sup>8</sup> an O.      <sup>9</sup> stant DO.      <sup>10</sup> Toun O.      <sup>11</sup> bigynnes D.

<sup>12</sup> om. O.      <sup>13</sup> y-done O.

<sup>14</sup> more þan eny oþere contre D. more þan eny oþer Cuntre O.

<sup>15</sup> pees al D.      <sup>16</sup> aft his O.      <sup>17-17</sup> bene kyng' D. be kyng' O. bene R.

<sup>18</sup> om. D.      <sup>19</sup> & O.      <sup>20</sup> þis D.      <sup>21</sup> baptême O.

ryȝt bileue. ¶ Eulenchie sent ij legates, þat me callede Pagan and Elibrayne, into þis lande, and baptisede þe kyng<sup>1</sup> and alle his meny<sup>2</sup>, and after went fro <sup>2</sup>toune<sup>3</sup> to toune, and baptisede þe peple til <sup>4</sup>al þat<sup>4</sup> Lande was baptisede, and þis was in þe c. lvi 4 ȝere after þe Incarnaciō of Ihesu Crist. and þis kyng<sup>5</sup> Lucey made þo in þis lande ij erchebisshoppes, on at Kaunterbery and anopere at ȝork<sup>6</sup>, and opere meny bisshopes þat ȝit bene in þis lande. ¶ And when þise<sup>6</sup> ij legates hade baptisede al þe<sup>7</sup> lande, 8 þai ordeynede<sup>8</sup> prestes forto baptisen<sup>9</sup> childern and forto make þe Sacrament<sup>9</sup>; and after, þai went aȝeyne to Rome, and þe kyng duelled in his lande, and regnede with michel<sup>10</sup> honour xiiȝ ȝere, and after deide, and lip at Gloucestre. 12

**How þis lande was longe wiþouten<sup>11</sup> a kyng<sup>1</sup>; and how þe Britons chosen<sup>12</sup> a kyng<sup>1</sup>. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quadragesimo. ¶ Quinto.**

**T**His kyng<sup>1</sup> Lucie hade none heire of his body bigeten,<sup>13</sup> þat was 16 afterwarde grete harme and sorwe to þe lande; ffor, after þis kyng Lucies deth, none of þe grete lordes<sup>14</sup> of þe lande wolde suffren<sup>15</sup> an-opere to bene<sup>16</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup>, but leuede in werre and debate amonges ham l. ȝere wiþouten<sup>17</sup> kyng. but þo it bifel <sup>18</sup>afterwarde 20 þat a grete Prince<sup>18</sup> come fro Rome into þis lande þat me callede Senerey; nouȝt forto werr<sup>1</sup>, but forto saue þe ryȝt<sup>1</sup> of Rome. ¶ But noþeles, he nade<sup>19</sup> nouȝt duelled half<sup>20</sup> ȝere in þis lande, þat þe Britons ne quelled him. when þo of Rome wiste þat Senerey 24 was so slayn, þai sent anopere grete lorde into þis lande, þat me callede Allec, þat was a stronge man, and a myȝty of body, and duelled in þis lande Longe tyme, and dede miche sorwe to þe Britons, so þat after, for pure malice, þai chosen ham a kyng 28 amonges ham, þat me callede Astlepades, and assemblede a grete host of þe Britouns, and went to London to<sup>21</sup> seche Allec; and þere þai founde<sup>22</sup> <sup>23</sup>him, and quelled him and alle his felawes þat

<sup>1</sup> mene D. meyne O. <sup>2</sup> leaf 15, back.

<sup>3</sup> a marginal note in an ancient hand: [fir]st eristes Kyng.

<sup>4-4</sup> þat alle þe D. <sup>5</sup> om. D. <sup>6</sup> þe O. <sup>7</sup> þat O.

<sup>8</sup> ordeigneden O. <sup>9</sup> baptisen D. baptisede R. <sup>10</sup> mych O.

<sup>11</sup> with-oute D. tyme with-oute O. <sup>12</sup> Chose hem O.

<sup>13</sup> bygete D. begete O. <sup>14</sup> om. DO. <sup>15</sup> soffre D. suffre O.

<sup>16</sup> be DO. <sup>17</sup> with-oute DO.

<sup>18-18</sup> afterwarde that a grete Prince D. afterward þat a gret prince O. afterwarde R. <sup>19</sup> had O.

<sup>20</sup> half a O. <sup>21</sup> forto D. <sup>22</sup> founden O. <sup>23</sup> leaf 16.

were wiþ him, but one of his felawes, þat me clepede<sup>1</sup> Waloun, defendet him fersly, and fauȝt longe with þe Britouns, but at þe laste he was descomfitede; and þe Britons token<sup>2</sup> him, and bounde  
 4 him<sup>3</sup> Hondes and feete, and caste him into a water; wherfore þat water afterwarde was clepede<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>euermore Walbroke.<sup>5</sup> ¶ Þo regnede þis<sup>3</sup> Astlepades in quiete, til one of his erles þat me callede Coel, made a faire tounne aȝeynes þe kynges wille, and lete calle þe tounne  
 8 Colchestre after his name, wherfore þe kyng was ful wroth, and þouȝt destroye þe erle, and bigan to werre vppon him, and brouȝt grete power, and ȝaf bataile to<sup>6</sup> þe erl. and þe erl defendede him fersly with his power, and slough þe kyng<sup>4</sup> him-self in þat bataile;  
 12 and þo was Coel cronede, and made kyng of þis land. ¶ Þis Coel regnede and gouernede þe lande wel and nobly, for he was a<sup>7</sup> noble man, and wel bilouede amonges<sup>8</sup> þe Britons. ¶ When<sup>9</sup> þo of Rome herde þat Astlepades was slayne, <sup>10</sup>þai were<sup>10</sup> wonder glade, and sent  
 16 an oþere grete prince of Romainys, þat me callede Constance; and he come to þe<sup>11</sup> Kyng Coil <sup>12</sup>for to chalange<sup>12</sup> þe truage þat was wont <sup>13</sup>to bene<sup>13</sup> paided to Rome; and þe kyng ansuerede wel and worþely,<sup>14</sup> and saide þat he wolde paye to Rome al þat ryȝt and  
 20 resoun <sup>15</sup>wolde, wiþ godewil<sup>15</sup>; and so þai accordede þo wiþ goode wil, and wiþouten<sup>16</sup> eny contact; and boþe þai duelleded togeder<sup>17</sup> in loue. ¶ The Kyng<sup>4</sup> Coel ȝaf his douȝter Elyne to Constance, for to haue here for his spouse, þat was boþe faire, wise, and gode, and  
 24 wel lettreded: and þis Constance spouseded here þere<sup>3</sup> with michel<sup>18</sup> honour. and it bifelle sone afterwarde, þat þis kyng<sup>4</sup> Coel <sup>19</sup>deide in the ȝere of his regne xiiij, & Lith at Colchestre entereded.

**Of Kyng Constance, þat was a Romain, þat was chosen<sup>20</sup> kyng after <sup>21</sup>þe deth of <sup>21</sup>Coel, <sup>22</sup>for-asmiche þat <sup>22</sup>he had spouseded Elyn, þat was Kyng Coeles douȝter. Capitulo xlvj<sup>o</sup>.**

32 **A**fter þis<sup>11</sup> Kyng Coel, Constance was made kyng<sup>4</sup>, and cronede, for-asmiche as he had spouseded Kyng Coeles douȝter, þat was heire of þe lande. þe whiche Constance regnede and worþely

<sup>1</sup> callede D. called O. <sup>2</sup> nome D. toke O.  
<sup>3</sup> om. O. <sup>4</sup> callede D. called O. <sup>5-5</sup> Walbrok euermore O.  
<sup>6</sup> vnto D. <sup>7</sup> an O. <sup>8</sup> among O. <sup>9</sup> And D.  
<sup>10-10</sup> than were þai D. <sup>11</sup> om. D. <sup>12-12</sup> and chalangede D.  
<sup>13-13</sup> be DO. <sup>14</sup> wiselich D. wysely O. <sup>15-15</sup> wil D.  
<sup>16</sup> with-out O. <sup>17</sup> to-gederes D. <sup>18</sup> mych O.  
<sup>19</sup> leaf 16, back. <sup>20</sup> chose O. <sup>21-21</sup> om. O.  
<sup>22-22</sup> for-asmiche as D. for as O.

gouvernede þe lande; and he bigatē on his wif Elyn, a sone þat me callede Constantyn. and þis kyng bare trew fay, and trewly dede to ham of Rome al his lif. & when he hade regnede xv ȝere, he deide, and liþ atte ȝork.

**How Constantyne, þat was Kyng Constance,<sup>1</sup> sone, & þe sone of seynt Elyne, gouvernede and rewlede þe lande, & was<sup>2</sup> Emperour of Rome. ¶ Capitulo xl Septimo.**

**A**fter Kyng Con[s]tance<sup>3</sup> deth, Constantyne, his sone of seynt 8 Elyne, þat founde þat<sup>4</sup> croice in þe<sup>5</sup> holy londe, and how Constantyne bicomē Emperoure of Rome. ¶ Hit bifel so<sup>6</sup> in þat tyme þere was an Emperour atte Rome, a sarasyn, a tyraunt, þat me callede Maxence, þat put to þe<sup>2</sup> deth alle þat bileuede in God, 12 and destroiede holy cherche by alle his power, and slought Cristen men þat he myȝt fynde; and amonge alle opere, he lete martre Seynt Kateryne, and meny opere cristen peple þat hade drede of deth, þai<sup>7</sup> fledden<sup>8</sup> and comen<sup>9</sup> into þis lande to Kyng Constantyne, and 16 tolde him of þe sorwe þat Maxence dede to al cristiente.<sup>10</sup> Wherof Constantyn hade pite, and grete sorwe made, and<sup>11</sup> assemblede a grete hoste and<sup>12</sup> grete power, and went ouere see<sup>13</sup> to Rome, and toke<sup>14</sup> þe citee, and quelled al þat<sup>15</sup> þerin were mescreaunt,<sup>15</sup> þat 20 he myȝt fynde. ¶ And þo was he made Emperoure,<sup>16</sup> And was a gode man, and gouvernede him so wel, þat al þe<sup>13</sup> Landes to him were entendaunt<sup>17</sup> forto be vnder his gouvernaile. ¶ And þis deuēl tyraunt Maxence, þat þo was in þe lande of Greke, when<sup>18</sup> he 24 herde þis tydynges,<sup>19</sup> he bicomē wode, and sodeynely<sup>20</sup> deide, and so he<sup>2</sup> endede his lif.

When Constantyne went fro þis land to Rome, he toke<sup>21</sup> wiþ him his moder Elyn, for þe michel<sup>22</sup> wisdomē þat she couþe,<sup>23</sup> and 28 þre opere grete lordes þat he moste louede: þat one me callede Hoel, anopere me callede Taberne, and þe þridde Morhyn<sup>24</sup>; and toke al his lande to kepe vnto<sup>25</sup> þe Erl of Cornwaile, þat men<sup>26</sup> callede Octouyan. ¶ anone<sup>27</sup> as þis Octouian wiste þat his lorde was 32 duellyng at Rome, he seisede al þe lande into his honde, and þerwiþ

<sup>1</sup> Constance D. Constaunce O. <sup>2</sup> om. O. <sup>3</sup> Constance D.

<sup>4</sup> þe D. <sup>5</sup> þat O. <sup>6</sup> so þat O. <sup>7</sup> þat DO.

<sup>8</sup> fled O. <sup>9</sup> come O. <sup>10</sup> Cristene O. <sup>11</sup> made and DO. made R.

<sup>12</sup> and a DO. <sup>13</sup> om. DO. <sup>14</sup> nome O.

<sup>15-16</sup> wer' þerin D. þer-In were mysbeleued O. <sup>16</sup> leaf 17.

<sup>17</sup> attendaunt O. <sup>18</sup> þo DO. <sup>19</sup> tydyng O. <sup>20</sup> sodeynlich D.

<sup>21</sup> nome O. <sup>22</sup> miche D. mych O. <sup>23</sup> coude O.

<sup>24</sup> Morlyn D. <sup>25</sup> to D. <sup>26</sup> me D. <sup>27</sup> And anon D.

dede al his wil amonges<sup>1</sup> heye and law, & þo helde him for kyngi.  
 ¶ when þis tydyng come to Constantyne þe Emperoure, he woxe  
 wonder' wroþe towarde þe Erl Octouyan, and sent Taberne with xij  
 4 m<sup>1</sup> men forto<sup>2</sup> destroye the erl for his falsenesse, and arryuede at  
 Portesmouthe. ¶ And when Octouyan wiste þat, he assemblede a  
 grete power' of Britons, and descomfitede Taberne. ¶ And Taberne  
 fledde þens into Scotlande, and ordeynede þere a<sup>3</sup> grete power', and  
 8 come aʒeyne into þis lande forto ʒene bataile anopere tyme to<sup>4</sup>  
 Octouyan. ¶ When Octouyan herde telle þat, he assemblede a  
 grete power', and come towarde Taberne as miche as he myʒt, so  
 þat þo<sup>5</sup> ij hostes metten oppon Staynesmore, and strongly<sup>6</sup> smyten  
 12 to-gederes.<sup>7</sup> and þo was Octouyan descomfitede, and fledde þens  
 into Norwaye; and Taberne seisede al þe lande into his hande,<sup>8</sup>  
 Tounes, castelles, and<sup>9</sup> as nich as þai þere hade. ¶ And siþenes<sup>9</sup>  
 Octouyan come aʒeyne fro Norway wiþ a grete power', & slough  
 16 Taberne, & seisede<sup>10</sup> al þe lande aʒeyne<sup>3</sup> into his honde, & drof  
 oute alle þe Romayns, <sup>11</sup>and was þo made Kyng, and regnede.

How Maximian, þat was þe Emperoure; cosyn <sup>12</sup>of Rome  
 spousede Octouyane; douʒter, and was made kyng,  
 20 ¶ Capitulo xlvij<sup>o, 12</sup>

**T**His Kyng<sup>5</sup> Octouian gouernede þis<sup>13</sup> lande wel and nobly<sup>14</sup>;  
 but he<sup>15</sup> nad<sup>16</sup> none heire, saf a douʒter þat was a ʒonge  
 childe, þat he louede as miche as his lif. and forasmiche þat he wax  
 24 sike, and was in<sup>17</sup> poynt of deþ, and myʒt no lenger' regne, he wolde  
 haue made one of his Neveus to haue bene<sup>18</sup> kyngi, þe whiche was  
 a<sup>19</sup> noble knyʒt and<sup>20</sup> stronge man, þat me callede Conan Merche-  
 dok,<sup>21</sup> and he shulde haue kepte þe kynges douʒter, & haue<sup>15</sup> mariede  
 28 her' when tyme hade bene; but þe lordes of þe lande wolde nouʒt  
 suffre hit, but ʒaf here conseile to bene<sup>22</sup> mariede to some hye man  
 of great honour; and þan myʒt she haue al her' wille at<sup>23</sup> þe conseile  
 of þe Emperoure Constantyne, here Lorde. and at þis conseile, þai  
 32 accordede and chose<sup>24</sup> þo Cador, Erl of Cornewail, forto<sup>25</sup> wende

<sup>1</sup> among O.    <sup>2</sup> to O.    <sup>3</sup> om. DO.    <sup>4</sup> vnto O.    <sup>5</sup> om. O.

<sup>6</sup> strongliche D.    <sup>7</sup> to-gider' O.    <sup>8</sup> handis O.    <sup>9</sup> seth O.

<sup>10</sup> seisede aʒeyn D.    seised aʒen O.    <sup>11</sup> leaf 17, back.

<sup>12-13</sup> conquere the lande of American and ʒaf it to Conan Meriedok' D.

<sup>13</sup> þe O.    <sup>14</sup> wisely D.    <sup>15</sup> om. D.    <sup>16</sup> ne had O.

<sup>17</sup> oppo[n] D.    vp O.    <sup>18</sup> be O.    <sup>19</sup> an O.    <sup>20</sup> and a DO.

<sup>21</sup> Meriedok D.    Meridiok' O.    <sup>22</sup> be DO.    <sup>23</sup> and DO.

<sup>24</sup> chosen O.    <sup>25</sup> to O.

to þe Emperour to<sup>1</sup> done<sup>2</sup> þis<sup>3</sup> message. and he toke<sup>4</sup> þe way, and went to Rome, and tolde þe Emperour þis tydynges<sup>5</sup> wel and wiselich.<sup>6</sup> and þe Emperoure sent þo into þis lande with him his owen cosyn, þat was his Vncles<sup>7</sup> sone, a noble knyzt and<sup>8</sup> 4 stronge, þat me callede Maximian; and he spousede Octouyanus doughter, and was cronede kyng of þis lande.

**How Maximian, þat was þe Emperoures cosyn, conquerede the Lande of Amorian, and gaf it to Conan Meriedok.** 8

¶ *Capitolo xlix.*

**T**His Kyng Maximian bicomē so real, þat he þouzt conquere þe lande of Amorian for þe grete richesse þat he harde<sup>9</sup> telle þat was in þat lande; so þat<sup>10</sup> he ne<sup>10</sup> lefte<sup>11</sup> man þat<sup>12</sup> was of worþi- 12 nesse—knyzt,<sup>13</sup> squyer<sup>1</sup>, ne none opere man—þat he ne toke ham<sup>14</sup> with him, to grete damage and harme to al þe lande,<sup>15</sup> but nome ham with him fram<sup>16</sup> þis lande, xxx M<sup>1</sup> knyztēs þat were doughty menne bodyes, and went ouer<sup>1</sup> into þe lande of Amorian, and þere slough 16 þe kyng þat me callede Imbal, and conquerede al þe lande. ¶ And when he hade so done,<sup>2</sup> he callede Conan, and saide: “For-asmeiche as þe Kyng Octouyan wolde haue made 3ow kyng<sup>1</sup> of Britaigne, and prou3 me 3e were lette and destourblede, þat 3e were nouzt kyng<sup>1</sup>, 20 I 3eue 3ow al þis lande of Amorian, and 3ow þerof make kyng<sup>1</sup>. ¶ And for-asmeiche as 3e beth<sup>17</sup> a Britoun, and 3oure men also, and bene comen fram<sup>18</sup> Britaigne, I wille þat þis lande haue þe same name, and nomore bene<sup>19</sup> callede Amorian, but bene<sup>19</sup> callede ‘litel 24 Britaigne’; and þe lande fro whens 3e<sup>20</sup> beþe comen<sup>20</sup> shal bene<sup>21</sup> callede ‘michel Britaigne’; and so shul<sup>22</sup> men know þat one<sup>23</sup> Britaigne fram<sup>24</sup> þat opere.” Conan Meriedok<sup>1</sup> þankedē him hendeliche<sup>25</sup>; and so was he made kyng<sup>1</sup> of litel Britaigne. and when 28 al þis was done,<sup>2</sup> Maxence<sup>26</sup> went þens to Rome, and þere was<sup>27</sup> made Emperour after Constantyne. ¶ Conan Meriedok duelledē in<sup>28</sup> litel Britaigne with michel<sup>29</sup> honour, and lete ordeyne ij M<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> forto DO.      <sup>2</sup> do O.

<sup>3</sup> MS. þis homage, *with homage underlined for omission.*

<sup>4</sup> none DO.      <sup>5</sup> tydyng<sup>1</sup> D.      tydyngē O.      <sup>6</sup> wysely O.

<sup>7</sup> Vnkel O.      <sup>8</sup> and a DO.      <sup>9</sup> hade D.      <sup>10—16</sup> om. D.

<sup>11</sup> leaf 18.      <sup>12</sup> om. O.      <sup>13</sup> knyzt ne D.      <sup>14</sup> om. DO.

<sup>15</sup> lande for he lefte at home bihynde him no man to kepe the lande D. land<sup>1</sup> for he left at home behynde hym no man to kepe þe land<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>16</sup> fro DO.      <sup>17</sup> be O.      <sup>18</sup> fro O.      <sup>19</sup> be DO.

<sup>20—29</sup> beth come D.      be come O.      <sup>21</sup> be DO.      <sup>22</sup> schuld O.

<sup>23</sup> o DO.      <sup>24</sup> fro O.      <sup>25</sup> hendely D.      hyndly O.      <sup>26</sup> Maximian DO.

<sup>27</sup> was þo DO.      <sup>28</sup> in the D.      in þe O.      <sup>29</sup> mych O.

ploughmen of þe lande forto erie þe lande,<sup>1</sup> to harwe <sup>2</sup>it and sowe,<sup>2</sup> and feffede ham alle rychely, after þat þai were. ¶ And<sup>3</sup> for-asmiche þat Kyng Conan, ne none of his knyȝtes, ne none of his  
 4 opere peple, wolde nouȝt take wifes of þe nacioñ of Fraunce, he þo sent into grete Britaig[n]e, to þe Erl of Cornewaile þat me callede Dionotho, þat chees þrouȝ-out alle þe lande xj M<sup>t</sup> <sup>4</sup>of maydenes, þat is to seyne, viij M<sup>t</sup> for the mene peple, and iij M<sup>t</sup> <sup>1</sup>for þe  
 8 grettest lordes þat schulde ham spouse. ¶ And when Dionotho hade tak<sup>5</sup> þis commandement,<sup>6</sup> he lete þo seche þrouȝ-out al grete Britaigne as meny as þe nombre come to, for noman derst wiȝstande his commandement,<sup>7</sup> for-asmichel<sup>8</sup> as al þe lande was taken<sup>9</sup> him  
 12 to warde and kepe, to do<sup>10</sup> al þing<sup>t</sup> þat him þo likede.<sup>7</sup> ¶ And when alle þe maydenes were assemblede, he lete ham comme bifore him to Londoñ, and lete ordeyne for ham shippes hastely, as miche<sup>11</sup> as ham nedet to þat viage, and toke<sup>12</sup> his owen doughter  
 16 þat me callede Vrsula, þat was þe faireste creature þat eny man wist, and wolde haue sent her to Kyng Conan, þat shulde haue spoused here, and made here quene of <sup>13</sup>litel Britaigne<sup>13</sup>; but she hade made priuely<sup>14</sup> to God a vow of chastite, þat here fader wiste  
 20 it<sup>15</sup> nouȝt, ne noman <sup>16</sup>elles<sup>17</sup> þat was leuyng oppoñ erþe.<sup>16</sup>

**How Vrsula, and xj M<sup>t</sup> of maydenes þat were in here company, went towarde litil Britaigne, & al<sup>18</sup> were martrede at Coloine. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quinquagesimo.**

24 **T**HIS Vrsula chees into her<sup>19</sup> company xj M<sup>t</sup> maydenes<sup>20</sup> þat of al opere she was lady and maistres; and alle þai went<sup>21</sup> into þe shippis at on<sup>22</sup> tyme, in þe water þat me calleþ<sup>23</sup> Tamise; and commandedede her kyn and alle her frendes to almyȝty God, and  
 28 sailede forþ towarde litel Britaigne. But when þai were comen<sup>24</sup> in þe hye see, a stronge tempest arose, as it was Goddes wil; and Vrsula, wiȝ her shippis and here company, was<sup>25</sup> dryuen, and þo xj M<sup>t</sup> maidenenes, toward<sup>26</sup> Hundelande, þrouȝ tempest, and arryuede in þe

<sup>1</sup> om. D.      <sup>2-2</sup> and to sowe D.      <sup>3</sup> om. O.      <sup>4</sup> leaf 18, back.

<sup>5</sup> vnderstonde D.      vndirfonge O.

<sup>6</sup> comandement for-as-miche as al þe lande was tak him to warde and kepe to done alþing<sup>t</sup> þat him þo likede D.

<sup>7-7</sup> om. D.      <sup>8</sup> for-as-mich O.      <sup>9</sup> take O.      <sup>10</sup> done O.

<sup>11</sup> as meny O.      <sup>12</sup> nome DO.      <sup>13-13</sup> the lande D.      þe land<sup>t</sup> O.

<sup>14</sup> priueliche D.      <sup>15</sup> MS. his      <sup>16-16</sup> þat leuede D.      <sup>17</sup> eñ O.

<sup>18</sup> alle þai D.      alle þey O.

<sup>19</sup> her company D.      here Cumpanye O.      her R.

<sup>20</sup> of maydeyns D.      of Maydenes O.      <sup>21</sup> wenten O.      <sup>22</sup> o O.

<sup>23</sup> called þe O.      <sup>24</sup> come O.      <sup>25</sup> were O.      <sup>26</sup> towards O.

hauen of <sup>1</sup>þe citee of Coloigne. ¶ The kyng of þe lande, þat me callede Gowan, was þo in þe citee; and when he wist þo<sup>2</sup> tydynges, þat so meny faire maydenes were þere arryuede, he tok<sup>3</sup> Elga his broþer, and oþere of his householde, wiþ him, and went to þe 4 shippes to see þat fair<sup>4</sup> company. and when he sawe ham so faire,<sup>4</sup> he and his company wolde haue ham ouerlayne, and bynome<sup>5</sup> here maydenhode. ¶ but Vrsula, þat gode mayde, conseilede, prayede, warnede, and tauzte ham þat were here felowes,<sup>6</sup> þat þai 8 shulde defende ham wiþ al her<sup>7</sup> myzt, and rap<sup>er</sup> suffre deth þan suffre here <sup>7</sup>bodies bene<sup>7</sup> defouled. ¶ So þat alle þe maydenes bicome so stedefast in God, þat þai defendede ham þrouz his<sup>8</sup> grace, so þat none of ham hade power<sup>9</sup> to done ham eny shame; 12 wherfore þe kyng was<sup>9</sup> so sore annoiede, þat he, for wrap, lete slee ham euerychoñ<sup>10</sup> anone ryght; and so were alle þe maidenes martrede for þe loue of God, and ligget<sup>11</sup> at Coloyne.

**How Kyng Gowan come forto destroye þis lande; and how 16**  
**aman of grete power<sup>9</sup>, þat me callede Gracian, defendede þe**  
**lande. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Qui[n]quagesimo ¶ Primo.**

**W**Hen al þis was done,<sup>12</sup> Kyng Gowan, þat was a sarasyn, callede his broþer Elga, and saide to him þat he shulde 20 gone<sup>13</sup> to conquere þe lande þat alle þo<sup>14</sup> faire maydenes were borne<sup>15</sup> in. and he ordeynede þo a grete power<sup>9</sup> of Peihtes, of Denmarc, of Orkeneye, and of Norwaye, and þai comen into þis lande, and brent tounes, and slough folc, and caste adone cherches and houses<sup>16</sup> of 24 religioun, and robbede the lande in lenth and in<sup>17</sup> brede, and put to deth alle þo þat wolde noght forsake þe ryght bileue and cristen-dome, for-asmyche as þere was none<sup>18</sup> souerayne in the lande þat myzt ham helpe or <sup>19</sup>defende. ¶ For þe Kyng Maximian hade 28 taken<sup>20</sup> wiþ him alle þe worþi men, when he went to conquere litil Britaigne. and in þe same tyme þat 3e hure now telle, was Seynt Albone martrede þrouz þe wode tyraunt Diodician in þe same place, wherin is now an Abbay made of Seynt Albone, whiles þat he was 32 a paynyme. ¶ But he conuertede him towarde God, þrouz þe pre-dicacioun of a grete clerc and a wyse, þat me callede Ancibeñ,<sup>21</sup> þat

<sup>1</sup> leaf 19.    <sup>2</sup> þe O.    <sup>3</sup> nome DO.    <sup>4</sup> fayne sic O.

<sup>5</sup> bynomen O.    <sup>6</sup> felawes D.    felaws O.    fellow R.    <sup>7-7</sup> body to be O.

<sup>8</sup> his O.    here R.    <sup>9</sup> Gowan wox D.    Gowan wax O.    <sup>10</sup> echon O.

<sup>11</sup> liggen D.    <sup>12</sup> do O.    <sup>13</sup> go DO.    <sup>14</sup> þe D.    <sup>15</sup> bore O.

<sup>16</sup> house O.    <sup>17</sup> om. O.    <sup>18</sup> no DO.    <sup>19</sup> leaf 19, back.

<sup>20</sup> take O.    <sup>21</sup> Affabeñ O.



was herburghede a nyght in his house ; and þis was after þe Incarnacio<sup>xx</sup>ñ of Ihesu Crist .ij. C. iij. vj 3ere. and men shullen<sup>1</sup> vnder stonde þat Seynt Albone soffrede his martredome bifore þat<sup>2</sup> Seynt  
 4 Edmund was martrede ; and þerfore is seynt Albone callede þe ferst<sup>t</sup> martre of Engelande. ¶ This Gowan<sup>s</sup> broþer, & his folk, þat<sup>3</sup> were Sarasyne<sup>s</sup>,<sup>4</sup> went þrouz-oute þe Lande, and destroyede al þing þat þai fonde ; and no þing þai ne sparede. ¶ When þis tyd-  
 8 yng come to Rome, how þat Kyng Gowan hade bigonne forto destroye þis lande, þe Emperour and þo of Rome sent a stronge man, and of grete power<sup>t</sup>, þat me callede Gracian, w[ith] xxiiij<sup>5</sup> M<sup>t</sup> men wel feightyng, forto caste oute Sarasyne of þis lande, and  
 12 alle þai arryuede<sup>6</sup> at Portesmouthe. Maximian myzt nouzt come him-self,<sup>7</sup> for-asmiche as he was chosen Emperoure after þe dep of Constantyn, þat was Seynt Elynes sone. ¶ When þis Gracian was arryuede wip his host<sup>t</sup>, he lete aspie priuely<sup>8</sup> wher þe<sup>9</sup> Kyng Gowan  
 16 myzt<sup>10</sup> bene founden<sup>10</sup> ; and he come vppoñ<sup>11</sup> hiñ sodeynly,<sup>11</sup> as þai Lay in her<sup>t</sup> beddes, <sup>12</sup>and descomfitede ham, and sloughe<sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup>eecheon,<sup>14</sup> þat non of hem Ascaped<sup>t</sup> saf Gowan, þat fledde with mych sorowe in-to his cuntre. Sone aftir yt byfel þat Maximian  
 20 was slayn at Rome, þurgh<sup>15</sup> treson ; And when Gracian wyst þe tydyng, he let Croune hym kyng of þis land.

**How Gracyan made hym kyng whan Maximian was slayn ; & after,<sup>16</sup> þe Brytouns quellede hym for his wikkydnesse.**

24 **Capitulo quinquagesimo ij<sup>o</sup>.**

**T**his Gracian,<sup>17</sup> when he gan<sup>17</sup> forto regne, he bycome so wykked & so sterne, & so mych sorow wrought to þe Britouns, þat þey slow hym amonges hem. ¶ Tho Kyng Gowan had vnderstande  
 28 þat Gracian was do<sup>18</sup> to deth, he Assembled a gret power, & come azen in-to þis land ; & yf he had arst don<sup>a</sup> <sup>19</sup>grete harme, þo dede he mych more ; for þo distroyed he al this land, & al<sup>20</sup> Crysten peple þat was in Myche Brytaine, so þat no man was so<sup>19</sup> hardy for-to  
 32 nempne God ; & ho þat dede, anon he was put to strong deth.

<sup>1</sup> shul D. Shulden O. <sup>2</sup> om. O. <sup>3</sup> þai D. <sup>4</sup> Sarasyne & D.

<sup>5</sup> xxiiij O. <sup>6</sup> arryueden O. <sup>7</sup> him D. <sup>8</sup> pryueliche D. <sup>9</sup> that D.

<sup>10-10</sup> be founde D. <sup>11-11</sup> ham sodeynliche D. hem sodeynly O.

<sup>12-12</sup> and slow ham in her beddes D. om. O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. Rawl. B. 171 has two leaves missing here. They have been supplied from MS. Douce 323 (O). [MS. Douce 323, leaf 17.]

<sup>14</sup> eneryche on D. <sup>15</sup> with D. <sup>16</sup> afterwarde D.

<sup>17-17</sup> when he biganne D. he began O. <sup>18</sup> done D. <sup>19</sup> om. D.

<sup>20</sup> alle þe D.

¶ But þe bysshop of London þat was þo, þat me called Gosselyn, scaped, & went þens to hem of Rome, to secche socour for-to helpe dystroye þe Sarazins þat had dystroyed þis land. ¶ And þe Romayns seyde<sup>1</sup> þat þey hadde be<sup>2</sup> so ofte anoyed for her sendyng 4 after folk in-to Brytaine, al for-to helpe þe Britouns, & þey wold no more so do.<sup>3</sup> And so þe Bysshop Gosselyn went þens with-out<sup>4</sup> ony Socour or helpe; & þo went he to þe Kyng of litil Brytaine, þat me called Aldroye, & þis was þe iij kyng after Gowan Meridiok, 8 as bfore is sayd. The bysshop prayed this Kyng Aldroye of socour & of helpe. the kyng hadde<sup>5</sup> herd how þe bysshop fledde, & how þat<sup>6</sup> þe<sup>7</sup> Crystene men were slayn in gret Brytaine þurgh Paynyns & Sarazins, & he graunted hym Constantyn his broþer, hym<sup>6</sup> for-to 12 helpe, with Poer of folk, & hem dede arraye hors armure, & schippes, & al thing þat hem neded to þat viage. and when al thing was redy, he called þe bysshop, & to hym seyde: "I take þou here to helpe & socour Constantyn my broþer, vpon this couenau<sup>nt</sup>, 16 þat ȝif God ȝife hym grace, þe Paynyns & Sarazins to schende & discomfite, þat þanne ȝe make hym kyng of þe land": & þe bysshop yt graunted with good wyll. ¶ Constantyn & þe bysshop<sup>8</sup> nome leue þo of þe Kyng Aldroye, & by-took hym to<sup>9</sup> God, & nome her 20 men xij M, & went in-to her schippes, & sayled toward þe gret Brytaine, & Arryued in Tottenesse. whan þe Britouns herd<sup>10</sup> þe tydyng<sup>10</sup> þat to hem come socour, þey<sup>11</sup> were stronglich holpyn, & ordeigned hem an huge nombre of peple,<sup>12</sup> & come to hem, & hem 24 vndirfongen with mychel honour. ¶ Gowan, anon as he wyste of this þyng, he Assemblyd aȝ þe Sarazins, & come aȝens hym,<sup>13</sup> & ȝaf batayll. And Constantyn slow hym with his owne hand; & aȝ þe othere Sarazins were discomfited & slayn, þat non aschaped but þo 28 þat were<sup>6</sup> conuerted vnto God.

**How Constantyn, þat was þe kynges broþer of litel Britaigne, was Crowned<sup>14</sup> kyng, for his worþines, of mych Bretaine.<sup>14</sup>**  
**Capitulo liij<sup>o</sup>.**

32

**A** non, aȝ þe batayll, alle þey went to London, & crowned þere Constantyn, & made hym kyng of þis lond. And þe bysshop Gosselyn sette þe Croune vpon his hed,<sup>15</sup> & anoynted hym, as

<sup>1</sup> sayden D.    <sup>2</sup> bene D.    <sup>3</sup> done D.<sup>4</sup> wiþ-outen D.    <sup>5</sup> hade grete pitee in hert when he D.<sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> MS. þe Chi, with Chi underlined for erasure.<sup>8</sup> bisshoþ tho D.    <sup>9</sup> him to D.    hym O.    <sup>10-10</sup> tydyngs D.<sup>11</sup> ther D.    <sup>12</sup> leaf 17, back.    <sup>13</sup> ham D.<sup>14-14</sup> kyng of michel britaigne for his worþinesse D.    <sup>15</sup> heuede D.

falleth to<sup>1</sup> A kyng <sup>2</sup>for-to be<sup>2</sup>; & þ<sup>o</sup> bygan Crystendom. This<sup>3</sup> Constantyn,<sup>4</sup> whan he was Crouned, anon aftir he spoused his wyf þurgh counceyl of þ<sup>e</sup> Britouns; & he begate iij Sones on her: 4 þ<sup>e</sup> ferst me called Constaunce,<sup>5</sup> þat other Aurylambros, & þ<sup>e</sup> iij Vter. ¶ Constance, þ<sup>e</sup> eldest brother, when he come to Age, made<sup>6</sup> hym a monke at Wynchestre. Constantyn here fadir was slayn þurgh tresow; for it byfeH vpon a tyme þat a Pohete come to hym 8 vpon a day, in Message as yt were, & seyð þat he wolde speke with þe kyng pryuyly<sup>7</sup> in Counceyl. The kyng lete voyde his Chambre of þ<sup>o</sup> men þat were with-Inne; & þo Abide<sup>8</sup> þere nomo<sup>9</sup> but þ<sup>e</sup> kyng & þe Pohete, & made a Contenaunce as þey<sup>10</sup> wolde 12 speke to-gidere<sup>11</sup> in his ere; & þere he qwellect hym with a long knyf; & after, went qweyntly out of þ<sup>e</sup> Chambre in-to anoper Chambre; so at þe laste no man wyst wher he was bycome.<sup>12</sup> ¶ When þ<sup>e</sup> kynges men it wyste, þat here lord was so deð, þei made 16 so mych sorowe<sup>13</sup> þey nyst <sup>14</sup>aH what for-to<sup>14</sup> done, for-as-mych as his ij sones, Aurylambros & Vter, weren so yenge þat non of hem myght be kyng; & þ<sup>e</sup> iij<sup>15</sup> broþer was monke at Wynchestre, as <sup>16</sup>I sayd before.<sup>16</sup> ¶ But Vortiger, þat was Erl of Westsex, þought 20 pryuyly<sup>17</sup> in his herte, thurgh queyntise, to be<sup>18</sup> kyng; & went to Wynchestre þer þat Constaunce was<sup>19</sup> monk, & to hym seyle: “Constaunce,” quod he, “þoure fadir is ded, & þour ij breþerin þat ben with Gosselyn, þe bysshop of London, to noryssh, beþ so yeng, 24 þat non of hem may be kyng; wherfore y counseyle þat 3e forsake þoure Abyte, & come<sup>20</sup> with me, & I schal do so to þ<sup>e</sup> Brytouns þat 3e schul be made kyng.”

Of Constaunce, þat was<sup>21</sup> Constantynus sone, þat was Monk at 28 Wynchestr; & how he was made kyng after his faders deth, þurgh CouncelH of Vortiger, þat was Erle of Westsex, for-as-mych as Aurilambros & Vter, his ij breþerin, were but of yonge age, & <sup>22</sup>was slayn.<sup>22</sup> Capitulo liiij<sup>o</sup>.

32 **T**his Vortiger counceyled þis Constaunce so mych tyl he forsook his Abyte, & went with hym. & anon aftir, he was Crouned and made kyng by Assent of þ<sup>e</sup> Brytouns. This kyng Constance,

<sup>1</sup> for D.      <sup>2-2</sup> to bene D.      <sup>3</sup> This kyng D.

<sup>4</sup> MS. has Constantyn her fadir, with her fadir struck out.

<sup>5</sup> Constance and D.      <sup>6</sup> he made D.      make O.      <sup>7</sup> pryueliche D.

<sup>8</sup> abode D.      <sup>9</sup> noman D.      <sup>10</sup> thouȝ he D.      <sup>11</sup> with þe kyng<sup>1</sup> D.

<sup>12</sup> bicomē D.      <sup>13</sup> sorw that D.      <sup>14-14</sup> what to D.      <sup>15</sup> eldest D.

<sup>16-16</sup> is saide biforne D.      <sup>17</sup> pryueliche D.      <sup>18</sup> ben D.

<sup>19</sup> was made D.      <sup>20</sup> comeþ D.      <sup>21</sup> was kyng<sup>1</sup> D.

<sup>22-22</sup> Vortiger lete him slee to ben kyng<sup>1</sup> himself<sup>1</sup> D.

whan he was crowned & made kyng, he wist ne knew but litil of þ<sup>e</sup> world, ne cowde<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup>no thing as knyghthood axed, he made Vortiger his maister & his chef Couuceillour, & gaf hym aH his power, for-to ordeigne & do as myche as to þ<sup>e</sup> reaume perteyned, so 4 þat hym-self no þing<sup>4</sup> entrauelled, but only<sup>3</sup> bare þ<sup>e</sup> name of kyng.  
¶ Whan Vortiger saw þat he had al þ<sup>e</sup>4 land in his warde & gouernayle, at his owne wyH, he þought A pryue Treson, & þought to sle Constance þ<sup>e</sup> kyng, þat he myght hym-self <sup>5</sup>be 8 Crowned & made<sup>5</sup> kyng & regne, & lete sende after a<sup>6</sup> C knyghttes of Pehetes, þ<sup>e</sup> worthiest of<sup>7</sup> þ<sup>e</sup> land, & hem helde<sup>8</sup> with hym, <sup>9</sup>to duelle wiþ him, <sup>10</sup>and<sup>9</sup> to bene<sup>10</sup> Kepers of his body, as he wolde wende prouþ þe lande to ordeyne þinges þat perteynede to a Kyng. 12  
¶ And þis Vortiger honourede so miche þo C knyghtes, and so miche gaf ham of golde and siluer, & so ryche reweH,<sup>11</sup> robes, hors, and opere noble plente, wherfore þai helde him more lorde þan þai deden<sup>12</sup> þe kyng. ¶ And Vortiger<sup>1</sup> tolde ham, if þat he <sup>13</sup>moste 16 bene<sup>13</sup> kyng, he,<sup>6</sup> as it were prouþ tresoun, he wolde make ham<sup>14</sup> richest of þe lande. so<sup>15</sup> at the laste, prouþ grete ȝiftes þat he<sup>16</sup> hade ȝeue largely, þai crieden<sup>17</sup> prouþ þe court þat Vortiger were better worþi ben<sup>18</sup> kyng þan Constance; wherfore Vortiger made sem- 20 blant as þauþ<sup>19</sup> he hade bene<sup>20</sup> wroþ, and departede þens fro þe court, and saide he most <sup>21</sup>gone elles-where<sup>21</sup> for þing þat he hade to done; and so þe traitoure ȝede<sup>22</sup> for<sup>23</sup> enchesoun þat þai<sup>24</sup> shulde slee <sup>25</sup>him, þat is to seyne,<sup>25</sup> Constance. ¶ When þis Vortiger was 24 gone, hit bifelle sone after þat þo C knyghtz of Peightes breken<sup>26</sup> þe dores of þe kynges chambre, and þere þai him slough and smoten<sup>27</sup> of his heuede,<sup>28</sup> and bare it to Vortiger þere þat he duellede. and when Vortiger saw þat heuede,<sup>28</sup> he wepte ful tenderly wiþ his eye; 28 and noþeelse he was some dele glade of his deth, and anone lete take þo<sup>29</sup> C knyghtes of Peightes, & bonde<sup>30</sup> here hondes bihynde ham, and lade ham to London; & þere þai were dampnede to deth

<sup>1</sup> couþe D.<sup>2</sup> leaf 18.<sup>3</sup> onliche D.<sup>4</sup> þis D.<sup>5-5</sup> ben cronede D.<sup>6</sup> om. D.<sup>7</sup> of al D.<sup>8</sup> with-helde D.<sup>9-9</sup> om. D.

[MS. Rowl. B. 171, leaf 20.]

<sup>10-10</sup> as to be O.<sup>11</sup> Jewels O.<sup>12</sup> þai deden D.

þey dede O. deden R.

<sup>13-13</sup> miȝt ben D.

must be O.

<sup>14</sup> hym O.<sup>15</sup> So þat O.<sup>16</sup> þai D.<sup>17</sup> cryede D. Cryede O.<sup>18</sup> to be O.<sup>19</sup> om. D O.<sup>21</sup> be O.<sup>21-21</sup> gone elles-whider D. go elles-whedir O.<sup>22</sup> saide D.

seyde O.

<sup>23</sup> MS. for tresoun, with tresoun underlined for erasure.<sup>24</sup> MS. þat.<sup>25-25</sup> om. D. hym þat is to sey O.<sup>26</sup> broken D.<sup>27</sup> smytten O.<sup>28</sup> heeþ O.<sup>29</sup> þe D.<sup>30</sup> bynde O.

as false *traitours*. ¶ and anone after, al þe britons of þe lande, by commune assent, cronede þere Vortiger, & made him kyng of þe<sup>1</sup> lande.

4 How þe wardeynes þat hade þo<sup>2</sup> ij<sup>3</sup> childerne to kepe, þat were  
 4Constantines sones, lade ham to litel Britaigne, for the  
 tresouñ and falsenesse of Vortiger. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Quin-  
 quagesimo ¶ Quinto.

8 **T**His kyng Vortiger, when he was cronede, þo þat<sup>5</sup> hade þe ij<sup>5</sup>  
 childerne in kepyng, Aurilambros and Vter, prou3 ordenance  
 of Gosselyn, þat was bisshop of London at his deþ, derst nou3t  
 duelle in the lande wiþ þe childerne,<sup>6</sup> but lade ham to þe kyng of  
 12 litel Britaigne, forasmiche as he þo wiste þe tresouñ of Vortiger, þat  
 þo was made Kyng, prou3 wham Constance here broþer was slayn,  
 wherfore þo C kny3tes of Peightes were put to þe<sup>3</sup> deth, and bare  
 al þe blame, as þei3t Vortiger<sup>7</sup> hade nou3t wiste<sup>7</sup> þerof, noþer þerto  
 16 consentede; and so þe Kepers of þo ij childerne drade<sup>8</sup> laste  
 Vortiger wolde put ham to deth, prou3 his tresouñ and falsenesse, as  
 he hade done<sup>9</sup> her broþer biforne; and þerfor þai wer ladde ouer  
 into litel Britaigne, and þe kyng ham reseeyuede wiþ michel<sup>10</sup>  
 20 honour, and lete ham to norisshe; and þere þai duelled til þai  
 bicome fair kny3tez, &<sup>3</sup> st[r]ong and ferse, and pou3t<sup>11</sup> euer to  
 bene<sup>12</sup> avengede of<sup>13</sup> þe deth of Constantyne<sup>14</sup> here broþer, when  
 þai saw here tyme; and so þai deden,<sup>15</sup> as þe<sup>16</sup> shul hur<sup>17</sup> aftirward.  
 24 ¶ Hit was nou3t long after, þat<sup>18</sup> þe tydynges ne<sup>18</sup> come ouer þe see,  
 to þe kynrede of þe C kny3tez of<sup>19</sup> Peightes þat were dampnede and  
 put to þe<sup>20</sup> deth prou3 Vortiger in þis lande; þerfore þai<sup>21</sup> weren  
 wonderly<sup>21</sup> wrope, & sworn þat þai<sup>22</sup> [<sup>23</sup>would be<sup>23</sup> avenged of her  
 28 kins death,] and comen into þis lande wiþ a grete power, & rob-  
 beden<sup>24</sup> in meny places, & slou3,<sup>25</sup> & dede<sup>26</sup> al þe sorw þat<sup>27</sup> þai  
 my3t. ¶ When Vortiger hit wiste, he<sup>28</sup> made<sup>29</sup> sorw ynow<sup>29</sup> and

<sup>1</sup> þis D.      <sup>2</sup> om. O.      <sup>3</sup> om. D.      <sup>4</sup> leaf 20, back.

<sup>5-5</sup> hade þo D. ij sic O.

<sup>6</sup> MS. childerne of þe lande, *with* of þe lande *underlined for erasure*.

<sup>7-7</sup> wist nou3t D.      <sup>8</sup> dradden O.      <sup>9</sup> do O.

<sup>10</sup> mych O.      <sup>11</sup> boughten O.      <sup>12</sup> be O.      <sup>13</sup> vpon O.

<sup>14</sup> Constaunce O.      <sup>15</sup> dede O.      <sup>16</sup> 3e DO.

<sup>17</sup> her tel D. her telle O.

<sup>18-18</sup> tydyng O.      <sup>19</sup> of þe O.      <sup>20</sup> om. DO.

<sup>21-21</sup> weren wonder D. were wonderly O.      <sup>22</sup> MS. þai wonderly wroþ.

<sup>23-23</sup> wolde ben D. wolden ben O.      <sup>24</sup> robbed O.

<sup>25</sup> quelled in meny places D. quelled O.      <sup>26</sup> deden D.      <sup>27</sup> as O.

<sup>28</sup> leaf 21.      <sup>29-29</sup> miche sorw D. mych sorowe O.

sore was annoyede; and in a-noþer partie also tydynges<sup>1</sup> come<sup>2</sup> þat Aurilambros & Vter<sup>3</sup> ordeynede ham,<sup>4</sup> and assemblede a grete hoste forto<sup>5</sup> come into michel<sup>6</sup> Britaigne, þat is to seyne, into þis lande, to bene<sup>7</sup> avenged of Constance<sup>8</sup> dep her broþer<sup>8</sup>; so þat<sup>4</sup> in one<sup>9</sup> half and in þat oþer he was brouȝt into so<sup>10</sup> miche sorwe þat he nyst whider to wende.

**How Engist and xj M<sup>i</sup> men come into þis lande, to whom Vortiger ȝaf a place þat<sup>11</sup> is callede<sup>11</sup> Thongecastel. 8 Capitulo lvj<sup>to</sup>.**

**A**Nd sone after þis<sup>12</sup> sorw, tidynges<sup>12</sup> come to Vortiger, þat a grete nauye<sup>13</sup> of straungers were arryuede in<sup>14</sup> Kent; but þai wist nouȝt whens<sup>15</sup> þai were, ne wherfore þai were comen.<sup>16</sup> ¶ The Kyng sent anone messagers<sup>17</sup> pider, þat somme of ham shulde come and speke wiþ him, forto wete what fole þai werne, and what þai axede, and into what contre þai wolde gone.<sup>18</sup> ¶ þere were ij breþerne, Prynces and maistres of þat straunge company: 16 þat on me callede Engist, and þat oþere Horn. Engist went þo<sup>10</sup> to þe kyng, & tolde to him encheson wherfore þai were þere arryuede in his<sup>19</sup> lande, and saide: “sire! we beth<sup>20</sup> of a contre þat<sup>21</sup> is callede<sup>21</sup> Saxoyne, þat is, þe Lande of Germain, wherein is 20 so<sup>10</sup> miche sorw, þat<sup>22</sup> þe peple is<sup>23</sup> so myche þat þe lande may<sup>24</sup> nouȝt ham<sup>24</sup> sustene ne suffice. ¶ The maystres & Prynces þat haueþ<sup>25</sup> þe lande to gouerne and rewele, shul done come bifore ham men and wymmen, þe<sup>26</sup> holdest<sup>27</sup> þat bene amonges ham 24 and best mowen<sup>27</sup> trauaile into diuerse<sup>28</sup> londes; and so þai<sup>29</sup> shal<sup>30</sup> ham ȝeue Horse and harneyse, armure, and al þing þat ham nedeþ; and after þai<sup>31</sup> say to ham þat þai go into an oþer contre, wher þat<sup>4</sup> þai<sup>32</sup> mowen leue,<sup>32</sup> as here auncestres deden<sup>33</sup> 28 biforne ham. and þerfore, sire kyng, if<sup>34</sup> ȝe haue ouȝt to

<sup>1</sup> tydyng<sup>i</sup> O. <sup>2</sup> come to him D. come to hym O.

<sup>3</sup> Vter<sup>3</sup> his broþer DO. <sup>4</sup> om. D. <sup>5</sup> for D. <sup>6</sup> Mich O.

<sup>7</sup> be O. <sup>8-8</sup> hir broþeres deth D. here broþers deth O.

<sup>9-9</sup> on o O. <sup>10</sup> om. O. <sup>11-11</sup> Called is O.

<sup>12-12</sup> sorwe tydyng D. tydyng O.

<sup>13</sup> meny D. meyne O. <sup>14</sup> in the contre of D. in þe Cuntre of O.

<sup>15</sup> what D. <sup>16</sup> come O. <sup>17</sup> a messenger D. a messenger O.

<sup>18</sup> go O. <sup>19</sup> þis O. <sup>20</sup> be O. <sup>21-21</sup> called is O. <sup>22</sup> þat yf O.

<sup>23</sup> be O. <sup>24-24</sup> hem not O. <sup>25</sup> haue DO. <sup>26</sup> that bene D.

<sup>27-27</sup> amonges ham forto fȝt þat best mow D. þat ben among hem for-to fight þat best mow O.

<sup>28</sup> diuerse D. diuers O. <sup>29</sup> leaf 21, back. <sup>30</sup> shullen D.

<sup>31</sup> þai shul D. þey schul O.

<sup>32-32</sup> mow leuen D. mow lyne O. <sup>33</sup> dede O. <sup>34</sup> and D.

done wip oure company, we <sup>1</sup> bene comen<sup>1</sup> into 3oure lande; and wip gode wille 3ow wil *serue*, and 3our<sup>1</sup> lande helpe, kepe, & defende fram<sup>2</sup> 3oure enemys, if þat 3ow nedeþ." ¶ when Vortiger<sup>4</sup> herde þis tydynges,<sup>3</sup> he saide he wolde gladeliche<sup>4</sup> wiphalde ham, oppoñ soche couenant, if þai myzt delyuer<sup>1</sup> his lande of his enemys, he wolde 3eue ham resonable landes, wher<sup>1</sup> þai shulde duelle for euermore. ¶ Engist þankede him godeliche; and in þis maner<sup>1</sup> he<sup>8</sup> and his company, ¶ xj. M<sup>1</sup> men, shulde duelle wip þe Kyng Vortiger; and so miche þai deden<sup>5</sup> þrouz here boldenesse, þat þai delyuerede þe lande clene of here<sup>6</sup> enemys. ¶ þo praiede Engist þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>, of so miche lande þat he myzt make to him a citee, for<sup>12</sup> him and for his menyne.<sup>7</sup> ¶ The kyng ansuerede<sup>8</sup> & saide,<sup>8</sup> 'it was nouzt forto done<sup>9</sup> wipouten<sup>10</sup> conseille of his Britons.' ¶ Engist prayede him eftesones of as miche place as he myzt compasse wip a twonge of a skyn, wher<sup>1</sup> oppoñ he myzt make him<sup>16</sup> a maner<sup>1</sup>, and for his to duelle in<sup>11</sup>; and þe kyng grantede it<sup>12</sup> frely. ¶ þo tok<sup>13</sup> Engist a bole skyn, and cotte it as smale as he myzt<sup>14</sup>, al<sup>14</sup> into a twonge al rounde, & þer-wip compassede as miche lande as he<sup>15</sup> compassede; wher oppoñ he<sup>15</sup> made<sup>16</sup> a faire castel. and when þis castel was ymade,<sup>17</sup> he lete calle it Twongecastel, for-as miche as þe place was merkede wip a twonge.

Of Ronewenne, þat was Engistes doughter<sup>1</sup>, <sup>18</sup> and how<sup>19</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup> Vortiger [spou]sede her<sup>20</sup> for here beaute.<sup>20</sup> C. lviij<sup>mo</sup>.

24 **W**hen þis castel was makede,<sup>21</sup> and ful wel arraiede, Engist priuely sent bi lettre into þe contre þat he come of, after<sup>22</sup> an<sup>22</sup> hundrede shippis fillede with strange<sup>23</sup> men þat were bolde and wel feiztyng<sup>1</sup> in alle batailes; and þat þai shulde bryng<sup>1</sup> wip<sup>28</sup> ham Ronewenne, his douzter, þat was þe fairest creature þat eny<sup>24</sup> man myzt see. ¶ And when þe peple was comen, þat he hade<sup>22</sup> sende after<sup>1</sup>, he toke<sup>25</sup> ham into þe castel wip michel<sup>26</sup> ioye; and him<sup>27</sup> him-self, vpon a day, went vnto þe kyng<sup>1</sup>, and prayede him<sup>32</sup> derworly<sup>28</sup> þat he wolde come and see his new maner<sup>1</sup>, þat he hade made in þe place þat he hade compassede wip þe<sup>29</sup> twong of þe

<sup>1-1</sup> be come O.    <sup>2</sup> fro O.    <sup>3</sup> tydyng<sup>1</sup> DO.    <sup>4</sup> gladly DO.  
<sup>5</sup> dede O.    <sup>6</sup> his DO.    <sup>7</sup> meyne O.    <sup>8-8</sup> om. DO.    <sup>9</sup> do O.  
<sup>10</sup> wip-oute D.    <sup>11</sup> with-oute O.    <sup>12</sup> on DO.    <sup>13</sup> him D.    <sup>14</sup> hym O.  
<sup>15</sup> nome DO.    <sup>16</sup> om. O.    <sup>17-17</sup> om. DO.    <sup>18</sup> made vpon O.  
<sup>19</sup> made D.    <sup>20</sup> leaf 22.    <sup>21</sup> how þe D.    <sup>22-22</sup> om. O.    <sup>23</sup> made O.  
<sup>24</sup> om. D.    <sup>25</sup> stronge D.    <sup>26</sup> a DO.    <sup>27</sup> nome DO.    <sup>28</sup> mych O.  
<sup>29</sup> om. DO.    <sup>30</sup> derworthly D.    <sup>31</sup> deworlyly O.    <sup>32</sup> a D.

skyn. þe kyng anone *grantede*<sup>1</sup> him frely, and wiþ him went  
 þider<sup>2</sup>, and was wel payede wiþ þe castel & wiþ þe faire werk<sup>3</sup>; and  
 togederes þere þai eten and dranken<sup>4</sup> wiþ michel<sup>5</sup> ioye. ¶ And  
 when nyȝt come, þat<sup>6</sup> þe kyng shulde go into his chambre forto<sup>7</sup> 4  
 take þere his nyȝtes reste, Ronewenne, þat was Engistes douȝter<sup>8</sup>,  
 come wiþ a coupe of golde in here honde, and knelede bifore þe  
 kyng, and saide to him “Whatsaile!” and þe kyng wist nouȝt  
 what it was forto<sup>9</sup> mene, ne what he shulde ansuere, for-asmiche as 8  
 himself<sup>10</sup> ne none of his Britons ȝitte coupe<sup>11</sup> none Engliſſhe speke,  
 ne vnderſtonde it, but ſpeken<sup>12</sup> þo þat<sup>13</sup> ſame langage þat Britons  
 ȝitte done. ¶ Noþeles, a Latymer<sup>14</sup> tolde þe kyng<sup>15</sup> þe fulle vnder-  
 ſtondyng<sup>16</sup> þerof ‘whatsaill’; and <sup>17</sup>þat oþer shulde<sup>18</sup> ansuere<sup>19</sup> 12  
 ‘drynkehaile’: and þat was þe feſt tyme þat ‘whatsaile’ and  
 ‘drynkehaile’ come vp into þis lande; and fram<sup>20</sup> þat<sup>21</sup> tyme into<sup>22</sup> 13  
 this tyme it Haþ bene wel vſede. ¶ The Kyng Vortiger<sup>23</sup> ſaw<sup>24</sup> 15 þe  
 faireneſſe of Ronewenne, and his<sup>25</sup> armes layde aboute here 16  
 nek<sup>26</sup>, and þries<sup>27</sup> ſwetely cuſſede hir<sup>28</sup>; and anone ryȝt he was  
 vnarmede oppoñ hire, þat he deſired to haue here to wyf, and  
 axede of Engiſt<sup>29</sup> hir<sup>30</sup> fader<sup>31</sup>. and Engiſt *grantede*<sup>32</sup>, oppoñ þis  
 couenaunt þat þe kyng shulde ȝeue him al the<sup>33</sup> contre of Kent, þat 20  
 he myȝt duelle in, and al his<sup>34</sup> people. þe kyng hym *grantede* priuely  
 with a gode wille; and anone after<sup>35</sup> he ſpouſede þe damiſeH. þat was  
 miche confuſiō to himſelf; and þerfor al þe Britouns bi come ſo  
 wroþ, for encheſouñ þat he hade ſpouſede a womman of mysbileue, 24  
 wherfore þai went al from<sup>36</sup> him, and noþyng<sup>37</sup> to him toke kepe,  
 ne helpe him in þinges þat he hade to done.

**How Vortymere, þat was Vortigers ſone, was made kyng, &  
 Engiſt dryuen oute; & how Vortymer<sup>38</sup> was ſlayn prouȝ; 28  
 Ronewenne. ¶ *Capitulo lviiij*<sup>39</sup>.**

**T**His Engiſt went into Kent, and ſeiſede al þe lande into<sup>40</sup> his  
 hande, for him and for al<sup>41</sup> his men: and bi come in<sup>42</sup> a litel  
 while of ſo grete power<sup>43</sup>, & ſo miche peple hade, þat men wiſt 32  
 nouȝt in litel tyme, whiche were þe kynges men, & whiche were

<sup>1</sup> *graunt* O.    <sup>2</sup> *drunken* O.    <sup>3</sup> *mych* O.    <sup>4</sup> *om.* D.

<sup>5</sup> to DO.    <sup>6</sup> *coude* O.    <sup>7</sup> *spoken* D.    <sup>8</sup> þe O.

<sup>9-11</sup> þe oþer shul D.    þat other O.    <sup>10</sup> *Answer* schul be O.

<sup>11</sup> fro O.    <sup>12</sup> *leaf 22, back.*    <sup>13</sup> to D.

<sup>14</sup> *MS. has Ronewenne; om.* D.    <sup>15</sup> þo ſaw D.    whan he ſaw O.

<sup>16</sup> *altered from hir<sup>3</sup> by the ſame hand.*    <sup>17</sup> *iiij* DO.    <sup>18</sup> *om.* O.

<sup>19</sup> him al the D.    hym al þe O.    him R.    <sup>20</sup> *MS. his his.*

<sup>21</sup> fro O.    <sup>22</sup> þo þing *sic* D.    <sup>23</sup> in O.    <sup>24</sup> *om.* DO.



Engistes men. wherfore al Britaigne hade of ham<sup>1</sup> drede, and saide amonges ham þat, if þai ne toke opere counseil bituene<sup>2</sup> ham, al þe lande shulde be bitrayede prouz Engist and his peple.

4 ¶ Vortyger þe kyng hade bigeten<sup>3</sup> on his ferst wif iij sonen: þe ferst me callede Vortimer<sup>4</sup>; þe secunde, Catagren; and þe þridde, Passent. þe Britons, euerychoñ<sup>4</sup> by one assent<sup>4</sup>, chosen<sup>5</sup> Vortymer forto bene<sup>6</sup> here lorde, & here souerayne, and hir<sup>7</sup> conserler<sup>7</sup> in

8 euery<sup>7</sup> bataile, and cronede him, and made him Kyng<sup>8</sup>, and Wolde<sup>8</sup> soffre Vortiger<sup>9</sup> no longer<sup>9</sup> to regne, for enchesoun of þe alliance bituene Engist and him. ¶ þe Britons ordeynede a grete host to drif out Engist and his company of þe lande, and 3af him iij

12 batailles: þe ferst was in Kent, þere þat he was lorde; þe secunde was att Tetteforþ<sup>10</sup>; and þe þridde was in a shire a þis half Cool, in a more. & in þis batail ham mette Cattegren and Horn, Engistes broþer, so þat eueryche<sup>9</sup> of ham slou3 oper; but for-asmiche as<sup>10</sup> þe

16 contre was 3euen<sup>11</sup> longe bifore to Horn, prouz Vortyger, þo he hade spousesede his cosyn; þere he hade made a faire castel þat me callede Horncastel, after<sup>9</sup> his owen name. ¶ And Vortymere was so annoiede for his broþeres deþ, Cattegren, þat he was dede in soche

20 a maner; wherfore anone he lete felle þe castel to þe<sup>12</sup> grounde, and after<sup>9</sup> þat,<sup>12</sup> he ne lefte ny3t ne day til he hade dryuen<sup>13</sup> out Engist and aH his peple of þe lande. ¶ And when Engist was dryuen<sup>13</sup> away, Ronewenne his dou3ter made sorwe ynow, and

24 queyntly spake to ham þat were nexte þe kyng Vortymere,<sup>14</sup> and priueest wiþ him. and so miche she 3af ham of 3iftes, þat he was apoyssenede, & deide at London þe iij 3ere of his regne; & þere he lith.

28 How þe Britons chosen<sup>15</sup> a-noþere tyme Vortyger to bene<sup>16</sup> here king; and Engist come into þis lande a3eyne, & þai fou3ten to-gedres.<sup>17</sup> ¶ *Capitulo lixº.*

32 A fter<sup>9</sup> Vortymeres deþ,<sup>18</sup> þe Britons, by here commune assent, Eftesonnes made Vortyger here kyng<sup>1</sup>, vppoñ þis couenaunt, þat he shulde neuer after<sup>9</sup> soffren<sup>19</sup> Engist, ne none of his, eftesonnes shulde<sup>20</sup> come into þis lande. ¶ And when al þis was done,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ham a, with a underlined for omission. him D. hym O.

<sup>2</sup> bituenes D. <sup>3</sup> bygete O. <sup>4</sup> echeon O. <sup>5</sup> closen sic D. <sup>6</sup> be DO.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 23. <sup>8</sup> wolde nou3t D. <sup>9</sup> eche O. <sup>10</sup> þat O. <sup>11</sup> 3eue D. yeue O.

<sup>12</sup> om. O. <sup>13</sup> dryve O. <sup>14</sup> Vortiger O. <sup>15</sup> chose O. <sup>16</sup> be O.

<sup>17</sup> to-gidere O. <sup>18</sup> deth the britouns D. deth þe brytouns O. deþ R.

<sup>19</sup> soffre D. suffre O. <sup>20</sup> om. DO.

Ronewenne þe Quene<sup>1</sup> sent priuely<sup>1</sup> by lettre to Engist, that she hade enpoisenede Vortymer', and þat Vortyger' her' lorde <sup>2</sup>azeyne bare þe crowne and regnede, and þat he shulde come azeine into<sup>3</sup> þat lande, wel arraiede wiþ miche peple, forto avenge him vpon 4 þe Britons, and to wynne his lande azeine. ¶ of þis tydyng Engist made grete ioye, and apparailede him hastely wiþ xv M<sup>t</sup> men þat were dougty en euery batail. And when Vortyger herde telle þat Engist was comen<sup>4</sup> azeine wiþ a grete power' into þis lande, he 8 assemblede his Britons, and þo went azeins Engist forto haue 3eue him bataile, and his fole; but Engist drade him sore of þe Britons, for þai hade descomfitede<sup>5</sup> him biforn-hand, and dryuen him<sup>6</sup> out by<sup>7</sup> strengþ; wherfore Engist prayede him<sup>8</sup> of a loue-day, and 12 saide he was nougt comen<sup>9</sup> forto figh, but forto<sup>10</sup> haue his lande azeine of Kent, if he might accorde wiþ þe Britons, and of ham haue grace. ¶ <sup>11</sup>The Kyng<sup>t</sup> Vortiger,<sup>11</sup> prou3 conseile of his Britons, <sup>12</sup>grauntede a loue-day<sup>12</sup>; and þus it was ordeynede prou3 þe Britons, 16 þat þilk<sup>13</sup> loue-day shulde <sup>14</sup>ben holden<sup>14</sup> faste bisides Salesbury, vpon an<sup>15</sup> huþ; and Engist shulde come þider' wiþ iiij<sup>c</sup> kny3tes, wiþouten<sup>16</sup> mo, and þe kyng wiþ as meny of þe wisest of þis<sup>17</sup> lande. ¶ And at þat day þe kyng come wiþ his conseil, as it was 20 ordeynede; but Engist hade warnede his kny3tes priueliche,<sup>18</sup> and <sup>19</sup>ham commandede þat eueryche<sup>20</sup> of ham shulde put a Longe Knyf in his hose; and when he saide, "faire sires! now is tyme forto<sup>21</sup> speke of loue and pees," eueryche<sup>22</sup> anone, eueryche<sup>s</sup> shulde draw 24 his knyf & slee a Britoun. & so þai quelled xxi M<sup>t</sup> & lxj of kny3tes; and wiþ miche sorwe meny of ham ascapede; and Vortyger him-self was taken <sup>23</sup>and Lade to Twongecastel, and put into prisoun; and somme of Engistes men wolde þat þe kyng 28 hade bene<sup>24</sup> brent al quyk. ¶ And Vortiger' þo, to haue his lif, grauntede ham as miche as þai <sup>25</sup>wolde axen,<sup>25</sup> and 3af vp all þe lande, tounes and castelles, citees and Burghes, to Engist and to his fole. and alle þe Britons fledde þenns into Walys, and þere 32 helde ham stille. and Engist went prou3 þe lande, and seisede alle þe lande with ffraunchises; and in euery place lete caste adoun

<sup>1-1</sup> priueliche sent D. priuily sent O. <sup>2</sup> leaf 23, back. <sup>3</sup> to O.

<sup>4</sup> MS. cocomen; come O. <sup>5</sup> scomfitede D. scomfited O.

<sup>6</sup> om. O. <sup>7</sup> with DO. <sup>8</sup> om. DO. <sup>9</sup> come into þis land DO.

<sup>10</sup> to O. <sup>11-11</sup> And kyng<sup>t</sup> Vortyger graunt a loue-day D. The kyng O.

<sup>12-12</sup> om. D. <sup>13</sup> þat same D. þe same O.

<sup>14-14</sup> he holde D. he hold O. <sup>15</sup> a D. <sup>16</sup> without DO.

<sup>17</sup> his DO. <sup>18</sup> priuily O. <sup>19</sup> & to D. <sup>20</sup> eche O. <sup>21</sup> to DO.

<sup>22</sup> eche O. <sup>23</sup> leaf 24. <sup>24</sup> be O. <sup>25-25</sup> wolden axe O.

chercheȝ and houses of religioun, and destroyede Cristendome  
 prouȝ þe lande, and lete chaunge þe name of þe lande, þat no man  
 of his were so hardy after þat tyme to calle þis<sup>1</sup> lande Britaigne,  
 4 but calle it Engistes lande; and he<sup>2</sup> departede alle þat lande to his  
 men, and þere made vij kynges forto strengþ þe lande, þat þe  
 Britons shulde neuer after come þerin. ¶ The ferst kyngdome  
 was Kent, þere þat Engist him-self regnede, and was lorde &  
 8 maystre ouer al þe<sup>2</sup> opere; ¶ Anopere kyng hade Southseȝ, where  
 now is Chichestre; ¶ The þridde kyng hade Westseȝ; The ferþe  
 kyng hade Esseȝ; ¶ The v kyng hade Estangle, þat now is callede  
 Northfolc,<sup>3</sup> Southfolc,<sup>4</sup> Merchemeriche, þat<sup>5</sup> is to seynt, þe Erldome  
 12 of Nichol; ¶ þe sixte hade Leycestreshire, Northamptonshire,  
 Hereford and Huntyngdoun; ¶ The vij hade Oxenford, Gloucestr',  
 Wynchestre, Warwik and Darby-shire.

**How Vortiger went into Walis, and biganne þere a castel, þat**  
 16 **wolde nouȝt stande wipouten<sup>6</sup> mortar' temprede wip**  
**mannes<sup>7</sup> blode. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo.**

<sup>8</sup>**W**Hen Engist hade departede al þe lande in this maner'  
 bituene his men, he delyuerede Vortiger' out of prisoñ,  
 20 and soffrede hym frely<sup>9</sup> to gone<sup>9</sup> whider' þat<sup>2</sup> he wolde. and he  
 toke<sup>10</sup> his way, <sup>11</sup>and went<sup>11</sup> into Walys, þere þat<sup>12</sup> his Britons  
 duellede, forasmiche as þat lande was strong<sup>t</sup> and wikkede to  
 wyne. and Engist <sup>13</sup>neuer' come<sup>13</sup> þere, ne knew<sup>14</sup> neuer bifore  
 24 þat Lande. ¶ Vortiger helde him þere wip his Britons, and axede  
 conseil what him<sup>4</sup> was best al<sup>4</sup> forto done; and þai ȝaf him conseil  
 to make a stronge castel þat he myȝt him-self þerin kepe and  
 defende<sup>15</sup> if it<sup>2</sup> nede were. Masounes in hast þere<sup>16</sup> were fette, and  
 28 bigonne þe werk' oppoñ þe huȝ of Breigh; but certes þus it bi-felle,  
 þat<sup>7</sup> al the werk' þat<sup>4</sup> þe masounes made<sup>17</sup> aday, adoune it felle  
 anyȝt; and þat ferede so iij tymes or iiij, wherof þai hadden<sup>18</sup> grete  
 wonder' what it myȝt bene<sup>19</sup>; & þerof þe kyng was sore annoiede of  
 32 þat chaunce, and wist nouȝt what to done; wherfore he lete sende  
 after' þe wisest' clerkes, and also lewede men þat weren<sup>20</sup> prouȝ-out  
 Walys, þat myȝht bene<sup>21</sup> fonde, for þai shulde telle wherfore þe

<sup>1</sup> þat D.    <sup>2</sup> om. O.    <sup>3</sup> Northfolk & O.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5</sup> þat now O.    <sup>6</sup> with-oute DO.    <sup>7</sup> om. DO.    <sup>8</sup> leaf 24, back.

<sup>9-9</sup> go D. to go O.    <sup>10</sup> nome DO.    <sup>11-11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12</sup> as D.

<sup>13-13</sup> come neuer D.    <sup>14</sup> knew it D.    <sup>15</sup> defende yt O.

<sup>16</sup> þo DO.    <sup>17</sup> masouns made DO.    <sup>18</sup> masounes R.

<sup>18</sup> hade D.    <sup>19</sup> had O.    <sup>20</sup> were O.    <sup>21</sup> be DO.

foundement so failede vnde[r] þe werk<sup>1</sup>, and þat þai shulde him telle what was best to done. and when þe wisest men<sup>1</sup> longe tyme hade studiet, þai saide to þe kyng<sup>1</sup> þat ‘he shulde done<sup>2</sup> sike a childe borne of a woman þat neuer hade wiþ man to done,<sup>2</sup> & þat 4 childe he shulde sleen,<sup>3</sup> & temper wiþ his<sup>4</sup> blode þe mortar of þe werk, & so shulle<sup>5</sup> þe werke<sup>6</sup> endure euermore<sup>6</sup> wiþouten ende.’

**How þe kyng<sup>1</sup> lete seche Merlyn<sup>7</sup> prou3 al Walys forto speke wiþ him. Capitulo lxj<sup>o</sup>.**

8

**W**hen þe kyng herde þis, he commandede his messagers anone to wende prou3-out al Walys, to seche þat childe if þai myght<sup>8</sup> him fynde,<sup>8</sup> and þat þai<sup>9</sup> shulde<sup>10</sup> brynge him forthwiþ ham vnto him. and in recorde and wnesse of þis þing, he toke<sup>11</sup> 12 ham his *lettres*,<sup>12</sup> þat þai<sup>1</sup> ne were<sup>13</sup> destourblede of no man, ne lette. ¶ And so faste<sup>14</sup> spede ham<sup>14</sup> the messagers, þat þai come vnto<sup>15</sup> a toune þat me callede Kermerdyn; and as þai passede fourth in<sup>16</sup> here way, þai fonden ij childerne of xiiij 3ere age<sup>17</sup> chiddyng togeder<sup>17</sup> 16 wiþ hastif wordes; and one of ham saide to þat oþer “Donebat,” *quod* he, “3e<sup>18</sup> done al wronge to chide or strif wiþ me, for 3e haue no witte ne resouñ as I haue.” ¶ “Certes, Merlyn,” *quod* 19 þat oþere,<sup>19</sup> “of 3oure witte and<sup>20</sup> of 3our<sup>1</sup> resouñ y make no forse, for men 20 21 telleþ *communeliche*<sup>21</sup> þat 3e haue no þing of god, siþ 3e hade neuer<sup>1</sup> fader, but alle men weten<sup>22</sup> wel ho is 3oure moder.” ¶ The kynges messagers, when þai herde þis strif bituene þo ij gromes, þai axede of men þat<sup>23</sup> stoden bituene<sup>23</sup> ham, whens þat Merlyn was born, 24 & 24 who him norisskede; and þe fole ham tolde þat a grete gentil-woman him bare in Kermerdyne, þat me callede Adhan, but neuere myzt men<sup>25</sup> wete who was<sup>26</sup> þe childes fader. ¶ When þe messagers herde þis tydynges,<sup>27</sup> þai went anone to him þat was wardeyne of þe 28 toune, and tolde him þe kynges wille and his *lettres*,<sup>28</sup> wherfore þai were comen<sup>29</sup> þider. ¶ Merlyn and his moder<sup>1</sup> anone were sent<sup>30</sup> bifore þe wardeyne of þe toune, and he commandede ham<sup>9</sup> þat þai

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> do D.    <sup>3</sup> slee D.    sle O.    <sup>4</sup> þe O.    <sup>5</sup> schuld O.

<sup>6-6</sup> euer<sup>1</sup> endur<sup>1</sup> D.    euere endure O.    <sup>7</sup> seche Merlyn DO.    seche R.

<sup>8-8</sup> fynde hym O.    <sup>9</sup> om. D.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 25.    <sup>11</sup> had take O.

<sup>12</sup> lette O.    <sup>13</sup> weren O.    <sup>14-14</sup> þo spede D.    þo spedde O.

<sup>15</sup> in-to O.    <sup>16</sup> om. DO.    <sup>17-17</sup> chidden ifere D.    chidden y-fere O.

<sup>18</sup> MS. 3e beþ, *with beþ underlined for erasure.*    <sup>19-19</sup> þe toþer O.

<sup>20</sup> ne DO.    <sup>21-21</sup> telle comunly O.    <sup>22</sup> wot O.

<sup>23-23</sup> stode bisides D.    stoden by-sydes O.    <sup>24</sup> and also DO.

<sup>25</sup> man O.    <sup>26</sup> myzt be D.    myght be O.    <sup>27</sup> tyding D.    tydyng O.

<sup>28</sup> lette DO.    <sup>29</sup> come O.    <sup>30</sup> sent after D.

shulde gone<sup>1</sup> to þe kyng, as hit was ordeynede by his<sup>2</sup> messagers.  
 ¶ Merlyn and his moder<sup>3</sup> come<sup>3</sup> vnto<sup>4</sup> þe kyng, and were vnder-  
 fonge wiþ michel<sup>5</sup> honour; and þe kyng axede of þat lady ‘if þat  
 4 childe were her<sup>6</sup> sone, and who him bigate.’<sup>6</sup> ¶ The lady ansuerede,  
 ful tender<sup>7</sup> wepyng, and saide she hade neuer<sup>8</sup> company of man  
 8 worldely; “but, sire,” quod shee, “as y was a zonge maiden  
 in my faderes chambre, and opere of<sup>9</sup> grete lynage were in my  
 8 company, þat ofte were wont to playe and to solacen, I belefte  
 allone in my chaumbre<sup>10</sup> of my fader,<sup>10</sup> & wolde nouȝt goȝn<sup>11</sup> out,  
 for brennyng of þe sone. ¶ And oppoȝn a tyme þere come a faire  
 bachiler, and entrede into my chaumbre þere þat I was allone; but  
 12 how he come into me, & wher, I wiste neuer,<sup>12</sup> ne ȝitte wote, for þe  
 dores were fast barrede; and wiþ me he dede game of loue, for I  
 13 nade noþer<sup>13</sup> myȝt ne power<sup>13</sup> him to defende fro me; and ofte he  
 come to me in the forsaide maner, so þat he bigate one me þis same  
 16 childe; but<sup>16</sup> neuer<sup>16</sup> myȝt y wete of him what he was, ne whens he  
 come, ne what was his name.”

Of þe ansuere of Merlyn, wherfore þe kyng axede whi his werk<sup>1</sup>  
 myȝt nouȝt stande þat he hade bigonne,<sup>14</sup> myȝt nouȝt  
 20 proue.<sup>14</sup> *Capitulo lxiij<sup>o</sup>.*

**W**Hen Merlyn hade herde al þat his moder<sup>1</sup> hade saide, he  
 spake<sup>15</sup> to þe kyng in this maner: “sire, how y was  
 bigeten, axe ȝe no more, for hit falleþ nouȝt to ȝow ne to none  
 24 opere<sup>16</sup> forto wete<sup>16</sup>; but<sup>17</sup> telle me þe<sup>17</sup> enchesone wherfore I ame  
 to ȝow brouȝt, and wherfore ȝe haue sent after<sup>18</sup> me.” ¶ “Certes,”  
 quod þe kyng, “my wise concelers haue<sup>18</sup> done<sup>19</sup> me to vnderstonde  
 þat þe morter of a werk<sup>1</sup> þat I haue done bigonne biheuēþ,<sup>20</sup> ben<sup>21</sup>  
 28 temperede wiþ ȝour<sup>1</sup> blode, or þe fundement shal faile for euermore.”  
 ¶ “Sire,” quod Merlyn, “wille ȝe slee me for my blode forto  
 temper wiþ ȝoure morter?” “ȝe,” quod þe kyng, “or elles shal  
 neuer my castel stonde, as my conselers done<sup>22</sup> me to vnderstonde.”  
 32 ¶ þo ansuere Merlyn to þe kyng: “sire,” he saide, “late ham  
 come bifore<sup>23</sup> me, þo wise<sup>24</sup> conselers, and I wil proue þat þai say

<sup>1</sup> go O.    <sup>2</sup> þe O.    <sup>3</sup> comen DO.    <sup>4</sup> to O.    <sup>5</sup> mych O.

<sup>6</sup> gate D.    <sup>7</sup> tendirly O.    <sup>8</sup> leaf 25, back.

<sup>9</sup> MS. of god, with god underlined for erasure.    <sup>10-10</sup> om. D.

<sup>11</sup> go O.    <sup>12</sup> neuer wher D.    <sup>13</sup> neuer where O.    <sup>13-13</sup> hade no D.

<sup>14-14</sup> om. D.    <sup>15</sup> ne proue O.    <sup>15</sup> spok D.    <sup>16-16</sup> om. O.

<sup>17-17</sup> telleþ me D.    <sup>17</sup> telleth me O.    <sup>18</sup> haue DO.    <sup>19</sup> do O.

<sup>20</sup> bihoueth D.    <sup>20</sup> byhouēþ O.    <sup>21</sup> to be O.    <sup>22</sup> do O.

<sup>23</sup> leaf 26.    <sup>24</sup> om. D.

nouȝt wel ne trewely. and when þe<sup>1</sup> wise were comen, Merlyn axede if his blode were þe enchesouñ to make þe<sup>2</sup> werke stande to<sup>3</sup> endure. Alle þise<sup>4</sup> wise were abasshede, and couþ nouȝt ansuere. ¶ Merlyn þo saide to þe kyng<sup>5</sup>: “sire, I shal telle ȝow þe encheson<sup>6</sup> 4 wherfore ȝour<sup>7</sup> werk<sup>8</sup> þus faileþ<sup>9</sup> and may nouȝt stande. þere is vnder þe mountaigne þere þat<sup>10</sup> ȝe haue bigonne ȝour<sup>11</sup> tour<sup>12</sup> a grete ponde of water; and in þe botume of þe ponde, vnder<sup>13</sup> þe water, þere beþ ij dragons,—þat one is white, and þat oþere<sup>14</sup> rede,—þat 8 feiȝten to-geder ageyne<sup>15</sup> ȝoure werk<sup>16</sup>. Doþ myne depe til ȝour<sup>17</sup> men come to the ponde, and doth ȝour<sup>18</sup> men take away þe water al out, and þan ȝe shul see þe dragons, as I haue ȝow tolde, <sup>9</sup>þo togederes<sup>19</sup> feiȝten ageyne<sup>20</sup> ȝour<sup>21</sup> werk; and þis is þe<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>enchesouñ, certes, wher- 12 fore<sup>12</sup> ȝour<sup>13</sup> fundement faileþ.<sup>14</sup>” ¶ the kyng<sup>15</sup> anone lete degge vnder<sup>16</sup>, til þat men come to þe<sup>15</sup> ponde, & lete do<sup>16</sup> away al þe water; and þere þai fonde ij dragons, as Merlyn hade tolde, þat egrely fouȝten togederes<sup>17</sup>; þe white dragouñ egrely assailede þe rede, and 16 laide on him so strong<sup>18</sup> þat he myȝt nouȝt endure, but wiþdrowe him, & hidde him in the same Cafe, and restede. ¶ And when he hade awhile restede, he went bifore, and assailede þe rede dragouñ angrely, and assailede<sup>19</sup> him so sore þat he myȝt nouȝt aȝeynes him 20 endure, but with-drow him and restede. And after<sup>21</sup> come aȝeyne þe white dragouñ, and strongely fouȝt wiþ þe reede dragoune, and bote him euē, & him ouer-come, þat he fley þens, and nomore come aȝeyne. 24

<sup>20</sup> Of þe significacions<sup>21</sup> of þo ij dragounes þat were in þe botume of þe ponde, þat fouȝten togederes.<sup>22</sup> *Capitulo Sexagesimo tercio.*

**T**He Kyng Vortiger<sup>1</sup> and his men, þat saw <sup>23</sup>þis bataile,<sup>23</sup> hade<sup>24</sup> 28 grete mervaille, and prauede Merlyn to telle him what it myȝt bitoken. “Sire,” *quod* Merlyn, “y shal ȝow telle: the rede dragouñ bitokeneþ<sup>25</sup> ȝoure-self<sup>1</sup>, & þe white bitokeneþ þe folc of Saxoine, þat ferst ȝe toke and helde<sup>26</sup> in þis lande, þat now feiȝten aȝeines ȝow, 32

<sup>1</sup> þise D. <sup>2</sup> ȝour O. <sup>3</sup> and D. <sup>4</sup> þe O.

<sup>5</sup> faileþ D. falleþ O. <sup>6</sup> om. D. <sup>7</sup> oþere is D. oþer is O.

<sup>8</sup> aȝeynes D. aȝens O. <sup>9-9</sup> þat to-geder D. <sup>9</sup> þat togider O.

<sup>10</sup> aȝeynes D. <sup>11</sup> om. O. <sup>12-12</sup> cause whi that D. <sup>13</sup> þe O.

<sup>14</sup> failes D. <sup>15</sup> þat DO. <sup>16</sup> done DO. don) O. <sup>17</sup> to-gidere O.

<sup>18</sup> strongelich D. strongly O. <sup>19</sup> helde D. held O. <sup>20</sup> leaf 26, back.

<sup>21</sup> significaciouñ D. significaciō O. <sup>22</sup> togider O.

<sup>23-25</sup> that batail þai D. <sup>26</sup> þe batayñ O. <sup>24</sup> hadden O.

<sup>25</sup> bitokenes D. <sup>26</sup> helden D.

and 3ow haue<sup>1</sup> dryuen and enchacede.<sup>2</sup> ¶ But þe Britons þat bene  
of 3our<sup>3</sup> lynage ouercome<sup>3</sup> ham, and dryuen ham awhile; and sipen,<sup>4</sup>  
at þe comyng a3eyne of þe Saxoynes, þai recouerede þis lande, and  
4 helde hit for euermore, and dryuen<sup>5</sup> oute þe Britouns, and dede wiþ  
þis lande al her<sup>6</sup> wille, & destriede cristendome þrou3oute þis lande.  
¶ 3e hade ferst<sup>7</sup> ioye of here<sup>8</sup> commyng<sup>8</sup>, but<sup>6</sup> now it is turnede to  
3ow grete damage & sorwe; ffor þo ij breþerne of Constance þat was  
8 kyng, þat<sup>7</sup> 3e lete slee, <sup>8</sup>shul comen<sup>8</sup> bifore a Quinzime passede wiþ  
a grete power<sup>9</sup> fram litel Britaigne, and shul avenge þe deþ of hire  
broþer<sup>9</sup>: þai shal brenne 3ow ferst wiþ sorwe, & after<sup>9</sup> þai shul sle  
a grete partie of þe<sup>10</sup> Saxoynes, and shul dryue al þe remanent<sup>11</sup>  
12 oute<sup>10</sup> of the lande; and þerfore abide 3e<sup>12</sup> no longer<sup>13</sup> to<sup>13</sup> make no  
castell ne none oþere werk, but anone gone<sup>14</sup> elleswhere, 3oure lif<sup>15</sup>  
for to saue. to God I 3ow bitake, for treuþ I haue <sup>16</sup>I-saide to 3ow<sup>16</sup>  
of þing<sup>16</sup> þat shal bifalle. And vnderstonde<sup>17</sup> wel þat Aurilambros  
16 shal bene<sup>18</sup> kyng, but he shal bene<sup>18</sup> enpoisenede,<sup>19</sup> and litil  
while<sup>20</sup> regne.”

**Of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Aurilambros; how he persuede Vortiger and Engist,  
and how þai deiden. Capitulo Sexagesimo Quarto.**

20 **M**Erlyn and his moder<sup>1</sup> departede fro þe kyng, and turnede  
<sup>21</sup>a3eyne to Kermerdyn. and so after tydynges<sup>22</sup> come to  
þe Britons þat Aurilambros and Vter<sup>1</sup> his broþer<sup>1</sup> were<sup>23</sup> arryuede at  
Tottenesse wiþ a grete host, and þe Britouns anone assemblede  
24 ham, & went to vnderfong Aurilambros and Vter<sup>1</sup> wiþ grete nobleye,  
& ladde ham to London, and cronede þere Aurylambros, and  
made him kyng, and deden<sup>24</sup> to him homage. and he axede  
wher<sup>1</sup> Vortiger þat was kyng myght <sup>25</sup>bene founden,<sup>25</sup> for he<sup>7</sup> wolde  
28 bene<sup>26</sup> avengede of<sup>27</sup> his broþere3 deþ, and after<sup>9</sup> he wolde werre  
oppon paynymes: and þai tolde him þat Vortiger<sup>1</sup> was in Walis;  
and so þai ladde him<sup>28</sup> þiderward.<sup>29</sup> ¶ Vortiger<sup>1</sup> wist wel þat þo ij  
breþerne come<sup>30</sup> him to conquire, & fleye þens into a castel þat me<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> hauen O.      <sup>2</sup> enchacen O.      <sup>3</sup> ouercomen O.      <sup>4</sup> sep O.

<sup>5</sup> dryue O.      <sup>6-6</sup> company and D.      <sup>7</sup> om. D.

<sup>8-8</sup> shul come D.      schullen come O.      <sup>9</sup> broþer and D.      broþer and O.

<sup>10</sup> om. O.      <sup>11</sup> remaunte D.      remnaunt O.      <sup>12</sup> 3e her D.      3e here O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. tok.      <sup>14</sup> goþ D.      goth O.      <sup>15</sup> lif al D.      lyf al O.

<sup>16-16</sup> 3ow saide D.      seyde to 3ow O.      <sup>17</sup> vnderstondiþ O.      <sup>18</sup> be DO.

<sup>19</sup> poysenede D.      <sup>20</sup> tyme DO.      <sup>21</sup> leaf 27.

<sup>22</sup> tydyng D.      dydyng sic O.      <sup>23</sup> weryn O.      <sup>24</sup> dede DO.

<sup>25-25</sup> be founde DO.      <sup>26</sup> be O.      <sup>27</sup> on O.      <sup>28</sup> hem O.

<sup>29</sup> þider D.      <sup>30</sup> comen O.

called<sup>1</sup> Generth, þat stode vpon an hye mounteyne, & þere him helde. ¶ Aurylambros, and Vter<sup>2</sup> his broþer, and hire fole, hade bisegede þe castel<sup>3</sup> longe tyme, for þe castel was stronge and wel arraiede; so at þe laste þai cast wilde fire, and brent hous and men, 4 and al here arraye, & as miche as was wipin þe castel, so þat Vortiger was brent amonge alle opere; and so deide he with michel<sup>3</sup> sorwe. ¶ þo was Engist in Kent, and regnede þere, and herde þis tydynges<sup>4</sup> and anone fledde, and wolde haue wende<sup>5</sup> into Scotland forto haue 8 hade socour, but Aurilambros and his men mette wip him in the North contre, and 3af him bataile, & Engist and his men ham defendede whiles<sup>6</sup> þai<sup>7</sup> myght, but he and his fole were descomfitede and slayn, and Otta his sone<sup>8</sup> fley<sup>9</sup> vnto<sup>10</sup> 3ork, & Aurilambros him folwede egrely. Otta, a litel while a3eynes him stode, but afterwarde he put him to<sup>11</sup> his mercy, and Aurilambros vnderfonge him; & to him and to his men he<sup>8</sup> 3af þe contre of Galway in Scotland, and þere þai duelled. ¶ The Kyng Aury<sup>12</sup>lambros went 16 þo þrou3 þe lande, and put awaye þe name of Engistes lande, þat E[n]gist, after his owen name hade callede bifore, þo lete he<sup>13</sup> it calle<sup>13</sup> a3eyne Grete Britaigne, and lete make a3eyne cherches,<sup>14</sup> houses of religioun, castelles,<sup>15</sup> citees, and burghes and tounes þat þe Saxoynes 20 hade destroyede, and come<sup>16</sup> to London, and lete make a3eyne the Wallis of þe citee, whiche Engist & his fole hade caste adoune. ¶ þe Britons ladde him to þe mount of Anbrian, wher some tyme was an house of religioun þat þo was destriede þrou3 paynemys, 24 whe[re] of a knyght þat<sup>8</sup> me callede Anbry, þat some tyme was foundour of þe hous, and þerfor þe hulle<sup>17</sup> was callede þe mount of Bryan,<sup>18</sup> and after was callede Ambresbery, and shal for eueremore.

28

**How Aurilambros dede redresse þe lande of Grete Britaigne, þat was destroyede þrou3 Saxoynes. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Quinto.**

**T**He<sup>19</sup> Kyng Aurilambros lete amende and redresse þe hous of 32 Ambresbery, and þerin put monkes, but now þere beth<sup>20</sup> nonnes; a litil fram<sup>21</sup> þe place þat me calleþ<sup>21</sup> Salesbury, þere þat

<sup>1</sup> calleþ DO.      <sup>2</sup> castelle ful D.      Castel ful O.      <sup>3</sup> mych O.

<sup>4</sup> tydyng O.      <sup>5</sup> went O.      <sup>6</sup> while D.      <sup>7</sup> þat y sic O.

<sup>8</sup> om. D.      <sup>9</sup> fly O.      <sup>10</sup> into D.      <sup>11</sup> into D.      <sup>12</sup> leaf 27, back.

<sup>13-13</sup> calle yt O.      <sup>14</sup> cherches and DO.      <sup>15</sup> casteþ D.

<sup>16</sup> comen DO.      <sup>17</sup> mont D.      <sup>18</sup> Anbrian D.

<sup>19</sup> How the D.      How þe O.      <sup>20</sup> ben DO.      <sup>21-21</sup> om. D.



þe Britouns were<sup>1</sup> quelled<sup>2</sup> in þat place þat<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>Vortiger<sup>3</sup> & Engist<sup>3</sup> shulde haue made a loueday, in whiche place<sup>4</sup> þere were slayne  
<sup>5</sup>xxx M<sup>5</sup> knyghtes þrouȝ tresoun of Engist. ¶ þe kyng þerof hade  
 4 grete pitee, & þouȝt to make, in mynde of ham, a monument of  
 stone þat myȝt endure to<sup>6</sup> þe worldes ende. and of þis þing þai tok<sup>7</sup>  
 here conseile what þerof was best to done. ¶ þo spake to þe kyng  
 þe bishop of London þat me called Ternekyn, þat he shulde enquire  
 8 after<sup>8</sup> Merlyn, for he couȝe best telle how þis þing miȝt bene<sup>8</sup> made.  
 and merlyn after<sup>9</sup> was souȝt<sup>9</sup> and founde, & come to þe kyng<sup>9</sup>; and  
 þe kyng tolde him his wille of þe monument þat he wolde haue  
 made. ¶ þo ansuerede Merlyn to þe kyng<sup>10</sup>, and saide: “þere beþ  
 12 grete stones in Irlande, and longe vpon the hulle of Kyan þat men  
 calleþ <sup>11</sup>þe geant<sup>11</sup> caroh; and if þai were put in þis place as þai  
 beþ<sup>12</sup> þere, here þai wolde endure euermore, in remembraunce of þo  
 knyghtes þat here beþ entered.” “*Par ma foy,*” quod þe kyng<sup>12</sup>,  
 16 “as herde stones beth in my lond as beth in Irland.” “soþ,” quod  
 Merlyn, “but in aȝ ȝour lande beth non soche, for Geaunteȝ sette  
 ham for grete gode of hamself, ffor atte euery tyme þat þai were  
 wondeȝ, or in eny maner hurt, þai wasshen þe stones wiþ hote  
 20 water, & þan wosshen<sup>13</sup> ham þerwiþ, and anone þai were hole.”

How þe Britons went forto seche þe grete stones in Irlanȝ.  
*Capitulo lxxj<sup>to</sup>.*

24 **W**Hen þe<sup>14</sup> Britons hade herde of þis þing, þai went and  
 sworn<sup>15</sup> ifere amonges ham, þat<sup>16</sup> þai wolde gone<sup>17</sup> to seche  
 þe stones; and toke<sup>18</sup> wiþ ham Vter<sup>1</sup>, þe kynges broþer, to bene<sup>19</sup>  
 here cheueteȝne, & xv M<sup>4</sup> men; and Merlyn conseilede ham forto  
 gone<sup>20</sup> into Irlande, and so þai deden.<sup>21</sup> ¶ And when þe Kyng  
 28 of Irland, þat me callede Guillomer, herde telle þat straungers  
 were arryuede in his lande, he assemblede a grete power, and fouȝt  
 aȝeyns ham; but he & his folc were descomfitede. the Britons went  
 fourþ<sup>22</sup> til þai come to þe mount of Kylyan, and elymede vnto þe  
 32 mount; but when þai saw þe stones, and þe maner how þai stoden,<sup>23</sup>  
 þai hadden<sup>24</sup> grete merveil, and saide bituene ham þat ‘noman shulde

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2-2</sup> where D. om. O.    <sup>3-3</sup> Vortymer wher Engist and he O.

<sup>4</sup> tyme O.    <sup>5-5</sup> xxx M<sup>4</sup> lxxij D.    xxx M<sup>4</sup> and lxxj O.

<sup>6</sup> vn-to O.    <sup>7</sup> nome DO.    <sup>8</sup> be DO.    <sup>9</sup> sent O.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 28.    <sup>11-11</sup> geantys DO.    <sup>12</sup> ben DO.

<sup>13</sup> wosshē D.    wessh O.    <sup>14</sup> þis D.    <sup>15</sup> om. D.    swore O.

<sup>16</sup> swore D.    <sup>17</sup> go DO.    <sup>18</sup> nome DO.

<sup>19</sup> MS. bene þe kyng, with þe kyng underlined for erasure.    <sup>20</sup> go O.

<sup>21</sup> dede O.    <sup>22</sup> biforn D.    before O.    <sup>23</sup> stod O.    <sup>24</sup> hadde D.    had O.

ham remeve, for no strenghe ne engyne, so huge þai weren,<sup>1</sup> and so long.' But Merlyn, prouȝ his crafte and queyntise, remevede ham, and brouȝt ham into hire shippis, and come aȝeyn into þis lande. and Merlyn sette þe stones <sup>2</sup>þere þat<sup>3</sup> þe Kyng wolde haue ham, 4 and sette ham in þe same maner as<sup>4</sup> þai stoden in Irland. and when þe kyng saw þat it was made, he þauked Merlyn, and rychehly him rewardede at his owen wille; & þat place he lete calle<sup>3</sup> Stonhynges<sup>5</sup> for euermore. 8

**How Passent, þat was Vortigerȝ sonne, & þe Kyng<sup>3</sup> Guillomer', come into þis land; and how a traitoure þat me callede Coppa, enpoisenede<sup>6</sup> þe Kyng Aurilambros. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Sexagesimo Septimo.** 12

**A**Nd men shul vnderstonde þat Passent, þat was Vortigers sone, leuede in þe same tyme, and come into þis lande wiþ a grete power, and arryuede in þe Northcontre, & wolde bene<sup>7</sup> auengede of his fadereȝ deþ Vortiger, and stronglich<sup>8</sup> trust vppon<sup>9</sup> þe com- 16 pany þat he hade brouȝt wiþ him oute of þe lande of Germayne, and hade conquerede al þe Northcontre vnto ȝork. ¶ And when Kyng Aurilambros herde þis, he assemblede a grete power of Britouns, and went forto feiȝt wiþ him; and Passent<sup>10</sup> and his peple 20 were descomfitede. But Passent ascapede þens, wiþ some of his folc, and fledde þennues into Irland, and come to<sup>11</sup> Kyng Guillomer', and præde liim of helpe and socoure. ¶ The kyng grantede him wiþ gode wil, and saide: "I wolde helpe ȝow oppoñ þat<sup>12</sup> couenaunt, þat 24 I my-self moste goñ<sup>13</sup> wiþ ȝow wiþ al my power into Britaigne, and I wolde me avenge vppoñ þe Britons,<sup>14</sup> <sup>15</sup>for þai comen<sup>16</sup> into my londe.<sup>17</sup> and<sup>15</sup> token<sup>18</sup> þe stones wiþ strengþ þat<sup>19</sup> is callede Geant<sup>19</sup> Caroil." þe Kyng Guillomere lete ordeyne his shippis, and went to 28 þe see wiþ xv M<sup>t</sup> men, and arryuede in Walis, and bigonne to robbe and miche sorwe to done.<sup>20</sup> hit bifelle so þat Kyng Aurilambros lay sike at Wynchestre, and myght nouȝt helpe<sup>21</sup> himself, so þat he sent in his name Vter' his broþere, with a grete power, forto help 32 Walys; and þiderwarde<sup>22</sup> he went as miche as he<sup>22</sup> myȝt. ¶ þe

<sup>1</sup> wer' D. were O.<sup>2</sup> leaf 28, back.<sup>3</sup> om. D.<sup>4</sup> þat DO.<sup>5</sup> Stonehenge D. Stonehenge O.<sup>6</sup> poyssound O.<sup>7</sup> be O.<sup>8</sup> strongly D. strongly O.<sup>9</sup> of D.<sup>10</sup> he DO.<sup>11</sup> to þe O.<sup>12</sup> þe O.<sup>13</sup> go DO.<sup>14</sup> britouns the rapȝre D.<sup>15-16</sup> rapȝr þan þei in-to my land comen and O.<sup>16</sup> come D.<sup>17</sup> lorde sic D.<sup>18</sup> toke D.<sup>19-19</sup> was callede Geauntȝ D. called is Geauntȝ O.<sup>20</sup> do O.<sup>21</sup> leaf 29.<sup>22-22</sup> þai went as fast as þai D.

Kyng of Irland<sup>1</sup>, and Passent,<sup>1</sup> herde telle þat Aurylambros was sik<sup>1</sup>; and to ham<sup>2</sup> come a sarasine þat me clepede<sup>3</sup> Coppa, and saide: “sire,<sup>4</sup> duelle 3e here al<sup>5</sup> in pees wiþ 3oure hoste, and y<sup>5</sup> bihote  
 4 3ow, þrou3 my queyntise, þat I shal slee þe Kyng Aurylambros þat liþ sike.” “If 3e do,<sup>6</sup>” quod Passent, “y shal 3ow richely auaunce.” ¶ This traitoure Coppa put oppoñ him an habite of religioun, and lete shaue him a brode crone, and come to þe  
 8 kynges court, and saide þat he was a gode ffisician, and saide þat he wolde hele þe kyng of his malady. ¶ Tho saide þe traitour Coppa vnto þe kyng<sup>7</sup>: “sire, beþ of gode comfort, for y shal 3eue 3ow soche a medecyne þat 3e shulle swete anone ryzt, and soft<sup>8</sup> slepe,  
 12 and haue gode reste.” & þe traitour 3af him soche a poyssoun þat he slepte<sup>9</sup> anone ryght, and deide in his slepyng<sup>1</sup>. and þe traitoure saide þat<sup>10</sup> he wolde gone<sup>11</sup> oute into þe felde til þe kyng were awakede; and so scapede he away, for noman<sup>12</sup> to him hade<sup>12</sup>  
 16 suspesioñ, for enchesoun of his habit þat he was in cloþede, and also for his brode crone. ¶ But when þe kynges meny wist þat he was dede, þai bicom<sup>13</sup> wonder<sup>1</sup> sory, and fast souzt þe traitour; but<sup>14</sup> þai miȝt nouzt hem fynde, for Coppa turnede aȝeyne to þe  
 20 host fro whens that<sup>10</sup> he come.

When Aurilambros was dede, a sterr in<sup>15</sup> the morne<sup>16</sup> was seyne with a clere light; & at the bouzte of þe beeme was  
 17seye þe heuede of an horrible<sup>17</sup> Dragoun. ¶ Capitulo  
 24 ¶ Sexagesimo ¶ Octauo.

**W**Hen the Kyng Aurilambros was þus dede & empysenede<sup>18</sup> at Wynehestre, a morn,<sup>19</sup> after þat he was dede, aboute þe tyme of prime, þere was seyn a sterr<sup>1</sup> grete and elere; and þe beeme  
 28 of þe<sup>20</sup> sterr<sup>1</sup> was brighter þan þe sone; and at þe bouzt of þe beeme apperede a dragounes heuede,<sup>21</sup> and oute of his mouþ<sup>22</sup> comen ij huge liztez þat were as lizt<sup>23</sup> as<sup>22</sup> eny fire brynnyng<sup>1</sup>. ¶ And þat o<sup>24</sup> beeme went<sup>25</sup> towarde Fraunce, and strauzt ouere þe see þiderward; and  
 32 out of þat beem comen<sup>26</sup> vij beemes ful elere and longe, as it were þe lizt of fire. ¶ þis sterre was seyne of meny man<sup>27</sup>; but none of

<sup>1</sup> Passent had O.    <sup>2</sup> him D.    hym O.    <sup>3</sup> callede D.    Called<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>4</sup> sir<sup>1</sup> D.    sire quod<sup>1</sup> he O.    <sup>5</sup> om. O.    <sup>6</sup> done O.    <sup>7-7</sup> om. D.

<sup>8</sup> softly D.    <sup>9</sup> slepe D.    <sup>10</sup> om. D.    <sup>11</sup> go DO.

<sup>12-12</sup> had to hym O.    <sup>13</sup> bicom<sup>1</sup> D.    bycomen O.    <sup>14</sup> for D.

<sup>15</sup> on D.    <sup>16</sup> morwe D.    <sup>17-17</sup> seyn þe hed of a O.    <sup>18</sup> leaf<sup>1</sup> 29, back.

<sup>19</sup> a morowe O.    <sup>20</sup> that D.    þat O.    <sup>21</sup> heed<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>22-22</sup> apperede ij liztes huge and as bright as D.    <sup>23</sup> bright O.

<sup>24</sup> on D.    <sup>25</sup> it helde D.    tilde O.    <sup>26</sup> come D.    <sup>27</sup> a man DO.

ham wist what it bitokenede. ¶ Vter<sup>1</sup>, þat was þe kyngus broþer, þat was in Walys wiþ his hoste of Britouns, saw þat sterre, and þe grete liȝt þat it<sup>1</sup> ȝaf. he wondrede þeron gretly, what it myȝt bitoken; he<sup>2</sup> lete calle Merlyn, & praiede him <sup>3</sup>forto telle<sup>3</sup> what it 4 myȝt bitokene.

Of þe bitokenyng of þat<sup>4</sup> sterr<sup>1</sup>. ¶ Capitulo Sexagesimo ix<sup>o</sup>.

Merlyn saw þat sterre, and bihelde hit<sup>5</sup> longe tyme, and sipenes<sup>6</sup> he quok<sup>1</sup> and wepte tenderly; & saide: “allas, 8 allas! þat so noble<sup>7</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup> and worþi is dede. and I do ȝow to vnderstonde þat Aurilambros, ȝour broþer, is enpoysenede, and þat I se wel in þis sterre. and ȝoure-self bitokeneþ bi þe heuede<sup>8</sup> of þe dragoun þat is<sup>9</sup> seyne at þe bouȝt of þe beeme: þat is ȝoureself, þat 12 shal bene<sup>10</sup> kyng, and regne. and by þe beem þat stode<sup>11</sup> towarde þe Est, is vnderstonde þat ȝe shal geten<sup>12</sup> a sone þat shal conquere al Fraunce and alle þe landes þat <sup>13</sup>beþ longeyng<sup>13</sup> to þe Kyng<sup>14</sup> of Fraunce, þat shal bene<sup>15</sup> a worþier<sup>1</sup> Kyng, and <sup>16</sup>more of<sup>16</sup> honoure 16 þan ener<sup>1</sup> was eny of his ancestres. ¶ And by þe beem þat stracchet<sup>17</sup> towarde Irland<sup>1</sup>, is bitokenede <sup>18</sup>þat ȝe shul bigete<sup>19</sup> a douȝter þat shal be quene of Irland<sup>1</sup>; and þe vij beemes bitokenes<sup>20</sup> þat ȝe<sup>21</sup> shul haue vij sones; and eueryche<sup>22</sup> of ham shal <sup>23</sup>bene kyng, 20 and <sup>23</sup>regne wiþ michel<sup>24</sup> honououre. and abide ȝe no longer here, but go<sup>25</sup> and ȝif<sup>26</sup> batail to ȝoure enemys, and feiȝt<sup>27</sup> wiþ ham boldely, for ȝe shul ouercome ham and haue þe victorie.” Vter þankede hertly Merlyn, and tok<sup>28</sup> his men, and went towarde his 24 enemys; and þai fouȝten togeder<sup>1</sup> mortailly; and so <sup>29</sup>þai descomfitede<sup>29</sup> his enemys alle, & destroyede ham<sup>30</sup>; & him-self quelledede Passent, þat was Vortiger<sup>3</sup> sone; and his Britons quelledede Guillomer<sup>1</sup>, þat was Kyng of Irland<sup>1</sup>, and alle his men. and Vter 28 anone after<sup>1</sup> þat bataile tok his way toward Wynchestre fort[o] done<sup>31</sup> entier<sup>1</sup> Aurilambros kyng, þat was his broþer; but þo was þe<sup>32</sup> body born<sup>33</sup> to Stonhyne wiþ michel<sup>34</sup> honoure, þat he hade

<sup>1</sup> he O.    <sup>2</sup> and D.    <sup>3—3</sup> om. D.    <sup>4</sup> þe O.    <sup>5</sup> him D.    hym O.

<sup>6</sup> Netheles O.    <sup>7</sup> noble a D.    nobly a O.    <sup>8</sup> hede D.    hed O.

<sup>9</sup> is to O.    <sup>10</sup> be DO.    <sup>11</sup> stondeþ D.    <sup>12</sup> gete D.    be-gete O.

<sup>13—13</sup> longep D.    þen longynge O.    <sup>14</sup> crowne D.    crowne O.

<sup>15</sup> be DO.    <sup>16—16</sup> of more DO.    <sup>17</sup> stracches D.    streccþ O.

<sup>18</sup> leuf 30.    <sup>19</sup> gete D.    <sup>20</sup> bitokenes D.    betokeneth O.    om. R.

<sup>21</sup> seþe O.    <sup>22</sup> eche O.

<sup>23—23</sup> be a kyng<sup>1</sup> and shullen D.    be kyng and schul O.    <sup>24</sup> mych O.

<sup>25</sup> goþ DO.    <sup>26</sup> ȝeueþ O.    <sup>27</sup> fighteth O.    <sup>28</sup> nome DO.

<sup>29—29</sup> he descomfite D.    he descomfited O.    <sup>30</sup> om. D.    hym O.

<sup>31</sup> do O.    <sup>32</sup> his D.    <sup>33</sup> bore O.    <sup>34</sup> mych O.

<sup>1</sup>done made<sup>1</sup> in remembrance of þe Britons þat þere were slayn þrouȝ tresoune of Engist, þat same day þat þai shulde haue bene accordede; & in the same place<sup>2</sup> þai enterede Aurilambros, þe <sup>4</sup>secunde ȝere of his regne, wiþ al þe worship þat myght <sup>3</sup>bene longyng<sup>3</sup> to soche a kyng, of whos soule God haue mercy!

Of Vter Pendragoun; and wherfore he was callede so, after<sup>4</sup> þe shal<sup>4</sup> here; &<sup>5</sup> he was ouertake for þe grete loue of Igerne, <sup>8</sup>þat was þe <sup>6</sup>Erles wif of Cornwaile.<sup>6</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo.

**A**fter þe deth of Aurylambros, Vter<sup>7</sup> his broþer was cronede, and regnede wel and worþily; and in remembraunce of þe <sup>12</sup>dragons<sup>7</sup> þat he was likenede to, he lete make ij dragounes þrouȝ conseile of his Britouns: þat one to <sup>8</sup>bene borne<sup>8</sup> bifore<sup>9</sup> him when he went into bataile, & þat opere to abide at<sup>10</sup> Wynchestre in the bisshoppes cherche; And for þat enchesoun he was callede <sup>16</sup>euermore after<sup>7</sup>, Vter<sup>7</sup> Pendragoun. ¶ And Octa, þat was Engistes sone, commendet litil Vter<sup>7</sup> þat was made newe kyng, and aȝeynes him biganne forto<sup>11</sup> meue weri, and ordeynede a grete company of his frendes & of his kynne, and of Ossa his broþer, and hade take<sup>12</sup> <sup>20</sup>al þe lande fro Humber vnto ȝork; <sup>13</sup>but þo of ȝork<sup>13</sup> helde strongely<sup>14</sup> agayne ham, and nolde soffre ham come into þe toune, neyþer to ȝelde þe citee to ham; and he bisegede þe toune anone ryȝt, and ȝaf þerto a stronge assaut,<sup>15</sup> but tho<sup>16</sup> of þe citee ham keped wel <sup>24</sup>and strongely. ¶ And when Vter herde þerof, he come þider wiþ a stronge<sup>17</sup> power forto helpe and rescue þe toune, and put away þe sege, & ȝaf a stronge bataile; and Octa & his company ham defendede as wel as þai myȝt, but at þe<sup>2</sup> last þai were descomfitede, <sup>28</sup>and þe moste part of ham quelled; and Octa & Ossa were taken,<sup>18</sup> and put into prisoun at London. ¶ And Vter<sup>7</sup> him-self duelled awhile at ȝork, and after, he went to Londoñ. and at<sup>19</sup> Ester after<sup>20</sup> sewyng, he wolde bere crone, and helde<sup>21</sup> a solempne feste, and <sup>32</sup><sup>22</sup>lete sompne alle þe<sup>23</sup> Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come to þat

<sup>1-1</sup> done make D. do made O. <sup>2</sup> om. O.

<sup>3-3</sup> bilonge D. be-longen O. <sup>4-4</sup> MS. me shal; men may D.

<sup>5</sup> and how D. <sup>6-6</sup> Erle of Cornewalys wyf O. <sup>7</sup> dragoun DO.

<sup>8-8</sup> be borne D. be bore O. <sup>9</sup> MS. bifore bifore; tofore O.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 30, back. <sup>11</sup> to DO. <sup>12</sup> taken D. <sup>13-13</sup> supplied from D.

<sup>14</sup> strong D. <sup>15</sup> saut D. <sup>16</sup> þai D. þey O.

<sup>17</sup> grete D. gret O. <sup>18</sup> take O. <sup>19</sup> at the D. at þe O.

<sup>20</sup> om. D. <sup>21</sup> holde D. hold O. <sup>22-22</sup> om. O. <sup>23</sup> his D.

feste; and<sup>22</sup> alle þai<sup>1</sup> comen at<sup>2</sup> þe kynges commandement,<sup>3</sup> as þai were commanded.<sup>3</sup> ¶ The feste was richely holden,<sup>4</sup> and alle worþely sette to þe<sup>5</sup> mette after þat þai were<sup>6</sup> of state,<sup>7</sup> so þat<sup>8</sup> þe Erl<sup>8</sup> of Cornewaile & Igerne his wif setten alþer next þe kyng.<sup>4</sup> and þe kyng<sup>1</sup> saw þe fairenesse of þat lady þat she hade, and was rauisskede for here beaute; and after,<sup>9</sup> he made towarde here nyce<sup>10</sup> semblant in lokyng<sup>1</sup> and leizhyng<sup>1</sup>. so at þe laste þe Erl perseuene þe priue<sup>11</sup> lokyng and Laughing<sup>1</sup>, and þe loue bituene<sup>8</sup> ham, and arose vp<sup>5</sup> fram þe table al in wrap, and tok his wif, and callede to him his knyghtes, and went þens al in wrap, wiþouten<sup>12</sup> takyng<sup>1</sup> Leue of þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>. þe kyng anone sent after him þat he shulde come aþeyne, & go nouzt þens in despite of him; and þe<sup>12</sup> Erl wolde nouzt come aþeyne in no maner wise. ¶ Wherfor þe kyng was ful wroþ, & in wrap him defiede as his dedelich<sup>13</sup> enemy. and þe Erl went þens into Cornewaile wiþ his wif, into þe castel of TyntageH. and þe kyng lete ordeyne a grete host, & come into<sup>16</sup> Cornewaile forto destroie þe erl, if he myzt; but he hade put him in<sup>14</sup> soche a castel þat was stronge and wel arraiede, of TyntageH, and wolde nouzt zelde him to<sup>15</sup> the Kyng<sup>1</sup>. ¶ The kyng anone bisegede þe castel, & þere duelled x<sup>v</sup> daies, þat neuer myzt spede,<sup>20</sup> and euer þouzt so miche of<sup>16</sup> Igerne, and oppoñ her laide so miche loue, þat he nyst what to done. ¶ So at þe<sup>5</sup> laste he callede to him a knyzt þat me<sup>17</sup> callede Vlfyne, þat was priue wiþ him, and tolde him al hes conseile, and axede of him what was best to done.<sup>24</sup> ¶ “Sire,” quod he, “doþ sende after Merlyn, for he can telle 3ow þe best consel of eny man leuyng<sup>1</sup>.” Merlyn anone was sent after, and come to þe kyng<sup>1</sup>, and þe kyng tolde him al his wille. “Sire,”<sup>18</sup> quod Merlyn,<sup>18</sup> “I shal do so miche prou3 crafte þat I can, þat I<sup>28</sup> shal make 3ow come þis nyzt into þe castel of TyntageH, & shal haue al 3oure wille of þat Lady.”

**How Vter bigate on<sup>19</sup> Igerne, þat was þe Erle3 wif of<sup>20</sup> Cornewaile, Arthure þe kyng.** ¶ *Capitulo Septuagesimo primo.* 32

<sup>1</sup> þo þat hade wyfes shulde bryng<sup>1</sup> ham also to þat fest & alle D. þo þat hade wyues schuld bryng hem also to þat fest & all O.

<sup>2</sup> to O. <sup>3-3</sup> om. D. <sup>4</sup> hold O. <sup>5</sup> om. O. <sup>6</sup> werne D.

<sup>7</sup> astat O. <sup>8-8</sup> þe Gorlois D. Gorloys O.

<sup>9</sup> ofte D. oft O. <sup>10</sup> MS. nycei. <sup>11</sup> leaf 31.

<sup>12</sup> withoute DO. <sup>13</sup> dedely D. dedly O. <sup>14</sup> into D.

<sup>15</sup> vnto D. <sup>16</sup> vpon D. vpon O. <sup>17</sup> he D.

<sup>18-18</sup> MS. has quod Merlyn quod, with 2nd quod underlined for erasure.

<sup>19</sup> in D. <sup>20</sup> om. D.

**M**Erlyn,<sup>1</sup> prouz crafte þat he coupe,<sup>2</sup> chaungede þe kyngus<sup>3</sup> figure into þe likenesse of Vlfyne his chaumberleyn, and<sup>4</sup> to þe figure of Iordan þat was þe erlez chaumberleyn, so þat eche<sup>5</sup> of ham was transfigurede into<sup>6</sup> opere likenesse. and when Merlyn hade so done,<sup>7</sup> he saide to þe kyng: <sup>8</sup>“sire, now may<sup>9</sup> 3e gone<sup>10</sup> sodeynely to þe castel of Tyntagel, and axen<sup>11</sup> entre þere, and haue 3oure wille.” the kyng tok priuelich,<sup>12</sup> al þe host to gouerne &<sup>13</sup> lede, to a knyzt þat he miche louede, and toke<sup>14</sup> his way toward þe castel; and wip him went<sup>15</sup> Vlfyne and Merlyn. and when<sup>16</sup> þat he<sup>17</sup> come þider, þe Porter wende<sup>18</sup> þat it<sup>19</sup> hade bene<sup>20</sup> his owen lorde. and when tyme come forto gone<sup>21</sup> to bedde, the kyng went to bedde<sup>22</sup> wip<sup>23</sup> Igerne, þe Erlez wif, and dede wip her<sup>24</sup> al his wille, and þo bigate on<sup>25</sup> here a sone þat me clepede<sup>26</sup> Arthure. ¶ Oppoñ þe morwe þe noble myzty kyng<sup>27</sup> toke<sup>28</sup> his leue of þe lady, and went a3eyn to his hoste. and þe same nyzt þat þe kyng lay by Igerne in<sup>29</sup> bedde ifere wip þe erlez wif, þe kynges men 3af a strong<sup>30</sup> assaute to þe castel. and þe Erl and his men manliche<sup>31</sup> ham defendede; but at þe<sup>32</sup> laste hit bifelle so þat at þat assaut þe erl him-self<sup>33</sup> was slayn, and þe castel was<sup>34</sup> taken. and þe kyng anone turnede a3eyne<sup>35</sup> to TyntageH, and spousede Igerne wip michel<sup>36</sup> honoure, & made hir<sup>37</sup> Quene. & sone after, tyme come þat she shulde bene<sup>38</sup> delyuerede, and bare<sup>39</sup> a sone þat<sup>40</sup> was callede<sup>41</sup> Arthure. and after<sup>42</sup> he gate<sup>43</sup> on here a dougter þat me clepede<sup>44</sup> Amya; and<sup>45</sup> when she come to age, <sup>46</sup>she was nobly<sup>47</sup> mariede to a noble Baroun þat me callede Aloth, þat was lorde of Leones.

¶ When Vter longe tyme hade regnede, þere come vppoñ him a grete sikenesse, as it were a sorwe. & in þe mene<sup>48</sup> tyme þo þat<sup>49</sup> haden<sup>50</sup> to kepe Octa, þat was Engistes sone, and Ossa his broþer, þat þo were in prisoun, men lete ham gone<sup>51</sup> for grete 3iftes þat þai ham 3af, and went<sup>52</sup> wip ham.<sup>53</sup> ¶ And when þo ij breþerne were ascapeð, and comen<sup>54</sup> a3eyne into hier<sup>55</sup> owen contre, þai ordeynede<sup>56</sup> ham a grete host & a<sup>57</sup> grete power, & bigon to werre eftesones vppoñ þe kyng.

<sup>1</sup> Helyn sic D. <sup>2</sup> coupe he D. coude O. <sup>3</sup> leaf 31, back.

<sup>4</sup> in O. <sup>5</sup> to DO. <sup>6</sup> y-do O.

<sup>7-7</sup> Sir quod he now mowe D. Sir quod he now mow O. <sup>8</sup> go O.

<sup>9</sup> axe O. <sup>10</sup> priuily O. <sup>11</sup> & to O. <sup>12</sup> nome DO. <sup>13</sup> om. DO.

<sup>14-14</sup> þai D. þey O. <sup>15-15</sup> þat he D. he O. <sup>16</sup> be O. <sup>17</sup> go DO.

<sup>18</sup> to D. <sup>19</sup> vpon O. <sup>20</sup> callede D. called O. <sup>21</sup> nome DO.

<sup>22</sup> manly DO. <sup>23</sup> om. O. <sup>24</sup> mych O. <sup>25</sup> be DO.

<sup>26</sup> bare a child D. bare a child O. <sup>27-27</sup> callede was D. Called was O.

<sup>28-28</sup> begate O. <sup>29</sup> Called O. <sup>30</sup> & sche O. <sup>31-31</sup> nobly was O.

<sup>32</sup> leaf 32. <sup>33</sup> hadde D. had O. <sup>34</sup> go DO. <sup>35-35</sup> hem with O.

<sup>36</sup> come O. <sup>37</sup> om. D.

How Kyng Vter<sup>1</sup> chees<sup>1</sup> Aloth to kepe þe lande of Britaigne  
whiles þat he was sik.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo  
¶ Secundo.

**A**Nd for-asmyche as Kyng Vter<sup>1</sup> was sik<sup>1</sup>, and myȝt nouȝt helpe <sup>4</sup>  
him-self, <sup>3</sup>he ordeynede Aloth, þe sone of Elyne,<sup>3</sup> þat þo  
was to bene<sup>4</sup> wardeyne and chyueteyne of al his folc; & he anone,  
and his Britons, assemblede a grete host<sup>1</sup>, & ȝaf bataile to Octa and  
to his folc; but Octa at þe laste was descomfitede.<sup>5</sup> ¶ Hit bifelle 8  
þus afterwarde, <sup>6</sup>þat þise Britons<sup>6</sup> haden<sup>7</sup> indignacioun<sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup>at þis<sup>9</sup>  
Aloth, & wolde nouȝt to him bene<sup>10</sup> entendant; wherfore þe kyng  
was annoyede wonder<sup>1</sup> sore, and lete put him in a liter in þe hoste  
amonges<sup>11</sup> his folc; and þai ladde him to Veroleyne, þat þo was a <sup>12</sup>  
faire citee, þere þat seynt Albone was martrede; and after<sup>1</sup> was þat  
citee destroiede þrouȝ paynemys & þrouȝ werre. and þider<sup>1</sup> went<sup>12</sup>  
<sup>13</sup>Ossa and Octa<sup>13</sup> & her<sup>1</sup> peple, & entrede into þe toune, and lete  
<sup>14</sup>make faste<sup>14</sup> þe ȝates, & þere þai<sup>15</sup> helde ham. & þe kyng come, <sup>16</sup>  
and ham bisegede, & made a stronge assaut; but þo þat were  
wipin, manliche ham defended. ¶ The kyng <sup>16</sup>lete ordeyne<sup>16</sup> his  
gunnes & his engynes forto breke þe wallys; & þe wallis were so  
stronge þat noþing myȝt ham misdo. ¶ Octa & his peple hade <sup>20</sup>  
grete despite þat a kyng liggyng in a liter<sup>17</sup> <sup>18</sup>ham hade<sup>18</sup> bisegede,  
& þai token<sup>19</sup> conseil amonges ham, forto stande vp in þe morwe, &  
come oute, and ȝeue bataile to þe kyng<sup>1</sup>; and so þai deden.<sup>20</sup> and in  
þat bataile were boþe Octa & Ossa slayne; & al þe opere þat <sup>24</sup>  
ascapede alif, fledde þens<sup>21</sup> into Scotland, and made<sup>22</sup> Colegryne  
her<sup>1</sup> cheueteyne. & þe Saxoynes þat were alif, and<sup>23</sup> ascapede fro þe  
bataile, brouȝt<sup>24</sup> aȝeyne a<sup>25</sup> grete strengþ, & amonges ham<sup>26</sup> saiden  
þat, if the<sup>15</sup> Kyng Vter were dede, þai shulde wel conquere þe lande; <sup>28</sup>  
and amonges ham þai þouȝt<sup>27</sup> enpoysone þe kyng, and ordeynede  
men forto done<sup>28</sup> þis dede, & ȝaf ham of ȝiftes grete plente, þis þing  
to done. & þai ordeynede ham þiderward<sup>1</sup> þere þat þe kyng was

<sup>1</sup> chose D.

<sup>2</sup> syke for-asmyche as he myȝt nouȝt trauaile for his sikenesse D. sike  
for-as-mych as he myȝt not for siknes O.

<sup>3-3</sup> he ordeynede Aloth sone of Elyne D. he ordeyned Aloth sone of  
Eleyne O. þe sone of Elyne R.

<sup>4</sup> be O. <sup>5</sup> descomfite D. <sup>6-6</sup> om. D. <sup>7</sup> had DO.

<sup>8</sup> dedignacion sic O. <sup>9-9</sup> of DO. <sup>10</sup> be O. <sup>11</sup> among O.

<sup>12</sup> þai hade seynt D. þey had sent O. <sup>13-13</sup> Octa and Ossa O.

<sup>14-14</sup> fast make O. <sup>15</sup> om. D. <sup>16-16</sup> ordeigned O.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 32, back. <sup>18-18</sup> hade ham D. had hem O. <sup>19</sup> took O.

<sup>20</sup> ded O. <sup>21</sup> om. DO. <sup>22</sup> maden DO. <sup>23</sup> that D.

<sup>24</sup> broghten O. <sup>25</sup> om. O. <sup>26</sup> ham þai D. hem þey O.

<sup>27</sup> þoughten O. <sup>28</sup> do O.



duellyngt, & clopede ham in pore wede, þe better<sup>1</sup> forto spede hire  
 luper purpos; but noþelesse, for al her falsenesse & queyntise, þai  
 myzt neuer come ney þe kyng. But<sup>2</sup> at þe laste þai aspiede þat  
 4 þe kyng drank none opere licoure but<sup>3</sup> oneliche water<sup>3</sup> of a clere  
 welle þat was ney; bisides; and þise false traitoures<sup>4</sup> vppoñ a  
 day priueliche<sup>5</sup> went to þat wel, and put þerin poisoun, so þat al þe  
 water was enpoysenede. And anone after<sup>6</sup> as þe Kyng hade dronke  
 8 of þat water, he biganne to swelle, & sone after<sup>6</sup> deide; & alse  
 meny as drank<sup>17</sup> of þat water deide<sup>8</sup> also. And anone as þis false-  
 nesse was aspiede, folc of þe toune lete stoppe þe welle for  
 euermore. ¶ When<sup>9</sup> þe Kyng<sup>9</sup> was dede, his<sup>10</sup> folc bare him to  
 12 Stonehyng wip grete solempnite of bisshopp; and barons þat were  
 pere, þat buriede him bisides Aurilambros his broþer; and after  
 turnede azeine þo euerycheon, & lete sende after Arthure his sone;  
 and þai made him Kyng of þe lande wip<sup>11</sup> michel<sup>12</sup> reuerence, after  
 16 his faderes dep, þe xvij zere of his regne.

How Arthure, þat was þe sone of Vter, was cronede after his  
 faderes dep; & how he drof Colegryn & þe Saxoynes,  
 and Chelduc<sup>13</sup> of<sup>14</sup> Almayne, out of<sup>14</sup> þis lande. Capitulo

20 lxxiij<sup>o</sup>.

**W**hen Arthure was made kyng<sup>1</sup> of þe lande, he was<sup>15</sup> but  
 zonge, of xv zere age, but he was faire, and bolde, &  
 dou3ti of body, & to meke folc he was gode & curteise, & to prout  
 24 folc he was stout & sterne; & also he was<sup>16</sup> gentil and curteise,<sup>16</sup>  
 and large of spendyngt, &<sup>17</sup> made him<sup>17</sup> wel bilouede<sup>18</sup> of al men  
 pere þat<sup>15</sup> it was nede. And when he biganne to regne, he swore þat  
 Saxones neuer<sup>19</sup> shulde haue pees ne reste til þat<sup>20</sup> he hade drif<sup>21</sup>  
 28 ham out of his<sup>22</sup> lande. & he lete assemble a grete host, & fau3t  
 wip Colegryn, þat<sup>20</sup> after tyme þat Octa was dede, þe Saxones  
 mayntenede. And þis Colegryne was descomfitede, & fley<sup>23</sup> to 3ork,  
 & tok þe tone, & pere helde him. And þe Kyng bisegede þe tone;  
 32 but he mi3t noþing<sup>24</sup> spede, for<sup>19</sup> þe toune was so strong, & þai wipin

<sup>1</sup> better al DO. <sup>2</sup> But so DO. <sup>3-3</sup> water onlych D. only water O.

<sup>4</sup> traitous sic D. <sup>5</sup> pryuyly O. <sup>6</sup> after he DO.

<sup>7</sup> drunken D. drunken O. <sup>8</sup> deiden D. didnen O.

<sup>9-9</sup> kyng Vter D. <sup>10</sup> om. O. <sup>11</sup> leaf 33. <sup>12</sup> mych O.

<sup>13</sup> Sheldruk kyng D. cheldrik out O. <sup>14-14</sup> om. O. <sup>15</sup> nas O.

<sup>16-16</sup> curteise & gentile D.

<sup>17-17</sup> made him D. made hym O. made R.

<sup>18-18</sup> amonges al men pere þat D. among al men þat per O.

<sup>19</sup> om. D. <sup>20</sup> om. O. <sup>21</sup> dryuen D. dryve O. <sup>22</sup> þis O.

<sup>23</sup> come D. fly O. <sup>24</sup> nou3t D.

kepte þe toune wel & horpedly. ¶ And in þe mene tyme Colegryne  
lete þe toune to Bladulf, & fley<sup>1</sup> him-self to Cheldrik, þat was  
Kyng of Almaine, forto haue of him socour. and þe Kyng as-  
semblede a grete power, and come & arryuede in Scotland wip 4  
v. C. shippis. & when Arthure wist of þis tydyngus,<sup>2</sup> þat he hade  
nouzt power ne<sup>3</sup> strengþ ynow to feizt azeyne<sup>4</sup> Sheldrik, he lete  
bene<sup>5</sup> þe sege, and went to Londoñ, and sent anone his *lettres* to þe  
Kyng of Lital Britaigne, þat me<sup>6</sup> callede<sup>7</sup> Hoel, his <sup>8</sup>neveu, his 8  
sustres<sup>8</sup> sone, þat he shulde come to him wip <sup>9</sup>al þe power þat he  
myzt. And he assemblede a grete hoste, & arryuede at South-  
ampton. ¶ And when Kyng Ar[t]hure hit wiste, he was glade  
ynow, & went azeynes ham,<sup>10</sup> & ham resceyuede wip michel<sup>11</sup> honour, 12  
so þat þo ij hostes ham assemblede, and toke<sup>12</sup> her way euen to  
Nichole, þat<sup>13</sup> Cheldrik hade bisegede but nouzt 3itte taken. And  
þai comen<sup>14</sup> vpon Cheldrik & vpon<sup>15</sup> his peple or þai hit wiste,  
þere<sup>7</sup> þat þai werre,<sup>16</sup> and ham egrely assailede. þe Kyng Cheldrik 16  
and his meny defendede ham manly by here power, but Kyng  
Arthure and his men<sup>17</sup> quelledde so meny Saxones, þat neuer er<sup>18</sup>  
was seyne soche a slaughte; and<sup>19</sup> his men þat were lefte alif,  
fledde away, and Arthure ham pursuede, and drof ham into a 20  
wode þat þai myzt no ferþer passe. ¶ Cheldrik and his men saw  
wel þat þai were brouzt into miche disesse, & ham 3olden to Arthure  
in þis maner wise, þat he shulde take here horse and Here armure,  
& al þat þai hadde, þat þai most oneliche gone on fote to here 24  
shippes, and so þai wolde gone<sup>20</sup> into here owen lande, & neuer  
come azeyne into þis lande. And vpon assuraunce of þis<sup>7</sup> þing,  
þai 3euen<sup>21</sup> him gode hostages; and Arthure, prou3 conseile of his  
men, grauntede þis þing, and resceyuede þe hostages. & oppon þis, 28  
þise oper went vnto<sup>22</sup> here shippes: and when þai werne<sup>23</sup> in þe  
hye see, hir wille chaungede, as þe deuel it wolde, & þai retournede  
hire nauye, & come azeyne into þis land, & arryuede at Tottenesse,  
& went out of here shippis, & toke<sup>24</sup> þe lande, & clene robbede hit, 32  
& michel<sup>25</sup> peple slou3, & token<sup>26</sup> al þe Armure þat þai myzt fynde;  
& so þai wenten<sup>27</sup> forthe <sup>28</sup>til þai comen<sup>28</sup> to Bathe; but þe men of

<sup>1</sup> fly O.    <sup>2</sup> tidyng<sup>t</sup> D.    tydyng O.    <sup>3</sup> and D.    <sup>4</sup> azen O.

<sup>5</sup> he DO.    <sup>6</sup> he D.    <sup>7</sup> om. O.    <sup>8-8</sup> neveys souster O.

<sup>9</sup> leaf 33, back.    <sup>10</sup> hym O.    <sup>11</sup> mych O.    <sup>12</sup> token O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. has þat þat.    <sup>14</sup> come D.    <sup>15</sup> on D.    <sup>16</sup> were þere O.

<sup>17</sup> meny D.    <sup>18</sup> tofore D.

<sup>19</sup> & sheldrik & D.    And Cheldrik & O.    <sup>20</sup> go D.    <sup>21</sup> 3af D.

<sup>22</sup> to DO.    <sup>23</sup> were DO.    <sup>24</sup> nome DO.    <sup>25</sup> mych O.

<sup>26</sup> leaf 34.    <sup>27</sup> went DO.    <sup>28-28</sup> om. D.    tyl þey come O.

þe toune shitten faste here ȝates, and wolde nouȝt suffren<sup>1</sup> ham come þer in<sup>2</sup> þe toune, and þai defendede ham wel and horpedly aȝeyn<sup>3</sup> ham.

4 <sup>3</sup>How Arthure ȝaf bataile to þe Saxones when þai comen<sup>4</sup> aȝeyne, and bisegede þe toune of Bape, & <sup>5</sup>ham ouercome.<sup>5</sup>  
¶ *Capitulo lxxiiij*<sup>to. 3</sup>

8 **W**Hen Arthure herde þis tydynges,<sup>6</sup> he lete honge anone þe hostages, & lefte Hoel of Britaigne, his newew, forto kepe þe Marche toward Scotland wip half his peple, and him-self went<sup>7</sup> helpe rescue þe toune of Bathe. And when he come pider<sup>8</sup>, he ȝaf a strong batail to Cheldrik<sup>9</sup>, and quelde almost al þe peple þat he  
12 hade; for no man myȝt<sup>8</sup> him wipstande,<sup>8</sup> ne endure vnder<sup>9</sup> þe stroke of his swerde; and þere boþe were slayn, Colegrin and Bladud his broþer. ¶ And Cheldrik fledde þens, and wolde haue gone to his shippis; but when<sup>9</sup> Arthure hit wist, he tok xv<sup>10</sup> M<sup>1</sup> knyȝtes to  
16 Cadur, þat was erl of Cornewaille, forto lette and stoppe his com- myng<sup>1</sup>; and Arthure him-self went aȝeyne towarde þe Marche of Scotland, ffor messagers tolde him þat þe<sup>11</sup> Scottes hade bisegede Hoel of Britaign þere þat he lay sike; and þerfore he hastede  
20 piderward<sup>12</sup>; & Cadur pursuede after<sup>13</sup> Cheldrik, & toke him or þat he myȝt<sup>11</sup> come to his<sup>12</sup> shippis, & quelledde Cheldrik & his peple. And when Cadur hade done þis viage, he hastede him<sup>13</sup> aȝeyne, as faste as<sup>13</sup> he myȝt, towardes Arthure, and founde him in Scotland  
24 þere þat he hade res<sup>14</sup>cuede Hoel of Britaigne. But þe Scottes were al feire wipin Mounref, and þere þai helde ham awhile; but Arthure ham pursuede, and þai fledde þens fourþ into Lymoigne, þat were in þat contre lx Iles, & grete plente of briddes, & grete  
28 plente of Egles, þat were wont to crie and feiȝten<sup>15</sup> to-gederes, and make grete noise when folc come<sup>16</sup> to robbe þat lande, and weren as miche as þai miȝt; and so þai deden, for þe Scottes were so grete rauenours þat þai token al þat þai myȝt fynde in þe lande of  
32 Lymoigne wip-outen<sup>17</sup> eny sparyng<sup>1</sup>; and þerwip þai chargede aȝeyne þe folc, into Scotland forto wende.<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> suffre DO.      <sup>2</sup> with-in D.    with-Inne O.      <sup>3-5</sup> om. O.

<sup>4</sup> come D.      <sup>5-8</sup> ouercome ham D.      <sup>6</sup> tydyng<sup>t</sup> DO.      <sup>7</sup> went to O.

<sup>8-9</sup> with hym stande O.      <sup>9</sup> when kyng D.      <sup>10</sup> x DO.

<sup>11</sup> om. D.      <sup>12</sup> here O.      <sup>13-15</sup> al þat D.      <sup>14</sup> leaf 34, back.

<sup>15</sup> fight O.      <sup>16</sup> comen D.      <sup>17</sup> withoute O.

<sup>18</sup> MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl. 490 (D) has several pages missing here, and does not continue until f. 39 of the Rawlinson MS., p. 78 below.

How Kyng Arthure axede of Merlyn þe adventures of vj the laste kynges þat weren to regne in Engeland, and how þe lande shulde ende. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo ¶ Quinto.

“Sire,” quod Merlyn, “in þe 3ere of Incarnacioun of <sup>1</sup>oure Lorde <sup>1</sup> 4 Ihesu Crist M<sup>t</sup> CC xv þere<sup>2</sup> shal come a lambe oute of Wynchestre þat shal haue a white tong and trew lippis, and he shal haue wryten in his hert ‘Holynesse.’ ¶ This lambe shal make meny Goddes house,<sup>3</sup> and he shal haue pees þe most parte of his 8 lif, & he shal make one<sup>2</sup> of þe faireste places of þe worlde þat in his tyme shal nouȝt fully ben<sup>4</sup> made an ende. And in þe ende of his lif, a wolf of a straunge lande shal do him grete harme<sup>5</sup>; but at þe ende þe lambe shal be maistre, prouȝ helpe of a rede Fox þat shal 12 come out of þe Northwest, and him shal ouercome; and þe wolfe shal dye [in] water; and after þat tyme þe lambe shal leue no while þat he ne shal <sup>6</sup>dye. ¶ His sede <sup>7</sup>þan shal bene<sup>7</sup> in strange lande, and þe lande shal bene<sup>4</sup> wiþout a gouernoure a litil tyme. 16

“ANd after him<sup>8</sup> shal come a dragoun mellede wiþ mercy and <sup>ek</sup><sup>9</sup> wodenesse, þat shal haue a berde as a goot, þat shal ȝeue in Engeland shadewe, and shal kepe the lande from<sup>10</sup> colde and hete; and his o foote shal be sette in Wik, and þat opere in 20 London; and he shal vnbrace<sup>11</sup> iij habitacions,<sup>12</sup> and he shal oppen his mouþ toward Walys, and þe tremblyng<sup>1</sup> of þe hidure of his mouþe, his heres shal strecche toward meny habitaciouns and contres, and his breþ shal bene<sup>4</sup> ful suete in straunge landes<sup>13</sup>; & 24 in his tyme shal ryuers renne wiþ bloode and wiþ brayne, & he shal make in<sup>14</sup> places of his lande, walles, þat shal done<sup>15</sup> miche harme to<sup>16</sup> his seede after his tyme.

¶ Than shal þere come a peple out of þe Northwest duryng his 28 regne, þat shal bene<sup>4</sup> lade prouȝ an<sup>17</sup> wickede hare, þat þe dragoun shal done<sup>2</sup> crone Kyng, þat afterwarde shal flee ouer þe see wiþout comyng aȝeyne, for drede of þe dragoun. ¶ In<sup>18</sup> þat tyme þe sonne shal bene<sup>4</sup> also rede as blode, as meny<sup>2</sup> men shul see<sup>2</sup> prouȝ al þe 32 worlde: þat shal bitoken grete pestilence, and dep of folc prouȝ dent of swerde; and þis<sup>19</sup> peple shal bene<sup>4</sup> faderles til þe tyme þat þe dragon shal dye prouȝ an hare þat shal meue<sup>20</sup> aȝeynes him werr

<sup>1-1</sup> om. O.<sup>2</sup> om. O.<sup>3</sup> houses O.<sup>4</sup> be O.<sup>5</sup> harm þurgh O.<sup>6</sup> leaf 35.<sup>7-7</sup> schal be O.<sup>8</sup> his tyme O.<sup>9</sup> eek with O.<sup>10</sup> fro O.<sup>11</sup> vnbracen O.<sup>12</sup> habitacions & cuntres O.<sup>13</sup> lond O.<sup>14</sup> in al O.<sup>15</sup> do O<sup>16</sup> vn-to O.<sup>17</sup> a O.<sup>18</sup> And in O.<sup>19</sup> þat O.<sup>20</sup> neuere O

in þe ende of his lif, þat shal nouzt <sup>1</sup> bene fulliche<sup>1</sup> endele in his tyme. ¶ This dragoun shal <sup>2</sup> bene holden<sup>2</sup> in his tyme þe best body of al þe worlde; & he shal dye bisides þe Marche<sup>3</sup> of a 4 straunge lande; and þe lande shalle <sup>4</sup> duelle fade[r]lesse, wipouten<sup>5</sup> a gode gouernoure; and me shal wepe for his dep̃ fram þe Ile of Shepe vnto þe hauen of MarciH; wherfore, 'allas' shal bene<sup>6</sup> þe commune songe of faderles fole, þat shal ouerleuen in his land 8 destroiede.

“**A** Nd after þis dragone shal come a ~~gote~~ oute of a<sup>7</sup> Kar, þat shal haue hornes &<sup>8</sup> berde of siluer; and pere shal come out of his noseprelles<sup>9</sup> a drop þat shal bitoken hunger & sorw, & grete 12 dep̃ of þe peple; and miche of his lande in þe bigynnyng of his regne shal be wastede. ¶ This goot shal go<sup>10</sup> ouer into Fraunce, & shal oppoñ<sup>11</sup> þe floure of lif and of dep̃. In his tyme pere shal arise an Egle in Cornewaile þat shal haue feperes of golde, þat of 16 pride shal <sup>12</sup> bene wipouten<sup>12</sup> pere of alle þe lande; and he shal despise lordes of blode; and after, he shal flee shamefully by a Bere at Gauerliche; and after shal bene<sup>6</sup> made brigges of men oppoñ þe costes of þe see; and stones shal falle <sup>13</sup> fram castelles,<sup>13</sup> 20 and meny opere tounes shal ben<sup>6</sup> made pleyne<sup>14</sup>; and a bataile shalle <sup>15</sup> bene done vppoñ an Arme<sup>15</sup> of þe see in a felde ordeynede as a shelde<sup>16</sup>; and at þat<sup>17</sup> bataile shal dye meny white hedes; wherfore þat<sup>18</sup> bataile shal bene<sup>6</sup> callede 'þe white bataile.' ¶ And þe 24 forsaide Beere shal done<sup>19</sup> þis goote michel<sup>20</sup> harme, and it shal bene<sup>6</sup> oute of þe Southwest; & of his bloode þan shal þe goote lese miche of his lande til at þe tyme þat shendeship shal him ouercomen<sup>21</sup>; & þan shal he clopen<sup>22</sup> him in a lyone; skyn; and þan 28 shal he wynne þat he hade loste, and more þerto, ffor a peple shal <sup>23</sup> come out of þe northwest þat shal make þe goot sore to bene<sup>6</sup> adrade; and he shal avenge him oppon<sup>24</sup> his enemys, prou; conseil of<sup>25</sup> ij oweles, þat ferst shal bene<sup>6</sup> in peril forto bene vndone<sup>26</sup>; but 32 þe olde owel shal wende ouer þe se into<sup>27</sup> a st[r]aunge lande, and pere he shal duelle vnto a certeyne tyme; and after, he shal come azeayne into þis lande. ¶ þise ij oweles shullen<sup>28</sup> do grete harme

<sup>1-1</sup> MS. has bene fulliche bene; fully be O. <sup>2-2</sup> behold O. <sup>3</sup> marches O.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 35, back. <sup>5</sup> withoute O. <sup>6</sup> be O. <sup>7</sup> om. O. <sup>8</sup> & a O.

<sup>9</sup> nostrer O. <sup>10</sup> gon O. <sup>11</sup> i. e. open. <sup>12-12</sup> be withoute O.

<sup>13-13</sup> fro CasteH O. <sup>14</sup> playn In his tyme schal seme þat þe bere schal brenne O.

<sup>15-15</sup> be do vpon þe Armes O. <sup>16</sup> Child O. <sup>17</sup> þe O.

<sup>18</sup> his O. <sup>19</sup> do O. <sup>20</sup> mych O. <sup>21</sup> ouercome O. <sup>22</sup> clope O.

<sup>23</sup> leaf 36. <sup>24</sup> on O. <sup>25</sup> of þe O. <sup>26</sup> vndo O.

<sup>27</sup> MS. has into fraunce, with fraunce underlined for erasure. <sup>28</sup> shul O.

to meny on; and so þai shullen<sup>1</sup> counseil þe gote þat he shal arere werre azeynes þe forsaid bere; and at þe last, þe goot and þe oweles shullen<sup>2</sup> come atte Bur' vp Trent, and shullen<sup>3</sup> wende ouer'; and for drede, þe Bere shal flee, and a swan wiþ him, for<sup>4</sup> his company, 4 to Bur' towarde þe North, & þere þai shal bene<sup>5</sup> wiþ an harde shoure. And þan þe swan shal bene<sup>5</sup> slayne wiþ sorwe, and þe Bere taken & biheuedede,<sup>6</sup> alþer' nexte his neste, þat shal [stand] vpon a broken brigge, vp wham þe sone shal caste his beemes; 8 and meny shal him seche, for vertu þat fro<sup>7</sup> hym shal come. ¶ In þat same tyme shal dye, for sorwe and care, a peple of his lande, so þat meny<sup>8</sup> shal bene<sup>8</sup> oppon him þe more bolder' afterward. And þo ij oweles shullen<sup>2</sup> do miche harme to þe forsaid floure of lif, 12 and here shul lede in distresse, so þat she shal passe ouer into Fraunce, forto make pees bituene þe gote & þe flour' delice; and þere she shal duelle to<sup>9</sup> a tyme þat her' sede shal come to seche here; and þere þai shul bene<sup>5</sup> stille til a tyme þat þai shul ham 16 clope with grace: and þai shul seche<sup>10</sup> the<sup>11</sup> Owelyn, and<sup>11</sup> put ham vnto<sup>12</sup> despitous dep. And after' shal þis goot bene<sup>5</sup> brougt to disese; and in<sup>13</sup> grete anguisshe and sorwe he shal leue al his lif. 20

“ **A**ftre þis goote, shal come out of Wyndesore a Boor', þat shal haue an heuede<sup>14</sup> of witte, a lyons hert, a pitouse lokyng; his vesage shal be reste to sike men; his breþ<sup>15</sup> shal bene<sup>5</sup> stanchyn of þerst to ham þat bene apreste þerof shal<sup>16</sup>; his worde shal bene<sup>5</sup> 24 gospelle; his beryng shal bene<sup>5</sup> meke as a Lambe. In þe ferste zere of his regne he shal haue grete payne to iustifien<sup>17</sup> ham þat bene vntrew; and in his tyme shal his lande bene<sup>5</sup> multipliede wiþ Aliens. ¶ And þis Boor, prouz fersenesse of hert þat he shal 28 haue, shal make wolfes bicombe lambes; & he shal bene<sup>5</sup> callede prouz-oute<sup>18</sup> þe worlde 'Boor of holynesse and<sup>13</sup> of fersenesse, of nobeleye and of mekenesse,' and he shal do mesurabli al þat he shal haue to done<sup>19</sup> vnto þe Burgh of Ierusalem; and he shal whet 32 his teiþ vpon þe zates of Parys, and vpon iiij landes. Spayne shal tremble for drede of him; Gascoyne shal swete; in Fraunce he shal put his wynges; his grete taile shal reste in Engeland softly; Almayn shal quake for drede of him. ¶ þis Boor shal 36

<sup>1</sup> schult O.    <sup>2</sup> shul O.    <sup>3</sup> schul O.    <sup>4</sup> fro O.    <sup>5</sup> be O.

<sup>6</sup> byhedeð O.    <sup>7</sup> for O.    <sup>8-8</sup> landes shul be O.    <sup>9</sup> tul O.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 36, back.    <sup>11-11</sup> owles & schul O.    <sup>12</sup> to O.    <sup>13</sup> om. O.

<sup>14</sup> heed O.    <sup>15</sup> brest O.    <sup>16</sup> shul haue O.    <sup>17</sup> iustifye O.

<sup>18</sup> purght O.    <sup>19</sup> do O.

3 zeue mantels to ij tounes of Engeland, and he shal make þe ryuer  
 rynne wip blode & wip brayn, and he shal make meny<sup>1</sup> medowes  
 reede, and he shal gete as miche as his auncestres deden; & er þat  
 4 he bene<sup>2</sup> dede he shal bere iij croncs; and he shal put on<sup>3</sup> lande  
 into gret subieccioun; and after hit shal bene<sup>2</sup> releuede, but nouȝt  
 in his tyme. ¶ This Boor, after þat he is dede, <sup>4</sup>for his douȝty-  
 nesse shal bene<sup>2</sup> entered at Coloune, and his lande shal bene<sup>2</sup> þan  
 8 fulfilled wip<sup>5</sup> al goode.

“ A fter þis Boor shal come a lambe, þat shal haue feete of leede,  
 an heuede<sup>6</sup> of bras, an hert of a loppe, <sup>7</sup>and a swynes skyn,  
 and<sup>7</sup> herde; and in his tyme his land shal bene in pees. þe first ȝere  
 12 of his regne he shal do make a citee, þat al þe worlde shal speke  
 þerof. þis lambe shal lese in his tyme a grete parte of his lande  
 þrouȝ an hidouse wolf; but he shal recouer it, an ȝif an<sup>8</sup> Lordship  
 to an Egle of his landes; and þis Egle shal wel gouerne hit, til þe  
 16 tyme þat pride shal him ouergone,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal  
 dye þrouȝ his broþeres suorde.<sup>9</sup> and after shal þe lande falle to þe  
 forsaide lambe, þat shal gouerne<sup>10</sup> in pees al his lifes tyme; and  
 after, he shal dye, and þe lande bene<sup>2</sup> fulfilled wip<sup>5</sup> al maner  
 20 gode.

“ A fter þis lambe shal come a Moldewerpe acursed<sup>11</sup> of Godes  
 moun, a caitif, a cowarde as an here. he shal haue an  
 elderliche<sup>12</sup> skyn as a goot; and vengeance shal fal vppoñ him for  
 24 synne. In þe first ȝere of his regne he shal haue of al gode grete  
<sup>13</sup>plente in his lande, and toward him also; and in his lande he shal  
 haue grete<sup>13</sup> praising til þe tyme þat he shal soffre his peple lyuen<sup>14</sup>  
 in to miche pride wipouten<sup>15</sup> chastisyng, wherfore God wil ben<sup>2</sup>  
 28 wroþ. ¶ Than shal arisen<sup>16</sup> vp a dragoun in<sup>5</sup> þe North, þat shal  
 bene<sup>2</sup> ful fers, and shal meue werre aȝeynes þe forsaide Moldewerpe,  
 and shal ȝeue him bataile vppoñ a stoñ. þis dragoun shal gadre  
 aȝeyne into his company a wolf þat shal <sup>17</sup>come oute of the West,  
 32 þat shal bygynne werre aȝeynes þe forsaide Moldewerp in his  
 side; & so shal<sup>18</sup> þe dragoun and he bynde here tailes to-geder.

“ ¶ þan shal come a lyon oute of Irland, þat shal fal in  
 company wip ham; and þan shal tremble<sup>19</sup> þe lande, þat þan shal  
 36 bene<sup>2</sup> callede Engeland, as an aspe<sup>20</sup> lef, and in þat tyme shal

<sup>1</sup> MS. nemy.<sup>2</sup> be O.<sup>3</sup> o O.<sup>4</sup> leaf 37.<sup>5</sup> of O.<sup>6</sup> heed O.<sup>7-7</sup> a Swynes skyn & an O.<sup>8</sup> a O.<sup>9</sup> deth O.<sup>10</sup> gouerne þe land O.<sup>11</sup> cursed O.<sup>12</sup> erdelich O.<sup>13-13</sup> om. O.<sup>14</sup> lyve O.<sup>15</sup> withoute O.<sup>16</sup> aryse O.<sup>17</sup> leaf 37, back.<sup>18</sup> schullen O.<sup>19</sup> tremblen O.<sup>20</sup> Aspyn O.

<sup>1</sup>castelles bene<sup>1</sup> fellede adoune vppoñ Tamise; and it shal semen<sup>2</sup> þat Seuerne shal bene<sup>3</sup> drye, for þe bodyes þat shal <sup>4</sup>fallen dede þerin.<sup>4</sup> ¶ Þe iij chief flodes of Engeland shal rynne in blode; and grete drede shal bene,<sup>3</sup> and anguisshe, þat shul arisen after þe <sup>4</sup>Moldewerpe shal fle for drede; and þe dragouñ, þe lyoun and þe wolf, him shal dryuen away, and the laude shal bene<sup>3</sup> wipout ham, and þe Moldewerpe shal haue no maner power, saf onely a ship wherto he may wende; and after þat, he shal come<sup>5</sup> to lande when <sup>8</sup>þe see is wipdraw. ¶ And after þat he shal ȝeue þe pride part of his lande forto haue þe ferþe part in pees & reste; and after he shal leue in sorw al his lif-tyme<sup>6</sup>; and in his tyme þe hote bapes <sup>7</sup>shullen bicomē<sup>7</sup> colde; and after þat shal þe Moldewerp dye <sup>12</sup>aventurly and sodeynely,—allas þe sorwe!—for he shal <sup>8</sup>bene drenchede<sup>8</sup> in a flode of þe see, his seede shal bicomē pure<sup>9</sup> faderles in straunge lande for euermore, and þan shal the lande bene<sup>3</sup> departede in iij parties, þat is to seyn, to the Wolf, to þe <sup>16</sup>dragoune, & to þe lioun; and so shal it bene<sup>9</sup> for euermore. And þan shal þis<sup>10</sup> land bene<sup>3</sup> callede ‘þe lande of conquest,’ & so shal þe <sup>11</sup>ryt<sup>11</sup> heires of Engeland ende.”

<sup>12</sup>How **Arthure** ouercome **Guyllomer** þat was **Kyng** of **Irlande** <sup>20</sup>& how þe **Scottes** bicomē<sup>13</sup> his men. *Capitulo lxxvj*<sup>10</sup>.

**W**Hen Guillomer, þat was Kyng of Irland, hade tidynges<sup>14</sup> þat Kyng [Arthur] was entrede at Glastenbery, he ordeynede a grete power of Irisshemen, & come to þe see wip his <sup>24</sup>Yrisshe peple, and so come into Scotteland ouer þe see, and arryuede faste <sup>15</sup>by þere þat Kyng Arthure<sup>15</sup> was wip his hoste. and anone as he herde þerof, he went towarde<sup>16</sup> him & ȝaf him bataile, and ouercome him anone ryzt; and Guillomer fledde wip his men <sup>28</sup>ȝeyne into Irland, and when þis scomfiture<sup>17</sup> was done,<sup>18</sup> Arthure turnede him ȝeyne þere þat he was, into þe place þat he hade lefte þe Scottes, & wolde haue ham al slayne. But þe bisshoppes, Abbotes, & opere fole of þe contre, and Ladies, <sup>32</sup>openheuedede, comen<sup>19</sup> bifore Kyng Arthure, and criede him mercy, & saide:

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> Casteþ be O.    <sup>2</sup> seme O.    <sup>3</sup> be O.    <sup>4</sup>—<sup>4</sup> falle þerin ded O.

<sup>5</sup> go O.    <sup>6</sup> liues-tyme O.    <sup>7</sup>—<sup>7</sup> schul be-comen O.

<sup>8</sup>—<sup>8</sup> be dreynt O.    <sup>9</sup> om. O.    <sup>10</sup> þe O.    <sup>11</sup> rightfult O.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 38.    <sup>13</sup> become O.    <sup>14</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>15</sup>—<sup>15</sup> MS. has by þere þat kyng Arthure þere þat kyng Arthure; þerby as kyng Arthure O.

<sup>16</sup> towards O.    <sup>17</sup> discomfytur O.    <sup>18</sup> do O.

<sup>19</sup>—<sup>19</sup> openhede come O.



“sire, gentil kyng<sup>1</sup> & myȝty, haue mercy & pitee of<sup>1</sup> vs! and as  
 3oure-self is<sup>2</sup> of þe riȝt lawe, to holde and mayntene cristendome,  
 ful grete dishonour it shulde be to quelle ham þat leueþ in almyȝty  
 4 Gode as ȝe done. & for Godes loue haue mercy and pitee of vs,  
 and suffren<sup>3</sup> vs forto lyuen,<sup>4</sup> for we haue hade michel<sup>5</sup> sorwe and  
 pyne; for þe Saxones hauen meny tymes þrouȝ oure lande<sup>6</sup> passede;  
 but þat is nouȝt ynouȝt to ȝow; for often-tymes þai haue done vs  
 8 miche sorwe & disese. ¶ ffor oure<sup>7</sup> castelles þai hauen<sup>7</sup> taken, &  
 oure bestes slayne & eten, & mich harme þai hauen<sup>8</sup> vs done; and  
 if ȝe wolde vs now quelle, hit were<sup>9</sup> none Honoure to a Kyng<sup>1</sup> to  
 quelle<sup>10</sup> ham þat crien him<sup>11</sup> mercy; for ynow ȝe haue<sup>12</sup> y-done vs,  
 12 & vs ouercomen euerycheoñ<sup>12</sup>; & for þe ¶ loue of God, soffre<sup>13</sup> vs  
 forto lyue, & haueþ<sup>14</sup> mercy of<sup>1</sup> Cristen peple þat bileueþ<sup>15</sup> in God  
 as ȝe done!” ¶ when Kyng<sup>1</sup> Arthure herde þis sorwe, he hade pite  
 of ham, and ȝaf ham lif and lyme; and alle þai felle adoune to his  
 16 feete, and bicomē<sup>16</sup> his lege men, and he toke of ham homages.  
 ¶ And after<sup>1</sup> þat, Kyng Arthure turnede aȝeyne wiþ his host, and  
 come aȝeyne to ȝorke, and þere he abode duryng þat Viage.  
 ¶ And þo ȝaf he al<sup>17</sup> Loegers to Loth, þat hade spousede his suster,  
 20 and opere ȝiftes grete plente. and þo was Gaweyn, his cosyn,<sup>18</sup> but  
 ȝong of<sup>18</sup> age; and to alle his opere men þat him hade seruēde in  
 his werr<sup>1</sup>, he ȝaf riche ȝiftes, & he þankede ham miche of here gode  
 seruise.

24 **How Kyng Arthure spousede Gunnore, þat was Cadoreȝ cosyn,  
 Erl of Cornewaile; & after<sup>1</sup> he conquereð of Guillomeȝ aȝ  
 Irlanð. ¶ Capitulo Septuagesimo ¶ Septimo.**

28 **W**Hen Arthure hade brouȝt his lande in pees and reste, & in  
 gode state, & reste was in euery contre, þo<sup>19</sup> toke he and  
 wedede a wif<sup>19</sup> þat me callede Gunnore, & made here quene, a  
 faire lady and a gentil, þat Cador þe erle of Cornewail hade longe  
 tyme norisskede in his chaumbre, þat was his owen cosyn; but  
 32 neuer<sup>1</sup> þai<sup>20</sup> hadn childe to-gedres,<sup>20</sup> and nopelesse Kyng Arthure  
 louede her<sup>1</sup> wonder wel and derlich. ¶ And anone as wynter was  
 passede, he lete assemble a grete hoste, & alle his barons, and<sup>1</sup> saide

<sup>1</sup> on O.    <sup>2</sup> be O.    <sup>3</sup> suffre O.    <sup>4</sup> leue O.    <sup>5</sup> mych O.

<sup>6</sup> lond & O.    <sup>7-7</sup> Castell þey haue O.    <sup>8</sup> haue O.

<sup>9</sup> leaf 38, back.    <sup>10</sup> quellen O.    <sup>11</sup> hem O.

<sup>12-12</sup> don & vs ouercome O.    <sup>13</sup> suffreþ O.    <sup>14</sup> hath O.

<sup>15</sup> beleuen O.    <sup>16</sup> bycomen O.    <sup>17</sup> om. O.    <sup>18-18</sup> but of ȝonge O.

<sup>19-19</sup> nome he a wedded wyf O.    <sup>20-20</sup> had childryn to-gidere O.

þat he wolde wende into Irland<sup>1</sup> forto conquere <sup>1</sup>the Lande; and he tarede nouȝt ful<sup>2</sup> longe þat he ne passede ouer into Irland<sup>1</sup>. ¶ And Guillomer<sup>3</sup>, þe Kyng of Scotland<sup>3</sup>, lete assemble a grete hoste, and ȝaf batail to Kyng Arthur<sup>3</sup>; but Guillomer<sup>3</sup> was descom- 4 fitede, & ȝelde him to þe Kyng Arthure, and bicomē his man, and to him dede feaute & homage, and of him helde al þat lande fro þat tyme forward<sup>4</sup>. and after passede Kyng<sup>4</sup> Arthur<sup>4</sup> ferþer<sup>4</sup>, and conquerede Gutland<sup>4</sup> and Irland<sup>4</sup>, and toke homages of fole of þe 8 lande, and þere duelledē xij ȝer<sup>4</sup> in pees, & regnede wiþ <sup>5</sup>ioye and merþe, & werrede vppoñ no maner man, ne no man vppoñ him. ¶ And he bicomē so curteys and<sup>6</sup> large, and so<sup>6</sup> honourable, þat þe Emperourez court of Rome, ne none þrouȝ-out al þe worlde, was 12 none acountede to Kyng<sup>6</sup> Arthures, þat eny man wist<sup>6</sup>, ne none so<sup>7</sup> preisede<sup>8</sup>; and þefore þe beste knyȝtes of al maner<sup>2</sup> landes comen to him forto duelle, &<sup>9</sup> ham resceyuede wiþ gode wille and reuerence<sup>10</sup>; and alle þe knyȝtes weren<sup>11</sup> so gode þat no man knew 16 <sup>12</sup>þe werst<sup>12</sup>; and þefore Kyng<sup>6</sup> Arthure made þe rounde table, þat when þai shulde sitte to þe<sup>2</sup> mete, alle shulde bene<sup>13</sup> aliche hye, and euenlich<sup>14</sup> seruēde<sup>15</sup> at þe table, þat none myȝt maken<sup>16</sup> auant þat none were hyer<sup>1</sup> þan oþere.<sup>17</sup> and Kyng Arthure hade at þat table 20 ¶ Britoñs, Fraunchemen, Normannes, Flemynges, Burgoyners, Mansers, Loherinȝ, and of alle þe<sup>6</sup> landes a þis half þe mount of<sup>2</sup> Gorie, and of his lande of Britaigne, and of þe<sup>6</sup> grete Cornwaile, of Walys, & of Irland<sup>4</sup>, & of Scotland<sup>4</sup>; and shortely to telle, of alle 24 þe landes þat wolde<sup>18</sup> worshiþe and<sup>19</sup> chynalry seche, comen to Kyng Arthurs court<sup>4</sup>.

**How Kyng Arthure come into Fraunce, & conquered þat <sup>20</sup>londe of Froh, þat was a Romayn, & <sup>21</sup>him quellede.<sup>21</sup> Capitulo 28 lxxviij<sup>o</sup>.**

**S**ith hit bifelle þat Kyng Arthure, þrouȝ conseile of his barons and lordes, wolde gone<sup>22</sup> to conquere al Fraunce, þat þo was clepede Galle, þrouȝ Romayns þat þo helde<sup>23</sup> þat lande in here 32 powe[r] & in here lordeshipē. and þe Romayns <sup>24</sup>hade take þat

<sup>1</sup> leaf 39.      <sup>2</sup> om. O.      <sup>3</sup> Irland<sup>1</sup> O.      <sup>4</sup> ferthermore O.

<sup>5</sup> MS. Trin. Coll. Dublin 496 (D) continues again here.

<sup>6</sup> om. D.      <sup>7</sup> so well DO.      <sup>8</sup> preferred<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>9</sup> & he O.      <sup>10</sup> reuerencede D.      <sup>11</sup> were DO.      <sup>12—12</sup> ne wist O.

<sup>13</sup> he DO.      <sup>14</sup> euenly D.      <sup>15</sup> y-serued<sup>1</sup> O.      <sup>16</sup> make DO.

<sup>17</sup> another O.      <sup>18</sup> wolden DO.      <sup>19</sup> or D.      <sup>20</sup> leaf 39, back.

<sup>21—21</sup> quellede him D.      <sup>22</sup> go DO.      <sup>23</sup> helden O.

<sup>24—24</sup> hade tak þat lande D.      hade take þat land O.      om. R.

lande<sup>24</sup> to a noble knyzt, and a worþi<sup>1</sup> of body, þat me calle<sup>2</sup> Frolle, and when he wist þat Arthure come, he ordeynede an host &<sup>3</sup> grete power, & fauzt wiþ þe kyng<sup>4</sup>; & he & his fole weren<sup>4</sup> descomfitede; and þens pai fledde vnto Parys, and entrede þe touñ, & closede þe zates, & þere ham helde. Arthure wist þat FroH was gone to Parys, he pursuenede after, & come þider, & him bisegede; but þe citee was so strong and wel arraied; & þo þat were wiþin defendede ham wel and manliche.<sup>5</sup> ¶ Kyng Arthu[r]e duellede þere more þan a mounþe; & þere was so miche peple in þe citee, & hade despendede al her vitales þat were wiþin, & so grete hunger bicome amonges ham, þat pai <sup>deide</sup><sup>7</sup> wonder þik wiþin the citee<sup>6</sup> for hunger, and comen<sup>8</sup> to FroH, & prayede him to bene accordede wiþ Kyng Arthure forto haue pees; & pai wolde zelde ham to him, & þe touñ also. ¶ FroH saw<sup>9</sup> þat <sup>no</sup><sup>10</sup> longer he<sup>11</sup> myzt<sup>10</sup> holde þe touñ azeynes her<sup>12</sup> wille, and truste greteli oppoñ<sup>13</sup> his owen strengþ, & sent to Kyng Arthure þat he shulde come to<sup>14</sup> feizt wiþ him, body for body, and so <sup>pai</sup><sup>15</sup> shulde<sup>15</sup> departe Fraunce bituene ham ij. ¶ Kyng Arthure anone<sup>9</sup> graunte<sup>16</sup> hit, and wolde þat none of his peple vndertoke þe batail for him. ¶ And oppon þe morwe, bope comen<sup>17</sup> wel armede wiþouten<sup>18</sup> Parys, þere þat pai shulde fízt; and anone pai smyten togederes<sup>19</sup> so fersely; and so wel, pai fouzten in bope si<sup>20</sup>des, þat no man couþe deme þe bettre of ham. and so Hit bifelle<sup>21</sup> þat FroH 3af Arthure soche a stroke þat he knelede to þe grounde, wolde he nolde he. & as FroH wiþdrow his suerde, he wounde Kyng Arthure in þe forheuede, þat þe blode felle adoune by his eyen and<sup>22</sup> face. ¶ Arthure anone sterte vp hertly, when he felede<sup>23</sup> him hert, as a man þat semede almoste wode; & he toke<sup>24</sup> Tabourn, his gode suerde & drowe<sup>9</sup> it vp an hye, & 3af FroH soche a stroke þat þerwiþ he <sup>cleuede</sup><sup>25</sup> his heuede<sup>25</sup> down to þe shuldres, so þat his helme myzt nouzt bene<sup>26</sup> his warant; & so he felle adouñ dede þere in þe place, and þo of þe citee maden<sup>27</sup> grete sorwe for FroH; and anone euerycheoñ zelde ham to Kyng Arthure, & þe toune also, and

<sup>1</sup> worthy DO.<sup>2</sup> callede D. called O.<sup>3</sup> & a O.<sup>4</sup> were D. wer O.<sup>5</sup> manly O.<sup>6-6</sup> deiden with-in the citee wonder þik D.<sup>7</sup> dyden O.<sup>8</sup> come D. <sup>9</sup> om. D. <sup>10-10</sup> he myght no longer D. <sup>11</sup> he ne O.<sup>12</sup> her D. her O. om. R. <sup>13</sup> in D. <sup>14</sup> & O.<sup>15-15</sup> shul pai D. shul þey O. <sup>16</sup> grantele D. grauntele O.<sup>17</sup> come D. <sup>18</sup> with-out DO. <sup>19</sup> to-geder D. to-gydere O.<sup>20</sup> leaf 40. <sup>21</sup> felle D. <sup>22</sup> & his D. & by his O.<sup>23</sup> felt O. <sup>24</sup> nome DO.<sup>25-25</sup> cleuede heuede R. cleue his heuede D. cleft his heed O.<sup>26</sup> be DO. <sup>27</sup> made O.

bicome<sup>1</sup> his men, and deden<sup>2</sup> to him homage & feaute, & he vnderfonge ham & toke of ham gode hostages. & Kyng Arthure, after þat, went forþe wiþ his host, <sup>3</sup>and conquerede<sup>3</sup> Angoñ & Aungers, Gascoigne, Peihito, Nauerne, Burgoyne, Bery, Loherne, Turyn<sup>4</sup> and 4 Peihters; and alle þe opere landes of Fraunce he conquerede hollich. and when he hade alle conquerede, & taken bi homages & feautes, he turnede azeine to Parys, & þere<sup>5</sup> duelleded longe tyme, and ordeynede pees<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>ouer al the contrey, & <sup>7</sup>prouz-out al 8 Fraunce. ¶ And when pees was made oueral, prou3 his noble kny3thode þat he hade, & also for his owen worþynesse, and no man, were he neuer<sup>8</sup> so grete a lorde, derst nou3t meue<sup>8</sup> werre azeynes him, noþer to arise and forto make þe lande of Fraunce in 12 quiete & pees, he wonede þere ix 3ere, & dede þere meny grete wonders, & reprouede meny prout men & luper tyraunte3, & ham chastisede after her<sup>9</sup> deseruise.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>10</sup>How Kyng Arthure auauuncede alle his men þat hade trauailed 16 in his seruise. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Septuagesimo Nono.

**A**Nd after,<sup>11</sup> hit bifelle þus at Ester<sup>1</sup>, þere þat he helde a feste at Parys; richely he gan<sup>12</sup> auauunce his kny3tes for here seruise þat<sup>13</sup> him hade holpen<sup>14</sup> in his conquest; he 3af to his stywarde þat 20 men<sup>15</sup> cleped<sup>16</sup> Kay, Angoñ & Angers, and to Bedeler his boteler<sup>1</sup> he 3af Normandye, þat þo was callede Neustrie; and to Holden his chaumberleyn he 3af Flaundres and Mance; and to DoreH his cosyn he 3af Boloyn; and to Richard his Nevew he 3af Pountift; 24 And to alle opere he 3af largely<sup>17</sup> landes & fees after þat þai were of state. ¶ And when Arthur<sup>1</sup> hade þus his kny3tes feffede, at <sup>18</sup>Aprif after<sup>18</sup> nexte sewyng he come azeine into Britaigne, his owen lande. And after,<sup>19</sup> atte Whitsontide next sewyng, by conseil 28 of his barons, he wolde bene<sup>20</sup> cronede Kyng of Glomergoñ, and halde a solempne fest; & lete sompne kynges, Erles and barons, þat þai shulde come þider euerycheoñ.<sup>21</sup> Ther<sup>1</sup> was Skater<sup>1</sup>, kyng of Scotland; Cadwere, kyng of South-walys; Guillomer, king of 32 North Walys; Madede, kyng of Irland; Malgamus, kyng of

<sup>1</sup> bycomen O.<sup>2</sup> dede D.<sup>3-3</sup> MS. has and conquerede and conquerede.<sup>4</sup> Tulyñ O.<sup>5</sup> þere he D. þer he O.<sup>6</sup> pees longtyme O.<sup>7-7</sup> om. D.<sup>8</sup> om. O.<sup>9</sup> deseruynge D.<sup>10</sup> leaf 40, back.<sup>11</sup> afterward D. aftirward O.<sup>12</sup> began to O.<sup>13</sup> MS. þan.<sup>14</sup> help D.<sup>15</sup> me DO.<sup>16</sup> called O.<sup>17</sup> MS. has largely; large D.<sup>18-18</sup> AueriH D. AueriH after O.<sup>19</sup> om. D.<sup>20</sup> be DO.<sup>21</sup> echeoñ O.

Gutland; Achilles, kyng of Ikeland; Aloth, kyng of Denmere;  
 Gonewas, kyng of Norweye; and Hoel his cosyn, kyng of Dorke-  
 neye; Cadur, kyng of litel Britaigne; ¶ Morwip, erl of Cornne-  
 4 waile; Mauraun, erle of Gloucestr; Guerdoñ, erl of Wynchestre;  
 Boel, erl of Herforþ; Vrtegi,<sup>1</sup> erl of Oxenford<sup>2</sup>; Cursal, erl of  
 Bathe; Ionas, erl of Chestre; Euerel, erl of Dorcestre; Kymar, erl  
 of Salesbury; Waloth, erl of Kaunterbery; Igern, erl of Checestre;  
 8 Aral, erl of Leycestre, & þe Erl of <sup>3</sup>Warwik, & <sup>3</sup>opere riche <sup>4</sup>Lordes.  
 Britons also þere were ynow, þat is to seyn,<sup>5</sup> Dippon, Donand,  
 Genuz; and meny opere þat beþ<sup>6</sup> nouzt here nempnede<sup>7</sup> weren at  
 þat fest; and meny anopere<sup>8</sup> faire feste Kyng Arthure hade holden<sup>9</sup>  
 12 biforn, but neuer none soche, ne so solempne; and þat laste xv  
 dayes <sup>10</sup>wip michel<sup>10</sup> Honoure and merþe.

Of þe lettre þat was sent fram<sup>11</sup> þe Citee of Rome for pride to  
 Kyng Arthure ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo.

16 **T**He þridde day, as kyng Arthure satte at his<sup>12</sup> mete amonges<sup>13</sup>  
 his kynges, & amonges<sup>14</sup> ham þat seten at þe fest biforne ham,  
 comen<sup>15</sup> in xij elderne men of age, rychely arraiede, and curteisly  
 saluede þe kyng, and saide<sup>16</sup> þat<sup>17</sup> þai comen fro Rome, sent  
 20 messagers fram þe Emperour, and tok to him a lettre þat þus  
 miche<sup>18</sup> was to vnderstounde: ¶ “Gretely vs mervailis,<sup>19</sup> Arthure,  
 þat þow art on<sup>20</sup> so hardy, wip eyen in <sup>21</sup>þi heuede,<sup>21</sup> to maken<sup>22</sup>  
 oppen werr<sup>23</sup> and contak azeyns vs of Rome, þat owen al þe worlde to  
 24 deme;<sup>23</sup> for þow haste neuer zitte bifore<sup>24</sup> þis tyme prouede ne  
 assaiede þe strengþ of þe<sup>25</sup> Romayns, and þerfor, þow it shalt<sup>26</sup> in <sup>27</sup>þi  
 litil tyme. For Iulius Cesar conquerede al þe lande of Britaigne,  
 and tok þerof truage, and oure folc longe tyme hane it hade; and  
 28 now, þrouz þi pryde, þow hit withholdes<sup>28</sup>; wherfore we commande  
 þe þat þow zelde<sup>29</sup> azeine. ¶ and <sup>30</sup>zitte haste þow<sup>30</sup> more folye  
 done, þat þow hast slayn Froþ, þat was oure baron of Fraunce, al  
 wip wrong; and þerfore alle þe communes of Rome warnen and  
 32 commanden þe, oppoñ lif and Lyne, þat þow in haste bene<sup>31</sup> at

<sup>1</sup> Vrgety DO.<sup>2</sup> Oxoñ D.<sup>3-3</sup> Warwik<sup>4</sup> and meny D. Warwyk<sup>5</sup> & meny O. Warr<sup>6</sup> & R. <sup>4</sup> leaf 41.<sup>5</sup> say D. sey O. <sup>6</sup> ben D. be O. <sup>7</sup> ynempned O. <sup>8</sup> a DO.<sup>9</sup> holde D. hold O. <sup>10-10</sup> withel sic D. <sup>11</sup> fro D. <sup>12</sup> the D.<sup>13</sup> among<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>14</sup> amonge D. among O. <sup>15</sup> come D. <sup>16</sup> seyden O.<sup>17</sup> om. DO. <sup>18</sup> mych yt O. <sup>19</sup> merveylleþ O.<sup>20</sup> ones D. onys O. <sup>21-21</sup> pine hede D. þy heed O. <sup>22</sup> make O.<sup>23</sup> demen D. <sup>24</sup> afore D. <sup>25</sup> om. O. <sup>26</sup> shal D. <sup>27</sup> in a O.<sup>28</sup> withholdest O. <sup>29</sup> zelde it D. yt zelde O.<sup>30-30</sup> zif þou hast O. <sup>31</sup> be O.

Rome, amendes to make of þe<sup>1</sup> misdede; that þow haste done; and if hit so be þat þow come nouȝt,<sup>2</sup> we shul passe þe huȝ of Ioye wip strengþ, and we shul<sup>3</sup> þe seke<sup>3</sup> wher'euer þow may<sup>4</sup> ben<sup>5</sup> founde, and þow shalt nouȝt haue a<sup>6</sup> foote of lande of<sup>7</sup> þyn<sup>8</sup> owen<sup>4</sup> þat we ne shal destroy; and aftirward wip þi body we shal done<sup>9</sup> oure wille." ¶ When þis lettre was rade, & alle men hit herde, þai were annoyede, alle þat were at þe<sup>10</sup> solempnite; and þe Britons wolde haue slayne þe messagers, but Arthure wolde nouȝt soffre<sup>8</sup> hit, and saide þat þe messagers shulde haue none<sup>11</sup> harme, and mow by reson<sup>n</sup> none deserue; but he commanded<sup>12</sup> hem to bene worþely<sup>12</sup> seruede. and after mete he toke<sup>13</sup> conseil of kyngus, Erles and Barons, what ansuere me myȝt ȝeue<sup>14</sup> to þe messagers; and þai<sup>12</sup> conseilede<sup>15</sup> at ones<sup>16</sup> þat he shulde<sup>16</sup> assemble a grete power<sup>1</sup> of alle þe landes of þe whiche he hade lordeshipe, & manliche avenge him oppoñ þe Emperour, of þe despite þat he hade<sup>17</sup> sent to him soche a lettre; and þai suoren bi God and by his names þat þai wolde<sup>18</sup> 16 him pursue & brenne in-alsemiche<sup>19</sup> as þai<sup>20</sup> myȝt, & saide þat þai wolde<sup>21</sup> neuer faile<sup>22</sup> Kyng Arture, and rapere to bene<sup>23</sup> dede: and þai lete writen<sup>24</sup> a lettre to sende to þe Emperour by þe same messagers in þis maner: 20

Of þe bolde ansuere<sup>25</sup> þat Kyng Arthure<sup>25</sup> sent to þe Emperour of Rome & to þe Romayns. Capitulo ¶ <sup>xx</sup>iii<sup>xx</sup>j primo.

“**U**<sup>V</sup>[n]derstonde<sup>26</sup> amouges ȝow of Rome,<sup>27</sup> þat I am Kyng Arthure of Britaigne, and frely hit<sup>28</sup> holde, and shal holde; 24 and at Rome hastely y<sup>27</sup> shal be, nouȝt to ȝeue ȝow truage, but forto axen truage<sup>27</sup>; ffor Constantyne, þat was Elynus sone, þat was Emperour of Rome<sup>29</sup> and of al þe honour þat þereto bilongede<sup>30</sup>; ffor Maximian<sup>31</sup> conquerede al Fraunce and Almaigne, & mount 28 Ioye passede, & conquerede al Lombardye; and þise ij were myn ancestres; and þat þai hade and helde, I shulde<sup>32</sup> haue, þrouȝ ¶ Godes wille.”

<sup>1</sup> þi D. þyn O. <sup>2</sup> leaf 41, back. <sup>3-3</sup> seke þe O. <sup>4</sup> myght O. <sup>5</sup> be DO.

<sup>6</sup> oo O. <sup>7</sup> o D. <sup>8</sup> þi O. <sup>9</sup> do DO. <sup>10</sup> þat DO. <sup>11</sup> no O.

<sup>12-12</sup> ham to ben worshiply D. hem to be worschipfully O. to bene worþely R. <sup>13</sup> nome DO. <sup>14</sup> ȝeue DO. ȝe R.

<sup>15</sup> conseilede him D. counseyled<sup>h</sup> hym O.

<sup>16-16</sup> MS. has þat he shulde þat he shulde. <sup>17</sup> hathe D.

<sup>18</sup> shulde D. schuld O. <sup>19</sup> in-as-mychel O. <sup>20</sup> þai D. þey O. he R.

<sup>21</sup> nolde O. <sup>22</sup> fayle þe O. <sup>23</sup> be O. <sup>24</sup> write D.

<sup>25-25</sup> om. O. <sup>26</sup> Understondeþ D. Undirstondip O.

<sup>27</sup> om. D. <sup>28</sup> y O. <sup>29</sup> leaf 42. <sup>30</sup> bilongeth D.

<sup>31</sup> Maximian Kyng<sup>t</sup> of Britayne D. Maximian kyng of Brytaigne O.

<sup>32</sup> shal D. schal O.

Of þe reuerence þat Kyng Authure dede to þe Emperoure;<sup>1</sup>  
messagers of Rome. Capitulo ¶ <sup>xx</sup>iiij Secundo.

4 **W**Hen þis lettre was made and enselede, Kyng Arthure to þe  
messagers 3af grete 3iftes; and after þat, þe messagers  
toke<sup>2</sup> here leue, & went þens<sup>3</sup> to þe court of Rome azeyne, and  
tolde þe Emperour how worþely þei were vnderfonge,<sup>4</sup> & whiche<sup>5</sup>  
real company he [K. Arthur] hade him forto<sup>6</sup> serue, & how he was  
8 more really seruede þan þe Emperour, or eny kyng leuyng in þe  
worlde. ¶ And when þe Emperour hade seyne<sup>7</sup> þe lettre of  
Arthure, & herde what was þerin, and saw þat Arthure wolde  
nouzt bene<sup>8</sup> rewelede by<sup>9</sup> him, he lete assemble & ordeyne an huge  
12 hoste forto destroie Kyng Arthure if<sup>10</sup> he myzt. and Kyng  
Arthure, as tochyng his partye, ordeynede his power<sup>11</sup> of knyghtes<sup>11</sup>  
of þe rounde table.

Of þe kynges & lordes þat comen to helpe<sup>12</sup> Kyng Arthure  
16 azeyne; þe Emperour of Rome. Capitulo Octogesimo  
¶ Tercio.

**T**He kynges<sup>13</sup> of Scotland, & of Irland & of Gutland, of  
Denmare and of Almaine, eueryche<sup>14</sup> of ham hade x M<sup>t</sup> of<sup>15</sup>  
20 men. ¶ Thei of Normandy, Gascoigne<sup>xx</sup> & Spaigne,<sup>16</sup> Flaundres &  
Pehito, & of Boloigne, hade iiij M<sup>t</sup>. Geryn of Chartres hade x M<sup>t</sup>;  
Hoel of Britaigne hade<sup>17</sup> xij M<sup>t</sup>, and him-self [Arthur]<sup>18</sup> hade<sup>17</sup> of  
his owen Londe xij M<sup>t</sup>, & of Arblasters and of Archires,<sup>19</sup> & of opere  
24 folc on foote, þat noman couþe ham nombre. and when<sup>20</sup> þai  
weren al<sup>20</sup> redy forto wende, Kyng Arthur, his lande & Gunore his  
wif, <sup>21</sup>he bitoke<sup>21</sup> to one of his Nevewes þat was a wise knyzt, &  
an herdy, þat me callede Mordrede; but he was nouzt al trewe,  
28 as 3e shul here afterwarde. Kyng Arthure toke al his reame to þis  
Mordrede, saue oneliche þe crone. ¶ And after þat, kyng Arthure  
tok<sup>22</sup> his host and went to Southamptōn, þere þat þe shippes  
were brouzt. and þe folc assemblede, and<sup>23</sup> þai deden ham to þe

<sup>1</sup> Kynges D.      <sup>2</sup> nomen D.    nome O.

<sup>3</sup> þens and comen D.    þens & come O.      <sup>4</sup> vndirfongen O.

<sup>5</sup> which a O.      <sup>6</sup> to DO.      <sup>7</sup> sey O.      <sup>8</sup> be DO.      <sup>9</sup> after DO.

<sup>10</sup> if þat D.      <sup>11—11</sup> and knyzte D.    & knyghtes O.      <sup>12</sup> helpen O.

<sup>13</sup> kyng D.      <sup>14</sup> euery D.    eche O.      <sup>15</sup> om. O.

<sup>16—16</sup> & D.    Almaine O.      <sup>17</sup> om. DO.      <sup>18</sup> leaf 42, back.

<sup>19</sup> Arches O.      <sup>20—20</sup> þai al were D.    all weren O.

<sup>21—21</sup> tok to kepe D.    toke to kepe O.      <sup>22</sup> nome DO.      <sup>23</sup> as O.

see, and hade gode wynde & weder<sup>1</sup> at wille. and as sone as þai myzten,<sup>1</sup> þai arryuede at Berflete, & wenten<sup>2</sup> oute of here shippis, and spraden al þe contreye.

**How Kyng Arthure fauȝt wiþ a Geaunt in Spaigne, þat me<sup>4</sup> callede Denabȝ, þat quellede Elyne, þat was<sup>3</sup> Kyng Hoele; Cosyne, of litel Britaigne. Capitulo iiii<sup>xx</sup> iiii<sup>to</sup>.**

**K**Yng Arthure hade<sup>4</sup> duelledede in þe contre but a litil while, þat men ne tolde him þat þer was comen a grete Geaunt into 8 Spayne, and hade rauesshede faire Elyne, þat was cosyn to Hoel<sup>5</sup> of Britaigne, & hade brouȝt here vppon an huȝ þat is elepede<sup>6</sup> þe Mount of seynt Barnard; & þere was noman in þat contre so bolde, ne so hardy, þat derst wiþ him to<sup>7</sup> feiȝt, ne come neyȝ þe place 12 þere<sup>8</sup> þe Geaunt duelledede; and men<sup>9</sup> callede him Dynabȝ, þat miche sorwe dede in þe contre. ¶ When Kyng Arthure herde þis tydynges,<sup>10</sup> he callede Kay & Bedewer, & commaundede ham þat þai shulde<sup>11</sup> gon<sup>12</sup> pryuely,<sup>11</sup> and asprie Where þe<sup>13</sup> Geaunt myȝt bene<sup>13</sup> 16 founde. and þai come<sup>14</sup> to þe Ryuage þere þat<sup>3</sup> men shulde gon<sup>15</sup> to þe mount, þat was al enclosede about wiþ water, and ȝit is and euer<sup>16</sup> shal be; and þai saw a brynnynȝ fire oppon<sup>17</sup> þe Huȝ; and þere was also anoper huȝ neyȝ, þat þere was oppon anopere fire 20 brynnynȝ. ¶ Kay and Bedewer comen<sup>18</sup> to þe nexte huȝ, and founden<sup>19</sup> a widowe openheuede,<sup>20</sup> sittyng bisides a tounbe, sore wepyng, & grete sorwe made; and ofte she saide “Elyn! Elyn!” and Kay & Bedwere axede what her ailede,<sup>21</sup> & wherfore she made 24 so miche sorwe, & who lay in þat tombe. ¶ “O,” quod she, “what sorwe and what mysauenture, faire lordes, make<sup>22</sup> ȝe here? for if þe Geant may ȝow here fynde, ȝe worȝ dede anone.”<sup>23</sup> “ben stille,<sup>23</sup> gode wif,” quod þai, “þerof dismai þe nouȝt, but tel vs þe soþe whi 28 þow makes<sup>24</sup> so myche<sup>25</sup> sorwe & wepyng.” ¶ “Sires,”<sup>26</sup> quod she, “for a damiselle þat I norisskede wiþ my brest, þat me callede<sup>27</sup>

<sup>1</sup> myȝht O.

<sup>2</sup> as sone as þai miȝt þai wenten D. as sone as þey myȝht þey went O.

<sup>3</sup> om. D. <sup>4</sup> nad nouȝt D. had not O. <sup>5</sup> Hoel kyng<sup>4</sup> D.

<sup>6</sup> callede D. called<sup>4</sup> O. <sup>7</sup> om. DO. <sup>8</sup> þer þat O.

<sup>9</sup> me DO. <sup>10</sup> tydyng<sup>4</sup> DO.

<sup>11-11</sup> go priuelich D. go pryuely O. <sup>12</sup> waf 43.

<sup>13-13</sup> Geauntes miȝten be D. Geaunt myȝht be O. <sup>14</sup> comen D.

<sup>15</sup> go DO. <sup>16</sup> euermore D. euermor<sup>4</sup> O.

<sup>17</sup> on O. <sup>18</sup> come O. <sup>19</sup> founde D. <sup>20</sup> openhed<sup>4</sup> O.

<sup>21</sup> was O. <sup>22</sup> seke DO. <sup>23-23</sup> Bistill D. Be stytt O.

<sup>24</sup> makest DO. <sup>25</sup> michel D. <sup>26</sup> Sire D. <sup>27</sup> calles D.



Elyne,—þat was nece to Hoel, Kyng of litel<sup>1</sup> Britaigne, and here liþ þe bodye in pis tombe,—þat to me was bitaken<sup>2</sup> to norisshe. so þere come a deuel, a Geaunt, & ranasshede here, & me Also, & lade vs  
 4 boþe away; and he wolde haue <sup>3</sup>forleyn þis<sup>3</sup> maide þat was so  
 3onge & tendre of age, but she myzt hit nouzt soffren, so grete and  
 so huge þe Geant is. and if he now <sup>4</sup>come as he was<sup>4</sup> wont to  
 done, certes he wille 3ow quelle, boþe ij; and þerfore faste wende  
 8 3e hens.” “and wherfore,” saide þai, “go 3e nouzt hens?”  
 ¶ “Certes, Sires,<sup>5</sup>” quod she, “When þat Elyne was dede, þe  
 Geaunt made me to abide, <sup>6</sup>to done and haunt his wille, and me  
 most nedes <sup>7</sup>it soffren.<sup>7</sup> and God hit wote, I do hit nouzt wiþ my  
 12 gode<sup>8</sup> wille, for leuer me were to bene<sup>9</sup> dede þan wiþ him to dele,  
 so miche payne I haue when he me forlei3.”<sup>10</sup> ¶ When Kay and  
 Bedwere hade herde al þat þis woman hade tolde, þa turnede a3eyne,  
 and comen to Kyng Arthure, & tolde him al þat þai <sup>11</sup>hade seyne<sup>11</sup> &  
 16 harde. ¶ Arthure anone toke<sup>12</sup> ham boþe with him, and went  
 priuely by nyzt, þat none of his hoste it wiste, and come <sup>13</sup>on þe  
 morne<sup>13</sup> to þe Geaunt, and fau3t wiþ him strongly, and at þe laste  
 him slou3. and Arthure bede<sup>14</sup> Bedwere smyte of hes heuede,<sup>15</sup> and  
 20 bryng<sup>1</sup> it to þe hoste to<sup>16</sup> shewe ham for a wonder, for it was so  
 grete & so huge. ¶ When þai comen<sup>17</sup> a3eyne to þe hoste, þai tolde  
 wherfore þai hade bene out, and shewede to ham þe heuede;<sup>18</sup> &  
 euery man was glade & ioyful of þe worþi dede þat Kyng Arthure  
 24 hade done, her lorde. ¶ And Hoel was ful sorweful<sup>19</sup> for his nece  
 þat was so loste; and after, when he hade space, he lete make a  
 faire chapel of oure Lady ouer Elyne3 Tumble.

**How Kyng Arthure 3af bataile to þe Emperour, in þe whiche  
 28 bataile þe Emperoure was slayn. Capitulo Octogesimo v<sup>to</sup>.**

**A**Rthure and his peple hade tydynges<sup>20</sup> þat þe Emperour hade  
 assemblede<sup>21</sup> grete power, as wel of Sarasynes and of<sup>1</sup>  
 paynemys <sup>22</sup>as of<sup>22</sup> Cristen men, <sup>23</sup>Wherof þe noumbre was <sup>xx</sup>iiij M<sup>t</sup>  
 32 of horsemen and of<sup>8</sup> fote men.<sup>23</sup> Arthure and his peple ordeynede<sup>24</sup>

<sup>1</sup> om. DO.    <sup>2</sup> betake O.    <sup>3-3</sup> forlaide þe D.    forleyn þat O.  
<sup>4-4</sup> as he is O.    <sup>5</sup> Sire D.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 43, back.    <sup>7-7</sup> y-suffren O.  
<sup>8</sup> om. D.    <sup>9</sup> be O.    <sup>10</sup> forlith DO.    <sup>11-11</sup> seye D.    <sup>12</sup> nome DO.  
<sup>13-13</sup> in þe morwe erly D.    on þe morowe erly O.    <sup>14</sup> bad O.  
<sup>15</sup> heed O.    <sup>16</sup> & D.    <sup>17</sup> come O.    <sup>18</sup> heed O.    <sup>19</sup> sory O.  
<sup>20</sup> tydyng O.    <sup>21</sup> assemble a D.    Assembled a O.  
<sup>22-22</sup> and D.    as O.    <sup>23-23</sup> om. O.  
<sup>24</sup> ordeynede D.    ordeigned O.    om. R.

ham<sup>1</sup> fast forþ in<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>here Way towarde þe Emperour, and passede Normandy & Fraunce vnto Burgoyne, and wolde euen haue gone<sup>4</sup> to þe host, for men tolde him þat þe Emperoure<sup>5</sup> host<sup>5</sup> was comen<sup>5</sup> to Lucye. ¶ The Emperour and his host, in þe bygynning of 4 August, remevede fram Rome, and come fourth ryȝt þe way toward þe host. ¶ tho<sup>6</sup> comen Kyng<sup>6</sup> Arthures asprieȝ, and saide, if þat Arthure wolde, he shulde fynde þere faste bisides, þe Emperour; but þai saiden<sup>7</sup> þat þe Emperoure hade so grete power<sup>8</sup> 8 wiþ him of kynges of þe lande, & of Paynemys yfere, & also cristen peple, þat it were<sup>8</sup> but grete folie to Kyng Arthure forto mete wiþ<sup>9</sup> him, for þe espies tolde þat<sup>10</sup> þe Emperour hade v men or vj aȝeynes one of his. ¶ Kyng Arthure was bolde and hardy, and for noþing 12 him dismaiede, & saide: “go we forþ<sup>11</sup> in Goddes name aȝeynes þe Romainys, þat wiþ ham ledeþ<sup>12</sup> Sarasines & Paynemes þat no maner truste þai hauen<sup>13</sup> to God, but oneliche<sup>14</sup> oppoñ here strengþ! Go we now, and seche ham sharpely<sup>15</sup> in þe name of almyȝty God, 16 and slee we þe paynemys and Cristen men þat bene enemys wiþ ham forto destroe Cristen men; and God shal vs helpe, for we haueþ<sup>16</sup> the ryȝt, & þerfore haue we gode trust in God; & done<sup>17</sup> we so þat þe enemys þat bene<sup>18</sup> to Cristendome & to Gode now 20 bene<sup>19</sup> dede & destroyede, & þat men now recorde þe worþinesse of knyȝthode!” ¶ When Kyng Arthure hade þus saide, þai eriden<sup>20</sup> al wiþ an hye voice, “God, fader almyȝty, <sup>21</sup>Worsheppede be þine<sup>22</sup> name Wiþouten<sup>23</sup> ende, Amen! and grant vs grace wel to done,<sup>24</sup> and 24 to destrie oure enemys þat beþ<sup>25</sup> aȝeynes Cristendome! In þe name of þe fader & <sup>26</sup>of þe sone and of þe<sup>26</sup> holy gost, Amen! And God ȝeue ham<sup>27</sup> neuer grace ne worshiþ in the worlde, ne mercy of him to<sup>28</sup> hane, þat þis day shal feynten wel forto smyte, and 28 egrely!” and so þai riden softly, and ordeynede her wenges wel and wisely.

¶ The Emperoure herle telle þat Kyng<sup>1</sup> Arthure & his fole were redy arraiede forto feiȝt wiþ him; and þider<sup>29</sup> þai comen,<sup>29</sup> wher he 32 ordeynede his wenges in þe best manere þat he myȝt, and more

<sup>1</sup> om. DO.<sup>2</sup> on O.<sup>3</sup> leaf 44.<sup>4</sup> go O.<sup>5-6</sup> wolde come D. wold come O.<sup>6-6</sup> come D. come kyng O.<sup>7</sup> seid O.<sup>8</sup> nere DO.<sup>9</sup> MS. wiþ wiþ.<sup>10</sup> om. O.<sup>11</sup> boldely D.<sup>12</sup> boldly O.<sup>12</sup> ledes D. lede O.<sup>13</sup> hane DO.<sup>14</sup> only O.<sup>15</sup> scharplich O.<sup>16</sup> haue O.<sup>17</sup> do DO.<sup>18</sup> beth D.<sup>19</sup> be O.<sup>20</sup> cryede O.<sup>21</sup> leaf 44, back.<sup>22</sup> þi D.<sup>23</sup> þy O.<sup>24</sup> withoute O.<sup>25</sup> do O.<sup>26</sup> ben O.<sup>26-26</sup> sone & D.<sup>27</sup> hym O.<sup>28</sup> for-to D.<sup>29-29</sup> þai come D. heȝ come O.

trust oppoñ his strengþ þan<sup>1</sup> in God almyȝty. and þat was seyn  
 afterwarð, ffor when þo ij hostes metten,<sup>2</sup> the Emperour loste soche  
 foure of his<sup>3</sup> folc as dede Kyng<sup>4</sup> Arthur; and so meny were slayne,  
 4 what in o<sup>4</sup> side and<sup>5</sup> in þat oþere, þat<sup>3</sup> hit was grete pite to wete  
 and to seen.<sup>6</sup> ¶ In þis bataile were slayn þrouȝ Kyng Arthure, v  
 kyngȝ of<sup>7</sup> paynemys, & of oþere, Wonder<sup>8</sup> miche peple. ¶ And  
 Kyng Arthures men fouȝten so wel, þat þe Romaines and<sup>9</sup> paynemys  
 8 hade no<sup>10</sup> more power<sup>9</sup> ne strengþ<sup>10</sup> to wipstande ham,<sup>11</sup> þan xx  
 shepe aȝeynes v. wolves. ¶ And so hit bifelle<sup>12</sup> þat in þis bataile,<sup>12</sup>  
 in a shoure þat was wonder herde and longe duryng<sup>13</sup>, in þat o<sup>13</sup>  
 side and in þat oþere, þe Emperour, amonges ham þere was slayn;  
 12 but noman wist forsoþ who him slouȝ.

**How Kyng Arthure lete entere his knyȝtes þat he hade Loste in  
 bataile; and how he sent þe Emperourreȝ body<sup>14</sup> to Rome,  
 þat þere was slayne in bataile. Capitulo Octogesimo vj<sup>to</sup>.**

16 **W**Hen þe Romayns wist þat þe Emperour was dede, þai for-  
 soke þe felde, and þe paynemys also; and Kyng<sup>4</sup> Arthure  
 after ham chasede<sup>15</sup> til it was nyȝt, and so meny of ham quelled  
 þat hit was wonder<sup>9</sup> to telle; and þo turnede Kyng Arthure aȝeyne  
 20 <sup>16</sup>when it<sup>16</sup> was nyȝt, and þanked almyȝty God of his Vittorie. And  
<sup>17</sup>on þe morwe<sup>17</sup> he lete loken<sup>18</sup> & seke<sup>18</sup> al þe felde for his knyȝtes  
 þat he hade þere lost,<sup>19</sup> þat is to seyne, BoreH, erl of Maans; Bed-  
 were & Kay, and<sup>20</sup> Lygers, Erl of Boloigne; Vrtegi,<sup>21</sup> erl of Baat,<sup>22</sup>  
 24 Aloth, erl of Wynchestre; Cursale, erl of Chestre; and<sup>23</sup> Holdeyn,  
 erl of Flaundres: þise were þe grete Lordes þat Kyng<sup>4</sup> Arthure Loste  
 in þat bataile amonges<sup>24</sup> oþere worþi knyȝtes; and somme he lete  
 entere in<sup>25</sup> Abbayes by þe contre, <sup>26</sup>and some he lete bene<sup>27</sup> borne  
 28 into here owen contre<sup>26</sup>; and þe Emperourres body he lete take  
 and put oppon a bere, & sent hit to Rome, and sent to say to þe  
 Romaynes þat ‘as for Britaigne & Fraunce whiche þat he helde,  
 oþere truage he wolde none<sup>28</sup> paie; and if<sup>3</sup> þai<sup>29</sup> axend him eny  
 32 oþere,<sup>29</sup> riȝt suche<sup>30</sup> he wolde ham paye.’ ¶ Kyng<sup>31</sup> Arthur lete

<sup>1</sup> MS. þat.    <sup>2</sup> mette DO.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> þat one D. on O.

<sup>5</sup> & what O.    <sup>6</sup> see O.    <sup>7</sup> of þe O.    <sup>8</sup> om. D.    <sup>9</sup> & þe O.

<sup>10-10</sup> power<sup>9</sup> D. more strengþe O.    <sup>11</sup> om. DO.    <sup>12-13</sup> om. D.

<sup>13</sup> on D.    <sup>14</sup> leaf 45.    <sup>15</sup> I-chacede D.    <sup>16-16</sup> þo it DO. when R.

<sup>17-17</sup> in þe Morne O.    <sup>18-18</sup> om. D.    <sup>19</sup> ylost O.    <sup>20</sup> om. D.

<sup>21</sup> Vrgeti DO.    <sup>22</sup> Baak<sup>4</sup> O.    <sup>23</sup> & aftir O.    <sup>24</sup> amonge D. among O.

<sup>25</sup> at D.    <sup>26-26</sup> om. D.    <sup>27</sup> be O.    <sup>28</sup> not O.

<sup>29-29</sup> axede him eny oþere truageȝ D. axed eny oþer truage O.

<sup>30</sup> such truage O.    <sup>31</sup> þe kyng O.

bere Kay to Kenen, his owen castel, and þere he was enterede; and Ligers was born<sup>1</sup> to Boloyn, þere þat he was lorde; and Holdeyn was borne<sup>1</sup> to Flaundres, & þere he was enterede; and alle the opere he lete entier<sup>2</sup> wip michel honour<sup>2</sup> in Abbayes & in 4 house; of Religioun in þe contrey þere þat þai were dede. ¶ And Arthure him-self sojournede þe<sup>3</sup> same 3ere in Burgoigne<sup>4</sup> wip his<sup>5</sup> host, and þouȝt þat<sup>6</sup> same 3ere followyng<sup>7</sup> passe þe mount<sup>7</sup> Ioye, & haue gone<sup>8</sup> to Rome,<sup>9</sup> forto haue<sup>10</sup> take þe citee, and haue put þe 8 Romayns in subieccioñ; but þe wickede tiraunt Mordrede him lettede,<sup>11</sup> as after 3e shul here.

**How Mordrede þe traitour<sup>1</sup> to whome Kyng<sup>2</sup> Arthure tok his lande to kepe, and his castelles,<sup>12</sup> and helde hit a3eynes 12 him. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Septimo.**

**W**Hen<sup>13</sup> Kyng Arthure<sup>13</sup> hade taken<sup>14</sup> to Mordrede his reaume to kepe, and was gone a3eynes þe Emperoure of Rome, & was passede þe see, Mordrede anone toke homages and feautes of al 16 ham þat were in þis lande, and wolde haue hade þe lande<sup>15</sup> to his owen vse, and<sup>16</sup> toke castelles about,<sup>16</sup> and lete ham arraie; and after his falsenesse he dede anoþere grete wrong<sup>1</sup>, ffor, a3eynes þe law of Cristiente, he toke<sup>17</sup> his owen Emes wif<sup>1</sup>, as a *traitour* shulde, 20 and ordeynede him a grete hoste a3eynes Arthures comyng, to halde the lande a3eyns him wip strengþ for euermore, and to slee Kyng Arthure yf<sup>18</sup> he myȝt; and lete sende by þe Cee and lande, and lete assemble Paynymes and cristen peple; and he sent to Saxones and 24 to Danoy<sup>19</sup> forto help him. and also Mordrede sende<sup>20</sup> to Cheldrik, to done<sup>21</sup> men come to him out of Saxoyne, þat was a worpi Due, and bihiȝt<sup>22</sup> him, if þat he brouȝt wip him<sup>23</sup> peple,<sup>24</sup> he wolde graunt him<sup>25</sup> al þe lande fram biȝonde Humber vnto Scotland, and 28 al þe lande þat Engist hade<sup>26</sup> of Vortigers ȝifte, When þat he hade spousede his douȝter. And Cheldrik come wip grete strengþ<sup>27</sup> and power<sup>27</sup> of Peple: and Mordrede him<sup>28</sup> assemblede also in his half, þat þai hade xl M<sup>1</sup> of stronge knyȝtes when þat<sup>5</sup> þai hade nede. 32

<sup>1</sup> bore O.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. D. with mych honour O.      <sup>3</sup> þat O.  
<sup>4</sup> leaf 45, back.      <sup>5</sup> om. D.      <sup>6</sup> þe DO.      <sup>7</sup> mount of DO.      <sup>8</sup> go O.  
<sup>9</sup> Rome al DO.      <sup>10</sup> om. DO.      <sup>11</sup> lette DO.      <sup>12</sup> casteH D.  
<sup>13-13</sup> Arthure the kyng<sup>1</sup> D.      Arthur þe kyng O.      <sup>14</sup> take O.  
<sup>15</sup> lande al D.      <sup>16-16</sup> nome casteH D.      nome Castels aboute O.  
<sup>17</sup> nome DO.      <sup>18</sup> yf þat O.      <sup>19</sup> Danes O.      <sup>20</sup> sent O.      <sup>21</sup> do D.  
<sup>22</sup> behete O.      <sup>23</sup> him miche D.      hym mych O.      <sup>24</sup> om. O.  
<sup>25</sup> him in heritage for euermore D.      hym in herytage for euermore O.  
<sup>26</sup> leaf 46.      <sup>27-27</sup> om. D.      <sup>28</sup> hade D.      had O.

How **Arthure** enchacede<sup>1</sup> **Mordrede** þe *traitour*, and how he was slayne, and <sup>2</sup>**Kyng Arthure** also<sup>2</sup> wondede to þe<sup>3</sup> dethe. ¶ **Capitulo** ¶ **Octogesimo** ¶ **Octauo**.

4 **W**Hen þis tydynges<sup>4</sup> come to Kyng Arthure þere<sup>5</sup> þat<sup>5</sup> he was in Burgoyne, he was ful sore annoiede, and toke al Fraunce to Hoel forto kepe, wiþ haluendeles<sup>6</sup> his men, & praiede him þat he wolde hit kepe til þat he comen<sup>7</sup> azeine, ffor him-self 8 wolde wende into Britaigne and avenge him oppon Mordrede þat was his *traitoure*; and <sup>8</sup>fourþ went<sup>8</sup> his weye, and come to Swit-sand, & made his men to<sup>5</sup> gone<sup>9</sup> into shippe, & wolde haue arryuede at Sandewiche, and brouzt wiþ him an<sup>10</sup> grete hoste of Fraunce also 12 wiþ his owen lande. but er<sup>1</sup> þat he myght come to lande wiþ his peple þat were comen<sup>11</sup> out of þe shippis, Mordrede was comen wiþ aH his power, and 3af a stronge bataile, so þat Kyng Arthure loste meny a man er<sup>1</sup> þat he miȝt<sup>12</sup> comen to land<sup>12</sup>; ffor þere was Gaweyn 16 his Nevewe slayne, and Anguissel þat helde Scotland, and meny opere, wherof Kyng<sup>1</sup> Arthure was ful sorry. ¶ But after þat þai were comen<sup>13</sup> to lande, Mordrede myght nought azeynes him endure, but anone was <sup>14</sup>descomfitede, and flede þens þat<sup>15</sup> same nyȝt Wiþ 20 his men, and oppon þe morwe<sup>16</sup> come to London; but þo of the citee wolde nouȝt soffre ham<sup>17</sup> come in; and fro þens he fledde to Wynchestre, and þere<sup>18</sup> helde him wiþ his peple þat<sup>19</sup> with him come.<sup>19</sup> Kyng Arthure<sup>20</sup> lete take þe body of<sup>21</sup> Gaweyn his cosyn, 24 & þe body of Anguissel, and lete ham<sup>22</sup> bene borne<sup>22</sup> into Scotland into<sup>23</sup> her<sup>1</sup> owen contre, and þere þai were enterede.

¶ And <sup>24</sup>anone after<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>24</sup> Kyng Arthur<sup>1</sup> toke<sup>25</sup> his wey to destroie Mordrede; and he fledde fro þens into Cornewaile. ¶ The 28 Quene Gunnore, þat was Kyng Arthures wif, þat þo sojournede at ȝork<sup>1</sup>, and herde þat Mordrede was<sup>26</sup> fledde þens þat he was,<sup>26</sup> and miȝt nouȝt endure azeynes Kyng Arthure, she was sore adrade, and hade grete doute, and wist nouȝt what was best al forto done,<sup>27</sup> for 32 she wiste wel<sup>28</sup> here lorde Kyng<sup>1</sup> Arthure wolde nouȝt<sup>29</sup> of her<sup>1</sup> haue

<sup>1</sup> enchase D. <sup>2-2</sup> also þat Kyng Arthure was DO. <sup>3</sup> om. DO.

<sup>4</sup> tydyng<sup>1</sup> DO. <sup>5</sup> om. D. <sup>6</sup> haluendeles of D. haluendel of O.

<sup>7</sup> come DO. <sup>8-8</sup> went forth D. <sup>9</sup> go O. <sup>10</sup> a DO. <sup>11</sup> come O.

<sup>12-12</sup> come to Lande with his peple D. come to londe O.

<sup>13</sup> come O. <sup>14</sup> leaf 46, back. <sup>15</sup> the D. þe O. <sup>16</sup> morne D.

<sup>17</sup> him D. hym O. <sup>18</sup> þere he O.

<sup>19-19</sup> come with him D. with hym comen O. <sup>20</sup> om. O.

<sup>21</sup> MS. has of Arthur with Arthur scratched out. <sup>22-22</sup> he bore DO.

<sup>23</sup> in O. <sup>24-24</sup> after anon D. aftir anon O. <sup>25</sup> nome DO.

<sup>26-26</sup> fleȝ D. <sup>27</sup> do O. <sup>28</sup> wel þat DO. <sup>29</sup> neuer D. neuere O.

mercy, for þe grete shame þat she to him hade done; and toke<sup>1</sup> her<sup>2</sup> wai priuely<sup>2</sup> wiþ iiij men<sup>3</sup> and wiþ no mo,<sup>3</sup> & come to Kerliouñ, and<sup>4</sup> þere she<sup>4</sup> duelled al her<sup>5</sup> lifes tyme, þat<sup>5</sup> neuer was seyn amonges folc, her lif duryng. ¶ Arthure wist þat<sup>4</sup> Mordrede was fledde into Cornewail. he<sup>6</sup> lete sende after his men into Scotland, & into<sup>7</sup> Northumberland vnto Humber, and lete assemble folc wiþout noubre, & come<sup>8</sup> fro þens into Cornewaile to seche and pursue after Mordrede. and Mordrede hade assemblede<sup>9</sup> al þe folc of Cornwayle, and hade peple wiþoute noubre, & wist þat<sup>10</sup> Arthure Was<sup>11</sup> comyng. he<sup>11</sup> hade leuer<sup>12</sup> Dye and tak his chaunce, þan lenger<sup>1</sup> flee, and abode and ȝaf an harde bataile to Kyng Arthur & to his peple, so þat so miche peple was slayn,—<sup>12</sup> What in þat<sup>1</sup> one halfe<sup>13</sup> and in þat oþer,—þat noman wiste who þat<sup>12</sup> hade þe better partie. ¶ But so hit bifelle at the laste, þat Mordrede was slayn, and al his folc, and al þe gode chivalry þat Kyng Arthure hade gaderede and norissede of diuerse<sup>14</sup> landes; <sup>16</sup> and also þe noble Knyghtes of þe rounde table, þat so miche<sup>15</sup> were preisede þrouȝ al þe worlde, weren<sup>16</sup> þere slayn; and Arthure himself was wondede to þe deth. but he lete him bene<sup>17</sup> born in a liter to Auyouñ, to bene<sup>17</sup> helede of his wondes; and ȝitte þe Britons <sup>20</sup> supposen þat he leueþ in a noþere lande, and þat he shal come ȝit and conquere al Britaigne; but certes þis is þe prophecie of Merlyn: he saide þat his deþ shulde bene<sup>17</sup> dotous; and he saide sothe, for men þerof ȝitte haue<sup>18</sup> doute, and shal<sup>19</sup> for euermore, as <sup>24</sup> me<sup>20</sup> saiþ, for men weten<sup>21</sup> nouȝt wheþer þat he leueþ<sup>22</sup> or is dede. ¶ Arthure was born<sup>23</sup> to Auyouñ þe xxij<sup>24</sup> ȝere of his regne After þe Incarnaciouñ of oure lorde Ihesu Crist v. C and xlvj<sup>25</sup> ȝere.

**How Kyng Arthure delyuerede þe<sup>25</sup> reame to Constantyn, þe <sup>28</sup> sone of Cadore, his newew. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Octogesimo ¶ Nonno.**

**W**Henne Kyng Arthure wist þat he miȝt no longer<sup>1</sup> regne, he lete come bifore him Constantyne, þat was Cadore<sup>26</sup> sone, <sup>32</sup> erl of Cornwail, his cosyn, and to him bitoke al his reame, and to

<sup>1</sup> nome DO. <sup>2</sup> pryuelych D. <sup>3-3</sup> wiþ-out mo D. withoute mo O.

<sup>4-4</sup> þere D. þere nome & þere seche O. <sup>5-5</sup> lif and D. lyf þat O.

<sup>6</sup> and DO. <sup>7</sup> om. DO. <sup>8</sup> went D. comen O.

<sup>9</sup> assemblede to him D. Assembled to hym O. <sup>10</sup> leaf 47.

<sup>11-11</sup> Comyng & D. comyng & O. <sup>12</sup> om. D. <sup>13</sup> side D.

<sup>14</sup> dyuerse D. diuers O. <sup>15</sup> michel D. <sup>16</sup> were O. <sup>17</sup> be DO.

<sup>18</sup> haue O. <sup>19</sup> om. O. <sup>20</sup> he O. <sup>21</sup> wete DO. <sup>22</sup> leue O.

<sup>23</sup> lore O. <sup>24</sup> xij D. <sup>25</sup> þis D. <sup>26</sup> Cadore O.

him saide, & bade him *perof* to bene<sup>1</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup> til þat he come azeine,  
for-asmiche as he hade none heire of his body bigeten: and grete  
harme was hit þat <sup>2</sup>soche a noble<sup>2</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup>, and so doughty, hade  
4 none<sup>3</sup> childe of his body bigeten<sup>4</sup>; <sup>5</sup>but al þing þat God wil haue  
done,<sup>6</sup> moste <sup>7</sup>bene done,<sup>7</sup> Whos name ben<sup>8</sup> blessedde wipouten ende!  
Amen.

### How Kyng Constantyne was werrede of Mordredus ij sones.

#### 8 Capitulo Nonogesimo.

**T**His Constance<sup>9</sup> was a noble knyght<sup>1</sup> and a worþi of body; and  
þo ij sones þat Mordrede hade bigeten,<sup>10</sup> hade grete en[u]y to  
Constantyne, þat þo was cronede kyng<sup>1</sup>; and so þat<sup>11</sup> þai bigonne to  
12 meve wer<sup>1</sup> azeines him, and assemblede a grete hoste of ham þat  
<sup>12</sup>were to-fore<sup>12</sup> wip Mordrede, and<sup>13</sup> hade bene dryuen away.<sup>14</sup>  
þai deden<sup>15</sup> miche sorwe <sup>16</sup>prou; al þat<sup>16</sup> lande: þat o<sup>17</sup> broþer  
ordeynede him to Londoñ forto take þe citee, and þat opere to  
16 Wynchestre; but Constantyn come <sup>18</sup>to Londoñ<sup>18</sup> and slough him  
þat was þere; and after, he went to Wynchestre, and slough him  
þat þere was also, so þat boþe his enemys were dede. and when  
Constantyn had regnede worþely iiij 3er<sup>1</sup>, he deide, & lip at Londoñ.

#### 20 Of <sup>19</sup>þe Kynges<sup>19</sup> Adelbriht and of Edelf. Capitulo Nonogesimo primo.

**A**fter Kyng Constantynus deth þere were ij kynges in Britaigne:  
þat on me callede Adelbriht, þat was a Danoys, þat<sup>20</sup> helde  
24 þe contre of Northfolc and Southfolc; þat opere hiȝt Edelf, and  
was a Britoun, þat<sup>21</sup> helde Nichole, Lyndeseye, and al þe lande  
vnto Humber<sup>1</sup>. ¶ þise ij kynges faste werrede to-gederes,<sup>22</sup> but  
afterwarde þai were accorded, and louede to-geder<sup>23</sup> as þai <sup>24</sup>haden  
28 bene borne of o body.<sup>24</sup> ¶ The Kyng Edelf had a sustre þat me  
callede Orewenne, and he ȝaf here prou; grete frendship to Kyng  
Adelbriht to wif, and he bigate on<sup>25</sup> here a doughter þat me callede  
Argentih. and in þe þridde ȝere after, him come vppon<sup>26</sup> a stronge

<sup>1</sup> be DO. <sup>2-2</sup> so noble a DO. <sup>3</sup> no DO. <sup>4</sup> begete O.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 47, back. <sup>6</sup> do O. <sup>7-7</sup> be done D. be do O. <sup>8</sup> be D.

<sup>9</sup> Constantyne D. Constantyn O. <sup>10</sup> biget D. bygete O.

<sup>11</sup> om. O. <sup>12-12</sup> wern bifore D. ben byfore O. <sup>13</sup> þat D.

<sup>14</sup> away & DO. <sup>15</sup> dede O. <sup>16-16</sup> prou;onte þe D. <sup>17</sup> on D.

<sup>18-18</sup> om. D. <sup>19-19</sup> Kyng D. <sup>20</sup> and DO. <sup>21</sup> & DO.

<sup>22</sup> to-gidere O. <sup>23</sup> to-gederes D.

<sup>24-24</sup> hade bene borne breþerne D. had be bore of o body O.

<sup>25</sup> in DO. <sup>26</sup> vpon hym O.

1sikenesse, þat nedes he moste dye; and he sent to Kyng Edelf his brother-in-lawe, that he shulde come and speke with him; & he come to him with gode wille. ¶ Tho praiede he the [king], and coniured also in the name of God, þat after when he were dede, he 4 shulde tak<sup>1</sup> ArgentiH his dougter, & þe lande, & þat he kepte here wel, and norisshe<sup>2</sup> in his Chaumbre, and when she were of age he shulde <sup>3</sup>done here bene<sup>3</sup> marede to þe strongest and worpieste man þat he myzt fynde, and þan he shulde 3elde<sup>4</sup> vp her<sup>1</sup> lande 8 azeine. Edelf hit grauntede, and by oth hit confermede <sup>5</sup>at his power.<sup>5</sup> ¶ And when Adelbriht was dede and enterede, Edelfe toke þe damisel ArgentiH, and norisshe<sup>2</sup> her<sup>1</sup> in his chaumbre, and she bicom<sup>e</sup> þe faireste creature þat<sup>6</sup> eny man <sup>7</sup>myzt fynde.<sup>7</sup> 12

**How þe<sup>s</sup> Kyng Edelf<sup>t</sup> mariede þe damisel ArgentiH to a knaue of his Kechyne. Capitulo <sup>xx</sup>iiij &<sup>s</sup> xij<sup>o</sup>.**

**T**His Kyng Edelf, þat was Vncle to the Damisel ArgentiH, biþouzt how þat he myght falseliche<sup>9</sup> haue þe lande fram his 16 nece for euermore; & falsely, azeynes his oth, þouzt to desceyn þe damiseH, and mariede here to a knaf of his kechyne þat me called<sup>e</sup> Curan<sup>10</sup>; and he bicom<sup>e</sup> þe worpiest man<sup>s</sup> & strongest<sup>11</sup> of body þat eny man wiste in eny lande þat þo leuede; and to him he þouzt 20 here shendefully haue mariede forto haue hade hir<sup>1</sup> lande afterward; but he was clene desceynede. ¶ ffor þis Curan<sup>12</sup> was Hauelockes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkelane in Denmark; and þis Curan conquered his wifes landes, and slough Kyng Edelf þat was his wifes 24 Vncle, & hade al here lande as <sup>13</sup>in anoþer stede hit telleþ more oppenly; and he ne regnede but iij 3ere, for Saxoynes and Danoy<sup>s</sup><sup>14</sup> him quelled<sup>e</sup>; and þat was grete harme to al Britaigne; and Britons bere him to Stonehyng<sup>e</sup>, and þere þai<sup>s</sup> him enterede wiþ 28 michel<sup>15</sup> honoure and solempnite.

**Of<sup>16</sup> Kyng Conan. Capitulo Nonogesimo Tercio.**

**A**fter þis Curan, regnede Conan, <sup>17</sup>þat was<sup>17</sup> his cosyn, þat was a wonder proude knyzt<sup>18</sup> and regnede.<sup>19</sup> he couþe<sup>20</sup> haue no 32 maner loue, but euer<sup>1</sup> he was medlyng wiþ his owen peple, and toke

<sup>1</sup> leaf 48.    <sup>2</sup> norisshe here D.    <sup>3—5</sup> do her<sup>1</sup> be D.    do here be O.

<sup>4</sup> 3ue DO.    <sup>5—5</sup> his prayer<sup>1</sup> DO.    <sup>6</sup> þat myght lyne or O.

<sup>7—7</sup> wist D.    fynde O.    <sup>8</sup> om. DO.    <sup>9</sup> falsly D.    falsly O.

<sup>10</sup> Hykke Curan O.    <sup>11</sup> strongest man D.    strengest man O.

<sup>12</sup> Curan þat O.    <sup>13</sup> leaf 48, back.    <sup>14</sup> Danes O.

<sup>15</sup> om. D.    mych O.    <sup>16</sup> Of þe O.    <sup>17—17</sup> om. D.    <sup>18</sup> man O.

<sup>19</sup> regnede & D.    regned<sup>1</sup> & O.    <sup>20</sup> coude not O.



his Vnele wiþ werre, and helde<sup>1</sup> his ij childerne.<sup>2</sup> ¶ The Saxoynes werrede aþeynes him oftetymes, but he ham<sup>3</sup> ouercome at þe laste; & so he was in pees al his lifes<sup>4</sup> tyme; and he regnede xiiij ȝere,<sup>4</sup> and after,<sup>5</sup> he<sup>6</sup> deide, and ¶ liþ at London.

**Of Kyng Certif; and of Gurmonde, þat come prou; paynemys<sup>7</sup> into Britaigne. Capitulo Nonogesimo Quarto.**

**A**fter þis Conan, regnede his cosyn Certif, þat was bihatede of  
8 all his peple, and noþing bilouede. and þis Certif loste al  
Britaigne prou; werre. And in his tyme felle þat<sup>8</sup> grete meschief  
in<sup>9</sup> Britaigne, þat Cristendome was destroede, and alle þe Britons  
were dryuen oute, &<sup>9</sup> þe lande loste<sup>10</sup> wiþouten<sup>11</sup> eny reconeryng<sup>12</sup>;  
12 but afterwarde lefte þe lande to Saxoynes, as ȝe shul afterwarde  
hure. ¶ For in þat tyme þere was a paynyme þat me callede  
Gurmonde, þat was þe Kynges sone Daufrik, of þe Paynymes fole,  
þat hade þe reaume after<sup>1</sup> his fader, and was kyng, saf he biquaþ &  
16 ȝaf hit to his broþer, and saide þat<sup>6</sup> he wolde<sup>13</sup> neuer bene<sup>14</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup>  
but<sup>3</sup> if he might<sup>15</sup> conquere and gete<sup>15</sup> a reaume in a<sup>16</sup> straunge  
contrey; for he was bolde, and ek<sup>13</sup> stronge of body. & of him  
17 prophecied Merlyn, and saide þat ‘he shulde bene<sup>14</sup> a wolf of þe  
20 see’; and<sup>18</sup> lete assemble paynymes wiþout<sup>19</sup> nombre, and lete  
apparaile shippis, and went by meny londes, and toke homages  
and feautes of meny. and so he went by þe<sup>16</sup> see fram lande to  
lande, & conquerede diuerses<sup>20</sup> landes, so þat he come to<sup>21</sup> Irland,  
24 and conquered þat<sup>22</sup> lande, þat<sup>22</sup> ofte-tymes werrede vppon Brit-  
aigne,<sup>23</sup> and Britons<sup>24</sup> vppon ham; and often<sup>25</sup> <sup>26</sup>wonnen, & ofte<sup>26</sup>  
losten,<sup>27</sup> and ȝenen hostages to Britons. and so þai senten<sup>28</sup> to  
Gurmonð, þere þat he was in Irland, þat he shulde come into  
28 Britaigne, and helpe ham aþeynes<sup>29</sup> þe Britons, to helpe ham  
deliuere<sup>30</sup> þat lande of ham; and þai wolde<sup>31</sup> him holde<sup>31</sup> gladly  
for her lorde; for he was a paynyme, and þai were paynemes, and  
þe Britons were cristen: wel auȝt him<sup>32</sup> þan ham forto helpe, so as

<sup>1</sup> quelde D. welde O.    <sup>2</sup> sones D.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> lif D. lyf O.

<sup>5</sup> afterward O.    <sup>6</sup> om. DO.    <sup>7</sup> Parys O.    <sup>8</sup> þe D.    <sup>9</sup> of D.

<sup>10</sup> lost D. y-lost O.    <sup>11</sup> with-out O.    <sup>12</sup> retourne D. recouere O.

<sup>13</sup> nolde O.    <sup>14</sup> be DO.    <sup>15</sup> gete and conquere D.    <sup>16</sup> om. D.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 49.    <sup>18</sup> and he DO.    <sup>19</sup> withouten D.

<sup>20</sup> diuerse D. diuers O.    <sup>21</sup> into DO.    <sup>22—22</sup> om. D.

<sup>23</sup> Brytonys O.    <sup>24</sup> britayne D.    <sup>25</sup> ofte D.    <sup>26—26</sup> om. O.

<sup>27</sup> lost D.    <sup>28</sup> senden D. sent O.    <sup>29</sup> ȝens O.

<sup>30</sup> MS. has deliuere with the last de underlined for crasure.

<sup>31—31</sup> holde hym O.    <sup>32</sup> he O.

þai weren<sup>1</sup> of on law. ¶ When Gurmond<sup>2</sup> herde þis praier<sup>3</sup>, he hastede him as miche as he miȝt, and arryuede in Scotland, and come into Northumberlonð þere þat þe Saxones were duellyng<sup>4</sup>; & þai confermede þe couenaunteȝ bituene<sup>5</sup> ham, þat were made by oþes<sup>6</sup> and by hostages, forto beren<sup>7</sup> him trew fay, & halde him for lorde, and paye to him truage by zere. ¶ Tho bigonne þe Saxoynes & þe Aufricans to<sup>8</sup> destroye, robbe and brenne townes, and destroye<sup>9</sup> al þing<sup>10</sup>, as michel<sup>11</sup> as þai myȝt, and sparede<sup>12</sup> neiþere man, woman, 8 ne childe, Lewede ne lernede,<sup>13</sup> þan<sup>14</sup> alle þai quellede, & caste adoun townus, & castelle,<sup>15</sup> & cherches, & so put þai al þe lande to<sup>16</sup> grete destruccioun. <sup>11</sup>And as sone as the Britons<sup>11</sup> myȝt<sup>12</sup> flee,<sup>13</sup> þai fledde þens, as wel poer<sup>14</sup> as ryche, Bisshoppis, Abbotes, Chanons, <sup>12</sup>& alle oþere, grete and smale; somme into litel Britaign, & some into Cornwail; alle þo þat shippis miȝt haue.

**How<sup>14</sup> Kyng Gurmonde drof þe<sup>4</sup> Kyng Certif to Chichestre, and quellede þe Britons, & prouȝ<sup>4</sup> quey[n]tise ¶ gete<sup>16</sup> the toune.** [Capitulo nonagesimo quinto.]

**S**Ertif þe<sup>4</sup> kyng, fleye þens into<sup>15</sup> Chichestre, þat þo was a gode cite and a<sup>4</sup> strong, and þere helde him xx daies. and þis Gurmonde hit bisegede; but þe citee was so strong<sup>1</sup> þat he miȝt<sup>20</sup> nouȝt<sup>16</sup> hit gete<sup>16</sup> be no maner<sup>1</sup> engyne þat he myȝt done.<sup>17</sup> þo biþouȝt þai oppoñ a grete queyntise forto brenne the toune: þai maden<sup>18</sup> engynes of<sup>19</sup> glew and of nettes, and token<sup>20</sup> peces of tunder<sup>1</sup> &<sup>21</sup> fire, and bonde to<sup>22</sup> sparwe<sup>23</sup> feet, & afterward lete ham flee; <sup>24</sup>and þai<sup>24</sup> fley anon ryȝt,<sup>24</sup> and loggede ham in þe toune þere þat her<sup>1</sup> nestes were, and in stackes & in euesynges of house<sup>25</sup>; & þe fire biganne anone to tende and brenne<sup>26</sup> al þe toune. and whenne þe Britons saw þe toune brenne on<sup>27</sup> every side, þai hiede ham out, and <sup>28</sup>fauȝt; but anone þai were slayn & descomfitede. and whiles þe bataile dured, þe kyng priuely<sup>28</sup> hud him, &<sup>28</sup> stale away into Walys, & men wiste neuer where<sup>29</sup> he bicome; & so was þe toun

<sup>1</sup> were O.    <sup>2</sup> bituene D.    between O.    bitue R.    <sup>3</sup> ber<sup>1</sup> D.    here O.

<sup>4</sup> om. D.    <sup>5-6</sup> as michel D.    al thing in-as-mych O.    <sup>6</sup> spare D.

<sup>7</sup> lered<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>8</sup> þat D.    þat O.    <sup>9</sup> Castels O.    <sup>10</sup> in D.

<sup>11-11</sup> & as fast as þei D.    & as sone as þey O.    <sup>12</sup> leaf 49, back.

<sup>13</sup> fleen D.    <sup>14</sup> How þe D.    <sup>15</sup> vnto D.    to O.

<sup>16-16</sup> get þat citee D.    gete þat Cytee O.    <sup>17</sup> do O.

<sup>18</sup> made D.    <sup>19</sup> with DO.    <sup>20</sup> tok D.    <sup>21</sup> & of DO.

<sup>22</sup> to þe D.    hem to þe O.    <sup>23</sup> sparowes O.

<sup>24-24</sup> anone riȝt fley D.    anon right fley O.    <sup>25</sup> houses O.

<sup>26</sup> brennede D.    brent O.    <sup>27</sup> in DO.    <sup>28-28</sup> om. D.    <sup>29</sup> qwer sic O.

of Chichestre taken<sup>1</sup> & destroyed. and after, went Gurmonde, & destroyed citees & townes þat neuer were afterward made aȝeyne, as it is seen ȝitte in meny stedes.

4 How þis lande was clepede Engeland for þe name of Engist;  
and how meny Kynges <sup>2</sup>were <sup>3</sup>made<sup>2</sup> after in þe Londe.

¶ Capitulo Nonogesimo Sexto.

8 **W**Hen Gurmonde had<sup>4</sup> wasted and destroyed al þe lande þrouȝ-out, he ȝaf þe londe to þe<sup>5</sup> Saxones; and<sup>6</sup> þai toke hit wiþ gode wille, for þe Saxones longe tyme had desirede hit, for-as-miche as þai were of Engistes Kynrede, þat first had al þe lande of Britain; and þo lete ham bene<sup>7</sup> callede Englisshemen,<sup>8</sup> for-as-miche  
12 as in his tyme hit was callede Engistes lande, when he had conquerede it of<sup>9</sup> Vortiger þat had spoused his douȝter. but fram<sup>10</sup> þe tyme þat Brut come<sup>11</sup> first into<sup>12</sup> Engeland, þis land was callede Britaigne, & þe folc Britons, til þe tyme þat þis Gurmond eftesones  
16 conquerede hit & ȝaf it vnto<sup>13</sup> Saxonas, and þai anone riȝt chaunged þe name, as <sup>14</sup>bifore is<sup>14</sup> saide. ¶ And when þis was done, Gurmond passede ouer into Fraunce, & þere conquered meny londes, & destroyed al<sup>15</sup> cristen peple þere þat he come. and þe Danois<sup>16</sup>  
20 duelled in þis<sup>17</sup> lande, & bigonne faste hit<sup>18</sup> inhabit at here owen wille; and þai wolde haue made newe kynges and lordes, but þai myȝt neuer assenten<sup>19</sup> to haue onelich o kyng, for to bene<sup>7</sup> to him entendaunt: and þefore þai <sup>20</sup>maden meny<sup>20</sup> kynges <sup>21</sup>in diuerses<sup>21</sup>  
24 shires, as hit was in Engistes tyme. ¶ The first kyngdome was Kent, and þat<sup>22</sup> opere Southsex,<sup>23</sup> and þe þridde Westsex, and þe ferþ Estsex, and <sup>5</sup>þe fift Northumberland, and þe sixte Estangle, þat is to seyn Northfolc & Southfolc, and þe seueneþ Merchenoroth, and  
28 þat is þe Erl<sup>24</sup>dome of Nichole,<sup>25</sup> Huntynȝdon and<sup>26</sup> Hereford, Gloucestre, Wynchestre, Warrwyk<sup>27</sup> and Darby; and so departed<sup>28</sup> þe Englisshemen<sup>28</sup> al Engeland into<sup>29</sup> vij parties. ¶ And after<sup>30</sup> hit

<sup>1</sup> tak<sup>t</sup> D.      <sup>2-2</sup> weren y-made O.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 50.      <sup>4</sup> hast O.

<sup>5</sup> om. O.      <sup>6</sup> anon DO.      <sup>7</sup> be DO.

<sup>8</sup> Englisshmen for encheson of Engistes name & þe lond þey lete Calle Ingelond in here langage & þe folk beu called Englisshmen O.

<sup>9</sup> of kyng O.      <sup>10</sup> fro D.      <sup>11</sup> MS. cocome.

<sup>12</sup> MS. has into fr, with fr underlined for omission; in D.

<sup>13</sup> vnto þe DO.      <sup>14-14</sup> it is afore O.      <sup>15</sup> om. D.

<sup>16</sup> Saxoynes D.      <sup>17</sup> Danes O.      <sup>18</sup> the D.      <sup>19</sup> it to D.      <sup>19</sup> assent DO.

<sup>20-20</sup> made diuerse D.      <sup>21-21</sup> in al D.      in diuers O.      <sup>22</sup> þer D.

<sup>23</sup> Sussex O.      <sup>24</sup> leaf 50, back.      <sup>25</sup> Lyncolne D.      <sup>26</sup> om. DO.

<sup>27</sup> Warwyk DO.      Warr R.      <sup>28-28</sup> Englyssh O.      <sup>29</sup> in O.

<sup>30</sup> after þat D.

bifelle þat þo kynges werrede <sup>1</sup>to-gederes ofte-tymes<sup>1</sup>; and euer he þat was strongest binome ham<sup>2</sup> þat were<sup>3</sup> feblest; & so hit was longe tyme þat þai nade no kyng<sup>4</sup> cronede amonges ham, ne no cristen men was þo amonges ham, ne cristendome neipere, but were<sup>4</sup> pay- 4 nemys l. 3ere, til þat seynt Gregori was pope<sup>5</sup> of Rome, þat hade seyne childerne of þe nacioun in þe citee of Rome, þat were wonder<sup>6</sup> faire creatures, & hade grete wille and desire ham forto<sup>6</sup> biholde, and axede of þe marchauntes whens þai were, & of what nacioun; & 8 men<sup>7</sup> tolde him þat þai were of Engeland, & Englissh<sup>8</sup> þai were callede; but þai and aH þe peple of Engeland were paynemes, & bilenede nouz in<sup>9</sup> God. ¶ “Allas,” quod seynt Gregori, “wel mow þai <sup>10</sup>bene callede<sup>10</sup> Englissh, for þai haue þe visages<sup>11</sup> of 12 Angeles; and perfor wel auzt <sup>12</sup>ham þen ben cristen men.<sup>12</sup>” And for þis enchesoun seynt Gregor sent seynt Austyne into Engeland, and xl. goode men wip him, þat were of gode lif, and holy men, to preche and<sup>13</sup> teche, and to conuerte þe Englissh peple, and ham 16 turne to God: and þat was in þe vj 3ere þat seynt Gregor hade bene Pope,<sup>14</sup> þat is to seyne, after þe Incarnacioun of oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, v. C. <sup>xx</sup>iiij and<sup>15</sup> vij 3ere, as þe cronicles tellep.<sup>16</sup>

**How Seynt Austyne baptisede & conuertede Kyng Adelbright, 20  
and ij bisshopis þat he callede<sup>17</sup> his felawes. Capitulo  
<sup>xx</sup>iiij xvij<sup>o</sup>.**

**W**Hen Seynt Austyne come first into Engeland, he <sup>18</sup>arryuede <sup>19</sup>in þe Ile<sup>19</sup> of Tenet, and so passede fourth, & come vnto 24 Kaunterbery, and pere soiournede. And Kyng Adelbright of Kent, þat was of þe lynage of Engist, faire vnderfong seynt Austyn & his felowes wip michel<sup>20</sup> honour, & <sup>21</sup>ham fonde<sup>21</sup> al þat ham nedede; & ferþermore he 3af ham a faire place þat now is callede 28 þe Abbay of seynt Austynus, in whiche place he lip him-self shrinede. ¶ This Kyng<sup>4</sup> Adelbright was a gode man, and wip godewel herde seynt Austynus predicaciouns, and 3af him leue to

<sup>1-1</sup> ofte-tyme togedre D. often-tymes to-gilere O.

<sup>2</sup> hym O. <sup>3</sup> was O. <sup>4</sup> weren O.

<sup>5</sup> O has pope struck out, and bisshope written in margin, in same (?) hand.

<sup>6</sup> to D. <sup>7</sup> þai D. <sup>8</sup> englissh-men D. <sup>9</sup> vpon O.

<sup>10-10</sup> called be O. <sup>11</sup> visage D. vysage O.

<sup>12-12</sup> þa þan bene cristen D. þey þat be cristene O. <sup>13</sup> & to O.

<sup>14</sup> O has pope struck out, and bisshope written over. <sup>15</sup> om. D.

<sup>16</sup> telles D. <sup>17</sup> made D. made of O. <sup>18</sup> leaf 51.

<sup>19-19</sup> at Totten sic O. <sup>20</sup> mych O. <sup>21-21</sup> fonde ham D.

preche prou<sup>3</sup> al his lande of Kent, to tourne & to<sup>2</sup> conuerte<sup>3</sup> to him al þe peple<sup>3</sup> þat he miȝt. ¶ Hit bifelle<sup>4</sup> so afterwarde, prou<sup>3</sup> Goddes grace, þat in litel tyme þe kyng him-self was conuertede<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>to Gode,<sup>5</sup> and aȝ his peple of his<sup>6</sup> lande was<sup>6</sup> baptisede. And in the<sup>7</sup> mene-while þat<sup>7</sup> þe peple turnede ham to God, seynt Austyn come to Rochestre, and þere prechede Goddes worde.<sup>8</sup> þe paynemys perfor him scornede, and caste on<sup>9</sup> him righe tales, so þat al his<sup>8</sup> mantel was hongede ful of righe tales; and for more despite þat<sup>10</sup> caste oppon him<sup>11</sup> þe guttes of ryghe & of fflisshe; wherfore þe gode man seynt Austyn was sore agreuede,<sup>12</sup> and prayede to God<sup>13</sup> þat alle þe childerne þat shulde<sup>14</sup> bene borne<sup>14</sup> afterwarde in þat citee of<sup>12</sup> Rouchestre moste haue tales. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde and wist of þis vengeance þat<sup>15</sup> was falle prou<sup>3</sup> seynt Austynus praier, he lete make an house in þe<sup>2</sup> honoure of God, wher-in wymmen shulde haue childerne at þe bruges ende, in<sup>16</sup> whiche hous wymmen<sup>16</sup> <sup>17</sup>ȝit bep delyuere<sup>17</sup> of childe. ¶ When<sup>18</sup> seynt Gregory hade<sup>19</sup> herde tel þat<sup>20</sup> þe Englysshe-men were turnede to Gode, and conuertede, He sent to seynt Austyn his Pallyouñ, by a bisshop þat me callede Paulyn, and made him primate & Erchebisshop<sup>21</sup> of al Engeland, <sup>20</sup>And sent him<sup>22</sup> worde þan<sup>22</sup> þat he shulde<sup>23</sup> make bisshopsis in þe land. And anone as seynt Austyn hade þe Palliouñ of þe<sup>22</sup> dignite of þe erchebisshop, he made ij bisshoppes of his felawes þat come wip him fram<sup>24</sup> Rome: on þat me<sup>2</sup> callede Mellite, & he duelled<sup>24</sup> at London, And þat opere me callede Iustyn, þat helde þe dignite of Rouchestre. ¶ And þis<sup>25</sup> bisshop Mellyt<sup>26</sup> went to preche into Essex, & baptisede þe kyng of þe contre, þat me callede Sicwith, þat was Kyng Adelbright, cosyn, his sustres<sup>27</sup> sone. ¶ This <sup>28</sup>Iustyne went to preche in Southse, & turnede miche of þe peple to<sup>28</sup> god; and seynt Austyne went him-self prechyng prou<sup>3</sup>-oute <sup>29</sup>þe lande.<sup>29</sup>

<sup>1</sup> purgh-out O.    <sup>2</sup> om. O.    <sup>3-3</sup> þe peple vn-to hym al O.

<sup>4</sup> fel D.    <sup>5-6</sup> om. D.    <sup>6-6</sup> house-holde & of the lande weren D.

<sup>7-7</sup> mene-tyme whil D.    mene-tyme whyle O.    <sup>8</sup> MS. wrorde.

<sup>9</sup> vppoñ D.    <sup>10</sup> the sic D.    <sup>11</sup> oppon him D.    on hym O.    oppon R.

<sup>12</sup> annoyede & greuede D.    anoyed O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. gode with the e underlined for omission.

<sup>14-14</sup> be borne D.    be bore O.    <sup>15</sup> þat þus D.    <sup>16</sup> in the D.

<sup>17-17</sup> ȝit of the Citee beth delyuerede D.    ȝyt of þe Cytee be deliuered O.

<sup>18</sup> And when D.    <sup>19</sup> om. D.    <sup>20</sup> how DO.

<sup>21</sup> leaf 51, back.    <sup>22</sup> om. DO.

<sup>23</sup> shulde þan ordeyne & D.    þan schulð ordeyne & O.

<sup>24</sup> fro O.    <sup>25</sup> þe O.    <sup>26</sup> Mellite þo D.    Mellyt þo O.

<sup>27</sup> suster D.    Suster O.    <sup>28</sup> vnto O.    <sup>29-29</sup> Engeland DO.

How seynt Austyne went into Walys, pere pat pe Britouns were; & how<sup>1</sup> pai nolde nouȝt bene<sup>2</sup> obedient to pe Erchebisshop of Kanterbury. Capitulo<sup>xx</sup> iiiij<sup>o</sup> xviiij<sup>o</sup>.

**W**Hen al Engeland was baptisede and turnede to God, seynt 4 Austyn went into pat lande pere pat pe Britons were, and forto kepe ham fro<sup>3</sup> Englysshe-men, pat is to seyn,<sup>4</sup> into Walys, & pere<sup>5</sup> he founde monkes & Abbayes, & vij bisshoppes; for pe Britons destroyed<sup>6</sup> alwai<sup>7</sup> pe cristen peple pat seynt Austyne had<sup>8</sup> baptisede,<sup>8</sup> & saide to pe bisshoppes pat 'he was a legate of Rome, & primat of al Engeland, & pat pai shulde<sup>9</sup> by al resoun to him bene<sup>10</sup> obedient.' And pai saide pat 'pai nolde but to pe Erchebisshop of Kerlyoun'; & saide 'pai nolde neuer, for no maner 12 ping, bene obedient vnto pe Englysshe-men'; "ffor pe Englysshe-men," pai saide, "bep<sup>11</sup> oure aduersaries & oure enemyes, and haue<sup>12</sup> dryuen vs out of oure owen contre; & we bep<sup>11</sup> Cristen men, and euer hap<sup>12</sup> bene; & pe Englysshe-men<sup>13 14</sup> hauep euermore<sup>14</sup> bene 16 Paynymes, but now late pat pai bep<sup>15</sup> conuertede." ¶ Seynt Austyne myȝt<sup>16</sup> of ham<sup>16</sup> none opere ansuere haue,<sup>17</sup> but saide<sup>18</sup> apertely pat 'pai nolde neuer<sup>19</sup> ham meke<sup>19</sup> to him ne to pe<sup>20</sup> peple<sup>21</sup> of Rome.' And seynt Austyne turnede po aȝeyne to Kyng 20 Adelbright, pat was kyng of Kent, and tolde him pat pis<sup>22</sup> fole 23 wolde nouȝt<sup>23</sup> to no man bene<sup>24</sup> obedient<sup>25</sup> but to pe Erchebisshop of Kerlyoun. and when pe Kyng herde pis, he was sore annoiede, and saide pat he wolde ham destroye, & sent to Elfride,<sup>26</sup> 24 Kyng of Northumberland, pat was his<sup>20</sup> frende, pat he shulde come to him wip<sup>27</sup> al pe power<sup>28</sup> pat he myȝt, & pat he wolde<sup>29</sup> mete him at Leycestre, and fro<sup>30</sup> pens pai wolde gone<sup>31</sup> into Walys, & destroye pe Erchebisshop of Kerlyoun, & alle po<sup>32</sup> pat hade refusede 28 seynt Austyn.

<sup>1</sup> pat O.      <sup>2</sup> be D.      <sup>3</sup> from O.      <sup>4</sup> say O.  
<sup>5</sup> pere he fonde DO.      pere R.      <sup>6</sup> dystroyeden O.      <sup>7</sup> alwayes D.  
<sup>8</sup> conuertede D.      conuerted O.      <sup>9</sup> shulde be D.  
<sup>10</sup> om. D.      be O.      <sup>11</sup> ben O.      <sup>12</sup> haue DO.  
<sup>13</sup> leaf 52.      <sup>14-14</sup> haue euer D.      han euermore O.  
<sup>15</sup> bene D.      ben O.      <sup>16-16</sup> om. O.      <sup>17</sup> haue of hem O.  
<sup>18</sup> sayden D.      seyden O.      <sup>19-19</sup> meke hem O.      <sup>20</sup> om. O.  
<sup>21</sup> pope D.      pope struck out and bisshop written in the margin O.  
<sup>22</sup> his O.      <sup>23-23</sup> nolde nouȝt bene D.      nold not be O.  
<sup>24</sup> om. DO.      <sup>25</sup> obedient ne to non oper man O.      <sup>26</sup> Elbright D.  
<sup>27</sup> in D.      <sup>28</sup> hast D.      <sup>29</sup> shulde D.      schulde O.  
<sup>30</sup> from O.      <sup>31</sup> go D.      <sup>32</sup> om. D.

How Kyng Adelbr[i]ght and þe<sup>1</sup> Kyng Elfride quelled  
Brecyual, þat was a Kyng of Britons þat helde þe contre of  
Leicestre. *Capitulo Nonogesimo ixº.*

4 **H**It bifelle so þat þere was a Kyng Britoun þat helde þe  
contre of Leycestre, and al þe cuntre aboute him, of  
Brecyual. And þis Kyng Briton herde telle þat þo ij Englishe  
kyng; wolde<sup>2</sup> mete þere at Leycestre, forto wende into Walys.<sup>3</sup>  
8 he lete ordeyne al þe power þat he hade, forto feiȝt wiþ þise ij  
kynges; but litil hit auailede him, for his folc þat he hade was<sup>4</sup>  
slayn, & him-self fledde, & loste his lande; for euermore. ¶ And  
þise ij kynges, Adelbriht and<sup>5</sup> Elfride, duelled<sup>6</sup> awhile at  
12 Leycestre,<sup>6</sup> & departede þe lande amonges ham, & toke<sup>7</sup> homages  
& feautes of þe<sup>8</sup> folc of þe cuntree; and after<sup>9</sup>, þai wenten<sup>9</sup> towarde  
Walys, & <sup>10</sup>þo of Walys hade herde telle of þe scomfiture of<sup>11</sup>  
Brecyual hade at<sup>12</sup> Leycestre, and were wonder<sup>9</sup> sore adrade of þo ij  
16 kynges, and toke<sup>13</sup> and chose amonges ham gode men & holy, of  
heremytes, monkes and prestes, and<sup>14</sup> opere folc grete plente, þat  
wenten<sup>15</sup> bare-fote and wolward, forto haue mercy of þo ij kynges.  
¶ But þo<sup>16</sup> kynges were<sup>17</sup> so sterne and so wickede þat þai nolde  
20 neuer speke with ham, but quelled ham euerychoñ—Allas þe  
sorwe!—for þai ne sparede ham nomore þan <sup>18</sup>þe wolfe doth þe<sup>18</sup>  
shepe, but smyten of <sup>19</sup>þe heuedes of<sup>19</sup> euerychoñ; & so al were  
þere martrede þat to ham come, þat is to vnderstonde, v<sup>c</sup>. & xl.  
24 ¶ And after,<sup>20</sup> þo ij kynges went<sup>21</sup> to Bangor, forto quelle al þo<sup>1</sup>  
þat þai <sup>22</sup>myȝt þere<sup>22</sup> fynde of þe Britons. And when þe Britons þat  
herde, þai assemblede & ordeynede al here power<sup>9</sup> forto fiȝt wiþ  
ham. ¶ þo was þere a Britoun<sup>23</sup> in Walys, þat me callede Bledrik<sup>9</sup>  
28 of Cornwaile, þat somme-tyme was lorde of Deuenshire, but þe  
Kyng Adelbriht hade dryuen him into Walys, and ȝeue<sup>24</sup> him  
bataile; and at þat bataile was Kyng Adelbriht slayne, & Elfride<sup>25</sup>  
woundede sore, & forsoke þe felde, & þe most parte<sup>26</sup> of his folc  
32 slayn; and Elfride fleye<sup>27</sup> into Northumberland, þat was his owen

<sup>1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2</sup> wolden O.    <sup>3</sup> Walys and D.    <sup>4</sup> weren D.    were O.

<sup>5</sup> MS. and Edelf, with Edelf *underlined for omission*; om. D.

<sup>6-6</sup> at Leycestre awhile D.    <sup>7</sup> token DO.    <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9</sup> went D.    wente O.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 52. back.    <sup>11</sup> þat DO.

<sup>12</sup> of O.    <sup>13</sup> nome O.    <sup>14</sup> & of DO.    <sup>15</sup> wenten O.    weren R.

<sup>16</sup> the D.    <sup>17</sup> weren D.    <sup>18-18</sup> wolves done D.

<sup>19-19</sup> here hedes O.    <sup>20</sup> afterwarde D.    afterward<sup>9</sup> O.

<sup>21</sup> went fro þens DO.    <sup>22-22</sup> þere miȝt D.

<sup>23</sup> baron DO.    <sup>24</sup> ȝaf D.    <sup>25</sup> Eldryd O.    <sup>26</sup> partye D.

<sup>27</sup> fleye O.

lande; and afterwarde þe peple of Leycestreshire made wiþ strengþ Cadwaladre, þat was Breçyuale; sone, Kyng of Leycestre, & he after<sup>1</sup> regnede nobli & wiþ grete<sup>2</sup> honcure.

**How Cadewaladre, <sup>3</sup>þat was<sup>3</sup> Kyng<sup>4</sup> of Leycestre, and Elfride, <sup>4</sup>Kyng of Northumberlanð, weren<sup>4</sup> frendes; & of þe debate þat after was bituene Edwyne & Cadewalayn, þat were <sup>5</sup>boþe here<sup>5</sup> sones. Capitulo Centesimo.**

**A**Nd after þat <sup>6</sup>þis bataile was done, þe Britons <sup>7</sup>assemblede <sup>8</sup>ham, and went þens, and come<sup>8</sup> vnto Leicestre, & made Cadwaladre, þat was Breçyuales sone, kyng of Leicestr<sup>9</sup> and of aH þe contre. and <sup>9</sup>he toke homages & feautes of <sup>10</sup>þe fole of þat <sup>11</sup>contre; and after þat, he assembled <sup>12</sup>a grete hoste, and saido ‘he <sup>12</sup>wolde go <sup>13</sup>into Northumberland forto <sup>14</sup>destroi Kyng Elfride, & slee him, if þat he myght.’ and when he was comen <sup>15</sup>þider, frendes <sup>16</sup>went so bituene ham, & made ham accordede in þis maner, þat Elfride shulde holde at þe lande fram Humber vnto <sup>17</sup>16 Scotlande, and Cadwalader shulde halde <sup>18</sup>al þe lande apis half Humber vnto <sup>19</sup>þe South; and after þat þai bicome <sup>20</sup>gode frendes al here lif duryng, & louede to-gedre as [they] hade bene <sup>21</sup>ij breþerne. ¶ And þis Elfride hade a sone þat me callede Edwynne, <sup>20</sup>þat hade and helde al þe lande of Northumbreland after his fadres deth, as his fader hade holde al his lif-tyme. <sup>22</sup>¶ And Cadwaladre hade anopere sone þat me callede Cadwalayn, þat helde his fadres lande as he it helde while he was alif; and þai louede to-gedre as <sup>24</sup>þai hade bene breþern. and þe loue laste bituene ham but onely ij zere, and after biganne debate bituene ham prou; a luper eneuious cosyne of <sup>23</sup>Cadwalayn, þat men <sup>24</sup>callede Briens, so þat þai assemblede a grete <sup>25</sup>hoste in boþe parties; & at þe laste hit bifelle <sup>28</sup>þat Cadewalayn was descomfitede, & Edwyne him pursuede, and drof fram <sup>26</sup>place to place. so at þe <sup>27</sup>laste he fleye into Irlande; and þis opere destroyede his lande, & caste adounne <sup>28</sup>his castelles, and brenned <sup>29</sup>his maneres, and departede al Cadwalaynes <sup>30</sup>lande <sup>32</sup>amonge his frendes. <sup>30</sup>¶ And longe tyme after come Cadwalayn

<sup>1</sup> afterward O.      <sup>2</sup> gode D.      <sup>3-3</sup> om. DO.      <sup>4</sup> were DO.  
<sup>5-5</sup> her boþe O.      <sup>6</sup> om. D.      <sup>7</sup> leaf 53.  
<sup>8</sup> comen O.      <sup>9</sup> and after þat D.      <sup>10</sup> of al DO.      <sup>11</sup> þe DO.  
<sup>12</sup> assemblede D.      <sup>13</sup> assembled O.      <sup>14</sup> assemble R.      <sup>15</sup> gon O.      <sup>16</sup> to DO.  
<sup>17</sup> come O.      <sup>18</sup> frende D.      <sup>19</sup> in-to O.      <sup>20</sup> haue DO.      <sup>21</sup> into D.  
<sup>22</sup> becomen O.      <sup>23</sup> be O.      <sup>24</sup> lyuystyme O.      <sup>25</sup> MS. of of.  
<sup>26</sup> me D.      <sup>27</sup> stronge D.      <sup>28</sup> him fro D.      <sup>29</sup> hym fro O.      <sup>30</sup> om. O.  
<sup>31-31</sup> castell D.      <sup>32</sup> castels O.      <sup>33</sup> brent O.      <sup>34-34</sup> amonges his frende D.



aʒeyne fram Irlandē, with a stronge power, and in pleyne bataile  
 1 quelledē Edwynne and alle his frendeshippes, & namely þo þat  
 wipheldē his landes þrouȝ Edwynes ʒifte.

4 **How Kyng Oswolde was quelledē þrouȝ Kyng<sup>2</sup> Cadwaleyne and  
 Peanda; & how Oswy, þat was seynt Oswoldes, broþer,  
 regnedē after him, & quelde Peanda. Capitulo Centesimo  
 primo.**

8 **W**hen þat Edwynne was slayn, Offris his sone vnderfonge<sup>3</sup>  
 þe werr' aʒeyns Cadwaleyn his Eme, so þat þis Offris  
 deide duryng þe weire. and after' þe dep' of Offris, þo regned a  
 gentile Cristen man þat miche louede God,—þat hadē aȝ þe lande  
 12 of Northumberland by<sup>4</sup> herytage,—þat me [called] Oswolde, and  
 he was kyng of al þat lande. but for-asmiche as he was frende to  
 Edwyne, and helde a grete parte of þe lande of Cadwalyñ, þe same  
 Cadewalyn werred oppoñ him, and drof him toward Scotland.  
 16 and when Cadwalyn saw þat he wolde<sup>5</sup> nouȝt abide, Cadwalyn  
 wolde no longer him pursue, but toke some of his folc to Peanda,  
 his broþer-in-law, & praiede Peanda to pursue Oswolde til þat he  
 were take and slayne; and Cadwalyn turnede þo<sup>6</sup> home aʒeyn.  
 20 ¶ When Oswolde herde þe tidynges<sup>7</sup> þat Cadwaleyn turnede home  
 aʒeyne, he wolde no longer flee, but abode Peanda, & ʒaf him  
 bataile; & Peanda was descomfitede and fley,<sup>8</sup> and come aʒeyne to  
 Cadwaleyn, & saide þat<sup>2</sup> 'he wolde neuere holde a<sup>9</sup> foote of lande  
 24 of him but<sup>10</sup> if it were so þat<sup>10</sup> he wolde avenge him oppoñ<sup>11</sup>  
 Oswolde.' Cadwaleyne lete assemble a grete host forto fiȝt wip  
 Oswolde; so þat he and Peanda come into Northumberland, <sup>12</sup> and  
 ʒeuen bataile vnto Oswolde; and in þat same bataile was Oswolde  
 28 slayn,<sup>13</sup> & his heuede<sup>14</sup> smyten of; & after he was enterede at þe  
 Abbay of Berdeneye, in whiche place<sup>15</sup> God haȝ wrouȝt for him  
 meny a faire miracle, boþe þere and elles-where.

¶ And anone Oswy<sup>16</sup> his<sup>17</sup> broþer seisede into<sup>18</sup> his hande al  
 32 þe<sup>19</sup> lande þat was Oswoldes; & þe folc of Northumberlande louede  
 him wonder wel, and helde him for here lorde; but he hadē men  
 of his kyn worpi ynow þat wolde haue departede þe lande; & þai

<sup>1</sup> leaf 53, back.

<sup>2</sup> om. D.

<sup>3</sup> vndertok<sup>1</sup> D. vndirtoke O.

<sup>4</sup> by þe O.

<sup>5</sup> nolde O.

<sup>6</sup> þo home D. þo hoorn O. þo R.

<sup>7</sup> Tydyng O.

<sup>8</sup> fled O.

<sup>9</sup> o O.

<sup>10-10</sup> om. D.

<sup>11</sup> of DO.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 54.

<sup>13</sup> y-slayn O.

<sup>14</sup> heed O.

<sup>15</sup> places D.

<sup>16</sup> Oswyne D.

<sup>17</sup> MS. him.

<sup>18</sup> vn-to O.

<sup>19</sup> his O.

werrede to-gedre.<sup>1</sup> & for-asmiche as þai were nouȝt stronge ynow,<sup>2</sup> þai come to Peanda, & praiede him of helpe and socour, & bihiȝht him of þat lande largely, oppoñ þat<sup>3</sup> couenant þat he wolde ham<sup>4</sup> ghye, helpe,<sup>4</sup> & conseile. ¶ Peanda herde her<sup>5</sup> praier, & so spake <sup>4</sup> wiþ þe Kyng Cadwalyñ þat he shulde ordeyne a grete hoste, and faste ordeyne him into Northumberland forto fiȝt wiþ Oswy. and Oswy was a meke man, & miche louede pees and <sup>5</sup> charite, & prayede Peanda of loue and pees, & <sup>5</sup> proferede him <sup>2</sup> of golde & <sup>6</sup> 8 siluer grete plente. ¶ And<sup>7</sup> þis Peanda was so proude þat he wolde<sup>8</sup> graunt him no<sup>3</sup> pees for no maner þing, but for al þing h[e] wolde wiþ him<sup>9</sup> feiȝt. so at þe<sup>2</sup> laste þere was sette a day of ba[ta]ille; and Oswy euere hade truste oppoñ Gode, & þis <sup>12</sup> Peanda triste to miche oppoñ his pride & oppoñ his host þat he hade. and to-gedre þai smyten egrely; but Peanda anone was descomfitede & slayn. And þat was after þe Incarnacioun of oure lorde Ihesu Criste <sup>10</sup> V. C. & lv.<sup>10</sup> ¶ And þis Oswy þo regnede <sup>16</sup> xxviiij<sup>11</sup> ȝere. <sup>12</sup> And a kyng<sup>13</sup> þat me callede Oswyn, þat was Peandaeȝ cosyn, werrede oppoñ Kyng Oswy, and to-gedre fouȝten; but Oswy hade þe victorie; and Oswyne was descomfitede & slayn, and lith at Tynnemouthe. 20

**Of Kyng Ossa, þat was souereyne of alle þe kynges of Engeland; & how eueryche<sup>14</sup> werrede oppoñ opere in his tyme.**  
*Capitulo Centesimo Secundo.*

**H**It bifelle so þat alle þe kynges in þat tyme þat were in þe <sup>24</sup> londe, as þo of Westseȝ, Mercheneriche, Est Angle, of Kent, & of Southseȝ & of opere costes, eueryche<sup>14</sup> werrede oppoñ opere; and <sup>15</sup> þai þat were <sup>15</sup> moste myȝtiest <sup>16</sup> toke þe lande of ham þat were moste feblest.<sup>16</sup> ¶ But pere was a kyng amonges ham <sup>28</sup> þat me callede Ossa, þat was seynt Oswoldes broþer. þis Ossa conquerede alle þe kynges of þe lande, & reigned aboue ham alle. ¶ And so grete was þe werr<sup>1</sup> in euery contre bituene kyngus, þat no man myȝt wete how þe lande went. But Abbotes, prioures, & <sup>32</sup> men of religioun, writen þe lifes and <sup>17</sup> dedes of kynges, & how

<sup>1</sup> togederes D.<sup>2</sup> om. O.<sup>3</sup> om. DO.<sup>4-4</sup> helpe lede D. gye & helpe O. <sup>5-5</sup> om. D. <sup>6</sup> & of D.<sup>7</sup> But D. <sup>8</sup> nolde DO. <sup>9</sup> hem O. <sup>10-10</sup> D. & lv ȝeer O.<sup>11</sup> xviiij D. <sup>12</sup> leaf 54, back. <sup>13</sup> kyn D. <sup>14</sup> eche O.<sup>15-15</sup> he þat was DO.<sup>16-16</sup> bynomen ham þat were most feblest þe lande D. byname þe lond of hym þat was feblest O. <sup>17</sup> & þe O.

longe <sup>1</sup> eueryche hade regnede,<sup>1</sup> & in what contre; & in what  
<sup>2</sup> maner eueryche <sup>2</sup> kyng deide, and of <sup>3</sup> bisschoppis also, and *perof* <sup>4</sup>  
made grete bokes, & lete calle ham þe Cronicles: and þe goode  
4 Kyng Alurede hade þat boke in his warde, and lete brynge hit to  
Wynchestre, & lete hit faste bene <sup>5</sup> tackede to a piler, þat men  
myzt hit <sup>6</sup> nouzt remeue ne bere <sup>7</sup> þenns, so þat euery man myzt hit  
see and *pereoppoñ* loke, for *perin* bep<sup>8</sup> þe lifes of alle þe Kynges  
8 þat euer wer in Engeland.

How þe Kyng of Northumberlon, Osbriht, forleye þe wif of  
Buerne Bocar, þrouz strengþ; & after þis Buerne con-  
quered þe <sup>9</sup> Kyng wip stronge power.<sup>9</sup> *Capitulo Centesimo*  
12 *tercio.*

**A** Nd þus hit bifelle in the same tyme, þat *pere* was a kyng in  
<sup>10</sup> Northumberlon, þat me callede Ossebriht, & soiournede  
in 3ork, and þis kyng wente him oppoñ a day into a wode, him  
16 forto<sup>11</sup> desporte; and when he come azeine, he went priuely<sup>6</sup> into  
a gode manus house þat me callede Buerne Bocar.<sup>6</sup> & þe gode  
man of þat<sup>12</sup> place was gone þat tyme to þe see, for ofte-tymes he  
was wonede<sup>13</sup> *pere* asprie<sup>14</sup> þeues & robboures, þat ofte-tymes<sup>15</sup> were  
20 wont to<sup>6</sup> come into þe londe to robbe & <sup>6</sup> brenne and slee. ¶ þe  
lady þat was þis Buernes wif, was a<sup>6</sup> wonder faire woman, and  
welcomede þe Kyng wip michel<sup>16</sup> honour, and worpely him seruede  
in al þing. ¶ When þe Kyng hade <sup>17</sup> eten, he toke<sup>17</sup> þe lady by  
24 þe hande, and lad her into chaumbre, & saide þat he wolde speke  
wip here a counsele. and al þe folc fram<sup>18</sup> þe chaumbre he made  
voyede, saf onely<sup>19</sup> þe lady and he. but þe Lady wiste nouzt  
wherfore he it dede, til þat he hade done wip here his wille. and  
28 when he hade done þis dede, he turnede azeine to 3ork, & þe lady  
he lefte *pere* wonder sore wepyng for þe dede þat he hade ydone.  
¶ And when here lorde was come<sup>20</sup> home, & saw here wepe, and  
soche mornyng make, he axede of here what she hade done, &  
32 whi she made soche sorwe. ¶ “Sire,” *quod* she, “queyntly and

<sup>1-1</sup> eueryche regnede hade D. eche had regned O.

<sup>2-2</sup> manere-wyse eche O. <sup>3</sup> of his O. <sup>4</sup> *perof* þai D. *perof* þey O.

<sup>5</sup> be O. <sup>6</sup> *om.* DO. <sup>7</sup> bere it DO. <sup>8</sup> ben O.

<sup>9-9</sup> lande with strengþ D. kyng with poer & strengþe O. <sup>10</sup> *leaf* 55.

<sup>11</sup> to O. <sup>12</sup> þe DO. <sup>13</sup> wont DO.

<sup>14</sup> asprie & awayte D. aspye & awayte O. <sup>15</sup> oftyn-tyme O.

<sup>16</sup> mych O. <sup>17-17</sup> ete he nome O. <sup>18</sup> fro DO. <sup>19</sup> onlich D.

<sup>20</sup> comen D.

falsely þe Kyng<sup>t</sup> Osbright me hap done shame and vilonye, aʒeynes my wille"; and tolde him treupe, How the kyng<sup>t</sup> hade her<sup>t</sup> forleyne wiþ strengþ; wherfore she<sup>1</sup> saide she hade leuer<sup>t</sup> to dye þan leue. ¶ "Faire leef, bistille," *quod* he, "for aʒeynes strengþ<sup>2</sup> [febleness]<sup>4</sup> is litel worþ; & þerfore of me<sup>3</sup> shal yow<sup>3</sup> neuer þe lesse bene<sup>4</sup> Louede, and namely for yow<sup>5</sup> haste tolde me treupe. and if Almyghty God<sup>t</sup> grant<sup>6</sup> me lif, y shal þe wel auenge."

¶ This Buerne was<sup>7</sup> a gret man and<sup>7</sup> a miȝty lorde, and was<sup>8</sup> wel biloned, & grete frendes hade, and lete sende for þe greteste lordes of þe lande, & to ham made his compleynt of þe<sup>8</sup> despite þat þe kyng to him hade done, & saide þat he wolde bene<sup>9</sup> auengede, how<sup>10</sup> þat euer it were. and alle his frendes<sup>11</sup> conseilede<sup>12</sup> and grantede to wende towarde ʒork<sup>t</sup>, þere þat þe kyng was. & Buerne toke<sup>13</sup> his menyne, &<sup>14</sup> come to<sup>14</sup> þe kyng<sup>t</sup>. and when þe kyng him saw, he callede him curtesly Buerne by<sup>15</sup> name; and Buerne him ansuerede &<sup>16</sup> saide: "Sire, y ʒow defye, & ʒelde op<sup>16</sup> <sup>17</sup>feantes, homages, and<sup>17</sup> londes, and as miche as y haue holde of ʒow; and so, fro<sup>18</sup> þis tyme afterwarde, y wil no þing of þe holde." & so he departede fram<sup>19</sup> þe kyng with-outen<sup>20</sup> more speche or eny abidyng, & toke<sup>21</sup> leue of his frendes, and went to Denmare, <sup>20</sup>and pleynde to þe Kyng Godryn,<sup>22</sup> & tolde him of þe despite þat Kyng<sup>t</sup> Osbright to him hade done of his wif, & praiede him of socoure & of helpe, him to auenge. ¶ When Kyng Godryn<sup>23</sup> of Denmare & þe<sup>24</sup> Danoyes, when þai<sup>24</sup> hade herde þe pleynt of <sup>24</sup>þis Buerne & of þe praer<sup>t</sup> þat he bade, þai were wonder<sup>t</sup> glade in hert, for-as-miche as þai myȝt fynde cause forto gone<sup>25</sup> into Engel-land<sup>t</sup> forto werr<sup>t</sup> oppoñ þe Englysshe-men, & also forto auenge Buerne of þe despite þat þe<sup>26</sup> kyng hade done<sup>27</sup> to his wif, & for- <sup>28</sup>as-miche as Buerne was sib to þe Kyng of Denmare. ¶ Anone<sup>28</sup> þai lete ordeyne a grete hoste of men, & lete ordeyne shippis, and as miche as<sup>29</sup> was nede<sup>29</sup> to þat Viage. and when alle þe hoste was

<sup>1</sup> he sic D.      <sup>2</sup> strengþe þe O.      <sup>3-3</sup> shalt þow D.      þou shalt O.

<sup>4</sup> be DO.      <sup>5</sup> þow D.      þou O.

<sup>6</sup> leaf 55, back.

<sup>7-7</sup> om. D.

<sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9</sup> be D.

<sup>10</sup> how so O.

<sup>11</sup> frende D.

<sup>12</sup> counceilled hym O.

<sup>13</sup> none O.

<sup>14-14</sup> went towarde D.

<sup>15</sup> by his O.

<sup>16</sup> and to him D.      & to hym O.

<sup>17-17</sup> feantes & homages and D.      feantes homages & O.      feantes, homages R.

<sup>18</sup> fram D.      from O.

<sup>19</sup> fro DO.

<sup>20</sup> withoute DO.

<sup>21</sup> none O.

<sup>22</sup> Gordryne D.

<sup>23</sup> Gordyn D.

<sup>24-24</sup> Danoyes D.      Danes whan þey O.

<sup>25</sup> go DO.

<sup>26</sup> MS. has þe englysshe men, with englysshe men *underlined for omission.*

<sup>27</sup> y-done O.

<sup>28</sup> And anone D.

<sup>29-29</sup> nedede D.

redy, þe kyng made <sup>1</sup>his ij breþerne cheueteys, þat Were noble Knyztes and bolde: þat one me callede Hunger,<sup>2</sup> & þat opere Hubba.

4 How þe <sup>3</sup>Danoys toke <sup>3</sup>ȝork<sup>4</sup> & quellede<sup>4</sup> Kyng Osbright, and afterwarde<sup>5</sup> Kyng Elle. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Centesimo* ¶ *Quarto*.

8 **W**Hen al þing was aredy,<sup>6</sup> þo ij breþerne tok<sup>4</sup> leue of þe Kyng Godrin, and went towarde þe see, forto wende into Engelande as faste as þai myzt spede. ¶ Now is Buerne so<sup>7</sup> wel comfortede, & faste hiede him wip þe <sup>8</sup>Danoys; and þai arryue<sup>8</sup> in þe Northcontre, & <sup>9</sup>come prouȝ-out<sup>9</sup> Holdernesse, & destroiede al  
12 þe contre,<sup>10</sup> and brent tounes and robbede folc, & quellede al þat þai myzt take, til þat þai come to ȝorke. ¶ And when Kyng Osbright saw ham come, he toke<sup>11</sup> þe<sup>12</sup> peple þat he hade, and come out of þe citee, & with ham fauȝte; but no foyssoun he made<sup>13</sup>  
16 aȝeynes ham; & miche was þe peple þat *pere* was slayn in bope parties; and Kyng Osbright himself *pere* was slayn, and þe citee anone was take, & þe <sup>14</sup>Danoys wenten<sup>14</sup> in. ¶ And *pere* was also anopere kyng in Northumberlonȝ þat Buernes frendes hade chosen,  
20 & helde him for kyng, a man þat me clepede<sup>15</sup> Elle, for-as-miche as þai nolde<sup>16</sup> nouȝt to Kyng Osbright bene<sup>17</sup> entendant, for þe despite þet he hade done to Buerne here cosyn. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, þat þe<sup>18</sup> Kyng<sup>4</sup> Elle was goȝn to þe<sup>18</sup> wode him<sup>19</sup> forto desporte: and of  
24 venysoun somdele he hade tak<sup>4</sup>. and as he satte in the wode at mete, to a knyght he saide: “we haue wel y<sup>20</sup>spedde, & michel<sup>21</sup> venysoun taken.<sup>22</sup>” and wip þat worde *pere* come<sup>23</sup> in<sup>18</sup> a man, <sup>24</sup>& to him<sup>24</sup> saide: “Sire, if ȝe so miche of venysoun haue y-wonne,<sup>25</sup>  
28 an C. tynes so miche *pere* aȝeyns <sup>26</sup>ȝe hanen<sup>26</sup> loste; for al þis contre þe Danois hanen<sup>27</sup> gete, & take<sup>28</sup> þe cite of ȝork; & aȝeynes ȝow shal it holde, þat neuer ȝe shul come perin; & forsothe þai

<sup>1</sup> leaf 56.

<sup>2</sup> altered from Humber, or perhaps Humber altered from Hunger; Humber D. Hungar O.

<sup>3-3</sup> Danes token O.

<sup>4</sup> quellede the D.

<sup>5</sup> after O.

<sup>6</sup> redy D.

<sup>7</sup> om. D.

<sup>8-8</sup> Danoys and arryuede D. Danes þat þei beþ arryued O.

<sup>9-9</sup> comen prouȝ D. comen þurgh-out O.

<sup>10</sup> land D.

<sup>11</sup> nome O.

<sup>12</sup> his DO.

<sup>13</sup> hade D.

<sup>14-14</sup> Danes went O.

<sup>15</sup> callede D. called O.

<sup>16</sup> wolde D.

<sup>17</sup> be D.

<sup>18</sup> om. DO.

<sup>19</sup> him al D.

<sup>20</sup> leaf 56, back.

<sup>21</sup> miche D. mych O.

<sup>22</sup> take O.

<sup>23</sup> cam O.

<sup>24-24</sup> om. D.

<sup>25</sup> wonne DO.

<sup>26-26</sup> haue ȝe D.

<sup>27</sup> ȝe haue O.

<sup>28</sup> han D.

<sup>28</sup> taken D.

<sup>1</sup>hauen slayn<sup>1</sup> Kyng Osbright." ¶ And when Kyng Elle pise wordes herde, he lete assemble al þe fole of þe cuntre, & ordeynede al þe power<sup>2</sup> þat he miȝt haue,<sup>2</sup> and wold haue gete<sup>3</sup> þe tonne of ȝork wip strengþ. but þe <sup>4</sup>Danois comen<sup>4</sup> out anon & ȝaf ham bataile, <sup>4</sup> & quellede<sup>5</sup> þe kyng<sup>4</sup> & þe moste part<sup>6</sup> of his men þat he hade<sup>7</sup> brouȝt wip him : and þe same place þere þat pai were slayne shal euer<sup>8</sup> bene<sup>9</sup> callede Ellecrofte ; and þat place is a hitel fram ȝork. and þo<sup>7</sup> abode<sup>10</sup> þe <sup>11</sup>Danois neuer,<sup>11</sup> til pai hade conquerede al <sup>8</sup> Northumberlanð. and in þat contre pai made Werdeynes, & went ferþer into þe lande, and token Notyngham. and þere pai abiden al þe wynter, and deden<sup>12</sup> al þe sorwe þat pai myght. and after, when somer<sup>1</sup> tyme come, pai remevede fram Notyngham, & <sup>13</sup>come <sup>12</sup> vnto<sup>13</sup> Nichole, & to Lyndessey, & to Holanð, for no man miȝt ham withstande, so miche power<sup>1</sup> & strengþ <sup>14</sup>pai hade.<sup>14</sup>

**How Seynt Edmund þe Kyng was martrede. Capitulo Centesimo v<sup>to</sup>.**

16

**A**Nd so ferre <sup>15</sup>hade þe Danois<sup>15</sup> passede fram<sup>16</sup> contre vnto<sup>17</sup> contre, & enermore brennyng & robbyng, & destroyed<sup>18</sup> al þat pai miȝt, til þat<sup>19</sup> pai come vnto<sup>20</sup> Tetteford. & in þat<sup>21</sup> contre pai fonden a Cristen Kyng<sup>22</sup> þat miche louede God & <sup>23</sup>his <sup>20</sup> Werkes, þat me callede Edmunde ; & he was Kyng of Northfole and<sup>24</sup> Southfole.<sup>25</sup> ¶ þis Seynt Edmunde þe kyng ordeynede as miche fole as he myȝt, & fauȝt wip þe Danois<sup>26</sup> ; but he and his fole were scomfitede,<sup>27</sup> & <sup>28</sup>þe kyng<sup>28</sup> him-self dryuen vnto a<sup>29</sup> castel <sup>24</sup> of Framelyngham. & þe Danois<sup>26</sup> him pursuede, & comen<sup>30</sup> vnto þe same castel. and when Kyng Edmunde saw þat þe castel myst nouȝt ham<sup>31</sup> wipstonde, he comen<sup>32</sup> aȝeynes ham. with whame þe Danois<sup>26</sup> ferst speken<sup>33</sup> ; and anone pai axede of him where Kyng <sup>28</sup> Edmunde was. "now forsoth," quod he, "when y was in þe casteH, <sup>34</sup>y was<sup>34</sup> kyng ; & when y went oute<sup>7</sup> of þe castel, he went out also ; and <sup>35</sup>wheþer þat<sup>35</sup> he shal ascape or dye, at Godes wil

<sup>1-1</sup> haue slayn the D. han slayn O.

<sup>2</sup> haue and wolde haue D. haue & wold haue O. haue R.

<sup>3</sup> y-gete O. <sup>4-4</sup> Danoys come D. Danes comen O. <sup>5</sup> quelle D.

<sup>6</sup> party D. partye O. <sup>7</sup> om. D. <sup>8</sup> enermore O. <sup>9</sup> be DO.

<sup>10</sup> abide neuer O. <sup>11-11</sup> Danes O. <sup>12</sup> dede O. <sup>13-13</sup> comen to D.

<sup>14-14</sup> om. D. <sup>15-15</sup> þe Danoys had D. had þe Danes O.

<sup>16</sup> fro O. <sup>17</sup> to D. <sup>18</sup> destroying D. <sup>19</sup> om. DO. <sup>20</sup> to D.

<sup>21</sup> the same D. <sup>22</sup> leaf 57. <sup>23</sup> and al D. <sup>24</sup> & of D.

<sup>25</sup> Suffolk O. <sup>26</sup> Danes O. <sup>27</sup> descomfitede D. <sup>28-28</sup> om. D.

<sup>29</sup> the D. þe O. <sup>30</sup> come D. <sup>31</sup> hym O. <sup>32</sup> come DO.

<sup>33</sup> spoken D. <sup>34-34</sup> þer was þe O. <sup>35-35</sup> whedir O.

most<sup>1</sup> hit be." ¶ When Seynt Edmunde hade nempnede God, by  
 pat <sup>2</sup>worde pai wiste<sup>2</sup> alle pat it<sup>3</sup> was he him-self. and anone  
 Hubba & Hungar<sup>4</sup> tok<sup>5</sup> him, & saide pat he shulde God forsake,  
 4 & al cristen law, as alle<sup>6</sup> opere hade<sup>7</sup> done prou3 ham biforn. and  
 Seynt Edmunde saide pat<sup>8</sup> 'he wolde<sup>9</sup> neuer, but raper<sup>10</sup> he wolde  
 suffre deth<sup>10</sup> for Godes sone,<sup>11</sup> and his law<sup>12</sup> to kepe.' ¶ po tok<sup>13</sup>  
 pai Kyng Edmunde, & bounde him vnto<sup>14</sup> a tree, and made<sup>15</sup>  
 8 Archires <sup>16</sup>to him<sup>16</sup> shote with Arwes, til pat his body stickede  
 alse<sup>17</sup> ful of Arwes as an hircorne is ful of prickes; but for alle pe  
 payne pat he hade, he wolde<sup>18</sup> neuer God forsake. & in<sup>8</sup> pe same  
 pyne <sup>19</sup>he deide wip pat turmentyng,<sup>19</sup> & bitoke his soule to<sup>20</sup>  
 12 almy3ty God. & when pai saw pat he was dede, pai smyten of his  
 heuede<sup>21</sup>; & in pis maner was Seynt Edmunde martrede.

**<sup>22</sup>How Hubba & Hungar<sup>3</sup> toke þe toune of Redyng. Capitulo  
 Centesimo vj<sup>to</sup>.**

16 [W] Hen sent Edmunde was martrede, Hunguar<sup>3</sup> and Hubba  
 went pens, with al here Danoys,<sup>23</sup> vnto Redyng. and  
 as pai went piderwarde, pai brent tounes & citees, & quellede al  
 Cristen peple pat wolde nou3t God<sup>24</sup> forsake, and caste adoun<sup>25</sup>  
 20 cherches, and comen<sup>26</sup> to Redyng, and toke<sup>27</sup> þe touñ, and pere  
 holde<sup>28</sup> ham til pat þe Kyng Edelf<sup>3</sup> of Westsex come pider wip al  
 his power<sup>3</sup> forto take þe toune. ¶ po come<sup>29</sup> oute þe Danoys<sup>23</sup> forto  
 3eue bataile to Kyng<sup>3</sup> Elfride<sup>30</sup>; and at þat bataile was quellede an  
 24 Erl of Danoys<sup>23</sup> pat me callede Gydrak. ¶ Oppon þe morwe come  
 þe Kyng Eldrede, and his broþer Alured, with a stronge power<sup>3</sup>  
 and<sup>31</sup> grete host. and þe Kyng Edelf<sup>3</sup> come a3eyne (pat hade  
 32 fou3ten wip þe Danois<sup>32</sup> þe day toforne<sup>33</sup>) to þat bataile. & þe  
 28 Danois<sup>23</sup> po comen<sup>34</sup> out forto fei3t wip ham. and pat<sup>35</sup> bataile was  
 wonder strong, for meny a man was pere slayn<sup>36</sup>; and þe Danois<sup>23</sup>  
 pat day hade þe vittori; and þe Kyng Eldrede & his broþer

<sup>1</sup> mi3t D. mote O. <sup>2-2</sup> pai wisten D. þei wysten O. <sup>3</sup> þat D.

<sup>4</sup> D has Hunber with ber struck out. <sup>5</sup> nomen O. <sup>6</sup> meny DO.

<sup>7</sup> hadden O. <sup>8</sup> om. D. <sup>9</sup> nolde O.

<sup>10-10</sup> suffren deth he wolde D. <sup>11</sup> loue D. <sup>12</sup> lawes O.

<sup>13</sup> nome O. <sup>14</sup> to D. <sup>15</sup> made her<sup>3</sup> D. made here O.

<sup>16-16</sup> him to D. <sup>17</sup> om. D. as O. <sup>18</sup> hold O.

<sup>19-19</sup> and turment he deide D. & turnement he dide O. <sup>20</sup> vn-to O.

<sup>21</sup> hed<sup>3</sup> O. <sup>22</sup> leaf 57, back. <sup>23</sup> Danes O. <sup>24</sup> om. O.

<sup>25</sup> doune D. <sup>26</sup> come D. <sup>27</sup> token O. <sup>28</sup> helde D. held O.

<sup>29</sup> comen O. <sup>30</sup> Edelf<sup>3</sup> D. Edilf O. <sup>31</sup> and a D. & a O.

<sup>32-32</sup> fou3ten D. fought O. <sup>33</sup> tofore D. byfore O. <sup>34</sup> come D.

<sup>35</sup> the D. <sup>36</sup> y-slayn O.

Alurede pat day were descomfited. but pe xiiij day afterwarde, pe Danois<sup>1</sup> and pe Englishe-men fouzten to-gederes<sup>2</sup> oppoñ Elkelden, & pere was slayne a kyng of Denmare pat was callede Rasyng<sup>3</sup>, and iiij Erles of grete power<sup>4</sup>; and pat day hade pe 4 Danoys<sup>1</sup> shame, for pai were dryuen<sup>5</sup> vnto Engelfilde. and pe xv day after<sup>6</sup>, pe Danois<sup>1</sup> & pe Englisshemen fouzten<sup>4</sup> anopere tyme at Rasyng<sup>5</sup> [*sic*], and pere were pe Englishe-men descomfitede. and fram<sup>6</sup> pens a Danois, pat me callede Roynt, went to Redyng<sup>7</sup> wip 8 his hoste, & destroiede al pat <sup>7</sup>he myght tak<sup>1</sup>; and<sup>8</sup> Kyng Eldrede fauzt wip him, but he was <sup>9</sup>woundede so, wherfore<sup>9</sup> he was dede; and he<sup>10</sup> nade regnede but v. zere, and <sup>11</sup>deide, and<sup>11</sup> lip atte Wonburne.

12

**Of Kyng Alurede; & how pe Danoys<sup>1</sup> in his tyme praiede him of mercy, pat pai moste gone<sup>12</sup> out of pe lande. Capitulo Centesimo vij<sup>o</sup>.**

**A**fter pe deth of pis Eldrede, regnede his broper Alurede, pat 16 Dolfynes was callede. po went pe Danois,<sup>1</sup> & assemblede ham, and went forte seche Alurede, pat po was pe new<sup>13</sup> kyng of Southseċ. and pere pai fonde<sup>14</sup> him at Wiltoñ,<sup>15</sup> wip a litel peple; & nopeles he fauzt with ham; but at the laste he fledde pens 20 fram<sup>16</sup> pe felde, and went vnto Westseċ, and ordeynede so miche peple of his owen<sup>17</sup> reaume & also of opere, so <sup>18</sup>til pat<sup>18</sup> he hade a stronge host, so pat pe Danois<sup>1</sup> hade non<sup>19</sup> power<sup>20</sup> azeynes him<sup>20</sup> to stande. and he come to London wip his host, <sup>21</sup>pere as<sup>21</sup> pe Danois 24 soiournede; and pere <sup>22</sup>wolde he haue fouzten<sup>22</sup> wip ham, but pe Danois<sup>23</sup> derste nouzt wip him<sup>24</sup> feizt, but praiede him of pees, & pat pai most gone<sup>25</sup> azeyne into her owen contre, & neuermore into Engeland forto come azeyne, eny harme forto<sup>26</sup> done, and oppoñ pis 28 couenant pai shulde zeue<sup>27</sup> him to plegge,<sup>27</sup> gode hostages, & soche as pe<sup>10</sup> Englishe<sup>28</sup>men wolde axen.<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Danes O.    <sup>2</sup> togeder another tyme D.    to-gidere anopere tyme O.

<sup>3</sup> dryue O.    <sup>4</sup> fouzt D.    <sup>5</sup> Rafyng<sup>3</sup> D.    Rasyng O.    <sup>6</sup> fro D.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 58.    <sup>8</sup> but D.    <sup>9-9</sup> wondeth so wherthouȝ D.    <sup>10</sup> om. D.

<sup>11-11</sup> om. DO.    <sup>12</sup> go O.    <sup>13</sup> mewe sic D.    <sup>14</sup> fonden D.

<sup>15</sup> corrected from Waltoñ.    <sup>16</sup> fro O.    <sup>17</sup> om. O.    <sup>18-18</sup> pat til O.

<sup>19</sup> no DO.    <sup>20-20</sup> MS. azeynes him azeynes him.

<sup>21-21</sup> and pere D.    & pere were O.    <sup>22-22</sup> he wolde haue fouzt D.

<sup>23</sup> Danes ne O.    <sup>24</sup> him po D.    hem tho O.    <sup>25</sup> go DO.

<sup>26</sup> to DO.    <sup>27-27</sup> to hym O.

<sup>28-28</sup> om. D., Englishe ends a page, and the following page continues with How Hubba, &c.



How Hubba & Hunguar<sup>1</sup> were quelled at Chippenham; & how  
 þe Danoy<sup>s</sup><sup>1</sup> brouȝt hir<sup>1</sup> kyng vnto<sup>2</sup> oure kyng<sup>1</sup>. *Capitulo*  
*Centesimo Octauo.*

4 **A** Nd þe same day þat<sup>3</sup> þe Danois<sup>1</sup> departede fram<sup>4</sup> Londoñ, so  
 faste þai riden, boþe<sup>5</sup> nyght and day,<sup>5</sup> and neuer<sup>6</sup> toke reste  
 of goyng<sup>1</sup> til þat þai<sup>6</sup> comen vnto<sup>7</sup> Excestre, and token<sup>8</sup> þe toune,  
 & pere helde ham. ¶ When Kyng Aluredede herde<sup>9</sup> þo tidynges,<sup>9</sup>  
 8 anone he lete tak þe hostages, and went fram<sup>10</sup> pens vnto<sup>11</sup> Excestre  
 wip al þe power<sup>1</sup> þat he hade. ¶ And when þe Danois<sup>1</sup> herde tel of  
 his<sup>12</sup> comyng<sup>1</sup>, þai went fro pens forth into Westsex, and comen to  
 Chippenham; and pere þai deden miche harme in þe contre; þai  
 12 robbede fole, & brouȝt<sup>13</sup> ham into<sup>14</sup> prisoun. The Kyng Aluredede  
 ham pursuode, & <sup>15</sup>come oppon ham, and fersly<sup>15</sup> ham assailede; &  
 pere were<sup>16</sup> slayn boþe Hubba, and Hunguar<sup>1</sup> his broþer, and Buerne  
 Bocard. and in þat<sup>17</sup> bataile was michel<sup>18</sup> fole slayn in þat<sup>19</sup> o partye  
 16 and in<sup>19</sup> þat opere, but þe gree of þe felde lefte wip þe Danois,<sup>1</sup> for-  
 asmiche<sup>20</sup> as þe kyng<sup>1</sup> po<sup>20</sup> come but with litel company.<sup>21</sup> ¶ The  
 Kyng Hastede him as miche as he myght, forto wende aȝeyn; and  
 when þe Danois<sup>22</sup> fonden<sup>23</sup> Hubba his bodye<sup>23</sup> liggyng dede, þai  
 20 enterede hit, & made oppon him a grete logge, and lette calle hit  
 Hubbeslaw; & so it is callede into þis day; and þat place is in  
 Deuenesshire. ¶ þe barons of Westsex,<sup>24</sup> Wiltshire and Dorset,  
 harde telle how þat here<sup>25</sup> kyng was descomfitede; and ordeynede  
 24 al þe power þat þai miȝt hane, and come to þe kyng<sup>1</sup> pere þat he  
 was, & þaukedede God þat þai hade<sup>26</sup> him fonden<sup>26</sup> alif, for þai wende  
 þat þe Danois<sup>1</sup> hade him slayne. ¶ þo toke<sup>27</sup> þai a<sup>3</sup> counseil, þe  
 kyng and his barons, & <sup>28</sup>þai wolde<sup>29</sup> gone seche<sup>29</sup> þe Danois,<sup>1</sup>  
 28 <sup>30</sup>with ham forto feiȝt.<sup>30</sup> and so þai riden al þat nyȝt<sup>31</sup> ham forto  
 seche,<sup>31</sup> and come<sup>32</sup> amorw,<sup>33</sup> about prime, to Abyngdoñ, pere þat  
 þe Danois<sup>1</sup> were.

¶ þe kyng þo, Aluredede<sup>34</sup> and his barons, assemblede, and pere

<sup>1</sup> Danes O.    <sup>2</sup> to O.    <sup>3</sup> om. D.    <sup>4</sup> fro O.    <sup>5-5</sup> day & nyght O.

<sup>6</sup> leaf 58, back.    <sup>7-7</sup> come to DO.    <sup>8</sup> toke O.    <sup>9-9</sup> þe Tydyng O.

<sup>10</sup> fro DO.    <sup>11</sup> to D.    <sup>12</sup> þis O.    <sup>13</sup> put D.    <sup>14</sup> in DO.

<sup>15-15</sup> fressheliche D.    <sup>16</sup> was O.    <sup>17</sup> this D.    <sup>18</sup> þis O.    <sup>19</sup> mych O.

<sup>19</sup> om. O.    <sup>20-20</sup> tho as the kyng D.    <sup>21</sup> meny D.    <sup>22</sup> Danes had O.

<sup>23-23</sup> Hubbaus body D.    Hubba his body O.    Hubba his bodyes R.

<sup>24</sup> Somerset D.    Somersete O.    <sup>25</sup> MS. here here.

<sup>26-26</sup> founden him D.    founde hym O.    <sup>27</sup> nome O.    <sup>28</sup> þat O.

<sup>29-29</sup> go sechen D.    go to seche O.

<sup>30-30</sup> forto fȝyt with ham D.    with hem al for-to fight O.

<sup>31-31</sup> forto seche ham D.    hem al for-to seche O.    <sup>32</sup> comen O.

<sup>33</sup> in the morwe D.    <sup>34</sup> leaf 59.

assailed pe Danois<sup>1</sup> egrely;<sup>2</sup> and pere 3af ham a stronger<sup>3</sup> bataile pan euere he dede bfore; and pe Danois<sup>1</sup> nobli put ham of, longe tyme, pat no man wist in wheper partie more peple were<sup>4</sup> slayn. ¶ But pus hit bifelle, as God wolde, pat<sup>5</sup> Kyng Alurede hade pe 4 vittorie with michel<sup>6</sup> honoure; for pe Danois<sup>1</sup> were so dryuen<sup>7</sup> pat pai<sup>7</sup> wist nouzt<sup>8</sup> whider<sup>9</sup> to wende.<sup>9</sup> xv dayes pe kyng ham pursuede at his wille, pat glade & fayne<sup>10</sup> pai were forto speken<sup>10</sup> of pees & of accorde, & toke<sup>11</sup> him gode hostages, & saide pat pai 8 wolde<sup>12</sup> neuer<sup>13</sup> oppoñ him werre, ne<sup>14</sup> debate arere. ¶ And moreouer pai bihight to pe Kyng Alurede pat pai wolde go and brynge her owen kyng vnto him, and pat her kyng<sup>8</sup> & pai aH shulde<sup>15</sup> bene<sup>16</sup> baptisede. & oppoñ pis condicioun, Kyng Alurede<sup>17</sup> ham 12 grauntede<sup>17</sup> lif and lyme, and saide to ham pat pai shulde goñ<sup>18</sup> here kyng forto fecche,<sup>19</sup> and at a certeyne day to come azeyne, pat to ham was sette. ¶ And so pai went forþ fast, and come<sup>20</sup> azeyne at here day pat was assignede, and alle pe Danois<sup>1</sup> brouzt here kyng 16 wip ham. ¶ The Kyng Alurede anone lete ham ben<sup>16</sup> baptisede, and here names chaungeð,<sup>21</sup> so pat pe kyng of<sup>22</sup> Danois was callede<sup>22</sup> Athelstoñ, & xxx<sup>ti</sup> of his felawe3 names<sup>23</sup> were chaungede also, & pe opere were baptisede to pe right bileue; and at pis was 20 done<sup>24</sup> at Westmynstre.<sup>25</sup> and after<sup>26</sup> Kyng Alurede helde wip him Kyng Athelstone & alle his Danois<sup>1</sup> xij daies at soiune<sup>27</sup> wip miche<sup>28</sup> solempnite, and 3af ham grete 3iftes after<sup>29</sup> pat pai were overcome,<sup>29</sup> and so pai departede. ¶ Tho was<sup>30</sup> Kyng Alurede 24 al at ese when he hade his enemys<sup>31</sup> ouercomen,<sup>32</sup> & pat pai were turnede to pe<sup>33</sup> bileue of almyzty God.

**How pe Danois<sup>1</sup> pat comen<sup>34</sup> into Fraunce wip Gurmonde, come<sup>35</sup> azeyne into Engelan; & of pe dep of Kyng<sup>28</sup> Alureð. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Nono.**

<sup>1</sup> Danes O.      <sup>2</sup> egreliche O.      <sup>3</sup> strong O.      <sup>4</sup> was O.  
<sup>5</sup> pat pe O.      <sup>6</sup> mych O.      <sup>7-7</sup> MS. pat pai pat pai; pat bei ne O.  
<sup>8</sup> om. O.      <sup>9</sup> wende and D.      turne and O.  
<sup>10-10</sup> they . . speke D.      pey . . speke O.      pai om. R.      <sup>11</sup> token DO.  
<sup>12</sup> pai nolde D.      pei nold O.      nolde R.      <sup>13</sup> neuere-more O.  
<sup>14</sup> ne no DO.      <sup>15</sup> schulden O.      <sup>16</sup> be DO.  
<sup>17-17</sup> grantede ham D.      <sup>18</sup> go to D.      go O.      <sup>19</sup> fecche him D.  
<sup>20</sup> comen O.      <sup>21</sup> chaunge DO.  
<sup>22-22</sup> Danoy3 callede was D.      Danes called was O.      <sup>23</sup> om. D.  
<sup>24</sup> do D.      <sup>25</sup> Wynechestre O.      <sup>26</sup> after pat the D.      after þe O.  
<sup>27</sup> soiourne O.      soionne or soioune R.      <sup>28</sup> michel D.  
<sup>29-29</sup> om. D.      pat pai were R.      <sup>30</sup> was pe O.      <sup>31</sup> leaf 59, back.  
<sup>32</sup> ouercome DO.      <sup>33</sup> pe right D.      <sup>34</sup> come D.  
<sup>35</sup> comen DO.

A
4
8
12
16
20
 And þus hit bifelle afterwarde, þat þe Danoys<sup>1</sup> of Northumber-  
 land, þat were paynemys, comen<sup>2</sup> with a grete host of  
 Fraunce, þat is to vnderstonde, with ham þat went into Fraunce  
 with Gurmonde of Aufrik, when he hade conquereð Engeland, &  
 it ȝaf vnto Saxonus. and þo þat come fro Fraunce arryuede in  
 Kent, and sent into Northumberlande þat þai shulde come to ham.  
 and whan þo ij hostes were comen<sup>3</sup> & assemblede, anone þai went  
 to destroie þe Cristen peple of Engeland fram<sup>4</sup> place vnto<sup>5</sup> place,  
 and deden<sup>6</sup> miche sorwe. ¶ Hit bifelle þus, as almiȝty God hit<sup>7</sup>  
 wolde, an harde chaunce in Engeland; ffor þe gode Kyng Alurede,  
 þat was wont to abate þe Danois,<sup>1</sup> deide in þe mene-tyme. þis  
 Alureð regnede xxx<sup>ti</sup> ȝere, and a gode kyng had bene, and wel  
 coue<sup>s</sup> chastice his enemys; And<sup>9</sup> was a gode clerc, and lete mak  
 menye bokes. & on<sup>10</sup> boke he made of Englisshe, of Auentures of  
 kynges and of batailes þat hade bene<sup>11</sup> done in þe lande; and  
 meny opere bokes of gestes, he lete ham write, þat were of grete  
 wisdom and of gode lernyng,<sup>12</sup> prouȝ whiche bokes meny man<sup>13</sup>  
 may him amende þat wille<sup>14</sup> ham rede and oppoñ lok; oppon  
 whos soule almighty<sup>7</sup> God haue mercy! & þis Kyng Alurede  
 lip at Wynchestr.

**Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Aluredus sone. Capitulo Cen-  
tesimo x<sup>mo</sup>.**

24
28
32
 And after þis Alurede, regnede Edward his sone, þat was a gode  
 man & a wise, þat men callede [Edward], þat was<sup>7</sup> wonder  
 curteise. ¶ The<sup>16</sup> Danois deden<sup>16</sup> miche sorwe in þe lande, and her'  
 power encresede, <sup>17</sup>and biganne forto wexe<sup>17</sup> fram<sup>18</sup> day to day, for  
 þe Danois<sup>1</sup> comen ofte wip here companies into þis lande. and  
 when þe kyng saw þat<sup>7</sup> he <sup>19</sup>miȝt no<sup>19</sup> bettre<sup>20</sup> done, he tok<sup>20</sup> trewes  
 with ham, and granted ham his pees. ¶ And nopelesse þe trewes  
 durede nouȝt longe, þat þe Danois<sup>1</sup> ne<sup>7</sup> bigonne<sup>21</sup> strongliche forto  
 were<sup>21</sup> oppon þe Englisshe-men, & dede ham miche sorwe. Wher-  
 fore Kyng Edward dede assemble a grete hoste forto fiȝt with

<sup>1</sup> Danes O.      <sup>2</sup> come D.      <sup>3</sup> come O.      <sup>4</sup> fro O.  
<sup>5</sup> to DO.      <sup>6</sup> dede O.      <sup>7</sup> om. D.      <sup>8-8</sup> couthe wel D.  
<sup>9</sup> and he D.      for he O.      <sup>10</sup> o O.  
<sup>11</sup> be O.      <sup>12</sup> lyuyng O.      <sup>13</sup> may sic D.      <sup>14</sup> wole O.  
<sup>15</sup> leaf 60.      <sup>16-16</sup> Danes dide O.      <sup>17-17</sup> om. D.      <sup>18</sup> fro DO.  
<sup>19-19</sup> ne myȝhte O.      <sup>20-20</sup> do he nome DO.  
<sup>21-21</sup> forto werr' strongliche D.      strongly for-to werre O.

ham; and þo þis<sup>1</sup> Kyng Edward deide when God<sup>2</sup> wolde. This Kyng Edward regnede <sup>3</sup>xxiiij ȝere,<sup>3</sup> & līp at Wynchestre bisides<sup>4</sup> his fader<sup>5</sup>.

Of Kyng Athel[s]tone, & of Edmund, Eldrede, & of<sup>5</sup> Edwynne 4  
his broþer. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo ¶ Vndecimo.*

**A**fter þis Edward, regnede Athelstoñ his sone; & when he hade regnede iiij ȝere, he helde bataile aȝeynes þe Danois,<sup>6</sup> and drof Kyng Gaufride, þat was kyng of þe Danois,<sup>6</sup> and al his hoste 8 vnto þe see, & restede by Scotland, & nomen<sup>7</sup> strongliche<sup>8</sup> þe contrey al a ȝere. ¶ And after þat, þo of Cumberland, & þe Scottes of Westmerlande, bigonne to werre oppon Kyng Athelstoñ; and he ham ȝaf so strong<sup>9</sup> bataile þat he quelled so meny of ham þat no 12 man coupe telle þe nombre<sup>9</sup> of ham.<sup>9</sup> and after þat he ne regnede but iiij ȝere; & he regnede in al xxv ȝere and līp at Malmesbery.

¶ And after þis<sup>10</sup> Athelstoñ, regnede Edmund his broþer, for-as-miche as Kyng Athelstoñ hade none<sup>11</sup> sone. and þis Edmu[n]de 16 was a worpi knyȝt, and a douȝty man<sup>1</sup> of body, <sup>9</sup>and a noble knyȝht.<sup>9</sup> and þe<sup>12</sup> þridde ȝere after<sup>11</sup> þat he was kyng, he went ouer Humber, in whiche place he hade ij Kynges<sup>13</sup> of Danois<sup>14</sup>; þat one me callede Enelaf, and þat<sup>15</sup> oper Renaud. ¶ This Kyng 20 Edmund drof ham bope fram<sup>16</sup> þe lande, and after went and tok grete preye in Comberland. ¶ This Edmund ne<sup>5</sup> regnede but vij ȝer, and līp at Glastynbery.

¶ And after þis Edmund, regnede<sup>17</sup> Eldrede his broþer,<sup>18</sup> þat 24 vengede Edward his fadre of his enemys þat him quelde; and aftirwarde<sup>19</sup> he seisede<sup>20</sup> Northumberland into<sup>21</sup> his hand,<sup>22</sup> and made þe Scottes abowe and meke vnto his Wille. ¶ And þe secunde ȝere<sup>23</sup> þat he hade regned<sup>23</sup> [come] Arnalaf Quyrn, þat was kyng 28 of Denmare, and seisede al Northumberland, and helde þat lande ij ȝere. and after þat come Kyng Eldrede wip a<sup>1</sup> grete power, and drof him oute of þis<sup>24</sup> lande. ¶ And þis Kyng Eldrede was a<sup>25</sup> noble man and a goode, of whos godenesse seynt Dunstoñ prechede. 32 & <sup>26</sup>þis Kyng Eldrede<sup>26</sup> regnede xj ȝere, & līp at Wynchestr.

<sup>1</sup> om. D.      <sup>2</sup> MS. gode with the e underlined for omission.

<sup>3-3</sup> xiiij D.      <sup>4</sup> bysyde O.      <sup>5</sup> om. O.      <sup>6</sup> Danes O.      <sup>7</sup> nome DO.

<sup>8</sup> strongly O.      <sup>9-9</sup> om. D.      <sup>10</sup> leaf 60, back.      <sup>11</sup> no DO.

<sup>12</sup> and the D. & þe O. and R.      <sup>13</sup> knyghtes O.      <sup>14</sup> Danes O.      <sup>15</sup> þe O.

<sup>16</sup> fro O.      <sup>17</sup> regne D.      <sup>18</sup> sone D.      <sup>19</sup> after þat O.

<sup>20</sup> sesed aft O.      <sup>21</sup> in O.      <sup>22</sup> honde D.      hond O.      land R.

<sup>23-23</sup> of his regne D.      after þat he had regned O.      þat he hade reg R.

<sup>24</sup> his O.      <sup>25</sup> was a DO.      was R.      <sup>26-26</sup> he O.

¶ And after pis Eldrede, Edwynne his broþer regnede, & was a<sup>1</sup> luper man towarde God & to þe peple; for he hatede folc of his owen land, and louede & honourede <sup>2</sup>strange men,<sup>2</sup> & sette litel  
4 by holy cherche, and<sup>3</sup> bynom<sup>4</sup> of holy cherche aH þe tresoure pat he myȝt haue: pat was grete shame and velonye to himself, and perile of his soule, & perfore God wolde nouȝt pat he shulde regne no longer than iiij ȝer<sup>5</sup>, and after<sup>6</sup> deide, and Lith at Wynchestre.

8 Of Kyng Edgare, þat regned aboue þe kyngus<sup>7</sup> of Scotland & of Walys; & how he was bigilede prouȝ; takynȝ of his wif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Duodecimo.

12 **A**Nd after pis Edwynne, regnede Edgare his sone, a man pat  
was a worpi lorde, bolde and myȝty, & mayntenede wel pis land in pees. ¶ And pis Edgare was <sup>9</sup>Kyng and lorde aboue<sup>9</sup> alle þe kynges of Scotland and of Walys: fram<sup>10</sup> þe tyme pat Arthure  
16 was gone,<sup>11</sup> neuer was sipe<sup>12</sup> kyng of<sup>13</sup> his power. ¶ And pis Edgare was seynt Edwardes fader. And when Edgarus wif was dede, pat was seynt Edwardes moder, & enteredede, he herde speke of þe fairenesse of Estrilde, pat was Orgarus douȝter, a baroun of  
20 Deuenshire, pat was so faire a woman pat alle men spake<sup>14</sup> perof. He callede one of his knyȝtes pat he miche louede & trust oppoñ, and tolde him: "Go," quod he, "to þe noble Baroun Orgar of Deuenshire, and se if his douȝter be so faire as men speke<sup>15</sup> of; &  
24 if it be soþ, y wil haue here vnto<sup>16</sup> my wif." ¶ pis knyȝt, pat me callede<sup>17</sup> Edelwolde, went forþ<sup>18</sup> pere pat<sup>19</sup> þe lady þo<sup>20</sup> was; & when he saw her so faire, he pouȝt haue her himself to wif, and perfore<sup>21</sup> spake to Orgar here fader. and Orgar was an olde<sup>22</sup> man,  
28 & hade no mo childerne but here on; and saw pat Edelwolde was a faire ȝonge knyȝt, and worpi and riche, & was wel with þe kyng. & pouȝt his douȝter shulde wel <sup>23</sup>bene<sup>24</sup> mariede, & wel bisette oppoñ him, and grauntede him his douȝter, if þe gode lorde þe  
32 Kyng wolde assent<sup>25</sup> perto. ¶ pis Edelwolde come aȝeyn to þe

<sup>1</sup> om D.      <sup>2-2</sup> Straungers O.      <sup>3</sup> and DO.      ne R.

<sup>4</sup> MS. bynoman with an underlined for omission.      <sup>5</sup> leaf 61.

<sup>6</sup> om. DO.      <sup>7</sup> kyng O.      <sup>8-8</sup> loued mych loued sie O.

<sup>9-9</sup> lorde and kyng of D.      lord & kyng aboue O.      <sup>10</sup> fro O.

<sup>11</sup> gone & D.      agoo & O.      <sup>12</sup> seth O.      <sup>13</sup> of Walys of O.

<sup>14</sup> speke O.      <sup>15</sup> speken D.      <sup>16</sup> to DO.      <sup>17</sup> elepede D.

<sup>18</sup> forth his way & come DO.      <sup>19</sup> as D.      <sup>20</sup> om. O.      <sup>21</sup> perof O.

<sup>22</sup> MS. holde, with h underlined for omission.

<sup>23</sup> leaf 61, back.      <sup>24</sup> be DO.      <sup>25</sup> consent D.      consente O.

Kyng, and saide<sup>1</sup> ‘she was faire ynow oppoñ to see, but of body she was wonder<sup>2</sup> lopy.’ ¶ po ansuerede pe Kyng, and saide pat he toke of her litel charge. ¶ “Sire,” *quod* Edelwolde po, “she is her’ faderes heire, and y am nouzt riche of londes,<sup>3</sup> and if ze wolde<sup>4</sup> consent and grant<sup>4</sup> pat y most her haue, pan shulde y be riche ynow.” “In Godes name,” *quod* pe Kyng, “I assent<sup>5</sup> *perto*.” ¶ Edelwolde panked<sup>6</sup> po michel<sup>6</sup> pe Kyng, and went azeine into Deunshire, & spoused<sup>7</sup> pe damisel, and in<sup>7</sup> pat contre<sup>8</sup> duelled<sup>8</sup>. ¶ And pus hit bifel oppoñ a tyme, pat he tolde his conseil & al pis ping<sup>9</sup> vnto his wif, how & in what maner<sup>9</sup> he hade bigiled<sup>10</sup> his lorde pe Kyng, pat wolde haue hade her<sup>9</sup> to<sup>9</sup> wif. and anone as she it wist, she louede him neuermore afterwarde<sup>10</sup> as she hade<sup>12</sup> done bifore. ¶ pis lady conseynede by him a sone; and when tyme was pat pis<sup>11</sup> childe<sup>12</sup> shulde ben born,<sup>12</sup> Edelwolde come to pe Kyng, & praede him to heue a sone of his at pe fountstoñ. pe Kyng him grantede, and lete calle him Edgare, after<sup>16</sup> his owen name. ¶ And when pis was ydoñ, he pouzt pat he was siker<sup>16</sup> ynow of pe Kyng, for bifore pat tyme pis Edelwolde him<sup>13</sup> drede lest Kyng Edgare wolde haue taken<sup>14</sup> his wif, forasmiche<sup>15</sup> as his lorde was a Ioly man and an Amerus.

20

How pat<sup>16</sup> Kyng Edgare wedede Estrilde afte<sup>17</sup> pe deth of Edelwolde. ¶ *Capitulo* ¶ *Centesimo* ¶ *terciodecimo*.

**T**HUS hit bifelle, pat al men in Kyng Edgares court po speken, and saide pat ‘Edelwolde was richely auansede prou; pe<sup>24</sup> mariage pat he hade by his wif’; ‘and 3it,’ pai saide, ‘he was auauuncede an hundred<sup>24</sup>-folde more, for he hade spoused<sup>24</sup> pe fairest woman pat euer<sup>24</sup> was seyn.’ and when pe Kyng herde speke so miche of here beaute, he pouzt po pat Edelwolde<sup>18</sup> hade him<sup>28</sup> desseyne & bigiled<sup>28</sup>, & pouzt priuely<sup>19</sup> in his hert pat he wolde gone<sup>20</sup> into Deuenesshire, as it were forto hunt for hert and hynde and opere wilde bestes, and pan he shulde see<sup>21</sup> pere pe lady<sup>21</sup> or he departede pens. ¶ And pis lady was duellyng at a manere<sup>22</sup> bisides<sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> tolde him pat D. told<sup>1</sup> hym pat O. <sup>2</sup> om. O. <sup>3</sup> om. D.

<sup>4</sup> grant *perto* D. <sup>5</sup> consent D. consente O. <sup>6</sup> myche D. mych O.

<sup>7</sup> in DO. om. R. <sup>8</sup> contre he D. Cuntre he O. <sup>9</sup> MS. to to.

<sup>10</sup> after O. <sup>11</sup> pe DO. <sup>12–12</sup> shulde be be borne sic D. was bore O.

<sup>13</sup> hade D. had O. <sup>14</sup> tak D. take O. <sup>15</sup> leaf 62.

<sup>16</sup> pat Estrilde sic D. <sup>17</sup> after DO. <sup>18</sup> Edelde D. <sup>19</sup> priuelich D.

<sup>20</sup> go DO. <sup>21–21</sup> pan the lady pere D.

<sup>22</sup> maner D. Manere O. mane R.

pe forest<sup>1</sup> pere pat pe Kyng wolde hunte, and at pat maner was herburghede al<sup>1</sup> nyght. and when tyme come pat pe Kyng shulde sope, and pe sonne shoone, pe Kyng<sup>2</sup> axede after<sup>3</sup> his Gossib and  
 4 after his godsonne, and Edelwolde made here<sup>2</sup> come bifore pe Kyng<sup>4</sup>; and nopeles, <sup>3</sup>and it<sup>3</sup> oper myzt haue bene, she shulde nouzt haue comen<sup>4</sup> in his sight bi his wille. ¶ pe lady welcomede<sup>5</sup> pe Kyng, and suetely him kisede; and he<sup>6</sup> toke<sup>7</sup> her<sup>8</sup> by<sup>9</sup> pe  
 8 hande, & po<sup>9</sup> nexte him<sup>10</sup> her<sup>8</sup> sette, and so<sup>9</sup> soppede pai togeder. ¶ And po was a custume and an vsage pat, when a man drank<sup>11</sup> vnto<sup>11</sup> anoper, pe drynker<sup>12</sup> shulde say ‘Wassaile,’ and pat opere shulde ansure<sup>8</sup> ‘drynkhaile’: and pus dede<sup>13</sup> pe Kyng<sup>13</sup> & pe lady  
 12 meny tymes, & also kiste. ¶ And after soper<sup>12</sup>, when tyme was to gone<sup>14</sup> to bede, pe Kyn[g] went vnto his bed, hertly<sup>15</sup> penkyng oppoñ pe<sup>16</sup> ladies fairenesse; and po was ouercomen<sup>17</sup> for here loue, pat him pouzt he wolde<sup>18</sup> dye, but of here his wille he hade.  
 16 ¶ Oppoñ pe merwe pe Kyng aroos, and into pe floreste went, him pere to desporte<sup>19</sup> & salace<sup>19</sup> wip hertes<sup>20</sup> and hyndes, and alle oper wilde bestes; & of pe<sup>6</sup> hertes grete plente, to pe<sup>21</sup> lady he sent; and prise<sup>22</sup> he went to salace<sup>23</sup> and speke wip pat lady whiles he  
 20 duelled in pat contre. ¶ And after<sup>24</sup> pat, pe Kyng remevede pens, and pouzt how he myghte best delyuer<sup>24</sup> Edelwolde<sup>24</sup> f[r]am his wif, as he hade him ferste desceyuede. and pe Kyng anone, after<sup>25</sup> viij dayes, lete ordeyne a parlement at Salesbury of al his baronage,  
 24 conseile to haue, & forto ordeyn how pe contre of Northumberland mizt beste bene<sup>25</sup> kepte,<sup>26</sup> pat pe Danoy<sup>27</sup> come nouzt pere, the londe forto destroye. ¶ And pis Edelwolde come also to<sup>28</sup> pe Kynges Parlement; and pe Kyng sent him to 3ork<sup>28</sup> forto bene<sup>25</sup> keper<sup>25</sup> of  
 28 pat contre. ¶ And pus hit fel,<sup>29</sup> pat men pat knew<sup>30</sup> him nouzt, slow him by pe waye. ¶ And anone as pe Kyng herde pat he was dede, he lete sende after pe lady Estrilde, pat she shulde come to pe citee of Londoñ, and pere bene<sup>31</sup> weded<sup>32</sup> to<sup>32</sup> pe Kyng wip grete<sup>33</sup>  
 32 solempnite & worshiþe; and<sup>34</sup> helde a solempne fest; and he werede<sup>35</sup> a crone of [gold], and<sup>36</sup> pe Quene<sup>36</sup> anoper. ¶ And seynt

<sup>1</sup> al a O.    <sup>2</sup> here to O.    <sup>3-3</sup> if it D. if þat O.    <sup>4</sup> come O.

<sup>5</sup> welcomed þo D.    <sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> name O.    <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9-9</sup> she sate next by him and D.    <sup>10</sup> hym by O.    <sup>11</sup> to O.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 62, back.    <sup>13-13</sup> om. D.    <sup>14</sup> go DO.    <sup>15</sup> hert sic D.

<sup>16</sup> þat O.    <sup>17</sup> ouercome DO.    <sup>18</sup> shulde D.    <sup>19</sup> schulde O.

<sup>19-19</sup> om. DO.    <sup>20</sup> herte D.    <sup>21</sup> þat DO.    <sup>22</sup> iij O.    <sup>23</sup> solacen O.

<sup>24</sup> Edwolde D.    <sup>25</sup> be O.    <sup>26</sup> kepede D.    <sup>27</sup> Danes O.

<sup>28</sup> vnto O.    <sup>29</sup> byfett O.    <sup>30</sup> knew D.    <sup>31</sup> knewe O.    <sup>32</sup> know R.    <sup>33</sup> be DO.

<sup>32</sup> vnto O.    <sup>33</sup> miche D.    <sup>34</sup> leaf 63.    <sup>35</sup> wer<sup>35</sup> D.    <sup>36-36</sup> sche O.

Dunstoñ<sup>1</sup> on þe morwe<sup>1</sup> come vnto þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> into þe Kyngus<sup>2</sup> chaumbre, and fonde þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> abed, & þe quene also in fere<sup>3</sup>; and seynt Dunstoñ axede who þat she was. ¶ þe Kyng ansuerede, “þis is þe Quene Estrilde.” and þe Erchebisshop seynt Dunstañ<sup>4</sup> saide þat ‘he dede grete wrong<sup>5</sup>, and aʒeysn Godes wille to tak a woman to wif, whos childe he hap<sup>4</sup> take at þe funtstoñ’; and þe Quene for þat worde neuer after<sup>6</sup> louede seynt Dunstoñ; and nopeles þe gode man<sup>5</sup> warnede ham ofte-tymes<sup>6</sup> þat folie to 8 lete; but his warnyng auailede litel, for þe loue bituene<sup>7</sup> ham was so miche. ¶ þe Kyng bigate oppon her<sup>8</sup> a sone þat me callede Eldred<sup>8</sup>; and when<sup>9</sup> þis childe was vj ʒer<sup>9</sup> olde, þe Kyng his fader<sup>9</sup> deide; & aboute þat tyme he hade regnede xvij ʒer<sup>9</sup>, and lith<sup>12</sup> at Glastynbery.

Of seynt Edward<sup>8</sup> þe Martir<sup>9</sup>; how Estrilde his stepmoder<sup>9</sup> lete him quelle, forto make Eldred<sup>8</sup>, her<sup>9</sup> owen sone, Kyng<sup>10</sup>.  
*Capitulo* <sup>11</sup>*Centesimo xiiij*<sup>o</sup>.<sup>11</sup>

16

**A**Nd after þis Edgare, regnede Edward<sup>8</sup> his sone, þat he bigate in<sup>12</sup> his ferst wif, þat wel and noble<sup>13</sup> gouernede þe lande; for he was ful of al maner<sup>14</sup> godenesse, and lad<sup>15</sup> ful holy lif; & aboute<sup>15</sup> al þing he louede God<sup>15</sup> & holy cherche. & þe quene<sup>20</sup> Estrilde, his stepmoder<sup>9</sup>, lete him slee, for enchesouñ to make her owen sone Eldred<sup>8</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup>; and þus was he slayn<sup>16</sup>, as afterward ʒe shul her<sup>17</sup>. ¶ Hit bifelle þus oppoñ a day, þat þis Kyng Edward went him into a wode forto play in þe Southcontre, bisides a toun<sup>24</sup> þat is callede Warham; in þe whiche forest was grete plente of Hertes & of hyndes. and as he hade bene awhile pere him forto playe, he pouʒt<sup>17</sup> him<sup>18</sup> oppoñ his broþer Eldred<sup>8</sup>, þat Was wip his moder<sup>9</sup> þe quene, for her place was neyʒ þe forest; & pouʒte forto<sup>28</sup> go<sup>19</sup> visite & see his broþer; and tok<sup>20</sup> wip him but<sup>21</sup> a litel meny<sup>21</sup>, and went him po toward<sup>1</sup> his Stepmoders house, þat in þat tyme soiournede in þe castel of Corft. and as he rode in þe pickenesse of þe wode, to asprie his game, hit bifelle þat he went amys, & <sup>32</sup> loste his meny þat were wip him.<sup>22</sup> & at þe last he come out of þe

<sup>1-1</sup> amorowe O.    <sup>2</sup> om. DO.    <sup>3</sup> y-fere O.    <sup>4</sup> hade D. had O.

<sup>5</sup> man often-tymes O.    <sup>6</sup> om. O.    <sup>7</sup> bitue D.

<sup>8</sup> þis woman D.    þis woman O.    <sup>9</sup> po O.    <sup>10</sup> MS. kyng<sup>1</sup> kyng<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>11-11</sup> exv<sup>to</sup> O.    <sup>12</sup> on DO.    <sup>13</sup> nobly DO.    <sup>14</sup> manere of O.

<sup>15</sup> aboþe sic D.    <sup>16</sup> y-slayn O.    <sup>17</sup> leaf 63, back.

<sup>18</sup> MS. he; om. DO.    <sup>19</sup> and forto sic D. go & O.    <sup>20</sup> nome O.

<sup>21-21</sup> litil meny D. a litil mayne O.    <sup>22</sup> him comen D. hym come O.



wode; & as he lokede about, he saw pere faste<sup>1</sup> bisides him<sup>1</sup> pe maner<sup>1</sup> pat his Stepmoder<sup>1</sup> duelled<sup>1</sup> in; & piderward he went<sup>2</sup> alloñ. and anone hit was tolde pe Quene how pat pe Kyng was comen<sup>3</sup>  
 4 allone wipout<sup>4</sup> company; and perfore<sup>5</sup> she made ioye ynow, & pouzt how<sup>6</sup> she myzt do<sup>6</sup> pat he were<sup>7</sup> slayn as priuely as she myzt. ¶ And anone<sup>8</sup> priuely she called<sup>8</sup> to her<sup>8</sup> on of here knyghtes, to whom she hade tolde miche of here consel bituene<sup>9</sup> ham. and  
 8 hope pai come<sup>10</sup> to pe Kyng, and curtesly him resceyuede; & pe Kyng tolde pat he was com<sup>11</sup> her<sup>1</sup> to Visite, & also forto speke wip Eldrede his broper. ¶ pe Quene meny tymes him panked, and him praiede to<sup>12</sup> alizt and herburgh wip her<sup>13</sup> forto haue<sup>13</sup> al pat  
 12 nyght. pe Kyng saide pat he myght nouzt, but azeine he wolde wende vnto his folc, if he myght ham fynde. ¶ And when pe Quene<sup>14</sup> saw pat he wolde nouzt abide, she praiede him pat he wolde ones drynk<sup>1</sup>; & he grauntede her<sup>15</sup>. and anone as pe drynk  
 16 come, pe Quene drank<sup>1</sup> to pe Kyng, & pe Kyng toke<sup>16</sup> pe coppe & sette hit to his moup. & in pe mene-tyme whiles pat he drank<sup>1</sup>, pe knyzt pat was wip pe Quene, wip a knyf smote euen pe Kyng to<sup>17</sup> pe hert. & pere he felle adoune dede of his palfray<sup>18</sup> vnto pe  
 20 erpe. ¶ the Quene, for pis dede, 3af to pe Knyzt golde & siluer grete plente, and of oper richesse ynow. and pe knyzt, anone as pis was do,<sup>19</sup> went him ouere<sup>20</sup> pe see; & so ascapede he oute of pis<sup>21</sup> lande. ¶ When pis Kyng Edward pus was martrede, Hit was in  
 24 pe 3ere<sup>22</sup> after pe<sup>22</sup> Incarnaciō of<sup>23</sup> oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, ix C. & iij<sup>xx</sup> 3er, and he hade regnede xij 3ere & an half, & lith at Glastenbery.

Of Kyng Eldrede; & how pe<sup>24</sup> Kyng Swyñ of Denmarc helde Engelonð; & how Eldrede, pat was seynt Edwardes broper,  
 28 was nouzt bilouede in his<sup>25</sup> reme, and perfore fledde into Normandy. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Quintodecimo.

A fter<sup>1</sup> pis Kyng Edward, reguede Eldrede his<sup>26</sup> broper; and seynt Dunstañ cronede him. & pis seynt Dunstan  
 32 deide sone after pat he hade forzeue pe Quene her<sup>1</sup> trespasse,

<sup>1-1</sup> bisides D. beside allone O.      <sup>2</sup> rode D.      <sup>3</sup> come O.

<sup>4</sup> withouten D.      <sup>5</sup> perof D.

<sup>6-6</sup> pat she myzt done D.      pat sche myghte done O.      she ne myzt do R.

<sup>7</sup> nere DO.      ne were R.      <sup>8-8</sup> she callede to her<sup>1</sup> priuely D.

<sup>9</sup> bituene D.      between O.      bitue R.      <sup>10</sup> comen DO.      <sup>11</sup> comen D.

<sup>12</sup> forto D.      al for-to O.      <sup>13-13</sup> om. D.      <sup>14</sup> kyng O.      <sup>15</sup> om. D.

<sup>16</sup> nome DO.      <sup>17</sup> vnto DO.      <sup>18</sup> leuf 64.      <sup>19</sup> done D.      I-done O.

<sup>20</sup> ouer DO.      opere R.      <sup>21</sup> the D.      <sup>22-22</sup> of D.      of of pe sic O.      <sup>23</sup> aftir O.

<sup>24</sup> om. O.      <sup>25</sup> pe O.      <sup>26</sup> MS. his cosyn with cosyn underlined for omission.

Estrild, for encheson pat she was cause of Kyng Edwardes deth. and seynt Dunstaun hade her assoilede, and penaunce her enioynede; and she leuede after, chaste lif & clene. ¶ pis Kyng Eldrede wedede an Englisshe-woman; & on<sup>1</sup> here he<sup>2</sup> bigate 4 Edmunde Irenside, and anoper sone<sup>3</sup> pat me callede Edwynne; and after, deide pe Quene his<sup>4</sup> moder. ¶ And in pat tyme come into Engeland Swyn, pat was Kyng of Denmarc, forto chalange and<sup>5</sup> conquere al pat his Ancestres hade<sup>6</sup> bifore pat tyme. & so 8 he conquerede, & hade it al at<sup>7</sup> his axing; ffor pe gode Erle Cuthbert of Lyndeseye, and al pe peple of Northumberlond, & almost al pe grete of Engeland, helde with Swyne pat was<sup>2</sup> Kyng of Dennemarc, for-asmiche as pai louede nouzt Kyng Eldrede, 12 ffor cause<sup>8</sup> pat his gode broper Edward was slayn falsely<sup>9</sup> for enchesoun of him<sup>2</sup>; and perfore no man sette but litil bi hym; Wherefore Kyng Swyn hade al his wille, and toke al pe lande. ¶ And Eldrede pe Kyng<sup>10</sup> fledde<sup>10</sup> into Normandye,<sup>11</sup> and so<sup>12</sup> 16 spak to pe Duk, pat pe Duc gaf him his sustre to wif; oppon pe whiche he bigate ij sones: pat on me callede Alrud, & pat opere Edward. And when Swyn hade conquerede al pe lande, he regnede nobli, & leuede but xv 3er, & deide, and lip at 3ork. 20

**How Kyng Eldrede come a3eyne fram<sup>13</sup> Normandye; & how Knoth<sup>14</sup> pe Danoys<sup>15</sup> regnede; & of pe werri bituene him & Edmunde Irenside. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Sexto decimo.** 24

**A**fter pe dep of Swyne, pat was a Danois, Knoght,<sup>16</sup> his sone, duellede in Engeland, and wolde haue bene<sup>17</sup> kyng. and po come a3eyn Eldrede out of Normandy, with miche<sup>18</sup> peple & wip<sup>19</sup> stronge meny,<sup>19</sup> pat Knoght derst nouzt abide, but fley 28 pens into Denmarc. ¶ pe Kyng Eldrede hade a3eyn his reaume, & helde so grete lordeshiþ pat he bigan to destroi al<sup>20</sup> pat hade holpen<sup>21</sup> Swyn, pat was a Danois, a3eynes him.<sup>22</sup> ¶ And afterwarde come a3eyn pis Knoght fram Denmarc, with a grete power, 32 so pat Kyng Eldre[de] derst nouzt wip him fízt, but<sup>23</sup> fley fro<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> in O.    <sup>2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> broper D.    <sup>4</sup> her O.    <sup>5</sup> & to O.

<sup>6</sup> haden D.    <sup>7</sup> after D.    <sup>8</sup> enchesoun D.    enchesoun O.

<sup>9</sup> leaf 64, back.    <sup>10-16</sup> fled po O.    <sup>11</sup> Norway D.    <sup>12</sup> po O.

<sup>13</sup> fro DO.    <sup>14</sup> Knogh D.    Knoght O.    <sup>15</sup> Danes O.

<sup>16</sup> knyght O.    <sup>17</sup> be O.    <sup>18</sup> michel D.

<sup>19-19</sup> a stronge nauye D.    a strong meyny O.    <sup>20</sup> alle ham D.    aþ po O.

<sup>21</sup> holpen O.    <sup>22</sup> hym & his reume O.    <sup>23-23</sup> fledde D.    fledde fro O.

pens vnto<sup>1</sup> London, & pere helde him. ¶ po come Knoght, and him bisegede so longe til<sup>2</sup> Kyng Eldrede diede in pe cite of London, and lip at seynt Paules; & he regnede ix zere.

4 Of Kyng Knoght. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Septuagesimo.<sup>3</sup>

**A**fter pe deth of pis Eldred, Knoght, pat was a Danois, bigan po forto regne, but Edmunde<sup>4</sup> Irenside,<sup>5</sup> pat was Kyng Eldredus sone by his ferst wif, ordeynede a grete host, & bigan to 8 werr' oppoñ Kyng Knoght; and so he dede meny tymes and ofte; and pe werre was so st[r]onge and harde, pat wonder' hit<sup>6</sup> was to wete. ¶ And pe Quene Emme, pat duelled<sup>7</sup> po at Wynchestre, hade grete drede of her' ij sones, for<sup>8</sup> pe werr' of<sup>6</sup> Alured & Edward, 12 leste pai shulde ben<sup>9</sup> defoulede & misdoñ prou; pis<sup>10</sup> werre, wherfore she sent ham ouer pe se into Normandy, to pe duc<sup>10</sup> Richard her' Vncle; and pere pai duelled<sup>11</sup> in safte and pees longe tyme. ¶ pis Edmunde<sup>12</sup> Irenside<sup>13</sup> & Knouzt<sup>14</sup> werrede strongliche to-geder<sup>14</sup>; 16 but at pe laste pai were accorded in pis maner, pat pai shulde departe pe reaume bituenes<sup>15</sup> ham; and so pai deden; & after, pai bicom<sup>16</sup> gode frendes, and so wel louede<sup>17</sup> togederes as pai<sup>18</sup> hade bene briper,<sup>18</sup> geten<sup>19</sup> of o<sup>20</sup> body, & of<sup>21</sup> o moder born.

20 How Kyng Edmunde Irenside traiterously<sup>22</sup> was slayn, prou; a tratour' pat me callede Edrith<sup>23</sup> of Statton. Capitulo Centesimo xviij<sup>mo</sup>.

**A**nd after, po regnede Kyng Edmunde Irenside and Knoght 24 pe Danois. but pus it fel<sup>24</sup> aftirward, and in pe same zere pat pai were accorded, and somiche loueden<sup>25</sup> togeder, wherof<sup>26</sup> a false pef traitoure hade enuy vnto pe loue pat was bituene ham, and frendship, whos name was Edrith<sup>27</sup> of Stratton, pat was a 28 grete lorde, pat<sup>28</sup> was Edmunde Irensides man, & of him helde all pe londe pat he hade. ¶ And nopeles he pouzt his lorde to bitraie,

<sup>1</sup> in-to O.    <sup>2</sup> til pat D.    <sup>3</sup> Sextodesimo D.    <sup>4</sup> leaf 65.

<sup>5</sup> Irensides O.    <sup>6</sup> om. O.    <sup>7</sup> dwelt O.    <sup>8</sup> of DO.    <sup>9</sup> be DO.

<sup>10-10</sup> om. D.    <sup>11</sup> dwelt O.    <sup>12</sup> Edward D.    <sup>13</sup> Irensides O.

<sup>14-14</sup> werrede strongly togederes D.    werreddyn strongly to-gidere O.

<sup>15</sup> between O.    <sup>16</sup> becomen O.

<sup>17</sup> loued pat pai bicom sworn breperne and so wel loueden D.    loued pat bei becomen swore bretheryn & so wel loued O.

<sup>18-18</sup> hadene ben breperne D.    had ben brethryn O.    <sup>19</sup> gotyn O.

<sup>20</sup> on O.    <sup>21</sup> om. D.    <sup>22</sup> om. D.    traytoursly O.

<sup>23</sup> Edrik D.    Edrich O.    <sup>24</sup> bifel D.    <sup>25</sup> loued O.    <sup>26</sup> wherfore D.

<sup>27</sup> Edrik D.    <sup>28</sup> & D.

& make Knoght kyng<sup>1</sup> of þe lande, <sup>1</sup>to pat<sup>1</sup> entent<sup>1</sup> richely to ben  
 anauncede, & wip him bene<sup>2</sup> wel bilouede. ¶ Wherfore he praiede<sup>3</sup>  
 his lorde, Edmund<sup>4</sup> Irenside,<sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup>oppoñ a day<sup>6</sup> wip him forto eten,  
 and wip him duelle. and þe kyng curteisly him grantede, & to 4  
 him come at his praier<sup>1</sup>; and at þe mete þe kyng richely<sup>7</sup> was  
 seruēde with diuerse metis & drynkes. ¶ And when nyght come  
 pat he shulde gone<sup>8</sup> to bede, <sup>9</sup>þe kyng<sup>9</sup> tok<sup>9</sup> his owen meny, & went  
 into chambre. & as he lokede<sup>10</sup> aboute, he saw<sup>11</sup> a wonder faire 8  
 ymage, & wel made,<sup>12</sup> & in<sup>13</sup> semblant<sup>14</sup> as it were<sup>14</sup> an Archire,  
 wip a bowe bent in his honde, & in þe bowe a fyne Arwe. ¶ Kyng  
 Edmund<sup>15</sup> went þo neir<sup>1</sup>, to biholde hit bettr<sup>1</sup>, what it miȝte bene<sup>15</sup>;  
 and anone as his honde tochede þe Arwe, anone þe arwe him smote 12  
<sup>16</sup>þrouȝ þe<sup>16</sup> body, & pere slough þe kyng<sup>1</sup>; for þat engyne was made  
 to quelle his<sup>17</sup> lorde traiterously.<sup>18</sup> ¶ And <sup>6</sup>when þe<sup>6</sup> Kyn[g]  
 Edmund<sup>19</sup> <sup>pus</sup> was dede & <sup>19</sup>slayn, he nad<sup>20</sup> regnede but x ȝere.  
 his peple for him made miche sorw, and his body pai bare to<sup>21</sup> 16  
 Glastenbury and pere pai him enterede. ¶ And <sup>pus</sup> <sup>22</sup>traitour  
 Edrik<sup>23</sup> anone went to þe Quene, pat was Kyng Edmundes wif, pat  
 wiste of here lordes dep. anone he <sup>24</sup>toke fram her<sup>1</sup> hir<sup>24</sup> ij sones,  
 pat were faire and ȝongr, pat her<sup>1</sup> lorde hade oppoñ hier<sup>1</sup> geten,—&<sup>25</sup> 20  
 pat on me callede ¶ Edward, & pat oper Edwyn,—& lade ham wip  
 him to<sup>26</sup> London, and toke ham vnto Kyng Knoght, pat he shulde  
 done<sup>27</sup> with ham what his willes<sup>28</sup> were; & tolde him how queyntly  
 he hade <sup>29</sup>quelled<sup>29</sup> Kyng Edmund<sup>29</sup>, for enchesouñ & loue of him, 24  
 so pat Kyng Knoght aft Engeland<sup>30</sup> in his power<sup>1</sup> holly<sup>31</sup> miȝt haue.  
 ¶ “O þow false traitoure! haste þow my trewe wedbroþer<sup>32</sup> slayn  
 for cause<sup>33</sup> <sup>34</sup>of me? a man pat y moste Louede in þe Worlde. now,  
 be myn<sup>35</sup> heuede,<sup>36</sup> I shal for þi trauail þe wel rewarde as þow hast 28  
 deseruede!” and anone <sup>37</sup>lete him take and bynde,<sup>37</sup> hondes & feete  
 in maner of a traitour<sup>1</sup>, & lete caste him into<sup>38</sup> Thamise; and in þis

<sup>1-1</sup> in O. <sup>2</sup> be D. <sup>3</sup> praiede oppon a day D. <sup>4</sup> leaf 65, back.

<sup>5</sup> Irenside O. <sup>6-6</sup> om. D. <sup>7</sup> realy D. rially O. <sup>8</sup> go DO.

<sup>9-9</sup> om. O. <sup>10</sup> MS. lokede lokede. <sup>11</sup> say O. <sup>12</sup> y-made DO.

<sup>13</sup> in the D. <sup>14-14</sup> of D. <sup>15</sup> be O. <sup>16-16</sup> proutoute his D.

<sup>17</sup> his owen D. his owne O. <sup>18</sup> treitously O.

<sup>19-19</sup> was dede & pus D. <sup>20</sup> had O. <sup>21</sup> vnto DO.

<sup>22</sup> þis false D. þis fals O. <sup>23</sup> Edrith O.

<sup>24-24</sup> toke fram sic D. nome fro here O. <sup>25</sup> om. DO.

<sup>26</sup> vnto DO. <sup>27</sup> do DO. <sup>28</sup> wil DO.

<sup>29-29</sup> quelled<sup>29</sup> Edmund<sup>29</sup> Irenside D. y-quelled Kyng Edmund<sup>29</sup> O.

<sup>30</sup> Engeland<sup>30</sup> holich D. <sup>31</sup> om. D. hollych O.

<sup>32</sup> wedded<sup>32</sup> broþer D. brother O. <sup>33</sup> enchesouñ DO. <sup>34</sup> leaf 66.

<sup>35</sup> my O. <sup>36</sup> om. D. hed O. <sup>37-37</sup> lete bynde him D.

<sup>38</sup> into the D. in-to þe O.

maner<sup>1</sup> þe false<sup>1</sup> traitour<sup>1</sup> endede his lif. ¶ þe Kyng<sup>2</sup> tok<sup>1</sup> þo ij childerne to<sup>2</sup> þe Abbot of Westmynstr<sup>3</sup>, to warde<sup>3</sup> and to kepe til he wiste what was beste<sup>4</sup> wip ham to done.<sup>4</sup>

4 How Kyng Knoght sent Edmundes sones<sup>5</sup> bope into Denmarc  
forto slee; & how<sup>6</sup> pai were sauede. *Capitulo Centesimo*  
xix<sup>mo</sup>.

8 **H**It bifelle sone after pat Kyng Knoght hade al þe lande into<sup>7</sup>  
his hande and spousede þe<sup>1</sup> Quene Emme prou3 consent of  
his baronage, for she was a faire womman, & was Eldredes wif, and  
þe dukes suster<sup>1</sup> of Normandye: & pai<sup>8</sup> sleueden to-geder<sup>8</sup> with  
miche<sup>9</sup> loue, as resoun wolde. ¶ þe Kyng axede oppon a day conseile  
12 of þe Quene, what was beste forto<sup>10</sup> done<sup>11</sup> wip the sones pat wer<sup>12</sup>  
Edmundes Irenside.<sup>12</sup> ¶ “Sire,” quod she; “pai<sup>13</sup> bep þe<sup>13</sup> right  
heir’s of þe londe; & if pai leuen, pai wille do 3ow miche sorwe with<sup>14</sup>  
werr; and perfor lete sende ham into a strange lande aferr<sup>15</sup>, to some  
16 man pat may ham defoule<sup>16</sup> & destroie.” ¶ The Kyng anone lete  
calle a Danois pat me callede Walgar<sup>1</sup>, and commandede him pat he  
shulde lede<sup>17</sup> þo ij childerne into Denmarc, and so do for ham<sup>18</sup>  
pat neuer<sup>19</sup> pai herde<sup>19</sup> more tydyngus<sup>20</sup> of ham. “Sir,” saide pis  
20 Walger, “gladely 3oure commandement shal bene<sup>21</sup> done,” ¶ And  
tok<sup>22</sup> þo<sup>23</sup> ij childerne, & lad ham into Denmarc. & for-as miche  
as<sup>24</sup> he saw pat þe childern were wonder<sup>1</sup> fair<sup>1</sup>, and also meke,<sup>25</sup>  
he had of ham grete pitee and reuthe, & wolde nou3t ham slee,  
24 but lade ham to þe Kyng of Hungrie forto norisshe: For this  
Walgar<sup>1</sup> was<sup>26</sup> wel knowen<sup>26</sup> wip þe Kyng, and<sup>27</sup> wel bilouede.<sup>27</sup>  
¶ Anone þe Kyng axede whens þe childern were. ¶ And Walger  
tolde him, & saide pat ‘pai were þe right heir’s of Engeland, &  
28 perfor men wolde ham destroye; “and perfore, sire, to 3ow pai<sup>28</sup> bep  
comen,<sup>28</sup> mercy & helpe to biseche; & forsop<sup>29</sup> if pai mowen leue,<sup>29</sup>

<sup>1</sup> om. O.

<sup>2-2</sup> nome þe ij chelderne & tooke ham D. nome þo ij Childryn & took hem O.

<sup>3-3</sup> forto norisshe D. <sup>4-4</sup> to done with hem O.

<sup>5</sup> sones Irenside D. <sup>6</sup> bope D. <sup>7</sup> in DO.

<sup>8-8</sup> leueden togederes D. loued to-gidere O. <sup>9</sup> mychel O.

<sup>10</sup> to D. <sup>11</sup> do O.

<sup>12-12</sup> Edmundes Irensides D. Edmund<sup>1</sup> Irensides O.

<sup>13-13</sup> beth D. ben O. <sup>14</sup> sorwe with D. sorow with O. sorwe R.

<sup>15</sup> wel ferre D. <sup>16</sup> defoyle O. <sup>17</sup> lete O.

<sup>18</sup> hem & ordeyne O. <sup>19-19</sup> we her D. <sup>20</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>21</sup> be O. <sup>22</sup> nome O. <sup>23</sup> the D. <sup>24</sup> leaf 66, back. <sup>25</sup> om. D.

<sup>26-26</sup> wel biknowen D. y-knownen O. <sup>27-27</sup> beloued wel O.

<sup>28-28</sup> ben come O. <sup>29-29</sup> and pai mow leuen D. if þey now lyve O.

3our<sup>1</sup> men pai shullen<sup>1</sup> becomen, and of 3ow pai<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>shal holde<sup>3</sup> al hire land. ¶ The Kyng of Hungrie ham<sup>4</sup> vnderfonge with michel<sup>5</sup> honour, and lete ham worthely to bene<sup>6</sup> kepte.

¶ And þus hit bifelle afterwarde, þat Edwyne, þe 3onger broþer, <sup>4</sup> deide, and Edward þe elder<sup>7</sup> broþer leuede, a fair<sup>8</sup> man, a stronge, & a<sup>9</sup> large of body, and gentil and curteise of condicions, so þat alle men him louede. ¶ And þis Edward, in þe cronicles is callede amonges<sup>10</sup> Englisshemen, 'Edward þe outelaghe.' And when he <sup>8</sup> was made knyght, þe Kyngus doughter of Hungary so miche him louede, for his godenesse and his fairenesse, þat she made & callede him her<sup>9</sup> derlyng. ¶ The Kyng þat was her<sup>9</sup> fader, perceyuede wel þe loue þat was bituene ham too, And hade non heir<sup>9</sup> but þat <sup>12</sup> doughter. And þe Kyng fouchede his douzter to no man so<sup>11</sup> wel as he dede vnto him þat her<sup>12</sup> louede, & she him; & he 3af here to him wip gode wille; and Edward her<sup>9</sup> spousesde wip michel<sup>13</sup> honour. ¶ The Kyng of Hungrie sent after<sup>9</sup> al his baronage, & <sup>16</sup> made a solempne <sup>14</sup>fest and<sup>15</sup> ryche weddyng, and made al men to<sup>16</sup> vnderstonde þat he shulde ben<sup>17</sup> Kyng when<sup>18</sup> he were dede; and <sup>19</sup>perof pai maden al<sup>19</sup> gret ioie; and of þat tydyng<sup>20</sup> pai wer<sup>9</sup> ful glade. ¶ þis Edward bigate oppon þis lady a sone <sup>20</sup> þat me callede Edgar Helyng, and afterward, a doughter þat me callede Margarete, þat afti[r]ward was Quene of Scotlanþ; and, by þe Kyng of Scotland þat me callede Maucolom, she hade a douzter þat was<sup>21</sup> callede Maude, <sup>22</sup>þat afterwarde was Quene<sup>22</sup> <sup>24</sup> of Engeland prou; Kyng Henry, þat was þe ferst sone of þe Conqueroure, þat her<sup>9</sup> weded; & he bigate on her<sup>9</sup> a douzter<sup>9</sup> þat me callede Maude, þat afterward was Emperesse of Almaign; and of þis Maude come Henry<sup>23</sup> þe Kyng of Engeland, þat into þis <sup>28</sup> day is callede 'Henry, þe Emperesse sone.' ¶ And 3it hade þis Edward anoper<sup>9</sup> douzter<sup>16</sup> by his wif, þat me called Cristian, and she was a none.

<sup>1</sup> shul D.      <sup>2</sup> MS. pai sla, with sla underlined for omission.

<sup>3-3</sup> schullen holden O.      <sup>4</sup> hem vndirtook<sup>4</sup> & O.

<sup>5</sup> mych O.      <sup>6</sup> be O.      <sup>7</sup> eldest D.      <sup>8</sup> man & DO.

<sup>9</sup> om. O.      <sup>10</sup> among<sup>10</sup> O.      <sup>11</sup> as O.      <sup>12</sup> he DO.

<sup>13</sup> mych O.      <sup>14</sup> leaf 67.      <sup>15</sup> and a DO.

<sup>16</sup> om. D.      <sup>17</sup> be O.

<sup>18</sup> when þat D.      whan þat O.

<sup>19-19</sup> perfore alle þai maden D.      perfore alle þey made O.

<sup>20</sup> tydynges D.      <sup>21</sup> me DO.

<sup>22-22</sup> þat was quene afterward D.      þat was qwen afterward O.

<sup>23</sup> om. DO.

How Kyng Knoght, pat was a proude man, conquere<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> Nor-  
waye; & how he bicome afterwarde<sup>1</sup> meke.<sup>2</sup> *Capitulo*  
*Centesimo ¶ xx<sup>mo</sup>.*

4 **N**OW haue 3e<sup>3</sup> herde of Edmundes<sup>4</sup> sones wip pe<sup>4</sup> Irenside, pat  
Kyng Knoght wende<sup>5</sup> pai had ben dede, as he had com-  
mandede Walger bifor<sup>6</sup>. ¶ And this Knoght<sup>6</sup> had in his honde al  
Engeland<sup>7</sup> and Denmare. And after<sup>7</sup> pat, he went to<sup>7</sup> Norwaye,  
8 pat londe to conquere. ¶ But pe Kyng of pe lande pat me callede  
Elaf, come with his peple, & wende his lande wel<sup>8</sup> haue kepte &  
defendede; & so<sup>3</sup> pere he fau3t with ham, til at pe laste he was  
slayn in pat bataile; & po<sup>3</sup> pis Knoght toke<sup>9</sup> al pat lande<sup>10</sup> into his  
12 hande. ¶ And when he had conquerede al<sup>6</sup> Norwaye, and taken<sup>11</sup>  
feantes & homages pere, he come after<sup>7</sup> a3eyne into Engeland<sup>7</sup>, and  
helde him-self<sup>12</sup> so grete<sup>12</sup> lorde, pat him pou3t in al pe worlde<sup>13</sup> no  
man his pier<sup>13</sup> was; & bicome so prout & hanten pat hit was grete  
16 wonder<sup>1</sup>. ¶ And so<sup>3</sup> hit bifelle, oppoñ a day as he had herde  
masse at Westmynstre, and wolde haue gone<sup>14</sup> into his palice, pe  
<sup>15</sup> water of<sup>15</sup> Tamise so swiftly<sup>16</sup> a3eynes him comen,<sup>16</sup> pat Almost  
hit<sup>17</sup> tochede his fete. po saide pe Kyng with a prout hert, “y com-  
20 mande pe water<sup>18</sup> turne a3eyn, or elles<sup>19</sup> y shal pe make.” pe wawys  
for his commandement wolde nou3t<sup>20</sup> spare, but<sup>21</sup> flowede euer<sup>21</sup> on<sup>21</sup>  
hye more & more. ¶ The Kyng was so prout of hert pat he wolde  
nou3t flee pe water, but abode stille in pe water, and bete pe water  
24 wip a smal 3erd pat he helde in his hande, & comandede pe water  
pat it shulde wende no ferpere; but for al his commandement pe  
water wolde nou3t cesse, but euer<sup>22</sup> waxe more & more an hye, so pat  
pe Kyng was al wete, and stode depe in pe water. ¶ And when he  
28 saw pat he had abide pere or<sup>22</sup> longe, & pe water wolde noping  
done<sup>23</sup> his commandement, po sone he wipdrowe him, and po stode<sup>24</sup>  
oppoñ a stone & helde his hondes<sup>3</sup> an hye, & saide pis worde<sup>25</sup> in  
heryng<sup>1</sup> of al pe peple: “¶ pis God pat makep pe see<sup>26</sup> pus arise an<sup>27</sup>

1—1 Normandy & after become O.

2 mek and milde D. meke & mylde O. <sup>3</sup> om. D.

4—4 sones with O. sone wip pe R. <sup>5</sup> went pat O.

7—7 he went into D. <sup>8</sup> weel to O. <sup>9</sup> nome DO. <sup>10</sup> leaf 67, back.

11 tok D. <sup>12</sup> stronge a D. gret a O.

13—13 nomas sic D. his pere no man O. <sup>14</sup> go O.

15—15 wawys of the D. wawys of O. <sup>16—16</sup> aroos a3ens hym O.

17 pai D. bei O. <sup>18</sup> water to DO. <sup>19</sup> eft O.

20 wolde nou3t D. wold not O. wolde R.

21—21 folwede euer on D. flowed in O. <sup>22</sup> ouere to D. to O.

23 do D. <sup>24</sup> stepe D. <sup>25</sup> wordes DO. <sup>26</sup> water D. <sup>27</sup> a D.

hye, he is Kyng<sup>1</sup> of alle Kynges, & of myghtes most; & y ame a caitif and a man dedly, & he<sup>1</sup> may neuer<sup>1</sup> dye; & alle þing<sup>2</sup> doth his commandement, & to him is obedient. ¶ To þat God Y praye<sup>3</sup> þat he be my waraunt, for y knowliche me caitif feble, & of none<sup>4</sup> 4 power<sup>5</sup>; and þerfore y wil gone<sup>5</sup> to Rome wipout eny lettynge, my Wickednesse<sup>6</sup> forto<sup>7</sup> punishe, and me to amende; ¶ ffor of þat God y cleyme my landes<sup>8</sup> forto holde, and of none opere<sup>9</sup>; and anone made his heir<sup>9</sup>, and him-self<sup>9</sup> [went]<sup>9</sup> to Rome wipouten<sup>10</sup> eny 8 lettynge, & by þe way dede meny almes dedes, & when he come to Rome also. ¶ And when he hade bene<sup>11</sup> þere, and for his synnes done penaunce, he come azeine into Engeland, and bicom a gode man and an holy, and lefte al maner pride & stoutnesse, & leuede an 12 holy lif al his lif after, and made ij Abbayes<sup>9</sup> of seynt Benet, one in Engeland & 12 þat opere<sup>12</sup> in Norway, for-as-miche as he louede specialy<sup>13</sup> seynt Benet bifore al opere seyntes; and miche he louede also seynt Edmunde þe kyng; & ofte he gaf grete giftes to þe hous, 16 wherfore it<sup>14</sup> was made ryche. and when he had regnede xx þere, he deide, & lip at Wynchestr<sup>1</sup>.

**Of Kyng Harolde, þat leuer<sup>1</sup> hade gone in<sup>15</sup> foot þan ryde on hors. Capitulo Centesimo xx[i]<sup>mo</sup>.** 20

**T**HIS Knoght, of wham y<sup>16</sup> haue spoken<sup>17</sup> bifor,<sup>18</sup> hade ij sones by his wif; & þat on me callede Herdiknoght, & þat opere Harolde; and he was so<sup>19</sup> lip of<sup>19</sup> fote þat men callede him þerfore<sup>20</sup> Harolde Harefote. & þis Harolde hade noping þe<sup>21</sup> condicions ne 24 maners<sup>21</sup> of Kyng Knoght þat was his fader<sup>1</sup>, for he sette but litil pris of chynalry ne of curtesye, neyþer of worship, but onely by his owen wille; & he bicom so wickede þat he exilede his moder<sup>1</sup>. & þo<sup>22</sup> she went<sup>22</sup> out of þe<sup>23</sup> land into Flaundres, & þere she<sup>24</sup> 28 duelled<sup>25</sup> wip þe Erl; wherfor after þere was neuer gode loue bituene him & his þroper, for his þroper him hatede dedely; and when he hade regnede ij [yere] & a litil<sup>26</sup> more,<sup>27</sup> he deide, & lip at Westmynstre. 32

<sup>1</sup> and he DO. and R. <sup>2</sup> þing DO. þis R. <sup>3</sup> leaf 68. <sup>4</sup> no DO.

<sup>5</sup> go DO. <sup>6</sup> wyknesse O. <sup>7</sup> to DO. <sup>8</sup> londe D. land O.

<sup>9</sup> om. D. <sup>10</sup> with-oute O. <sup>11</sup> be O. <sup>12-12</sup> another D.

<sup>13</sup> specialy R. specialy seynt Benet D. specialy Seynt Benet O.

<sup>14</sup> is sic D. <sup>15</sup> on DO. <sup>16</sup> we DO. <sup>17</sup> spoke O.

<sup>18</sup> tofore D. <sup>19-19</sup> light on D.

<sup>20</sup> þerfore communeliche D. þerfore comunlich O.

<sup>21-21</sup> maners ne condicions D. Condicions in þe manere O.

<sup>22-22</sup> went she D. went O. <sup>23</sup> this D. <sup>24</sup> om. DO.

<sup>25</sup> dwelt O. <sup>26</sup> leaf 68, back. <sup>27</sup> MS. mory.



Of Kyng<sup>r</sup> Hardiknought, þat was Haroldes broþer. Capitulo  
Centesimo xx[ij]<sup>mo</sup>.

- 4 **A**fter þis Harolde Harefoot, regnede his broþer Hardiknought, a  
noble Knyght & a worpi, & miche louede chivalrye and al  
maner<sup>r</sup> godenesse. ¶ And when þis Hardiknought<sup>1</sup> hade regnede a  
litol while, he lete vncouere his broþer Harolde, and <sup>2</sup>smote of his  
Heuede<sup>2</sup> þat was his broþer, at Westmynstr<sup>r</sup>, and lete caste þe  
8 heuede<sup>3</sup> into a gonge, and þe body <sup>4</sup>into þe<sup>4</sup> Tamyse. and after  
come fisshers, & toke<sup>5</sup> þe body wip her<sup>r</sup> nettes by nyght, and bere  
him vnto<sup>6</sup> seynt Clement<sup>3</sup> cherche, & pere him buryede; and in þis  
maner<sup>r</sup> avengede him Hardeknought of his broþer, for in none opere  
12 maner<sup>r</sup> pai<sup>7</sup> mygh nouȝt <sup>8</sup>hym avenge.<sup>8</sup> ¶ This Kyng Hardiknought  
was so large ȝeuer<sup>r</sup> of mete and of<sup>9</sup> drynk<sup>r</sup>, þat his tables were sette  
<sup>10</sup>euer<sup>r</sup> pre tymes ful<sup>10</sup> wip real<sup>11</sup> metes for his owen mayne<sup>12</sup>, & for  
al þat <sup>13</sup>comen to<sup>13</sup> his court to bene<sup>14</sup> ryche<sup>ly</sup> seruede of<sup>15</sup> real metes.  
16 ¶ And þis Kyng<sup>r</sup> Hardeknought sent after Emme his moder<sup>r</sup>, & made  
hir<sup>r</sup> come aȝeyne into Engeland<sup>k</sup>, ffor she was dryue<sup>16</sup> out of Engeland<sup>k</sup>  
whiles þat Harolde Harefote regnede, þoruȝ conseil of þe Erl  
Godwyne, þat þo was þe gretteſt lorde of al Engeland<sup>k</sup> next þe kyng<sup>r</sup>,  
20 and moſte myght done<sup>17</sup> what he wolde <sup>18</sup>prouȝ al<sup>18</sup> Engeland<sup>k</sup> <sup>19</sup>prouȝ  
his commaundement<sup>19</sup>, for-asmiche as he hade ſpouſede þe doughter  
of þe gode Kyng Knought þat was a danoyſ, whiche doughter he  
hade by his ferſt wiſf. ¶ And when þis quene was dryuen<sup>20</sup> out of  
24 Engeland<sup>k</sup>, & come to þe Erl of Flaundres þat me callede Balde-  
wynne, her<sup>21</sup> coſyn, <sup>22</sup>he fonde here pere al þing<sup>r</sup> þat hir nedede,<sup>23</sup>  
Vnto the tyme þat ſhe<sup>24</sup> went aȝeyne into Engeland<sup>k</sup>, þat þe Kyng<sup>r</sup>  
Hardiknought hade ſent for<sup>25</sup> her<sup>r</sup>, þat was her<sup>r</sup> ſone, & made here  
28 come aȝeyn wip michel<sup>26</sup> honour. ¶ This Kyng Hardeknought,<sup>27</sup>  
when he hade v ȝere regnede, he deiðe, & liþ at Wyncheſtre.

Of þe Vylonye þat þe Danoyſ<sup>28</sup> dede to þe<sup>29</sup> Engliſſhe-men;  
wherfore fro þat tyme afterwarð was none<sup>30</sup> Danoyſ<sup>28</sup>  
32 made Kyng<sup>31</sup> of Engeland<sup>k</sup>.<sup>31</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo  
Vicesimo iij<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> MS. Harolde. <sup>2-2</sup> smyte of his heed<sup>r</sup> O. <sup>3</sup> heed O. <sup>4-4</sup> in O.

<sup>5</sup> to sic D. <sup>6</sup> to DO. <sup>7</sup> he DO.

<sup>8-8</sup> bene avenged<sup>r</sup> D. be auenged O. <sup>9</sup> om. DO.

<sup>10-10</sup> euery tyme priſe ful D. eueryday iij tymes O. <sup>11</sup> ful ryal O.

<sup>12</sup> maynen R. meny D. meyne O. <sup>13-13</sup> come vnto D. <sup>14</sup> be D.

<sup>15</sup> with D. <sup>16</sup> dryuen D. <sup>17</sup> do D. <sup>18-18</sup> prouȝ-oute D.

<sup>19-19</sup> om. D. <sup>20</sup> dryue O. <sup>21</sup> his RO. her<sup>r</sup> D. <sup>22</sup> leaf 69.

<sup>23</sup> nedeth D. <sup>24</sup> he D. <sup>25</sup> after D. <sup>26</sup> miche D. mych O.

<sup>27</sup> Harolde D. <sup>28</sup> Danes O. <sup>29</sup> om. O. <sup>30</sup> no DO. <sup>31-31</sup> om. O.

After<sup>1</sup> pe deth of pis Kyng<sup>1</sup> Hardeknoght, forasmiche as he nad<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>1</sup>non heire<sup>1</sup> of his body bigeten,<sup>2</sup> pe Erles and barons  
 assembled and maden<sup>3</sup> a counseil; and neuer<sup>4</sup>-more after<sup>4</sup> pat tyme  
 no man pat was a Danois, pou<sup>3</sup> he<sup>4</sup> were ner<sup>4</sup> so grete a man<sup>4</sup>  
 amonges ham, he shulde neuer<sup>5</sup> bene<sup>5</sup> Kyng of Engeland, for pe  
 despitte pat pe Danois<sup>6</sup> hade done to pe<sup>7</sup> Englisshemen. ¶ For  
 euermore biforne-honde,<sup>8</sup> if it were so pat Englisshemen & Danois<sup>9</sup>  
 hapden to mete oppoñ a bruce, pe Englisshemen<sup>10</sup> shulde nouzt<sup>8</sup>  
 bene<sup>11</sup> so herdy to meve ne sterve on<sup>12</sup> foot, but stande still, til<sup>13</sup> pat  
 pe Danois<sup>13</sup> were passede forth. ¶ And more-ouer, if pe Englisshemen  
 hade nouzt bowede adoun here heuedes,<sup>14</sup> to done reuerence  
 vnto pe Danois,<sup>9</sup> pai shulde haue bene bete & defouled; & soche<sup>12</sup>  
 maner<sup>9</sup> despites and Vilonyes deden pe Danois<sup>9</sup> to oure Englisshemen;  
 Wherefore pai were dryuen out of pe lande after pe<sup>15</sup> tyme pat  
 Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, for pai<sup>16</sup> had<sup>16</sup> non<sup>16</sup> lord pat ham  
 myght mayntene. In pis maner<sup>9</sup> voided pe Danois<sup>9</sup> Engeland, pat<sup>16</sup>  
 neuer<sup>9</sup> pai comen<sup>17</sup> azeine. ¶ pe Erles and barouns, by here com-  
 mune assent & conseille, senten<sup>18</sup> into Normandy forto seche po ij  
 brepern Alurede & Edward, pat were duellyng wip pe duk<sup>1</sup> Richard  
 pat was here eme,<sup>19</sup> to pat<sup>19</sup> intent forto crone Alurede pe elder<sup>20</sup>  
 broper, & him make Kyng of Engeland, and of pis ping to make  
 an ende, pe erles & barons made<sup>20</sup> her<sup>9</sup> oth; But pe Erl Godwyne of  
 Westse<sup>x</sup> falsely<sup>21</sup> pouzt to slee po ij breperne anone as pai shulde  
 come into Engelande, <sup>22</sup>to pat<sup>22</sup> entente forto make his sone Harolde<sup>24</sup>  
 Kyng, pe whiche sone he hade bigete oppoñ his wif, pat was Kyng  
 Knoghtes doughter, pat was a Danoys. ¶ And pis Godwyn pryue-  
 lihe<sup>23</sup> went him to Southampton, forto mete pere po ij brepern  
 when pat pai shulde come to lande. ¶ And pus hit bifelle, pat pe<sup>28</sup>  
 messagers pat wenten<sup>24</sup> into Normandy, fonden<sup>25</sup> nouzt but onely  
 Alurede, pat was pe eldest<sup>26</sup> broper; for Edward, his zonger<sup>27</sup>  
 broper, was gone<sup>28</sup> to Hungrie forto speke wip his cosyn Edward<sup>27</sup> pe  
 outelaw, pat was Edmondes sone wip pe Irenside.<sup>29</sup> ¶ pe messagers<sup>32</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> none childe D. no Child<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>2</sup> bigete D. begete O.

<sup>3</sup> made D. <sup>4-4</sup> wer<sup>4</sup> neuer<sup>4</sup> D. neuere were O. <sup>5</sup> be DO.

<sup>6</sup> Danys O. <sup>7</sup> om. DO. <sup>8</sup> bifore-honde D. <sup>9</sup> Danes O.

<sup>10</sup> MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl. 490 (D) has a page cut out here, and does not continue until leaf 70, back, of the Rawlinson MS.

<sup>11</sup> he O. <sup>12</sup> o O. <sup>13-13</sup> be Danes O. <sup>14</sup> hedes O. <sup>15</sup> om. O.

<sup>16-16</sup> nad non O. <sup>17</sup> come O. <sup>18</sup> leaf 69, back. <sup>19-19</sup> en O.

<sup>20</sup> maden O. <sup>21</sup> falsly & traytously O. <sup>22-22</sup> in O. <sup>23</sup> priuily O.

<sup>24</sup> wente O. <sup>25</sup> founde O. <sup>26</sup> Eldere O. <sup>27</sup> om. O.

<sup>28</sup> went O. <sup>29</sup> Irensides O.

tolde & saide to Alurede, how pat þe Erles & barons of Engeland<sup>1</sup> senten<sup>1</sup> after<sup>1</sup> him, and pat he boldeliche shulde come into Engeland<sup>1</sup> and vnderfonge þe reaume; for Kyng Herdeknoght was dede, &  
 4 alle þe <sup>2</sup>Danois were dryuen<sup>2</sup> out of þe lande.

How Godewyne, þe false *traitoure*, tok Alurede oppon Gildes-  
 douñ, when he come fro Normandye to bene<sup>3</sup> Kyng of  
 Engeland, & dede him bene<sup>3</sup> martrede in þe Ile of Ely.

8 *Capitulo Centesimo xxiiij<sup>to</sup>.*

**W**Hen Alurede herde þis tydynges,<sup>4</sup> he þankede God, & into  
 shipp went, wip al þe hast pat he myght, and passede þe  
 see, & arryuede at Southamptōñ, þere pat Godewyne þe *traitour*<sup>5</sup>  
 12 was. And when<sup>5</sup> þis tr[ai]toure <sup>6</sup>saw pat he was comen,<sup>7</sup> he wel-  
 comed him & vnderfonge him wip michel<sup>8</sup> ioye, and saide pat he  
 wolde lede him to London, þere pat al þe <sup>9</sup>lordes & barons<sup>9</sup> of  
 Engeland him abode, forto maken<sup>10</sup> him kyng. and so þai wenten<sup>11</sup>  
 16 in her way toward London. & when þai comen<sup>7</sup> oppon Gildes-  
 doune, þo saide þe *traitoure* Godwyne to Alurede,<sup>12</sup> “takeþ kepe,”<sup>13</sup>  
 quod he, “aboute 3ow, þop on<sup>14</sup> þe lefte side & in þe ryght side;  
 and of aH 3e shul bene<sup>3</sup> kyng, & of suche an hundrede more.”  
 20 ¶ “Now forsoþe,” quod Alurede, “I behote, & if y be kyng, I  
 shal ordeyn & make soche lawes wherof God & aH folc shullen  
<sup>15</sup>holden ham wel paied.”<sup>15</sup> ¶ Now hade þe *traitoure* comaunded  
 alle his men pat were wip him, pat when þai were comen<sup>7</sup> oppon  
 24 Gildesdoun, pat þai shulde slee alle þo pat were in Aluredes com-  
 pany pat comen wip him fram<sup>16</sup> Normandye, and after pat, taken<sup>17</sup>  
 Alurede, & lede him into þe Ile of Ely, & þere put out boþe his  
 eyne of his heued,<sup>18</sup> and afterward bryng him vnto þe<sup>19</sup> deth. & so  
 28 þai deden, ffor þai quellede al his company pat xij [hundred] were in  
 nombre,<sup>20</sup> of gentil-men pat were comen<sup>7</sup> wip Alurede fram<sup>16</sup> Nor-  
 mandye; And after token<sup>21</sup> Alurede, & lade him into þe Ile of Ely,  
 & put out his<sup>22</sup> eyen of his heuede,<sup>23</sup> & rent his wombe, & token<sup>24</sup>  
 32 þe chief of his bowailes, & put a stake into þe gronde, & an ende  
 of his<sup>22</sup> bowailes þerto fastenede, & wip nedles of Iren <sup>25</sup>pricked þe  
 body of<sup>25</sup> þe gode childe, and so made<sup>26</sup> him gone<sup>27</sup> aboute þe stake

<sup>1</sup> sent O.    <sup>2-2</sup> Danes dryven were O.    <sup>3</sup> be O.    <sup>4</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>5</sup> þo O.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 70.    <sup>7</sup> come O.    <sup>8</sup> mych O.

<sup>9-9</sup> barons & lordes O.    <sup>10</sup> make O.    <sup>11</sup> went O.

<sup>12</sup> Alured & seyð O.    <sup>13</sup> heed O.    <sup>14</sup> in O.    <sup>15-15</sup> hem wel paye O.

<sup>16</sup> fro O.    <sup>17</sup> take O.    <sup>18</sup> heed O.    <sup>19</sup> om. O.    <sup>20</sup> Cumpanye O.

<sup>21</sup> nomen O.    <sup>22</sup> þe O.    <sup>23</sup> heed O.    <sup>24</sup> nomen O.

<sup>25-25</sup> priken O.    <sup>26</sup> maden O.    <sup>27</sup> go O.

til pat his bowales were <sup>1</sup>alle drawn<sup>1</sup> out : & so deide pere Aluredē,  
 prouȝ treson of pe Erl Godwyne. ¶ When pe lordes of Engelande  
<sup>2</sup>hade herde & wist how Alured, pat shulde have ben her kyng,  
 was put to<sup>3</sup> dep prouȝ pe false traitoure, pe Erl Godwynne, pai <sup>4</sup>  
 weren<sup>4</sup> al wonder<sup>5</sup> wroth, & swore bituene ham, by<sup>5</sup> God & <sup>6</sup>by  
 his<sup>6</sup> names, pat he shulde die in mor worse deth pan dede Edrik of  
 Stratton, pat hade bitraiede his Lord E[d]munde Irenside.<sup>7</sup> and  
 pai wolde haue taken him, & put him vnto pe dep, but pe pef <sup>8</sup>  
 traitoure fley<sup>8</sup> pens into Denmare, & pere helde him iiij ȝere &  
 more, & loste aH his lond<sup>9</sup> in Engelande.

Of Seynt Edward<sup>10</sup> pe Confessoure, pat was Aluredes broþer;

<sup>10</sup>How he was Kyng <sup>11</sup>of Engelande.<sup>11</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Cen- 12  
 tesimo ¶ xxv<sup>to</sup>.<sup>12</sup>

**A**Nd when pis <sup>13</sup>was done,<sup>13</sup> alle pe Barons of Enge[land] senten  
 anoper tyme into Normandy, for pat Edward shulde<sup>14</sup> come  
 into Engelande with michel<sup>15</sup> honour. And pis Edward in his <sup>16</sup>  
 childehode louede al-myghty God, & <sup>16</sup>him drade,<sup>16</sup> & in honeste  
 and clennessē leued<sup>17</sup> his lif, and hatede synne as dep. ¶ And  
 when he was cronede<sup>18</sup> and annoyntede wip<sup>19</sup> real power, he forȝate  
 nouȝt his gode maners & condicions <sup>20</sup>& custumes<sup>20</sup> pat he ferst <sup>20</sup>  
 vsede,<sup>21</sup> for no maner honour, ne for no<sup>5</sup> richesse, ne for no maner  
 hyennesse, but euer more & <sup>22</sup>more ȝaf him to godenesse, and wel  
 louede God & al mekenesse, & louede God & holy cherche passyng  
 al maner ping, & pore men also, & ham<sup>23</sup> helde as pai hade bene <sup>24</sup>  
 his owen breþerne, & to ham ofte ȝaf grete almesse wip gode wille.

Of pe ferst specialte pat God shewede for seynt Edwardes<sup>24</sup>  
 loue by his lif. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ xxv[j]<sup>to</sup>.

<sup>25</sup>**H**It bifelle oppon a day as he went fram<sup>26</sup> pe che[reh] of <sup>28</sup>  
 Westmynstre, & hade herde masse of seynt Iohan  
 Euangelist, for-asmiche as he louede seynt Iohan Euangelist

<sup>1-1</sup> drawn al O. <sup>2</sup> leaf 70, back. <sup>3</sup> vn-to O. <sup>4</sup> were O.

<sup>5</sup> om. O. <sup>6-6</sup> his holy O. <sup>7</sup> Irenside's O. <sup>8</sup> fledde O. <sup>9</sup> lond O.

<sup>10</sup> MS. Trin. Coll. Dubl. 490 (D) continues here. <sup>11-11</sup> om. O.

<sup>12</sup> MS. xxiiij<sup>to</sup>; Secundo D. <sup>13-13</sup> Traytour had al þus ydone O.

<sup>14</sup> shul D. schuld O. <sup>15</sup> mych O. <sup>16-16</sup> drad hym O.

<sup>17</sup> lade D. lad O. <sup>18</sup> crowned kyng D. <sup>19</sup> with a O.

<sup>20-20</sup> om. DO.

<sup>21</sup> vsede ne forȝate nouȝt alle gode custumes D. vsed & forȝate not al good  
 Custumes O.

<sup>22</sup> om. D. <sup>23</sup> ham louede & D. hem loued & O. <sup>24</sup> Edward O.

<sup>25</sup> leaf 71. <sup>26</sup> fro O.

most<sup>1</sup> specially after<sup>2</sup> God and oure lady, þan he dede eny oper  
seynt. ¶ And so þere come to him a pilgryme, & praede him, for  
þe loue of God & of seynt Iohan Euangelist, some god him forto  
4 3eue. And þe Kyng <sup>2</sup>priuely toke<sup>2</sup> þe ryng of his fenger, priuely<sup>3</sup>  
þat no man perceyuede hit, & 3af it þe pilgryme; & he it vnder-  
fonge, & went þens. þis goode Kyng Edward made alle þe gode  
lawes of Engeland þat 3itte bep<sup>4</sup> most holden, & <sup>5</sup>was so mercyable  
8 & <sup>6</sup>ful of pite þat no man myȝt bene<sup>7</sup> more.

**How þe Erl Godwyn come aȝeyn into Engeland, & hade aȝeyne  
al his land, & afterward<sup>8</sup> Seynt Edward wedede his  
douȝter. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xxv[ij]<sup>to</sup>.**

12 **W**Hen þe Erl Godwyn, þat was <sup>9</sup>in Denmare duellyng,<sup>9</sup> hade  
michel<sup>10</sup> herd of þe godenesse of Edward, & þat he was  
ful of mercy & of<sup>11</sup> pitee, & pouȝt þat he wolde goȝn<sup>12</sup> aȝeyn into  
Engeland forto seche and <sup>13</sup>to haue<sup>13</sup> grace of him, & þat he myght  
16 haue þe<sup>14</sup> lande aȝeyn in pees, & arraiede him as miche as he might,  
& put him toward þe see, & come into Engeland, to Londoȝ, þere  
þat þe Kyng was þat tyme, & al þe<sup>15</sup> lordes of Engeland, & helde<sup>16</sup>  
parlement. ¶ Godewyn sent to ham þat were his frendes, & were  
20 <sup>17</sup>þe moste<sup>17</sup> gretteste lordes of þe londe, & praiede ham to biseche  
þe Kynges grace for him, and<sup>18</sup> þat he wolde his <sup>19</sup>pees & his  
londes<sup>19</sup> graunt<sup>20</sup> him. his <sup>21</sup>frendes Lade<sup>21</sup> him bifore þe Kyng  
forto biseche<sup>22</sup> grace. ¶ And anone as þe Kyng him saw, he appelede  
24 him of tresouȝ, & of þe dep of Alurede his broþer, and pise wordes  
vnto<sup>23</sup> him saide: ¶ “Traitor Godwyn!” quod <sup>24</sup>þe Kyng, “I þe  
appele, þat þow haste bitraede & slayne my broþer Alurede.”  
¶ “Certes, sire,” quod Godwyn, “saf ȝour grace,<sup>25</sup> ȝour pees &  
28 ȝoure<sup>26</sup> lorde-shippe, y neuer him bitraede ne sloughe; and þerof<sup>27</sup>  
y put me [in] rewarde of ȝour cou[r]t.” ¶ “Now, faire lordes,<sup>28</sup> ȝe  
þat bep<sup>29</sup> my lieges, erles & barons of þe lande, þat here bene alle

<sup>1</sup> more þan D. more O. <sup>2-2</sup> prinliche nome D. priuely nome O.

<sup>3</sup> om. DO. <sup>4</sup> ben O. <sup>5</sup> & he O. om. R. <sup>6</sup> and so DO. <sup>7</sup> be DO.

<sup>8</sup> afterward seynt Edward D. after seynt Edward O. afterward R.

<sup>9-9</sup> duellyng in Denmare D. dwellyng in Denmark O.

<sup>10</sup> miche D. <sup>11</sup> om. O. <sup>12</sup> go DO. <sup>13-13</sup> haue mercy and D.

<sup>14</sup> his DO. <sup>15</sup> the gret D. <sup>16</sup> helde a gret D. held a gret O.

<sup>17-17</sup> þe the sic D. <sup>18</sup> om. D.

<sup>19-19</sup> londe and his pees D. pees & his land O. <sup>20</sup> graunten O.

<sup>21-21</sup> enemyes ladden O. <sup>22</sup> seche DO. <sup>23</sup> to D. <sup>24</sup> leaf 71, back.

<sup>25</sup> grace & D. grace & O. <sup>26</sup> ȝour D. ȝoure O. þoure R.

<sup>27</sup> þerfore O. <sup>28</sup> lordes quod þe kyng DO. <sup>29</sup> bene D. ben O.

assemblede,—<sup>1</sup>wel 3e hauen<sup>1</sup> herle myn appele, and pe ansure<sup>2</sup> of Godwyn; & perfore y wil pat 3e award and do ryght.” ¶ pe erles and<sup>3</sup> barons po drowen ham<sup>4</sup> al to-geder<sup>5</sup>,<sup>4</sup> forto done<sup>5</sup> pis award by ham-self. and so pai<sup>6</sup> spoken diuerseliche<sup>6</sup> amonges ham; for<sup>4</sup> somme sayde pat<sup>7</sup> pere was neuer<sup>8</sup> allyaunce by homage, serment,<sup>8</sup> seruisse, ne by<sup>7</sup> lordeship, bituene Godwyn & Alurede, for which ping pai might him draw. ¶ And at pe laste pai demede pat he shulde put him into<sup>9</sup> pe Kynges mercy altogeders. ¶ po spake pe<sup>8</sup> Erl Leueryche of Couentre, a gode man to God & to alle pe worlde, & tolde his resouñ in pis maner, & saide: “pe Erl Godwyne is pe best frendede man of Engeland<sup>1</sup> after<sup>9</sup> pe kyng; and wel myzt it nouzt bene<sup>10</sup> gaynsaide pat, wipout consel of Godwyn, Alurede was<sup>12</sup> neuer<sup>9</sup> put vnto<sup>11</sup> dep; Wherefore y awarde, as tochyng my part, pat him-self<sup>12</sup> and his sone, and eueryche<sup>13</sup> of vs xij Erles pat bep<sup>14</sup> his frendes, wende bifore pe Kyng<sup>1</sup> chargede wip alse miche<sup>15</sup> golde and siluer<sup>1</sup> as we mowe bere bytuene oure hondes, & pruyng pe<sup>16</sup> Kyng forzeue his euel wille to pe Erle Godwyn, and resceyue his homage, & his landes<sup>16</sup> zelde a3eyn.” & alle pai accordede vnto pat awarde, and<sup>17</sup> comen in pis<sup>17</sup> maner as<sup>18</sup> is aboue-saide, eueryche<sup>19</sup> of ham wip golde & siluer<sup>1</sup>,<sup>20</sup> as miche as pai myght bere bituenes<sup>21</sup> <sup>20</sup>here hondes, bifore pe Kyng<sup>1</sup>; and pai saiden<sup>22</sup> pe fou[r]me and pe maner<sup>1</sup> of her<sup>1</sup> accord<sup>1</sup> and of her awarde. ¶ The Kyng wolde nouzt ham<sup>23</sup> gayne-saie; but alse miche<sup>24</sup> as pai<sup>25</sup> wolde ordeyne,<sup>25</sup> he<sup>26</sup> grauntede & confermede; And so was pe Erl Godwyn accordede<sup>24</sup> wip pe Kyng<sup>1</sup>, & hade a3eyne al<sup>27</sup> his lande; and aftirward he bar<sup>1</sup> him so wel & so wiseliche<sup>28</sup> pat pe Kyng louede him wonder<sup>1</sup> myche, & with him was ful priue. And<sup>29</sup> wipin a litel tyme<sup>30</sup> pe Kyng louede him so miche pat he spousesde Godwynus doughter, and<sup>28</sup> made her<sup>1</sup> Quene; and neuerpeles,<sup>31</sup> for al pat, pouz pe Kyng<sup>1</sup> hade a wif, he leuede euermore in chastite & in clenness of body, wipouten<sup>32</sup> eny flesshely dede<sup>7</sup> doying<sup>1</sup> with his wif; & pe Quene also, <sup>33</sup>in her<sup>1</sup> Halfe,<sup>33</sup> lade holy lif<sup>34</sup> ij 3ere, and deide; & afterward pe<sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> ful wel 3e haue D. ful weel 3e haue O.<sup>2</sup> ansnere also D. answer also O. <sup>3</sup> & the D. <sup>4</sup>—<sup>4</sup> togederes D.<sup>5</sup> do D. <sup>6</sup>—<sup>6</sup> speken diuersly O. <sup>7</sup> om. D. <sup>8</sup> seriant D. om. O.<sup>9</sup> in DO. <sup>10</sup> be O. <sup>11</sup> to D. to be O.<sup>12</sup> MS. him-self and him-self. <sup>13</sup> enery DO. <sup>14</sup> ben O.<sup>15</sup> as mych O. <sup>16</sup> lande D. land O. <sup>17</sup>—<sup>17</sup> come in the D.<sup>18</sup> pat DO. <sup>19</sup> eche O. <sup>20</sup> leaf 72. <sup>21</sup> bituene D. betwene O.<sup>22</sup> seid O. <sup>23</sup> hym O. <sup>24</sup> as miche D. as mych O.<sup>25</sup>—<sup>25</sup> ordeynede D. <sup>26</sup> & O. <sup>27</sup> om. O. <sup>28</sup> wisely D. wysely O.<sup>29</sup> and so D. <sup>30</sup> while D. <sup>31</sup> nopelesse D. nethes O.<sup>32</sup> with-oute DO. <sup>33</sup>—<sup>33</sup> om. D. <sup>34</sup> lif on hir half D.

Kyng leuede al his lif wipouten<sup>1</sup> eny wif. ¶ The Kyng ȝaf þe Erldome of Oxenford to Harolde, þat was Godwynes sone, & made him Erle; and so wel þai were<sup>2</sup> bilouede, boþe þe fader and <sup>3</sup>þe sone,<sup>3</sup> & so pryue wip þe Kyng, þat þai myght<sup>4</sup> do<sup>5</sup> what þing<sup>6</sup> þai wolde by righte, for<sup>7</sup> aȝeynes ryght he wolde nouȝt<sup>8</sup> done<sup>9</sup> for no maner<sup>10</sup> man, so gode and trew he was of consciens; and perfore our Lorde Ihesu Crist, grete special<sup>10</sup> loue to him shewed.

8 How seynt Edward saw Swyn, Kyng of Denmarc, drenche<sup>11</sup> in þe see at<sup>12</sup> þe sacrament, as he stode & herde<sup>13</sup> masse.  
*Capitulo Centesimo. ¶ xxviij<sup>mo</sup>.<sup>14</sup>*

12 **H**It bifelle oppoñ<sup>15</sup> Whitsonday, as Kyng Edward herde his masse in þe grete cherch of Westmynstre, ryght at þe leuacioun of Ihesu Cristes body, and as al men were gaderede into þe cherche, & comen neyer<sup>16</sup> <sup>17</sup>þe auter,<sup>18</sup> sacring forto see, ¶ The <sup>19</sup>Kyng<sup>19</sup> his<sup>19</sup> hondes lifte vp an hye, and a<sup>2</sup> grete laughter toke op; 16 wherfore all þat aboute him stode, gretly gon wonder<sup>20</sup>; & after masse þai axede whi þe kyngus laughter was.<sup>21</sup> ¶ “Faire lordes,” quod þe Kyng, “Swyn þe ȝonger,<sup>22</sup> þat was Kyng of Denmarc, come into þe see wip al his power<sup>23</sup> forto haue comen<sup>23</sup> into 20 Engeland, oppoñ vs forto haue werrede; and y saw him and al his folc drenche<sup>24</sup> in þe hye<sup>25</sup> see: & al þis saw y in þe<sup>25</sup> eleuacioun of Ihesu<sup>26</sup> Cristes body bytuene þe prestes hondes; & y hade perof so miche ioye, þat y myght nought my laughter wipholde.” 24 ¶ And þe Erl Leueriche bisides him stode at þe leuacioun, & openlich he saw þe fourme of brede turne into þe<sup>27</sup> likenesse of a <sup>28</sup>knaf childe ȝong,<sup>28</sup> and toke<sup>29</sup> op his right hande, & ferst<sup>2</sup> blessede þe Kyng, and afterward þe Erle. And þe Erle<sup>30</sup> turnede him 28 anone<sup>31</sup> toward þe Kyng, to make him see þat holy sight. ¶ And þo<sup>32</sup> saide þe Kyng: “sir Erle,” quod he, “I see <sup>33</sup>wel þat ȝe seeþ,<sup>33</sup>

<sup>1</sup> withoute O.      <sup>2</sup> om. D.      <sup>3-3</sup> he O.

<sup>4-4</sup> þat þai wolde D. & so pryue with þe kyng boþe þe fadir & þe sone þat þei myght O.

<sup>5</sup> done O.      <sup>6</sup> þing þat D.      <sup>7</sup> and D.      <sup>8</sup> no þing O.

<sup>9</sup> do D.      <sup>10</sup> specialte & O.      <sup>11</sup> drenched DO.      <sup>12</sup> in O.

<sup>13</sup> herde his D.      <sup>14</sup> herd his O.      <sup>15</sup> MS. has xxviij<sup>mo</sup>.      <sup>16</sup> oppon a D.

<sup>17</sup> ney3 D.      <sup>18</sup> ny O.      <sup>19</sup> leaf 72, back.      <sup>20</sup> Auter þe D.

<sup>21-21</sup> kynges O.      <sup>22</sup> wondryn O.

<sup>23</sup> lauzter was D.      <sup>24</sup> laughter was O.      <sup>25</sup> laughter R.      <sup>26</sup> wonger sic D.

<sup>27</sup> come O.      <sup>28</sup> drenched O.      <sup>29</sup> om. O.      <sup>30</sup> om. D.      <sup>31</sup> Ihesus O.

<sup>32</sup> om. DO.      <sup>33-33</sup> ȝonge childe D.      <sup>34</sup> Child ȝong O.      <sup>35</sup> nome DO.

<sup>36</sup> Erle anone D.      <sup>37</sup> Erle anon O.      <sup>38</sup> om. DO.      <sup>39</sup> þus O.

<sup>40-40</sup> þet ȝe see ryȝt wel blessede be god D.      <sup>41</sup> wel þat sight O.

pankede be God<sup>t</sup> pat y haue honourede my God, my saueoure,  
Visibili <sup>1</sup>Ihesu Crist<sup>1</sup> in fourme of man, whos name bene<sup>2</sup> blessedde  
in al worldes ! Amen !”

**How pe ryng pat Sent Edward hade 3euen<sup>3</sup> to a pore pilgrime, <sup>4</sup>  
for pe loue of seynt Iohan Euaungelist, come a3eyn vnto<sup>4</sup>  
Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edwar<sup>t</sup>. Capitulo Centesimo xxix<sup>mo</sup>.**

**T**HIS noble man Seynt Edward regnede xiiij 3ere. & pus hit  
bifelle oppoñ a tyme biforne<sup>5</sup> er he deide, pat ij men of 8  
Engeland<sup>t</sup> were went to pe Holy Lande, & haden done her<sup>t</sup>  
pilgrimage, & wer<sup>t</sup> goyng a3eyne toward her<sup>t</sup> owen contre. ¶ And  
as pai went in pe way, pai<sup>6</sup> mette a pilgrime pat curtesly ham  
<sup>7</sup>Saluede, and axede of ham in wh[a]t lande & in What contre pai <sup>12</sup>  
were born ; & pai saide “in Engeland<sup>t</sup>.” ¶ po axede he<sup>8</sup> who was  
Kyng of Engeland<sup>t</sup> ; and pai ansuerede & saide “pe goode Kyng  
Edward.” “Faire frendes,” po saide pe pilgrime, “when pat 3e  
come into 3our<sup>t</sup> contre a3eyne, y praye 3ow pat 3e wolde<sup>9</sup> gone<sup>10</sup> 16  
vnto<sup>11</sup> Kyng Edward, and ofte-tymes him grete in my name, &  
ofte-tymes pank him of his grete curtesye pat he to me hap done,  
A[nd] nameliche<sup>12</sup> for pe ryng pat he 3af me when he hade herde  
masse at Westmynstre, for seynt Iohnes loue Euaungelist,” and <sup>20</sup>  
<sup>13</sup>toke po<sup>13</sup> pe Ryng<sup>t</sup><sup>14</sup> to pe pilgrimes, and saide, “y pray 3ow forto  
<sup>15</sup>goñ & <sup>16</sup>bere pis ryng, & take hit to Kyng Edward, & telle him  
pat y sende hit<sup>15</sup> him ; and a ful ryche<sup>16</sup> 3ift y wil him 3eue ; for  
oppoñ pe tuelfep<sup>17</sup> day he shal come to me, & euer<sup>18</sup>more duelle in <sup>24</sup>  
blisse wipouten ende.” ¶ “Sir,” saide pe pilgrimes, “what man  
bep<sup>18</sup> 3e, & in what place is 3our<sup>t</sup> duellyng<sup>19</sup>?” ¶ “Faire frendes,”  
*quod* he, “I ame Iohan Euaungelist & am duellyng<sup>19</sup> wip Almyghty<sup>19</sup>  
God<sup>t</sup> ; & 3our<sup>t</sup> Kyng Edward is my frende, & y loue him specialy <sup>28</sup>  
for enchesoñ pat he hap euer<sup>19</sup> Leuede in clennesses, and is clene  
maide ; and y pray 3ow my message al forto done as y haue to<sup>8</sup>  
3ow saide.” ¶ When seynt Iohan Euaungelist hade pus ham  
chargede, sodeynly<sup>20</sup> he voidede out of her sight. 32

pe pilgrimes po pankede Almyghty Gode, & went forp in her<sup>t</sup>  
way. ¶ & when pai hade gon ij or iij myle, pai bigon to waxen<sup>21</sup>

1-1 om. D.    2 be DO.    3 3eue DO    4 to O.    5 byfor O.  
6 MS. pat.    7 leaf 73.    8 om. O.    9 wol O.    10 go DO.  
11 to pe O.    12 namely D.    13-13 po toke D.    nome po O.  
14 ryng & toke it O.    15 om. D.    16 ryche O.    17 xij O.  
18 be DO.    19 almy3t D.    20 sodenlich O.    21 wax D.    wexe O.



wery, & sette adoune ham forto reste; & so pai felle<sup>1</sup> and slepte.<sup>1</sup>  
¶ And when<sup>2</sup> pai hade slepte<sup>3</sup> wel, one of ham<sup>4</sup> awoke, & lifte vp  
his henede<sup>5</sup> & lokede aboute & saide vnto<sup>6</sup> his felaw, "arise op, and  
4 wende we in oure way." "What," saide pat on<sup>7</sup> felaw to pat  
oper, "where be we now?" ¶ "Certis," saide pat opere<sup>8</sup> felawe,  
"it semep<sup>8</sup> me pat it<sup>2</sup> is nouzt þe same contreye pat we laide vs in  
<sup>9</sup>forto reste & <sup>9</sup>slep, for we were þo fro Ierusalem but iij mile."<sup>10</sup>  
8 ¶ þai tok<sup>11</sup> op her hondes, and blessedede ham, & went forþ in her  
waye. & as þai went in here way þai saw sheperdes goyng  
wip her shepe, þat spoken<sup>12</sup> none opere langage but Englishe.  
¶ "Leue frendes," quod on of þe pilgrimes, "what contre is þis, &  
12 who is lorde þerof?" and one<sup>2</sup> of þe sheperdes ansurede: "þis is  
þe cuntre of Kent, in Engeland, of þe whiche þe gode Kyng  
Edward is lorde." ¶ þe pilgrimes<sup>13</sup> þankede þo<sup>13</sup> Almyghty God &  
seynt Iohan<sup>14</sup> euaungelist, & went forþ in her way, & come to  
16 Kaunterbery, & fro þens vnto<sup>15</sup> London; and þere þai fonden<sup>16</sup> þe  
Kyng, & tokde him<sup>17</sup> fro þe bigynny[n]g vnto þe ende as miche as  
seynt Iohan hade ham chargede, & of al þingus how þai spedden<sup>18</sup>  
by þe way, & toke þe ryng to<sup>19</sup> Kyng Edward; & he vnderfonge  
20 hit, & þankede Almyghty God & seynt Iohan Euaungelist, & þo  
made him aredy euery day, <sup>20</sup>fram day to day,<sup>20</sup> forto wende out of  
þis lif when God wolde for him sende.

How seynt Edward [de]ide on the xij<sup>21</sup> day. Capitulo ¶ Cen-  
24 tesimo ¶ Tricesimo.

**A**Nd after hit bifelle<sup>22</sup> þus in Cristenmasse<sup>23</sup> eve: as þe  
holy man Edward was at Godes seruice, matynes forto<sup>24</sup>  
hure of þat holy<sup>25</sup> fest, he bicome ful <sup>26</sup>sik, and in þe morwe  
28 <sup>27</sup>endurede wip michel payn<sup>27</sup> masse forto here, & after lete him  
bene<sup>28</sup> lade into his chaumbre, þere forto resten<sup>29</sup> him; but <sup>30</sup>into  
his<sup>30</sup> halle amonges<sup>31</sup> his barons and his knyghtes myght he nouzt

<sup>1-1</sup> aslepe DO. <sup>2</sup> om. D. <sup>3</sup> sleped D. <sup>4</sup> leaf 73, back.

<sup>5</sup> hed O. <sup>6</sup> to D. <sup>7</sup> o O. <sup>8-8</sup> it semes D. it semeth O.

<sup>9-9</sup> to O. <sup>10</sup> miles D. myles O. <sup>11</sup> nomen DO. <sup>12</sup> speke O.

<sup>13-13</sup> þo þankede D. <sup>14</sup> om. O. <sup>15</sup> to O. <sup>16</sup> fonde D. founde O.

<sup>17</sup> him al D. hym al O. <sup>18</sup> spedde DO. <sup>19</sup> to þe O.

<sup>20-20</sup> om. D. fro day to day O. from day R.

<sup>21</sup> twelfe O. <sup>22</sup> fel O. <sup>23</sup> cristemasse DO.

<sup>24</sup> MS. has forto done, with done underlined for omission.

<sup>25</sup> hye DO. <sup>26</sup> leaf 74.

<sup>27-27</sup> durede with miche payne the D. endured with mych payne þe O.

<sup>28</sup> be DO. <sup>29</sup> rest DO.

<sup>30-30</sup> MS. into his into his. <sup>31</sup> among O.

come, ham forto comfort and solace, as he was <sup>1</sup>wonte forto<sup>1</sup> done at þat worþi feste; Wherefore al his<sup>2</sup> merþ & comfort amongus alle þat were in þe halle was turnede into<sup>3</sup> care and sorwe, for enchesouñ þat þai drade<sup>4</sup> forto lese<sup>5</sup> her<sup>6</sup> gode Lorde þe Kyng<sup>7</sup>. 4 ¶ And oppoñ seynt Iohnes <sup>8</sup>day Euaungelist<sup>6</sup> þat þo come next, þe Kyng<sup>7</sup> vnderfonge his rightes of holy cherche, as falliþ to euery Cristen man, & abode þe mercy & <sup>7</sup>wille of God. ¶ And þo ij pilgrimes he lete biforn him come, and ȝaf ham riche ȝiftes, & 8 bitoke ham vnto God. And also þe Abbot of Westmynstre he lete biforn him come, & toke him þat ryng in honour of Gode & <sup>8</sup>of Seynt Iohan<sup>8</sup> Euaungelist. And þe Abbot <sup>9</sup>toke hit & <sup>9</sup>put hit amonge oþere reliques, so þat it is at Westmynstre, & 12 ener<sup>10</sup> shal be. and so lay þe Kyng sike to<sup>11</sup> þe xij eve;<sup>12</sup> & þo deide þe gode Kyng Edward at Westmynstre; & þere he liþ, for whos loue God haþ done meny miracles. And þis was in þe ȝere of<sup>13</sup> Incarnacioun <sup>14</sup>of oure Lorde Ihesu Crist,<sup>14</sup> M<sup>t</sup>. lxx. ȝere; & 16 after he was translatede, & put into þe shryne, þrouȝ þe noble Martir Seint ¶ Thomas of Kaunterbery.

**How Harolde, þat was Godwynus sone, was made Kyng<sup>7</sup>; & how he scapede<sup>15</sup> fro þe Duc of Britaign. Capitulo Centesimo xxxj<sup>o</sup>.**

**W**Hen Seynt Edward was gone oute of þis worlde, & was gone to God, & worþely enterede, as <sup>16</sup>perteynede to<sup>16</sup> soche a lorde forto bene,<sup>17</sup> þe barons <sup>18</sup>of þe Lamþ Wolde haue 24 hade Edward Helyngus, sone<sup>19</sup> to Edward þe Outlaghe, þat was Edmundus sone<sup>20</sup> Iremsyde, to bene<sup>17</sup> Kyng<sup>7</sup>, for-asmiche as<sup>21</sup> he was moste kyndest kynges blode of þe reaume. ¶ But Harold,<sup>22</sup> sone þrouȝ þe Erle Godwyn,<sup>23</sup> & þe strengþ of his fader<sup>23</sup> Godwyn, & þrouȝ 28 oþere grete lordes of þe reaume þat were of here<sup>24</sup> Kyn & vnto him sib, seisede al Engeland<sup>25</sup> into his Honde, & anone lete crone him Kyng<sup>7</sup>, after þe enterement of Seynt Edward. ¶ This Harolde,

<sup>1-1</sup> woned to O. <sup>2</sup> here O. <sup>3</sup> vnto D. <sup>4</sup> dradden O.

<sup>5</sup> lesen O. <sup>6-6</sup> Euaungelist day O. <sup>7</sup> & þe O.

<sup>8-8</sup> seynt Marie and of seynt Iohan the D. seynt Marye & of seynt Iohn) þe O.

<sup>9-9</sup> om. D. nome & O. toke & hit & sic R. <sup>10</sup> euermore DO.

<sup>11</sup> til DO. <sup>12</sup> euen O. <sup>13</sup> of the D. <sup>14-14</sup> om. D. <sup>15</sup> ascaped O.

<sup>16-16</sup> apperteynede D. perteyneb to O. <sup>17</sup> be O. <sup>18</sup> leaf 74, back.

<sup>19</sup> Helyngus sone D. Helyngus sone O. Helyngus R.

<sup>20</sup> Edmundus sone D. Edmundes sone O. Edmundus R. <sup>21</sup> for D.

<sup>22</sup> MS. has Haroldes, with es underlined for omission; Haroldis O.

<sup>23</sup> Godwyne D. Godwyn O. Godwy R. <sup>24</sup> his DO. <sup>25</sup> þe lond O.

þat was Godwynus sone, þe secunde<sup>1</sup> ȝere after þat Seynt Edward  
 was dede, Wolde haue gone into Flaundres, but he was dryuen<sup>2</sup>  
 þrouȝ tempest into þe contre of Pountif, & þere he was take &  
 4 brouȝt vnto<sup>3</sup> Duc William. ¶ And þis Harolde wende þo þat þe  
 Duc William wolde haue bene avenged oppoñ him, for encheson  
 þat þe Erl Godwyn, þat was Haroldes<sup>4</sup> fader, <sup>5</sup>hade done<sup>5</sup> quelle  
 Alured, þat was Seynt Edwardus broþer, and principally for  
 8 Alured,<sup>6</sup> Quene Emmes sone, þat was Richardes moder, Dukt of  
 Normandye, þat was Aile to þe Duc William. ¶ And noþeles,  
 when þe<sup>7</sup> Duc William hade Harolde in prisoun & vnder his  
 power,<sup>7</sup> for-alse<sup>8</sup>-miehe as þis Harold was a noble knyght, wise, &  
 12 worpi of Body, & þat his fader & he were accordede wiþ þe gode  
 Kyng Edward, & þerfore<sup>9</sup> wolde nouȝt <sup>10</sup>mysdone<sup>11</sup> him,<sup>10</sup> but al  
 maner þingus þat bituene ham were spoken & ordeynede, Harolde  
 by his gode Wille suore oppon a boke & oppoñ Holy seyntȝ, þat he  
 16 shulde<sup>12</sup> spouse and wedde Duc Williamus douȝter after þe deþ of  
 Seynt Edward, and þat he shulde besely <sup>13</sup>done His deuer forto<sup>14</sup>  
 Kepe & saue þe reaume of Engeland, to þe profite & auauntage of  
 Duc William. ¶ And when Harolde hade þus made his oth vnto<sup>15</sup>  
 20 Duc William, he lete him gone,<sup>16</sup> & ȝaf him<sup>17</sup> riche ȝiftes; And <sup>18</sup>he  
 þo<sup>18</sup> went þens, & come into Engeland, & anone dede in þis maner  
 when Seint Edward was dede; and as<sup>19</sup> man falsely forsuore, he  
 lete crone him Kyng of Engeland, & falsely brac þe<sup>20</sup> couenauntȝ  
 24 þat he hade made bifore<sup>21</sup> wiþ Duc William; wherfore he was  
 wiþ him wonder wroþe, & swore þat he wolde<sup>22</sup> oppoñ him bene<sup>7</sup>  
 avengede, <sup>23</sup>whateuer so<sup>23</sup> him bifelle. ¶ And anone William<sup>24</sup>  
 lete assemble a grete hoste, and come into Engeland, to avenge  
 28 him oppon Harolde, & to conquere þe lande if þat he myght.  
 ¶ And in þe same ȝere þat Harok was cronede, Harok Hare-  
 strenge, Kyng of Denmare, arryuede in Scotland, and þouȝ[t] haue  
 be<sup>25</sup> kyng of Engeland. & he come into Engeland, & quelled &  
 32 robbed, & destroyede al þat he might, til þat he come to ȝorke;  
 & þere he quelled meny men of Armys Mt,<sup>26</sup> & an<sup>27</sup> C prestes.

<sup>1</sup> ij O.    <sup>2</sup> dryue D. dryve O.    <sup>3</sup> into the D. to þe O.

<sup>4</sup> Harold O.    <sup>5-5</sup> lete D. had lete O.

<sup>6</sup> enchesoun þat Alured was D. encheson þat Alured was O.

<sup>7</sup> om. D.    <sup>8</sup> as DO.    <sup>9</sup> þerfore he O.    <sup>10-10</sup> hym mysdone O.

<sup>11</sup> mysdo D.    <sup>12</sup> wold O.    <sup>13</sup> leaf 75.    <sup>14</sup> to O.    <sup>15</sup> vn-to þe O.

<sup>16</sup> go DO.    <sup>17</sup> him meny D. hym meny O.    <sup>18-18</sup> tho he D.

<sup>19</sup> as a DO.    <sup>20</sup> his O.

<sup>21</sup> MS. has bifore þis, with þis underlined for omission.    <sup>22</sup> wolde be D.

<sup>23-23</sup> what-so-euere O.    <sup>24</sup> William bastard O.    <sup>25</sup> bene D. ben O.

<sup>26</sup> a þousand D. a Mt O.    <sup>27</sup> om. O.

¶ When þis tyding come to þe Kyng, he assemblede a strong power, and went forto feizt wip Harold of Denmare, & wip his owen honde him quelled, and þe Danois<sup>1</sup> were descomfitede; & þo þat <sup>2</sup>laſte alyue,<sup>2</sup> wip myche sorwe went<sup>3</sup> to her<sup>3</sup> shippes; and þus Kyng Harolde of Engeland quelled Kyng Harold of Denmare.

**How William Bastard, Duc of Normandy, come into Engeland,  
& quelled Kyng Harold. Capitulo <sup>xx</sup>vj xij.<sup>4</sup>**

**A**ND when þis bataile was done, Harolde bicomē <sup>5</sup>so prout, and <sup>8</sup>wolde <sup>6</sup>nouȝt departe<sup>6</sup> with his peple of ping<sup>4</sup> þat he hade gete, but helde it al towarde<sup>7</sup> him-self; Wherefore þe most part<sup>8</sup> of his men were wroþ, and fram<sup>9</sup> him departede, so þat oneliche wip him lefte no mo but his soudeours. ¶ And oppon a day, as <sup>12</sup>he sate at þe<sup>10</sup> mete, messagers<sup>11</sup> comme to him, & saide þat William Bastard, Duc of Normandy, was Arrynede in Engeland wip a grete host, and hade taken<sup>12</sup> al þe lande aboute Hastyng, & hade also mynede þe casteH. ¶ When þe Kyng hade<sup>13</sup> herde þis tydynges,<sup>14</sup> <sup>16</sup>he went pider wip a litil peple in<sup>15</sup> al þe hast þat he myght, for<sup>16</sup> a litel peple was wip him lefte. ¶ And when he was comen<sup>17</sup> pider, he ordeynede forto ȝene bataile to þe Duc William; but þe Duc axede him of pise iij pingus: <sup>18</sup>if þat<sup>18</sup> he wolde haue his doughter <sup>20</sup>to wif, as he hade made <sup>19</sup>& swore<sup>19</sup> his othe <sup>19</sup>& bihight<sup>19</sup>; <sup>19</sup>or þat he wolde halde þe lande of him in truage; or þat he wolde determine þis ping bi<sup>20</sup> bataile. ¶ þis Harold was a prout man & a stout, and truste wonder<sup>21</sup> miche oppon his owen strengþ, & fauzt wip<sup>22</sup> the <sup>24</sup>duc & wip his peple; but Harold & his men were descomfitede, & himself <sup>23</sup>was pere<sup>23</sup> slayn. & þis bataile was endede at Tonbrigge, in þe secunde ȝere <sup>19</sup>of his regne,<sup>19</sup> oppon seynt Kalixtes day; and he lip at Waltham. 28

**Of Kyng William Bastard, & how he gouernede him <sup>24</sup>wel & <sup>24</sup>wisely; & of þe wer<sup>1</sup> bituene him & <sup>25</sup>þe Kyng of Fraunce.  
Capitulo Centesimo xxxiiij.<sup>26</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> Danes O.      <sup>2-2</sup> were laft on lyf D.      <sup>3</sup> fley D. fled O.  
<sup>4-4</sup> centesimo tricesimo tercio D.      <sup>5</sup> leaf 75, back.  
<sup>6-6</sup> noþing parte DO.      <sup>7</sup> toward DO.      <sup>8</sup> partye O.      <sup>9</sup> fro O.  
<sup>10</sup> om. O.      <sup>11</sup> a messenger D.      a messenger O.      <sup>12</sup> y-take O.  
<sup>13</sup> om. D.      <sup>14</sup> Tydyng O.      <sup>15</sup> with O.      <sup>16</sup> and D.      <sup>17</sup> come O.  
<sup>18-18</sup> it sic D.      <sup>19-19</sup> om. D.      <sup>20</sup> purgh O.      <sup>21</sup> om. D.  
<sup>22</sup> wip the D.      with þe O.      wip R.      <sup>23-23</sup> pere was O.      <sup>24-24</sup> om. O.  
<sup>25</sup> or D.      <sup>26</sup> xiiij<sup>o</sup> sic O.

**W**hen William Bastard, Duc of Normandy, hadde conquere<sup>de</sup> le  
 al pe land, oppoñ Cri[s]tenmasse<sup>1</sup> day po next sewyng<sup>t</sup> he  
 lete crone him kyng at Westmynstre, & was a worpi kyng, & 3af<sup>2</sup>  
 4 to Englisshemen largely landes, & to his knyghtes. ¶ And after-  
 ward he went<sup>3</sup> ouer pe see, & come<sup>4</sup> into Normandy, & pere  
 duelled<sup>e</sup> a while; & in pe secunde 3ere of his regne he come a3eyne  
 vnto<sup>6</sup> Engeland, and brouzt<sup>7</sup> wip him<sup>7</sup> Maude his wif, and lete  
 8 crone here<sup>8</sup> quene of Engeland, on<sup>8</sup> Whitsonday. ¶ And po anone  
 after, pe Kyng<sup>t</sup> of Scotland pat me callede Mancolum, bigon to  
 9 werr<sup>t</sup> and stryue<sup>9</sup> wip<sup>10</sup> Duc William; and he ordeynede him po  
 toward Scotland wip his men, boþe by lande and by see, forto  
 12 destroy pe Kyng<sup>11</sup> Mancolum. but pai were accordede, & pe Kyng  
 of Scotland, Mancolum, bicom<sup>e</sup> his man, and helde al his lande of  
 him; and Kyng<sup>t</sup> William resceyuede of him his Homage, and come  
 a3eyne into Engeland. ¶ And when Kyng William hadde bene<sup>12</sup>  
 16 Kyng xvij 3ere, Maude pe Quene deide, on whom Kyng William  
 hadde geten meny faire cheldern, pat is forto seyne, Robert Curthose,  
 William le Rous, Richar<sup>t</sup> also pat deide, Henry Beaulere, & Maude  
 also, pat was pe Erles wif of Bleyens, and opere iiij doughtre.<sup>13</sup>  
 20 ¶ And after his wifes deth, grete debate bigan bituene him & pe  
 Kyng of Fraunce, Philippe; but atte pe laste pai were accordede;  
 and po duelled<sup>e</sup> pe Kyng of Engeland in Normandy, and no man  
 him werrede, ne<sup>14</sup> he no man, longe tyme. and pe Kyng of Fraunce  
 24 saide oppoñ a day in scorne of Kyng William, & saide pat 'Kyng<sup>t</sup>  
 William hadde longe<sup>15</sup> leyen a<sup>16</sup> childe bed, & longe tyme hap<sup>17</sup>  
 restede him.' ¶ And pis worde come to pe Kyng of Engeland pere  
 pat he laye in Normandy, atte Roen; and for pis word<sup>18</sup> was po  
 28 euel<sup>19</sup> paid<sup>e</sup> for pat worde,<sup>4</sup> & ek<sup>t</sup> wonder<sup>2</sup> wrothe toward pe  
 Kyng of Fraunce, and swore po by God<sup>t</sup> pat, when he were arise  
 of his gisyne, he wolde list a pousand<sup>t</sup> candelles to pe Kyng of  
 Fraunce. ¶ And anone lete assem<sup>20</sup>ble a grete hoste of Normandy  
 32 and of Engelisshe-men; and in pe bigynnyng<sup>t</sup> of Heruest<sup>t</sup> he come  
 into Fraunce, & brent<sup>21</sup> alle pe townes pat he come by, prou3 alle pe  
 contre, & robbed, & dede al pe euel pat he might prou3-out al

<sup>1</sup> cristusmasse D. Cristesmasse O.    <sup>2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> sent D.

<sup>4-4</sup> om. D.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 76.    <sup>6</sup> into D.    <sup>7-7</sup> hym with O.

<sup>8-8</sup> kyng [sic] at D.    quene of Engeland<sup>t</sup> in O.

<sup>9-9</sup> stryue and were D.    <sup>10</sup> with pe O.    <sup>11</sup> om. O.    <sup>12</sup> be O.

<sup>13</sup> dou3ter3 D.    daughters O.    <sup>14</sup> & O.

<sup>15</sup> longe tyme D.    long tyme O.    <sup>16</sup> in DO.    <sup>17</sup> had O.

<sup>18</sup> word he O.    <sup>19</sup> ille O.    <sup>20</sup> leaf 76, back.    <sup>21</sup> brenned<sup>e</sup> D.

Fraunce. & at þe laste he <sup>1</sup>brent þe touñ<sup>1</sup> of Mandes, & commandedede his peple forto bere wode, & as miche as<sup>2</sup> myght brenne; & him-self halpe þerto, al þat he myghte, wip<sup>3</sup> gode wille. ¶ And þere was grete hete, what of fyre þat was so grete, & of þe sone þat <sup>4</sup>þo was wonder<sup>3</sup> hote, þat al stuffe<sup>4</sup> him-self was,<sup>5</sup> & felle into a<sup>6</sup> grete sikenesse. and when he saw þat he was so stronge sike, he ordeynede and assignede al Normandy vnto<sup>7</sup> Robert Curthese, his sone, and al Engeland<sup>8</sup> to William þe Rous, & biquap to Henry<sup>8</sup> <sup>8</sup>Beauclere al his tresoure. ¶ And when<sup>9</sup> he hade þus done,<sup>10</sup> he vnderfonge alle his sacrament<sup>3</sup> of holy cherche, & deide, þe xxij zere of his regne, & lip at Caam in Normandye.<sup>11</sup>

Of<sup>12</sup> Kyng William Rous. þat was William Bastardes sone, þat <sup>12</sup>destroiede <sup>13</sup>tounes & hous of religioun<sup>13</sup> fort[o] make þe<sup>14</sup> new Foreste. *Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xxxiiij<sup>10</sup>.*

**A**Nd after þis William Bastard, regnede his sone William<sup>15</sup> Rous, &<sup>16</sup> was a wonder<sup>3</sup> contrarious man to God and to holy <sup>16</sup>cherche, & lete amende & make þe toune of Cardeys þat þe paynemys hade destroied.<sup>17</sup> ¶ This Kyng William destroiede holy cherche<sup>6</sup> and alle here possessions, in what partye<sup>18</sup> he miȝt ham fynde; and þerfore þere was so miche debate bituene him & þe <sup>20</sup>Erchebisshope of Kaunterbery, Ancelyn, for enchesouñ þat he <sup>19</sup>vnderfonge him of his Wickednesse,<sup>19</sup> þat he destroiede Holy cherche; & for enchesouñ þerof, þe Kyng to him bare grete wrap; & for þat cause he exilede him out of þe lande; & þe erchebisshop <sup>24</sup>þo <sup>20</sup>Went to þe courte of Rome, and þere du[e]llede wip þe Pope. ¶ & þis Kyng made þe new Forest<sup>xx</sup>, and caste douñ<sup>21</sup> & destroiede xxvj tounes & iij house<sup>22</sup> of religiō, al forto make his foreste longer & broder,<sup>23</sup> & bicomē wonder glade & prout of his wode & of his <sup>28</sup>Forest, and of þe wilde bestes þat wer<sup>3</sup> þerin, þat it was mervailous forto<sup>24</sup> wete, so þat men callede him ·keper<sup>3</sup> of wodes & of pastures. & þe lenger þat<sup>6</sup> he leuede, þe more Wikkede he bicomē, boþe to

<sup>1-1</sup> brennedede the citee D. brent þe Cytee O. <sup>2</sup> as he D.

<sup>3</sup> with a O. <sup>4</sup> stuffed O. <sup>5</sup> bicomē D. bycome O. <sup>6</sup> om. D.

<sup>7</sup> to D. <sup>8</sup> Herry O. <sup>9</sup> þo DO. <sup>10</sup> do D. <sup>11</sup> Northfole D.

<sup>12</sup> How D. <sup>13-13</sup> houses of Regilion [sic] & toynes O. <sup>14</sup> om. O.

<sup>15</sup> William þe O. <sup>16</sup> and this William D. & þis William O.

<sup>17</sup> destruede D. <sup>18</sup> parte D.

<sup>19-19</sup> vndertok<sup>3</sup> him for his wickednesse and D. vndirtoke hym for his wikkednesse O.

<sup>20</sup> leaf 77.

<sup>21</sup> adoune D. adoun O.

<sup>22</sup> houses O.

<sup>23</sup> wider<sup>3</sup> D.

<sup>24</sup> to D.

God & to holy cherche, & to alle his men. & þis kyng lete make  
 þe grete halle of<sup>1</sup> Westmynstre; <sup>2</sup>and so<sup>2</sup> oppon a<sup>3</sup> Whitsonday  
<sup>4</sup>he helde þerin<sup>4</sup> his ferste feste, he lokede aboute him,<sup>5</sup> & saide  
 4 þat<sup>6</sup> þe halle was to litel by haluendele. ¶ And at þe laste he  
 bicome so contrarious, þat al þing þat plesede God, displesede him;  
 and al þing þat gode men louede, <sup>7</sup>he hatede dedly.<sup>7</sup> ¶ And so  
 hit befel þat he dremede <sup>8</sup>& mette<sup>8</sup> oppon a nyzt, bifore a litil or  
 8 þat<sup>6</sup> he deide, þat he was<sup>9</sup> bloode, & bledde a grete quantite of  
 bloode, and a streme of blode lepte<sup>10</sup> an hye toward Heuen more<sup>11</sup>  
 þan an hundred Venithe<sup>12</sup>; and þe clerenesse of þe<sup>6</sup> day was  
 turnede al to<sup>13</sup> derkenesse, and þe firmament also. ¶ And when he  
 12 awoke, he hade grete drede, so þat he nyste what to done; & tolde  
 his dreme to meny of his conseile, & saide þat he hade grete drede,  
 & supposede þat him was some meschaunce to come. ¶ And þe  
 secunde nyght bifore,<sup>14</sup> a monke dremed of þe househald, þat þe  
 16 kyng went into a cherche wip miche peple; and he was so prout  
 þat he despisede al þe peple þat was wip him; & so<sup>15</sup> he toke<sup>16</sup> þe  
 ymage of þe crucifixe, &<sup>17</sup> shamefully bote hit with his teip; and  
 þe crucifix mekely soffrede al þat he dede; but þe kyng, as a wode  
 20 man, rent of þe Armys <sup>18</sup>of þe<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup>crucifixe and caste it vnder  
 his feete, & defouled it and þrewe it al<sup>20</sup> brode<sup>21</sup>; and a grete  
 flame of fire come out of þe <sup>22</sup>crucifixe<sup>22</sup> mouthe<sup>22</sup>; of þe whiche  
 dreem, meny a man<sup>23</sup> hade grete wonder. ¶ The gode man þat  
 24 dremede þis dreem<sup>24</sup> tolde it to a knyght þat þo was moste priue wip  
 þe Kyng<sup>24</sup> of al men; & þe knyght me callede Hamundus sone; &  
 þe monke and he tolde þe dreem to<sup>25</sup> [the] Kyng, & saide þat it  
 shulde bitoken opere þing þan gode; and nopelesse þe Kyng<sup>24</sup> lauzhede  
 28 þerat ij<sup>26</sup> or iij,<sup>27</sup> & litil sette þerof; ¶ And þouzt þat he wolde  
 gone<sup>28</sup> Hunte & pleye in þe forest. and his men <sup>29</sup>conseiled him<sup>29</sup>  
 þat he shulde nouzt þat day, for no maner þing, come in þe wode,

<sup>1</sup> at O.      <sup>2-2</sup> so þat DO.      <sup>3</sup> a day of O.

<sup>4-4</sup> þerin he helde D. & held þerin O.      <sup>5</sup> om. DO.      <sup>6</sup> om. D.

<sup>7-7</sup> hated he dedlich O.      <sup>8-8</sup> om. D.      <sup>9</sup> was lete DO.

<sup>10</sup> lappe D.      <sup>11</sup> mo D.      <sup>12</sup> Vedine O.      <sup>13</sup> in-to O.      <sup>14</sup> to-fore D.

<sup>15</sup> that D.      þat O.      <sup>16</sup> nome O.

<sup>17</sup> & cast it vnder his feet & defouled it & threw it al abroad & O.

<sup>18-18</sup> MS. of þe of þe.      <sup>19</sup> leaf 77, back.

<sup>20</sup> MS. has al adoun, with adoun underlined for omission; om. O.

<sup>21</sup> abroad DO.

<sup>22-22</sup> crucifix mouth of the crucifix sic D.      Crucifix mouthe O.

<sup>23</sup> men DO.      <sup>24</sup> dreame hade D.      dreame had O.      <sup>25</sup> vnto D.

<sup>26</sup> twyes O.      <sup>27</sup> iijes D.      thryes O.      <sup>28</sup> go D.

<sup>29-29</sup> hym Councyled O.

so þat he abode at home bifore mete. ¶ But anone as he hade eten,<sup>1</sup> noping<sup>2</sup> might him lette<sup>3</sup> but he wolde go<sup>3</sup> to þe wode forto haue his disporte. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat one of his knyghtes þat hight Walter Tyrel, wolde haue shotte to<sup>4</sup> an<sup>5</sup> herte; & his 4 Arwe glasede oppoñ a braunche, & þrouz misauenture smote þe Kyng<sup>6</sup> to þe hert<sup>7</sup>; & so he felle doune dede to<sup>6</sup> þe grounde, wip-outen<sup>7</sup> eny worde spekyng<sup>8</sup>, & so he endede his lif. ¶ And it was<sup>8</sup> non grete<sup>8</sup> wonder<sup>9</sup>, for þat<sup>9</sup> day þat he dede, he hade late to ferme 8 þe Erchebisshoppriche<sup>10</sup> of Kaunterbery, and xij Abbays also, & euermore dede grete destruccioun to holy cherche þrouz wrongeful takynges and askyngas; for no man derst wipsayen<sup>11</sup> þat he wolde haue done; & of his luper nesse he wolde neuer wipdrawe<sup>12</sup> neyþer, 12 to<sup>12</sup> amende his lif; and þerfore God wolde suffre him no longer regne in his wickednesse. & he hade bene<sup>13</sup> kyng<sup>13</sup> xiiij ȝere and vj wokes, & liþ<sup>14</sup> at Wynchestre.<sup>15</sup>

Of Kyng<sup>16</sup> Henry Beaclerc, þat was William<sup>16</sup> le Rous<sup>17</sup> 16 broþer; & of þe debate bituene him & Robert Curthose,  
<sup>18</sup>his broþer.<sup>18</sup> *Capitulum Centesimo ¶ xxxv.*

**A**Nd when<sup>19</sup> þis William Rous<sup>20</sup> was dede, Henry Beaclerc his broþer<sup>21</sup> was made kyng<sup>22</sup>, for enchesoun þat William Rous 20 hade non<sup>21</sup> childe<sup>22</sup> bigeten of his body.<sup>22</sup> & þis Henry Beaclerc<sup>23</sup> was cronede kyng<sup>24</sup> at London, þe ferþe day after þat his broþer was dede, þat is to seyne, þe v day<sup>24</sup> of August. ¶ And anone as<sup>25</sup> Ancellyn, þat was Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, þat was at þe 24 court of Rome, herde þat William Rous was dede, he come aȝeyne into Engeland; &<sup>26</sup> Kyng Henry Beaclerc welcomede him wip michel<sup>27</sup> honoure. ¶ & þe ferst ȝer þat Kyng<sup>28</sup> Henry was cronede, he spused Maude, þat was Margaretes douȝter, þe Quene of Scot- 28 land; & þe Erchebisshop<sup>28</sup> Ancellyn<sup>29</sup> wedede ham. ¶ And þis Kyng<sup>29</sup> bigate oppoñ his wif ij sones & a douȝter, þat is to seyne, William, Richard, and Maude; & þis Maude was afterward

<sup>1</sup> ete O.      <sup>2</sup> noman DO.

<sup>3-3</sup> þat he ne wolde goñ D.      þat he nolde goñ O.      <sup>4</sup> vn-to O.

<sup>5</sup> on D.      <sup>6</sup> vnto DO.      <sup>7</sup> with-out O.      <sup>8-8</sup> no D.      no gret O.

<sup>9</sup> the D.      <sup>10</sup> bisshoppriche D.      <sup>11</sup> withsay D.      with-sey O.

<sup>12-12</sup> ne D.      neither O.      <sup>13</sup> be O.      <sup>14</sup> om. DO.

<sup>15</sup> Wynchestre he lith O.      <sup>16</sup> leaf 78.      <sup>17-17</sup> Rous DO.

<sup>18-18</sup> om. D.      <sup>19</sup> om. O.      <sup>20</sup> Rous whan he O.      <sup>21</sup> no DO.

<sup>22-22</sup> of his body bigete D.      begete of his body O.

<sup>23</sup> Altered from Beaucherc in MS.      <sup>24</sup> om. D.      <sup>25</sup> þis O.

<sup>26</sup> and the D.      & þe O.      <sup>27</sup> miche D.

<sup>28</sup> Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery D.      <sup>29</sup> Ancelyn of Caunterbury O



- Emperesse of Almayne. ¶ And in þe secunde<sup>1</sup> zere of his regne, his broþere Robert Curthose, þat was duc of Normandy, come wiþ an huge nauy<sup>2</sup> into Engeland, forto chalange þe lanck; but þrouz  
 4 conseile of þe<sup>3</sup> wise men of þe land, þai were accordede in þis maner: þat þe Kyng shulde zeue þe Duc his broþer a þousand<sup>4</sup> ti<sup>4</sup> euery zere; and whiche of ham longeste leuede, shulde bene oþeres heire; & so bituene ham shulde<sup>5</sup> bene none<sup>5</sup> debate ne stryf.  
 8 ¶ And when þai were þus accordede, þe Duc went home azeyn into Normandy. And when þe Kyng hade regnede iiij zere,<sup>6</sup> aros a grete debate bituene him & þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, Ancellyn, for cause þat þe Erchebisshop wolde<sup>7</sup> nouzt graunt þe  
 12 Kyng<sup>8</sup> forto take taliages of<sup>8</sup> Holy cherche<sup>8</sup> at his wille; and þerfore<sup>9</sup> þe Erchebisshop eftsones<sup>10</sup> went ouer þe see vnto<sup>11</sup> þe court of Rome, & þere duelled<sup>12</sup> wiþ þe Pope. ¶ And in þe<sup>3</sup> same zere þe Duc of Normandy come into Engeland forto speke wiþ his broþer.  
 16 And amonges<sup>13</sup> oþere þinges, þe duc of Normandy forzaf to þe Kyng, his broþer, þe forsaide<sup>14</sup> M<sup>+</sup> ti<sup>15</sup> by zere þat he shulde<sup>16</sup> paie him<sup>16</sup>; & wiþ gode loue þe Duc went þo<sup>17</sup> into Normandy azeyn.<sup>10</sup>  
 20 ¶ And when þo ij zere were gone, þrouz enticement of þe deucl & of<sup>18</sup> a luper man,<sup>18</sup> a grete debate aros bituene ham, þe Kyng & þe duc, so þat þe Kyng, þrouz conseile, went ouer<sup>19</sup> into Normandy. And when þe Kyng of Engeland was comen<sup>20</sup> into Normandy,  
 24 alle þe grete lordes of Normandy turnede þo<sup>3</sup> to þe Kyng of Engeland, & helde azeyns<sup>21</sup> þe Duc, here owen lorde, & him forsoke, & to þe Kyng ham zolden,<sup>22</sup> and alle þe castelles &<sup>23</sup> gode tounes of Normandy. And sone after was þe Duc taken, & lad  
 28 wiþ þe Kyng into Engeland, and þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> lete put þe Duc into prisoun. & þis was<sup>14</sup> þe vengauce of God; for when þe Duc was in þe Holy Land God zaf him suche might & honour þere, wherfore he was chose<sup>24</sup> to ben Kyng<sup>25</sup> of Ierusalem; and he<sup>3</sup>  
 32 wolde nouzt<sup>26</sup> bene hit, but<sup>26</sup> forsoke it; & þerfore God sende<sup>27</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ij O.    <sup>2</sup> meynye O.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> pound<sup>4</sup> O.

<sup>5-5</sup> be no D. be non O.    <sup>6</sup> 3er<sup>3</sup> þere D. 3eer þer O.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 78, back.    <sup>8-8</sup> cherches D. Chirches O.

<sup>9</sup> þerfore eftsones D. þerfore eftsone O.    <sup>10</sup> om. DO.    <sup>11</sup> to DO.

<sup>12</sup> he dwelt O. dullede R.    <sup>13</sup> amonge al D. among<sup>4</sup> O.

<sup>14</sup> om. D.    <sup>15</sup> pound O.    <sup>16-16</sup> him pay D.

<sup>17</sup> þo azeyn D. þo azen O.    <sup>18-18</sup> luper men D. lither men O.

<sup>19</sup> ouere the see D. ouer þe see O.    <sup>20</sup> comen ouere the see D. Come O.

<sup>21</sup> azeyne D.    <sup>22</sup> zelden O.    <sup>23</sup> and the D. & þe O.

<sup>24</sup> chosen DO.    <sup>25</sup> lord<sup>4</sup> D.    <sup>26-26</sup> and D.    <sup>27</sup> sent O.

him þat shame & despite, forto bene<sup>1</sup> put into his broþeres prisoun. ¶ þo seisede Kyng Henry<sup>2</sup> al Normandy into his hand, & helde hit al his lifes<sup>3</sup> tyme. &<sup>4</sup> þe same ȝere come þe bisshoþ Ancellyn fram<sup>5</sup> þe court of Rome into Engeland<sup>6</sup> aȝeyne, & þe Kyng<sup>7</sup> & he 4 were accorded. ¶ And in þe ȝere nexte comyng<sup>8</sup> after,<sup>6</sup> þere bigan a grete debate bytuene Kyng<sup>7</sup> Philippe of Fraunce & Kyng Henry<sup>8</sup> of Engeland. Wherefore Kyng Henry<sup>8</sup> went into Normandy; and þe werr<sup>9</sup> was <sup>9</sup>stronge bituene<sup>9</sup> ham ij; and þo deide þe Kyng 8 of Fraunce; & Lowys his sone was made Kyng<sup>8</sup> anone after his deþ; and þo went Kyng Henry<sup>8</sup> aȝeyne into Engeland, & mariede Maude his doughter to Henry,<sup>10</sup> þe Emperour of Almayn.

Of þe debate þat was bituene <sup>11</sup>Kyng Lowys<sup>11</sup> of France & <sup>12</sup>Kyng Henry<sup>12</sup> of Engeland; & how Kyng Henrie; ij sones were loste in þe hye see. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Sexto.

**W**Hen Kyng Henry had bene<sup>1</sup> Kyng xvij ȝere, a grete 16 debate aroos bitue[n]<sup>13</sup> him &<sup>13</sup> Kyng Lowys of Fraunce,<sup>14</sup> for enchesoun þat þe Kyng hade sent into Normandy to his men, for<sup>15</sup> þai shulde bene<sup>1</sup> helpyng to þe Erle of Bleynes as miche as þai myght, in werre aȝeynes<sup>16</sup> þe Kyng<sup>8</sup> of Fraunce, and þat þai 20 were as redy vnto him as þai wolde bene<sup>1</sup> vnto<sup>17</sup> here owen lord, for enchesoun þat þe Erle hade spousede his sustre, Dame Maude; for whiche enchesoun þe Kyng of Fraunce dede miche harme<sup>18</sup> &<sup>19</sup> sorwe<sup>6</sup> to Normandy. wherefore þe Kyng of Engeland was 24 wonder wroþ, & in hast went ouer þe see <sup>20</sup>into Normandy wiþ a grete power,<sup>20</sup> forto defende þat londe; & þe werre bituene ham laste ij ȝere, til at þe laste þai ij fouȝten to-geder,<sup>21</sup> & þe Kyng of France was descomfitede, & vnneþe<sup>22</sup> scapede away wiþ miche 28 peyn; and þe moste part<sup>23</sup> of his men were taken, &<sup>24</sup> dede wiþ ham what him liked; and some of ham he lete goñ<sup>25</sup> freliche,<sup>26</sup> &

<sup>1</sup> be D.    <sup>2</sup> Harry O.    <sup>3</sup> lif<sup>8</sup> D.    <sup>4</sup> and in DO.    <sup>5</sup> fro D.

<sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 79.    <sup>8</sup> Harry O.

<sup>9-9</sup> so strong<sup>8</sup> bituene D.    strong between O.

<sup>10</sup> om. D.    Harry O.    <sup>11-11</sup> Lowys the kyng<sup>8</sup> D.

<sup>12</sup> Harry here, and elsewhere in O.    <sup>13-13</sup> om. DO.

<sup>14</sup> France and Kyng Henry of Engeland<sup>8</sup> D.    Fraunce & Kyng Herry of Engeland<sup>8</sup> O.

<sup>15</sup> that D.    <sup>16</sup> aȝen O.    <sup>17</sup> to O.    <sup>18</sup> om. O.    <sup>19</sup> om. DO.

<sup>20-20</sup> with gret<sup>8</sup> power<sup>8</sup> and come into Normandy D.    with a gret power & come in-to Normandy O.

<sup>21</sup> togederes D.    <sup>22</sup> vnneþes D.    <sup>23</sup> partye O.

<sup>24</sup> and þe kyng<sup>8</sup> DO.    <sup>25</sup> go DO.    <sup>26</sup> frely O.

some he lete put to dep; but afterward þo ij kyngus were  
 accordede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade holiche<sup>1</sup> al þe land<sup>2</sup>  
 of No[r]mandye, and scomfitede his enemys of Fraunce, he turned  
 4 azeyne into Engeland wip michel<sup>3</sup> honour. and his ij sones,  
 William and Richard, wolde come after her fader, and went to þe  
 se wip a grete company of peple; but er þat<sup>4</sup> þai might come to  
 lond, þe shipp come azeyn a grete<sup>5</sup> roche, and brake<sup>6</sup> al into<sup>6</sup>  
 8 pices; and alle were drenched þat were<sup>7</sup> þerin, saf one<sup>7</sup> man þat  
 was in þe same shipp þat ascaped: and þis was on seynt Katerynes<sup>8</sup>  
 day. ¶ And þise were þe names of ham þat were drenched, þat  
 is to seyn: William, þe Kynges sone, Richard his broþer, þe Erl  
 12 of Chestre, Octouyle his broþer, Geffray Ridel, Walter Emurey,  
 Gedfrey Erchedeken, þe Kynges doughter, þe Countesse of Perches,  
 þe Kyngus nece, þe Countesse of Chestre, and meny oþer.  
 ¶ When Kyng Henry and oþer lordes arryued were in Engeland,  
 16 and harde þise tydyngus, þai made sorwe ynow; & al her merþe &  
 ioye was turnede þo<sup>9</sup> into sorwe<sup>9</sup> & care.

How Maude þe Emperesse come azei[n] into Engeland; and  
 how she was afterward wedded to Gaufrey,<sup>10</sup> þe Erl of  
 20 Angoy. *Capitulo Centesimo xxxvij.*

And when þat<sup>11</sup> ij zere were gone, þat þe Erl hade duelled wip  
 þe Kyng, þe Erl went þo fro þe Kyng, and biganne to  
 werre oppoñ him, & dede miche harme in þe lande of Normandy.  
 24 Wherefore Kyng Henry was sore annoiede when he herde þe  
 tydynges.<sup>12</sup> wip al þe haste þat he myght, he passede þe see, and  
 come into Normandy, and toke þere a stronge castel, & þere  
 13 helde him<sup>13</sup> al þat zere. And þo come to him tydynges<sup>14</sup> þat  
 28 Henry, <sup>15</sup> þe Emperour of Almaine, þat hade spoused Maud<sup>16</sup> his  
 douzter, was dede, and þat she duelled no longer in Almaine,  
 and þat she wolde come azeyne into Normandy to her fader.  
 ¶ And when she was comen<sup>17</sup> to him, he toke<sup>18</sup> her þo wip<sup>19</sup> him,  
 32 and come azeyne into Engeland, & made þe<sup>10</sup> Englisshemen to<sup>16</sup>  
 done<sup>20</sup> oth & feaute<sup>21</sup> vnto þe Emperesse. ¶ And þe ferst man þat

<sup>1</sup> holly D. holy O. <sup>2</sup> leaf 79, back. <sup>3</sup> mych O.

<sup>4</sup> MS. þat þat; om. D. <sup>5-5</sup> azeines a D. azen a O. <sup>6-6</sup> alto D.

<sup>7-7</sup> within saf o D. þerin saf o O. <sup>8</sup> Katerine O.

<sup>9-9</sup> in mornyg D. into Mornynge O. <sup>10</sup> om. O. <sup>11</sup> þo O.

<sup>12</sup> tydyng O. <sup>13-13</sup> he duelled D. he dwelled O. <sup>14</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>15</sup> leaf 80. <sup>16</sup> om. D. <sup>17</sup> come O. <sup>18</sup> nome O. <sup>19</sup> to O.

<sup>20</sup> do O. <sup>21</sup> feautes D.

made þe oth was William þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbury, and þat opere Kyng Dauid of Scotland, & after him, al þe <sup>1</sup>Erles & barons<sup>1</sup> of Engeland. ¶ And<sup>2</sup> after þat,<sup>3</sup> þe noble man, þe Erl of Angoy, a worþi knyzt, sent to þe Kyng of Engeland þat he wolde <sup>4</sup>grant him forto haue his doughter to spouse, Maude þe Emperesse. ¶ And for enchesoun þat her fader<sup>5</sup> wist<sup>6</sup> þat he was<sup>4</sup> a noble man, þe Kyng grauntede him. & consentede þerto, and þo tok<sup>5</sup> his doughter, and ladde her into Normandy, & come to þe noble <sup>8</sup>knyzt <sup>6</sup>þe Erl<sup>6</sup> Gaufril; & he spousede þe forsaide Maude wip michel honoure; & þe Erl bigate <sup>7</sup>oppon her<sup>7</sup> a sone þat men<sup>8</sup> callede ‘Henry, þe Emperesse sone.’ ¶ And after, when al þis was done, Kyng Henry duelled al þat zere in Normandy. and <sup>12</sup>after þat, longe<sup>9</sup> tyme, a grevous sikenesse toke him, wherfore he deide. & þis Kyng Henry regnede xxxv zere & iiij mounþes; & after he<sup>3</sup> deide, <sup>10</sup>as bifore is<sup>10</sup> saide, in Normandy; & his hert was enterede in þe grete cherche of oure Lady of Roen, & his body was <sup>16</sup>brouzt wip michel<sup>11</sup> honour into Engeland, & enterede <sup>12</sup>at Redyng<sup>12</sup> in þe Abbay; & <sup>12</sup>of þe which Abbay he was <sup>13</sup>bigynner & <sup>13</sup>Foundoure.

<sup>14</sup>How Stephene, Kyng Henryes suster<sup>3</sup> sone, Was made Kyng<sup>20</sup> of Engeland. Capitulo ¶ Centesimo ¶ Tricesimo ¶ Octauo.

**A**fter þis Kyng Henry þat was þe ferst<sup>1</sup>, was made Kyng his Neuew, his sustres<sup>15</sup> sone, Stephen,<sup>16</sup> Erl of Boloigne; For anone as he harde þe tidynges<sup>17</sup> of his Vneles<sup>18</sup> deth, he passede þe <sup>24</sup>see, and come into Engeland, prou3 conseil & <sup>19</sup>strengþ & helpe<sup>19</sup> of meny grete Lordes<sup>20</sup> of Engeland (a3eyn3 heir<sup>1</sup> oth þat þai hade made to Maude þe Emperesse), tok<sup>21</sup> þe reaume, & lete crone Stephen Kyng<sup>1</sup> of <sup>22</sup>þe land.<sup>22</sup> ¶ And þe erchebisshop <sup>23</sup>William of <sup>28</sup>Kaunterbery,<sup>23</sup> þat ferst made þe<sup>24</sup> oth to<sup>25</sup> Maude þe Emperesse, sette þe crone ferst opoñ Kyng Stephenus heuede, & him annoyn-tede; and Bisshop Roger of Salesbery mayntenede þe Kyngus

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> barouns & Erles O.      <sup>2</sup> And also O.      <sup>3</sup> om. D.

<sup>4</sup> wist<sup>1</sup> þat he was DO.      wist R.      <sup>5</sup> nome O.

<sup>6</sup>—<sup>6</sup> erle of D.      Erle O.      <sup>7</sup>—<sup>7</sup> on his wif<sup>1</sup> D.      <sup>8</sup> me DO.

<sup>9</sup> a longe D.      <sup>10</sup>—<sup>10</sup> as is before O.      <sup>11</sup> mych O.

<sup>12</sup>—<sup>12</sup> in the Abbay of Redyng<sup>1</sup> D.      at Redyng in þe Abbey O.

<sup>13</sup>—<sup>13</sup> om. D.      <sup>14</sup> leaf 80, back.      <sup>15</sup> suster O.      <sup>16</sup> Stephenene sic O.

<sup>17</sup> tydyng O.      <sup>18</sup> broþeres D.      <sup>19</sup>—<sup>19</sup> helpe & strengþ D.

<sup>20</sup> lordes sic D.      <sup>21</sup> nome O.      <sup>22</sup>—<sup>22</sup> Engeland D.

<sup>23</sup>—<sup>23</sup> of Kaunterbery William D.      <sup>24</sup> om. O.

<sup>25</sup> of feaute vnto D.      & feaute vn-to O.

partye in-as-miche as he<sup>1</sup> might. ¶ The first 3ere þat Kyng Stephen biganne forto regne, he assembled<sup>2</sup> a grete host, & went him<sup>2</sup> toward Scotland<sup>3</sup>, forto haue þo<sup>3</sup> werrele oppoñ þe Kyng of Scotland<sup>4</sup>; but he come azejnes him in pees & in gode maner<sup>5</sup>, & to him trust; but he made <sup>4</sup>to him none homage, for-as-miche as<sup>4</sup> he hade made <sup>5</sup>homage to<sup>5</sup> þe Emperesse Maude. ¶ And þe iiij 3ere of his regne, Maude þe Emperesse come into Engeland<sup>6</sup>; & þo bigan debate bituene<sup>6</sup> Kyng Stephen and Maude þe Emperesse. þis Maude went vnto þe citee of Nichole; and þe Kyng<sup>7</sup> her<sup>7</sup> bisegede longe tyme, & might nouzt spede, so wel þe cite was kepte and defendede. and þo þat were wiþin þe citee queyntly scapede<sup>8</sup> away wiþouten<sup>9</sup> eny maner<sup>9</sup> harme; and þo tok þe Kyng þe citee, & duelled þerin to<sup>10</sup> Candelmasse. ¶ And þo come þe barons þat helde<sup>11</sup> wiþ þe Emperesse, þat is forto seyn, <sup>12</sup>þe Erl Randulph of Chestre, þe Erl Robert of Gloucestre, Hughe Bigot, Robert of Molleye,<sup>13</sup> & brouzt wiþ ham a stronge<sup>14</sup> power<sup>14</sup>.

How Maude þe Emperesse Went fram<sup>15</sup> Wynchestr<sup>15</sup> vnto<sup>16</sup> Oxenford<sup>16</sup>; and after she ascapede<sup>17</sup> to<sup>18</sup> Wallyngford<sup>18</sup>; & what sorwe & disese ¶ she hade. *Capitulo Centesimo*  
xxxix<sup>o</sup>.

When þe Kyng<sup>19</sup> was taken<sup>19</sup> & brouzt <sup>20</sup>into warde in<sup>20</sup> þe Castel <sup>21</sup>of Bristow,<sup>21</sup> þis Maude þe Emperesse anone was <sup>22</sup>lady of Engeland<sup>22</sup>, & alle men helde her for<sup>22</sup> lady of þe lande. ¶ But<sup>23</sup> þo of Kent helde wiþ Kyng<sup>23</sup> Stephenes wif<sup>23</sup>; and also William of Pree & his retenue halpe ham, and helde werre azejnes Maude þe Emperesse. & anone after<sup>24</sup>, þe Kyng of Scotland come to ham wiþ <sup>24</sup>a grete<sup>24</sup> nombre of peple; and þo went þai in fere vnto Wynchestre, þere þat þe Emperesse was, & wolde haue take<sup>25</sup> here; but þe Erl of Gloucestre come wiþ his power<sup>25</sup>, & fouzt wiþ ham; & þe Emperesse, in þe menewhile þat þe bataile durede, scapede fro þens, & went vnto Oxenford<sup>26</sup>, & þere her<sup>26</sup> helde. & in þat batail was þe Erl of Gloucestre descomfitede & taken,<sup>27</sup> & wiþ him meny opere lordes. ¶ And for his delyueraunce was Kyng<sup>28</sup> Stephen

<sup>1</sup> þey O.<sup>2</sup> om. DO.<sup>3</sup> om. D.<sup>4-4</sup> vnto [him] homage bicause þat D. <sup>5-5</sup> vnto sic D. homage vnto O.<sup>6</sup> bituene the D. between þe O. <sup>7</sup> hem O.<sup>8</sup> ascapede D. ascaped O. <sup>9</sup> with-oute DO. <sup>10</sup> tul O.<sup>11</sup> hielden O. <sup>12</sup> leaf 81. <sup>13</sup> Morley O. <sup>14</sup> stronge D.<sup>15</sup> fro DO. <sup>16</sup> to O. <sup>17</sup> schaped O. <sup>18</sup> vnto D. <sup>19</sup> take O.<sup>20-20</sup> in warde into D. <sup>21-21</sup> om. O. <sup>22-22</sup> made D.<sup>23</sup> kynges O. <sup>24-24</sup> an huge O. <sup>25</sup> taken DO. <sup>26</sup> he O.

delyuerede out of<sup>1</sup> prisoun. ¶ And when he was delyuerede out of<sup>1</sup> prisoun, he went þens to Oxenford, & <sup>2</sup>bisegede þe Emperesse þat was þo at Oxenford; & <sup>2</sup>þe sege endurede fro Michelmasse vnto Seynt Andrewus tyde. ¶ And þe Emperesse <sup>3</sup>lete þo<sup>3</sup> cloþe<sup>4</sup> her<sup>5</sup> 4 al in white lynen cloþ, for enchesoun þat she wolde nouȝt bene<sup>6</sup> knowe, for in þe same tyme þere was michel of snowe; and so she scapede<sup>7</sup> by þe<sup>8</sup> Tamyse <sup>9</sup>fram ham awaye<sup>9</sup> þat were her' enemys; & fro þens she went to Wallyngford, & <sup>10</sup>þere here helde.<sup>10</sup> ¶ And 8 þe Kyng wolde haue bisegede her'; <sup>11</sup>but he hade so miche to done wip þe Erl Randulf of Chestre, & wip Hugh Bigot, þat strongelich<sup>12</sup> werrede oppoñ him in euery place, þat he ne wist whider to<sup>13</sup> turne; and þe Erl of Gloucestre halpe<sup>14</sup> ham wip his power. 12

**How Gaufride, Erl of Angoy,<sup>15</sup> ȝaf vp vnto<sup>16</sup> Henry, þe Emperesse sone, al Normandy. Capitulo Centesimo xl.**

**A**Nd after þis, þe<sup>17</sup> Kyng went vnto Wilton,<sup>18</sup> & wolde haue made a castel þere; but þo come to him þe Erl of Gloucestre 16 wip a stronge power, & almost hade take þe Kyng; but ȝit þe<sup>19</sup> Kyng ascapede wip miche payn; & William Marcil<sup>20</sup> þere was take, & for whos delyuerance þe Kyng ȝaf to<sup>21</sup> þe Erl of Gloucestre þe gode castel of Shirburn þat he hade tak. ¶ And when þis was 20 done, þe Erl Robert, & alle þe Kynges enemys, went to Faryndon, & bigonne <sup>22</sup>forto make þere a stronge<sup>22</sup> castel; but þe Kyng, wip a stronge power, drof ham þens.

In þat same ȝere ¶ The Erl Randulf of Chestre was<sup>23</sup> accorded 24 wip þe Kyng, and come to his<sup>24</sup> court at his commandement; and þe Erl went<sup>25</sup> haue saffliche<sup>26</sup> comen<sup>27</sup>; & þe Kyng anone lete<sup>28</sup> take him, and put him into prisoun, & most neuer for noþing come out þerof til þat he hade ȝelde op to<sup>29</sup> þe Kyng þe castel of Nichole, 28 þe whiche he hade tak fro þe Kyng wip strengþ in þe xv ȝere of þe<sup>30</sup> regne of Kyng Stephene. ¶ & Gaufride, þe Erl of Angoy,<sup>31</sup> ȝaf vp to Henry<sup>32</sup> al Normandy. In þe ȝere þat next sewede,

<sup>1</sup> MS. of of. <sup>2-2</sup> om. D. <sup>3-3</sup> þo lete D. <sup>4</sup> clopen O.

<sup>5</sup> MS. her' her. <sup>6</sup> be D. <sup>7</sup> ascaped DO. <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9-9</sup> away fram ham D. <sup>10-10</sup> helde her þere D. <sup>11</sup> leaf 81, back.

<sup>12</sup> strongly O. <sup>13</sup> for-to O. <sup>14</sup> holpe D. <sup>15</sup> Angon' O.

<sup>16</sup> to O. <sup>17</sup> þis the D. þis þe O. þis R. <sup>18</sup> Walton D. <sup>19</sup> þo O.

<sup>20</sup> Macyth D. <sup>21</sup> vnto DO.

<sup>22-22</sup> þere to make a fair' D. þere for-to make a strong O.

<sup>23</sup> was made O. <sup>24</sup> the Kynges D. <sup>25</sup> wende D.

<sup>26</sup> satly D. sauely O. <sup>27</sup> come O. <sup>28</sup> le sic D. <sup>29</sup> vnto O.

<sup>30</sup> his O. <sup>31</sup> Angon' DO. <sup>32</sup> Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O.

<sup>1</sup>deide þe Erl<sup>1</sup> Gaufrid<sup>2</sup>; and Henry<sup>2</sup> þo anon turnede aȝeyn to Angoy,<sup>3</sup> & þere was made Erl wip <sup>4</sup>michel ioye & <sup>4</sup>honour of his men of þe lande; & to him deden feaute & homage þe most parte<sup>5</sup> of his land. ¶ And þo was þis Henry, þe Emperesse sone, Erl of Angoy<sup>6</sup> & Duc of Nor<sup>7</sup>mandye.

¶ And<sup>8</sup> in þe same ȝere Was made deuorse bituene þe Kyng of Fraunce & þe quene his wif, þat was ryght heir of Gascoigne, for <sup>8</sup>encheson þat it<sup>9</sup> was knowe<sup>10</sup> & prouede þat þai wer<sup>1</sup> sib & ney of blode; & þo spousede her, Henry þe Emperesse sone; & þo was he<sup>8</sup> Erl of Angoy,<sup>6</sup> Duc of Normandy, & Duc of Gascoigne. ¶ þe xvij ȝere of þe<sup>11</sup> regne of Kyng Stephen, þis Henry come into Engeland wip a<sup>12</sup> stronge power, and bigan<sup>13</sup> forto werre oppon Kyng<sup>1</sup> Stephen, & toke þe castel of Malmesbery, & dede miche harme. And þe<sup>12</sup> Kyng Stephen hade so miche werre þat he <sup>14</sup>wist nouȝt<sup>14</sup> whider<sup>1</sup> to<sup>15</sup> wende; but at þe laste þai wer<sup>1</sup> accorded, <sup>16</sup>prouȝ þe Erchebisshope Theobalde and prouȝ <sup>16</sup>oper worpi lordes of Engeland, oppon þis condicioun, þat þai shulde departe þe reaume of Engeland bituene ham, so þat<sup>12</sup> Henry, þe Emperesse sone, shulde haue holliche halfe þe reaume, and when Kyng Stephen <sup>20</sup>were<sup>16</sup> dede, he shulde haue al þe lande of Engeland; & þus þai were accordede, & pees criede<sup>17</sup> prouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And when þe accord was made bituene þo ij lordes, Kyng Stephen bicom so sori, for cause þat he hade loste half Engeland, & felle <sup>24</sup>into soche a malakly, & deide in þe xix ȝer<sup>1</sup>, viij wokes & v dayes of his regne, al in werr<sup>1</sup> & in contak<sup>1</sup>; & he lip in þe Abbay of Feuershaw, þe whiche he lete make,<sup>18</sup> þe vj<sup>19</sup> ȝere of his regne.

Of Kyng Henry þat was þe Emperesse<sup>20</sup> sone, in whos tyme  
28 <sup>21</sup>Seynt Thomas of Kaunterbery<sup>21</sup> was Chaunceller.<sup>22</sup>

¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo xl primo.

32 **A**Nd after þis Kyng<sup>1</sup> Stephen, regnede Henry <sup>23</sup>þe Emperesse sone, þat<sup>24</sup> Was cronede<sup>25</sup> of þe Erchebisshop Theobalde þe xvij day bifore Cri[s]tesmas.<sup>26</sup> And in þe same ȝere Thomas

<sup>1-1</sup> om. D. <sup>2</sup> Henry his sone D. Herry his sone O. <sup>3</sup> Angon DO.

<sup>4-4</sup> miche D. mych O. <sup>5</sup> party D. partye O. <sup>6</sup> Angon O.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 82. <sup>8</sup> om. DO. <sup>9</sup> is sic D. <sup>10</sup> known O. <sup>11</sup> his O.

<sup>12</sup> om. D. <sup>13</sup> bigonne D. <sup>14-14</sup> nyst D. nyste O. <sup>15</sup> for-to O.

<sup>16</sup> was D. <sup>17</sup> yeryed O. <sup>18</sup> mak in D. make in O.

<sup>19</sup> sixte O. <sup>20</sup> Emperesses D.

<sup>21-21</sup> the words seynt & of Cauntirbury are struck out, & Beket is inserted after Cauntirbury, in O. <sup>22</sup> Ch[an]celler of Englon<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>23</sup> leaf 82, back. <sup>24</sup> and DO. <sup>25</sup> Crowned kyng O.

<sup>26</sup> Cristemas O.

Beket of London, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, was made þe Kyngus Chancellor of Engeland. ¶ þe secunde 3ere þat he was cronede, he lete caste douñ alle þe newe castelles<sup>1</sup> þat were longyng vnto þe crone, þe whiche Kyng<sup>2</sup> Stephen hade 3eue<sup>2</sup> vnto diuerse<sup>3</sup> 4 meñ, & ham hade made erles & barons forto holde wip him, & <sup>4</sup>him helpe<sup>4</sup> a3eyns Henry,<sup>5</sup> þe Emperesse sone. ¶ And þe iiij 3ere of his regne he put vnder his<sup>6</sup> lordeship þe Kyng<sup>2</sup> of Walys. And in þe same 3er<sup>3</sup>, when þe Kyng of Scotland had in his owen hande, þat is 8 to seyne, þe citee of Kerlil, þe castel of Bamburghe, þe newe castel op<sup>7</sup> Tyne, and þe Erldome of Lancastre, þe same 3ere þe Kyng<sup>2</sup>, wip<sup>8</sup> gret power<sup>3</sup>, went into Walys, & lete caste adouñ<sup>9</sup> wodes, & make<sup>10</sup> waies, and made stronge þe castel<sup>11</sup> of Rutland & Basyng- 12 were; and amonge þe castelles<sup>12</sup> he made an house of þe temple. ¶ And in þe same 3ere was Richard his sone born, þat afterward was Erl of Oxenford.

¶ And þe iiij 3ere of hes regne, he made Gaufride, Erl of 16 Britaigne; & in þat 3ere he chaungede his mone.<sup>13</sup> And þe vj 3ere of his regne he lade <sup>14</sup>an huge<sup>14</sup> host vnto Tolouse, & conquerede hit. And þe vij 3er<sup>3</sup> of his regne, deide Theobalde, þe<sup>5</sup> Erchebisshop of Kanterbery; and þo al þe citee of Kaunterbery, <sup>15</sup>þrou3 20 meschief, almost<sup>15</sup> was brent.

[*Thomas a Becket is made Archbishop of Cunterbury, and quarrels with the King.*]

þe ix 3er<sup>3</sup> of his regne, Thomas Beket, his Chaunceller<sup>3</sup>, was 24 chosen to <sup>16</sup>ben Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery; and oppoñ seynt Bernardes day he was sacrede. ¶ And in þat 3ere, born was Alienore, þe Kynges dou3ter. ¶ And þe x 3ere of his regne, seynt Edmund þe Kyng was translatede wip miche<sup>17</sup> honour. ¶ And 28 þe xj 3ere of his regne he helde his parlement at Northampton; & fro þens fled Seynt<sup>18</sup> Thomas, Erchebisshop<sup>19</sup> of Kaunterbery,<sup>20</sup> for þe<sup>5</sup> grete debate þat was bituen<sup>21</sup> þe Kyng and him; for if he hade bene<sup>22</sup> fonde on<sup>23</sup> þe morwe, he hade bene<sup>22</sup> slayn; & þefore he 32

<sup>1</sup> castel D.<sup>2</sup> 3euen D.<sup>3</sup> diners O.<sup>4-4</sup> help him D. helpe hym O.<sup>5</sup> om. O.<sup>6</sup> his owen D. his ovne O.<sup>7</sup> vpon O.<sup>8</sup> with a DO.<sup>9</sup> doune D.<sup>10</sup> made O.<sup>11</sup> cast sic D.<sup>12</sup> castel D.<sup>13</sup> mony D.<sup>14-14</sup> M.S. has an huge an huge.<sup>15-15</sup> almost<sup>1</sup> þou3 meschif D. almost þurgh myschef O.<sup>16</sup> leaf 83.<sup>17</sup> michel D.<sup>18</sup> seynt struck out in O.<sup>19</sup> om. D.<sup>20</sup> Caunterbury fro þe kyng O.<sup>21</sup> bituene D. betwen O. bitue R.<sup>22</sup> be O.<sup>23</sup> in DO.



fledde þens wiþ iij felawes, in<sup>1</sup> fote oneliche,<sup>2</sup> þat no man wist wher he was, and went ouer þe see to þe Pope<sup>3</sup> of Rome. ¶ And þis was þe principal enchesouñ, forasmiche as þe Kyng wolde haue put  
 4 clerkes to<sup>4</sup> deth þat were atteint of felonye, wipouten<sup>5</sup> eny pryuelege of holy chereche. ¶ And þe xij zere of his regne, was Iohn, his sone, bore.<sup>6</sup> And þe xiiij zere of his regne deide Maude þe Emperesse, þat was his moder<sup>7</sup>; And in þat same zere was Iohane  
 8 his doughter born.<sup>7</sup> ¶ þe xiiij zere of his regne, þe Due Henry of Saxoyne spoused Maude, his doughter; & he bigate on here iij sones, Henry,<sup>8</sup> Othus, & William. ¶ And in þe xv zere of his regne, deide þe gode Erle Robert of Gloucestre, þat foundede þe  
 12 Abbay of Nonnes of Etoñ. ¶ And in<sup>9</sup> þe same zere, Marik, Kyng of Ierusalem, conquerede Babiloñ. ¶ þe xvj zere of his regne, he lete crone his sone Henry at Westmynstre; & him cronede, Roger, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork, in harmyng of Thomas þe Erchebisshop of  
 16 Kaunterbery; wherfore þe same Roger was acursed of þe Pope.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>10</sup>Of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Henry, þat was þe Emperesse sone; & of þe debate þat was bituene him & his fader<sup>1</sup> whiles<sup>11</sup> þat he was in Normandye. *Capitulo Centesimo xliij<sup>do</sup>.*

20 **A**fter þe coronacioun of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Henry, þe sone of Kyng Henry, the<sup>12</sup> Emperesse sone, þat same Henry þe Emperesse<sup>13</sup> sone went ouer into Normandye; and pere he lete marie Elianore, his douzter, vnto Dolfynes,<sup>14</sup> þat was Kyng of<sup>15</sup> Almaine. And in þe  
 24 vij zere þat þe Erchebisshop Seynt<sup>16</sup> Thomas hade bene outlaghed, þe Kyng of Fraunce made þe Kyng & <sup>17</sup>þe Erchebisshop<sup>17</sup> accorded; and þo come Thomas þe Erchebisshop, to Kaunterbery azeyne to his owen chereche. And þis accorð was made in þe bigynnyng<sup>1</sup> of  
 28 Aduent, and afterward he was quellede &<sup>3</sup> martirede,<sup>3</sup> þe v day of Cristusmasse<sup>18</sup> þat<sup>9</sup> þo next comme. For Kyng<sup>1</sup> Henry pouzt oppoñ  
 19 a day of<sup>19</sup> Thomas, Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery, oppoñ Cristesmasse<sup>20</sup> day as he sate<sup>21</sup> at þe<sup>22</sup> mete, and pise wordes saide: þat if  
 32 he hade eny gode knyzt with him, he hade bene,<sup>23</sup> meny day go,<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> on O.    <sup>2</sup> onely D.    only O.    <sup>3</sup> struck out in O.    <sup>4</sup> to the D.

<sup>5</sup> withoute O.    <sup>6</sup> borne D.    <sup>7</sup> bore O.    <sup>8</sup> Hen sic D.

<sup>9</sup> om. O.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 83, back.    <sup>11</sup> while DO.    <sup>12</sup> MS. the þe.

<sup>13</sup> emperesse; D.    <sup>14</sup> Delfines D.    <sup>15</sup> MS. of of.

<sup>16</sup> om. D.    struck out in O.

<sup>17-17</sup> seynt Thomas D.    O. has seynt Thomas, with seynt struck out.

<sup>18</sup> cristesmasse D.    Cristemasse O.

<sup>19-19</sup> seynt D.    seynt struck out in O.    <sup>20</sup> Cristemasse O.

<sup>21</sup> set D.    <sup>22</sup> his D.    om. O.    <sup>23</sup> be O.

avengede of<sup>1</sup> the Erehebisshop Thomas. ¶ And anone Sir William [Breton], Sire Hughe Morvile, Sir William Tracy, & Sir Reynold Fitz-Vrse, Beressone in Engelisshe,<sup>2</sup> went into<sup>3</sup> pe see, and come into Engeland, to pe cherche of Kaunterbery, & him pere pai 4 matrede, at seynt Benetes auter in pe moder' cherche; And pat was in pe zere of pe<sup>4</sup> Incarnacioun of<sup>5</sup> Ihesu<sup>6</sup> crist, M<sup>l</sup>. C. lxxij<sup>7</sup> zere.<sup>8</sup> ¶ And anone after, Henry, pe new Kyng, biganne forto make werr' oppon<sup>9</sup> Henry, Kyng,<sup>9</sup> his fader', & eke oppon<sup>10</sup> his brepern.<sup>11</sup> 8 ¶ And so oppon a tyme pe Kyng of Fraunce and al pe Kynges sones, & ek<sup>14</sup> pe Kyng of Scotland & pe gretest lordes of Engeland, were arisen azeynes Henry pe fader'; & at<sup>12</sup> last, as God wolde, he conquerede<sup>13</sup> his enemys; and pe Kyng of Fraunce & he were 12 accorded. and so sent Kyng Henr', pe fader' specialy vnto pe Kyng of Fraunce, and praede him hertly, for his loue, pat he wolde sende to him by lettre pe names of ham pat bigonne pe werr' oppon him. ¶ And pe Kyng of France<sup>14</sup> sent azeyn to him<sup>14</sup> by lettre pe names 16 of ham pat bigon pe werr': ferst was Iohn his sone, and Richard his broper,<sup>15</sup> & Henry his sone,<sup>15</sup> pe newe Kyng. ¶ So was Henry pe Kyng wonder wrop, & cursede pe tyme pat<sup>16</sup> euer' he ham<sup>16</sup> bigate. And<sup>17</sup> while pe werre dured, Henry his sone,<sup>18</sup> pe newe kyng, 20 ¶ deide, sore repentyng his mysdede; and moste sorw made of eny man for cause of Seynt<sup>19</sup> Thomas dep of Kaunterbery; & prayede his fader, wip miche sorwe of hert, mercy of<sup>20</sup> his trespasse; and his fader' forzaf it him, & hade of him grete pite; & aft[er], he 24 deide, pe xxxvj zere of his regne, and lip at Redyng.

How pe Cristen men loste pe Holy Land in pe forsaid Kyngus tyme, prou3 a<sup>21</sup> false Cristen man pat bicome a<sup>17</sup> Sarasyne.

Capitulo Centesimo xliij<sup>to, 22</sup>

28

**A**Nd while pat Kyng Henry, pe Emperesse sone, leuede & regnede, pe grete batail was in pe Holy Land bituene pe Cristen men & pe Sarasyne; but pe Cristen men were pere quelled poru3 grete tresoun of pe Erl of Trype, pat wolde haue hade to wyf 32

<sup>1</sup> oppon D. vpon O.    <sup>2</sup> Englysshe priuely D. Englyssh pryuely O.

<sup>3</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>4</sup> om. DO.    <sup>5</sup> of oure lorde D.    <sup>6</sup> Ihesus O.

<sup>7</sup> lx and xij DO.    <sup>8</sup> om. O.    <sup>9-9</sup> kyng Henry D. kyng Herry O.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 84.    <sup>11</sup> brepern also D. breperin also O.

<sup>12</sup> at the D. at þe O.    <sup>13</sup> conquerede alle D. conquered aH O.

<sup>14-14</sup> sent to him azeyne D.    <sup>15-15</sup> om. D.    <sup>16-16</sup> he hym euere O.

<sup>17</sup> om. D.    <sup>18</sup> om. sic D.    <sup>19</sup> struck out in O.    <sup>20</sup> for DO.

<sup>21</sup> o DO.    <sup>22</sup> MS. has xliij<sup>o</sup>.

pe Quene <sup>1</sup> of Ierusalem, pat somme tyme was Baldewynus wif; but she forsoke him, & toke to her<sup>2</sup> lorde a Knyzt, a worpi man pat me called Sire Gy Perchez. <sup>3</sup>Wherfore pe Erle of Trip<sup>3</sup> was wrop, and went anone ryght to Saladyne, pat was Soudan of Babyloun, & bicome Saresyn,<sup>4</sup> & his man, & forsoke<sup>5</sup> Cristendome and aH Cristen law; and pe Cristen men wiste<sup>6</sup> nouzt <sup>7</sup>of pis dede,<sup>7</sup> but wende<sup>8</sup> forto haue<sup>9</sup> hade grete helpe of him, as pai were wont to<sup>9</sup> haue bifore. And when pai comen<sup>10</sup> to pe batail, pis false Cristen man turnede vnto pe Sarasynes, and forsoke his owen naciounes<sup>11</sup>; & so were pe Cristen men pere quelled wip pe Sarasynus; and þus wer pe Cristen men slayne & put to horrible dep, and pe citee of Ierusalem destroyed, & pe holy croice born away. ¶ pe Kyng of Fraunce <sup>12</sup>& al pe grete<sup>12</sup> Lordes of pe land lete ham croice <sup>13</sup>for to go into the Holy Lande; and among ham went Richard, Kyng Henries sone, ferst after the Kyng<sup>1</sup> of France pat tok the crois<sup>13</sup> of pe Erchebisshop of Toures; but he toke<sup>14</sup> nouz[t] pe viage at pat tyme, for enchesoun pat he was lette by opere maner waies <sup>15</sup>pat nede<sup>15</sup> moste<sup>16</sup> bene<sup>17</sup> done. ¶ And when Kyng Henry pe<sup>18</sup> fader had regnede xxxv<sup>ti</sup> zere & <sup>19</sup>v mounþes and iiij dayes, he deide, 20 & lip [at] Founteuerard.

Of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Richard, pat conquerede aH<sup>10</sup> pe Holy Land pat Cristen men hade loste. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quarto.<sup>20</sup>

24 **A**Nd after<sup>21</sup> pis Kyng<sup>21</sup> Henry,<sup>22</sup> regned Richard his sone, a stronge man & a worpi, & also bolde; & he was cronede at Wynchestre<sup>23</sup> of pe Erchebisshop Baldewynne, Erchebisshop<sup>24</sup> of Kaunterbery, <sup>25</sup>the þrid day of Septembre; and the secunde 3ar<sup>1</sup> of 28 his regne Kyng Richard him-self and Baldewynne the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury,<sup>25</sup> & Huber[t], Bisshop of Salesbery, & Randulf, Erl

<sup>1</sup> leaf 84, back.<sup>2</sup> here a O.<sup>3-3</sup> MS. has Wherfore pe Erle of Trip Wherfore pe erl of Trip.<sup>4</sup> a sarasyn D. <sup>5</sup> forsok his D. <sup>6</sup> wist it D. <sup>7-7</sup> om. D.<sup>8</sup> went O. <sup>9</sup> om. O. <sup>10</sup> come O. <sup>11</sup> nacion O.<sup>12-12</sup> MS. has & al pe grete & al pe grete.<sup>13-13</sup> forto . . crois D. for-to gon in-to pe holy land; & among hem went Richard, kyng Herry's sone, ferst aftir pe kyng of fraunce pat toke pe Cros O. om. R.<sup>14</sup> nome O. <sup>15-15</sup> and nedes DO. <sup>16</sup> to O. <sup>17</sup> be DO.<sup>18</sup> his DO. <sup>19</sup> om. D. <sup>20</sup> MS. has quinto.<sup>21-21</sup> om. D. þis O. <sup>22</sup> Herry kyng O. <sup>23</sup> Westmynstre DO.<sup>24</sup> MS. has erchebisshop; om. DO.<sup>25-25</sup> the . . Caunterbury D. pe iij day of Septembre & pe ij 3eer of his regne Kyng Richard hym-self & Baldewyn Erchebisshop of Caunterbury O. om. R.

of Gloucestre, & opere meny lordes of *Engeland*, went into pe Holy Land. And <sup>1</sup>in pat viage deide pe Erchebisshop <sup>2</sup>of Kaunterbery; and Kyng Richard went bifore into pe Holy Lond, & <sup>1</sup>reste<sup>3</sup> nouzt til pat<sup>4</sup> he come forpe in his way vnto<sup>5</sup> Cypres, and toke Cipres <sup>4</sup>wip grete force. & sipe<sup>6</sup> he went fourp toward pe Holy Land, & gete azeyn as miche as pe *Cristen* men<sup>7</sup> haden<sup>8</sup> loste bifore, Kyng Richard <sup>9</sup>conquered & gete hit azeyn,<sup>9</sup> saf onely pe Holy Croice. ¶ And when Kyng Richard come to pe toune<sup>10</sup> of Aeres, forto gete <sup>11</sup>pe citee,<sup>11</sup> a grete debate aroos bituene him and pe Kyng of *Fraunce*, so pat Kyng Richard went azeyne into France, & was wrop toward<sup>12</sup> pe Kyng of *Fraunce*; but <sup>13</sup>er<sup>13</sup> pat<sup>13</sup> Kyng Richard went azeyne, he toke pe Citee<sup>14</sup> of Aeres. ¶ And when he hade <sup>12</sup>taken <sup>15</sup>pe citee, he duelled pe<sup>15</sup> awhile; but to him come tydynges<sup>16</sup> pat pe Erl Iohn of Oxenford, his broper, wolde haue seisede al *Engeland* into his honde, & Normandy also, and wolde crone him Kyng of pe lande. ¶ And when Kyng Richard herde <sup>16</sup>pis tydynges,<sup>17</sup> he went azeyn toward *Engeland* wip<sup>18</sup> al pe spede pat he myght<sup>17</sup>; but pe Duc of Estriche mette wip<sup>19</sup> him & tok him, & brouzt him to<sup>20</sup> pe Emperoure of Almaign; & pe Emperour brouzt him into<sup>21</sup> his prisoun. And afterward he was delynerede <sup>20</sup>for an huge Raunsoun, <sup>22</sup>pat is, for to paien<sup>22</sup> an .C<sup>m</sup>. ti.<sup>23</sup> ¶ And for whiche ransoun to bene<sup>24</sup> payede, eche opere chalice of *Engeland* was molten<sup>25</sup> & made into monye. And alle pe monkes of pe ordre of Cisteaux<sup>26</sup> zeuen alle her<sup>27</sup> bokes prou<sup>27</sup> *Engeland*, to <sup>24</sup>done ham forto selle, and to<sup>28</sup> pat ransoun forto paye.

**How Kyng Richard come azeyn fro pe Holy Lande, & avenge<sup>1</sup> him of his enemys. Capitulo Centesimo Quadragesimo quinto.<sup>29</sup>**

28

<sup>30</sup>**W**Hiles pis<sup>19</sup> Kyng Richard was in prisoun, pe Kyng of *Fraunce* werrede oppon him strongeliche<sup>31</sup> in Normandy, and Iohn his broper werrede oppon him<sup>32</sup> in *Engeland*; but pe

<sup>1-1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2</sup> leaf 85.    <sup>3</sup> rested O.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5</sup> to [sic] he come to D.    <sup>6</sup> sip D.    <sup>7</sup> people O.    <sup>8</sup> hade D.

<sup>9-9</sup> get it & conquered it prou grete strengþ D.    gete it and conquered it azen purgh gret myghte O.

<sup>10</sup> Citee O.    <sup>11-11</sup> it O.    <sup>12</sup> wip D.    <sup>13-13</sup> or DO.    <sup>14</sup> toune D.

<sup>15-15</sup> it he duelled in the Citee D.    it he duellid in pe Cite O.

<sup>16</sup> tydyng DO.    <sup>17</sup> tydyng O.    <sup>18</sup> in D.    <sup>19</sup> om. O.

<sup>20</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>21</sup> to D.    <sup>22-22</sup> forto paye D.    pat is for-to paye O.

<sup>23</sup> pound O.    <sup>24</sup> be DO.    <sup>25</sup> meldede D.    molte O.

<sup>26</sup> Cistenaux D.    <sup>27-27</sup> boker [sic] prououte D.    bokes purgh O.

<sup>28</sup> om. DO.    <sup>29</sup> MS. has Sexto.    <sup>30</sup> leaf 85, back.

<sup>31</sup> strongly O.    <sup>32</sup> hym strongly O.

bisshoppis & pe barons of Engeland wipstode<sup>1</sup> ham<sup>2</sup> wip al pe<sup>3</sup>  
 power pat pai hade & myght geten,<sup>4</sup> & helde<sup>5</sup> pe castel of Wynde-  
 sore and alle opere castelles. ¶ And pe forsaide Iohn saw pat he hade  
 4 no might ne power<sup>6</sup> azeynes pe barons of Engeland forto feigt; but  
 anone him went ouer<sup>7</sup> pe see to<sup>8</sup> pe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And  
 when Kyng Richard come out of prisoūn, and was delyuerede, and  
 come into Engeland, anone after Candelmasse, in grete haste he  
 8 went vnto<sup>9</sup> Notyngham, and<sup>10</sup> pe castel of Notyngham to him was  
 zolden; and po disheritede<sup>11</sup> he Iohn, his broper, and alle pat wip  
 him helde; and after, he went vnto pe citee of Wynchestre, and  
 pere he lete him crone Kyng eftesones; and after, he went into  
 12 Normandy forto wer<sup>12</sup> oppon pe Kyng of Fraunce. ¶ And pe  
 Kyng of France come wip vj C. knyghtes toward Gisers; and<sup>13</sup>  
 Kyng Richard mette him, & po wolde haue zeue him bataile, but  
 pe Kyng of Fraunce fledde; & an C. knyghtes of his were take, & ij  
 16 C. stedes were trappede wip yren. ¶ And anone after, went Kyng<sup>14</sup>  
 Richard forto bisege pe castel of Gaillard. ¶ And as he rode oppon  
 a day by pe castel, forto take avisement of pe castel, an<sup>15</sup> Arwe-  
 blaster<sup>15</sup> smote him wip a quarel pat was e[n]venymede; and pe Kyng  
 20 drow out pe shafte of pe quarel, but pe quarelle hede abode stille in  
 his heuede,<sup>16</sup> & hit bigan forto<sup>16</sup> ranele, pat he might nouzt helpe  
 him-self ne<sup>17</sup> meue his Armes. ¶ And po he wist pat he hade  
 dethe<sup>17</sup> Wounde, pat he might nouzt bene<sup>18</sup> hole for no maner pingt.  
 24 He commandedede anone<sup>18</sup> alle his men<sup>18</sup> sharply forto<sup>19</sup> assaile pe  
 castel, so pat pe castel was taken<sup>20</sup> or pat<sup>21</sup> he deide. And so man-  
 lieche<sup>22</sup> his men deden,<sup>23</sup> pat pe peple pat were in pe castel were al  
 taken; and pe Kyng dede wip ham what pat<sup>21</sup> he wolde, & com-  
 28 mandede his men pat pai shulde bryng<sup>24</sup> tofore<sup>24</sup> him pe man pat him  
 so hade<sup>25</sup> hurte & so hade<sup>25</sup> wondede. ¶ And when he come bifore  
 pe Kyng, pe Kyng axed<sup>25</sup> what was his name; & he saide “Sire,  
<sup>26</sup>my name is<sup>26</sup> Bertram Gurdoñ.” “Wherfore,” saide pe Kyng.  
 32 “hast pow me slayn, sip pat y dede pe neuer<sup>27</sup> none harme?”  
 ¶ “Sire,” said<sup>27</sup> he, “ponz ze dede me neuer<sup>27</sup> harme, ze haue done<sup>28</sup>  
 to my frendes miche harme; For zour<sup>28</sup>-self, wip zour owen honde,

<sup>1</sup> withstonden O.    <sup>2</sup> him D.    <sup>3</sup> here D.    <sup>4</sup> gete DO.

<sup>5</sup> geten DO.    <sup>6</sup> vnto O.    <sup>7</sup> into O.    <sup>8</sup> ad sic D.

<sup>9</sup> disherite O.    <sup>10</sup> & pe O.    <sup>11</sup> om. O.    <sup>12</sup> like O.

<sup>13</sup> heede D.    heed O.    <sup>14</sup> to O.    <sup>15</sup> leaf 86.    <sup>16</sup> dethes D.    dethis O.

<sup>17</sup> be DO.    <sup>18-18</sup> om. DO.    <sup>19</sup> om. D.    al his men for-to O.

<sup>20</sup> take O.    <sup>21</sup> om. D.    <sup>22</sup> manly O.    <sup>23</sup> dede O.

<sup>24</sup> bifore D.    byfor O.    <sup>25</sup> om. DO.    <sup>26-26</sup> om. O.

<sup>27</sup> neuere non O.    <sup>28</sup> do D.

quelledde my fader<sup>1</sup> & my broþer; and perfor now y han<sup>1</sup> 3ow  
 quytte 3oure trauaile." ¶ po saide Kyng Richard: "He pat deide  
 oppon þe croice to bryng mannus soule <sup>2</sup>fram þe<sup>2</sup> pyne of helle,  
 for3eue 3ow my dep! and y also for3eue hit þe." þo commandedde <sup>4</sup>  
 þe Kyng pat no man shulde him misdone<sup>3</sup>; but for al þe kyngus  
 defendyng, ¶ Somme of his men <sup>4</sup>him folwed,<sup>4</sup> & priuely him  
 quelledde. And þe vj day after, þe Kyng deide shryuen, and sore  
<sup>5</sup>repentance hauyng<sup>5</sup> of his misdedes,<sup>6</sup> & was houselede & <sup>8</sup>  
 annoyntede. And pis kyng ne<sup>7</sup> regned but ix 3ere & xxxix  
 wokes, & <sup>8</sup>deide, & lip bisides<sup>8</sup> his fader<sup>1</sup> at Founteuerard.

Of Kyng Iohū, þat in þe<sup>9</sup> first 3ere of his regne loste al  
 Normandye. *Capitulo Centesimo xlvj<sup>mo</sup>.*<sup>10</sup> 12

**W**Hen Kyng Richard was dede, for enchesoun þat <sup>11</sup>he hade  
 none heir<sup>9</sup>, nopere<sup>12</sup> sone ne doughter, his broþer Iohan was  
 made Kyng, an[d] cronede at Westmynstre of Hubert, þat was þo  
 Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery. ¶ And when he biganne forto <sup>16</sup>  
 regne, he bicom so mervailous a<sup>7</sup> man, and went ouer into  
 Normandye, & werrede oppon þe Kyng of France. And so longe  
 pai werrede to-gedre, til att þe laste Kyng Iohū loste Normandye &  
 Angoy<sup>13</sup>; wherfor he was sore annoiede, & was none<sup>14</sup> mervaille. <sup>20</sup>  
 ¶ po lete he assemble byfore him at Londoñ, Erchebisshoppis,  
 bisshoppus, Abbotes & Pryours, Erles & barons, and helde pere a  
 grete Parlement, & axede pere of þe clergie<sup>15</sup> þe tenpe of enery  
 cherche of Engeland, forto<sup>16</sup> conquere & gete a3eyne Normandy & <sup>24</sup>  
 Angoy<sup>17</sup> þat he hade loste. and pai wolde nou3t graunt þat ping;  
 wherfore he was wonder<sup>1</sup> wrop. ¶ And in þe same tyme deide þe  
 Erchebisshop<sup>18</sup> Hubert. And þe Priour & þe Couent of Kaunter-  
 bery chosen, a3eynes þe Kyngus wille, to bene Erchebisshop, <sup>28</sup>  
 Maistre Stephen of Langeton, a goode clere pat wonede at þe court  
 of Rome, & sende<sup>19</sup> to þe Pope<sup>20</sup> here elleccioun; & þe Pope<sup>20</sup>  
 confermede hit, and sacred hit<sup>21</sup> at Viterbe. ¶ When þe Kyng  
 wiste pis tydyngus,<sup>22</sup> he was wonder<sup>1</sup> wrop, & drof þe Priour & þe <sup>32</sup>  
 couent fro Kanterbery, & exilede ham<sup>23</sup> out of Engeland, &

<sup>1</sup> haue D. <sup>2-2</sup> oute of D. <sup>3</sup> mysdo D. <sup>4-4</sup> folowede him D.

<sup>5-5</sup> repentyng<sup>1</sup> D. repentaunt hanyng O. <sup>6</sup> mysdede D.

<sup>7</sup> om. DO. <sup>8-8</sup> lith beside O. <sup>9</sup> the D. þe O. om. R.

<sup>10</sup> MS. has xlvj<sup>mo</sup>. <sup>11</sup> leaf 86, back. <sup>12</sup> neyþer D. neþer O.

<sup>13</sup> Angon DO. <sup>14</sup> no DO. <sup>15</sup> MS. cheryge; Clergie of Engeland O.

<sup>16</sup> forto DO. for R. <sup>17</sup> Angon DO. <sup>18</sup> bisshop D. bysshop O.

<sup>19</sup> sent DO. <sup>20</sup> struck out in O. <sup>21</sup> hym O. <sup>22</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>23</sup> hym O.

commandede<sup>1</sup> pat no maner<sup>2</sup> lettre pat come fro pe court of Rome,  
 ne no<sup>3</sup> comandement,<sup>3</sup> shulde be<sup>4</sup> vnderfong<sup>5</sup> ne pledede<sup>5</sup> in  
 Engeland. ¶ When pise tydyngus<sup>6</sup> come to pe Pope,<sup>7</sup> he sent  
 4 vnto Kyng Iohn by his lettre, & prayede him wip gode wille &  
 gode hert pat he wolde vnderfonge Stephen, <sup>8</sup>Erehebisshop of  
 Kaunterbery, vnto His cherche, & soffre pe Priour & his monkes  
 to<sup>9</sup> come azeyn to<sup>10</sup> her<sup>9</sup> owen duellyng; but pe Kyng<sup>9</sup> wolde nouzt  
 8 grant hit for noping.<sup>11</sup>

**How Kyng Iohan wolde <sup>12</sup>nouzt do<sup>12</sup> for <sup>9</sup>pe Popes<sup>13</sup> com-  
 mandement; wherefore al Engeland was enterdite<sup>14</sup> <sup>15</sup>&  
 suspended.<sup>15</sup> *Capitulo Centesimo xlvij*.<sup>16</sup>**

12 **A**Nd at pe<sup>17</sup> laste, pe Pope<sup>7</sup> sent by his autorite, and ennioynede  
 to<sup>18</sup> bisshoppis of Engeland pat, if pe Kyng<sup>9</sup> wolde nouzt  
 vnderfonge pe Prioure of Kaunterbery and his monkes, pat pai  
 shulde do<sup>19</sup> general enterdityng<sup>9</sup> prou3-oute al Engeland; & grantede  
 16 ful power<sup>9</sup> to iiij bisshoppis to pronounce pe enterdityng, if <sup>20</sup>it were  
 nede: ¶ pe first was Bisshop William of London, & pat oper  
 Eustace, Bisshop of Ely; pe pridde<sup>21</sup> was Walter, pe Bisshop of  
 Wynchestre; And pe fersp<sup>22</sup> was Giles, pe Bisshop of Herford.<sup>23</sup>  
 20 ¶ And pise iiij bisshoppis praiede pe Kyng<sup>9</sup>, knelyng on here knees  
 & sore wepyng<sup>9</sup>, pat he wolde do<sup>24</sup> pe Popis<sup>25</sup> comandement, and  
 shewed him pe bullis of the<sup>9</sup> enterdityng; but, for no prayer<sup>9</sup> pat  
 pai myght praye, he wolde nouzt consent perto. And when pe  
 24 bisshopes saw pis, pai went fro<sup>26</sup> pe Kyng<sup>9</sup>; ¶ And in<sup>17</sup> pe morwe<sup>27</sup>  
 after<sup>9</sup> pe Annunsiacon of oure Lady, pai pronouncede pe general  
 enterdityng<sup>9</sup> prou3-oute al Engeland, so pat pe cherchedores were  
 shitte<sup>28</sup> wip Keyes & wip <sup>29</sup>oper fastnyng<sup>9</sup>, and wip<sup>29</sup> wallys. ¶ And  
 28 when pe enterdityng was pronouncede, pan pe Kyng bigan forto<sup>30</sup>  
 wax al out of mesure, and toke<sup>31</sup> into his honde<sup>32</sup> alle pe possessions  
 of po<sup>33</sup> iiij bisshoppis, and of al pe clergie prou3-out<sup>34</sup> al pe lande,

<sup>1</sup> commandede D. Comaunded O. commande R. <sup>2</sup> none D.

<sup>3</sup> mandement D. maundement O. <sup>4</sup> pai D. <sup>5</sup> plede D.

<sup>6</sup> tydyng<sup>9</sup> D. <sup>7</sup> struck out in O. <sup>8</sup> leaf 87. <sup>9</sup> om. D.

<sup>10</sup> vnto D. <sup>11</sup> nomancer þing<sup>9</sup> D. <sup>12-12</sup> no-þing done O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. has Pope struck out; it is also struck out in O.

<sup>14</sup> enterditede D. entirdited O. <sup>15-15</sup> om. O.

<sup>16</sup> MS. has xlvij<sup>o</sup>; D has xxxvij<sup>o</sup>. <sup>17</sup> om. O.

<sup>18</sup> to þe O. <sup>19</sup> don O. <sup>20</sup> if þat D. <sup>21</sup> þirde O. <sup>22</sup> iiij O.

<sup>23</sup> Hereford O. <sup>24</sup> don O.

<sup>25</sup> Popes struck out, and bysshoppes inserted by another hand in O.

<sup>26</sup> from O. <sup>27</sup> morne DO. <sup>28</sup> shitte in D. <sup>29-29</sup> om. D.

<sup>30</sup> to O. <sup>31</sup> nome O. <sup>32</sup> hondes D. <sup>33</sup> the D. þe O.

<sup>34</sup> þrou3 D. þurgh O.

and ordeynede men forto kepe <sup>1</sup>ham, pat<sup>1</sup> pe clerkes might nouzt haue here leuyngt. Wherfore pe biss[hopis curs]ede <sup>2</sup>ham aH pat put, or shulde medle<sup>2</sup> wij, holy chereche<sup>3</sup> godes, azeins <sup>4</sup>the Wille of ham pat ham<sup>5</sup> owede. 4

¶ And Whe[n] pe Kyng Wolde nouzt cesse of his malice for no maner ping, pe<sup>6</sup> iiij bisshoppis aboue-saide<sup>7</sup> went ouer pe see, and went to pe Erchebissho<sup>8</sup> of Kaunterbery, and tolde him al pe tidyngus.<sup>9</sup> ¶ And pe Erchebisshop to ham saide, pat pai shulde <sup>8</sup>go<sup>10</sup> azeyn to Kanterbery, and he wolde come pider<sup>9</sup> to ham, or elles he wolde sende pider<sup>9</sup> certeyn persones in his stede, pat shulde done<sup>11</sup> as miche as him-self were pere. ¶ And when pe bisshopis herde pis, pai turnede azeyne vnto<sup>12</sup> Engeland, & come<sup>13</sup> vnto K[a]un- <sup>12</sup>terbery. <sup>14</sup>¶ the tydynges comen to the kyng<sup>14</sup> pat pe bisshoppes wer<sup>1</sup> come azeyne to Kanterbery,<sup>14</sup> and [as] him-self might nouzt come pider<sup>9</sup> pat tyme, he sent pider<sup>15</sup> bisshopes, Erles, Abbotes, forto trete wij ham, pat pe Kyng shulde vnderfonge pe Erchebisshop <sup>16</sup>Stephen, & pe priour<sup>9</sup> and alle<sup>16</sup> pe monkes of Kaunterbery, and pat he shulde neuer<sup>9</sup> after<sup>9</sup> pat tyme noping take of Holy Chereche azeynes pe wille of ham pat owede<sup>17</sup> pe godes; and pat pe Kyng shulde make ful amendes to ham of whame he hade eny godes <sup>20</sup>taken, & pat holy chereche shulde haue alle here Fraunchises as ferforp<sup>18</sup> as she hade in Seynt Edwardus tyme pe Confessoure.

How Stephen of Langetone comme into Engeland prou; pe Popis<sup>19</sup> commandement, & the[n]<sup>20</sup> went azeyn. *Capitulo* <sup>24</sup>*Centesimo xlviii*<sup>o</sup>.<sup>21</sup>

**W**Hen pe fourme of accorde pus was ordeynede,<sup>22</sup> hit was in a peire of endentures; & pai put her<sup>9</sup> selx<sup>23</sup> to pat <sup>24</sup>o party,<sup>24</sup> and pai pat comen<sup>25</sup> in pe Kyngus name put her<sup>9</sup> selx<sup>26</sup> to pat opere <sup>28</sup>parte<sup>16</sup> of pe endentures. And pe iiij bisshoppus aboue-saide toke

<sup>1–1</sup> it for D. it pat O.

<sup>2–2</sup> al men pat ham medlede D. al hem pat put or schuld medle O.

<sup>3</sup> Chereche O. <sup>4</sup> leaf 87, back. <sup>5</sup> it D. <sup>6</sup> po D.

<sup>7</sup> aforesaide D. <sup>8</sup> Bisshope O. <sup>9</sup> doyingt D. doyinge O.

<sup>10</sup> goñ D. <sup>11</sup> do D. <sup>12</sup> to O. <sup>13</sup> comen O.

<sup>14–14</sup> the . . . Kanterbery D. The tydyng come to pe kyng pat pe Bisshopes were come azen to Cauntirbury O. om. R.

<sup>15</sup> pider sic D. <sup>16</sup> om. O. <sup>17</sup> owen D. owe O.

<sup>18</sup> alseferforth D. as ferforp O. allerforp R.

<sup>19</sup> MS. has Popis struck out; struck out also in O. <sup>20</sup> he D. om. O.

<sup>21</sup> MS. has xlix<sup>o</sup>; D has xxxviii<sup>o</sup>; O has lxxvii<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>22</sup> ordenede D. ordeyned O. ordeyne R. <sup>23</sup> sealles D. seeles O.

<sup>24–24</sup> one parte D. <sup>25</sup> come D. <sup>26</sup> seeles O.



pat o<sup>1</sup> parte<sup>2</sup> of þe endentures<sup>3</sup> wip ham; And þe oper parte of  
 þe endenture pai<sup>3</sup> bare wip ham forto shew þe Kyng. ¶ When þe  
 Kyng saw<sup>4</sup> þe fourme, and hit<sup>4</sup> vnderstode, he helde him ful wel  
 4 paiede<sup>6</sup> of al maner þing pat<sup>7</sup> pai hade ordeynede, saf as tochyng  
 þe restitution of þe godes<sup>8</sup> forto make<sup>8</sup> azeine; to pat þing<sup>9</sup> he  
 wolde<sup>9</sup> nouȝt accorde; and so he sent worde azeine to þe<sup>10</sup> forsaide  
 iiij bisshoppis,<sup>10</sup> pat pai shulde done<sup>11</sup> out and put away pat o pynt  
 8 of restitution; and pai ansuerede pat pai nolde<sup>12</sup> nouȝt done<sup>13</sup> out  
 a word.<sup>13</sup> ¶ þo sent þe Kyng to þe Erchebisshop by þo iiij  
 bisshopes, pat he shulde come to Kaunterbery forto speke wip him  
 pere, and sent vnto him saf condit, vnder plegges, pat is to seyn,  
 12 his Iusticeȝ, Gilbert Peytevyu, William de la Breuer, & Iohn le  
 fi[t]z Hugh, pat in here condit safly he shulde come, & goȝ azein at  
 his wille; & in pis maner þe Erchebisshop Stephen come vnto  
 Kaunterbery. ¶ And when the Erchebisshop was [come],<sup>14</sup> þe  
 16 Kyng<sup>14</sup> come to Chilham, for he wolde come no nyer<sup>15</sup> Kaunterbery at  
 pat tyme; but he sent by his tresorer, þe<sup>16</sup> bisshope of Wynchestre,  
 pat he shulde done<sup>17</sup> out of þe endentures þe clause of restitucioun  
 forto make of þe godes. ¶ And þe Erchebisshop made his oth þer,  
 20 pat<sup>18</sup> he wolde neuer<sup>19</sup> do<sup>19</sup> oute a<sup>20</sup> worde þerof, ne chaunge of pat  
 þe bisshopes<sup>21</sup> hade spoken<sup>22</sup> & ordeynede. & so þe Erchebisshope  
 went azein to Rome, wip-outen<sup>23</sup> eny more doynȝ. ¶ Kyng<sup>14</sup> [Iohn]  
 was þo<sup>24</sup> miche wroper<sup>25</sup> þan euer he was bifore, and lete make a  
 24 comen<sup>26</sup> crie prouȝ-out al Engeland, pat al þo pat haden<sup>27</sup> holy  
 cherche rentes, and wenten<sup>28</sup> ouer þe see, pat pai shulde come azein  
 into Engeland at a certeyn day, and elleȝ pai shulde lese her<sup>29</sup> rentes<sup>29</sup>  
 for euermore; and pat he commanded to<sup>4</sup> euery shirryf prouȝout  
 28 Engeland, pat pai shulde enquer<sup>30</sup> if eny bisshop, Abbot,<sup>30</sup> Pryoure,  
 or eny oper prelate of Holy cherche, <sup>31</sup>fro pat day afterward  
 resceyuede eny mandement pat come fro þe Pope,<sup>32</sup> pat pai shulde  
 tak þe body, & brynge hit bifore him; & pat pai shulde take into  
 32 þe Kynges hande al her<sup>33</sup> londres<sup>33</sup> of holy cherche<sup>34</sup> pat were ȝeuen

<sup>1</sup> one D.<sup>2</sup> partye O.<sup>3-3</sup> and D. with hem & pat opere partye of þe endentures þey O.<sup>4</sup> om. O.<sup>5</sup> leaf 88.<sup>6</sup> apayed D.<sup>7</sup> as DO.<sup>8-8</sup> om. D.<sup>9</sup> nolde O.<sup>10-10</sup> iiij bysshopes aforseid O.<sup>11</sup> do D.<sup>12</sup> wolde D.<sup>13-13</sup> out o word D.<sup>14</sup> o word O.<sup>15</sup> a word R.<sup>16</sup> comen D.<sup>17</sup> neire D.<sup>18</sup> ner O.<sup>19</sup> om. D.<sup>20</sup> do D.<sup>21</sup> that D. pat O. at R.<sup>22</sup> don O.<sup>23</sup> o O.<sup>24</sup> Archebisshop D.<sup>25</sup> spoke O.<sup>26</sup> withoute DO.<sup>27</sup> om. D. so O.<sup>28</sup> wroper þo D.<sup>29</sup> comune O.<sup>30</sup> hade D. had O.<sup>31</sup> went DO.<sup>32</sup> Rente O.<sup>33</sup> Abbot or D.<sup>34</sup> leaf 88, back.<sup>35</sup> struck out in O.<sup>36</sup> godeȝ D.<sup>37</sup> che sic D.

to<sup>1</sup> eny man prouȝ þe Erchebisshop Stephen or by þe Pryour<sup>r</sup> of Kaunterbery, fram þe tyme of þe eleccioun of þe erchebisshope; ¶ And commanded þat alle þe wodes þat were þe erchebisshop<sup>us</sup> shulde<sup>2</sup> bene<sup>3</sup> cast adoun to<sup>1</sup> þe grounde, and aȝ solde. 4

**How Kyng Iohn destroyed þe ordre of Cisteaux. Capitulo Centesimo xlix<sup>o</sup>.<sup>4</sup>**

**A**Nd in þe same tyme þe Irisshe-men bigon to<sup>5</sup> werr<sup>r</sup> oppoñ Kyng Iohn; and Kyng Iohn ordeynede him forto<sup>6</sup> wende<sup>8</sup> into Yrland, and lete arere an huge tax<sup>7</sup> prouȝ-out al Engeland,<sup>7</sup> þat is to seyn, xxxv M<sup>t</sup> marȝ<sup>8</sup>; & sent prouȝ-out<sup>9</sup> al Engeland to þe monkes of þe ordre of Cisteaux, þat pai shulde helpe him of vj M<sup>t</sup> marc of Siluer<sup>r</sup>; and pai ansuerede<sup>10</sup> & saide<sup>10</sup> þat pai derst<sup>12</sup> noping done wipouten<sup>11</sup> her<sup>r</sup> chief Abbot of Cisteaux. Wherefore Kyng Iohn, when he come<sup>12</sup> aȝeyne<sup>13</sup> fram Irland,<sup>13</sup> he dede ham so miche sorwe & care, þat pai nist wher<sup>r</sup> forto abide; for he toke so miche ransoun of euery hous of ham,<sup>14</sup> þe somme amountede ix M<sup>t</sup> 16 & iij C marȝ,<sup>15</sup> so þat pai were clene loste<sup>16</sup> and destroyede, & voidede her<sup>r</sup> hous & her<sup>r</sup> landes prouȝ-out al Engeland. ¶ And the Abbot of Wauersey<sup>17</sup> drade so miche his manace, þat he forsoke al his<sup>18</sup> Abbay, & went pens, and pryuely<sup>19</sup> ordeynede him ouer<sup>r</sup> þe 20 see<sup>20</sup> to þe hous of Cisteaux. ¶ When þe tydynges<sup>21</sup> come to þe Pope,<sup>22</sup> þat þe Kyng<sup>r</sup> had done so miche malice, þo was he toward þe Kyng<sup>r</sup> ful wroȝ, and sent ij legates to<sup>1</sup> þe Kyng<sup>r</sup>,—þat on me callede Pandolf, & þat opere Duraunt,—þat pai<sup>23</sup> shulde warne þe 24 Kyng<sup>r</sup>, in þe Popis<sup>22</sup> name, þat he shulde cesse of<sup>r</sup> his persecucion þat he dede vnto holy cherehe, & amende þe<sup>24</sup> wrong<sup>r</sup> and trespasse<sup>24</sup> þat he hade done to þe Erchebisshope of Kanterbery, &<sup>25</sup> vnto þe<sup>25</sup> monkes of Kaunterbery, & to al þe clergie of Engeland, and þat 28 he shulde restore þe godes aȝeyn þat he hade taken<sup>26</sup> of ham aȝeyns her<sup>r</sup> wille, & elles<sup>27</sup> pai shulde curse the<sup>28</sup> Kyng<sup>r</sup> by name; and to done<sup>29</sup> pis ping<sup>r</sup>,<sup>30</sup> & to conferme,<sup>30</sup> þe Pope<sup>22</sup> toke ham his lettres in

<sup>1</sup> vnto O.    <sup>2</sup> shul O.    <sup>3</sup> be DO.    <sup>4</sup> MS. has lmo.    <sup>5</sup> forto DO.

<sup>6</sup> foro sic D.    <sup>7-7</sup> om. O.    <sup>8</sup> Mark<sup>r</sup> O.    <sup>9</sup> prouȝ D.    þurgh O.

<sup>10-10</sup> om. D.    <sup>11</sup> with-out DO.    <sup>12</sup> come home O.

<sup>13-13</sup> into Engeland D. fro Irland O.    <sup>14</sup> ham þat D. hem þat O.

<sup>15</sup> Mark O.    <sup>16</sup> ylost O.    <sup>17</sup> Warnersey O.    <sup>18</sup> þe O.    <sup>19</sup> om. D.

<sup>20</sup> see pryuely D.    <sup>21</sup> tydyng D. tydyng O.    <sup>22</sup> struck out in O.

<sup>23</sup> leuf 89.    <sup>24-24</sup> trespas and wrong D. wrong and þe trespasce O.

<sup>25-25</sup> to the Priour<sup>r</sup> and D. to þe Priour & to þe O.

<sup>26</sup> take O.    <sup>27</sup> et O.    <sup>28</sup> the D. þe O. om. R.    <sup>29</sup> do D.

<sup>30-30</sup> om. D.

bulles patent. ¶ Ise ij legates comen<sup>1</sup> into Engeland, and comen to pe Kyng<sup>2</sup> to Northampton, pere pat he helde his parlement; & ful curteisely pai<sup>3</sup> him salued<sup>4</sup>, and saide: “Sire, we bepe<sup>5</sup> comen 4 fro<sup>6</sup> pe Pope<sup>7</sup> of Rome, pe pees of holy cherche &<sup>8</sup> pe lande forto amend<sup>9</sup>; and we monest 3ow ferste in pe Popis half, pat 3e make ful restitucioun of pe godes pat 3e haue rauisshe<sup>10</sup>de of holy cherche & of pe land, & pat 3e vnderfonge Stephen,<sup>11</sup> Erchebisshop of 8 Kanterbery, into his dignite, and pe Priour<sup>12</sup> of Kaunterbery & his monkes, & pat 3e zelde a3eyn to<sup>13</sup> pe Erchebisshope alle his landes & rentes, wipout eny wipholdyng. ¶ And Sire,<sup>14</sup> more-ouer, pat 3e<sup>15</sup> soche restitucioun ham<sup>16</sup> make, as holy cherche shal holde her 12 paiede.”

¶ Ipo ansuerede pe Kyng; “as tochyng<sup>17</sup> pe Priour & his monkes of Kaunterbery, al pat 3e haue saide, y<sup>18</sup> wille gladelyche<sup>19</sup> do, & al ping<sup>20</sup> pat 3e wille ordeyne. ¶ But as tochyng<sup>21</sup> pe 16 Erchebisshop, y shal telle 3ow in<sup>22</sup> myn hert as it lip, pat pe Erchebisshop lete his bisshopriche, & pat pe Pope<sup>23</sup> 14 pan for him<sup>24</sup> wolde praye, & pan oppoñ aventure me shulde like some opere bisshopriche<sup>25</sup> forto 3eue him<sup>26</sup> in Engeland; and oppoñ<sup>27</sup> pis 20 condicioun y wil<sup>28</sup> him resceyue and vnderfonge. ¶ And nopeles in Engeland, as Erchebisshop yf<sup>29</sup> he abide, he shal neuer<sup>30</sup> haue so gode saf condit pat<sup>31</sup> he ne shal ben<sup>32</sup> tak.” ¶ Ipo saide Pandolf vnto pe Kyng: “holy cherche was neuer<sup>33</sup> wont to disgrade<sup>34</sup> 24 Erchebisshop wipouten<sup>35</sup> cause resonable; but euer she was wont to chastice Pry[n]ces pat to God & holy cherche were in-obedient.” ¶ “What! how now?” quod pe Kyng, “manace 3e me?” ¶ “Nay,” saide Pandolf, “but 3e<sup>36</sup> now openly haue tolde as it stondep<sup>37</sup> 28 3our hert; & to 3ow we wil tel what is pe Popis<sup>38</sup> wille; & pus it stant: pat he hap 3ow holiche<sup>39</sup> enterditede & accursedede for pe wronges pat 3e haue done to holy cherche & to pe clergie. & for-as-miche as 3e duellip & bep in wil to abide in 3our<sup>40</sup> malice, and 32 wil nou3t come to none emendement,<sup>41</sup> 3e shal vnderstonde pat fro pis tyme afterward pe centence is oppoñ 3ow 3euen, & halde<sup>42</sup> stede

<sup>1</sup> come DO.    <sup>2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> saleded hym O.    <sup>4</sup> be O.

<sup>5</sup> fram D.    <sup>6</sup> struck out in O.    <sup>7</sup> & of DO.    <sup>8</sup> Stephen the D.

<sup>9</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>10</sup> Sir 3itte D.    <sup>11</sup> sir 3it O.    <sup>12</sup> 3e hem O.    <sup>13</sup> om. O.

<sup>13-13</sup> wolde gladely D.    <sup>14</sup> wold gladly O.    <sup>14-14</sup> for him pan D.

<sup>15-15</sup> him forto 3eue D.    <sup>16</sup> MS. oppoñ oppoñ.    <sup>17</sup> wolde DO.

<sup>18</sup> leaf 89, back.    <sup>19</sup> MS. pak.    <sup>20</sup> descharg D.    <sup>21</sup> withoute O.

<sup>22-22</sup> haue tolde openly how it stondes D.    haue now openlich haue told as it standith O.

<sup>23</sup> holy DO.    <sup>24</sup> amendement O.    <sup>25</sup> holdep D.    halt O.

& strengþ; and all<sup>1</sup> þo þat wip 3ow hap<sup>2</sup> communede or<sup>3</sup> þis tyme, Wheper þat þai bep<sup>4</sup> Erles or<sup>5</sup> barons,<sup>6</sup> knyghtes or eny oper, what-so-<sup>7</sup>uer þat<sup>7</sup> þai bene, we ham assoile safly vnto þis day. And fro þis tyme afterwarð, of what condiciõ so-euer<sup>8</sup> he<sup>9</sup> be, we 4 ham acurse þat wip 3ow communen, and<sup>10</sup> do we sentence oppoñ ham openly & specialy. ¶ And we assoile quyte<sup>11</sup> Erles &<sup>12</sup> baroñs, knyztz, & al oper maner<sup>13</sup> men, of her<sup>14</sup> homages, seruices & feautez, þat þai shulde vnto 3ow done. ¶ And þis ping to conferme, We 8 3eue<sup>15</sup> pleyn power<sup>16</sup> to þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & to þe Bisshop of Norwich; ¶ And þe same power we<sup>17</sup> 3eue into<sup>18</sup> Scotland to þe Bisshop<sup>19</sup> of Rouchestre & of Salesbery; & in Walys we 3eue<sup>20</sup> þe same power<sup>21</sup> to þe Bisshop<sup>22</sup> of seynt Dauid,<sup>23</sup> of Landa & of<sup>24</sup> 12 Assa. ¶ And more-ouer we sende<sup>25</sup> prouz al Cristendome, þat al þe bisshoppis biþend þe see, þat þai<sup>26</sup> acurse alle þo þat helpeþ 3ow, or in<sup>27</sup> 12 eny conseile 3eue<sup>28</sup> in eny maner nede þat 3e haue forto done in eny party of the world; and<sup>29</sup> we assaile<sup>30</sup> al ham þat a3eynes 3ow 16 meueþ<sup>31</sup> eny maner<sup>32</sup> werre. ¶ And we assoile ham al also, by þe autorite of þe Pope,<sup>33</sup> & commanden<sup>34</sup> ham<sup>35</sup> also wip 3ow forto werr<sup>36</sup>, as wip him þat is enemy to<sup>37</sup> al holy cherche." ¶ þo answered þe Kyng, "what mow 3e done<sup>38</sup> more?" ¶ þo saide<sup>39</sup> 20 Pandolf: "we seyn<sup>40</sup> to 3ow 'in verbo Dei,' þat 3e, ne none heir<sup>41</sup> þat 3e haue, neuer after<sup>42</sup> þis day may be croned." ¶ Tho saide þe Kyng: "by Him þat is Almyghty God, & y hade wist of þis ping<sup>43</sup> er<sup>44</sup> þat 3e come into my land, þat 3e me<sup>45</sup> hade brougt<sup>46</sup> soche 24 tidynges,<sup>47</sup> y shulde haue made 3ow ride<sup>48</sup> al an hool 3ere." ¶ þo answered Pandolf: "ful wel wende we, at oure ferst comyng, þat 3e wolde haue ben obedient to God and to<sup>49</sup> holy cherche, & haue fulfillede þe Popys<sup>50</sup> commandement; and now we haue shewede 28 & pronuncede vnto<sup>51</sup> 3ow þe Popis<sup>52</sup> wille, as we were chargede perwip. ¶ And as now 3e haue saide þat, if 3e hade wist þe cause of oure comyng, þat 3e wolde haue made vs ryde al an hool 3ere,

<sup>1</sup> oppoñ alle D. vpon aH O. allo R.<sup>2</sup> hauen D. haue O.<sup>3</sup> before D. before O.<sup>4</sup> be D. ben O.<sup>5</sup> om. D.<sup>6</sup> Baroñs or O.<sup>7-7</sup> om. D.<sup>8</sup> þat euere D. euer þat O.<sup>9</sup> þei O.<sup>10</sup> and so DO.<sup>11</sup> quytely D. quytly O.<sup>12</sup> om. DO.<sup>13</sup> 3euen O.<sup>14-14</sup> 3eueñ in O.<sup>15</sup> bysshops O.<sup>16</sup> 3euen D. yeueñ O.<sup>17</sup> bisshoppis D. bysshopes O.<sup>18</sup> David and DO.<sup>19</sup> of seynt DO.<sup>20</sup> sendeþ D. sendith O.<sup>21</sup> þai do D. þey don O.<sup>22</sup> leaf 90.<sup>23</sup> 3eueñ D.<sup>24-24</sup> assoile D.<sup>25</sup> þat assoyle O.<sup>26</sup> assoile R.<sup>27</sup> meue O.<sup>28</sup> struck out in O.<sup>29</sup> commande D.<sup>30</sup> om. O.<sup>31</sup> vnto O.<sup>32</sup> do me D.<sup>33</sup> don me O.<sup>34</sup> answered O.<sup>35</sup> saie D.<sup>36</sup> brougt me O.<sup>37</sup> Tydyng O.<sup>38</sup> riden O.<sup>39</sup> to D.

and as wel 3e myght haue saide pat 3e wolde haue take<sup>1</sup> an hool  
 zere of respite by pe Popys<sup>2</sup> leue. ¶ But forto suffre what dep<sup>3</sup>  
 pat<sup>3</sup> 3e coupe ordeyne, we shulle nouzt spare forto tel 3ow holliche  
 4 al pe Popis<sup>2</sup> message, & his wille pat we<sup>4</sup> wer<sup>4</sup> chargede with."

How Pandolf delyuerede a clerc pat hade falsede<sup>5</sup> & contre-  
 fetede pe Kyngus monye<sup>5</sup> bfore pe<sup>6</sup> Kyng<sup>7</sup>. *Capitulo*  
*Centesimo 1<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>8</sup>

8 **A** Non po commandede pe Kyng to<sup>3</sup> the Shirrif<sup>9</sup> & bailifs<sup>10</sup> of  
 Northampton pat<sup>11</sup> were in pe Kynges presence, pat<sup>11</sup> pai  
 shulde bryng<sup>4</sup> forth alle<sup>12</sup> pe prisoners, pat<sup>13</sup> pai myzt bene<sup>14</sup> done  
 to depe bfore Pandulf, for encheson pe Kyng wende pat pai  
 12 wolde haue gaynesaide here dedes for cause of dep<sup>3</sup>, al ping pat  
 pai<sup>15</sup> hade spoken bfore.<sup>16</sup> ¶ When pe prysoners were comen<sup>17</sup>  
 bfore pe Kyng, pe Kyng<sup>4</sup> commanded<sup>18</sup> somme to bene honget, &  
 some to bene<sup>19</sup> drawe, & somme to draw out her<sup>4</sup> eyen of her<sup>4</sup>  
 16 heued.<sup>20</sup> and amonge alle oper, pere was a clerc pat hade falsede  
 pe Kynges monye; & pe Kyng commaundede pat he shuld<sup>4</sup>  
 bene<sup>21</sup> honged & drawe. ¶ And when Pandolf herd pis com-  
 mandement of pe Kyng, he stert<sup>22</sup> op smertly, and anone axed  
 20 a book<sup>4</sup> & candel, <sup>23</sup> and wolde haue<sup>23</sup> cursed alle ham pat sette  
 oppon pe clerc eny honde. ¶ And Pandolf him-self went forto  
 seeche a croice; and pe Kyng folwede him, and delyuerede him pe  
 clerc by pe honde, pat he shulde do<sup>24</sup> wip him what-euer<sup>4</sup> pat he  
 24 wolde. And pus was the clerc delyuerede, and went pens; and  
 Pandolf & Duraunt<sup>25</sup> went po fro<sup>26</sup> Kyng Iohn, & come azeine to  
 pe Pope<sup>27</sup> of Rome, and tolde him pat Kyng Iohn wolde nouzt  
 amendede ben, but euer<sup>4</sup> abide so acursed. ¶ And nopeles pe Pope  
 28 graunted<sup>4</sup> pat 3er<sup>4</sup> prou3-out Engeland, pat men might synge masse<sup>28</sup>  
 in couenable cherches, & make Godes body, and 3if it to sik<sup>4</sup> men  
 pat<sup>29</sup> shulde passe<sup>29</sup> out of pe<sup>30</sup> worlde, & also pat men might cristen

<sup>1</sup> tok D.    <sup>2</sup> struck out in O.    <sup>3</sup> om. DO.    <sup>4</sup> he D.

<sup>5-5</sup> the kynges mony and counterfetede it D. & counterfete pe kynges money O.

<sup>6-6</sup> om. O.    <sup>7</sup> Kyng<sup>4</sup> himself D.    om. O.    <sup>8</sup> MS. has ljo.

<sup>9</sup> Shereves O.    <sup>10</sup> baliez D.    <sup>11-11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12</sup> leaf 90, back.

<sup>13</sup> pat wer<sup>4</sup> in the kynges prisoū pat D.    <sup>14</sup> be DO.

<sup>15</sup> he O.    <sup>16</sup> afore DO.    <sup>17</sup> Come O.

<sup>18</sup> MS. has to bene commamanded<sup>4</sup>, with to bene underlined for omission.

<sup>19</sup> be O.    <sup>20</sup> heed O.    <sup>21</sup> be DO.    <sup>22</sup> sterte him D.

<sup>23-23</sup> MS. has and wolde haue & wolde haue.    <sup>24</sup> done O.

<sup>25</sup> Durant his felaw D.    Duraunt his felawe O.    <sup>26</sup> fro pe O.

<sup>27</sup> struck out here and everywhere in O.    <sup>28</sup> masse D.

<sup>29-29</sup> passe shulde D.    passe schuld<sup>4</sup> O.    <sup>30</sup> pis O.

childern oueral. ¶ And when pe Pope wist & sawe pat pe Kyng wolde nouȝt bene<sup>1</sup> vnder pe rewele of holy cherche for no maner ping, pe Pope<sup>2</sup> po sent<sup>2</sup> to pe Kyng of France, in remissioun of his synnes, pat he shulde take wip him al pe power pat he myght, & 4 wende into Engeland forto destroye Kyng Iohan.

[*King John gives in to the Pope.*]

When pis tydyngus<sup>3</sup> come to Kyng<sup>4</sup> Iohn, po Was he sore annoyede, & sore drade Laste pat he shulde lese his reame, and 8 him-self<sup>5</sup> be done vnto pe<sup>5</sup> dep. ¶ po sent he to pe Pope messagers,<sup>6</sup> & saide pat he wolde bene<sup>7</sup> iustifiede, & come to amende-ment<sup>8</sup> in al maner pinges, atte his owen wille. pe messagers comen<sup>8</sup> to pe Pope, & tolde him<sup>9</sup> pe Kyngus wille, & saide pat he wolde 12 come to emendement in al maner<sup>10</sup> pinges, & wolde make satisfaccioñ to al maner men after pe Popys ordenaunce. ¶ po sent pe Pope aȝeyne into Engeland, Pandolf and opere messagers, & comen to Kaunterbery þere pe Kyng abode. and pe xiiij day of 16 May, pe Kyng made<sup>11</sup> an hoth forto stande to pe Popes ordenaunce, bifore Pandolf pe legat, in al maner pingus for pe whiche he was accursed; & pat he shulde make ful restitucioñ to alle pe<sup>10</sup> men of holy cherche and of religioun, of pe gode<sup>12</sup> pat he hade take of ham 20 aȝeyn<sup>13</sup> heir wille. And alle pe grete lordes of Engeland suore oppoñ a<sup>13</sup> book & by pe holy dome, pat if pe Kyng wolde nouȝt holde his oth, pai saide pat<sup>14</sup> pai wolde make him<sup>15</sup> holde hit bi strengþ. ¶ And<sup>10</sup> po put pe Kyng<sup>1</sup> him to pe courte of Rome & to 24 pe Pope, and po ȝaft vp pe reame of Engeland & of Irland, for him & for his heires for euermore pat shuld come after him, so pat Kyng Iohan & his heires shulde tak po ij reames of pe<sup>16</sup> Popis Hand, & shulde holde po ij reames of the Pope<sup>16</sup> as to ferme, pay- 28 ing euery ȝer to pe court of Rome a þousand marc of siluer. And po toke<sup>17</sup> pe Kyng pe crowne of his Heued, and sette him<sup>18</sup> on his knees, and pise wordes<sup>19</sup> saide in heryng<sup>20</sup> of alle pe<sup>21</sup> grete<sup>22</sup> lordes of Engeland: “Here y resyngn op pe crone of<sup>23</sup> pe reame 32 of Engeland into pe Popis Hande, Innocent pe pridde, and put 24 me Holliche<sup>25</sup> in his mercy &<sup>26</sup> ordenance.” ¶ po vnderfonge

<sup>1</sup> be D.    <sup>2-2</sup> sent po O.    <sup>3</sup> Tydyng O.    <sup>4</sup> leaf 91.

<sup>5-5</sup> ben done to D. to be don to O.    <sup>6</sup> messagers DO. messenger R.

<sup>7</sup> be DO.    <sup>8</sup> come DO.    <sup>9</sup> him D. hym O. ham R.    <sup>10</sup> om. DO.

<sup>11</sup> made & swore O.    <sup>12</sup> godes D. goodes O.    <sup>13</sup> be O.    <sup>14</sup> om. D

<sup>15</sup> hem O.    <sup>16-16</sup> Pope D.    <sup>17</sup> nome O.    <sup>18</sup> it O.    <sup>19</sup> worde D

<sup>20</sup> audience D.    <sup>21</sup> people O.    <sup>22</sup> gre sic D. & O.    <sup>23</sup> and DO

<sup>24</sup> leaf 91, back.    <sup>25</sup> holy O.    <sup>26</sup> and in his DO.

Pandolf<sup>e</sup> þe crone of Kyng Iohn, and kepte hit v dayes, as for seising-takyng<sup>e</sup> of þo ij reaumes of Engeland and of Yrlan<sup>d</sup>, and confermede al maner<sup>e</sup> þinges by his chartre pat foleweþ after.

4 Of þe lettre obliga[to]rie þat Kyng Iohn made to þe court of Rome; wherfore þe Petrus pens bep<sup>1</sup> gadrad þrouz al Engeland. *Capitulo Centesimo Quinquagesimo primo.*<sup>2</sup>

“**T**O<sup>3</sup> alle<sup>4</sup> Cristen peple prou3-out<sup>5</sup> the worlde duellyng<sup>e</sup>, Iohn,  
8 by þe grace of God, Kyng<sup>e</sup> of Engeland, gretyn<sup>e</sup> to 3our vniuersite! and knowen<sup>6</sup> þing<sup>e</sup> it be þat, for-asmiche as<sup>7</sup> we haue grenede & offended<sup>8</sup> God & our<sup>e</sup> moder<sup>e</sup> cherche<sup>9</sup> of Rome, and forasmiche as we haue nede to þe mercy of oure lord Ihesu Crist,  
12 and we may noþing so worpi offre competent satisfaccioun to make to God & to holy cherche, but if it were our<sup>e</sup> owen body, as wip oure<sup>10</sup> reaumes of Engeland and of Irland, Thanne, by þe grace of God,<sup>11</sup> we desireñ forto meken<sup>12</sup> vs for þe loue of Him þat meked  
16 Him to þe dep of þe Croice, prou3 conseil of þe noble erles & barons, we soffren<sup>13</sup> and frely granten to God, and to þe Apostoilz seynt Petre & seynt Paule, & to oure moder<sup>e</sup> cherche of Rome, & to our<sup>e</sup> Holy fader þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, & to alle þe Popis  
20 þat comeþ<sup>14</sup> after him, al þe reaume &<sup>15</sup> patronages of cherches<sup>16</sup> of Engeland<sup>16</sup> and of Irland, wip alle þe appurtenances, for remissioun of oure synnes, and helpe & help of oure Kyn<sup>17</sup> soules, and of all Cristen soules, so þat fro<sup>18</sup> þis tyme afterward, we wille resceyue &  
24 holde of oure moder che[r]che of Rome, as fee ferme, doyng<sup>e</sup> feaute to our<sup>19</sup> holy fader<sup>20</sup> <sup>21</sup>þe Pope, Innocent þe þridde, and to alle þe Popes þat comeþ<sup>22</sup> after<sup>e</sup> him, in<sup>23</sup> maner<sup>e</sup> abouesaide. ¶ And in presence of þe wise man Pandolf, þe Popis Suthdekne,<sup>24</sup> we makeþ<sup>25</sup>  
28 liege homage, as it were in þe Popes presence, & bifore him were; and we shul<sup>26</sup> do al maner<sup>e</sup> þinges<sup>27</sup> aboue-saide; and<sup>28</sup> perfore we byndeþ<sup>28</sup> vs, and al þat comen after<sup>e</sup> vs, & oure heirs for-ener-more, wipouten<sup>29</sup> eny gaynsaying, to þe Pope, & eke þe ward<sup>30</sup> of

<sup>1</sup> ben D.<sup>2</sup> MS. has *secundo*.<sup>3</sup> So *sic* D.<sup>4</sup> MS. alle al; alle the D.<sup>5</sup> prou3-out al D.<sup>6</sup> knowe D.<sup>7</sup> þat DO.<sup>8</sup> offende D.<sup>9</sup> MS. has cherche of cherche.<sup>10</sup> MS. has oures.<sup>11</sup> the holy gost D.<sup>12</sup> þe holy gooste O.<sup>13</sup> meke D.<sup>14</sup> offren DO.<sup>15</sup> comen DO.<sup>16</sup> of Engeland of O.<sup>17</sup> om O.<sup>18</sup> Kynes D.<sup>19</sup> from O.<sup>20</sup> om. D.<sup>21</sup> fade *sic* D.<sup>22</sup> leaf 92.<sup>23</sup> comen O.<sup>24</sup> in the D. in þe O.<sup>25</sup> Sudekene O.<sup>26</sup> make DO.<sup>27</sup> MS. has shulde, with de underlined for omission.<sup>28</sup> þing<sup>e</sup> O.<sup>29</sup> ~~28-29~~ þerto we bynde D. þerto we byndeþ O.<sup>30</sup> withoute O<sup>31</sup> wardes D.

cherche<sup>1</sup> vacaunt<sup>3</sup>. and in token<sup>2</sup> of pis ping euer forto last, we wille, conferme &<sup>3</sup> ordeyn, pat our<sup>4</sup> special rent<sup>3</sup> of pe forsaide Reaumes, sauynge seynt Petrus pens, in al<sup>4</sup> ping to pe moder cherche of Rome, paying by 3er<sup>5</sup> M<sup>+</sup> mar<sup>3</sup><sup>6</sup> of siluer<sup>7</sup> at ij termes of 4 pe 3ere, for al maner custumes pat we<sup>7</sup> shulde do to<sup>7</sup> pe forsaide Reaumes, pat is to seyn, at Mighelmesse & at<sup>8</sup> Ester<sup>8</sup>, pat is to<sup>8</sup> seyn,<sup>9</sup> vij C mar<sup>3</sup><sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup>for Engeland<sup>11</sup>, & iij C mar<sup>3</sup><sup>12</sup> for Irland<sup>12</sup>, sauynge to vs and to oure heires, oure<sup>3</sup> Iustice<sup>3</sup> and oure oper<sup>8</sup> ffraunchisis, and oper<sup>8</sup> realtes pat apperteynep<sup>13</sup> to<sup>14</sup> pe crone. And alle pise pinges pat<sup>15</sup> bifore ben<sup>15</sup> saide, we wille pat hit be ferme & stable wipouten ende; and to pat obligacioun we, and alle our<sup>16</sup> successoures & oure heires,<sup>16</sup> in pis maner bep<sup>17</sup> bonde, pat if we, or <sup>12</sup>eny of our heires, prouz<sup>18</sup> presumeioun falle<sup>19</sup> in eny poynt a3eyne pise pingus abouesaide, & he bene<sup>20</sup> warnede, & wille nouzt<sup>21</sup> rizt amende him, he shal pan lese pe forsaide<sup>3</sup> reaumes for euermore. and pat<sup>3</sup> pis chartre of<sup>22</sup> obligacioun, & oure warant,<sup>22</sup> for euermore <sup>16</sup>be ferme and Stable wipouten<sup>23</sup> gaynsaying<sup>23</sup>, we shul fro pis day afterward be trewe to God & to pe<sup>24</sup> moder<sup>24</sup> cherche of Rome, and to pe Pope Innocent pe prikt<sup>25</sup> and to al pat<sup>26</sup> comeþ<sup>27</sup> after him; and pe reaumes of Engeland & of Irland<sup>12</sup> we shul mayntene <sup>20</sup>trewely<sup>28</sup> in al maner poynt<sup>3</sup> a3eyn<sup>3</sup> al maner men by oure power, prouz<sup>29</sup> pe grace of God.<sup>29</sup>

**How pe clerkes pat werne<sup>30</sup> outlawed of Engeland<sup>12</sup>, come a3eyn, & how Kyng Iohn was assoiled. Capitulo Centesimo liij<sup>o</sup>.<sup>31</sup> <sup>24</sup>**

**W**Hen pis chartre<sup>32</sup> was made and enselede, pe Kyng Vnderfonge a3eyn his crone of Pandolfes hondes, and sent anone vnto<sup>33</sup> pe Erchebisshop Stephen, and to al his oper<sup>8</sup> clerkes and lewed men pat he hade exiled out of his<sup>34</sup> lande, pat pai<sup>28</sup> shulde come a3eyne into Engeland<sup>12</sup>, & haue a3eyn her<sup>3</sup> londes & heir<sup>3</sup> rentes, & pat he wolde make restitucioun of pe godes pat he

<sup>1</sup> Cherche O.      <sup>2</sup> tokenyng<sup>t</sup> D.      <sup>3</sup> om. D.      <sup>4</sup> al maner D.

<sup>5</sup> 3ere a O.      <sup>6</sup> marc D.      Mark<sup>t</sup> O.

<sup>7-7</sup> shal do for D.      schul don for O.      <sup>8-8</sup> Estren for Engeland<sup>12</sup> O.

<sup>9</sup> say D.      om. O.      <sup>10</sup> marc pat is to sayn D.      <sup>11-11</sup> om. O.

<sup>12</sup> marc D.      Mark<sup>t</sup> O.      <sup>13</sup> perteyne D.      pertynch O.

<sup>14</sup> vnto O.      <sup>15-15</sup> biforne be D.      <sup>16-16</sup> heires and successoures D.

<sup>17</sup> ben O.      <sup>18</sup> prouz eny D.      purgh ony O.      <sup>19</sup> faile D.

<sup>20</sup> be O.      <sup>21</sup> no O.

<sup>22-22</sup> waraunt and our obligacioun D.      <sup>23</sup> withoute O.      <sup>24</sup> our<sup>8</sup> D.

<sup>25</sup> pirde O.      <sup>26</sup> leaf 92, back.      <sup>27</sup> comen O.      <sup>28</sup> trewlich O.

<sup>29-29</sup> godes helpe D.      goddes helpe O.      <sup>30</sup> were DO.

<sup>31</sup> MS. has liij<sup>o</sup>.      <sup>32</sup> lettre D.      <sup>33</sup> to D.      <sup>34</sup> him sic D.



had<sup>1</sup> take of heres,<sup>1</sup> aȝeys her<sup>1</sup> wille. ¶ þe Kyng him-self þo,  
 and Pandolf, & Erles & barons, went þo<sup>2</sup> vnto Wynehestre aȝeinȝ  
 þe Erchebisshop Stephen. & when he was comen,<sup>3</sup> þe Kyng went  
 4 aȝeynes him, & felle adouñ vnto<sup>4</sup> his feet, & saide vnto<sup>4</sup> him :  
 “faire sir, ȝe bep welcomen<sup>5</sup>; and y crie ȝow mercy, for enchesouñ  
 pat y haue trespassed<sup>6</sup> aȝeynȝ ȝow.” ¶ þe Erchebisshop toke him  
 vp þo in his Armes, & cussed<sup>7</sup> him curteisely ofte-tymes, and after  
 8 lad him to þe dore of Seynt Swythynus cherche by þe honde, &  
 assoilede him of þe centence, and him reconselede to God and to  
 holy cherche; and pat was on seyn[t] Margarites day; and þe  
 Erchebisshop anone went forto synge þe masse, and þe Kyng offred  
 12 at þe masse a mark of golde. ¶ And when þe masse was done, alle  
 þai went forto vnderfonge<sup>6</sup> her<sup>1</sup> londres, wipouten<sup>7</sup> eny maner<sup>8</sup>  
 gaynesaying; and pat day þai made aȝ merþe and ioye ynow; but  
 ȝitte was nouȝt þe enterdit<sup>8</sup> relessede, for enchesouñ<sup>9</sup> þai hade sent  
 16 pat þe enterdityng<sup>8</sup> shulde nouȝt bene vndone<sup>9</sup> til þe Kyng<sup>8</sup> hade  
 made ful restituciouñ of þe godes that he<sup>10</sup> hade take of Holy  
 cherche, and also pat him-self shulde done<sup>11</sup> homage to þe Pope by  
 a certeyne ligat pat he shulde sende into<sup>12</sup> Engeland.  
 20 ¶ þo toke<sup>13</sup> Pandolf his leue of<sup>14</sup> þe Kyng<sup>8</sup> and of þe Erche-  
 bisshop, and went aȝeyne vnto<sup>15</sup> Rome. And þe Erchebisshop  
 anone lete come bifore him prelates of holy cherche at Redyng,  
 forto trete and conseil how miche and what þai shulde<sup>16</sup> axe of þe  
 24 Kyng<sup>8</sup> forto make restituciouñ of þe godes pat he hade take<sup>17</sup> of  
 ham. ¶ And þai ordeynede and saide, pat þe Kyng shulde ȝeue to  
 þe Erchebisshope iij M<sup>t</sup> marȝ<sup>18</sup> for þe wronge pat þe Kyng hade  
 done to<sup>19</sup> him, and also to oper clerkes<sup>20</sup> xv M<sup>t</sup> marc, by poreyons.<sup>20</sup>  
 28 and in þe same tyme Nicholas,<sup>21</sup> bishop of<sup>21</sup> Tuscan, Cardynal  
 Penitauncer<sup>1</sup> of Rome, come into Engeland<sup>1</sup> prouȝ þe Popis com-  
 mandement, þe v kalend of Ottobre, and come to London þe v  
 None of Octobre, for enchesouñ pat Kyng Iohn, and alle þe<sup>22</sup>  
 32 kynges pat comen after him, shulde euermore halde þe reaumes of  
 Engeland and of Irland of God & of þe Pope, paing<sup>1</sup> to þe Pope  
 by ȝer<sup>1</sup> as<sup>23</sup> is aboue saide.

1—1 taken of ham D. take of hem O. 2 om. D. 3 come O.

4 to D. 5 welcome O. 6 vndirfonge al O.

7 with-out D. withoute O. 8 Entirditynge O.

9—9 om. D. pat he had sent pat þe entirdityng schuld not ben vndon O.

10 leaf 93. 11 do D. 12 vnto O. 13 nome DO. 14 fro O.

15 to O. 16 miȝt D. 17 taken D. 18 marc D. Mark<sup>1</sup> O. 19 vnto DO.

20—20 by porcions xv M<sup>t</sup> marc D. by porcions xv M<sup>t</sup> Mark<sup>1</sup> O.

21—21 om. D. 22 om. O. 23 as it O.

How þe enterditing was vndone in Engeland; and of þe debate  
pat was bituene Kyng Iohn & þe barons of þe reaume.

¶ *Capitulo Centesimo liij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>1</sup>

**W**Hen Kyng Iohn<sup>2</sup> hade done his<sup>2</sup> homage to þe legat pat<sup>4</sup>  
shewede him þe Popes<sup>3</sup> lettre, pat he shulde paye to Iulyan  
and 3elde a3eyn, pat was Kyng Richardes<sup>4</sup> wif, þe priddle part<sup>4</sup> of  
þe londe of Engeland & of Irland pat he hade wiþholde sip pat  
Kyng deide,—¶ when Kyng Iohn herde þis, he was wonder<sup>7</sup> wroþ, 8  
for vtterliche<sup>5</sup> þe enterdityng might nouzt bene<sup>6</sup> vndone til pat he  
hade made gree & restitucion to<sup>7</sup> þe forsaide Iulian of pat she<sup>8</sup>  
axed. ¶ The legate went þo a3eyn to þe Pope<sup>9</sup> after<sup>9</sup> Cristesmasse,  
and þe Kyng sent þo messagers<sup>11</sup> ouere<sup>12</sup> see to Iulian, pat was Kyng 12  
Richardes wif, forto haue a relese of pat she axede<sup>13</sup> him. ¶ And  
so hit bifelle<sup>14</sup> pat Iulian deide anone after Ester, and insomiche þe  
Kyng was quyt of<sup>15</sup> pat she axede; but þo, at þe feast<sup>16</sup> of Seynt  
Iohn pat<sup>17</sup> come next<sup>17</sup> after, prou3 þe Popis<sup>18</sup> commandement þe 16  
enterdityng was ferst<sup>1</sup> relessede prou3<sup>19</sup> al Engeland þe vij day of  
Iuñ;—and seuen 3ere almost<sup>20</sup> was þe londe enterditede,—and on<sup>21</sup>  
þe morwe men ronge,<sup>22</sup> & songe masses prou3-out Londoñ, and so  
after prou3-out<sup>23</sup> all Engeland. 20

¶ And þe next 3ere after, pere bigan a grete debate bituen<sup>24</sup>  
Kyng Iohn & þe lordes of Engeland, for encheson pat he wolde  
nou3[t] graunt þe lawes, & halde, þe<sup>25</sup> which Seint Edward hade  
ordeyned, and hade ben<sup>26</sup> vsede & holde vnto pat tyme pat<sup>27</sup> he 24  
hade ham broken; for he wolde none<sup>28</sup> lawe holde, but dede al  
þing pat him likede, & disheritede<sup>29</sup> meny men wiþ-outen<sup>30</sup> consent  
of lordes & pirez of þe land; And he wolde haue disheritede<sup>31</sup> þe  
gode erle Randolf of Chestre, for encheson pat he vndername him 28  
of his wickednesse. & for cause pat he dede so miche shame &

<sup>1</sup> MS. has liiij<sup>o</sup>.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. D.

<sup>3</sup> popes struck out and Bisshopes written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>4-4</sup> wyves þe iij partye O.      <sup>5</sup> onliche D.      <sup>6</sup> he D.

<sup>7</sup> of O.      <sup>8</sup> he O.

<sup>9</sup> Pope atte sic D; struck out, and Bisshope written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 93, back.      <sup>11</sup> MS. has messagers messagers.

<sup>12</sup> ouere the D. ouer þe O.      <sup>13</sup> axede of D. axed of O.

<sup>14</sup> felle D.      <sup>15</sup> of thyng<sup>t</sup> D. of þing O.      <sup>16</sup> MS. has ferst.

<sup>17-17</sup> next come D.

<sup>18</sup> popes struck out, and Bisshoppis written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>19</sup> þou3 D.      <sup>20</sup> om. DO.      <sup>21</sup> in O.      <sup>22</sup> rong belles O.

<sup>23</sup> þrou3 D. þurgh O.      <sup>24</sup> bituene D. betwen O. bitwe R.

<sup>25</sup> om. D.      <sup>26-26</sup> made and ordeynede and D.      <sup>27</sup> and D.

<sup>28</sup> no DO.      <sup>29</sup> disherite O.      <sup>30</sup> withoute O.      <sup>31</sup> disherite O.

vilony to God &<sup>1</sup> holy cherche, & also for he helde & hauntede his owen broperes wif, & lay also by meny opere wymmen, grete lordes dougters,—for he sparede no womman pat him likede forto<sup>2</sup> 4 haue,—wherfore alle pe lordes of pe lande wer<sup>3</sup> toward<sup>3</sup> him wonder<sup>3</sup> wrop, and went<sup>4</sup> wip him<sup>4</sup> to London, & toke pe citee.

[*King John grants the Great Charter.*]

¶ And forto cesse pis debate and sorwe, pe Kyng<sup>5</sup> and pe 8 Erchebisshop, and opere grete lordes of<sup>5</sup> Engeland, assemblede ham bfore pe fest<sup>6</sup> of Seynt Iohn pe Baptiste, in a medowe bisides<sup>6</sup> pe toune of Stanes pat is callede<sup>7</sup> Rome<sup>8</sup>mede. And pe Kyng made ham pere a chartre of ffraunchise<sup>9</sup>, soche as pai wolde axen ; 12 & in soche maner<sup>10</sup> pai were acorde<sup>10</sup>de ; and pat accordement laste nouzt ful longe, for pe Kyng him-self<sup>11</sup> sone after<sup>11</sup> dede azeynes pe poyntes of pe same chartre pat he hade made. Wherfore pe moste 12 party of pe<sup>12</sup> lordes<sup>13</sup> of Engeland<sup>14</sup> assemblede ham, & bigon to 16 were oppon Kyng Iohn, and brent his tounes & robbede his fole, & dede al pe sorwe pat pai myght<sup>15</sup>, and made ham else<sup>16</sup> stronge as pai might<sup>17</sup>, wip a<sup>17</sup> her<sup>17</sup> power<sup>17</sup>, & pouzt<sup>18</sup> to dryuen<sup>18</sup> him out of Engeland, and make Lewys, pe Kynges sone of France, Kyng<sup>19</sup> of 20 Engeland. ¶ And Kyng Iohan sent po ouer<sup>19</sup> pe<sup>19</sup> see, and ordeynede so miche peple of Normannes & of Picard<sup>20</sup>, and of Flemynges, so pat pe lande miht nout ham sustene, but wip miche<sup>20</sup> sorw. ¶ And among Alle pis<sup>21</sup> peple pere was a Norman<sup>22</sup> pat me callede<sup>23</sup> Frankes 24 of Brent<sup>23</sup> ; and pis Norman & his company sparede ney<sup>24</sup>per cherche ne house of Religioñ, pat pai ne brent & robbed hit, & bare away alle pat<sup>24</sup> pai might tak<sup>24</sup>, so pat pe land<sup>25</sup> was al destroiede, what<sup>25</sup> in o<sup>25</sup> side & in<sup>26</sup> pat opere. ¶ pe barons & pe<sup>27</sup> lordes po of Enge- 28 land ordeynede amonges<sup>28</sup> ham pe best spekers & wisest men, & sent ham ouer<sup>19</sup> pe<sup>19</sup> see to Kyng Philip of Fraunce, & prayed him pat he wolde sende Lowys his sone into Engeland<sup>29</sup>, to ben<sup>29</sup> Kyng of Engeland, and vnderfonge<sup>30</sup> pe crone.

<sup>1</sup> and to D.    <sup>2</sup> to D.    <sup>3</sup> wip D.    with O.    <sup>4-4</sup> om. DO.

<sup>5</sup> of the lande of D.    of pe land of O.    <sup>6</sup> beside D.

<sup>7</sup> y-Called O.    <sup>8</sup> leaf 94.    <sup>9</sup> ffraunchise D.    <sup>10</sup> a maner D.

<sup>11-11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12-12</sup> parte of D.    <sup>13</sup> land O.

<sup>14</sup> the lande D.    lordes O.    <sup>15</sup> myght with al her power O.

<sup>16</sup> as DO.    <sup>17-17</sup> om. O.    <sup>18-18</sup> dryue DO.    <sup>19</sup> om. D.

<sup>20</sup> michel DO.    <sup>21</sup> thi sic D.

<sup>22</sup> man of Normandy D.    man of Normandy O.

<sup>23-23</sup> faukes of Brute O.    <sup>24</sup> MS. pat pat.

<sup>25-25</sup> in that on D.    on pe on O.    <sup>26</sup> on O.    <sup>27</sup> om. DO.

<sup>28</sup> among O.    <sup>29</sup> be DO    <sup>30</sup> haue D.

How Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fraunce, come into Engeland  
wip stronge<sup>1</sup> power<sup>2</sup> of peple, to ben<sup>3</sup> Kyng of Engeland.  
*Capitulo Centesimo liiij<sup>to</sup>.*<sup>3</sup>

**W**Hen Kyng Philip of Fraunce herde þis tydynges,<sup>4</sup> he made 4  
certeyn aliance bituene ham by her<sup>5</sup> commune eleccion, pat  
Lowys, Kyng<sup>6</sup> Philippis sone of Fraunce, shuld<sup>7</sup> <sup>5</sup>gone<sup>6</sup> wip ham  
into Engeland, & dryue out Kyng<sup>8</sup> Iohn of þe land. And alle þo<sup>7</sup>  
pat were in presence of Lowis made to<sup>8</sup> him homage, and bicom<sup>9</sup> 8  
his men.<sup>9</sup> And þe barons of Engeland<sup>10</sup> helde ham<sup>10</sup> stille at  
Londōn, & abode<sup>11</sup> pere Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. And  
þis was þe nexte Saturesday<sup>12</sup> bfore þe Ascenciuñ of our<sup>12</sup> Lord<sup>12</sup> pat  
Lowis come into Engeland wip a<sup>13</sup> stronge power<sup>3</sup>; & pat tyme 12  
Kyng Iohn<sup>14</sup> hade take alle þe castelles<sup>14</sup> of Engeland into Aliens  
hondes. ¶ And Lowys come þo to Rochestre, and bisegede þe  
castel, & tok<sup>15</sup> hit wip strengþ, & þe þoresday in Whitson weke,<sup>15</sup>  
lete honge alle þe Aliens pat were perin. And þe þoresday þo next 16  
sewyng, he come to Londōn; & pere he was vnderfong wip  
michel<sup>16</sup> honour<sup>16</sup> of þe lordes pat aboden<sup>17</sup> him pere; & alle to him  
þai maden<sup>18</sup> homage. ¶ And<sup>19</sup> afterward, in þe Tywesday þo next  
sewyng<sup>19</sup> þe<sup>19</sup> Trinitee Sondag,<sup>20</sup> he toke þe castel of Ryegate, and 20  
in þe morwe after, þe castel of Gildeford, & þe Friday<sup>21</sup> þo next  
sewyng<sup>21</sup>, þe casteH of Farnham; and þe Moneday next after, þe  
cite of Wynchestre to him<sup>22</sup> was zolden<sup>23</sup>; and in þe morwe nexte<sup>13</sup>  
after<sup>24</sup> seynt Iohns day, þe maner<sup>24</sup> of Wolneseye; And þe Tiwesday 24  
next after þe viij<sup>tas</sup><sup>24</sup> of Seynt Petre & seynt Poule, þai token<sup>25</sup> þe  
castel of Odyham. ¶ And þe Moneday next after seynt Margaretes  
day, he ordeynede him toward Beaumer,<sup>26</sup> forto bisege þe<sup>27</sup> castel;  
& pere he duellede xv dayes, & might nouzt gete þe castel; & 28  
þo<sup>28</sup> went he<sup>29</sup> pens, and come to Londōn, & þe Toure to him  
was zolde.

<sup>1</sup> strengþ & D. a strong O.<sup>2</sup> be O.<sup>3</sup> MS. has ly<sup>to</sup>; D has liij<sup>o</sup>.<sup>4</sup> tydynges O.<sup>5</sup> leaf 94, back.<sup>6</sup> go D. <sup>7</sup> om. DO.<sup>8</sup> vnto D.<sup>9</sup> men DO. man R.<sup>10-10</sup> hem held O.<sup>11</sup> abiden D.<sup>12</sup> Satirday O.<sup>13</sup> om. D.<sup>14</sup> castel D.<sup>15</sup> MS. weke &.<sup>16</sup> mych O.<sup>17</sup> abiden O.<sup>18</sup> made D.<sup>19-19</sup> on þe Tywesday next after þe D. after in þe tewsdays next aftir O.<sup>20</sup> day D.<sup>21-21</sup> nexte after D. next aftir O.<sup>22</sup> MS. him him.<sup>23</sup> zolde D. yolde O.<sup>24</sup> viij O.<sup>25</sup> toke DO.<sup>26</sup> Bremer O.<sup>27</sup> MS. þe þe.<sup>28</sup> þai D.<sup>29</sup> om. D. þey O.

<sup>1</sup>And in þe same tyme<sup>1</sup> þe Pope<sup>2</sup> sent into Engeland a legate þat me callede Swalo; & of Kyng Iohnes dep. *Capitulo Centesimo lv<sup>to</sup>.*<sup>3</sup>

4 **A**Nd in þe same tyme þe Pope<sup>4</sup> sent into Englonde a legate þat me callede Swalo, and he was <sup>5</sup>prest Cardinal of Rome, forto mayntene Kyng<sup>6</sup> Iohnes cause aȝeyn; þe barons of Engeland; but þe barons hade so huge partye and help prouȝ Lowys, þe  
8 Kyngus sone of Fraunce, þat Kyng<sup>6</sup> Iohn wist nouȝt whider<sup>7</sup> forto turne ne go.<sup>6</sup> ¶ And so it bifel,<sup>7</sup> þat he wolde haue goȝn to Nichole; and as he went piderward, he come by<sup>8</sup> þe Abbay of Swyneshede,<sup>9</sup> and þere he abode ij dayes. ¶ & as he satte at þe<sup>10</sup> mete, he axede  
12 a monk<sup>1</sup> of þe hous, 'how miche a lofe was worp, þat was sette bifore him oppoȝn<sup>11</sup> þe table.' & þe monk saide þat<sup>12</sup> 'þe lof was worp but an halpeny.' "O," *quod* he, "þo here is grete chepe of brede. ¶ Now," *quod* þe Kyng, "and y may leue, soche a lof  
16 shal bene<sup>13</sup> worp xx s., or halfe ȝere be gone."<sup>14</sup> and when he hade saide þis word, michel<sup>15</sup> he pouȝt, and ofte-tyme sichede, and toke<sup>16</sup> & ete of þe brede, & saide: "by God, þe worde þat y haue saide,<sup>17</sup> hit shal ben<sup>13</sup> soth." ¶ þe monk þat stode bifore þe Kyng<sup>18</sup>, for þis  
20 worde was<sup>19</sup> ful sory in hert, and pouȝ[t], raȝer he wolde him-self soffre pitouse dep, & pouȝt to<sup>20</sup> ordeyn þerfor somme maner<sup>1</sup> remedy. ¶ And anone þe monk went to his Abbot, and was shryuen of him, and tolde þe Abbot al þat þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> saide, and praiede his  
24 Abbot forto assoile him, for he wolde ȝeue þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> soche a wassaile þat al Engeland<sup>21</sup> shal be þerof glade<sup>21</sup> and ioyful. ¶ Tho went þe monk into a gardeyn, & founde a grete tode þerin, & tok<sup>22</sup> her vp, & put here in a coppe, &<sup>23</sup> prickede þe tode þrouȝ<sup>12</sup> wiȝ a  
28 broche meny tymes, til þat þe venyme come out on<sup>24</sup> eueryche<sup>25</sup> side<sup>12</sup> into þe coppe. and þo tok<sup>22</sup> he<sup>12</sup> þe coppe, and <sup>26</sup>fellede hit wiȝ god ale, &<sup>26</sup> brouȝ[t] hit bifore þe Kyng, & knelyng<sup>27</sup> saide:

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> How O.

<sup>2</sup> struck out in MS.; also struck out in O. and Bisshope of Rome written over in a different hand.

<sup>3</sup> MS. has lvj<sup>to</sup>.

<sup>4</sup> struck out, and Bisshope of Rome written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 95. <sup>6</sup> gon D. <sup>7</sup> gone O. <sup>8</sup> felle O. <sup>9</sup> to O.

<sup>10</sup> Swyneshede D. Swyneshede O. <sup>11</sup> om. O.

<sup>12</sup> on D. at O. <sup>13</sup> om. D. <sup>14</sup> be DO. <sup>15</sup> agon O.

<sup>16</sup> miche D. myche O. <sup>17</sup> nome O. <sup>18</sup> spoke D.

<sup>19</sup> kyng was DO. <sup>20</sup> om. DO.

<sup>21</sup> is he myȝt sic D. if he myȝhte O.

<sup>22</sup>—<sup>21</sup> shulde be glade þerof D. shuld be glad þerof O. <sup>23</sup> nome O.

<sup>24</sup> & felled it with good ale & O. <sup>25</sup> of D. in O. <sup>26</sup> eche O.

<sup>27</sup>—<sup>26</sup> om. O. <sup>28</sup> knelyng & O.

"Sir," *quod* he, "Wassaile! for neuer<sup>1</sup> dayes of 3our lyue,<sup>1</sup> dranke<sup>2</sup> 3e of soche <sup>3</sup>a<sup>4</sup> coppe." "Bygynne, monk," *quod* þe Kyng, and þe monk dranke a grete drauȝt, and toke þe Kyng þe coppe; &<sup>5</sup> þe Kyng <sup>6</sup>drank also<sup>6</sup> a grete drauȝte, and sette doune þe coppe. 4 ¶ Þe monk anone right went<sup>7</sup> into þe fermory, & þere deide anon, on whos soule God haue mercy, Amen! & v monkes singeþ<sup>8</sup> for his soule,<sup>9</sup> & shal whiles<sup>10</sup> þat<sup>11</sup> Abbay stant. ¶ The Kyng aros vp anone ful euel at ese, & commanded anon<sup>12</sup> to remeve þe table, 8 & axede after þe monk; and men tolde him þat he was dede, for his wombe was broken<sup>13</sup> in sondre. ¶ When þe Kyng herde þis tidynges,<sup>14</sup> he comandede forto trusse; but al it was for nonȝt, for his bely biganne<sup>15</sup> to swelle, for þe drynk þat he drank, þat he 12 deide wipin ij daies,<sup>16</sup> þe morwe after Seynt Lukes day. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohn had fair childerne of his body bigeten,<sup>17</sup> þat is to seyn, Henry his sone, þat was Kyng after his fader, & Richarde, þat<sup>18</sup> was Erl of Cornewail, and IsabeH, þat was Emperesse of 16 Rome, and Alienore, þat was Quene of Scotland. ¶ And þis Kyng Iohn, when he had regnede xvij 3ere v mounþes & v dayes, he deide in þe castel of Newere, & his body was buried<sup>19</sup> at Wynchestre. 20

Of Kyng Henry<sup>20</sup> þe bridde, þat was cronede at Gloucestre.

*Capitulum Centesimo lvj<sup>to</sup>.*<sup>21</sup>

**A**Nd after þis Kyng Iohn, regnede Henry his sone, & was cronede at Gloucestre when he was ix 3ere olde, on seynt 24 Symondus day & Iude, of Swalo þe legat, prouȝ conseile of alle þe grete lordes <sup>22</sup>of Engeland<sup>22</sup> þat helde wip Kyng Iohn, his fader, þat is to saien, þe<sup>18</sup> Erl Randolf of Chestre, William, Erl Marchal, William Erl of Penbrok, <sup>23</sup>& William<sup>23</sup> Breuere, <sup>24</sup>Erl of Ferers, 28 Serl de Maule, baron; & alle opere grete<sup>25</sup> lordes of Engeland helde with Lowys, þe Kynges sone of Fraunce. & anone after, when Kyng Henry was cronede, Swalo the legat helde his conseil at

<sup>1</sup> lif ne D. lyf ne O. <sup>2</sup> dronk O. <sup>3</sup> leaf 95, back.

<sup>4</sup> At the top of this page is written in faint ink, by a different [?] hand:—A lambe.

<sup>5</sup> a sic D. <sup>6—6</sup> also drank D. also dranke O. <sup>7</sup> MS. went went.

<sup>8</sup> syngen O. <sup>9</sup> soule specialich D. soule speciallich O.

<sup>10</sup> while O. <sup>11</sup> the D. þe O. <sup>12</sup> om. DO. <sup>13</sup> broke O.

<sup>14</sup> tydyng O. <sup>15</sup> began so O. <sup>16</sup> dayes after O. <sup>17</sup> geten O.

<sup>18</sup> om. O. <sup>19</sup> y-buryed O. <sup>20</sup> Henry here, and elsewhere in O.

<sup>21</sup> MS. has lvj<sup>o</sup>. <sup>22—22</sup> om. DO.

<sup>23—23</sup> William þe D. William þe O. <sup>24</sup> leaf 96. <sup>25</sup> gete sic D.

Bristow, at Seynt Martynes fest<sup>1</sup>; & þere wer<sup>2</sup> xj bisshopis of Engeland & of Walys, & of oþer prelates of holy cherche a<sup>1</sup> grete nombre, & Erles & barons, & meny knyghtes of Engeland; and alle 4 þo þat were at þat conseil swore feaute vnto<sup>2</sup> Henry þe Kyng, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone.

¶ And anone after,<sup>3</sup> þe ligate enterditede Walis, for enchesoun þat þai helde with þe barons of Engeland; and also alle þo þat 8 4holpen or 3af conseil<sup>4</sup> to meve werr<sup>5</sup> aʒeyn<sup>3</sup> þe new Kyng Henry, he acursede ham; And in the bigynnyng he put in þe<sup>5</sup> sentence þe<sup>5</sup> Kyngus sone of Fraunce Lowys. ¶ And noþeles þe same Lowys<sup>6</sup> wolde nouȝt spare forto werr<sup>7</sup> for al þat, but went anone, 12 & tok þe castel of Berkhamstede, & eke<sup>7</sup> þe castel of Hertford. ¶ And fram<sup>8</sup> þat day aftirward, þe barons<sup>9</sup> dede miche<sup>9</sup> harme þrouȝ al Engeland, and principaly þe Frenche-men þat wer<sup>10</sup> comen<sup>10</sup> wiþ Lowys; wherfore þe grete lordes<sup>11</sup> of Engeland,<sup>11</sup> & alle þe 16 commune peple,<sup>12</sup> lete ham croice forto dryue out<sup>13</sup> Lowys & his company out of Engeland. ¶ But somme of þe barons, & ek of þe Frenchemen, were gone<sup>14</sup> to þe cite of Nichole, & tok<sup>15</sup> 16 þe Cite,<sup>16</sup> & helde hit to Kyng<sup>1</sup> Lowys profite. But þider<sup>17</sup> come<sup>17</sup> Kyng 20 Henryes<sup>18</sup> men wiþ<sup>19</sup> a grete<sup>19</sup> power, þat is to seyne, þe Erl Randolf of Chestre, and William Erl Marchal, & William de la Bruer, Erl of Ferers, & meny oþer lordes wiþ ham, & 3af<sup>20</sup> Bataile<sup>21</sup> vnto Lowyse men. ¶ And þere was slayn þe Erl of Perches; and 24 Lowys men<sup>22</sup> were þere<sup>22</sup> foule descomfitede<sup>23</sup>; and þere was taken<sup>24</sup> Serl, Erl of Wynchestre, & Humfray de Bouñ, Erl of<sup>25</sup> Herford, & Robert, þe sone of Walter; & meny oþer þat hade bigonne werr<sup>26</sup> aʒeyn<sup>3</sup> þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> þere were taken,<sup>26</sup> and lad to<sup>27</sup> Kyng Henry<sup>28</sup> þat was<sup>28</sup> Kyng Iohnes [son]. ¶ When þe tydyng of þis scomfiture come vnto<sup>2</sup> Lowys, he remevede þens, & went<sup>29</sup> vnto London, and lete shette þe ȝates fast<sup>1</sup> of þe citee. ¶ And anone after, þe Kyng sent to<sup>30</sup> þe<sup>31</sup> burgeys of London, þat þai shulde ȝelde ham 32 vnto him, & þe citee also, and he wolde ham graunt alle þe

<sup>1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2</sup> to D.    <sup>3</sup> afte D.    <sup>4—4</sup> 3af conseil and halpen D.

<sup>5—5</sup> om. D.    <sup>6</sup> MS. has Lowys Lowys.    <sup>7</sup> also D.    <sup>8</sup> fro D.

<sup>9—9</sup> de somiche sic D.    dede so myche O.    <sup>10</sup> Come O.    <sup>11—11</sup> om. DO.

<sup>12</sup> peple of Engeland<sup>12</sup> D.    peple of Engeland<sup>12</sup> O.    <sup>13</sup> om. O.

<sup>14</sup> go O.    <sup>15</sup> token O.    <sup>16—16</sup> it D.    <sup>17</sup> Comen O.

<sup>18</sup> Henryes men D.    Herryes men O.    Henryes R.

<sup>19—19</sup> MS. has a grete a grete.    <sup>20</sup> ȝeuen O.    <sup>21</sup> leaf 96. back.

<sup>22—22</sup> þere were O.    <sup>23</sup> scomfited<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>24</sup> tak D.    take O.

<sup>25</sup> MS. has of of.    <sup>26</sup> tak D.    <sup>27</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>28—28</sup> om. DO

<sup>29</sup> come D.    <sup>30</sup> vn-to O.

<sup>31</sup> MS. has þe bisshop, with bisshop underlined for omission.

Fraunchises<sup>1</sup> þat<sup>2</sup> þai were wont forto haue, & wolde conferme ham by his<sup>3</sup> new chartr<sup>4</sup> vnder his grete sele. ¶ And in the same tyme a gret Lorde, þat me callede Eustace þe monk<sup>5</sup>, come out of Fraunce wip a grete company of Lordes, & wolde haue come 4 into Engeland forto haue help Lowys, þe Kyngus sone of Fraunce. ¶ But Hubert of Burgh<sup>6</sup> and<sup>6</sup> þe v portes, wip viij shippis, & no mo, mette wip ham in þe hye see, and assailede ham egrely, & ouercome ham þrouz strengþ, and smyten of Eustace-þe-monkes 8 heuede,<sup>7</sup> & token also x grete Lordes of Fraunce, and put ham into prisoun, & quelled almost alle þe men þat comen<sup>8</sup> wip<sup>9</sup> ham; and anone drenchede<sup>10</sup> þe shippis in þe see.

How Lowys turned aȝeyn into Fraunce; and of þe confirm- 12  
acioun of Kyng Iohnes chartre. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo I*  
Septimo.<sup>11</sup>

**W**Hen Lowys herd pis tydynges,<sup>12</sup> he drade sore to ben<sup>13</sup> dede and loste, and lete ordeyne, & spok<sup>14</sup> bituene þe Kyng 16 and Lowys<sup>15</sup> by þe legat Swalo, and þoruȝ þe Erche<sup>16</sup>bisshop of Kaunterbery, and þrouȝ<sup>17</sup> opere grete lordes, þat alle the prisoners of<sup>18</sup> þat one halfe and of<sup>18</sup> þat oper shulde bene<sup>19</sup> delyuerede, & gone<sup>20</sup> quit, and Lowys him-self shulde haue for his costages<sup>21a</sup> 20 M<sup>+</sup> ti<sup>21</sup> of siluer, & shulde gone out of Engeland, and come neuer perin aȝeyne. and in pis maner was þe accord made bituene<sup>22</sup> Kyng Henry & Lewys. And þo was Lowys assoilede of þe Popis<sup>23</sup> legat þat me<sup>24</sup> callede Swalo, of þe sentence þat he was in, and þe barouns 24 of Engeland also. ¶ And after pis, Kyng Henry & Swalo þe legat, & Lowys, went vnto Merton; and pere was þe pees confermede, & bituen<sup>25</sup> ham ordeynede. and afterward Lowys went fro pens vnto London, & tok<sup>26</sup> his leue, & was brouȝt wip miche<sup>27</sup> honoure at 28 þe<sup>28</sup> see wip þe Erchebisshop of Kaunterbery & wip opere bisshoppis, and also wip erles and<sup>29</sup> barons; and so went Lowys into Fraunce.

<sup>1</sup> fraunchise D.      <sup>2</sup> þat enere O.      <sup>3</sup> his gret DO.

<sup>4</sup> Chartre and D.      <sup>5</sup> Brugh DO.      <sup>6</sup> in O.      <sup>7</sup> heed<sup>7</sup> O.      <sup>8</sup> come O.

<sup>9</sup> MS. has wip wip, and the second wip is underlined for omission.

<sup>10</sup> drenched aft O.      <sup>11</sup> MS. has Octauo.      <sup>12</sup> tidynge O.      <sup>13</sup> be O.

<sup>14</sup> speke O.      <sup>15</sup> him D.      <sup>16</sup> leaf 97.      <sup>17</sup> om. D.      <sup>18</sup> on D.

<sup>19</sup> be DO.      <sup>20</sup> go O.

<sup>21</sup>—<sup>21</sup> an þousande pounde D.      a þousand pound<sup>21</sup> O.

<sup>22</sup> bituene D.      betwene O.      bitwe R.

<sup>23</sup> Popes struck out, and bisshope of Rome written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>24</sup> men D.      <sup>25</sup> betwen O.      bitue R.      <sup>26</sup> nome O.      <sup>27</sup> michel D.

<sup>28</sup> om. O.      <sup>29</sup> and with D.



¶ And aftirward þe kyng & þe Erchebisshope, & Erles & barons, assembled ham at Londoñ, at Michelmasse <sup>1</sup> pat next þo sewede,<sup>1</sup> & helde *pere* parlement.<sup>2</sup> & *pere* were þo renewede alle þe Fraunchises pat Kyng Iohn hade<sup>3</sup> grauntede at Romemed; and Kyng Henry þo confermede ham by his chartre, þe which 3itte bep holden prouz-out<sup>4</sup> Engeland. ¶ And in pat tyme þe Kyng toke of euery ploughe of <sup>5</sup> londe ij s; and Hubert of Burgh<sup>6</sup> was made þo chief Iustice of<sup>7</sup> Engeland. ¶ And þis was in<sup>8</sup> þe iiij zere of Kyng Henryes regne; & in þe same zere was <sup>9</sup>seynt Thomas<sup>9</sup> of Kanterbery translatede þe <sup>10</sup> zere after his martredome.<sup>11</sup> ¶ And after, it was ordeynede by alle þe Lordes of Engeland, pat alle Aliens shulde gone out of Engeland, & come nomore *perin*.

And þe Kyng<sup>12</sup> þo toke<sup>12</sup> alle þe castelles into his hounde, pat <sup>13</sup> Kyng Iohn his fader hade zeue & taken<sup>14</sup> vnto Aliens forto kepe, pat helde wip him. ¶ But þe prout <sup>15</sup> Frankes of<sup>15</sup> Brent,<sup>15</sup> Richely lete arraie his <sup>16</sup> castel of Bedford, whiche he had of þe Kyngus<sup>17</sup> gifte Iohn<sup>18</sup>; & he<sup>19</sup> helde pat castel azeyns Kyng Henries wille wip might and strengþ. ¶ And the Kyng come pider wip a streng power, & biseged þe castel. And þe Erchebisshop <sup>20</sup> Stephen of Langetoñ come to þe Kyng<sup>20</sup> wip a faire company of knyztz,<sup>21</sup> him forto helpe; and fra þe Ascencioun vnto þe Assumpcion of our Lady, laste þe sege: & þo was þe castel wonne & tak, and þe Kyng lete honge aß þo pat were wipin<sup>22</sup> þe castel, pat<sup>23</sup> wip her gode wille <sup>24</sup> helde þe castel azeynz þe Kyng,<sup>24</sup> pat is <sup>25</sup> forto seyn, foure score<sup>25</sup> men. ¶ And þo afterward Fra[n]kes<sup>26</sup> himself was fonde in a cherche of Couentre; and *pere* he forsuore al Engeland wip niche shame, and went<sup>27</sup> þo azeyn into his owen contre.

28 ¶ And whiles pat Kyng Henry regned, Edmund of Abyndon, pat was tresorer of Salesbury, was consacrede<sup>28</sup> Erchebisshop of

<sup>1-1</sup> þo next sewyng<sup>1</sup> D. pat next þo Come sewyng<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>2</sup> a parlement DO. <sup>3</sup> om. O. <sup>4</sup> prouz-out<sup>1</sup> al D. þurgh-out al O.

<sup>5</sup> om. DO. <sup>6</sup> Brugh O. <sup>7</sup> of al DO. <sup>8</sup> om. DO.

<sup>9-9</sup> O. has seynt struck out, and Beket written after Thomas in a different hand.

<sup>10</sup> fiftiþe O. <sup>11</sup> MS. has martredomo. <sup>12-12</sup> nome þo O.

<sup>13</sup> leaf 97, back. <sup>14</sup> tak D. <sup>15-15</sup> Faukes of Brut O. <sup>16</sup> the D.

<sup>17</sup> kyng D. <sup>18</sup> Iohn his fadir O. <sup>19</sup> om. D.

<sup>20-20</sup> of Kaunterbury D. of Caunterbury Maister Stephene of Langeton O.

<sup>21</sup> knyztz come to the kyng D. knyghtes come to þo kyng O.

<sup>22</sup> went into O. <sup>23</sup> and D. om. O.

<sup>24-24</sup> azeynes him hit held D. for-to hold þe Castel O.

<sup>25-25</sup> for seyn iiij sic O. <sup>26</sup> faukes O. <sup>27</sup> MS. went went.

<sup>28</sup> Sacrede D. Sacred<sup>1</sup> O.

Kanterbery. And þis Kyng Henry sent ouer<sup>1</sup> see vnto þe Erle of Prouince, pat he shulde sende him his douȝter into Engeland, pat me called Alienore, & he wolde wedde her. And so she come into Engeland after Cristes-masse,<sup>2</sup> and in þe morwe<sup>3</sup> after seynt 4 Hillary, þe Erchebisshoþ Edmund<sup>4</sup> spoused ham to-gedre<sup>5</sup> att Kaunterbery; and at þe viij<sup>6</sup> of seynt Hillary she was crowned at Westmynstre wip miche solempnite; & pere was a swete sight bituene ham, pat is to seyn, Edmund, pat was next Kyng<sup>7</sup> after 8 him, his broþer<sup>1</sup>, folour<sup>8</sup> of curtessi and of Larges, and Margaret, pat was afterwarð Quene of Scotland, & Beatrice, pat was afterwarð Countesse of Britaign, & Katherine, pat deide maide in religioun.

Of þe quinzime of godes þat were granted for þe new charters; 12  
 & of þe puruyance of<sup>9</sup> Oxenford. Capitulo ¶ Cº lvij.<sup>10</sup>

**A**Nd þus hit bifelle<sup>11</sup> pat þe lordes of Engeland wolde haue somme addicions mo in the Chartre of Fraunchises pat pai hade of þe Kyng, & spoken þus bituene<sup>12</sup> ham; & þe Kyng 16 graunted<sup>13</sup> ham alle her axing, and made to ham ij Chartres: pat on is callede 'þe grete<sup>14</sup> Chartre of Fraunchises' & pat oper is callede 'þe Chartre of þe<sup>15</sup> Forest'; and for þe grante of pise<sup>16</sup> chartres, prelates, Erles and barons, & alle þe communes of Engeland, 3af to þe Kyng<sup>17</sup> M<sup>t</sup> marȝ<sup>18</sup> of siluer.

¶ When Kyng Henry hade bene<sup>19</sup> Kyng xliij ȝere, pat same ȝere he and<sup>20</sup> his lordes, Erles, and barouns of þe reaume, went to Oxenford, & ordeynede a lawe in emendement<sup>21</sup> of þe reaume, and<sup>22</sup> suore 24 þe Kyng him-self, & after, alle þe lordes of þe reaume, pat pai wolde holde pat statute<sup>23</sup> euermore; and who pat it<sup>24</sup> brak shulde bene<sup>19</sup> dede. ¶ But þe secunde ȝer<sup>1</sup> after pat ordenance, þe Kyng, prouȝ conseile of Sire Edward his sone, & of Richard his broþer, pat was 28 Erl of Cornwail, & also of opere, repented him of pat ope pat he hade made forto holde pat lawe & ordynance, and sent to þe court of Rome to bene assoilede of pat oth pat he hade made. ¶ And in pat ȝere next comen<sup>25</sup> after, was<sup>26</sup> grete derp of corne in Engeland, 32

<sup>1</sup> ouer þe O.    <sup>2</sup> Cristemesse O.    <sup>3</sup> morne D.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.  
<sup>5</sup> togederes D.    <sup>6</sup> viij<sup>tas</sup> D.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 98.    <sup>8</sup> flour D.    <sup>9</sup> om. O.  
<sup>10</sup> C<sup>o</sup> lvij<sup>o</sup> O.    <sup>11</sup> felle O.    <sup>12</sup> bitue D.    <sup>13</sup> granted to D.  
<sup>14</sup> MS. has grete þe, with þe underlined for omission.    <sup>15</sup> of þe O.    of R.  
<sup>16</sup> pise ij D.    þese ij O.    <sup>17</sup> kyng a O.    <sup>18</sup> Mark O.    <sup>19</sup> be O.  
<sup>20</sup> & aft O.    <sup>21</sup> amendement O.    <sup>22</sup> and first DO.  
<sup>23</sup> statute for D.    statut for O.    <sup>24</sup> ham D.    hem O.  
<sup>25</sup> comyng<sup>t</sup> D.    commynge O.    <sup>26</sup> was the D.    was þe O.

for a quarter of<sup>1</sup> whete was worþ xxiiij ſ̄,<sup>2</sup> & þe pore peple etc netles for hunger, and opere wedes; & <sup>3</sup>deide meny M<sup>4</sup> for defaute<sup>5</sup> of mete.

4 ¶ And in þe xlvij 3ere of Kyng Henries regne, biganne werr and debate bituene him and his lordes, fo[r] enchesouñ þat he <sup>6</sup>had broken þe conenaunte;<sup>6</sup> þat were made bituene ham at Oxenford. ¶ And in þat<sup>7</sup> same 3er<sup>8</sup>, in Lent, was þe <sup>8</sup>scastel of Notyngþam<sup>8</sup> tak, and þe fole slayne þat were þerin, for enchesouñ þat þai hade ordeyned wilde fire forto haue brent þe citee of London.

¶ And in the morwe<sup>9</sup> of May þat come next after, oppoñ seynt Pancras day, was the batail at Lewes, þat is to seyne,<sup>10</sup> þe Wednesday bfore seynt <sup>11</sup>Dunstanus day<sup>11</sup>; and<sup>12</sup> þere was tak, Kyng Henry <sup>13</sup>him-self, & <sup>13</sup>Sire Edward <sup>14</sup>his sone, & Sire<sup>14</sup> Richard, Erl of Cornwail, & meny<sup>15</sup> opere lordes. ¶ And in þat same 3ere next sewyng, Sire Edward, þe Kynges sone, brak out of <sup>16</sup>þe<sup>1</sup> ward of Sire Symond of Mountford, Erl of Leicestre, at Hereford,<sup>16</sup> and went to þe barons of þe Marche; and þai vnderfong<sup>17</sup> him wip michel<sup>17</sup> honour. ¶ And in þe same tyme Gilbert of Clare,<sup>18</sup> Erl of Gloucestre, þat was in þe ward also of þe forsaide Symond, <sup>20</sup>prouz þe commandement of Kyng Henry, þat went fram him in<sup>19</sup> grete wrap,<sup>20</sup> for enchesouñ þat he saide þat þe forsaide Gilbert was a fool in his conseile, wherfore he ordeyned him<sup>21</sup> so, & helde wip Kyng Henry. ¶ And þe <sup>22</sup>Saturesday next<sup>22</sup> after þe middes of <sup>24</sup>August,<sup>23</sup> Sir Edward, þe Kyngus sone, descomfitede Sire Symond de<sup>24</sup> Mountford at Kemworþ; but þe grete lordes þat were þere wip him wer<sup>1</sup> taken, þat is to seyn, Baldewyne Wake, William of Mounchesye,<sup>25</sup> and meny oper grete lordes: and þe Tywesday next after, <sup>28</sup>was þe bataile <sup>26</sup>done at<sup>26</sup> Euesham; & þere was quellede Sire Symond de<sup>24</sup> Mountford, Hughe þe Spenser, and Mountford, þat was Rauf Basset; <sup>27</sup>fader of Dratton, & oper meny grete Lordes. ¶ And when þis batail was doñ, alle þe<sup>1</sup> gentiles þat had be<sup>28</sup> wip þe

<sup>1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2</sup> shilynges O.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 98, back.    <sup>4</sup> þousand O.

<sup>5</sup> faute D.

<sup>6-6</sup> wolde haue broke the couaunt D. had broke þe Couenauntes O.

<sup>7</sup> þe O.    <sup>8-8</sup> toune of Northampton D. Toun of Northampton O.

<sup>9</sup> monthe D. monþe O.    <sup>10</sup> say D.    <sup>11-11</sup> Dunstaand sic D.

<sup>12</sup> MS. has bfore seynt and, with bfore seynt underlined for omission.

<sup>13-13</sup> and his sone D.    <sup>14-14</sup> and D. his sone & O.    <sup>15</sup> mey sic D]

<sup>16</sup> Herford DO.    <sup>17</sup> mych O.    <sup>18</sup> Clarence DO.

<sup>19</sup> wip D. with O.    <sup>20</sup> hert D. herte O.

<sup>21</sup> him afterward D. hym afterward O.    <sup>22-22</sup> Saterdag O.

<sup>23</sup> Aust sic O.    <sup>24</sup> of D.    <sup>25</sup> Monchensey O.    <sup>26-26</sup> of D.

<sup>27</sup> leaf 99.    <sup>28</sup> bene D. ben O.

Erl Symond, were disheritede; & <sup>1</sup>pai ordeyned<sup>1</sup> ham togedres,<sup>2</sup> and dede miche harme to<sup>3</sup> al pe land, for pai destroiede her enemys in al pat pai might.

¶ Of pe sege of Kemworþ; & how pe gentilmen werr' dis-  
heritede, prouþ conseil<sup>4</sup> of lordes of pe reaume of  
Engeland<sup>4</sup>; & how pai comen<sup>5</sup> aþeyn,<sup>4</sup> & had her landes.<sup>4</sup>  
*Capitulo Centesimo lix<sup>no</sup>.*

**A**Nd in pe 3er<sup>o</sup> next<sup>6</sup> sewyng, in May, ferst<sup>6</sup> day bfore pe fest<sup>8</sup> of Seynt Dunstan, was bataile and scomfiture at Chesterfeld, of ham pat were disheritede; & pere meny of ham were quelled; and Robert, Erl of<sup>7</sup> Ferers, pere was take, and also Baldewyne Wake; & Iohn de la Haye, wip miche<sup>8</sup> sorwe scaped pens. and in<sup>9</sup> Seynt Iohnes Eve<sup>10</sup> þo next sewyng, bigan pe sege of pe castel of Kemworth<sup>11</sup>; and pe sege<sup>12</sup> laste to<sup>12</sup> Seint Thomas Eve<sup>13</sup> pe Postoil, in whiche day Sir Hughe Hastyngus<sup>14</sup> had pe castel forto kep, pat 3elde vp pe castel vnto<sup>15</sup> pe Kyng in pis maner, pat him-  
self and alle opere pat were wipin pe castel shulde haue her lif and lyme, and as<sup>16</sup> miche þing as pai hade perin, bope hors & herneys, and foure dayes of<sup>17</sup> respite forto delyuer<sup>18</sup> clene<sup>18</sup> pe castel of hamself, & of al maner<sup>19</sup> þing pat pai hade wipin pe castel; & so pai  
went fram pe castel, and pe kyng & his men went þo into pe castel.  
¶ and Sir Symond pe Mounford pe 3onge,<sup>20</sup> and pe Countesse his moder, were fledde ouer pe<sup>21</sup> see into Fraunce, and pere helde ham as peple pat were exilede out of Engeland<sup>22</sup> for<sup>23</sup> euermore. ¶ And 24  
sone after hit was ordeyned by the Legat Octoboñ, & by<sup>24</sup> opere grete lordes<sup>25</sup> of Engeland,<sup>25</sup> pe wisest of<sup>26</sup> pe land,<sup>26</sup> pat alle þo pat hade bene<sup>27</sup> aþeyns pe Kyng, & wer disheritede, shulde haue aþeyn her londes, and by greuous ransoun,<sup>28</sup> after pat it was ordeyned; 28  
and þus pai were accorded wip pe Kyng, þo was pees criede prouþ al Engeland; and þus pe werr' was endede.

And when pis was done, pe legat toke<sup>29</sup> his leue at<sup>30</sup> pe Kyng,

<sup>1—1</sup> gadered D.      <sup>2</sup> to-geder D. to-gidere O.      <sup>3</sup> til D.

<sup>4—4</sup> om. O.      <sup>5</sup> come DO.

<sup>6—6</sup> comyng<sup>6</sup> þe iiij D. Comynge in Maij þe ferþe D.

<sup>7</sup> o D.      <sup>8</sup> miche D.      <sup>9</sup> on D.

<sup>10</sup> eve the Baptist D.      Eue þe baptist O.      <sup>11</sup> Kenilworthe O.

<sup>12—12</sup> laste<sup>12</sup> til O.      <sup>13</sup> day O.      <sup>14</sup> Hastyng<sup>14</sup> DO.      <sup>15</sup> to D.

<sup>16</sup> om. D.      <sup>17</sup> or D.      <sup>18</sup> clenliche D. clenlich O.      <sup>19</sup> opere D.

<sup>20</sup> 3onger D.      younger O.      <sup>21</sup> om. DO.      <sup>22</sup> leaf 99, back.

<sup>23</sup> A lambe written in the margin at the head of this page, in faint ink.

<sup>24</sup> om. O.      <sup>25—25</sup> om. DO.      <sup>26—26</sup> Engeland<sup>26</sup> D. Engeland<sup>26</sup> O.

<sup>27</sup> be O.      <sup>28</sup> ransons D.      <sup>29</sup> nome DO.      <sup>30</sup> of D.

& of<sup>1</sup> the Quene, & of alle þe grete lordes of Engeland, & went þo to Rome, þe lv<sup>2</sup> 3ere of Kyng Henryes regne. ¶ And<sup>3</sup> Edward, Kyng Iohnes sone of Britaigne, Iohn Vessy, Thomas of Clare, 4 Roger of Clifford, Othus Grauntsoñ,<sup>4</sup> Robert le Brus, Iohn of Verdoñ, & meny oper lordes of Engeland & of byzende þe see, token her way toward þe Holy Lond; and þe<sup>3</sup> Kyng Henry deide in þe mene-tyme at Westminster,<sup>5</sup> when he hade ben Kyng<sup>4</sup> lv 3er<sup>6</sup> 8 & ix<sup>6</sup> wokes,<sup>5</sup> on<sup>7</sup> seynt Edmundus day, þe Erchebiss-hop of Kaunterbery; and he<sup>1</sup> was enterede<sup>5</sup> at Westminster<sup>5</sup> on seynt Edmundes day, þe Kyng,<sup>8</sup> ¶ In the 3er<sup>9</sup> of<sup>9</sup> Incarnacioun of oure Lord Ihesu Crist M<sup>1</sup> CC lxxij.

12 <sup>10</sup>Prophecie of Merlyn<sup>10</sup> of Kyng Henry, expounede, þat was Kyng Iohnes sone. ¶ Capitulo ¶ Centesimo lx<sup>mo</sup>.

**A** Nd of þis Kyng Henry, propheciede Merlyn, & said þat ‘a 16 lombe shulde come out of Wynchestre in þe 3ere of Incarnacion of our Lord<sup>11</sup> M<sup>1</sup> CC &<sup>3</sup> xvj, wiþ trew lippis, and holynesse wryten in his hert.’ And he saide sop, for þe gode <sup>12</sup>Henry þe Kyng<sup>12</sup> was born<sup>13</sup> <sup>14</sup>in Wynchestre in þe 3ere abouesaide, and he spake<sup>15</sup> gode wordes & swet, and was an holy man, and of god 20 conscience. ¶ And Merlin said þat ‘þis Henry shulde make þe fairest place of<sup>16</sup> [the] world,<sup>17</sup> þe whiche<sup>17</sup> in his tyme shulde nouzt <sup>18</sup>fulliche bene<sup>18</sup> endede’; and he saide sop, for he made þe newe cherche<sup>19</sup> of þe Abbay of seynt <sup>20</sup>Petre of<sup>20</sup> Westminster, þat is 24 fairer of sight þan eny<sup>21</sup> cherch þat men knowep<sup>22</sup> prouþ al Cristendome; but Kyng Henry deide er þat were were ful<sup>23</sup> made, & þat was grete harme. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, þat ‘þis Lambe shulde haue pees þe most tyme of his regne’; and he saide ful sop, for he 28 was ne[uer] annoiede prouþ<sup>24</sup> werþ, ne disesede in no maner wise, til a litel bifore his dep. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlin more in his prophecie, þat ‘in þe regne & ende of þe forsaide lambe, a wolf of a straunge<sup>25</sup> land shulde do<sup>26</sup> him grete<sup>27</sup> harme prouþ his werþ; and þat he

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> fyve & fyfty O.    <sup>3</sup> om. D.    <sup>4</sup> of Graunstoñ O.

<sup>5-5</sup> om. O.    <sup>6</sup> xix D.    <sup>7</sup> in D.

<sup>8</sup> kyng and had regned lv 3eer & xix wokes O.    <sup>9</sup> of the D.

<sup>10-10</sup> And of Merlynus prophecie D.    <sup>11</sup> lorde Ihesu crist D.

<sup>12-12</sup> kyng Henry D.    <sup>13</sup> om. D.    bore O.    <sup>14</sup> leaf 100.

<sup>15</sup> MS. has spakek.    <sup>16</sup> of al D.    <sup>17-17</sup> þat DO.

<sup>18-18</sup> bene ful D.    be ful O.    <sup>19</sup> werk D.    werke O.

<sup>20-20</sup> Petrus cherche at D.    Petris Chirche at O.

<sup>21</sup> eny opere D.    eny other O.    <sup>23</sup> knowen O.    <sup>23</sup> fully DO.

<sup>24</sup> with D.    <sup>25</sup> stronge O.    <sup>26</sup> done O.    <sup>27</sup> miche D.

shulde at þe last be<sup>1</sup> maistre prouȝ helpe of a reede ffox, þat shulde come oute of þe Northwest, and shulde him ouercome; & <sup>2</sup>þat he<sup>2</sup> shulde dryue him vnto þe water': and þat prophecie ful wel was knowe, for wipin a litel tyme or þe Kyng deide, Symond<sup>3</sup> of 4 Mountford<sup>4</sup>, Erl of Leicestre, þat was bore in Fraunce, <sup>3</sup>bigonne aȝeyn<sup>3</sup> him stronge werre; prouȝ whiche doyng, meny a gode bachiler was shent and dede and disheritede. ¶ And when Kyng Henry hade þe vittori at Euesham, & Symond<sup>5</sup> þe Erl was slayn 8 prouȝ helpe & myght of Gilbert of Clare, Erl of Gloucestre, þat Was in Kepyng <sup>2</sup>and ward<sup>2</sup> of þe forsaide Symund<sup>6</sup>, prouȝ ordenance of Kyng Henry, þat went aȝeyn to þe Kyng wip miche power, wherfore þe forsaide Symund<sup>7</sup> was shent; and þat was grete harme 12 to þe communes of Engeland, þat so gode a man was shent for trup, & deide in charite, and for þe commune profite of þe same folc; and perfor Almighty God, <sup>5</sup>for him hap sipennus<sup>5</sup> shewede meny faire<sup>6</sup> miracle to diuerse men and wýmmen, of þe sikenesse and 16 disesse þat pai haue had, for þe loue of him.

¶ And Merlyn also tolde <sup>2</sup>& saide<sup>2</sup> in his prophesie, þat 'after þat tyme þe lambe shulde leue no<sup>7</sup> while; and þan his sede shulde be<sup>8</sup> in straunge land wip-out<sup>9</sup> pasture'; and he said soþ, for Kyng 20 Henry leuede no while after þat<sup>10</sup> Symund<sup>11</sup> Mountford was ded, <sup>11</sup>þat Kyng Henry ne<sup>11</sup> deide anone after<sup>12</sup> him. ¶ And in þe mene-tyme, Sir Edward his sone, þat was þe best knyȝt of þe world of honour,<sup>12</sup> was þo in the Holy Land, and gete pere<sup>13</sup> Acres. ¶ And 24 in [that] contre he bigate in<sup>14</sup> Dame Alianore his wif, Iohne of Acres his doughter, þat aftirward was countesse of Gloucestre. And he made in þe Holy Land soche a viage, þat alle þe world spok<sup>15</sup> of his<sup>16</sup> knyghthode, & euery man drade him, hye and lowe, 28 prouȝ-out<sup>17</sup> al Cristendome, as þe s[t]ory <sup>18</sup>of him<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup>telleþ, as<sup>19</sup> afterward<sup>18</sup> ȝe shul here more openly. ¶ And <sup>20</sup>fram the tyme þat<sup>20</sup> Kyng Henry deide, til þat Sire Edward was croned Kyng, alle þe gret Lordes of Engeland were as faderles children, wipout<sup>21</sup> eny 32 socour þat ham might mayntene and <sup>22</sup>gouerne, and<sup>22</sup> defende aȝeynȝ her<sup>23</sup> dedeliche<sup>23</sup> enemys.

<sup>1</sup> MS. be be.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. D.      <sup>3-3</sup> began aȝen O.      <sup>4</sup> leaf 100, back.

<sup>5-5</sup> hap sipens for him D.      had for hym sethenes O.

<sup>6</sup> a faire D.      a fayre O.      <sup>7</sup> non D.      <sup>8</sup> ben O.      <sup>9</sup> withouten D.

<sup>10</sup> when O.      <sup>11-11</sup> for he D.      <sup>12</sup> honour and D.      <sup>13</sup> om. D.

<sup>14</sup> on D.      <sup>15</sup> spak D.      <sup>16</sup> his worþinesse and D.      his vyage & O

<sup>17</sup> prouȝ D.      <sup>18-18</sup> om. O.      <sup>19-19</sup> telles and D.

<sup>20-20</sup> from the tyme þat D.      from þe tyme þat O.      fram R.

<sup>21</sup> wipouten D.      <sup>22-22</sup> om. D.      <sup>23</sup> dedly O.

¶ Of Kyng<sup>e</sup> Edward, þat was Kyng<sup>e</sup> Henrie; sone. *Capitulo*  
[Centesimo] lx<sup>1</sup> primo.

<sup>2</sup> **A** Nd after<sup>3</sup> pis Kyng Henry, regned his sone Edward, þe  
<sup>4</sup> worthiest knyght<sup>3</sup> of <sup>4</sup>pe worlde,<sup>4</sup> of honour, for Godes  
grace was in him, for he hade þe vittorie of his enemys. And  
as sone as Kyng Henry deide, he come to Londoñ wip a faire com-  
pany of prelates, &<sup>5</sup> of Erles & barons; & al maner men dede him  
<sup>8</sup> michelle<sup>6</sup> honour; for in euery place þere<sup>7</sup> Sir Edward rode in  
Londoñ, þe stretes wer<sup>8</sup> couered ouer his heued<sup>8</sup> wip riche clopes of  
silk, <sup>9</sup>wit[h] tapitz of<sup>9</sup> riche coueryng. ¶ And for ioie of his  
comyng, þe noble burgeys of þe cite <sup>10</sup>of Londoñ<sup>10</sup> cast out at<sup>11</sup> her<sup>12</sup>  
wyndowes, golde and siluer handes-ful,<sup>12</sup> in<sup>13</sup> tokenyng of loue and  
of<sup>5</sup> worship, seruices & reuerence. ¶ And out of þe condit in<sup>14</sup>  
Chepe ran reed<sup>15</sup> wyne & white,<sup>16</sup> as stremes dop<sup>17</sup> of water; and  
euery man<sup>18</sup> might<sup>19</sup> drynk þerof<sup>20</sup> at her<sup>12</sup> owen wille. ¶ And pis  
<sup>16</sup> Kyng Edward was croned and annointed as right heire of Enge-  
land with michel<sup>6</sup> honoure; and after masse þe Kyng went into his  
palice, forto halde a real<sup>21</sup> fest amonges<sup>22</sup> ham þat him had done  
honour. ¶ And when he was sette vnto his mete, the Kyng<sup>e</sup> Alis-  
<sup>20</sup> ander<sup>3</sup> of Scotland come forto done him honour<sup>23</sup> and reuerence wip  
a queyntise<sup>24</sup>: an hundred Knyghte<sup>25</sup> wip him wel horsede and  
arraiede; & when þai were light done<sup>26</sup> of her<sup>12</sup> stedes, þai lete ham  
goo whider<sup>27</sup> þai wolde; & þai<sup>28</sup> þat might tak ham, tok ham<sup>29</sup> at  
<sup>24</sup> her<sup>12</sup> owen wille, wipout eny chalange. ¶ And afterward co[me] Sir  
Symond, Kyng Edwardus broþer, a curteise Knyght, and a<sup>30</sup> gentil  
of renouñ, and þe Erl of Cornewaile & þe Erl of Gloucestre; and  
after ham come þe Erl of<sup>31</sup> Penbrok and þe Erl of Garrein; and  
<sup>28</sup> eche of<sup>32</sup> ham by him-self<sup>32</sup> lade in<sup>33</sup> his hond<sup>33</sup> an<sup>34</sup> hundred  
knyghte; gayliche<sup>35</sup> disgisede in her<sup>12</sup> Armes. ¶ And wen þai were  
light of her<sup>12</sup> horse,<sup>36</sup> þai<sup>37</sup> lete ham go<sup>38</sup> whider þat ham liked; and

<sup>1</sup> lxxx sic O.    <sup>2</sup> leaf 101.    <sup>3</sup> MS. has knyght<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>4-4</sup> al the worlde D. al þe world O. þe worde R.    <sup>5</sup> om. D.

<sup>6</sup> mych O.    <sup>7</sup> þer þat O.    <sup>8</sup> heed O.

<sup>9-9</sup> of tapytz and with D. of tapites & with O.    <sup>10-10</sup> om. DO.

<sup>11</sup> of O.    <sup>12</sup> handfuþ O.    <sup>13</sup> in DO. & R.    <sup>14</sup> of O.

<sup>15</sup> white D. whit O.    <sup>16</sup> rede D. reed O.    <sup>17</sup> done D.

<sup>18</sup> man therof D.    <sup>19</sup> myght þerof O.    <sup>20</sup> om. DO.    <sup>21</sup> riath O.

<sup>22</sup> among D.    <sup>23</sup> seruice O.    <sup>24</sup> queyntise and O.    <sup>25</sup> Knyzt D.

<sup>26</sup> adoun D. adon O.    <sup>27</sup> whider þat DO.    <sup>28</sup> who D. ho O.

<sup>29</sup> tok ham D. toke hem O. tok R.    <sup>30</sup> om. O.    <sup>31</sup> leaf 101, back.

<sup>32-32</sup> hemself O.    <sup>33-33</sup> her hondes D. here hand O.

<sup>34</sup> a O.    <sup>35</sup> gaylist O.    <sup>36</sup> horses O.    <sup>37</sup> and DO.

<sup>38</sup> gon O.

who þat might ham take, holde<sup>1</sup> ham stille, with-outen<sup>2</sup> eny lette. ¶ And when al þis was done, Kyng Edward dede his diligence and his might forto emende<sup>3</sup> and redresse þe wrongus<sup>4</sup> of þe reame<sup>4</sup> in þe beste maner þat he might, to the honour of God & holy cherche, 4 and to mayntene his honour, and to amende þe noyaunce of þe commune peple.

**How Ydoyne, þat was Lewelynus douȝter, Pri e of Walis, & Aymer<sup>5</sup> þat was þe Erles broþer<sup>5</sup> Mounford, wer<sup>6</sup> taken<sup>6</sup> 8 in þe see. Capitulo Centesimo lxiij.<sup>7</sup>**

**T**He first ȝere after<sup>8</sup> þat Kyng Edward was cronede, Lewelyn, Prince of Walys, sent into Fraunce to þe Erl Mountford þat,<sup>9</sup> prouȝ consaile of his frendes, þe Erl shulde wedde his douȝter. 12 And þe Erl þo auisede him of<sup>10</sup> þis þing, and sent aȝein to Lewelyn, & saide þat he wolde send after<sup>9</sup> his douȝter. And so he sent Aymer<sup>9</sup>, his broþer, after þe damisel. And Lewelyn arraiede shippis for his doughter and for Sir<sup>9</sup> Aymer<sup>9</sup>, & for her<sup>9</sup> faire company þat 16 shulde wende wiþ her<sup>9</sup>. And þis Lewelyn dede grete wronge, for hit was couenant þat he shulde ȝeue his doughter to no maner man wiþouten<sup>11</sup> consel and consent of Kyng Edward. ¶ And so hit bifelle,<sup>12</sup> þat a burgeys of<sup>13</sup> Bristow come in þe see wiþ wyn lade,<sup>14</sup> 20 and mette ham, & <sup>15</sup>ham toke<sup>15</sup> wiþ might & power<sup>16</sup>; and anone þe bu[r]geys sent ham to þe Kyng. ¶ And when Lewelyn herde this <sup>17</sup>tydynges,<sup>18</sup> he Was Wonder<sup>9</sup> Wroþ & eke sorweful, and <sup>19</sup>bigon þo<sup>19</sup> forto werre oppoñ Kyng Edward, & dede miche harme vnto<sup>20</sup> 24 Engliſſhe-men, and bete adoune þe Kyngus castelles,<sup>21</sup> & biganne fast to destroi Kyng Edwardes lande.<sup>22</sup> ¶ And when tydyngus<sup>23</sup> come to Kyng Edward of þis þing, he went into Walys; and so miche he dede, by<sup>24</sup> Godes grace & his grete power<sup>9</sup>, þat he drof 28 Lewelyn vnto miche meschif, þat he fleye al maner strengþ, and come & ȝelde him to Kyng Edward, and ȝaf him 1 M<sup>l</sup> marȝ<sup>25</sup> of siluer forto haue pees, and toke þe damisel & al his<sup>9</sup> heritage, and made an obligacion vnto<sup>26</sup> Kyng Edward, and<sup>26</sup> come to his 32 pa[r]llament ij tymes of þe ȝere.

<sup>1</sup> haue O.      <sup>2</sup> wiþout D.      withoute O.

<sup>3</sup> amende the realme D.      amende þe reame O.      <sup>4-4</sup> om. DO.

<sup>5</sup> broþer of DO.      <sup>6</sup> take O.      <sup>7</sup> lxiij<sup>mo</sup> D.      lxiij R.      <sup>8</sup> afterward O.

<sup>9</sup> om. D.      <sup>10</sup> oñ D.      vpon O.      <sup>11</sup> wiþout D.      withoute O.

<sup>12</sup> felle DO.      <sup>13</sup> in D.      <sup>14</sup> late O.      <sup>15-15</sup> toke hem O.

<sup>16</sup> strengthe O.      <sup>17</sup> leaf 102.      <sup>18</sup> tidyng O.      <sup>19-19</sup> gan D.      gan þe O.

<sup>20</sup> vnto the D.      vnto þe O.      <sup>21</sup> Castell O.      <sup>22</sup> landes O.

<sup>23</sup> tidyng<sup>t</sup> D.      tydyng<sup>t</sup> O.      <sup>24</sup> purgh O.      <sup>25</sup> Mark<sup>t</sup> O.      <sup>26</sup> to DO.



¶ And þe<sup>1</sup> secunde ȝere after þat Kyng Edward was cronede, he helde a general parliament at Westminster, and þere he made þe statutes for<sup>2</sup> default of lawe, by commune assent of al his baronage.  
 4 And at Ester nexte sewyng<sup>3</sup>, þe Kyng sent by his lettre to Lewelyn, Prince of Walis, þat he shulde come to<sup>3</sup> parlement for his londres<sup>4</sup> and for his holdyng in Walys, as þe strengþ of þe lettre obligatorie witnessede. ¶ þo Lewelyn hade scorn and despite of þe Kynges  
 8 commandement; & for pur wrap biganne aȝeyn forto<sup>5</sup> werr' opon Kyng Edward, & destroyed<sup>6</sup> [his lands]. ¶ And <sup>7</sup>when Kyng Edward<sup>7</sup> herd þis tydynges,<sup>8</sup> he was<sup>9</sup> wonder<sup>10</sup> wroþ toward<sup>11</sup> Lewelyn, & in haste assembled<sup>12</sup> his peple, and went him toward  
 12 Walys, and werred so oppoñ Lewelyn þe prince, til þat he hade<sup>12</sup> brouȝt him in miche sorw and disese; ¶ And Lewelyn saw that his defence myght nouȝt<sup>13</sup> availe, and come aȝeyne, & <sup>14</sup>ȝelde him to þe Kyngus<sup>15</sup> grace, and criede him mercy, and Longe tyme knelede  
 16 bifore þe Kynges feete. ¶ The Kyng had<sup>16</sup> of him pite, and commaundede him forto arise; and for his mekenesse forȝaf him his wrap, and to him saide, <sup>16</sup>that 'if<sup>16</sup> he toke on amys aȝeyns<sup>17</sup> him anoþer tyme, þat he wolde destroye him for euer<sup>18</sup>-more.' ¶ Dauid,  
 20 þat was Lewelynus broþer, <sup>18</sup>duelled<sup>19</sup> þat<sup>19</sup> same tyme<sup>18</sup> wiþ<sup>20</sup> Kyng Edward, & was a felle man & a sotil, & enuyous, & ferre castyng<sup>21</sup>, and miche tresoun þouȝt, and euermore helde him stille for[to] wete & asprie þe Kynges wille, and euermore made god semblaunt, and  
 24 semede so trew þat no man myght perceyue his falsenesse.

**How Lewelyn, prouȝ enginge<sup>21</sup> of Dauid his broþer, Werrede aȝeyne vppoñ Kyng<sup>10</sup> Edward. Capitulo Centesimo lxiij<sup>o</sup>.**

28 **H**It was nought longe after þat tyme, þat Kyng<sup>22</sup> Edward ne ȝaf vnto<sup>22</sup> Dauid, þat was Lewelynus broþer, þe lordship of Frodesham, and made him a knyght; and so miche honour dede he neuer<sup>23</sup> to no man of Walys after,<sup>12</sup> for enchesoñ of him.

¶ Kyng Edward helde his parliament at London, when he hade  
 32 done in Walys aȝ þat he wolde, and chaungede his mony, þat þo was<sup>24</sup> foule cotte & rounded; wherfore þe commune peple pleyuede

<sup>1</sup> in the D. in þe O.    <sup>2</sup> in D.    <sup>3</sup> to his D.    <sup>4</sup> land O.

<sup>5</sup> to DO.    <sup>6</sup> destroy D.    <sup>7-7</sup> þo kyng sic O.    <sup>8</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>9</sup> wox D.    <sup>10</sup> om. O.    <sup>11</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>12</sup> om. DO.

<sup>13</sup> nouȝt him D.    hym not O.    <sup>14</sup> leaf 102, back.    <sup>15</sup> Kyng D.

<sup>16-16</sup> þf sic D.    <sup>17</sup> aȝeyne D.    aȝen O.

<sup>18-18</sup> þat same tyme dwelled O.    <sup>19</sup> the D.    <sup>20</sup> with the D.

<sup>21</sup> eggyn O.    <sup>22</sup> to DO.    <sup>23</sup> neuer after D.    neuere aftir O.

<sup>24</sup> was ful O.

ham wonder' sore, so þat þe Kyng lete enquire of ham þat soche trespasse deden; and iij C were atteynt of soche maner' falsenes; wherfore somme were honged, and some<sup>1</sup> draw, and afterward<sup>2</sup> hongede. ¶ And afterward, the Kyng ordeynede þat þe sterlinge 4 halfpeny and ferthinge shulde go<sup>3</sup> prou3-out his lande, and commandedede þat no man, fro þat day afterward, <sup>4</sup>3af ne feffede hous of Religioun with lande <sup>5</sup>and tenement; wipouten<sup>5</sup> special leue of þe Kyng; and he þat dede hit,<sup>6</sup> shulde ben<sup>7</sup> punisshede att þe<sup>2</sup> 8 Kynges wille, and the 3ifte shulde be for nouȝt.

¶ And hit was nouȝt longe after, þat Lewelyn, Prince of Walys, prouȝ ticement of Dauid his broþer, and by boþe here consent, þai prouȝt disherite Kyng Edward in-asmiche as þai might, so þat prouȝ 12 ham boþe þe Kynges pees was broken.<sup>8</sup> ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis, anone he sent<sup>9</sup> his barons into Northumberland, and þe Shirreyues<sup>10</sup> also, þat þai shulde gone<sup>11</sup> & take her Viage oppoñ þe traitoures<sup>12</sup> Lewelyn and Dauid. ¶ And wonder herde 16 was forto werr' þo, for it [is]<sup>13</sup> wynter in Walis when in oþer cuntres it is somer'. And Lewelyn <sup>14</sup>lete ordeyn<sup>14</sup> and wel arraie<sup>15</sup> his gode castel of Swandoñ, and was þerin an huge nombre of peple & plentee of vitales, so þat Kyng Edward wist nouȝt wher forto<sup>16</sup> 20 entre. ¶ And wen þe Kynges men hit perceyuede, and also þe strengþ of Walys, þai lete come in þe see,<sup>13</sup> barges<sup>17</sup> and botes, and grete planks, as meny as þai might ordeyn and haue, forto gone to the forsaide casteñ of Swayndoñ wip men on foot and eke on hors. 24 But þe Walshemen hade so miche peple, and were so strong, þat þai dryuen<sup>18</sup> þe Englisshe-men aȝein, <sup>19</sup>so þat þere was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng aȝeyne,<sup>19</sup> þat þe charge & þe berdeyn<sup>20</sup> of ham made þe barges and botes synk; and þere was drenchede 28 ful meny a gode Knyght, þat is to seyn: Sir Roger of Clifford, Sir William of Lyndesey, þat was Sire Iohnes sone Fitz Robert, and Sire Richard Tauny, and an huge nombre of oþere fole; and al was 21 prouȝ her' owen folye; for yf þai had hed gode espies, þai had 32 nouȝt bene harmed.

<sup>1</sup> some were O.      <sup>2</sup> om. O.      <sup>3</sup> goñ DO.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 103.      <sup>5—5</sup> ne tenement with-out D. ne tenement withoute O.

<sup>6</sup> om. DO.      <sup>7</sup> be DO.      <sup>8</sup> broke O.      <sup>9</sup> sent his barons DO. sent R.

<sup>10</sup> Shirreyues D. Surreys OR.      <sup>11</sup> go O.      <sup>12</sup> traitons D.

<sup>13</sup> om. D.      <sup>14—14</sup> lete & ordeyned O.

<sup>15</sup> array and vitale D. arrayd & vitailled O.      <sup>16</sup> to D.

<sup>17</sup> MS. barges barges.      <sup>18</sup> drof D.

<sup>19—19</sup> so þat þere was so miche presse of peple at the turnyng aȝeyne D. so þat þer was so myche prese of peple at þe turnyng aȝen O. om. R.

<sup>20</sup> berthen D. berþene O.      <sup>21</sup> leaf 103, back.

¶ When Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward harde tel þat his peple were so ydrenchede,<sup>1</sup> he made sorwe ynow. ¶ But þo come Sir<sup>2</sup> Iohn of<sup>3</sup> Vessy fram<sup>3</sup> þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Aragoun, and brouȝt with him miche<sup>2</sup> folc of  
 4 bachilers &<sup>2</sup> of Gascoignes,<sup>4</sup> and wer<sup>1</sup> soudiours, and duelled<sup>5</sup>  
 wiþ þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>, and tok<sup>6</sup> of him wages, & wiþ him were wiþholde,  
 & noble-men; hit were forto fiȝte, & brenne meny tounes, & quelle<sup>7</sup>  
 miche peple of Walshemen, al þat þai myght take. ¶ And alle þo,  
 8 wiþ pure strengþ & might, maden<sup>8</sup> assaute to þe castel of Swandon, & gete the castel.

¶ And when Dauid, þe Prynce<sup>9</sup> broþer, herde<sup>10</sup> þo tidinges,<sup>11</sup> he ordeined<sup>12</sup> him to flight.<sup>12</sup> ¶ And Lewelyn þe Prynce saw þat<sup>13</sup> Dauid  
 12 his broþer<sup>13</sup> was flowen, [and] <sup>14</sup>sore he was<sup>14</sup> abasshed, for he had none<sup>15</sup> power<sup>1</sup> þo, his wer<sup>1</sup> forto mayntene. ¶ And so Lewelyn gan forto flee, and wend wel forto<sup>2</sup> haue scaped; but on a<sup>16</sup> morwe Sir Roger þe<sup>17</sup> Mortymer<sup>1</sup> mette wiþ him oneliche<sup>15</sup> wiþ x knyȝtes, and  
 16 sette him rounde aboute, and to him went, and smote of his heuede,<sup>19</sup> & presentede him vnto<sup>20</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward: & in þis maner þe Prince of Walys was taken,<sup>21</sup> and his heued<sup>22</sup> smyten<sup>23</sup> of, and alle his heires disherited for euermore, þrouȝ right<sup>24</sup> dome of þe  
 20 lordes of þe reaume.

¶ How Dauid, þat was Lewelynes broþer, Prynce of Walys,<sup>25</sup> was put to<sup>26</sup> deþ. *Capitulo ¶ Centesimo lxxiij<sup>to</sup>.*

24 **D**Auid, þat was <sup>27</sup>Lewelynus broþer,<sup>27</sup> þrouȝ pride <sup>28</sup>wende forto haue bene<sup>28</sup> Prince of Walis after his broþeres deth; and oppoñ þat, he sent after Walshemen to his parlement at Denbegge, and fullliche<sup>29</sup> made Walys <sup>30</sup>arise aȝeynes the Kyng<sup>1</sup>, and biganne to meue Werr<sup>31</sup> aȝeyns þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>,<sup>31</sup> and dede al þe sorwe and dissesse  
 28 þat he myght by his power.

¶ When Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward harde of þis þing,<sup>2</sup> he ordeyned men to pursue oppoñ him; and Dauid ferseliche<sup>32</sup> him defended til þat he

<sup>1</sup> drenchede D. drenched O. <sup>2</sup> om. D. <sup>3</sup> fro DO.

<sup>4</sup> Gaseoyng sic D. <sup>5</sup> dwellyng O. <sup>6</sup> vndirfong O. <sup>7</sup> quell O.

<sup>8</sup> made DO. <sup>9</sup> Prynces O. <sup>10</sup> herde þo D. herde þat O. herde R.

<sup>11</sup> tydyng O. <sup>12</sup> flight O. fight R.

<sup>13-14</sup> his broþer Dauid O. <sup>14-15</sup> was sore D. sore awas O.

<sup>15</sup> no DO. <sup>16</sup> þe O. <sup>17</sup> om. D. le O. <sup>18</sup> only O. <sup>19</sup> heed O.

<sup>20</sup> to D. <sup>21</sup> take O. <sup>22</sup> heed O. <sup>23</sup> smet D. smyte O.

<sup>24</sup> riȝtful O. <sup>25</sup> MS. Walys Walys. <sup>26</sup> to þe O.

<sup>27-28</sup> the Prince broþer of Walys D. þe Prynces brother of Walys O.

<sup>28-29</sup> went haue be O. <sup>29</sup> folylich O. <sup>30</sup> leaf 104.

<sup>31-32</sup> om. D. aȝen þe kyng O. <sup>32</sup> fresly D. fersly O.

come to þe touñ of Seynt Morice; and þere was Dauid take as he fleȝ,<sup>1</sup> and lad to þe Kyng<sup>2</sup>; & þe Kyng commanded þat he shulde ben<sup>2</sup> hongede & ydraw,<sup>3</sup> & smyten<sup>4</sup> of his heuede,<sup>5</sup> & <sup>6</sup>quarter him,<sup>6</sup> & sende his heuede<sup>7</sup> to London, and þe iiij quarters sende to 4 <sup>8</sup>the iiij<sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup>chief townes<sup>9</sup> of Walys, for þai shulde take ensample, & þerof be-war<sup>1</sup>.

¶ And afterward Kyng Edward lete crie his pees þrouȝ<sup>10</sup> Walys, & seisede al<sup>11</sup> the londe into his honde; and alle þe grete lordes of 8 Walys þat were lefte alif, come þo to done<sup>12</sup> feaute and homage vnto<sup>13</sup> þe Kyng<sup>2</sup> as to her<sup>1</sup> Kynde Lord<sup>1</sup>; and þo lete Kyng Edward amende þe lawes of Walys þat were<sup>14</sup> defectif. ¶ And after, he sent to<sup>15</sup> alle þe lordes of Walys, by his lettre patent, þat<sup>16</sup> þai 12 shulde comme alle to his parlement. And when þai were comen,<sup>17</sup> þe Kyng saide <sup>18</sup>to ham ful curtesly: “Lordyng, 3e beþ wel-comen<sup>18</sup>; and me bihoueth ȝour<sup>1</sup> conseile and ȝour<sup>1</sup> helpe forto wende into Gascoigne, forto amende þe trespasse þat to me was 16 þere done when þat<sup>19</sup> y was þere,<sup>19</sup> and forto entrete of Pees bituene þe Kyng of Aragoñ & þe Prynce of Morrey.” ¶ And<sup>20</sup> alle þe Kynges lege<sup>21</sup>-men, Erles & barons, consentede <sup>22</sup>and granted<sup>22</sup> þereto. And þo went þe Kyng<sup>2</sup> into Gascoign, and lete amende þe 20 trespasse þat him was <sup>23</sup>þere doñ,<sup>23</sup> and of þe debat þat was bituene þe Kyng of Arragoñ & the Prynce of Morrey, he cessede, & made ham accordede.

¶ And while the <sup>24</sup>Gode Kyng<sup>2</sup> Edward and Alianore his Quene 24 was<sup>25</sup> in Gascoigne, þe gode Erl of Cornwaile was made Wardeyn of Engeland<sup>1</sup> til þat Kyng<sup>2</sup> Edward come aȝeyn. And þo enquered he of his traitoures þat coniectede falsenesse aȝeyn<sup>3</sup> him; and eche of ham alle vnderfonge his<sup>26</sup> dome, after<sup>1</sup> þat þai hade deserued. 28 ¶ But in the mene-tyme, while<sup>27</sup> Kyng<sup>2</sup> Edward was biȝonde þe see, to done<sup>28</sup> ham forto make amendes<sup>29</sup> þat aȝeyns him hade trespas-sede, a false þef<sup>30</sup> traitour þat me callede ‘Rys ap Meriedok,’ bigan forto make werr<sup>1</sup> aȝeyns the<sup>19</sup> Kyng<sup>2</sup> Edward; and þat was for 32 enchesoun þat<sup>31</sup> Sire Payn Tiptott<sup>1</sup> wrongefully greuede & disesede þe

<sup>1</sup> fled O.    <sup>2</sup> be DO.    <sup>3</sup> drawe O.    <sup>4</sup> smyte DO.    <sup>5</sup> heed O.  
<sup>6-6</sup> quartred O.    <sup>7</sup> heed O.    <sup>8-8</sup> iiij the D.    <sup>9-9</sup> Townys Chef O.  
<sup>10</sup> prouȝ-out al D.    <sup>11</sup> purgh-out al O.    <sup>12</sup> of O.    <sup>13</sup> do O.    <sup>14</sup> to D.  
<sup>15</sup> weren O.    <sup>16</sup> vn-to O.    <sup>17</sup> om. O.    <sup>18</sup> Come to þe kyng O.  
<sup>19-19</sup> ful curteysly lordynges 3e ben welcome O.    <sup>20</sup> om. D.  
<sup>21</sup> Anon O.    <sup>22</sup> liesges D.    <sup>23-23</sup> om. D.  
<sup>24-24</sup> done þere D.    <sup>25</sup> don in Gascoigne O.    <sup>26</sup> leaf 104, back.  
<sup>27</sup> were DO.    <sup>28</sup> her<sup>1</sup> D.    <sup>29</sup> while þat O.    <sup>30</sup> do D.  
<sup>31</sup> amende D.    <sup>32</sup> þef a O.    <sup>33</sup> þat D.    of R.

forsaid Rys ap Meriedok'. ¶ And when Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward herd al þis, he sent by his *lettres* to Rys ap Meriedok', þat he shulde bigin to<sup>1</sup> make non<sup>2</sup> weri', but þat he shulde be<sup>3</sup> in pees, for his loue; and 4 when þat<sup>4</sup> he come aȝeyn into Engeland, he wold vndertake þe querel, and wolde done<sup>5</sup> amende al þat was misdone. ¶ The forsaide Rys ap Meriedok dispisede the Kynges commandement, and sparede nouȝt forto done<sup>5</sup> alle þe sorwe þat he might to þe Kyngus 8 men of Engeland; but anone after he was taken,<sup>6</sup> and lad to ȝorke, and þere he was drawe and hongede for his folye.<sup>7</sup>

Of þe redressing<sup>1</sup> þat Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward made<sup>8</sup> of his Iusticeȝ & <sup>9</sup>of his clerkes, þat þai had done<sup>9</sup> for her' falsenesse<sup>8</sup>; & how 12 he drof þe<sup>10</sup> Gewes out of Engeland, <sup>11</sup>for her' Vsurye and her' mysbileue.<sup>11</sup> *Capitulo Centesimo lxxv*<sup>10, 12</sup>

**W**hen Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward had duellede iij ȝer' in Gascoigne, <sup>13</sup>ful wel hit bicome vnto<sup>13</sup> him forto Wende aȝeyn into Enge- 16 land. And when<sup>14</sup> he was comen<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup>aȝeyne, he toke<sup>17</sup> so meny pleyntes made to him of his Iusticeȝ and of his clerkes, þat had doñ so meny wronges & falsenesseȝ,<sup>18</sup> þat wonder' hit was <sup>19</sup>forto wete<sup>19</sup>; ¶ and for whiche falsenesse, Sir Thomas of Weylond, þe Kyngus 20 Iustice, forsuore Engeland at the Toure of London, for falsenesse þat men put oppoñ [him]; wherfore<sup>20</sup> he was teint,<sup>21</sup> & prouede false. ¶ And anone after, when þe Kyng had doñ his wil <sup>22</sup>of þe<sup>22</sup> Iusticeȝ, þo lete he enquire & asprie how þe Gewys desceynede & bigilede 24 his peple, þrouȝ here<sup>23</sup> synne & <sup>24</sup>falsenesse of<sup>25</sup> Vsurie; and lete ordeyn a priue parlement amonges<sup>26</sup> his lordes; and þai ordeynede amongus<sup>26</sup> ham þat 'alle þe Gewes shulde voide Engeland, for here misbileue, & also for her' false Vsurye þat þai deden vnto Cristen 28 men.' ¶ And forto spede and make an ende of þis þing<sup>1</sup>, al þe communitie<sup>27</sup> of Engeland <sup>28</sup>ȝeue to<sup>28</sup> þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> þe l.<sup>29</sup> peny of alle here Godes moeble: and so were þe Gewis dryuen out of Engeland; and þo went þe Gewis into Fraunce, [and there dwelled], þrouȝ þe<sup>4</sup> 32 leue of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Philip þat þo was Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Fraunce.

<sup>1</sup> forto DO.    <sup>2</sup> no DO.    <sup>3</sup> by D.    <sup>4</sup> om. DO.    <sup>5</sup> do D.  
<sup>6</sup> take O.    <sup>7</sup> felonye DO.    <sup>8</sup> om. D.    <sup>9-9</sup> clerkes O.    <sup>10</sup> om. O.  
<sup>11-11</sup> om. O.    <sup>12</sup> lxxxv to sic O.    <sup>13-13</sup> wel come to D. wil come to O.  
<sup>14</sup> þo O.    <sup>15</sup> come O.    <sup>16</sup> leaf 105.    <sup>17</sup> founde D. fond O.  
<sup>18</sup> falsenesse D. falsnes O.    <sup>19-19</sup> to here O.  
<sup>20</sup> wherof D.    <sup>21</sup> atteynt D.    <sup>22</sup> atteint O.  
<sup>23-23</sup> with his D.    <sup>24</sup> his O.    <sup>25</sup> of DO.    <sup>26</sup> and D. and of O.  
<sup>27</sup> among O.    <sup>28</sup> communes D.    <sup>29</sup> Comunalte O.  
<sup>28-28</sup> ȝaf vnto D.    <sup>29</sup> xv D.    <sup>30</sup> fyftyþe O.

**How Kyng<sup>e</sup> Edward was seisede in al þe lond of Scotland, prouȝ consent & graunt of alle þe<sup>1</sup> lordes of Scotland. Capitulo Centesimo ¶ I[x]vj<sup>to</sup>.<sup>2</sup>**

**H**It was nouȝt longe after, þat Alisander<sup>3</sup>, Kyng<sup>e</sup> of Scotland, 4 nas dede, and Dauid Erl of Huntyngdon, þat was þe Kynges broþer of Scotland, axede and chalangede<sup>4</sup> þe Kyngdome of Scotland, for encheson þat he was rightful<sup>5</sup> heir. ¶ But meny grete lordes of Scotland saide ‘nay’; wherfore grete debate arose 8 bituene<sup>6</sup> ham & her<sup>7</sup> frendes, for-asmiche as<sup>8</sup> pai wolde nouȝt consent to his<sup>9</sup> coronacion; and in the<sup>10</sup> mene-tyme þe forsaid Dauid deide. ¶ And so hit bifelle þat þe<sup>8</sup> same Dauid had iij doughtres, þat worpiliche<sup>11</sup> wer<sup>1</sup> maried: þe first doughter was 12 mariede to Bailoille, þe secunde to Brus, þe pridd to Hastings. ¶ And þe forsaid Bailol & Brus chalangede<sup>12</sup> þe land of<sup>12</sup> Scotland; and grete debate and strif aroos bituene ham þre, for enchesoun þat eche of ham wolde haue bene<sup>13</sup> Kyng<sup>e</sup>. ¶ & when þe lordes of<sup>14</sup> þe 16 land<sup>14</sup> saw þe debate bituene<sup>15</sup> ham þre,<sup>16</sup> pai come to Kyng Edward of Engeland, and seisede him in alle þe land of Scotland as [t]heir chief lord. ¶ And when þe Kyng was seisede of alle<sup>17</sup> þe lordes of Scotland, þe forsaid Bailol, Brus, and Hastingus, comen<sup>18</sup> to 20 þe Kyngus court, and axede of þe Kyng<sup>e</sup> ‘whiche of ham shulde be Kyng<sup>e</sup> of Scotland.’ ¶ And Kyng<sup>e</sup> Edward, þat was fulle<sup>19</sup> gentil and trewe, lete enquire by þe Cronicles of Scotland, and of þe gret lordes of Scotland, whiche of ham was the Eldeste blood; 24 and it was founde þat Bailoil was þe<sup>20</sup> eldest,<sup>21</sup> and þat þe Kyng of Scotland shulde holde of the Kyng<sup>e</sup> of Engeland, and do<sup>22</sup> him feaute and homage. ¶ & after þat<sup>23</sup> þis was don, Bailoil went into Scotland, and þere was cronede Kyng of Scotland. 28

And þe same tyme was oppoñ þe see<sup>24</sup> grete strif<sup>24</sup> bituene þe<sup>25</sup> Englisshe-men and the No[r]mannes. ¶ But oppoñ [a tyme] þe Normans arryuede<sup>26</sup> al at Douer; and þere pai martrede an holy man þat me calleþ<sup>27</sup> seynt Thomas of Douer. And aftirwarde<sup>28</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> þe gret D.<sup>2</sup> <sup>xx</sup> iij vj<sup>to</sup> sic O.<sup>3</sup> Alisander the D.<sup>4</sup> cleymede D. Claymed O.<sup>5</sup> riȝt D.<sup>6</sup> bituene D. bituene O. bitue R.<sup>7</sup> MS. has her her.<sup>8</sup> þat D.<sup>9</sup> þis O. <sup>10</sup> leaf 105, back.<sup>11</sup> worthily O.<sup>12-12</sup> om. D.<sup>13</sup> be O.<sup>14-14</sup> Scotland DO.<sup>15</sup> of D.<sup>16</sup> om. O.<sup>17</sup> MS. has alle London, with London underlined for omission; om. DO.<sup>18</sup> come O. <sup>19</sup> bothe D.<sup>20</sup> om. O. <sup>21</sup> eldest bloode D.<sup>22</sup> done O.<sup>23</sup> om. DO.<sup>24-24</sup> strong werr D. stronge werre O.<sup>25</sup> om. D.<sup>26</sup> arryued vp O.<sup>27</sup> callede D. Called O.<sup>28</sup> afterwarde D.

were þe Normans quelled, þat þere <sup>1</sup>scapede none of ham.<sup>1</sup>  
 ¶ And sone afterward,<sup>2</sup> Kyng Edward shulde lese þe Duchee of<sup>3</sup>  
<sup>4</sup>Gascoign,<sup>5</sup> prouȝ Kyng Philipp of Fraunce, prouȝ false castyng<sup>6</sup>  
<sup>4</sup> of þe Dossepereȝ of þe lond; wherfore Sir Edmunk, þat was sire<sup>7</sup>  
 Edwardes broþer, ȝaf vp his homage vnto<sup>8</sup> the Kyng of Fraunce.  
 And in þat tyme þe clerkes<sup>9</sup> of Engeland [granted] vnto<sup>10</sup> Kyng  
 Edward haluendel <sup>11</sup>holy cherehe<sup>11</sup> godes, in helpyng<sup>11</sup> forto recouer<sup>11</sup>  
<sup>8</sup> his land aȝeyn in Gascoign. ¶ And þe Kyng sent pider a noble  
 company of his bachilers; and<sup>12</sup> himself wolde haue went<sup>13</sup> to  
 Portesmouthe, but he was lette prouȝ on Maddok of Walys, þat  
 hade seisede þe castel of Swandoñ into his honde. And for þat  
<sup>12</sup> enchesouñ the Kyng<sup>14</sup> turnede aȝeyn into Walys at Cristus-masse.<sup>15</sup>  
 ¶ And for enchesouñ þat þe noble lordes of Engeland þat were sent  
 into<sup>16</sup> Gascoign, had no<sup>17</sup> comfort of here lord þe<sup>14</sup> Kyng Edward,  
 þai wer take of Sire Charles of Fraunce, þat is to seyn, Sir Iohn  
<sup>16</sup> of Britaigne, Sire Robert Tiptott, Sire Rauf Tauny,<sup>18</sup> Sir Hughe  
 Bardolf, & Sir Adam <sup>19</sup>of Cretingus.<sup>19</sup> And ryȝt at þe<sup>14</sup> Ascencioñ  
 was Maddok taken<sup>20</sup> in Walys, and anoper þat me callede Morgan;  
 and pai were sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and<sup>21</sup> pai wer honget.<sup>22</sup>

**20** How Sir Iohn of<sup>14</sup> Balol, Kyng of Scotland, wipsaide his  
 homoge<sup>23</sup>; and of Sir Thomas<sup>24</sup> Tourbeluile. *Capitulo*  
*Centesimo*<sup>14</sup> lxxvij<sup>o</sup>.<sup>25</sup>

**24** **A** Nd when sir Iohn Bailol, Kyng of Scotland, vnderstode þat  
 Kyng Edward was werrede in Gascoign, to whom þe  
 reame of Scotland was delyuerede, falseliche<sup>26</sup> po aȝeynȝ his oth,  
 wit[h]saide<sup>27</sup> homage, prouȝ procuryng of his folc, and sent to the  
 court of Rome, prouȝ a false suggesciouñ, to bene assoiled<sup>28</sup> of þat  
<sup>28</sup> oth þat he swore<sup>29</sup> vnto the Kyng<sup>29</sup> of Engeland; and so he was,  
 by lettres enbullede. ¶ po chose<sup>30</sup> pai of Scotland Dossepers forto  
 bynime Edward his right.

<sup>1-1</sup> ascapede of ham neuer on D. scaped of hem not on O.

<sup>2</sup> after D. aftir O. <sup>3</sup> MS. of<sup>1</sup> of<sup>1</sup>. <sup>4</sup> leaf 106. <sup>5</sup> Lancastre O.

<sup>6</sup> tising<sup>1</sup> D. <sup>7</sup> kyng DO. <sup>8</sup> to D. <sup>9</sup> clergy D. <sup>10</sup> to DO.

<sup>11-11</sup> of holy cherches D. of holy Cherche O. <sup>12</sup> and þe kyng D.

<sup>13</sup> goñ D. <sup>14</sup> om. D. <sup>15</sup> cristen-masse D. Cristemasse O.

<sup>16</sup> vn-to O. <sup>17</sup> none D. <sup>18</sup> Tauny and D.

<sup>19-19</sup> Cretyng<sup>1</sup> D. of Cretynge O. <sup>20</sup> tak D. take O.

<sup>21</sup> & pere O. <sup>22</sup> biheuvedede D. beheded O. <sup>23</sup> homages O.

<sup>24</sup> Iohn D. <sup>25</sup> MS. has lxxvij; O. has lxxxvij<sup>o</sup>. <sup>26</sup> falsly O.

<sup>27</sup> gaynesaide his D. withsayd his O. <sup>28</sup> leaf 106, back.

<sup>29-29</sup> to Kyng Edward D. <sup>30</sup> chosen DO.

& in þat tyme com <sup>1</sup>ij Cardinalles<sup>1</sup> fro þe court of Rome, fram þe Pope<sup>2</sup> Celestyne, forto trete of accorde bituene þe Kyng of Fraunce & þe Kyng of Engeland. ¶ And as þo ij Cardinalles speken of accord, Thomas Tourbeluile, þat was take<sup>3</sup> at Ryouns, <sup>4</sup>made feaute and homage to the Wardeyn of Parys, and to him put his ij sones in hostage,<sup>4</sup> for þat he þouȝt<sup>5</sup> goȝ into Engeland forto aspie the contre, and telle ham when he come into Engeland, þat he hade broken þe Kynges prisoun of Fraunce by nyght, and <sup>8</sup>saide þat he wolde done, þat alle Englisshe-men and Walshe-men shulde abowe to þe Kyng of Fraunce: and pis þing forto brynge to þe ende, he swore; and oppoȝ pis couenaunt, dedes<sup>6</sup> wer<sup>7</sup> made bituene<sup>7</sup> ham, and þat he shulde haue by ȝere <sup>8</sup>an hundrede <sup>12</sup>poundes<sup>8</sup> worp of land, to bryng<sup>9</sup> pis þinge<sup>9</sup> to þe <sup>10</sup>ende. ¶ This false *traitour* toke his leue, and went pens and come into Engeland vnto<sup>11</sup> þe Kyng, & saide þat he was broken out of prisoun, and þat he had put him in soche perile for his loue. Wherefore þe Kyng <sup>16</sup>coup him miehe<sup>12</sup> þank, & ful glade was of his comyng. ¶ And þe false þef *traitoure* fro þat day aspiede al the Doyng of þe Kyng and also his Conseile, for þe Kyng louede him ful<sup>13</sup> wel, & was wip him ful priuee. ¶ But a clerk of Engeland, þat was in the Kynges <sup>20</sup>hous of France, herde of pis tresoun & of the falsenesse, and wrote to anopere<sup>14</sup> clerk þat Was duellyng wip þe Kyng of Engeland, al how Thomas Tourbeluile hade done his false<sup>15</sup> coniettyng. And al þe Conseil of Engeland was writen<sup>16</sup> forto haue sent vnto<sup>17</sup> þe Kyng <sup>24</sup>of Fraunce; and þrouȝ þe forsaide lettre þat þe clerc hade sent fro Fraunce, hit was founden<sup>18</sup> oppoȝ him; wherfor he was lade to London, & drawen & honged þere for his tresoun; and his ij sones, þat he hade put in<sup>19</sup> Fraunce for hostages, were<sup>20</sup> <sup>21</sup>þo biheuedede.<sup>21</sup> <sup>28</sup>

Of þe Conquest of Berwik. *Capitulo Centesimo Sexagesimo*<sup>22</sup> viij<sup>o</sup>.

**W**Hen þo ij Cardinales wer<sup>1</sup> gone<sup>23</sup> aȝeyn into France, forto trete of<sup>24</sup> pees at Cambrey, þe Kyng sent pider<sup>3</sup> of his <sup>32</sup>Erles and baroȝ, þat is to seyn, Sire Edmund his proper, Erl of

<sup>1—1</sup> to ham a Cardynal D.

<sup>2</sup> pope struck out, and bisshop written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>3</sup> taken DO. <sup>4</sup> hostages D. <sup>5</sup> þoghte haue O. <sup>6</sup> dede D.

<sup>7</sup> bituene D. between O. bitne R. <sup>8—8</sup> a C ti O. <sup>9</sup> tydyng O.

<sup>10</sup> an D. <sup>11</sup> to D. <sup>12</sup> michel D. <sup>13</sup> om. DO. <sup>14</sup> leaf 107.

<sup>15</sup> false D. fals O. falso R. <sup>16</sup> wryte O. <sup>17</sup> om. D. <sup>18</sup> founde O.

<sup>19</sup> into O. <sup>20</sup> weren O. <sup>21—21</sup> biheued D. þo byheded O.

<sup>22</sup> lxxx sic O. <sup>23</sup> went DO. <sup>24</sup> of þe O.



Lancastre & of Leycestre, Sir' Henr' Lacy, Erl of Nichole, and William Vessy, a baron; & of oþere baronettes, aboute xiiij of þe best and wisest of Engeland.

4 And in þe same tyme<sup>1</sup> Kyng Edward tok<sup>2</sup> his viage in<sup>3</sup> Scotland, forto werr' oppoñ Iohn<sup>4</sup> Bailol, Kyng of Scotland. ¶ And Sir' Robert Roos at<sup>5</sup> Berwik<sup>1</sup> fley<sup>6</sup> fro þe Engliſſhe-men, & went to þe Scottes. ¶ And Kyng Edward went him toward Berwik, and  
8 biſegede þe touñ; and þo þat were wipin<sup>7</sup> manliche<sup>8</sup> ham defendede, and sette afire<sup>9</sup> and brent ij of Kyng Edwardes shippis, and ſaide, in deſpite and in reprofe of him: “¶ Wenes<sup>10</sup> Kyng Edward, wiþ his longe ſhanks, <sup>11</sup>forto wyn<sup>11</sup> Berwik<sup>1</sup>, al our  
12 vnþankes<sup>12</sup>? gas pikes him! and when <sup>13</sup>he haþ hit, gas diche him<sup>13</sup>!” ¶ When Kyng Edward herd þis ſcorn, anone þrouz his mightynesse he paſſede ouere þe diches, and aſſailede þe touñ, &  
14 come to þe zates, and gete<sup>15</sup> and conquered þe toune, and, þrouz his  
16 gracious power, quelled xxiij M<sup>+</sup> & vij C of<sup>16</sup> Scottes. & Kyng Edward loſte of his men, no man of renouñ ſaue Sir<sup>4</sup> Richard of Cornwaile; and him quelled a Flemynge<sup>1</sup> out of the Reede Halle wiþ a quarel, as þe forſaid Richard dede of his helme; and  
20 commanded ham forto zelde ham, and put ham into<sup>17</sup> the Kyngus grace; and þe Scottes wolde nouzt; wherfore þat halle was brent,  
18 and caſt<sup>1</sup> adoune, and alle þo þat were within were brent.<sup>18</sup> And Kyng Edward loſte <sup>19</sup>no man<sup>19</sup> at þat viage, of ſimple State,<sup>20</sup>  
24 but xxviij Engliſſhe-men; and þe wardeyn of þe caſtel zaf vp<sup>21</sup> þe keyes wipouten<sup>22</sup> eny aſſaut. And þere was take,<sup>23</sup> William Douglas, and Sir' Symonð Friſel; and þe Erl Patrik<sup>1</sup> zelde him to þe pees; but Ingham of Hunfreuil and Robert of<sup>4</sup> Brus, þat were  
28 wiþ þe<sup>24</sup> Kyng Edward, forſoke Kyng Edward, & helde wiþ þe Scottes: and afterward þai were tak<sup>1</sup>,<sup>23</sup> and put into pryſon; & afterward þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> forzaf ham her' treſpaſſe, & deliuered ham out of priſon; and þo lete Kyng Edward cloſe in Berwik<sup>1</sup> wiþ wallis  
32 and wiþ diches. ¶ And aftirward, Robert Brus<sup>25</sup> went to Tyndale, and sette Woxebryge afire, and Excelham and Lamerſtok<sup>1</sup>, and

<sup>1</sup> tyme þe O.    <sup>2</sup> nome D.    <sup>3</sup> into D. to O.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5</sup> of DO.    <sup>6</sup> fly O.    <sup>7</sup> wiþ ſic D.    þerin O.

<sup>8</sup> manly O.    <sup>9</sup> on fir D.    <sup>10</sup> wende DO.    <sup>11-11</sup> haue gete O.

<sup>12</sup> ovne þankes O.

<sup>13-13</sup> haþ ſo do gas dikes D.    he haþ gas dikes him O.

<sup>14</sup> leaf 107, back.    <sup>15</sup> gate DO.    <sup>16</sup> om. O.    <sup>17</sup> to DO.

<sup>18-18</sup> and . . . brent D. & caſt adon) & aþ þo þat were with-Inne were brent O.    om. R.    <sup>19-19</sup> no mo D.    no mo men O.

<sup>20</sup> eſtate D.    <sup>21</sup> vp þe Caſteþ & O.    <sup>22</sup> with-oute D.    with ſic O.

<sup>23</sup> taken D.    <sup>24</sup> om. DO.    <sup>25</sup> Rous DO.

quelled & robbit þe folc of þe contrey; and aftirward he went fro þens vnto Dunbar<sup>1</sup>.

¶ And þe ferst Wedenesday of Marche, þe Kyng sent<sup>1</sup> þe Erl of Garreine, Sir Hughe Percy and Sir Hught Spenser<sup>2</sup>, wip a 4 faire company, forto<sup>2</sup> bisege þe castel. But on þat me called Sir Richard Siward, a *traitour*, a false man, ymagynede forto bigile<sup>3</sup> þe Engliſſhe-men, & sent<sup>4</sup> to<sup>5</sup> the <sup>6</sup>Engliſſhemen, <sup>7</sup>ham forto deſceyue<sup>7</sup>, and ſaide þat he wold ʒelde to ham þe castel if<sup>8</sup> þai 8 wolde graunt him viij dayes of respite, þat he might ſende & telle to Sir Iohn Bailol, Kyng of Scotland, how <sup>9</sup>þe Engliſſhe-men<sup>9</sup> ferde, <sup>10</sup>as þai<sup>10</sup> wer<sup>10</sup> in þe caſteH, and ſende him worð<sup>11</sup> if þat he nolde<sup>11</sup> remeue þe ſege of þe<sup>12</sup> Engliſſhe-meñ, þat<sup>13</sup> <sup>14</sup>þai wolde þe<sup>12</sup> castel ʒelde to þe<sup>14</sup> Engliſſhemeñ. ¶ The meſſanger<sup>15</sup> þo come to<sup>16</sup> Iohn Bailol, Kyng of Scotland, þere þat he was wip his hoſt; and <sup>17</sup>þe meſſager tolde him.<sup>18</sup> ¶ And Sir Iohn<sup>19</sup> tok þo his hoſt, and<sup>17</sup> come in þe morwe erly toward þe caſtel. & Sir Richard Syward <sup>16</sup>saw him come, þat was maiſtre of þe Conſeile and keper of þe caſtel, and ſaide vnto þe<sup>12</sup> Engliſſhemen: “O God!” *quod* he, “now y ſe of folc a fair company, and wel apparailled, y wil go<sup>20</sup> aʒeynes ham, & <sup>21</sup>wit[h] ham to<sup>21</sup> mete and ham<sup>12</sup> aſſaile.” ¶ And <sup>20</sup>Sir Hugh þe Spenser ſaw the falſeneſſe of him & þe tresoun, and ſaide to him<sup>22</sup>: “O *traitour*, tak and *prouede*,<sup>23</sup> ʒour falſeneſſe ſhal nouȝt <sup>24</sup>ʒow auaile.” <sup>24</sup>¶ And Hugh the Spenser<sup>25</sup> com-mandede anon<sup>25</sup> forto hynde him, and in al haſte went aʒeins<sup>26</sup> <sup>24</sup>24 her enemyſ, & quelled of þe Scottes<sup>27</sup> xxij M<sup>+</sup>; for þe Scottes<sup>28</sup> had <sup>29</sup>wip ham<sup>29</sup> þat tyme no man <sup>30</sup>of honour,<sup>30</sup> ſaf Sir Patrik Graham, þat manliche<sup>31</sup> fauȝt, and Longe tyme, and at þe laſt he was quelled. & þo ſaide þe Engliſſhe-men in reprof of þe Scottis: <sup>28</sup>28

<sup>1</sup> ſent to D. <sup>2—2</sup> to D. <sup>3</sup> deſceyue D. <sup>4</sup> om. O.

<sup>5</sup> vnto D. <sup>6</sup> *leaf* 108. <sup>7—7</sup> in deſceyte D. <sup>8</sup> if þat O.

<sup>9—9</sup> his men D. <sup>10</sup> þat his men O.

<sup>10—10</sup> *MS.* has as þai were as þai þat; þat D.

<sup>11—11</sup> but if he wolde D. <sup>12</sup> om. D. <sup>13</sup> *MS.* has þat þat; om. D.

<sup>14—14</sup> he ſaide he wolde ʒelde the caſtel to D. þey wold ʒeld þe CaſteH to þe O.

<sup>15</sup> Meſſager O. <sup>16</sup> to ſire D. to ſir O. <sup>17—17</sup> om. O.

<sup>18</sup> him the meſſage D. <sup>19</sup> Iohn Bailol D.

<sup>20</sup> gone O. <sup>21—21</sup> ham D. with hem O.

<sup>22</sup> and ſaide to him D. & ſeyde to hym O. om. R.

<sup>23</sup> *MS.* has *prouede* is. <sup>24—24</sup> auaile ʒow D. vayne ʒow O.

<sup>25—25</sup> anone comandet D. <sup>26</sup> aʒen O. <sup>27</sup> Scottes DO. Scotte R

<sup>28</sup> Scotte D. <sup>29—29</sup> om. DO.

<sup>30—30</sup> with ham D. with hem of honour O.

<sup>31</sup> was of honour & manlich he D. manly O.

¶ Thus<sup>1</sup> staterand Scottes,  
holde y for sottes,  
of wrenches vnwar<sup>2</sup>,

4 ¶ Erly in a mornynge,  
in an euel tyming<sup>3</sup>  
went 3e<sup>2</sup> fro Dunbarr<sup>4</sup>.

¶ þo<sup>3</sup> þat wer<sup>5</sup> in the casteH saw þe seomfiture, and<sup>4</sup> 3elde<sup>5</sup> þe  
8 castel to<sup>6</sup> þe Englisshemen, and bonden her<sup>7</sup> bodyes, londes &  
castelles to<sup>7</sup> Kyng<sup>8</sup> Edward : and so þere<sup>8</sup> wer<sup>9</sup> take in þe<sup>9</sup> castel,  
10 iij Erles, and<sup>11</sup> vij barons, &<sup>11</sup> xxviiij<sup>11</sup> Knyghtes, <sup>12</sup>& xj clerkes,  
and xij<sup>13</sup> Picardes ; and alle were presentede vnto Kyng Edward<sup>12</sup>,  
12 and he sent ham to þe Toure of London, <sup>14</sup>to ben kepte<sup>14</sup> þere.

How Kyng<sup>8</sup> Edward, of his grete grace, delyuered aȝein<sup>11</sup> þe  
Scottes out of prison<sup>15</sup>, þat were cheueteys of the londe ;  
and þay<sup>16</sup> drow ham þo<sup>17</sup> to þe Frenchemen<sup>18</sup>, þrouȝ conseil  
16 of William Waleys.<sup>18</sup> *Capitulo Centesimo Sexagesimo*<sup>19</sup>  
Nono.

W Hen Kyng Edward hade made<sup>20</sup> þo an ende of the werre,  
and taken the chyeteys of Scotland, þo come Sir Iohn  
20 Bailol, and 3elde him vnto<sup>21</sup> Kyng Edward, and put <sup>22</sup>ham in<sup>22</sup> his  
grace ; and he was lad<sup>23</sup> to London. And when Kyng<sup>8</sup> Edward was  
comen<sup>24</sup> þider, þai were brouȝt bfore him ; and þe Kyng<sup>8</sup> axede of  
ham how þai wolde make amendes of þat trespasse and losse þat þai  
24 hade done him ; and þai put ham<sup>25</sup> in his mercy.

¶ “ Lordynges,” quod þe kyng, “ y wille nouȝt ȝour<sup>26</sup> landes, ne  
none of ȝour godes, but y wille þat ȝe make to me an oth, oppoñ  
Godes body, forto bene<sup>26</sup> trewe to me, and neuer after þis tyme  
28 aȝens me bere Armes.” And alle þai consentede to þe Kynges  
wille, and swore oppoñ Godes body, ¶ þat is to seyn, Sir<sup>11</sup> Iohn of  
Comyn and þe Erl of Stratthorn<sup>27</sup>, þe Erl of Carryk<sup>28</sup> ; and also iij  
bisshopus vndertoke for alle<sup>11</sup> þe clergie ; & so þe Kyng delyuerede  
32 ham, and ȝaf ham saf condit to wende into her<sup>29</sup> owen Land. ¶ And

<sup>1</sup> This O.    <sup>2</sup> þai D.    <sup>3</sup> And þo D.    When þo O.    <sup>4</sup> þai D.    þei O.  
<sup>5</sup> yolden O.    <sup>6</sup> vnto O.    <sup>7</sup> to the D.    to þe O.  
<sup>8</sup> þey O.    <sup>9-9</sup> taken in that D.    take þer in þe O.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 108, back.  
<sup>11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12-12</sup> xj clerkes and vij Picardes D.  
<sup>13</sup> vij O.    <sup>14-14</sup> forto bene kepede D.    to ben y-kept O.  
<sup>15</sup> prisoun aȝeyne D.    <sup>16</sup> om. O.    <sup>17</sup> om. DO.    <sup>18-18</sup> om. O.  
<sup>19</sup> lxxx sic O.    <sup>20</sup> y-made O.    <sup>21</sup> to D.  
<sup>22-22</sup> him vnto D.    hym in O.    <sup>23</sup> led O.    <sup>24</sup> come O.  
<sup>25</sup> hym O.    <sup>26</sup> be O.    <sup>27</sup> Stratthorn and D.

hit was nouȝt longe after<sup>1</sup>, *pat* *pai* ne risen<sup>2</sup> aȝeyns<sup>3</sup> Kyng Edward, for enchesoun *pat* *pai* wist<sup>4</sup> *pat* Kyng Edwardus folc<sup>5</sup> were<sup>6</sup> take in Gascoigne, as bifore is saide; but Sir Iohn Bailloil, <sup>7</sup>Kyng<sup>8</sup> of Scotland, wiste wel *pat* his lande shulde haue <sup>8</sup>sorwe and shame<sup>8</sup> <sup>4</sup> for her falsenesse, and in haste went him ouer<sup>9</sup> *pe* see vnto<sup>9</sup> his owen londres, and *pere* helde him, and come neuer<sup>10</sup> aȝeyne. Wherefore *pe* Scottes chosen to bene<sup>11</sup> her<sup>9</sup> kyng<sup>8</sup>, William Walis, a rybaude, an harlot, comen vp of nouȝt, and miche harme dede to *pe* Englisshemen. 8

¶ And Kyng Edward pouȝt how he myght haue deliuerance of his peple *pat* were tak<sup>12</sup> in Gascoigne, and in hast went ouer *pe* see into Flaundres, forto wer<sup>9</sup> oppoñ *pe* Kyng<sup>8</sup> of Fraunce. And *pe* Erl of Flaundres vnderfonge him wip michel<sup>13</sup> honour<sup>9</sup>, and 12 grauntede him alle his landes at his owen wille. ¶ And when *pe* Kyng<sup>8</sup> of<sup>14</sup> Fraunce herde telle *pat* *pe* Kyng of Engeland was arryuede in Flaundres, and come wip an huge power<sup>9</sup>, him forto destroye, he prayede him of trewes for ij ȝere, so *pat* Englissh 16 marchauntȝ, and also Frenche, myȝt saffliche<sup>15</sup> goñ in bope sides. ¶ The Kyng Edward grantede hit, so *pat* he myȝt<sup>16</sup> haue his men out of prisoun *pat* were take<sup>11</sup> in Gascoigne; and *pe* Kyng of Fraunce grauntede anone; and so *pai* wer<sup>9</sup> Delyuerede. 20

¶ And in the same tyme *pe*<sup>17</sup> Scottes sent by *pe* Bisshop of seynt Andrewes into Fraunce, to *pe* Kyng<sup>8</sup>, and to Sir Charles, his broȝer, *pat* Sir Charles shulde come wip his power<sup>9</sup>, & *pai* <sup>18</sup>of Scotland<sup>18</sup> wolde come wip heir<sup>9</sup>, and so *pai* shulde gone into Enge- 24 land, *pat* lande forto destroye, fram Scotland, til *pat* *pai* <sup>19</sup>come into<sup>19</sup> Kent. And *pe* Scottes truste<sup>20</sup> ful<sup>11</sup> miche oppon<sup>21</sup> *pe* Frensshe-men; but of *pat* þing *pai* hade no maner graunt. and <sup>22</sup>noȝeles *pe* Scottes bigoñ to robbe and quelle in Northumberlonk, 28 and dede<sup>23</sup> miche harme.

**How William Wallis lete slee Sir Hughe of Cressingham;  
and of *pe* batail of Foukirk. Capitulo Centesimo Septua-  
gesimo.**<sup>24</sup>

32

<sup>1</sup> afterward D.      <sup>2</sup> aȝeyns O.      <sup>3</sup> aȝeyn D.      aȝen O.<sup>4</sup> wist wel D.      wist weel O.      <sup>5</sup> men D.      <sup>6</sup> was O.<sup>7</sup> leaf 109.      <sup>8-8</sup> shame and sorwe D.      <sup>9</sup> to DO.      <sup>10</sup> neuer more D.<sup>11</sup> om. DO.      <sup>12</sup> om. D.      <sup>13</sup> mych O.<sup>14</sup> MS. has of Engeland, with Engeland underlined for omission.<sup>15</sup> safly D.      sauely O.      <sup>16</sup> must O.<sup>17</sup> MS. has *pe* kyng, with kyng underlined for omission.<sup>18-18</sup> om. D.      <sup>19-19</sup> comen to D.      come to O.      <sup>20</sup> trist O.<sup>21</sup> to O.      <sup>22</sup> leaf 109, back.      <sup>23</sup> deden O.<sup>24</sup> MS. Octogesimo; Octogesimo D.      lxxxx<sup>o</sup> O.

**W**Hen þis tydyng was comen<sup>1</sup> to Kyng Edward, þat William Walis hade ordeynede soche a stronge power, and þat al Scotland to him was entendant, and redy to quelle Englisshemen & destroye his<sup>2</sup> lande, he was sore annoied, and sent anone by his<sup>3</sup> lettres<sup>4</sup> to þe Erl of Gerrein, and to Sir Henry Percy and to Sir William Latomer, and to<sup>5</sup> Sir Hugh of Cressingham his Tresorer,<sup>6</sup> þat þai shulde take power, and wende into Northumberlonk, & so forþ into Scotland, forto kepe þe contres. ¶ And when William Waleys herde of her comyng, he gañ<sup>7</sup> forto flee; &<sup>8</sup> Englisshemen him<sup>9</sup> folwede, and drof him til þat he come to Streuelyn; & þere he helde him in þe casteH; and þe Walshemen euery day ham<sup>10</sup> ascriede & manacede, & dede al þe despite þat þai myght.<sup>11</sup> ¶ So þat þe Englisshemen<sup>12</sup> oppoñ a tyme in a morwenyng,<sup>13</sup> went out fram<sup>14</sup> þe castel þe mountance<sup>15</sup> of x mile, and passede ouer a bruge; and William Walys come wiþ a stronge power, and drof ham abak, for þe Englisshemen hade azeynes him þo no myght, but fledde; and þo þat might take þe brugge scapede. ¶ But Sir Hughe, þe Kyngus Tresorer, þere was slayn, and meny opere also; wherfore was made miche<sup>16</sup> sorwe.

þo hade Kyng Edward spedde alle his nedes in Flaundes, ¶ and was comyng<sup>17</sup> azeyn into Engeland, <sup>18</sup>and in haste toke<sup>19</sup> his Way toward<sup>20</sup> Scotland, and come pider at þe Ascencioun; and al þat he founde, he sette<sup>21</sup> on fire<sup>21</sup> & brent. But þe pore peple of Scotland come to him wonder pik, and prayed him, for Godes loue, <sup>22</sup>þat he wolde<sup>22</sup> haue<sup>3</sup> on<sup>23</sup> ham<sup>24</sup> mercy and pitee; wherfore þe Kyng þo commandet þat no man shulde done<sup>25</sup> harme to ham þat were zolden<sup>26</sup> to ham, ne to no man of ordre, ne to no<sup>27</sup> hous of religioun, ne no maner cherche; ¶ But lete asprie<sup>28</sup> al þat he myght, where þat he myght fynde eny of his enemys. þo come an<sup>29</sup> espie to þe Kyng, and tolde wher<sup>30</sup> þe Scottes were assembled forto abide bataile.

32 And on seynt Marie Magdaleynus<sup>31</sup> day, þe Kyng come to

<sup>1</sup> come O.    <sup>2</sup> the D. þe O.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> lettre D.    <sup>5</sup> om. D.  
<sup>6</sup> fader & O.    <sup>7</sup> bygan O.    <sup>8</sup> and the D. & þe O.    <sup>9</sup> hem O.  
<sup>10</sup> him D.    hym O.    <sup>11</sup> miȝten D.    <sup>12</sup> MS. has Englisshemen went.  
<sup>13</sup> mornynge DO.    <sup>14</sup> fro D.    <sup>15</sup> montynauce O.  
<sup>16</sup> michel D.    <sup>17</sup> comen D.    come O.    <sup>18</sup> leaf 110.  
<sup>19</sup> nome O.    <sup>20</sup> into O.    <sup>21-21</sup> afere O.  
<sup>22-22</sup> MS. has þat he wolde þat he wolde.    <sup>23</sup> of D.  
<sup>24</sup> hem haue O.    <sup>25</sup> do D.    <sup>26</sup> zolde O.    <sup>27</sup> non O.  
<sup>28</sup> aspye in O.    <sup>29</sup> om. DO.    <sup>30</sup> wher þat D.  
<sup>31</sup> Magdaleyn D.    Maugdeleyne O.

Foukirk, and 3af bataile to þe Scottes; and at þat bataiH þere<sup>1</sup> wer  
 quelled of<sup>2</sup> Scottes<sup>3</sup> xxxiiij M<sup>+</sup>,<sup>4</sup> and<sup>3</sup> of Englisshemen but xxviiij<sup>5</sup>  
 and no mo; of þe whiche was a worpi Knyght slayn, þat was a  
 knyght<sup>6</sup> of the HospitaH,<sup>6</sup> þat me called Frere Briān lay; for, when<sup>4</sup>  
 William Waleys fley fram þe bataile, þat<sup>7</sup> same Frere Briān him  
 pursuede fersly<sup>8</sup>; and as his hors<sup>4</sup> ran, hit sterte into a mere<sup>9</sup> of  
 marreys<sup>9</sup> vp to þe bely; and William Waleys turnede þo azeyn,  
 and þere quelled þe forsaide Briān; and þat was miche harme. 8  
 ¶ And while Kyng Edward went prouȝ Scotland forto enquire if<sup>10</sup>  
 he might fynde eny of his enemys; and in þat lande he duelled  
 as<sup>11</sup> longe as him likede, and þere was none enemy þat derst him  
 abide. 12

¶ And so<sup>12</sup> aftirward Kyng Edward went to Southamptōn, for  
 he wolde nouȝt abide in Scotland in<sup>13</sup> wynter sesōn, for esement of  
 his peple. ¶ And when he come to Londoñ, he lete amende meny  
 misdeds þat were done azeynes<sup>14</sup> his pees Whiles<sup>15</sup> þat He Was 16  
 in Flaundes.

Of þe laste mariage of Kyng Edward; and how he went þe  
 þridde<sup>16</sup> tyme into Scotland. *Capitulo Centesimo Septua-*  
*gesimo*<sup>17</sup> *primo.* 20

**A**Nd after<sup>18</sup>, hit was ordeynede prouȝ<sup>19</sup> þe court of Rome, þat  
 Kyng Edward shulde wedde Dame Margarete, Kyng  
 Philippus suster of France; and þe Erchebisshop Robert of  
 Wynchelse spoused ham togedre; prouȝ whiche mariage pees was 24  
 made bituene Kyng Edward of Engeland and Kyng Philippe of  
 Fraunce. ¶ Kyng<sup>20</sup> Edward<sup>21</sup> went þo<sup>4</sup> þe þridde<sup>16</sup> tyme into  
 Scotland; and þo, with-inne þe first zere, he had enfamenede þe  
 land so þat þere ne<sup>21</sup> lefte nouȝt on<sup>22</sup> but þai<sup>22</sup> come to<sup>23</sup> his mercy, 28  
 saf þo þat were in þe castel of Estrenelyn, þat was<sup>24</sup> vitailed &  
 storede<sup>25</sup> for vij zere.

<sup>1</sup> om. DO.    <sup>2</sup> of the D.    <sup>3-3</sup> xxx M<sup>+</sup> iij M<sup>+</sup> & O.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5</sup> Engliſſhe-men but xxviiij D. Engliſſh-men but xxviiij O. Engliſſhe-men R.

<sup>6-6</sup> an hospitaler D. an hoſpyteler O.    <sup>7</sup> þe D.

<sup>8</sup> fersliche D.    <sup>9-9</sup> om. O.    <sup>10</sup> if þat O.

<sup>11</sup> alſe D.    <sup>12</sup> ſome DO.

<sup>13</sup> þe O.

<sup>14</sup> loyf 110, back.    <sup>15</sup> and his lawe while DO.

<sup>16</sup> iij O.    <sup>17</sup> MS. has *Ottogesimo*; iij D. lxxxx O.

<sup>18</sup> afterward D. aftirward O.    <sup>19</sup> by O.    <sup>20</sup> And Kyng D.

<sup>21</sup> om. O.    <sup>22-22</sup> þat þai ne D. þat þey ne O.    <sup>23</sup> vn-to O.

<sup>24</sup> was wel D. was weel O.    <sup>25</sup> aſtorede D. aſtored O.

How þe castel of Estreuelyn was bisegede. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo lxx<sup>1</sup> secundo.*

4 **K** yng<sup>r</sup> Edward come with an huge power<sup>1</sup> to þe castel of Estreuelyn, and bisegede þe casteH; but hit litil auailede, for he myght do<sup>2</sup> the Scottes none harme, for þe castel was so stronge an[d] wel Kepte.<sup>3</sup> ¶ And Kyng<sup>r</sup> Edward saw þat, & þouzt him oppoñ a queyntise, and lete<sup>4</sup> make þere anone<sup>4</sup> ij peire of hyc  
8 Galwes bifore þe toure of þe casteH, and made his oth þat, as meny as were in<sup>5</sup> þe casteH, <sup>6</sup>were he<sup>6</sup> Erle or baroñ, and he were take wiþ strengþ, but if he wolde þe<sup>7</sup> rap<sup>r</sup> him zelde, he shulde bene hongede on<sup>8</sup> þo Galwes. ¶ And when þo þat were in þe castel  
12 herde þis, þai come and zelde ham alle to þe Kynges mercy & grace; and þe Kyng<sup>r</sup> forzaf ham al his maletalent.<sup>9</sup> And þere were alle þe grete lordes of<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup>Scotland sworne to Kyng<sup>r</sup> Edward, þat þai shulde come to Londoñ to enery parlement, and shulde stonde to  
16 his ordenaunce.

<sup>12</sup>How Troillebastoun<sup>12</sup> was ferste ordeynede. *Capitulo Centesimo lxx<sup>13</sup> iij<sup>o</sup>.*

20 **T** His<sup>14</sup> Kyng<sup>r</sup> Edward went þens to Londoñ, and wende haue hade<sup>15</sup> rest and<sup>15</sup> pees of his werr<sup>1</sup>, wiþ whiche werre he was ocupiede xx<sup>ti</sup> ȝer<sup>1</sup>, þat is to seyn, in Walys, in Gascoign, and in Scotland, and þouzt how he myght recouere his tresoure þat he hade spendede about his werre, and lete enquere þrouz þe reaume  
24 of alle þe<sup>16</sup> mistakynge and wronge done þrouz misdoers in<sup>17</sup> Engeland, of alle þe tyme þat he hade bene out of his realme, þat<sup>18</sup> me callede<sup>18</sup> 'Troylebastoñ'; and ordeynede þerto Iustices. And in þis maner þe Kyng<sup>r</sup> recouered<sup>19</sup> tresoure<sup>20</sup> wiþout noumbre. ¶ And his  
28 encheson was, for he<sup>21</sup> hade þouzt<sup>22</sup> forto haue went into<sup>22</sup> þe Holy Land forto<sup>23</sup> haue werrede<sup>23</sup> oppon Godes enemys, for enchesoun þat he was croisede longe tyme bifore; and nopeles, þat law þat he had ordeynede dede miche gode þrouz al Engeland, to ham þat were

<sup>1</sup> MS. <sup>xx</sup>iiij; <sup>xx</sup>iiij D. lxxxx O.      <sup>2</sup> done O.      <sup>3</sup> ykept O.

<sup>4—4</sup> make anone þere D. amake anon þere O.      <sup>5</sup> with-Inne O.

<sup>6—6</sup> whedir he were O.      <sup>7</sup> om. O.      <sup>8</sup> oppon D.

<sup>9</sup> maletalent DO. ale talent R.

<sup>10</sup> MS. has of engel with engel underlined for omission.      <sup>11</sup> leaf 111.

<sup>12—12</sup> Of Traillebastoñ how it D.      <sup>13</sup> MS. has <sup>xx</sup>iiij; <sup>xx</sup>iiij D.

<sup>14</sup> The D. þe O.      <sup>15—15</sup> om. D.      <sup>16</sup> om. DO.      <sup>17</sup> of O.

<sup>18—18</sup> men calles D. men Called O.      <sup>19</sup> recouerede þo D.      <sup>20</sup> good O.

<sup>21</sup> om. D.      <sup>22—22</sup> goñ to D.      <sup>23—23</sup> were D. were O.

mysbode; for þo þat trespassed were<sup>1</sup> wel chastisede, and afterward þe meker<sup>2</sup> and þe<sup>3</sup> better; and þe pore comunnes were in þe<sup>3</sup> more reste and in<sup>4</sup> pees.

¶ And<sup>5</sup> þe same tyme Kyng Edward enprisonede his owen sone<sup>4</sup> Edward, for encheson þat Walter of Langeton, Bisshop of Chestre, þat was þe Kyngus tresorer<sup>6</sup>, hade made oppoñ him compleynt, and saide þat þe forsaide Edward, þrouȝ conseil and procurment of on, Piers of Gauaston, a squyer<sup>7</sup> of Gascoigne, <sup>6</sup>hade broke<sup>6</sup> þe parkez of 8 þe forsaide bisshope, and þe forsaide Piers conseilede and ladde þe same Edward, þe kynges sone; and for þis cause<sup>7</sup> Kyng Edward exilede him<sup>8</sup> out of Engeland for evermore.

Of þe dep of William Waleys, þe false traitoure. *Capitulo* 12  
*Centesimo lxxiiij.*

**A** Nd when þis god Kyng Edward <sup>9</sup>hade his enemys ouercome<sup>9</sup> in Walis, Gascoign, & in Scotland, and destroyede his traitoures, but<sup>10</sup> oneliche<sup>11</sup> þat<sup>12</sup> rybaude William Waleys, þat neuer<sup>16</sup> to þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> wolde him zelde. and at þe laste, in þe toune of Seynt Dominic, in þe 3er<sup>1</sup> of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edwardus regne xxxiiij 3er<sup>1</sup>, þat false traitoure was take, and presentede to þe Kyng; saf þe Kyng wolde nouȝt seen<sup>13</sup> him, but sent him to London to vnderfonge his iuge- 20 [ment].<sup>14</sup> And on Seynt Bartholomeus Eve he was honget and drawe, and his <sup>15</sup>heuede smyten<sup>15</sup> of, & his bowailes take<sup>16</sup> out <sup>17</sup>of his body,<sup>17</sup> and brent, and his body quartarede & sent to iiij<sup>18</sup> þe best tounes of<sup>19</sup> Scotland, and his heued<sup>20</sup> sette oppoñ a spere, and 24 sette oppoñ London Brugge, in sample<sup>21</sup> þat þe Scottes shulde haue in mynde forto bere ham amys aȝeyn<sup>22</sup> her<sup>22</sup> lorde eftesones.

How þe Scottes come to Kyng Edward, forto amende here  
trespasse þat þai had done aȝeyns him. [*Capitulo*] Cen- 28  
tesimo lxxv<sup>to</sup>.<sup>23</sup>

**A** Nd at Michelmasse þo next coming, Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward helde his parlement atte Westmynstre; and þider come þe Scottes, þat is to seyn, þe Bisshoþ of Seynt Andrewus,<sup>24</sup> Robert þe Brus, Erl 32

<sup>1</sup> weren O    <sup>2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> om. DO.    <sup>5</sup> and in D.

<sup>6-6</sup> hade broke DO. om. R.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 111, back.

<sup>8</sup> his sone O.    <sup>9-9</sup> om. D.    <sup>10</sup> saf D.

<sup>11</sup> only O.    <sup>12</sup> the D.    <sup>13</sup> see D.    se O.    <sup>14</sup> Iugement þere D.

<sup>15-15</sup> heed smyte O.    <sup>16</sup> taken D.    <sup>17-17</sup> om. D.

<sup>18</sup> iiij of D.    foure O.    <sup>19</sup> in D.    <sup>20</sup> heed O.    <sup>21</sup> ensample DO.

<sup>22</sup> her liege D.    her lege O.    <sup>23</sup> lxxv<sup>to</sup> O.    <sup>24</sup> Andrew O.



of Carrik, Symon<sup>1</sup> Frise<sup>2</sup>, Iohn<sup>3</sup>, Erl of Athe<sup>4</sup>; and þai were accordede with<sup>5</sup> þe kyng<sup>6</sup>, and<sup>7</sup> bonden<sup>8</sup> by her<sup>9</sup> oth sworn, þat after<sup>10</sup>, if eny of ham<sup>11</sup> misbare ham<sup>12</sup> azeys Kyng Edward, þat þai shulde bene<sup>13</sup> disheritede for euermore. And when here pees was þus made, þai toke her<sup>14</sup> leue priueliche<sup>15</sup>, and went Home into Here owen<sup>16</sup> contree.

# How Robert þe Brus chalanged Scotlan<sup>1</sup>. *Capitulo Centesimo*

8 lxxvj<sup>to</sup>.<sup>13</sup>

**A**Nd after<sup>14</sup>, Robert<sup>15</sup> þe Brus, Erl of Karrik, sent by his lettre to þe Erles and barons of Scotlan<sup>1</sup>, þat þai shulde come to him to Scone, in the morwen<sup>16</sup> aftir<sup>17</sup> þe concepcioun<sup>18</sup> of oure Lady, for hye nedes of þe lan<sup>1</sup>; and þe lordes come at þe day assignede. ¶ And at þe same day, Sir Robert þe Brus saide: “Faire lordes! ful wel 3e wete<sup>18</sup> þat in my persone du[e]lleþ þe ryght of þe reame<sup>19</sup> of Scotlan<sup>1</sup>; and as 3e wetep<sup>20</sup> wel, as ryȝtful heir<sup>1</sup>, siþ 16 21 þat Sir<sup>21</sup> Iohn Bailoil, þat was our<sup>1</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup>, 22 hap vs<sup>22</sup> forsak<sup>1</sup>, & also lefte<sup>23</sup> his lande. ¶ And þouȝ it<sup>24</sup> so be<sup>24</sup> þat Kyng Edward of Engeland<sup>1</sup>, wiþ wrongeful power<sup>1</sup> hap made me<sup>25</sup> to him<sup>25</sup> assent azeys my wille,—yf þat 3e wil grant þat y be Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Scotlan<sup>1</sup>, y 20 shal kepe ȝow azeys Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward & azeys alle maner<sup>26</sup> men.” And wiþ þat worde, þe Abbot of Scone aros<sup>27</sup>, and bifore ham alle saide, þat hit was resoun<sup>1</sup> forto helpe him, and þe lande to kepe and defende; and þo saide, in presence of ham alle, þat he wolde<sup>28</sup> ȝeue 24 him<sup>28</sup> a þousan<sup>1</sup> pound<sup>29</sup> forto mayntene þat lan<sup>1</sup>. and alle þe<sup>30</sup> opere grantede þe<sup>31</sup> lande to him, and wiþ hir<sup>1</sup> power<sup>1</sup> him forto helpe, and defiede Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward of Engeland<sup>1</sup>, and saide þat Robert þe Brus shulde bene<sup>32</sup> Kyng of Scotlan<sup>1</sup>.

# 28 How Sire Iohn<sup>33</sup> Comyn gaynesaide þe crounyng<sup>1</sup> of 34 35 Robert þe<sup>35</sup> Brus. *Capitulo Centesimo 36 Septuagesimo Septimo.*<sup>36</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Symon<sup>1</sup> the D. Symound þe O. <sup>2</sup> Iohn þe O. <sup>3</sup> Athels O.  
<sup>4</sup> to O. <sup>5—5</sup> and bonden and D. & bound<sup>1</sup> & O. bonden R.  
<sup>6</sup> om. O. <sup>7</sup> afterwarde D. aftirwar<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>8—8</sup> bere hem amys O.  
<sup>9</sup> be DO. <sup>10</sup> priuelys D. preuily O. <sup>11</sup> lea<sup>1</sup> 112.  
<sup>12</sup> om. DO. <sup>13</sup> lxxxxvj<sup>to</sup> O. <sup>14</sup> after þis D. aftir þis O.  
<sup>15</sup> ymage sic O. <sup>16</sup> morwe D. morne O. <sup>17</sup> Ascencioun<sup>1</sup> D.  
<sup>18</sup> wetep<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>19</sup> me sic D. <sup>20</sup> wote D. weten O. <sup>21—21</sup> om. O.  
<sup>22—22</sup> vs hath DO. <sup>23</sup> lost<sup>1</sup> D. <sup>24—24</sup> be so O. <sup>25—25</sup> his O.  
<sup>26</sup> maner of O. <sup>27</sup> roos vp D. <sup>28—28</sup> hym ȝeue O. <sup>29</sup> ti O.  
<sup>30</sup> om. D. <sup>31</sup> þat O. <sup>32</sup> be D. <sup>33</sup> Iohn<sup>1</sup> of O.  
<sup>34</sup> & O. <sup>35—35</sup> sir Robert D. <sup>36—36</sup> iij xvi<sup>o</sup> O.

“**L**Ordynge,” saide Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn of Comyn, “þenketh oppoñ þe treuthe and þe<sup>1</sup> oth þat 3e<sup>2</sup> made vnto Kyng<sup>3</sup> Edward of Engeland! and as tochyng<sup>4</sup> myself, y Wil nouȝt breke myn oth for no man.” And so he went fram<sup>5</sup> þat company at þat tyme; 4 wherfore Robert þe Brus, and alle þat to him consentede, were wonder<sup>6</sup> wroþe, & þo<sup>6</sup> manacede Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn of<sup>1</sup> Comyn. ¶ þo ordeynede þai<sup>7</sup> anoþer conseil at Dumfrys, to þe whiche come þe forsaide Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comyn, <sup>s</sup>and duelled<sup>8</sup> but ij mile fram<sup>5</sup> 8 Dunfris, þere þat he was wont<sup>9</sup> to sojourne and abide.

**How Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comyn was traiterously slayn.<sup>10</sup> Capitulo Centesimo lxxvij<sup>o</sup>.<sup>11</sup>**

**W**Hen<sup>12</sup> Robert þe Brus wiste þat al þe grete<sup>13</sup> of Scotland<sup>12</sup> were comen<sup>14</sup> to Seone, saf Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comyn, þat sojourned þo neyȝ Seone, he sent after<sup>1</sup> him specialiche,<sup>15</sup> þat Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comen shulde com & speke wiþ him; and oppoñ þat he sent after<sup>1</sup> him<sup>1</sup> Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comynus ij breþerne, and praiede him forto<sup>1</sup> come<sup>16</sup> and 16 speke wiþ him atte þe Gray Freres at<sup>17</sup> Donfris; and þat was þe Thoresday after Candelmasse; & Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn grauntede ham forto wende wiþ ham. And when he had<sup>18</sup> herde masse, he toke a sop and drank<sup>t</sup>, & <sup>18</sup> afterwarde he bistrode his palfray and rode his way, 20 and so come to Dunfris. & Robert<sup>19</sup> Bruys sawe him comme atte a wyndow, as he was in his chaumbre, and þo made ioye ynow, & come aȝeyn<sup>20</sup> him, and halsed<sup>21</sup> him aboute þe nek<sup>t</sup>, & made wiþ him gode semblaunt. And when alle þe Erles & barons of 24 Scotland were present, Robert þe Brus spake and saide: “Sires,” quod he, “3e weten<sup>22</sup> wel the<sup>23</sup> enchesoun of þis comyng, & wherfore hit is: if þat 3e wil Graunt þat Y mote<sup>24</sup> be Kyng of Scotland, 25 <sup>26</sup>as ryȝht heire of the londe.” And al þe lordes þat were þere, 28 saide wiþ on<sup>27</sup> voys þat he shulde bene<sup>28</sup> crowned Kyng<sup>t</sup> of Scotland,<sup>26</sup> and þat þai wolde him help and mayntene aȝeyns al maner<sup>t</sup> men on lif; and for him, if it wer<sup>t</sup> nede, dye. ¶ þe Gentil knyȝt þo,

<sup>1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2</sup> 3e DO.    he R.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 112, back.    <sup>4</sup> MS. tothyng<sup>t</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> fro O.    <sup>6</sup> so O.    <sup>7</sup> þey þo O.

<sup>8-10</sup> he duelled no D. dwelled<sup>t</sup> not O.    <sup>9</sup> woned O.    <sup>10</sup> queld<sup>t</sup> O.

<sup>11</sup> <sup>xx</sup>iiij xviiij<sup>o</sup> O.    <sup>12</sup> Whenne þat O.    <sup>13</sup> gret lordes D.    <sup>14</sup> come O.

<sup>15</sup> specially O.    <sup>16</sup> kepe O.    <sup>17</sup> of O.    <sup>18</sup> om. O.

<sup>19</sup> Robert þe D.    Robert þe<sup>e</sup> O.    <sup>20</sup> aȝeynes D.    aȝens O.

<sup>21</sup> collede D.    colled O.    <sup>22</sup> wete D.

<sup>23</sup> the D.    þe O.    om. R.    <sup>24</sup> most<sup>t</sup> D.    <sup>25</sup> leaf 113.

<sup>26-28</sup> om. D.    <sup>27</sup> o O.    <sup>28</sup> be O.

Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn of Comyn, ansuerede & saide: "*certes*, neuer<sup>2</sup> for me, ne forto haue of me as miche<sup>3</sup> helpe as þe value of a botoun; for, þat oth þat y haue made to Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edward of Engeland, y shal holde þe<sup>1</sup> 4 while my lif laste.<sup>3</sup>" And with þat worde he went fro þe company, and wolde haue went oppoñ his palfray. And Robert the Brus pursuede him wiþ a drawen<sup>4</sup> sworde, and bare him prou<sup>3</sup> the body, and Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comyn felle <sup>5</sup>adoun vnto<sup>5</sup> the Erþe. ¶ But when 8 Roger, þat was Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comines broþer, saw þe falsenesse, he<sup>6</sup> stert vp<sup>7</sup> to Sir<sup>1</sup> Robert the Brus, and smote him wiþ a knyft; but þe false *traitoure* was armed vnder<sup>8</sup>, so þat þe stroke myght done him none harme; and so miche helpe come aboute Sir<sup>8</sup> Robert the 12 Brus, so þat Roger Comyn was þere quelledde and alto-hewe into smale pices. ¶ And Robert þe Brus turnede aȝeyn þere þat Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comyn þe noble Baroñ lay<sup>9</sup> woundede and pynede<sup>9</sup> towards<sup>10</sup> his deþ, bisides þe hye auter in the cherche of þe Gray Freres, and 16 saide vnto Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn Comyn: "O *traitour*! þow shalt be<sup>11</sup> dede, & neuer<sup>2</sup> after<sup>1</sup> lette myn auancement"; and shooke his suorde at þe<sup>1</sup> hye auter, and smote him on<sup>12</sup> the heuede,<sup>13</sup> þat þe brayn felle adoun<sup>14</sup> oppoñ<sup>15</sup> þe Gronde, and þe blode stert<sup>1</sup> vnto<sup>16</sup> the 20 wallis; and ȝitte into þis Day that<sup>17</sup> blode<sup>18</sup> is seyne þere,<sup>8</sup> and<sup>19</sup> no Water may wasshe it away; and so deide þat noble knyȝt in holy cherche.

How Robert þe B[r]us was cronede, <sup>20</sup>and made<sup>20</sup> Kyng<sup>21</sup> of 24 Scotland. *Capitulo Centesimo lxxix.*<sup>21</sup>

And when þe intrusour<sup>22</sup> Robert þe Brus saw þat no man þo wolde lete his coronacioun, he commanded alle ham þat were of power<sup>3</sup> shulde come to<sup>23</sup> his crounyng<sup>24</sup>, to Seynt<sup>25</sup> Iohnes 28 touñ<sup>25</sup> in Scotland. ¶ & so hit bifelle þat on<sup>1</sup> oure Lady Day, þe<sup>26</sup> Anunciacioun, þe Bisshop of Glascowe<sup>27</sup> and þe Bisshop of Seynt Andrew<sup>28</sup> cronede<sup>29</sup> for her Kyng, Robert the Brus,<sup>29</sup> in Seynt Iohnes toune,<sup>30</sup> & made him Kyng. And anone after<sup>1</sup> he

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> michel D.    <sup>3</sup> lasteþ O.    <sup>4</sup> draw DO.

<sup>5-5</sup> douñ to D.    down vnto O.    <sup>6</sup> all three MSS. have and.

<sup>7</sup> om. DO.    <sup>8</sup> om. D.    <sup>9-9</sup> wounde and pynyg<sup>2</sup> D.    <sup>10</sup> toward O.

<sup>11</sup> bene D.    <sup>12</sup> oppoñ D.    <sup>13</sup> heed<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>14</sup> down O.    <sup>15</sup> to D.

<sup>16</sup> an hye oppoñ D.    on hye in-to O.    <sup>17</sup> the D.    <sup>18</sup> leaf 113, back.

<sup>19</sup> þat O.    <sup>20-20</sup> om. O.    <sup>21</sup> iiij ix<sup>o</sup> O.

<sup>22</sup> traitoure D.    traytour O.    <sup>23</sup> vnto O.    <sup>24</sup> Corounyng O.

<sup>25-25</sup> Iohn O.    <sup>26</sup> of O.    <sup>27</sup> Glastoñ DO.    <sup>28</sup> Andrew O.

<sup>29-29</sup> for her Kyng Robert the Brus D.    for her Kyng Robert þe Brus O. her Robert R.

<sup>30</sup> MS. has toune toune, with the second toune underlined for omission.

drof out al<sup>1</sup> þe Engliſſhe-men out<sup>1</sup> of Scotland; & þai fledde,<sup>2</sup> and come & pleyne<sup>3</sup> vnto<sup>3</sup> Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edward, how Robert þe Brus hadde dryuen<sup>4</sup> ham out<sup>4</sup> of the lande, & diſherite<sup>5</sup> ham.

**How Kyng Edwarde dobbit at Westminster xiiij score knyghte. 4**  
**Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo.**

**A**Nd when Kyng Edward<sup>6</sup> herde of þis meſchief, he<sup>6</sup> ſuore þat he wolde þerof bene avenged, and ſaide þat ‘alle þe traitours<sup>7</sup> of Scotland ſhulde bene<sup>8</sup> hongede and draw, and þat þai<sup>8</sup> ſhulde neuer bene<sup>9</sup> rauſonede.’ ¶ And Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edward þouȝt oppoñ þis falſeneſſe þat þe Scottes hadde done, and ſende<sup>10</sup> after alle<sup>11</sup> þe bachilers<sup>11</sup> of Engeland, þat þai ſhulde come to London<sup>xx</sup> at Whitsontyde; and he dobbit<sup>12</sup> at Westminster<sup>xx</sup> iiiij<sup>13</sup> knyȝtes. 12

¶ þo ordeynede him þe noble Kyng Edward forto wende into Scotland, to werr<sup>1</sup> oppoñ Robert þe Brus; and ſent bifore him<sup>1</sup> into Scotland<sup>14</sup> Sir<sup>15</sup> Aymer of<sup>15</sup> Valance, Erl of Penbrok, & Sir<sup>16</sup> Henry Percy,<sup>16</sup> wiþ a fair<sup>1</sup> company, þat purſewede þe Scottes and<sup>16</sup> brenede<sup>17</sup> tounes & caſtilles; & afterwarde come the Kyng himſelf, wiþ Erles<sup>18</sup> and barons a fair<sup>1</sup> companye.

**How Robert þe Brus was ſcomfitede in bataile; and how<sup>19</sup>**  
**Symond FriſeH was<sup>19</sup> ſlayn. Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo 20**  
**primo.**

**T**He<sup>20</sup> Fryday next bifore<sup>21</sup> þe Aſſumpcion of our<sup>1</sup> Lady, Kyng Edward mette Robert the<sup>1</sup> Brus biſides Seynt Iohnes touñ in Scotland, & with his company<sup>22</sup>; of þe<sup>23</sup> whiche company<sup>1</sup> Kyng<sup>24</sup> Edward quelled<sup>1</sup> vij Mt. ¶ When Robert þe Brus ſaw þis meſchief, he<sup>24</sup> gan to flee, and hude<sup>25</sup> him þat men myȝht nouȝt him fynde; but Sir<sup>1</sup> Symond FriſeH purſuede him ſo ſore, ſo<sup>23</sup> þat he turnede<sup>26</sup> & abode bataile, for he was a worȝi<sup>27</sup> knyȝt and a bolde<sup>28</sup> of body<sup>27</sup>; and þe Engliſſhe-men purſuede him<sup>28</sup> ſore on<sup>29</sup> euery

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> fleȝ D.    <sup>3</sup> to D.    <sup>4</sup> dyve ſic O.    <sup>5</sup> diſheritede D.

<sup>6</sup> MS. has he ſor with ſor underlined for omiſſion.

<sup>7</sup> traitoures D.    Traytours O.    traitors R.    <sup>8</sup> he O.    <sup>9</sup> he DO.

<sup>10</sup> ſent<sup>1</sup> DO.    <sup>11—11</sup> bachelrye D.    þe Bachelrye O.

<sup>12</sup> tobbet D.    dubbed<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>13</sup> fourtene ſcore DO.    <sup>14</sup> leaf 114.

<sup>15</sup> om. D.    þe O.    <sup>16</sup> Percy baron<sup>1</sup> D.    Percy Baroñ O.    <sup>17</sup> brent O.

<sup>18</sup> erler ſic D.    <sup>19</sup> om. O.    <sup>20</sup> O the O.

<sup>21</sup> before ſic O.    <sup>22</sup> Cumpanye Kyng Edward<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>23</sup> om. D.

<sup>24</sup> and DO.    <sup>25</sup> hyd O.    <sup>26</sup> turnede aȝeyne D.    turned aȝen O.

<sup>27—27</sup> Knyȝt of body and bold D.    <sup>28</sup> hym euere O.    <sup>29</sup> in O.

side, and quellede þe stede þat Sir Symond FriseH roode oppoñ ;  
 and þai toke him and lade him into<sup>1</sup> þe hoste. ¶ And Sir  
 Symond bigan forto flater and speke faire, and saide : “ lordes, y  
 4 shal zeue 3ow iiij M<sup>t</sup> mar3<sup>2</sup> of Siluer<sup>3</sup>, and myn<sup>3</sup> horse and myn<sup>3</sup>  
 herneys, and aH myn<sup>3</sup> armure, and bicomē a begger.” þo ansuerede  
 Theobalde of Peuenes,<sup>4</sup> þat was þe Kyngus Archir<sup>5</sup>, “ Now God  
 me so helpe, hit is for nouzt þat þow spekte ; for alle þe golde of  
 8 Engeland y wolde <sup>5</sup>nouzt lete þe<sup>5</sup> gone<sup>6</sup> with-out commaundement  
 of Kyng Edward.” And þo was he lade to þe Kyng<sup>7</sup> ; but<sup>8</sup> þe  
 Kyng wolde nouzt <sup>9</sup>see him, but commaundede <sup>10</sup>him to ben ledde<sup>10</sup>  
 away to haue his dome at<sup>11</sup> Londoñ. In oure Ladies Eve, þe<sup>12</sup>  
 12 Natiuitie, he was hongede<sup>13</sup> and drawe, & his<sup>14</sup> <sup>15</sup>heuede smyten<sup>15</sup>  
 of, and hongede aȝein wiþ cheynes of yren oppoñ þe Galwes ; &  
 his heuede<sup>16</sup> was sette<sup>12</sup> oppoñ Londoñ Brugge vppoñ a spere ; and  
 aȝeys Cristenmasse<sup>17</sup> þe body was brent, for enchesouñ þat þe men  
 16 þat kepte þe body by nyght, saw meny deueles raumpande wiþ  
 yren crokes rynnynge oppoñ þe galwes, and horribliche turmentede  
 þe body ; and meny þat ham sawe, anone after þai deide for drede,  
 or woxen made, or sore sikenesse þai had. ¶ And in þat bataile  
 20 was taken<sup>18</sup> þe Bisshop of Glascowe,<sup>19</sup> þe Bisshope of Seynt  
 Andrewes,<sup>20</sup> þe Abbot of Scone, aH armede wiþ yren as men of  
 Armes, &<sup>21</sup> false traitoures and false prelatis aȝeys her<sup>2</sup> oth ; and  
 þai were brouzt to þe Kyng<sup>7</sup>, and þe Kyng sent ham to þe Pope of  
 24 Rome, þat he shulde done<sup>22</sup> wiþ ham what his wille were.

How Iohn, Erl of Atheles, was take, & put to<sup>23</sup> dep. *Capitulo*  
 ¶ *Centesimo Ottogesimo secundo.*

28 **A** Nd at þat bataile fledde<sup>24</sup> Sire Iohn <sup>25</sup>Erl of Ateles,<sup>25</sup> and went  
 into a cherche, & þere huddle<sup>26</sup> him for drede. But he miȝt  
 haue þere no refute, for enchesouñ þat þe cherche was enterditede  
 prouz a general sentence ; and in þe same cherche he was take.<sup>27</sup>  
 ¶ And þis Sir Iohn wende wel haue scapede fram<sup>28</sup> þe deth, for  
 32 enchesouñ þat he cleymede kynrede of Kyng<sup>7</sup> Edward. And

<sup>1</sup> to D. vnto O.<sup>2</sup> Mark O.<sup>3</sup> my O.<sup>4</sup> MS. has Peueneseye, with eye underlined for omission.<sup>5-5</sup> þe not lete O.<sup>6</sup> go DO.<sup>7</sup> om. O.<sup>8</sup> and DO.<sup>9</sup> leaf 114, back.<sup>10-10</sup> to lede him D.<sup>11</sup> to lede hym O.<sup>12</sup> to O.<sup>13</sup> om. D.<sup>14</sup> honge O.<sup>15</sup> h sic D.<sup>16-16</sup> heul smyte O.<sup>17</sup> heed O.<sup>18</sup> Cristemasse O.<sup>19</sup> take O.<sup>20</sup> Bastou DO.<sup>21</sup> Andrewes and D. Andrews and O.<sup>22</sup> as O.<sup>23</sup> do D.<sup>24</sup> to þe D.<sup>25</sup> fley D.<sup>26</sup> fley O.<sup>27-27</sup> of Atheles Erle O.<sup>28</sup> hid O.<sup>29</sup> taken D.<sup>30</sup> fro D.

<sup>1</sup> Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edward wolde<sup>1</sup> no longer <sup>2</sup> bene taried<sup>2</sup> of his traitoures, and sent him to Londoñ in haste; & pere he <sup>3</sup> was<sup>4</sup> Hongede, and his <sup>5</sup> Heuede smyten<sup>6</sup> of, and his body brent<sup>7</sup> al into smal<sup>7</sup> asshes. ¶ But at pe prayer<sup>1</sup> of pe<sup>8</sup> Quene Margarete, for 4 enchesouñ þat he cleymede<sup>9</sup> of Kyng Edward kynrede,<sup>9</sup> his drawyng<sup>10</sup> was forȝeuen him.<sup>10</sup>

How Iohn, þat was <sup>11</sup> William Waleys broþer,<sup>11</sup> was put to pe<sup>12</sup> dep. *Capitulo Centesimo iij iij<sup>o</sup>.* 8

**W**Hen pe gretteste maistres of Scotland<sup>13</sup> were pus<sup>13</sup> done to euel depe, & shent for her falsenesse, Iohn, þat was William Waleys broþer, was tak<sup>14</sup> as Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn, Erl of Atheles, was.

How Robert pe Brus <sup>15</sup> flei fro<sup>15</sup> Scotland to<sup>16</sup> Norwaye. *Capit- 12*  
*tulo Centesimo ottogesimo iij<sup>to</sup>.*

**A**Nd at<sup>17</sup> þat same tyme, was Robert pe Brus miche hatrede amouges<sup>18</sup> pe peple of Scotland<sup>13</sup>; so he<sup>19</sup> wist nouȝt what to<sup>20</sup> doñ; and forto hide<sup>21</sup> him, he went into Norway, to pe Kyng þat <sup>16</sup> had spousede his sustre, and pere helde him, socour<sup>22</sup> forto haue. ¶ And when Robert pe Brus might nouȝt <sup>23</sup> bene founde<sup>23</sup> in Scotland<sup>13</sup>, Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edward þo lette crye his pees prouȝ<sup>24</sup> al pe land<sup>13</sup>, & his were vsede, and his ministres seruēde prouȝ-out al<sup>17</sup> pe land<sup>13</sup>. 20

How Kyng Edward deide. *Capitulo Centesimo Ottogesimo quinto.*

**W**Hen Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edward hade abatede his enemys, he turnede aȝeyn Southward, and a maladye toke him at Burgh op<sup>25</sup> <sup>24</sup> Sande, in pe Marche of Scotland<sup>13</sup>. And he wiste wel þat his dep was ful neyȝ, and callede to him Sir<sup>1</sup> Henry pe Lacy, Erl of Lyncoln,<sup>26</sup> Sir<sup>1</sup> Gy, Erl of Warrwyk, Sir<sup>1</sup> Ayme<sup>1</sup> Valence, Erl of Penbrok<sup>1</sup>, and Sir<sup>1</sup> Robert of Clifford, barouñ, and prayede ham, <sup>28</sup> oppoñ pe faiȝe<sup>27</sup> þat þai to him owedē, þat þai shulde make Edward

<sup>1-1</sup> the kyng<sup>t</sup> nolde D. pe kyng nold O.

<sup>2-2</sup> be trayede D. be taryed<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>3</sup> leaf 115. <sup>4</sup> shulde ben D.

<sup>5</sup> pe D. <sup>6-6</sup> heed smyte O. <sup>7-7</sup> alto DO. <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9-9</sup> kyured of Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edward D. <sup>10-10</sup> forȝeue hym was O.

<sup>11-11</sup> Williamus broþer Waleys D. <sup>12</sup> om. DO. <sup>13-13</sup> þus were D.

<sup>14</sup> tak and done to deth D. take & done to deth O.

<sup>15-15</sup> fledde fram D. <sup>16</sup> in-to O. <sup>17</sup> om. D. <sup>18</sup> among O.

<sup>19</sup> h sic D. <sup>20</sup> forto O. <sup>21</sup> abyde O.

<sup>22</sup> socoure al D. socour al O. <sup>23-23</sup> be fonden D. be founde O

<sup>24</sup> prouȝ-out<sup>1</sup> D. þurgh-owt O. <sup>25</sup> oppoñ D. vpon O.

<sup>26</sup> Nichol D. Nichole O. <sup>27</sup> fay O.

<sup>1</sup>of Carnaryuan, Kyng<sup>r</sup> of Engeland<sup>r</sup>, his sone, as raþe as þai myght; ¶ and þat þai shulde nought suffre Piers of Gauastoñ come aȝeyn into Engeland forto make his sone vse ryaute. And þai  
<sup>4</sup>grantede him wiþ god wille; and þe Kyng toke his sacrament<sup>3</sup> of holy cherche, as a gode Cristen man shulde, and deide in Verray repentaunce. ¶ & when he hade bene<sup>2</sup> Kyng<sup>r</sup> ly ȝer<sup>r</sup>, he deide, & was buried at Westminster wiþ miche solempnite: oppoñ whos  
<sup>8</sup>soule, God haue mercy!

Of Merlynus<sup>3</sup> prophecies, þat were<sup>3</sup> declarede of Kyng<sup>r</sup> Edward, þat was Kyng<sup>r</sup> <sup>xx</sup>Henries sone. Capitulo Centesimo iijij vj<sup>to</sup>.

<sup>12</sup> **A**Nd of þis Kyng<sup>r</sup> Edward,<sup>5</sup> propheciede Merlyn, and callede him a dragon, þe secunde kyng<sup>r</sup> of þe vj laste kynges þat shulde bene<sup>6</sup> forto regne in Engeland; and saide þat 'he shulde  
<sup>7</sup>ben mellede<sup>7</sup> wiþ mercy & also wiþ sternesse, þat shulde kepe Engeland<sup>r</sup> fram<sup>8</sup> colde and fram<sup>8</sup> hete; and þat he shulde oppen  
<sup>16</sup>his mouþe toward Walys, and þat he shulde sette his on<sup>9</sup> foot in Wyk, and þat he shulde closen<sup>10</sup> wiþ Wallis, þat shulde do<sup>11</sup> miche harme to his seed<sup>r</sup>; and he saide soþ, for þe gode Kyng Edward was medled<sup>12</sup> wiþ mercy & with fersnesse; wiþ mercy aȝeyns his  
<sup>20</sup>enemys of Walis, & after of Scotland<sup>r</sup>; wiþ fersnesse, when he put ham to the<sup>13</sup> deth for her<sup>r</sup> falsnesse & traiteri, as þai had diserued hit<sup>4</sup>; And wel kepte he Engeland<sup>r</sup> fram<sup>14</sup> colde and fram<sup>14</sup> hete, siþ he kepte hit fram alle maner enemys þat ronne oppoñ  
<sup>24</sup>him to done him eny<sup>15</sup> harme or<sup>15</sup> wronge. ¶ And wel openede he his mouþ toward Walys, and made hit<sup>16</sup> quake þrouȝ þe hidour of his mouthe, When he conquerede hit þrouȝ dent of suerd; for þe Prynce Lewelyn, and <sup>17</sup><sup>18</sup>his broþer<sup>18</sup> Dauid<sup>13</sup> Rys and Morgan,  
<sup>28</sup>wer<sup>r</sup> put vnto<sup>19</sup> dep for her<sup>r</sup> falsnesse and her<sup>r</sup> folie. ¶ And he sette his one<sup>9</sup> foot in Wik, and conquered Berwik<sup>r</sup>; at þe whiche conquest was<sup>20</sup> slayn xxv M<sup>r</sup> and vij C, out-take ham þat wer<sup>r</sup> brent in þe Rede Halle; and þe wallis þat he lete make shulde<sup>21</sup>  
<sup>32</sup>ben<sup>6</sup> noious<sup>22</sup> to his<sup>22</sup> seede, as men shal hure after<sup>r</sup> in þe lif<sup>23</sup> of Sire Edward<sup>24</sup> his sone.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 115, back.    <sup>2</sup> be O.    <sup>3-3</sup> propheeye O.    <sup>4</sup> om. O.  
<sup>5</sup> om. D.    <sup>6</sup> be DO.    <sup>7-7</sup> be medlede D.    be melled O.    <sup>8</sup> fro DO.  
<sup>9</sup> o O.    <sup>10</sup> close D.    <sup>11</sup> doñ DO.    <sup>12</sup> melled O.    <sup>13</sup> om. DO.  
<sup>14</sup> fro O.    <sup>15-15</sup> om. DO.    harme o R.    <sup>16</sup> leaf 116.  
<sup>17</sup> & Dauid DO.    <sup>18-18</sup> MS. has his broþer his broþer.  
<sup>19</sup> vnto the D.    vnto þe O.    <sup>20</sup> were DO.    <sup>21</sup> shal O.  
<sup>22-22</sup> vnto þe O.    <sup>23</sup> MS. lip.  
<sup>24</sup> Edward of Capiarifan D.    Edward<sup>r</sup> of Carnerifan O.

¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, þat 'he shulde make Ryuer rynne in<sup>1</sup> bloode and wiþ brayn': and þat semede wel in his werres, þere þat he hade þe maistry. ¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn: þat 'þere shulde come a peple out of þe northwest, duryng<sup>1</sup> þe regne of 4 þe forsaide dragoun, þat <sup>2</sup>shulde bene<sup>2</sup> lad be an euel<sup>3</sup> grehounde, þat shulde<sup>4</sup> þe dragoun croune Kyng, þat aftirward shulde<sup>4</sup> flee ouer<sup>5</sup> þe see <sup>5</sup>wiþout comyng a3eyn,<sup>5</sup> for drede of þe dragoun<sup>6</sup>: and þat was prouede by Sir Iohn Baloil, þat Kyng Edward made 8 forto<sup>7</sup> bene<sup>8</sup> Kyng of Scotland, þat falsely<sup>9</sup> aroos a3eynnes him; and after, he fledde to his owen landes in<sup>10</sup> Fraunce, and neuer come a3eyne into Scotland for drede of King Edward. ¶ And 3itte said Merlyn, 'þat þe peple þat shulde lede þe forsaide 12 grewhonde shulde bene<sup>11</sup> faderles vnto<sup>12</sup> a certein tyme': & he saide soth, ffor þe peple of Scotland gretliche wer' disessed sith þat sir Iohn Baloil, her' Kyng, fley fro<sup>13</sup> Scotland.

¶ And 3itte saide Merlyn, 'þat þe sone shulde bicom in his 16 tyme as rede as <sup>14</sup>eny blode, in tokening<sup>15</sup> of grete mortalite of dep of peple': and þat was<sup>16</sup> wel knowen when þe Scottes was<sup>17</sup> slayne. ¶ And sip saide Merlyn, 'þat þilk dragoun shulde norisshe a fox þat shulde meve<sup>18</sup> werr' a3eynes him, <sup>19</sup>þat <sup>20</sup>in his tyme shulde 20 nouzt bene<sup>20</sup> endede': and þat semede wel by Robert þe Brus, þat Kyng Edward norisshe<sup>21</sup> in his chambre, þat sipennes<sup>22</sup> stale away, and mevede grete werr' a3eynes him<sup>19</sup>; whiche wer' was nouzt endede in his tyme. ¶ And afterward, Merlyn tolde þat 'þis 24 dragoun shulde <sup>23</sup>ben holde<sup>23</sup> þe best body of al þe world': and he saide soþ, ffor þe gode Kyng Edward was þe worthiest knyght of al þe worlde in his tyme.

¶ And 3it saide Merlyn þat 'þe dragoun shulde dye in þe 28 marche of anoþer land, and þat his londe shulde be longe <sup>24</sup>wiþouten a<sup>24</sup> gode keper, and þat men shulde wepe for his deth, fram þe yle of Sheepe vnto þe Ile of Marcyll, wher<sup>25</sup> (allas!) shal<sup>26</sup> be<sup>27</sup> her' commune songe amonge peple faderles, in þe lande wastede': and 32

<sup>1</sup> with O.    <sup>2-2</sup> shal be D.    schulþ be O.    <sup>3</sup> yle O.    <sup>4</sup> shal D.

<sup>5-5</sup> om. DO.

<sup>6</sup> dragoun with-oute comyng a3eyne D.    dragon with-oute comyng a3en O.

<sup>7</sup> to D.    <sup>8</sup> be O.    <sup>9</sup> falseliche D.    <sup>10</sup> of D.    <sup>11</sup> be D.

<sup>12</sup> vntil O.    <sup>13</sup> fram ham oute of D.    <sup>14</sup> leaf 116, back.    <sup>15</sup> of þe O.

<sup>16</sup> om. O.    <sup>17</sup> were DO.    <sup>18</sup> meve grete D.    mene gret O.

<sup>19-19</sup> om. D.    <sup>20-20</sup> schulþ not in his tyme be O.    <sup>21</sup> norissshed O.

<sup>22</sup> sethen O.    <sup>23-23</sup> be D.    be holde O.

<sup>24-24</sup> without eny D.    withoute eny O.    <sup>25</sup> wherfore DO.

<sup>26</sup> shulde D.    schulþ O.    <sup>27</sup> ben O.



þat <sup>1</sup>prophecie was know oueral ful wel<sup>1</sup>; ffor þe goode Kyng Edward deide at Burgh op Sandes, þat is oppoñ<sup>2</sup> þe marche of Scotland; wherfore þe Englishe-men gretlich<sup>3</sup> were descomfitede<sup>4</sup> & gouernede in Northumberlond, ffor enchesouñ þat Kyng Edwardes sone sette by þe Scottes non<sup>5</sup> force, for þe<sup>6</sup> ryaute of Piers of Gauastoñ; wherfore (allas!) was þe songe þrouz-oute<sup>7</sup> Engeland for defaute of a gode warde; fram þe Ile of Sheepey vnto þe yle of Marcile, þe peple made miche<sup>8</sup> sorw for gode<sup>8</sup> Kyng Edwardes deth; ffor þai wende<sup>9</sup> þat<sup>10</sup> gode<sup>11</sup> Kyng Edward shulde haue goñ into<sup>12</sup> þe Holy Land; <sup>13</sup>for þat was holliche<sup>14</sup> his purpos: oppoñ whos soule, God of his<sup>8</sup> blisse haue mercy<sup>15</sup>!

12 Of Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes sone. Capitulo Centesimo Octogesimo Septimo.

**A**Nd after þis Kyng<sup>8</sup> Edward, regnede Edward his sone, þat was born in Carnaryvan, and<sup>16</sup> went into Fraunce,<sup>17</sup> and 16 spoused IsabeH, þe Kyngus douzter of Fraunce,<sup>17</sup> þe xxv day of Ianuer at þe cherche of our Lady of<sup>18</sup> Boloign, in þe 3er of our Lorde M<sup>r</sup> CCC vij. ¶ & þe xx day of Februer,<sup>19</sup> þe nexte 3er þat come after, he was cronede solempliche<sup>20</sup> at Westminster of þe 20 Erchebisschope Robert of Wynchelse,<sup>21</sup> of Kanterbery; and þere was so grete prees of peple þat Sir Iohn Bakwelle was deide and mordrede. ¶ And anone as þe gode Kyng Edward was dede, Sir Edward his sone, Kyng of Engeland, sent after Piers of Gauastoñ 24 into Gascoigne; and so miche louede him þat he callede him his 'broper'; and anone after he 3af him þe lordeshipp of Wallyngford; and hit was nouzt longe after þat he ne 3af him þe Erldome of Cornwaile, a3eynes alle þe lordes <sup>22</sup>wille of þe reaume.<sup>22</sup> ¶ And 28 þo brought he Sir Walter of Langetoñ, Bisshop of Chestre, into prisouñ, into the Toure of Londoñ, with ij knafes allone him to<sup>23</sup> serue, for enchesouñ þat<sup>24</sup> þe Kyng was wroþ with him, for cause þat Sir Wa[l]ter made pleint<sup>25</sup> vppoñ him to his fader; wherfore 32 he was put into<sup>26</sup> prisouñ in þe tyme of trailbastoñ.

<sup>1-1</sup> prophecied Merlyn which was wel knowe oueral O. <sup>2</sup> in D.

<sup>3</sup> gretly O. <sup>4</sup> discomfitede D. dyscomfited dyscomfited sic O.

<sup>5</sup> no O. <sup>6</sup> om. D. <sup>7</sup> pronz-out al D. þurgh-out al O. <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9</sup> went O. <sup>10</sup> the D. þat þe O. <sup>11</sup> MS. gode Gode. <sup>12</sup> to D.

<sup>13</sup> leaf 117. <sup>14</sup> holy O. <sup>15</sup> mercy Amen O.

<sup>16</sup> and þis Edward DO. <sup>17-17</sup> om. O. <sup>18</sup> at O.

<sup>19</sup> fleucrer DO. <sup>20</sup> solemponly O. <sup>21</sup> Wynchestre O.

<sup>22-22</sup> willes of Engeland D. <sup>23</sup> forto DO. <sup>24</sup> om. DO.

<sup>25</sup> compleynt DO. <sup>26</sup> in D.

¶ And þis<sup>1</sup> Piers of Gauastoñ made so grete maistries, þat he went into þe Kyngus tresorie in þe Abbay of Westminster, and toke<sup>2</sup> þe table of golde, <sup>3</sup>wip þe tresteles of þe same, and meny opere riche gewelles þat some tyme wer<sup>4</sup> þe noble<sup>4</sup> Kyng Arthures, <sup>4</sup>and toke ham to a marchant þat me clepede<sup>5</sup> Aymery of Friscombande, for he shulde bere ham ouer<sup>6</sup> þe see into Gascoigne: and þai come neuer<sup>7</sup> azeine after; wherfore hit was<sup>6</sup> grete losse vnto<sup>7</sup> þis land<sup>8</sup>.

¶ And when þis Piers was so ryhely anauncede, he bicom so proude and so stout, wherof alle þe grete lordes of þe reaume had him in despite for his grete beryng<sup>1</sup>. Wherfore<sup>8</sup> Sir<sup>9</sup> Henry þe<sup>9</sup> Lacy, Erl of Lyncoln,<sup>10</sup> and Sir<sup>9</sup> Guy Erl of Warrwyk (þe whiche <sup>12</sup>gode lordes þe gode Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward chargede, þat Piers of Gauastoñ shulde nouzt come into Engeland<sup>1</sup> forto brynge his sone into ryot), ¶ And alle þe lordes of Engeland<sup>1</sup>, assemblede ham<sup>9</sup> at a certeyn day at þe<sup>11</sup> Frere Prihoures of<sup>12</sup> London, and speken<sup>13</sup> of þe<sup>14</sup> dis- <sup>16</sup>honour þat þe Kyng dede to<sup>15</sup> his reaume and to his crone. and so þai assemblede<sup>16</sup> alle, bope Erles, baroñs<sup>17</sup> and communes, þat þe forsaide Piers of Gauastoñ shulde ben<sup>18</sup> exilede out<sup>19</sup> of Engeland<sup>1</sup>. And so hit was done; for he forsuore Engeland<sup>1</sup>, and went into <sup>20</sup>Irland<sup>1</sup>; and þere þe Kyng made him chiefteyn and Gouvernour<sup>1</sup> of þe lande <sup>20</sup>by his commissiouñ; and þere þis Piers was chefteyn of al þe land<sup>20</sup>, and dede þere aþ þat him liked, and had þere al<sup>9</sup> what he wolde. ¶ And <sup>21</sup>þat tyme were þe templeres exilede prouz al <sup>24</sup>cristendome,<sup>22</sup> ffor enchesouñ þat men put oppoñ ham þat þai shulde done <sup>23</sup>þing þat was<sup>24</sup> azeynes þe faip<sup>25</sup> and gode bileue. ¶ Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward louede Piers of Gauastoñ so miche <sup>26</sup>þat he might nouzt forlete his company; and so miche þe Kyng 3af and bihight <sup>28</sup>to þe peple of Engeland<sup>1</sup>, þat þe exiling of þe forsaide Piers shulde bene<sup>27</sup> reukede at Staunford<sup>1</sup>, prouz ham þat <sup>28</sup>him hade<sup>28</sup> exilede. ¶ Wherfore Piers of Gauastoñ come azeine into Engeland<sup>1</sup>; and when he was comen<sup>29</sup> azein into þis lande, he despisede þe grettest <sup>32</sup>lordes of þis lande, and callede Sir<sup>30</sup> Robert<sup>30</sup> Clare Erl of Gloucestre,

<sup>1</sup> the forsaide D. þe forsayd<sup>1</sup> O.      <sup>2</sup> nome DO.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 117, back.

<sup>4</sup> gode D.      <sup>5</sup> Called O.      <sup>6</sup> was a D.

<sup>7</sup> in-to O.      <sup>8</sup> wherof D.      <sup>9</sup> om. DO.      <sup>10</sup> Nichole DO.

<sup>11</sup> om. O.      <sup>12</sup> at O.      <sup>13</sup> spekt<sup>1</sup> D.

<sup>14</sup> MS. þe þe.      <sup>15</sup> vnto O.      <sup>16</sup> assentede DO.

<sup>17</sup> om. D. & baroñs O.      <sup>18</sup> be O.      <sup>19</sup> om. D.      <sup>20—20</sup> om. O.

<sup>21</sup> And in O.      <sup>22</sup> cristiente DO.      <sup>23</sup> do O.

<sup>24—24</sup> þinges D.      þing<sup>1</sup> O.      <sup>25</sup> fey O.      <sup>26</sup> leaf 118.      <sup>27</sup> be D.

<sup>28—28</sup> had hym O.      <sup>29</sup> come O.      <sup>30</sup> Robert of DO.

‘Horessone,’ and þe Erl of Lynecoln,<sup>1</sup> Sir Henry þe<sup>2</sup> Lacy, ‘Broste bely,’ and Sir Guy Erl of Warrwyk, ‘blanke<sup>3</sup> hounde of Arderne.’ And also he callede þe noble Erl and gentil, Thomas of Lancastre, 4 ‘Cherl,’ and meny<sup>4</sup> othere<sup>5</sup> shames and scorn<sup>4</sup> <sup>6</sup>ham saide, & by meny opere<sup>6</sup> grete lordes of Engeland, wherfore pai were towards<sup>7</sup> him ful angri and sore annoiede.

¶ And<sup>8</sup> in þe<sup>9</sup> same tyme deide þe Erl of Lyncoln<sup>10</sup>; but he 8 charged, or he was dede, Thomas of Lancastre, erl, pat was his sone-in-lawe, pat he shulde mayntene his quereH azeyns þe same Piers of Gauaston, oppon his benison. ¶ And so hit was ordeynede, prou<sup>3</sup><sup>11</sup> helpe of þe Erle of Lancast<sup>r</sup> and of þe Erl of Warrwyk, 12 pat þe forsaide<sup>12</sup> Piers was biheuedede<sup>13</sup> at Gauersiche bisides Warwik, þe xix day of<sup>14</sup> Iun,<sup>15</sup> in þe 3ere of grace<sup>16</sup> M<sup>t</sup> CCC &<sup>17</sup> xij; wherfore þe Kyng was sore annoiede, and prayede God pat he might<sup>18</sup> see pat day to bene avengede of<sup>19</sup> þe dep of þe forsaide 16 Piers. ¶ And so hit bifelle aftirward, as 3e shul hure,—allas þe tyme!—ffor þe forsaide Erl of Lancastre & meny opere<sup>20</sup> <sup>21</sup>grete baroun,<sup>22</sup> wer<sup>r</sup> put to pitouse dep, and martrede, for enchesoun of þe forsaide quereH.

20 ¶ The Kyng was po at London, and helde a parlement, and ordeynede þe lawes of Sir Symon Mountford; wherfor the Erl of Lancastre, and alle þe Erles & aH þe clergie of Engeland, maden an oth, prou<sup>3</sup> conseile of Robert of Wynchelse, forto maintene þe 24 ordenaunces<sup>23</sup> for euer more.

**How Robert þe Brus come azeyne into Scotlan, and Gaderede a grete power of men forto werr<sup>r</sup> oppon Kyng Edward.**

¶ **Capitulo ¶ Centesimo Ottogesimo viij<sup>o</sup>.**

28 **A**Nd when Sir Robert þe Brus, pat made him Kyng of Scotland, pat was fledde into Normandy<sup>24</sup> for drede of dep of þe<sup>2</sup> goode Kyng Edward, and herd of þe debate pat was in Enge-

<sup>1</sup> Nichol D. Nichole O.      <sup>2</sup> om. D.      <sup>3</sup> blac D. Blake O.

<sup>4</sup>—<sup>4</sup> other scornes and shame D.    <sup>oper</sup> scornes & schame O.

<sup>5</sup> MS. ouere.      <sup>6</sup>—<sup>6</sup> & seyde by oper meny O.      <sup>7</sup> toward O.

<sup>8</sup> MS. has in the margin, in same hand: Obijt Henricus Comes Lincoln.

<sup>9</sup> that D. om. O.      <sup>10</sup> Nichole DO.      <sup>11</sup> þurgh þe O.

<sup>12</sup> forseid sir O.      <sup>13</sup> beheded O.

<sup>14</sup> MS. has of Ianuer, with Ianuer underlined for omission.

<sup>15</sup> Ianuer D.      <sup>16</sup> grace a O.      <sup>17</sup> om. DO.

<sup>18</sup> most D.    <sup>19</sup> muste O.      <sup>19</sup> vpon O.      <sup>20</sup> Another O.

<sup>21</sup> leaf 118, back.      <sup>22</sup> barons D.

<sup>23</sup> ordenance D.      <sup>24</sup> Norway D. Norway O.

land bituene þe Kyng and his lordes, he ordeynede an hoste, and come into Engeland, into Northumberland, and clenly destroyed þe contreye. ¶ And when Kyng Edward herde þis tidynges,<sup>1</sup> he lete assemble<sup>2</sup> his host, and mette þe Scottis at Streuelyn,<sup>3</sup> in þe day of 4 þe<sup>4</sup> Natinite of Seint Iohn þe Baptiste, in þe vij<sup>4</sup> 3er<sup>4</sup> of his regne,<sup>5</sup> and in þe 3ere of our<sup>4</sup> Lorde<sup>6</sup> Ihesu Crist,<sup>6</sup> M<sup>+</sup> CCC &<sup>7</sup> xiiij. Allas þe sorw and losse þat þere was done! for þere was slayn, þe noble Erl Gilbert of Clare, Sire Robert of Clifford, a<sup>7</sup> baroun, and meny 8 opere; & of opere peple þat no man coup nombre; and þere Kyng Edward was scomfitede. And Sir<sup>4</sup> Edmund of Maule, þe<sup>8</sup> kynges stiward, for drede went and drenched him-self<sup>9</sup> in a fresshe ryuer þat is callede Bannokesbourn; þefore<sup>10</sup> 11 þe Scottes 12 saide, in reprofe and despite of Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edward, foralsemiche<sup>12</sup> as he louede forto go<sup>13</sup> by watere, and also for he was descomfitede at Bannokesbour[n], þefore maidenes made a songe þerof,<sup>14</sup> in þat contre, of Kyng Edward of Engeland<sup>14</sup> and in þis maner<sup>4</sup> pai 16 songe<sup>15</sup> :—

¶ Maydenes of Engelande, sare may 3e morne,  
For tynt 3e haue [lost]<sup>16</sup> 3oure lemmans at Bannokesborn  
wip hevalogh. 20  
¶ What wende þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> of Engeland haue ygete<sup>17</sup> Scotlande  
wip Rombylogh.

When Kyng Edward was descomfitede, he was wonder<sup>4</sup> sory, and faste<sup>18</sup> fledde wip his folc<sup>4</sup> þat was lafte alif,<sup>19</sup> and went 24 to Berwik, and þere helde him. ¶ And after, he toke hostages, þat is to seyne,<sup>20</sup> vij childerne, of þe rychest<sup>4</sup> of þe touñ; and þe Kyng went to London, and toke<sup>21</sup> conseile of þinges þat were nedeful vnto þe reaume of Engeland. 28

¶ And in þe same tyme hit bifelle þat þere was in Engeland a rybaude þat men<sup>22</sup> callede Iohn Tanner; and he went and saide þat he was þe goode Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edwardus sone, and lete him calle ‘Edward of Carnaruan’; and þefore he was take<sup>23</sup> at Oxenford, 32 and þere<sup>24</sup> chalangede þe frere Carmes chirche þat Kyng Edward hade 3ene<sup>25</sup> ham, þe whiche cherech<sup>26</sup> some tyme was<sup>4</sup> þe Kyngus

<sup>1</sup> tydyng O.    <sup>2—2</sup> assemblede D.    <sup>3</sup> Estreuelyn D.    Estruyelyn O.

<sup>4</sup> om. O.    <sup>5</sup> regne vij O.    <sup>6—6</sup> om. O.    <sup>7</sup> om. DO.

<sup>8</sup> þe DO.    for þe R.    <sup>9</sup> him D.    hym O.    <sup>10</sup> wherfore DO.

<sup>11</sup> leaf 119.    <sup>12</sup> forasmyche O.    <sup>13</sup> gone D.    om. O.    <sup>14—14</sup> om. D.

<sup>15</sup> saiden D.    <sup>16</sup> om. D.    <sup>17</sup> gete DO.

<sup>18</sup> MS. faste faste, with second faste underlined for omission.

<sup>19</sup> on hif D.    <sup>20</sup> weten D.    wete O.    <sup>21</sup> to sic D.    nome O.

<sup>22</sup> me DO.    <sup>23</sup> taken DO.    <sup>24</sup> þere he DO.    <sup>25</sup> youe O.

<sup>26</sup> Cherche was O.

Halle. ¶ And afterwarde was þis Iohn ladde to Northampton, and<sup>1</sup> draw, and þere<sup>2</sup> hongede for his falsnesse. and er<sup>3</sup> þat he was dede, he confessede,<sup>3</sup> and saide bifore al þe fole, þat ‘þe deuēl  
4 bihighte him þat he shulde be Kyng<sup>4</sup> of Engeland’; and þat ‘he hade seruede þe deuēl iij zere.’

How þe touñ of Berwik was taken<sup>4</sup> prouȝ treson; & how ij Cardynales wer<sup>5</sup> robbet in Engeland. *Capitulo Centesimo*

8 <sup>xx</sup>iiij ix<sup>o</sup>.

<sup>5</sup> **A** Nd in myd Lenton<sup>6</sup> Sonday in þe zere of our Lord Ihesu Crist M<sup>4</sup> CCC xvj, Berwik was loste, prouȝ false tresoun of on, Piers of Spaldyng<sup>7</sup>; þe whiche Piers, þe Kyng<sup>8</sup> had put þere  
12 forto kepe þe<sup>7</sup> same toune wiþ<sup>8</sup> meny burgeys of þe<sup>9</sup> touñ. ¶ Wherefore þe childerne þat were put in hostages<sup>10</sup> prouȝ þe burgeys of Berwik,<sup>11</sup> folwede þe Kyngus Marchalcie meny daye,<sup>12</sup> fetrede in stronge yrenes.

16 ¶ And after<sup>1</sup> þat tyme þere come ij Cardinales into Engeland, as þe Pope hade ham sende forto mak pees bituene Scotland and Engeland. and as þai went toward Duresme forto haue sacrede maistre Lowys of Beaumont, Bisshop of Duresme; and as þai went,  
20 þai were taken<sup>4</sup> and robbet oppon þe more of Wiglesdon<sup>13</sup>; of whiche robrye, Sir<sup>1</sup> Gilbert of Midelton was atteint, and take,<sup>14</sup> and hongede & drawe<sup>15</sup> at London, and his<sup>16</sup> heuede smyten<sup>16</sup> of, and his bowales taken out of his body, and brent, & his body quar-  
24 tared, and his heuede<sup>17</sup> <sup>18</sup>smyten of, and<sup>18</sup> sette oppon a spere, and sette oppon Newegate; and þe iiij quarters sent to iiij citees of Engeland.

¶ And þat same tyme bifelle meny meschyues in Engeland; for  
28 þe pore<sup>2</sup> peple deide in Engeland for hunger; and so miche and<sup>19</sup> so faste folc deiden, <sup>20</sup>þat vnnepes<sup>20</sup> men m[i]ght ham bury; for a quarter of<sup>2</sup> whete was worþe xls., and ij zere and an halfe a quarter of<sup>21</sup> whete<sup>19</sup> was worþe <sup>22</sup>ij marȝ<sup>22</sup>; and ofte-tymes þe pore

<sup>1</sup> and þere was D.    <sup>2</sup> *om.* D.    <sup>3</sup> confessede him D.    <sup>4</sup> take O.

<sup>5</sup> *leaf 119, back.*    <sup>6</sup> lentes D.    lent O.    <sup>7</sup> þat O.

<sup>8</sup> *MS. has wiþ me- with me- underlined for omission.*    <sup>9</sup> þe same D.

<sup>10</sup> *MS. hostages prouȝ prouȝ, with first prouȝ underlined for omission;* hostage DO.

<sup>11</sup> Berwyk<sup>1</sup> and þe burgeys of Berwik D. Berwyk<sup>1</sup> and þe<sup>6</sup> Burgeys of Berwyk<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>12</sup> dayes DO.    <sup>13</sup> Wyngelston D. Wyngelordonne O.    <sup>14</sup> taken DO.

<sup>15</sup> drawen DO.    <sup>16—16</sup> heed smyte O.    <sup>17</sup> heed O.    <sup>18—18</sup> *om.* DO.

<sup>19</sup> *om.* O.    <sup>20—20</sup> þan vnnepe O.    <sup>21</sup> *om.* DO.

<sup>22—22</sup> xxvj s. viij d.    ij marȝ O.

peple stale childern and ete ham, and ete also alle<sup>1</sup> þe houndes þat þai might take, and ek Horse & cattes; and after, þere felle a grete <sup>2</sup>pestilence amonges<sup>3</sup> bestes in diuerse contrees of Engeland duryng Kyng Edwardes lif.

4

**How þe Scottes robbede Northumberland. Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo.**

**A**Nd in þe same tyme <sup>4</sup>come þe<sup>4</sup> Scottes aȝeyne into Engeland,<sup>5</sup> and destroiede Northumberland,<sup>6</sup> and brent þat lande, & <sup>8</sup>robbet hit,<sup>6</sup> and quelled men and wymmen, & childern þat laye<sup>7</sup> in cradeH, and brent also holy cherche, and destroiede Cristendome, and <sup>8</sup>toke &<sup>8</sup> bare away Englysshe-mennes godes, as þai hade bene<sup>9</sup> Sarasins or paynemes. and of þe wickednesse þat þai <sup>12</sup>deden,<sup>10</sup> aH þe worlde spake þerof, þrouȝ al Cristendome.

**How þe Scottes wolde nouȝt amende her' trespasse; and þefore Scotland was enterditede. ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo primo.**

16

**A**Nd when<sup>11</sup> Pope<sup>12</sup> Iohn, þe xxij after seynt Petre, herde of þe grete sorwe and meschief þat þe Scottes wrought, he was wonder' sory þat Cristendome was so destroiede þrouȝ þe Scottes, and nameliche<sup>13</sup> for þai destroiede so holy cherche; Wherefore þe <sup>20</sup>Pope<sup>14</sup> sent a general sentence, vnder' his bullis of leade, vnto þe Erchebisshope of Kaunterbery, and to þe Erchebisshope of ȝork', þat 'if Robert þe Brus of Scotland wolde nouȝt be iustifiede, and make amendes vnto<sup>15</sup> kyng <sup>16</sup>Edward of Engeland,<sup>16</sup> his<sup>17</sup> lorde, & <sup>24</sup>make amendes of his losse, and his harmes þat þai hade done in Engeland, and also to restore þe godes þat þai hade<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup>take out of<sup>19</sup> holy chereh, þat þe sentence shulde be pronouncede þrouȝ aH Engeland. ¶ And when þe Scottes herde þis, þai wolde nouȝt <sup>28</sup><sup>20</sup> <sup>21</sup>cesse of<sup>21</sup> her' malice for þe Popes<sup>22</sup> commaundement; Wherefor

<sup>1</sup> om. O.      <sup>2</sup> leaf 120.      <sup>3</sup> among O.      <sup>4-4</sup> comen D.

<sup>5</sup> Northumberland D.      <sup>6</sup> om. D.      <sup>7</sup> leyne D. leyn O.

<sup>8-8</sup> om. D.      <sup>9</sup> be O.      <sup>10</sup> dede DO.      <sup>11</sup> when the D.

<sup>12</sup> pope struck out, and bisshope written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>13</sup> namely O.

<sup>14</sup> pope struck out, and bisshope written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>15</sup> vnto the D.      vnto þe O.      <sup>16-16</sup> of Engeland Edward O.

<sup>17</sup> her DO.      <sup>18</sup> MS. hade m, with m underlined for omission.

<sup>19-19</sup> taken in D.      take of O.      <sup>20</sup> leaf 120, back.

<sup>21-21</sup> leue D.      lette O.

<sup>22</sup> popes struck out, and bisshopis written over in a different hand in O

Robert þe<sup>1</sup> Brus, Iamys Douglas, and Thomas Randolf Erl of Morref, and alle þo þat wiþ ham communede, or ham halp in worde or in<sup>2</sup> dede, were accursed<sup>3</sup> þrouȝ euery cherche þrouȝ<sup>3</sup> Engeland, 4 euery [day] at masse iij tymes; and no masse shulde be songen<sup>4</sup> in holy cherche þrouȝ-out<sup>5</sup> al Scotland, but if þe Scottis wolde make restitucioñ of þe harmes þat þai hade made vnto<sup>6</sup> holy cherche. Wherefore meny a gode preste and holy man,<sup>7</sup> þerfore were slayn 8 þrouȝ al<sup>8</sup> þe reme of Scotland, for enchesoun þat þai wolde singe no masse aȝeynes þe Popes<sup>9</sup> commaundement and aȝeynes his wille, and to done and fulfille þe tirauntȝ<sup>10</sup> wille.

How Sir Hughe, þe Spenseres sone, was<sup>2</sup> made þe Kyngus  
12 Chamberleyn; and of þe bataile of Mitoñ. *Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo secundo.*

And hit was nouȝt longe afterward, þat þe Kyng ne ordeynede 1 A a parlement at Ȝork; and þere was Sir Hugh, þe Spensereȝ<sup>11</sup> 16 sone, made Chamberleyn. And in þe mene-tyme, while þe werr<sup>1</sup> last, the Kyng went aȝeyne into Scotland, þat hit was wonder forto wete, and bisegede þe touñ of Berwik; but þe Scottes went ouer þe water of Solewath, þat was iij mile fram þe Kyngus host, 20 and priuely<sup>12</sup> þai stele awaye by nyght, and comen<sup>13</sup> into Engeland, and robbed and destroyed<sup>14</sup> al þat þai myght, and spared no maner þing<sup>1</sup> til þat þai comen to<sup>15</sup> Ȝork. And when þe Englysshe-men þat were lafte at<sup>16</sup> home Wist<sup>17</sup> of pis þing, alle þo þat might 24 trauaile—as wel monkes and<sup>18</sup> prestes and ffreres & Chanouns and seculers,—and come and mette wiþ þe Scottes at Mitoñ op<sup>19</sup> Swale, þe xij day of Ottobre. Allas! what sorwe for þe Englysshe hosbonde-men þat coupe noping<sup>1</sup> in werr<sup>1</sup>, þere were quellede and 28 drenched<sup>20</sup> in<sup>21</sup> þe Ryner of Swale.<sup>21</sup> And her chyeteynes, Sir William of Meltoñ, Erchebisshoþ of Ȝork, & þe Abbot of Selby with her stedes,<sup>22</sup> fledde, & come vnto<sup>22</sup> Ȝork. And þat was her owen folie þat þai had þat meschaunce, for þai passede þe water of

<sup>1</sup> om. D.      <sup>2</sup> om. O.

<sup>3-3</sup> in euery cherche of D. in euery Cherche þurgh O.

<sup>4</sup> songe O.      <sup>5</sup> þrouȝ D.      <sup>6</sup> to D.      þurgh O.      <sup>7</sup> men DO.

<sup>8</sup> om. DO.

<sup>9</sup> popes struck out, and bisshoppis written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>10</sup> Traytours O.      <sup>11</sup> Spencer O.      <sup>12</sup> priulich D.      <sup>13</sup> come O.

<sup>14</sup> destruede D.      <sup>15</sup> vnto O.      <sup>16</sup> leaf 121.      <sup>17</sup> herde D.      herd O.

<sup>18</sup> as O.      <sup>19</sup> oppoñ D.      <sup>20</sup> dreynt O.

<sup>21-21</sup> an arme of the see D.      an arme of þe see O.

<sup>22-22</sup> fledden and comen to D.      fled & comen vnto O.

Swale; and þe Scottes sette in<sup>1</sup> fire iij stackes of hey; and þe smoke þerof was so huge þat<sup>2</sup> Engliſſhe-men myght nought see þe Scottes. ¶ And when þe Engliſſhe-men were gon ouer þe water, þo come<sup>3</sup> þe Scottes wiþ her<sup>4</sup> wenge,<sup>4</sup> in maner of a ſhelde, and come 4 toward<sup>5</sup> þe Engliſſhe-men in a rawe; and þe Engliſſhe-men fledde, for vnneþes<sup>5</sup> þai hade eny men<sup>6</sup> of Armes; for þe Kyng hade ham alle<sup>7</sup> almost loſte atte þe<sup>7</sup> ſege of Berwik<sup>1</sup>; and þe Scottes<sup>8</sup> hobilers went bituix<sup>9</sup> þe brigge & þe Engliſſhe-men. ¶ And when 8 þe grete hoſt<sup>10</sup> had þaim<sup>10</sup> mette, þe Engliſſhe-men fledde bituene þe hobilers and þe grete hoſt; and þe Engliſſhe-men almost alle<sup>7</sup> were þere ſlayn.<sup>11</sup> And<sup>12</sup> he þat might wende ouer þe water was ſauede; but meny were drenchede,<sup>12</sup> Allas, for<sup>13</sup> ſorwe! for<sup>13</sup> þere was<sup>14</sup> 12 ſlayne meny men of Religioun, and ſeculers, and ek preſtes and clerkes; and wiþ miche ſorw the Erchebiſſhop ſcapede; and þerfore þe Scottes callede hit<sup>15</sup> ‘the White Bataile.’

**How Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward dede aH maner<sup>16</sup> þing<sup>1</sup> as<sup>17</sup> Sire Hugh þe 16 Spenser<sup>17</sup> Wolde. Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo tercio.**

**A**Nd when Kyng Edward herde þis tydynges,<sup>18</sup> he remevede his ſege fram Berwik, & come aȝeyne into Engeland. But Sir Hugh þe Spenser<sup>1</sup>, þe ſone, þat was þe Kynges chaumberlein, kepte 20 ſo þe Kyngus chaumbre, þat no man might<sup>19</sup> ſpeke wiþ þe Kyng, but if<sup>20</sup> he made wiþ him a frett forto done his nede, & þat ouer<sup>1</sup> meſure. And þis Hugh bar<sup>1</sup> him ſo ſtoute, þat alle men hade of him ſcorn and deſpite; and þe kyng him-ſelf wolde nouȝt be<sup>21</sup> 24 gouernede<sup>22</sup> by no maner<sup>1</sup> man, but oneliche<sup>23</sup> by his fader<sup>1</sup> and by him. ¶ And yf eny knyght of Engeland<sup>1</sup> hade wodes, maneres, or lande, þat þai wolde couette, anone þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> moſte ȝeue it ham, or elles<sup>24</sup> þe man þat owede<sup>25</sup> hit<sup>26</sup> ſhulde faſely<sup>26</sup> be enditede of 28 fforfet<sup>27</sup> or of ffelonye; and prouȝ ſoche doynge<sup>28</sup> þai diſheritede meny a grete<sup>29</sup> bachiler<sup>1</sup>, and ſo meny landes<sup>30</sup> geten, þat hit was miche Wonder.

<sup>1</sup> on D. a O.    <sup>2</sup> þat þe D.    <sup>3</sup> Comen O.    <sup>4</sup> wynges D.

<sup>5</sup> vnneþe O.    <sup>6</sup> man O.    <sup>7</sup> om. O.    <sup>8</sup> Scottyſſh O.

<sup>9</sup> bituene D. between O.    <sup>10-10</sup> ham D. hem O.

<sup>11</sup> quelled D. y-quelled O.    <sup>12-12</sup> dreynt O.    <sup>13-13</sup> om. DO.

<sup>14</sup> were O.    <sup>15</sup> that bataile D. þat bataiH O.    <sup>16</sup> leaſ 121, back.

<sup>17-17</sup> þe Spencers O.    <sup>18</sup> tydyng O.    <sup>19</sup> muſt O.    <sup>20</sup> om. DO.

<sup>21</sup> ben O.    <sup>22</sup> gouerned ne reuled D. gouerned<sup>1</sup> ne rewled<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>23</sup> onely D. only O.    <sup>24</sup> eH O.    <sup>25</sup> ouȝt D. ought O.

<sup>26-26</sup> faſely ſhulde D.    <sup>27</sup> þe foreſt O.    <sup>28</sup> doynge D. doynge O.

<sup>29</sup> gode D. good O.    <sup>30</sup> landes þai D.



¶ And when þe lordes of Engeland saw þe<sup>1</sup> couetise and þe falsenesse of Sir' Hugh þe Spenser, his<sup>2</sup> fader, and of Sir' Hugh his<sup>3</sup> sone, þai comen<sup>4</sup> to þe gentil Erl of Lancastre, and axede 4 <sup>5</sup>him of<sup>5</sup> conseile of þe disese þat was in the reame prouȝ Sir' Hugh þe<sup>6</sup> Spenser and his sone. And in haste, by one assent, þai made a priue assemble at Shirborn in Elmede; and alle þa[i] maden<sup>7</sup> þere an oth forto breke and destourble þe doying bituene þe Kyng and 8 Sir' Hugh þe Spenser and his sone, oppoñ her' power. And þai went into þe Marche of Walys, & destroiede þe Lande<sup>8</sup> of þe forsaide Sir' Hughes.

<sup>9</sup>How sir' Hughe þe Spenser and his fader' Were exilede out  
12 of Engeland. *Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo iiij<sup>to</sup>.*

**W**Hen Kyng Edward saw þe grete harme and destrucioun þat þe barons of Engeland deden on<sup>10</sup> Sir' Hugh þe<sup>6</sup> Spensers Landes, and to his sones, in euery place þat þai comen oppoñ. And 16 þe Kyng þo, prouȝ his Conseile, exilede Sir' Iohn Mounbray, *Sire Roger*<sup>11</sup> of Clifford, and Sir' Gosselyn Dauil, and meny oþer lordes þat wer' to ham<sup>12</sup> consent.<sup>13</sup> Wherefore þe barons dede þo<sup>14</sup> more harme þan þai dede bifore. ¶ And when þe Kyng saw þat<sup>6</sup> þe 20 barons wolde nouȝt cesse of her' cruelte, þe Kyng was sore adrade leste þai wolde<sup>15</sup> destroy him and his reame for his mayntenance, but yf<sup>6</sup> þat he assentede to ham; and so he sent for ham<sup>16</sup> by lettreȝ,<sup>16</sup> þat þai shulde come to London to his parlement at a 24 certeyne day, as in his lettres<sup>17</sup> were<sup>18</sup> conteynede.

¶ And þai come wiþ iij batailes wel armed<sup>19</sup> at alle poyntȝ; & euery bataille hade cote-armur<sup>20</sup> of grene cloþe<sup>21</sup>; and þerof þe right quarter was ȝalwe, wiþ white bendes; Wherefore þat parlement was 28 callede 'þe parlment wiþ<sup>22</sup> þe whit bende.<sup>23</sup>' ¶ And in þat company was Sir' Humfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford,<sup>24</sup> and Sir' Roger of Clifford, *Sire Iohn Mounbray*, *Sire Gosselyn Dauil*, *Sire Roger Mortymer*, Vncle of Sir' Roger Mortymer of Wigemore, *Sire Henry* 32 of Tyeys,<sup>25</sup> *Sire Iohn Giffard*, and Sir' Bartholomew<sup>26</sup> Badelesmere þat was þe Kynges Stiward, þat þe Kyng hade sent to Shirborn

<sup>1</sup> þe grete D. þe gret O.    <sup>2</sup> þe D.    <sup>3</sup> þe DO.    <sup>4</sup> come DO.

<sup>5-5</sup> of hym O.    <sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> made DO.    <sup>8</sup> Laundes D.

<sup>9</sup> leaf 122.    <sup>10</sup> to DO.    <sup>11</sup> Robert D.    <sup>12</sup> hym O.

<sup>13</sup> consentede D.    <sup>14</sup> the D.    <sup>15</sup> shulde D.    <sup>16-16</sup> om. D.

<sup>17</sup> lettre D.    <sup>18</sup> was O.    <sup>19</sup> y-armed O.

<sup>20</sup> cotarmures D.    cote-armures O.    <sup>21</sup> choþe sic D.    <sup>22</sup> of O.

<sup>23</sup> bendes D.    <sup>24</sup> Hereford D.    <sup>25</sup> Trays DO.

<sup>26</sup> Bartholomew of O.

in Elmede. to þe <sup>1</sup>Erl of Lancastre and to alle þat Wiþ him Were, forto trete of accorde þat him aliēde to þe barons, and come wiþ þe <sup>2</sup>company, And Sir Roger Daūmory and Sir Hugh <sup>3</sup>of Audeley <sup>3</sup>þat hade spousede þe Kynges neces, susters <sup>4</sup> to <sup>5</sup>Sir Gilbert of Clare, <sup>4</sup>Erl of Gloucestre, þat was quelledē in Scotland, as aboue <sup>6</sup>is saide. ¶ And þo ij Lordes hadde þe ij parties <sup>7</sup>of þe Eridome of Gloucestre; and Sir Roger <sup>8</sup>þe Spenser, þe sonne, hadde þe <sup>9</sup>þridde part <sup>9</sup>on <sup>10</sup>his Wifes behalue, <sup>11</sup>the þridde <sup>12</sup>suster. And þo ij lordes went to <sup>8</sup>þe barouns wiþ al her power, auzeynes Sir Hugh, her broþer-in-Law; and so þer come with ham, Sir Roger of Clifford, Sir Iohn Mounbray, Sir Gosselyn Dauit, Sir Roger Mortymer of Werk, Sir Roger Mortymer of Wygemore, his newew, Sir Henry Trays, <sup>13</sup> <sup>12</sup>Sir Iohn Giffard, Sir Bartholomew of Bedelesmere, wiþ alle <sup>14</sup>her company, & meny oþere þat to ham wer consent.

¶ Alle þis <sup>15</sup>grete Lordes comen <sup>16</sup>to Westminster, to þe Kynges parlement; and so þai spoken and dede, þat boþe Sir Hugh þe <sup>17</sup> <sup>16</sup>Spenser, þe fader & <sup>18</sup>þe Soñ, were outlawede of Engeland for euer-more. ¶ And Sir Hughe þe fader went to Douer, and made miche sorwe, and felle adoun <sup>19</sup>by þe see bank, <sup>20</sup>& clipped <sup>20</sup>acros wiþ his Armes, and sore wepyng, <sup>21</sup>saide: “now, farewele <sup>22</sup>Engel- <sup>20</sup>land! & gode Engeland, to <sup>23</sup>Gode y þe bitak!” and þries cussede þe grounde, and wende neuer <sup>24</sup>haue comen <sup>25</sup>aȝein, and <sup>26</sup>Wepying ful sore, cursede þe tyme þat euer he bigate Sir Hugh his sone, & saide ‘for him <sup>27</sup>he hade <sup>27</sup>lostē Engeland!’; and in presence of <sup>24</sup>ham þat were him <sup>28</sup>aboutē, he ȝaf him his curse, and went ouer þe see to his landes. But Sire Hugh þe soñ wolde nouȝt go <sup>29</sup>out of Engeland, but helde him in þe see; and he & his company robbedē ij Dormondes bisides Sandewiche, & toke <sup>30</sup>and bar away <sup>28</sup>aȝ þe gode þat was in ham, þe Value of xl <sup>31</sup>M<sup>l</sup> ti.

**How þe Kyng Exilede þe <sup>32</sup>Erl Thomas of Lancastre, & alle þat helde wiþ him; and how þe Mortymer come & ȝelde him vnto <sup>33</sup>þe Kyng; & of þe lordes siege. Capitulo Centesimo 32 Nonogesimo Quinto.**

<sup>1</sup> leaf 122, back.    <sup>2</sup> MS. þe þe; þat DO.    <sup>3-3</sup> Daudel D. Daudele D.  
<sup>4</sup> suster O.    <sup>5</sup> and DO.    <sup>6</sup> bifore D. byfore O.    <sup>7</sup> parties DO.  
<sup>8</sup> Hugh DO.    <sup>9-9</sup> iij partye O.    <sup>10</sup> in DO.    <sup>11</sup> half<sup>t</sup> D. hand<sup>t</sup> O.  
<sup>12</sup> iij O.    <sup>13</sup> Trays DO.    <sup>14</sup> MS. alle aȝ.    <sup>15</sup> þese O.  
<sup>16</sup> come O.    <sup>17</sup> om. DO.    <sup>18</sup> & sir Hugh Spencer O.  
<sup>19</sup> doune oppoñ the grounde D. doun vpon þe ground<sup>t</sup> O.    <sup>20-20</sup> om. DO.  
<sup>21</sup> wepyng & O.    <sup>22</sup> fayre DO.    <sup>23</sup> to almyȝty D. to almyghty O.  
<sup>24</sup> neuere to O.    <sup>25</sup> come O.    <sup>26</sup> and D. & O. om. R.    <sup>27-27</sup> y haue D.  
<sup>28</sup> leaf 123.    <sup>29</sup> goñ DO.    <sup>30</sup> nome O.    <sup>31</sup> iijj D.    <sup>32</sup> om. O.    <sup>33</sup> to O.

**H**It was nought longe after, þat þe Kyng ne<sup>1</sup> made Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and Sir Hugh þe<sup>2</sup> sonne, come aȝein into Engeland, aȝeyns þe lordes wille of þe reaume. ¶ And sone  
 4 after, þe Kyng, wiþ<sup>3</sup> strong Power, come and bisegede þe castel of Leedes: and in þat castel was þe Lady of Badelesmore, for enchesoun þat she wolde nouȝt grant þe castel to þe<sup>1</sup> Quene IsabeH, Kyng Edwardes wif. ¶ But þe principal cause was, for encheson þat Sir  
 8 Bartholomev Badelesmere was aȝeins þe Kyng, & helde with the lordes of Engeland. And noþeles, þe Kyng, by helpe and socoure of men of Londoñ, and also prouȝ helpe of Southerñ men, þe Kyng gate þe castel, maugre ham alle þat wer' wiþin,<sup>4</sup> and tok wiþ him al þat he  
 12 might fynde. ¶ And when þe barons of Engeland herd of þis þing, <sup>5</sup>Sir Roger Mortymer<sup>1</sup> & <sup>5</sup> oþere meny lordes<sup>6</sup> toke þe toune of Brugeworth with strengþ; Wherefore þe Kyng was wonder' wroþ, and lete outelawe Thomas<sup>7</sup> of Lancastre & Hounfray de Bohouñ,  
 16 <sup>8</sup>Erl of Hereford,<sup>9</sup> and alle<sup>10</sup> þat Were assent<sup>11</sup> to þe same quereH. ¶ And þe Kyng Assemblede an<sup>12</sup> host, & come aȝeyns þe lordes of Engeland; wherfor þe Mortymers put ham to þe Kynges mercy & his grace; and anone þai wer' sent to þe Toure of Londoñ, and þere  
 20 kepte in prisoun. ¶ And when þe barons herd of þis þing, þai comen to Pontfret, þere þat þe Erl Thomas soionede, and tolde him how þe Mortymers<sup>13</sup> had<sup>14</sup> ȝelde ham boþe<sup>15</sup> vnto<sup>16</sup> þe Kyng, & put ham in<sup>16</sup> his grace.

24 Of þe sege of Tikhulle. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo* <sup>xx</sup>iiij xvj<sup>o</sup>.

**W**Hen Thomas, Erl of Lancastre, herde<sup>17</sup> þis, <sup>18</sup>þai were<sup>18</sup> wonder' wroþ, & alle þat were of his company, and gretly þai were descomfortede, & ordeinede her' power' togeder, and  
 28 bisegede þe casteH of TykhuH. But þo þat were wiþin, so manliche<sup>19</sup> <sup>20</sup>defendede ham,<sup>20</sup> þat þe barons might nouȝt gete þe casteH. ¶ And when þe Kyng herde telle<sup>21</sup> þat his casteH was bisegede, he suore, by God and by his crowne,<sup>22</sup> þat þe sege shulde be remevede,  
 32 and assemblede an huge power' of peple, and went þiderward forto

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> his D.    <sup>3</sup> with a O.    <sup>4</sup> perin O.

<sup>5-5</sup> written twice in all three MSS.    <sup>6</sup> lordes nome & O.

<sup>7</sup> Thomas erle DO.    <sup>8</sup> leaf 123, back.    <sup>9</sup> Herford O.

<sup>10</sup> al þo D.    at þo O.    <sup>11</sup> assentant D.    assentyng O.

<sup>12</sup> a gret D.    an hugh O.    <sup>13</sup> Mortymers both D.    Mortymers boþe O.

<sup>14</sup> hadden O.    <sup>15</sup> om. DO.    <sup>16</sup> to O.    <sup>17</sup> herde of D.

<sup>18-18</sup> he was D.    <sup>19</sup> manly O.    <sup>20-20</sup> ham defendede D.    <sup>21</sup> om. D.

<sup>22</sup> namen D.    names O.

rescue þe casteH; and his power<sup>1</sup> encressede fram day to day. ¶ When þe Erle of Lancast<sup>r</sup> and þe Erl of Hereford<sup>1</sup>, and þe barons and her<sup>2</sup> company, herde of þis þing<sup>3</sup>, þai assemblede al her<sup>4</sup> power<sup>5</sup>, and went ham to Burtoñ op Trent, and kepte þe bruge, þat 4 þe Kyng shulde nouȝt come<sup>2</sup> ouer<sup>3</sup>. ¶ But hit bifeH so, þat<sup>3</sup> on þe x<sup>4</sup> day of Marche, in þe ȝere of *grace* M<sup>+</sup> CCC xxj<sup>5</sup> þe Kyng and þe Spensers, Sir<sup>6</sup> Aymer<sup>7</sup> Valaunce, Erl of Penbrok<sup>8</sup>, & Iohn<sup>6</sup>, Erl of Arundel, and her<sup>9</sup> power<sup>10</sup>, went ouer þe <sup>7</sup>Watere, and descomfitede 8 þe Erl Thomas & his company; and þai fledde to þe casteH of Tuttebery; and fro þenns þai went to Pountfret. And in þat Viage deide Sir<sup>11</sup> Roger Dammory, in þe Abbay of Tuttebery.

¶ And in þat same tyme, þe Erl Thomas hade a *traitour*<sup>12</sup> with 12 him þat men<sup>8</sup> callede Robert of Holonde, a Knyght þat þe Erl hade brouȝt vp of nouȝt, and hade norisshede him in his botelerie, and had ȝeuen<sup>9</sup> him ij M<sup>+</sup> marȝ<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup>of rent<sup>11</sup> by ȝere.<sup>12</sup> And so miche þe Erl louede him, þat he might doo<sup>13</sup> in þe Erles court 16 what<sup>14</sup> him likede, boþe amonges<sup>15</sup> hye & law; and so queyntely <sup>16</sup>ouer he<sup>16</sup> bare him aȝeynes his lord<sup>17</sup>, þat he truste more oppoñ him þan oppoñ<sup>17</sup> eny man alyue. ¶ And þe Erl hade ordeynede <sup>18</sup>him by lettre<sup>18</sup> forto wende into þe Erldome of Lancast<sup>r</sup>, forto make 20 a rise to helpe him þat<sup>19</sup> viage, þat is to seyn, v<sup>c</sup> men of Armes. But þe <sup>20</sup>said Holand<sup>20</sup> come nouȝt þere, no maner<sup>21</sup> men<sup>21</sup> forto warne, ne to make a rise to<sup>22</sup> helpe his lord<sup>17</sup>. ¶ And when Holand<sup>23</sup> herde telle þat his lord was seomfitede<sup>24</sup> at Burtoñ, as <sup>25</sup>an vntrew 24 man<sup>25</sup> he stale away, and robbede in Rauenesdale his lordes men þat come<sup>26</sup> fra þe seomfiture, & tok<sup>27</sup> of ham horse and harneys, and al þat þai hade, & quelledde of ham alle þat he myght tak, and þo come and ȝelde him vnto<sup>28</sup> þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>. ¶ When þe gode Erl Thomas 28 wist þat he was so bitraiede, he was sore abasshede, and saide to him-self, “O almyghty god!” *quod* he, “how might Robert Holonde fynde in his hert me to bitraye, siþens<sup>29</sup> þat y<sup>30</sup> haue Louede him so miche? O God, <sup>31</sup>wel may now<sup>31</sup> a man see<sup>32</sup> by 32

<sup>1</sup> Herford O.    <sup>2</sup> passe DO.    <sup>3</sup> om. DO.    <sup>4</sup> tenþe O.  
<sup>5</sup> & xxij O.    <sup>6</sup> Iohn þe O.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 124.    <sup>8</sup> me DO.    <sup>9</sup> ȝeue O.  
<sup>10</sup> Mark O.    <sup>11-11</sup> om. D.    of land O.    <sup>12</sup> ȝere of lande D.  
<sup>13</sup> done O.    <sup>14</sup> al þat D.    al þing þat O.    <sup>15</sup> amonge D.    among O.  
<sup>16-16</sup> þe þif D.    þe þef O.    <sup>17</sup> he dede D.  
<sup>18-18</sup> by his lettre him D.    by his lettre O.    <sup>19</sup> in his D.    in þat O.  
<sup>20-20</sup> false traitoure D.    fals Traytour O.    <sup>21</sup> man D.    <sup>22</sup> for-to O.  
<sup>23</sup> the *traitour* D.    þe Traytour O.    <sup>24</sup> descomfitede D.    discomfited O.  
<sup>25-25</sup> a false þef traitoure D.    a fals þef a Traytour O.    <sup>26</sup> comen D.  
<sup>27</sup> nome O.    <sup>28</sup> to O.    <sup>29</sup> sith D.    seth O.    <sup>30</sup> leaf 124, back.  
<sup>31-31</sup> now may wel O.    <sup>32</sup> y-se D.

him þat no man may desceyue anoþer,<sup>1</sup> rapere þan he þat he most trust oppoñ. He haþ ful euel ʒeldede<sup>2</sup> me<sup>3</sup> my godenesse, and þe worship þat y to him haue done, and þrouz my kyndenesse haue 4 him auauncede, and made him hie fram<sup>4</sup> lowe; & he makeþ me go fram<sup>4</sup> he into<sup>5</sup> lowe; but ʒitte shal he dye in euel dep.”

Of þe Scomfiture of Burbrigge. ¶ *Capítulo* ¶ *Centesimo Non-  
gesimo Septimo.*

8 **T**He gode Erl Thomas of Lancastre, Hunfray de Bohoñ, Erl of Herford, and þe barouns þat wiþ ham<sup>6</sup> wer<sup>7</sup>, toke<sup>7</sup> a<sup>8</sup> conseile bituene ham at þe<sup>3</sup> Frere Prechoures at Pountfretti. þo þouzt Thomas vpon þe traitour<sup>9</sup> Robert Holond, and saide in 12 reprofe, “Allas! Holonde me haþ bitraiede! Ay is in þe rede of somme euel shrede.<sup>10</sup>” ¶ And by commune assent þai shulde alle 11 gone to<sup>11</sup> þe castel of Dunstanburghe, the whiche perteynede to þe Erldome of Lancastre, and þat þai shulde abide þere til<sup>12</sup> þe Kyng 16 hade forʒeue ham his male-talent. but when þe gode Erl Thomas þis herde, he ansuerede in þis maner<sup>7</sup>, and saide: “Lordes,” *quod* he, “if we gone<sup>13</sup> toward þe north, men wil seyn<sup>14</sup> þat we goñ<sup>15</sup> toward þe Scottes; and so we shul be holde traitoures, for<sup>16</sup> cause 20 of<sup>16</sup> distaunce þat is bituene<sup>17</sup> Kyng Edward and Robert þe Brus, þat<sup>18</sup> made him Kyng<sup>4</sup> of Scotland. And þerfore y say, as tochyng myself, þat y wil go<sup>19</sup> no ferþer into þe North þan to myn owen castel of Pountfretti.” ¶ And when Sire Roger Clifford herde þis,<sup>20</sup> 24 he aros vp anone in wrap, <sup>21</sup>and drow his suorde, & swore by Almygty God<sup>22</sup> and by his holy names,<sup>22</sup> but if þat he wolde go<sup>23</sup> wiþ ham, he shulde be dede, and þat he wolde slee him þere. ¶ þe noble<sup>24</sup> Erl Thomas of Lancastre was sore adrade, and saide: 28 “faire sires,<sup>25</sup> y wil go wiþ þow<sup>26</sup> whider-so-euer ʒe me lede.” þo went þai togederes into þe North; and wiþ ham þai hade vij<sup>c</sup> men of Armes, and come to Burbrig.

¶ And when Sire Andrew of Herkela—þat was in þe North- 32 contre þrouz ordenance of þe Kyng<sup>4</sup>, forto kepe þe cuntre of Scotland

<sup>1</sup> a man D.    <sup>2</sup> ʒelde D.    ʒelden O.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> fro O.

<sup>5</sup> to D.    <sup>6</sup> hym O.    <sup>7</sup> nomen O.

<sup>8</sup> MS. has a castel, with castel underlined for omission; om. DO.

<sup>9</sup> traytry of D.    Trayterye of O.    <sup>10</sup> deth O.    <sup>11–11</sup> wende into DO.

<sup>12</sup> til þat O.    <sup>13</sup> go DO.    <sup>14</sup> say D.    <sup>15</sup> go D.    <sup>16–16</sup> om. D.

<sup>17</sup> bituene D.    betwen O.    bitue R.    <sup>18</sup> om. D.    <sup>19</sup> gone D.

<sup>20</sup> þis word D.    <sup>21</sup> leaf 125.    <sup>22–22</sup> om. D.    <sup>23</sup> gon O.

<sup>24</sup> noble and gentil DO.    <sup>25</sup> sir D.    <sup>26</sup> ʒow DO.

—herde telle how þat<sup>1</sup> Thomas of Lancastre was descomfitede,<sup>2</sup> and his company were descomfitede<sup>2</sup> at Burton vp<sup>3</sup> Trent, he ordeynede him a stronge power<sup>3</sup>, and Sir<sup>3</sup> Symond Ward also,<sup>4</sup> þat þo<sup>5</sup> was<sup>6</sup> shirryf of ȝork, & come & mette þe barons at Burbrig<sup>7</sup>; & 4 anone þai breken<sup>7</sup> þe brige, þat was made of tre. ¶ And when<sup>8</sup> Sir<sup>3</sup> Thomas of Lancastre herde þat Sire Andrew of Herkela hade brouȝt wiþ him soche a power<sup>3</sup>, he was sore adrade, & sent for<sup>9</sup> Sir<sup>1</sup> Andrew of Herkela, & wiþ him spake, and saide to him in þis 8 maner: “Sire Andrew,” *quod* he, “ȝe mow wel vnderstonde how þat our<sup>1</sup> Lord þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> is ladde and misgouernede by miche false conseil, þrouȝ Sir<sup>3</sup> Hugh þe Spenser<sup>3</sup> þe fader, &<sup>10</sup> Sir<sup>3</sup> Hugh þe<sup>11</sup> sone, & Sir<sup>3</sup> Iohn Erl of Arundel, and þrouȝ Maistre Robert Baldok, 12 a false pilede clerc, þat is in þe Kyngus court duellyng<sup>1</sup>; wherfore y praye ȝow<sup>4</sup> þat ȝe wil<sup>12</sup> come wiþ vs, wiþ al þe power<sup>3</sup> þat ȝe haue ordeynede, and helpe to destroie þe venyme of Engeland, and þe traitoures þat bene<sup>13</sup> þerin, and we<sup>1</sup> wil ȝif vnto ȝow þe best part 16 14 of v Erlldomes þar We haue<sup>15</sup> & holde<sup>16</sup>; and We wil mak vnto ȝow 17 an oth<sup>17</sup> þat we wil neuer do þing wiþout ȝour<sup>1</sup> conseil, and so ȝe shul bene<sup>18</sup> as wele 19 at ese<sup>19</sup> wiþ vs as euer was Robert<sup>20</sup> Holande.” ¶ þo ansuerede Sir Andrew of Herkela, and saide: “Sir<sup>3</sup> Thomas! 20 þat wolde y nouȝt do,<sup>21</sup> ne consent þerto, for no maner<sup>3</sup> þing<sup>3</sup> þat yhe<sup>22</sup> might me<sup>5</sup> ȝeue, 23 wiþouten þe wil<sup>23</sup> and commaundement of our<sup>1</sup> lord þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>; for þan shulde y be holde a traitoure for euer-more.” ¶ And when þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre saw þat he 24 nolde consent to him for no maner<sup>3</sup> þing<sup>3</sup>, “Sir<sup>3</sup> Andrew,” he saide, “wil ȝe nouȝt consent to destroye þe venyme of þe reaume, as we bene consented? 24 At on<sup>25</sup> worde, Sir<sup>3</sup> Andrew, y telle þe, þat or þis ȝer<sup>3</sup> be goȝ, 26 þat ȝe shal be<sup>26</sup> take and holde for a traitoure, and 28 more þan ȝe holde vs now; and in worse deth ȝe shul die, þan euer dede<sup>27</sup> Knyght of Engeland; and vnderstonde<sup>28</sup> wel þat 29 neuer ȝe dede<sup>29</sup> þing<sup>3</sup> þat sorer<sup>3</sup> 30 ȝow shal<sup>30</sup> repent. And now goþ and 31 do what<sup>31</sup> ȝow gode likes<sup>32</sup>; and y wil put me to<sup>33</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> *om.* D.      <sup>2-2</sup> *om.* D.      & his Companye O.      <sup>3</sup> *oppoñ* D.

<sup>4</sup> *om.* O.      <sup>5</sup> *om.* DO.      <sup>6</sup> was to *sic* O.      <sup>7</sup> broken D.

<sup>8</sup> when þat D.      <sup>9</sup> to O.      <sup>10</sup> & by D.      <sup>11</sup> his DO.

<sup>12</sup> wolde D.      wold O.      <sup>13</sup> beth D.      <sup>14</sup> *leaf* 125, *back*.      <sup>15</sup> haue O.

<sup>16</sup> holdt O.      <sup>17-17</sup> *om.* D.      <sup>18</sup> be eft D.      be eft O.      <sup>19-19</sup> *om.* DO.

<sup>20</sup> Robert of DO.      <sup>21</sup> done O.      <sup>22</sup> me DO.

<sup>23-23</sup> without counsel D.      *with-oute* wil O.      <sup>24</sup> consent DO.

<sup>25</sup> o DO.      <sup>26-26</sup> ȝe shul ben D.      <sup>27</sup> dide eny O.

<sup>28</sup> vnderstondeth O.      <sup>29-29</sup> ȝe dede neuere D.      ȝe dede neuer O.

<sup>30-30</sup> shal ȝow D.      schal ȝow O.      <sup>31-31</sup> doth þat DO.

<sup>32</sup> likeþ D.      liketh O.      <sup>33</sup> vnto DO.

þe <sup>1</sup>mercy and *grace*<sup>1</sup> of God." And so went þe false *traitoure*, Sir<sup>2</sup> Andrew of Herkela, in his way as a false *traitour*<sup>3</sup>, a tiraunt, & forsuore<sup>3</sup> man. for þrouȝ þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre he vnderfonge þe armes of chivalry, and þrouȝ him he was made <sup>4</sup>knight.

¶ Thoo might men seen<sup>4</sup> Archieres drawn ham in þat on<sup>5</sup> side and in þat *opere*; and <sup>6</sup>Knyȝtes also<sup>6</sup> fouȝten togeder<sup>6</sup> wonder<sup>6</sup> sore; and amonge<sup>7</sup> *opere*, Sir<sup>7</sup> Hunfray de Bohoun, Erl of Herford, a <sup>8</sup>worpi knyght of renoune þrouȝout al Cristendome, stode & fauȝt with his enemys apon þe brigge. <sup>8</sup>And as the noble lorde stode and fauȝt oppoñ þe brugge, a þef, a ribaude, scolkede vnder þe brigge, and fersly wiȝ a spere smote the noble knyght into þe fonde-<sup>12</sup>ment, so þat his bowailles comen out þere. Allas þe sorwe! for þere was slayn þe floure of solace and of comfort, & also of curtesye. and Sire Roger of Clifford, a noble knyght, stode euer<sup>9</sup>, and faught, & wel and nobly him defendede as a worpi baron; but at þe laste<sup>16</sup> he was sore wounded in þe<sup>9</sup> heuede, & Sire William of Sulley & Sir<sup>9</sup> Roger of Bernesfelde<sup>10</sup> were slayn in<sup>11</sup> þat bataile. ¶ And<sup>12</sup> Sir<sup>9</sup> Andrew of Herkela saw<sup>13</sup> Sir<sup>9</sup> Thomas men of Lancastre<sup>14</sup> laske and slake.<sup>14</sup> Anone he & his company comen to the Gentil Knyght, <sup>20</sup>Thomas of Lancastre, & saiden<sup>15</sup> "ȝelde þe, *traitour*! ȝelde þe!" ¶ The gentil Erl ansuerede þo,<sup>2</sup> and saide: "nay, lordes! *traitour*!<sup>16</sup> be we none, and to ȝow wille we neuer vs ȝelde while<sup>17</sup> þat our<sup>18</sup> lifes lasten<sup>19</sup>; but leuer we haue<sup>20</sup> to be slayn in oure treuȝ, þan <sup>24</sup>ȝelde vs to ȝow." And Sir<sup>9</sup> Andrew aȝein<sup>21</sup> criede<sup>22</sup> oppoñ Sir<sup>9</sup> Thomas company, <sup>23</sup>ȝellynge as a wolfe,<sup>23</sup> and saide: "ȝelde ȝow, *traitour*!<sup>24</sup> taken! ȝelde ȝow!" and wiȝ an hye<sup>25</sup> voice saide<sup>25</sup>: "beȝ ware, sires, þat <sup>26</sup>no man<sup>26</sup> of ȝow be<sup>27</sup> so hardy, oppoñ lif and lyme, <sup>28</sup>to mysdo<sup>28</sup> Thomas body of Lancastre." ¶ And wiȝ þat worde, þe gode Erl Thomas went into a chapel, and saide, knelyng douñ oppoñ his knees, and turnede his visage toward þe crois, and saide: "almȝhti God! to þe y me ȝelde, and holliche<sup>29</sup> put me into þi <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> grace & mercy O. <sup>2</sup> om. D.

<sup>3</sup> as a false forsuoren D. as a forswore O. <sup>4</sup> see D. <sup>5</sup> o O.

<sup>6-6</sup> knyȝte also and D. knyghtes also & O.

<sup>7</sup> also among<sup>7</sup> al D. also among O. <sup>8</sup> leaf 126. <sup>9</sup> his DO.

<sup>10</sup> Bernesfeld O. <sup>11</sup> at DO. <sup>12</sup> When D. whan O.

<sup>13</sup> saw þat DO. <sup>14-14</sup> lefte and slakede D. lasked & slaked O.

<sup>15</sup> saide D. <sup>16</sup> traytours O. <sup>17</sup> whiles O. <sup>18</sup> one D.

<sup>19</sup> laste O. <sup>20</sup> han D. haue O. <sup>21</sup> MS. aȝein aȝein. <sup>22</sup> grad O.

<sup>23-23</sup> ȝollyng as wode wolues O. ȝeldyng as a wolfe R.

<sup>24</sup> traitours D. traitours O. <sup>25-25</sup> a voys cryede & seyde O.

<sup>26-26</sup> non DO. <sup>27</sup> bene D. <sup>28</sup> mysdone O. <sup>29</sup> holly D. holy O.

mercy." ¶ And wiþ þat, þe vileins ribaundes leþten<sup>1</sup> about him, on<sup>2</sup> euery side þat Gentil Erl, as tiraunt<sup>3</sup> and Woode *turmentures*, and despoilede him of his Armure, & cloþede him in a robbe of Ray, þat was<sup>4</sup> his sq[u]yers lineray, and <sup>5</sup>fourþ lade him vnto<sup>5</sup> 4 York<sup>6</sup> by water. þere<sup>7</sup> might men see miche sorwe and care, for þe gentil knyghtes <sup>8</sup>fledde on<sup>8</sup> euery side, and þe ribaundes and vileins egrely ham descriede, and criede<sup>9</sup> in<sup>10</sup> lye, "3elde 3ow, traitoures! 3elde 3ow!" 8

¶ And when þai were 3olden,<sup>11</sup> þai wer<sup>12</sup> robbed, and bonde as þeues. Allas þe shame & despote, þat<sup>12</sup> þe gentil ordre of Knyghthode þere hade at þat bataile! And þe land þo was wiþ-  
outen<sup>13</sup> Law, for holy cherche þo hade nomore<sup>14</sup> reuerence þan hit 12 hade bene a bordel hous. And in þat bataile was þe fader<sup>15</sup> azeins þe sone, and þe vncler azeins his<sup>15</sup> newew; for so miche vnkyndnesse was neuer seyne bifore in Engeland<sup>16</sup> amonges<sup>17</sup> fole of on<sup>18</sup> nacioun; for o<sup>19</sup> kynrede had no more pite of þat oper, þan an 16 <sup>20</sup>hundred wolfe haueþ on o<sup>20</sup> shepe; and hit was no wonder<sup>1</sup>, for þe grete lordes of Engeland were nouzt alle of o<sup>21</sup> nacioun, but were mellede<sup>22</sup> wiþ opere naciouns, þat is forto seyn, somme Britons, somme Saxones, somme Danois,<sup>23</sup> somme Peghtes, somme Frenche- 20 men, somme Normans, somme Spaignardes, somme Romayns, some Henaudes, some Flemynghus, and of opere diuerse naciouns, þe whiche naciouns acorded nouzt to þe kynde bloode of Engeland.  
¶ And if þe grete Lordes <sup>24</sup>of Engeland<sup>1</sup> hade bene onelich wedded<sup>24</sup> 24 to Englysshe peple, þan shulde pees haue bene, and reste amongus ham, wiþouten<sup>25</sup> eny envy. And at þat bataile was Sir<sup>1</sup> Roger<sup>1</sup> Clifford<sup>1</sup> tak<sup>26</sup>, Sire Iohn Mounbray, Sire William <sup>27</sup> 28 Tuchet, Sir<sup>1</sup> William<sup>28</sup> Fitz-William, and meny opere worþi Knyghtes; and Sir<sup>1</sup> 28 Hugh Dauith þe next day after<sup>1</sup> was taken<sup>29</sup> and put into prisoun, & shulde haue ben<sup>30</sup> done to þe<sup>31</sup> dep if he hade nouz spousede þe Kynges nece, þat was þe Erl Gilbertus<sup>32</sup> sustre<sup>33</sup> of Gloucestre.

<sup>1</sup> lepte D.    <sup>2</sup> in DO.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 126, back.    <sup>4</sup> was of DO.

<sup>5-5</sup> lad him forth to D.    <sup>6</sup> MS. pork.    <sup>7</sup> þo DO.

<sup>8-8</sup> fled in D.    fledde in O.    <sup>9</sup> grad O.    <sup>10</sup> an DO.

<sup>11</sup> 3olde D.    yolde O.    <sup>12</sup> om. D.    <sup>13</sup> without D.    withoute O.

<sup>14</sup> no maner<sup>1</sup> D.    <sup>15</sup> þe D.

<sup>16</sup> Engeland as was þat tyme D.    Engeland<sup>1</sup> as was þat tyme O.

<sup>17</sup> among O.    <sup>18</sup> o O.    <sup>19</sup> one D.

<sup>20-29</sup> hungry wolfe hath of a D.    hungry wolf hath of a O.    <sup>21</sup> on D.

<sup>22</sup> medled<sup>1</sup> D.    <sup>23</sup> Danes O.

<sup>24-24</sup> hade be wedede onliche D.    hadden ben onlich wedded<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>25</sup> without D.    withoute O.    <sup>26</sup> taken D.    <sup>27</sup> leaf 127.    <sup>28-28</sup> om. D.

<sup>29</sup> take O.    <sup>30</sup> be O.    <sup>31</sup> om. O.    <sup>32</sup> Gilbert D.    <sup>33</sup> wyf O.



And anone after<sup>1</sup>, was Sir<sup>2</sup> Bartholomev of Bedelesmer<sup>3</sup> taken<sup>4</sup> att Stawe<sup>5</sup> Park, a maner<sup>6</sup> of þe Bisshoppes of Lincoln, þat was his newew, and meny oþer barons and baronettes; Wherefore was made<sup>7</sup> miche sorwe.

**How Thomas of Lancastre was biheuēdede<sup>8</sup> atte Pountfret<sup>9</sup>, & v barons hongede and <sup>10</sup>Draw þere.<sup>11</sup> ¶ Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo Octauo.**

8 **A** Nd now y shal telle þow of þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre. When he was taken<sup>12</sup> & brouȝt to þork<sup>13</sup>, meny of þe citee were ful glade, and oppoñ him criede<sup>14</sup> wiþ<sup>15</sup> hye voice, “A, sire traitoure! ȝe <sup>16</sup>sarne welcome,<sup>17</sup> blessed be God! for now shal ȝe haue þe reward þat longetyme ȝe haue deserued!” and caste oppoñ him<sup>18</sup> meny snoweballes, and meny oþer reproues dede<sup>19</sup> him. But þe gentil Erl þat soffrede, and saide neþer on ne<sup>20</sup> oþere.

¶ And in þat<sup>21</sup> same tyme þe Kyng herde of þat<sup>22</sup> scomfiture, and was ful glade, and in haste come to Pountfret<sup>23</sup>; and Sir<sup>24</sup> Hugh þe Spenser, and Sir<sup>25</sup> Hugh his sone, and Sir<sup>26</sup> Iohn, Erl of Arundel, and Sir<sup>27</sup> Edmund of Wodestok, þe Kyngus broþer, Erl of Kent, and Sir<sup>28</sup> Aymer of Valance, Erl of Penbrok, & maistre Robert of Baldok, a false pilede clerc, þat was priue & duellyng<sup>29</sup> in þe Kynges court; and alle<sup>30</sup> þai come<sup>31</sup> jider<sup>32</sup> wiþ þe Kyng. ¶ And Sir<sup>33</sup> Rauf of Beeston ȝaf vp the<sup>34</sup> castel to the Kyng; and þe Kyng entrede into þe castel; & Sir<sup>35</sup> Andrew of Herkela, þe<sup>36</sup> false tiraunt, prouȝ þe Kynges commandement tok<sup>37</sup> with him þe gentil Erl Thomas<sup>38</sup> to Pountfret; and þere he was prisonede in his owen castel þat he hade new made, þat stode ageins þe Abbay of Kyng Edward.

28 And Sir<sup>39</sup> Hugh þe<sup>40</sup> Spenser þe fader<sup>41</sup>, and Sir<sup>42</sup> Hugh his sone<sup>43</sup>, caste and þouȝt how and in what maner þe God Erl Thomas of Lancastre shulde bene<sup>44</sup> dede, wiþouten<sup>45</sup> iugement of his peris; wherefore hit was ordeinede prouȝ þe Kynges Iustices, þat þe Kyng shulde put oppoñ<sup>46</sup> him poyntes of traitery. ¶ And so hit bifelle

<sup>1</sup> take O.    <sup>2</sup> traw sic D.    <sup>3</sup> byheded O.    <sup>4-4</sup> drawn D.

<sup>5</sup> take O.    <sup>6</sup> cryeden O.    <sup>7</sup> with an O.

<sup>8-8</sup> bene welcomen D.    ar welcome O.    <sup>9</sup> om. D.    <sup>10</sup> deden O.

<sup>11</sup> neþer O.    <sup>12</sup> þe D.    <sup>13</sup> the D.    <sup>14</sup> dwelled O.

<sup>15-15</sup> comen DO.    <sup>16</sup> leaf 127, back.    <sup>17</sup> a DO.

<sup>18</sup> tok<sup>1</sup> D.    nome O.    to bring R.    <sup>19</sup> Thomas of Lancast<sup>r</sup> O.

<sup>20</sup> om. O.    <sup>21-21</sup> om. D.    & þe sone O.    <sup>22</sup> be O.

<sup>23</sup> with-outen eny D.    withoute eny O.    <sup>24</sup> on O.

þat he was ladde to þe barr<sup>1</sup> before þe Kynges Iustice<sup>3</sup>, bare-heuede<sup>1</sup> as a þef, in a faire halle wiþin<sup>2</sup> his owen castel, þat he hade made þerin meny a faire fest, boþ to riche and eke<sup>3</sup> to pore. ¶ And þise were his Iustice<sup>3</sup>: Sir<sup>4</sup> Hugh þe Spenser<sup>4</sup> þe fader<sup>4</sup>, Sir<sup>4</sup> Aymer<sup>4</sup> of 4 Valance, Erl of Penbrok<sup>4</sup>, Sire Edmund of Wodestok, Erl of Kent, Sire Iohn of Britaign, Erl of Richemond, & Sir<sup>4</sup> Robert of Maleme-þrop, iustice; and Sir<sup>4</sup> Robert him acoupede in þis maner<sup>4</sup>: ¶ “Thomas! atte þe ferst<sup>4</sup>, oure lord þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> & þis court<sup>4</sup> 8 excludeth 3ow of al maner<sup>4</sup> ansuere. ¶ Thomas! oure lorde þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> put oppoñ 3ow þat 3e haue in his lande riden wiþ baner<sup>4</sup> displaiede, <sup>5</sup>azeynes his pees, as a *traitour*.<sup>5</sup>” ¶ And wiþ þat worde, þe gentil Erl Thomas, wiþ an hie voice saide, “Nay, Lordes! forsoþ, 12 and by Seint Thomas, y was neuer<sup>4</sup> traitoure.” ¶ The iustice saide azein þo: “Thomas! our<sup>4</sup> Lord þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> put oppoñ þe<sup>6</sup> þat 3e hauen<sup>7</sup> robbede his<sup>8</sup> folc, and mordred his folc,<sup>9</sup> as a þef. ¶ Thomas! þe Kyng also put oppoñ you<sup>10</sup> þat he descomfitede 3ow 16 and 3our<sup>4</sup> peple wiþ his folc in his owen reauune; Wherefore 3e went and fley<sup>11</sup> to þe wode as an outlawe, and <sup>12</sup>also 3e were taken as an outlaw. ¶ & <sup>12</sup>Thomas, as a *traitoure* 3e shul<sup>13</sup> be hongede by resouñ, but þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> hap forzeue 3ow þat<sup>3</sup> gewys for þe loue of 20 Quene IsabeH. ¶ And, <sup>14</sup>Thomas, resouñ wolde also þat 3e shulde ben hongede; but þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> hap forzeue þat gewys<sup>14</sup> for cause and loue of 3our<sup>4</sup> lynage. ¶ But, Thomas, for-asmiche as 3e were tak fleyng<sup>4</sup>, & <sup>3</sup>as an outlaw, þe Kyng wil þat 3our<sup>4</sup> heued<sup>15</sup> be smyten<sup>16</sup> 24 of, as 3e<sup>17</sup> haue wel deseruede. Anone doth<sup>18</sup> him out of pres, and<sup>19</sup> bringe him to his iugement!” ¶ þe gentil knyght, when he<sup>20</sup> hade herde alle þise wordes, wiþ an hye voice he criede, sore weping, and saide: “Allas, Seint Thomas, <sup>21</sup>faire fader! Allas<sup>21</sup>! shal 28 y be<sup>22</sup> dede þus? graunt me now, blisseful God, ansuere!” but al it auailede him noþing<sup>23</sup>; for þe cursede Gascoignes put him hider<sup>24</sup> and þider<sup>4</sup>, and on him criede wiþ an hye voice, “O Kyng<sup>4</sup> Arthur<sup>4</sup>, most dredeful! wel<sup>25</sup> knowen <sup>26</sup>now is þin<sup>26</sup> open traitery! 32

<sup>1</sup> bare-head O.    <sup>2</sup> in O.    <sup>3</sup> om. D.    <sup>4-4</sup> om. D.<sup>5-5</sup> as a *traitour* azeynes his pees D.    <sup>6</sup> 3ow D.    <sup>7</sup> haue DO.<sup>8</sup> leaf 128.    <sup>9</sup> peple DO.    <sup>10</sup> þe O.    <sup>11</sup> fled O.<sup>12-12</sup> om. O.    <sup>13</sup> ben D.<sup>14-14</sup> om. D. Thomas as resouñ wold<sup>4</sup> also þat 3e schul<sup>4</sup> be honged<sup>4</sup> but þe kyng forzeue 3ow þat gewes O.<sup>15</sup> hed O.    <sup>16</sup> smyte O.<sup>17</sup> MS. 3e schul, with schul underlined for omission.    <sup>18</sup> do O.<sup>19</sup> & anone D.    & anon O.    <sup>20</sup> MS. he he.    <sup>21-21</sup> allas fayre fader O.<sup>22</sup> bene D.    ben O.    <sup>23</sup> not O.    <sup>24</sup> hide sic D.    <sup>25</sup> we O.<sup>26-26</sup> is now þine D.    is now þyn O.

in euel deþ shalt þow dye, as þow hast wel deseruede." ¶ þo sette þai oppoñ his heuede<sup>1</sup> in scorn an olde chapelet, al-to rent & torn, þat was <sup>2</sup>nouȝt worþ<sup>2</sup> an halpeny; & after þai 4 sette<sup>3</sup> him oppoñ a <sup>4</sup>lene white<sup>4</sup> palfray, ful vnsemeliche,<sup>5</sup> and ek al<sup>6</sup> bare, wiþ an olde bridel; and wiþ an horrible noyse<sup>7</sup> þai drow him <sup>2</sup>out of þe castel<sup>2</sup> toward his deþ, and caste on<sup>8</sup> him meny balles of snowe. ¶ And as þe turmentoures lade him out of þe 8 castel, <sup>9</sup>þo saide he<sup>9</sup> þise <sup>10</sup>pitouse<sup>6</sup> wordes, and his Handes helde vp<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>in hye toward<sup>12</sup> heuen: "Now, þe Kyng of Heuen ȝeue vs mercy, for þe erþely Kyng<sup>13</sup> haþ vs forsak<sup>1</sup>!" And a frere prechoure went wiþ him oute of þe castel, til þat he come to þe place 12 þat<sup>14</sup> he endede-in<sup>15</sup> his lif; vnto<sup>16</sup> whom he shroue him al his lif.<sup>17</sup> ¶ And þe gentil Erl helde þe frere wonder<sup>1</sup> faste by þe cloþes, and saide: "fair<sup>11</sup> fader, abide wiþ vs til þat <sup>18</sup>y be<sup>18</sup> dede; for my flesshe quakeþ for drede of deþ." And soþ forto saie, þe gentil Erl 16 sette him oppoñ his Knees, & turned<sup>1</sup> him toward þe East; but a Ribaude þat meñ<sup>19</sup> callede Hugoñ of Mostoñ, sette hande oppoñ þe gentil Erl, and said in despite of him<sup>20</sup>: "Sir<sup>1</sup> traitoure, turne þe toward þe Scottes, þin<sup>21</sup> foule deth to vnderfonge"; and turnede þe 20 Erl toward<sup>1</sup> þe North. ¶ The noble Erl Thomas answered þo wiþ a milde voice, and saide: "Now, fair<sup>1</sup> Lordes, y shal do al ȝour<sup>1</sup> owen<sup>15</sup> wille." And wiþ þat worde þe frere went fram<sup>22</sup> him ful sore<sup>23</sup>; and anone a ribaude went to him, and smote of his heuede,<sup>24</sup> þe xj 24 Kalendus<sup>25</sup> of Aprit, in þe ȝer<sup>1</sup> of grace M<sup>t</sup> CCC<sup>26</sup> xxj. Allas þat euer soche a gentil blode shulde ben<sup>27</sup> don to deþ with-outen<sup>28</sup> cause and resouñ! ¶ And traiterously<sup>29</sup> was þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> conseilede when he, þrouȝ false conseil of þe false<sup>11</sup> Spensers, soffred<sup>1</sup> Sir<sup>1</sup> Thomas, 28 his vnles<sup>30</sup> sone, bene<sup>31</sup> put to soche a deþ, & so <sup>32</sup>ben-heuedede<sup>32</sup> aȝeyns al maner resouñ. And grete pitee hit was also, þat soche a noble Kyng<sup>1</sup> shulde ben<sup>33</sup> desceyuede and mysȝouernede þrouȝ<sup>34</sup> false Spensers, þe whiche he mayntenede þrouȝ loselry aȝeins his 32 honour<sup>1</sup> and ek profit; for afterward þere felle grete vengeance in

<sup>1</sup> heed<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>2-2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> sent O.    <sup>4-4</sup> white lene D.

<sup>5</sup> MS. vnsemeliche; vnsemely D.    <sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> voys D.

<sup>8</sup> oppoñ D.    <sup>9-9</sup> he saide D.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 128, back.    <sup>11</sup> om. O.

<sup>12-12</sup> an hye towardes D.    in hye towardes O.    <sup>13</sup> þing sic O.

<sup>14</sup> þere D.    <sup>15</sup> om. DO.    <sup>16</sup> in-to O.

<sup>17</sup> MS. lif a, with a underlined for omission.    <sup>18-18</sup> we bene D.

<sup>19</sup> me DO.    <sup>20</sup> hym & seide sic O.    <sup>21</sup> þy O.    <sup>22</sup> fro O.

<sup>23</sup> sore wepyng<sup>1</sup> D.    so wepyng<sup>1</sup> sic O.    <sup>24</sup> heed O.    <sup>25</sup> Kalend DO.

<sup>26</sup> CCC & O.    <sup>27</sup> be DO.    <sup>28</sup> without D.    withoute O.

<sup>29</sup> Traytourly O.    <sup>30</sup> vnle O.    <sup>31</sup> be O.    <sup>32-32</sup> beheded<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>33</sup> be DO.    <sup>34</sup> þrouȝ conseil of the D.    þurgh Connceit<sup>1</sup> of þe O.

<sup>1</sup>Engeland for enchesoun of þe forsaide Thomas dep. ¶ When þe gentil Erl of þis lif was passed, þe Prioure and þe monkes of Pountfret<sup>t</sup> geten Sir<sup>2</sup> Thomas body of þe Kyng<sup>3</sup>, and þai buriede hit bifore<sup>2</sup> þe hye auter in the right side. 4

¶ And<sup>3</sup> þat same day þat þe gentil lord was dede, þere wer<sup>4</sup> honged and draw<sup>4</sup> for þe same<sup>5</sup> querel<sup>6</sup> at Pountfret<sup>t</sup>,<sup>6</sup> Sir<sup>7</sup> William Tuchet, Sir<sup>7</sup> William Fitz-William, Sire Warein of Ysillee, Sire Henry of Bradbourne,<sup>7</sup> Sir<sup>7</sup> William Cheyne, barons alle,<sup>8</sup> & 8 Iohn Page, Squyer. ¶ And sone after at ȝork, wer<sup>9</sup> draw and Honget, Sire Roger of<sup>3</sup> Clifford, Sir<sup>9</sup> Iohn of Mounbray, barons, & Sire Gosselyn Daul,<sup>9</sup> Knyght. ¶ And at Bristow were draw and honged, Sire Henry of Wynnington, and Sire Henry of Mounford, 12 barons. ¶ And at Gloucestre wer<sup>10</sup> draw and hongede, Sire Iohn Giffard & Sire William of Elmebruge,<sup>10</sup> barons. ¶ And at London wer<sup>11</sup> Honget & draw,<sup>11</sup> Sir<sup>11</sup> Henry Tyeys,<sup>12</sup> baron; & at Winchelse,<sup>13</sup> Sir<sup>13</sup> Thomas Culpeper, knyght; & at Wyndesore, Sir<sup>16</sup> Fraunceys of Waldenham,<sup>14</sup> baron; & at Kaunterbury was draw and honged, Sire Bartholomew of Badelesmer<sup>1</sup> & Sir<sup>1</sup> Bartholomev of Assheburnham, barons; And at Kerdif in Walys, Sir<sup>1</sup> William Flemynge, baron. 20

How Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edwar<sup>1</sup> went into Scotlan<sup>1</sup> wip an<sup>15</sup> C<sup>mt</sup> men of Armes, and might nouȝt spede. ¶ *Capitulo Centesimo Nonogesimo* ¶ *Nono.*

**A**Nd when Kyng Edward of Engeland<sup>1</sup> hade brouȝt þe flour<sup>1</sup> of 24 chinalry vnto þis<sup>16</sup> dep, þrouȝ conseil of Sir<sup>1</sup> Hughe þe Spencers<sup>17</sup> þe fader<sup>1</sup>, & <sup>18</sup>Sir<sup>1</sup> Hugh<sup>18</sup> his sone, he<sup>9</sup> bicomē as<sup>19</sup> wood as a lyoun; and what-so-euer<sup>1</sup> the Spencers wolde haue done, it was doñ. And so wel the <sup>20</sup>Kyng louede ham, þat þai might do<sup>21</sup> 28 wip him al<sup>22</sup> þat þai wolde; wherfore <sup>23</sup>the King<sup>23</sup> ȝaf vnto Sir<sup>1</sup> Hugh þe Spencer þe fader<sup>1</sup>, þe Erldome of Wynchestre, and to Sir<sup>1</sup> Androv of Herkela þe Erldome of Carlele,<sup>24</sup> in preiudice and<sup>25</sup> harmyng of his creune. ¶ And Kyng Edward þo, þrouȝ conseil of 32

<sup>1</sup> leaf 129.    <sup>2</sup> bisides D.    <sup>3</sup> om. D.    <sup>4</sup> drawn D.

<sup>5</sup> same cause & D.    <sup>6-6</sup> om. D.

<sup>7</sup> Bradborn and D. Bradbourne & O.    <sup>8</sup> al at Pountfret D.

<sup>9</sup> om. O.    <sup>10</sup> Elmebright D.    <sup>11-11</sup> draw and hongede D.

<sup>12</sup> Trey DO.    <sup>13</sup> Wynchestre O.    <sup>14</sup> Baldenham O.    <sup>15</sup> a O.

<sup>16</sup> om. D. his O.    <sup>17</sup> Spencer D.    <sup>18-18</sup> om. O.

<sup>19</sup> MS. as a, with a underlined for omission.    <sup>20</sup> leaf 129, back.

<sup>21</sup> done D.    <sup>22</sup> al þing DO.    <sup>23-23</sup> MS. has sir Hugh.

<sup>24</sup> Karloil D.    <sup>25</sup> Cardoil O.    <sup>25</sup> and in DO.

þe Spencers, disheritede<sup>1</sup> alle ham þat hade bene ageins him in eny quereH wiþ Thomas of Lancastre; and meny oþere wer<sup>2</sup> disherited also, for encheson þat þe Spencers coueitede forto haue her<sup>3</sup> londes; and so þai hade al þat þai wolde desire, wiþ wronge, and ageyns al resouñ.

¶ þo made þe Kyng, Robert<sup>2</sup> of Baldok, a false pilede clerc, Chaunceller<sup>4</sup> of Engeland, prou3 conseil of þe forsaide Spencers; and he was a false rybaude and a couetous; and so þai conselede þe Kyng so miche, þat þe Kyng<sup>5</sup> lete take to his owen ward alle þe godes of þe lordes þat<sup>6</sup> wrongefully were<sup>7</sup> put vnto þe<sup>8</sup> dep, into his owen honde; and aswel þai token<sup>9</sup> þe godes þat were in holy cherche, as þe godes þat were wiþout, and lete ham ben<sup>10</sup> put into his tresorie a[t] London, and lete<sup>11</sup> ham calle<sup>12</sup> his forfait3; and by her<sup>13</sup> conseile þe Kyng<sup>14</sup> wrought, and<sup>15</sup> disheritede<sup>16</sup> al ham<sup>17</sup> þat<sup>18</sup> þe gode<sup>19</sup> oweden<sup>20</sup>; and prou3 her<sup>21</sup> conseil lete arere a<sup>22</sup> talliage of alle þe godes of Engeland; wherfore he was þe richest Kyng<sup>23</sup> þat euer<sup>24</sup> was in Engeland, after William Bastard of Normandy, þat conquerede Engeland.<sup>25</sup> ¶ And 3itte, prou3 conseH of ham, him semede þat he hade nouzt ynou3, but made 3itte euery touñ of<sup>26</sup> Engeland fynde a man of Armes oppoñ her<sup>27</sup> owen costages,<sup>28</sup> forto goñ<sup>29</sup> and wer<sup>30</sup> oppoñ the<sup>31</sup> Scottes<sup>32</sup> þat Wer his enemys.

Wherfore þe Kyng<sup>33</sup> went into Scotland<sup>34</sup> wiþ an<sup>35</sup> hundred þousande men of Armes at Whitsontide, in the 3ere of our<sup>36</sup> Lord God<sup>37</sup> M<sup>38</sup> CCC &<sup>39</sup> xxij. But þe Scottes went and hud ham in Mounteyns and in Wodes, and tariede þe Englisshe-men fro<sup>40</sup> day to day, þat þe Kyng myght for no maner þing<sup>41</sup> ham fynde in pleyn felde; wherfore meny Englisshe-<sup>42</sup>men, þat few vitailles hade,<sup>43</sup> for hunger<sup>44</sup> þe<sup>45</sup> pere deiden<sup>46</sup> wonder<sup>47</sup> faste, and sodeynly, for hunger<sup>48</sup> in goyng<sup>49</sup> and in comyng<sup>50</sup>, and nameliche<sup>51</sup> þo þat hade bene ageyns Thomas of Lancastre, and hade robbet his men oppoñ his landes. ¶ When Kyng<sup>52</sup> Edward saw þat vitailles failede him, he was þo wonder<sup>53</sup> sore discomfortede,<sup>54</sup> for enchesouñ also þat his men so deide, and also for he might nouzt spede of his<sup>55</sup> enemys; so at þe<sup>56</sup>

<sup>1</sup> disherite D. <sup>2</sup> MS. has Robert þe, with þe underlined for omission.

<sup>3-3</sup> were wrongefully D. <sup>4</sup> om. DO. <sup>5</sup> tok D. <sup>6</sup> be O.

<sup>7-7</sup> calle ham D. <sup>8</sup> her DO. his R. <sup>9</sup> and for-euer-more DO.

<sup>10-10</sup> hem aH O. <sup>11-11</sup> þo godes D. þo goodes O. <sup>12</sup> owed O.

<sup>13</sup> om. O. <sup>14</sup> om. D. <sup>15-15</sup> om. O. <sup>16</sup> in O. <sup>17</sup> Costage O.

<sup>18</sup> go O. <sup>19</sup> leaf 130. <sup>20-20</sup> om. D. <sup>21</sup> a O.

<sup>22</sup> god a O. <sup>23</sup> fram D.

<sup>24-24</sup> þat wanted vitailles D. men þat fewe vitalles hadden O.

<sup>25-25</sup> þey dide O. <sup>26</sup> namely DO. <sup>27</sup> descomfitede D. discomfited O.

last he come aȝeyne into Engeland. And anone after come Iames<sup>1</sup> Douglas and<sup>2</sup> Thomas Randolf wip an huge ost <sup>3</sup>into Engeland,<sup>3</sup> into Northumberland, and wip ham þe Engliſſhe-men þat wer dryuen out of Engeland, & come and robbet the contre, and <sup>4</sup>quelledede þe peple,<sup>4</sup> and also brent<sup>5</sup> þe touñ þat was callede Northallertouñ, and meny oþer townes vnto ȝork. ¶ And when þe Kyng herd þis þing,<sup>6</sup> he lete [sompne] alle maner men þat might trauaile. And so þe Engliſſhemen mette þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Beihe-<sup>8</sup>land, þe xv day after Michelmasse in þe same ȝer abouesaide; And þe Engliſſhe-men wer þere descomfited; & at þat scomfiture was tak<sup>7</sup> Sir Iohn of Britaygn, Erl of <sup>8</sup>Richemonde, þat helde þe contre and the Erldome of Lancastre; and after, he paiede an <sup>12</sup>huge raunsoun, and was lete gone; and after þat he went into Fraunce and come neuer after<sup>9</sup> aȝeyn.

**How Sir Andrew of Herkela was taken,<sup>10</sup> and put vnto þe<sup>11</sup> dep, þat was Erl of Cardoile. Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup>.** 16

**A**Nd at þat tyme Sir Andrew of Herkela, þat <sup>12</sup>newe was<sup>12</sup> made Erl of Cardoile, for cause þat he hade taken<sup>13</sup> þe goode Erl<sup>14</sup> of Lancastre, he hade ordeyned, þrouȝ þe Kyngus commandement of Engeland, forto bryng him aȝ þe power þat he might, forto <sup>20</sup>helpe him aȝeyns þe Scottes atte þe Abbay of Behigland. ¶ And when þe false traitoure hade gadrede aȝ þe peple þat he might, and shulde haue comen<sup>15</sup> to þe Kyng to<sup>16</sup> þe Abbay of Biegland, þe false traitoure lad ham by anoþer contre þrouȝ<sup>17</sup> Copeland, and <sup>24</sup>þrouȝ þe Erldome of<sup>18</sup> Lancastir, and went þrouȝ þe contre, and robbit and quelledede folc, al þat he<sup>19</sup> might. ¶ And ferþermore þe false traitour hade take<sup>20</sup> a gret some of golde<sup>21</sup> of Sir Iamys Douglas, forto bene<sup>22</sup> aȝeyns þe Kyng of Engeland, and to bene<sup>22</sup> <sup>28</sup>helpyng and holdyng wip þe Scottes; þrouȝ whos tresoun þe Kyng of Engeland was scomfitede at Biheland er þat he come pider; wherfore þe Kyng was <sup>23</sup>toward him ful<sup>23</sup> wroȝ, and lete priuely enquere in<sup>24</sup> þe contre about,<sup>25</sup> how<sup>26</sup> hit was. and so men <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Iame D. <sup>2</sup> and also DO. <sup>3-3</sup> om. D. <sup>4</sup> folc D.

<sup>5</sup> brenned D. <sup>6</sup> tydyng DO. <sup>7</sup> taken D. <sup>8</sup> leaf 130, back.

<sup>9</sup> afterward O. <sup>10</sup> take O. <sup>11</sup> om. DO. <sup>12-12</sup> was newe O.

<sup>13</sup> take O. <sup>14</sup> erl Thomas D. Erle Thomas O. <sup>15</sup> come O.

<sup>16</sup> vnto DO. <sup>17</sup> to D.

<sup>18</sup> MS. of Richemond, with Richemond underlined for omission.

<sup>19</sup> pai D. <sup>20</sup> taken DO. <sup>21</sup> golde and siluer D. gold & siluer O.

<sup>22</sup> be O. <sup>23-23</sup> towards him wonder D. toward hym wondir O.

<sup>24</sup> by DO. <sup>25</sup> om. D. <sup>26</sup> how þat O.

enquerede and aspiede, so<sup>1</sup> þat at the laste<sup>2</sup> treuþ was founde,<sup>3</sup> and sought, and he atteint and taken as a false traitour',—as þe noble Erl Thomas of Lancastre him tolde, er' þat he were doñ <sup>4</sup>to dede<sup>4</sup> at his takyng<sup>5</sup> att Burbrig, and to him saide, þat 'or þat 3ere wer' Doñ, he shulde ben<sup>6</sup> take and holde a traitour': and so hit was, as þe holy man saide. Wherefore þe Kyng sent priuely to Sire Antoyñ<sup>7</sup> of<sup>8</sup> Lucye, a knyzt of þe contre of Cardoile, þat he shulde tak Sir Andrew of Herkela, and put him vnto þe deþ. And to bryng þis þing to<sup>9</sup> þe ende, þe Kyng sent his commission, so þat þe same Andrew was take at Carleel,<sup>10</sup> & ledde vnto þe barr' in maner of an Erl, worthely arraied, and with a suorde gert aboute him, and hosede and spored. ¶ þo spak Sir Antoyñ<sup>7</sup> in þis maner. "Sir Andrew," quod he, "þe Kyng put oppoñ þe þat, for-asmiche as<sup>11</sup> 3e haue<sup>12</sup> bene orpede in 3our' dedes, he dede vnto<sup>13</sup> 3ow michel<sup>14</sup> honour, and made 3ow Erle of Carlele<sup>15</sup>; and þow, as<sup>16</sup> traitoure vnto<sup>17</sup> þi lord þe Kyng, laddest his peple of þis contrey, þat shulde haue holpe him at þe bataile of Bihiland; and þow laddest ham away by þe contre of Copeland, and prou3 þe Erldome of Lancast', wherfor our' lord þe Kyng was scomfitede <sup>18</sup>in bataile<sup>18</sup> pere of the Scottes, prou3 þi tresoun and falsenesse. And if þow<sup>19</sup> hadest <sup>20</sup>come betyme,<sup>20</sup> he hade yhade þe maistre; and al þat tresoun þow dedest,<sup>21</sup> for þe<sup>22</sup> grete somme of golde and<sup>23</sup> siluer' þat þow vnderfong<sup>24</sup> of Iames Douglas, a Scott, þe Kynges enemy. ¶ And our' Lorde þe Kyngus wille is, þat 3e, þe ordre of Knyght-hode,—by þe whiche þow<sup>24</sup> vnderfonge al þin<sup>25</sup> honour and worship oppoñ þi body,—be al <sup>26</sup>brouzt to<sup>26</sup> nouzt, and þi state vndone, þat opere knyghtes of lawer' Degre mowe after þe be-ware; þe 28 whiche lorde haþ þe auancede hugely in diuerse<sup>27</sup> <sup>28</sup>contrees of Engeland; and þat alle <sup>29</sup>may take ensample<sup>29</sup> by þe,<sup>30</sup> her lord backward<sup>8</sup> trewely forto serue."

¶ þo commanded he a knaf anone<sup>8</sup> to hew of his spores of<sup>31</sup> his

<sup>1</sup> so þat O. so R. <sup>2</sup> laste þe D. laste þat O. <sup>3</sup> founden D.  
<sup>4-4</sup> vnto deth DO. <sup>5</sup> leaf 131. <sup>6</sup> be DO. <sup>7</sup> Antony O.

<sup>8</sup> om. D. <sup>9</sup> vnto DO. <sup>10</sup> Kerdoiñ D. Cardoiñ O.  
<sup>11</sup> þat D. <sup>12</sup> han O. <sup>13</sup> to D. <sup>14</sup> mych O.

<sup>15</sup> Cardoiñ DO. <sup>16</sup> as a DO.

<sup>17</sup> MS. vnto þi lord, with þi lord underlined for omission; to D.  
<sup>18-18</sup> om. DO. <sup>19</sup> altered from 3ow in MS. <sup>20-20</sup> comen be-tymes D.

<sup>21</sup> tresoun þow dedest! D. tresoun þow dedest O. tresoun R. <sup>22</sup> a D.  
<sup>23</sup> and of D. <sup>24</sup> 3e D. <sup>25</sup> þy O. <sup>26-26</sup> y-brought vnto O.

<sup>27</sup> diuerse D. diuers O. <sup>28</sup> leaf 131, back.

<sup>29-29</sup> mow take a sample D. mowe take ensample O. <sup>30</sup> om. O.  
<sup>31</sup> with sic O.

heles; & after he lete breke þe suerde ouer his heuede,<sup>1</sup> þe whiche þe Kyng<sup>2</sup> him ȝaf<sup>2</sup> to kepe and defende his<sup>3</sup> lande þerwiþ, when he made him Erl of Cardoile; and after he lete him vncloþe of his furrede mantel<sup>4</sup> and of his hood,<sup>5</sup> and of his furrede Cotes and of<sup>4</sup> his gerdeH. And when þis was doñ, Sire Antoyne<sup>6</sup> saide vnto him: "Andrew," quod he, "now art þow no knyzt, but a knaue; and for þi treson þe Kyng wille þat þow bene<sup>7</sup> honged & drawe,<sup>8</sup> and<sup>9</sup> þin heuede smyten<sup>9</sup> of, and þi bowelles taken out of þi body, 8 and þi bowelles brent,<sup>10</sup> and þi body quarterede, and<sup>11</sup> þin heuede smyten<sup>11</sup> of, and sent vnto<sup>12</sup> London; and þere hit shal<sup>13</sup> be sette<sup>13</sup> oppon London Brigge; and þi iiij<sup>14</sup> quarters shal be sent to iiij tounes of Engeland, þat alle oþere mowe be-ware and chastisede by<sup>12</sup> þe." And as Antoyne<sup>15</sup> saide, so hit was done, al maner þing, on<sup>16</sup> þe last day of Ottobre, in þe ȝer of grace M<sup>t</sup> CCC<sup>17</sup> xxij ȝere<sup>14</sup>; and þe somme þo turnede into<sup>18</sup> blode, as þe peple it saw. ¶ And þat durede fro<sup>19</sup> þe morne,<sup>19</sup> til hit was xj of þe Clokke of þe day. 16

¶ Of þe miracles þat God wrouzt for Seint Thomas loue of Lancastre; wherfore þe Kyng lete close þe cherche dores of<sup>20</sup> Pountfret, <sup>21</sup> of þe Prioury,<sup>21</sup> for no man shulde come þerin<sup>22</sup> to þe body<sup>22</sup> forto offre. Capitulo Ducentesimo 20  
¶ Primo.

**A**Nd sone after<sup>23</sup> the Gode Erl Thomas of Lan<sup>24</sup>castr was martrede,<sup>25</sup> a preste, þat<sup>14</sup> Longe tyme<sup>26</sup> hade ben<sup>26</sup> blynde, dremede in his slepyng þat he shulde gone<sup>27</sup> vnto þe huH þere þat<sup>24</sup> þe gode<sup>28</sup> Erl Thomas of Lancastre<sup>28</sup> was doñ vnto dep, and he shulde haue his sight aȝein: and so he dremede iij nyghtes sewyng.<sup>29</sup> And þe prest<sup>29</sup> þo lete lede him to þe same huH. ¶ And when he come to þat place þat he was martred on,<sup>30</sup> deuoutely he made þere<sup>28</sup> his prayer,<sup>31</sup> and prayede God and Seynt Thomas þat he might<sup>32</sup> haue his sight aȝeyne. And as he was in his prayers, he laide his right hand oppon þe same place þere<sup>33</sup> þe Gode man was martred

<sup>1</sup> heed O.    <sup>2-2</sup> ȝaf hym O.    <sup>3</sup> þe D.    <sup>4</sup> tabard O.    <sup>5</sup> hodes D.

<sup>6</sup> Antony O.    <sup>7</sup> be O.    <sup>8</sup> drawn D.    <sup>9-9</sup> þy heed smyte O.

<sup>10</sup> brent biforn D.    brent byforn þe O.    <sup>11-11</sup> þy heed smyte O.

<sup>12</sup> to O.    <sup>13-13</sup> stonde DO.    <sup>14</sup> om. O.    <sup>15</sup> Antoyne O.

<sup>16</sup> in DO.    <sup>17</sup> CCC & O.    <sup>18</sup> to D.

<sup>19-19</sup> morne D.    þe morne O.    þe morwe R.    <sup>20</sup> of þe Prioury of D.

<sup>21-21</sup> om. D.    <sup>22-22</sup> om. O.    <sup>23</sup> after þat DO.    <sup>24</sup> leaf 132.

<sup>25</sup> enterede D.    <sup>26-26</sup> þat had be O.    <sup>27</sup> go DO.    <sup>28-28</sup> Thomas O.

<sup>29-29</sup> MS. and þe prest and þe preste.    <sup>30</sup> in D.    <sup>31</sup> prayers DO.

<sup>32</sup> must O.    <sup>33</sup> þat O.



on<sup>1</sup>; and a drope of dry bloode and smal sande cleued on<sup>2</sup> his  
honde,<sup>3</sup> and *perwip* he striked his eyne, and anone, prou<sup>3</sup> þe might  
of God and of Seynt Thomas of Lancastre, he hade his sight azeyn,  
4 and þankede þo Almighty God and Seynt Thomas. ¶ And when  
þis miracle was <sup>4</sup>cuð amonges men,<sup>4</sup> þe peple come *þider* on<sup>2</sup> euery  
side, and knelede, and made her *praiers* at his tombe þat is in the  
Priori of Pountfrett, and *praiede* þat holy martr, of Socour and of  
8 helpe, and God herd her prayer. ¶ Also *þere* was a 3onge childe  
drenchede in a welle in þe touñ of Pountfrett, and was dede iij  
daies and iij nyghtes; and men come<sup>5</sup> and laide þe dede childe  
oppoñ seint Thomas tombe, þe holy martr; and þe childe aros  
12 <sup>6</sup>*þere* fram<sup>6</sup> þe<sup>1</sup> deþ vnto<sup>7</sup> lif,<sup>8</sup> as meny a man hit saw; & also  
miche peple wer<sup>9</sup> out of here mynde, & God hap sent ham her  
mynde azeyn prou<sup>3</sup> vertu of þat holy martr. ¶ And also God  
hap<sup>10</sup> 3euen<sup>11</sup> to creples hir goyng, and to crokede her hondes and  
16 her feet, and to blinde also her sight, and to meny sike folc her  
hele, þat hadde diuerse maladyes, for the loue of his gode martre.  
¶ Also *þer* was a riche man in Coundoñ in Gascoigne; and soche a  
maladie he had, þat al his right side rotede, and felle awaie fram<sup>12</sup>  
20 him; and men might se his Lyuer and also his hert; and so he  
stank, þat vnneþ men might come neiþ him; Wherefore his frendes<sup>13</sup>  
for him<sup>14</sup> were ful<sup>14</sup> sory. ¶ But at þe last, as God wolde, þai  
prayed to Seint Thomas of Lancastre, þat he wolde praye to  
24 Almighty God for þat prisoun, and bihight to goñ<sup>15</sup> to Pountfrett  
forto done<sup>16</sup> her pilgrimage. And þe goode man sone after<sup>17</sup> slepte  
ful softe, and dremed þat þe martre Seynt Thomas come vnto him,  
and enoynted<sup>18</sup> oueral his sike side.<sup>19</sup> And *perwip* þe gode man  
28 awoke, and was al<sup>20</sup> hole; and his flesshe was restorede azein,<sup>21</sup> þat  
bifore was <sup>22</sup>rotede and felle<sup>22</sup> away; for whiche miracle þe good  
man & his frendes louede God and Seint Thomas euermore after.  
¶ And þis gode man come into Engeland, and toke<sup>23</sup> with him iij  
32 felawes, and come to Pountfrett, <sup>24</sup>& come to<sup>24</sup> þat holy martr, and  
dede her pilgrimage; but þe gode man þat was sik come *þider* al

<sup>1</sup> om. DO.    <sup>2</sup> in O.    <sup>3</sup> fengeres D.<sup>4-4</sup> knowen D.    knowe among men O.    <sup>5</sup> comen O.    <sup>6-6</sup> fro O.<sup>7</sup> to DO.    <sup>8</sup> lyve O.    <sup>9</sup> leaf 132, back.    <sup>10</sup> hane O.<sup>11</sup> 3euen *þere* D.    3oue *þere* O.    <sup>12</sup> fro O.<sup>13</sup> frendes wer<sup>9</sup> D.    frendes were O.    <sup>14-14</sup> wonder D.    wondir O.<sup>15</sup> go O.    <sup>16</sup> do D.    <sup>17</sup> afte D.    <sup>18</sup> annoyntede him D.<sup>19</sup> body O.    <sup>20</sup> om. D.    <sup>21</sup> om. D.<sup>22-22</sup> roten and falle D.    roted & falle O.    <sup>23</sup> nome D.<sup>24-24</sup> vnto DO.

naked, saf his breche ; and when þai hade done, þai turnede home azeine into her<sup>1</sup> contre, and tolde of þe miracle wher-so þat þai come. ¶ And also ij men haue bene heled pere of þe morimal, prou3 helpe of þat holy martre, pou3 þat euel be holde incurable. 4

¶ When þe Spensers herde þat God wrou3t<sup>1</sup> soche miracles for his holy martre, and þai wolde nou3t<sup>2</sup> bileue hit in no maner wise, but saide<sup>3</sup> openly<sup>4</sup> þat hit was grete heresie, soche vertu<sup>5</sup> of<sup>6</sup> him to bileue. ¶ And when<sup>7</sup> Sir<sup>8</sup> Hugh þe Spenser, þe sone, saw al<sup>8</sup> 8 þis doynge, anone he sent his<sup>9</sup> messagers fram<sup>9</sup> Pountfret þer<sup>7</sup> þat<sup>10</sup> he duellede þo, to þe<sup>2</sup> Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edward, þat þo was at Graue ne atte Skipton, for cause þat þe Kyng shulde vndo his<sup>11</sup> pilgrimage. ¶ And as þe rybaude þat was messenger<sup>12</sup> come to<sup>12</sup> þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> forto 12 doñ his<sup>13</sup> message, he come by þe hull pere<sup>14</sup> þe gode man was done vnto deth ; and in þe same place he made his ordur<sup>1</sup> ; and when he hade ydoñ, he went toward þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> ; and a stronge flux him come oppon er<sup>1</sup> he come to 3ork<sup>4</sup>, and shedde all his bowailles at his 16 fundement.

¶ And when Sir<sup>1</sup> Hugh þe Spenser herde þis tydyngus,<sup>15</sup> somdel he was adrad, and pou3t forto vndo þe pilgrimage, if he might by eny maner way ; And to þe Kyng went, and saide þat þai shulde 20 be in grete schlaundre prou3-out al Cristendome for the dep of Thomas of Lancastre, if þat he soffrede þe peple done<sup>16</sup> her<sup>1</sup> pilgrimage at Pountfret<sup>4</sup>. And so he conseilede þe Kyng<sup>4</sup>, þat he comandede to close<sup>17</sup> þe cherche dores of Pountfret<sup>4</sup>, in þe whiche cherch þe holy 24 martre Seynt Thomas was enterede ; and þus þai deden, 18 azeins al<sup>18</sup> fraunchise of holy cherche, so þat iiij 3er<sup>1</sup> after myght no pilgrime come vnto<sup>19</sup> þat holy body. ¶ And for enchesoun þat<sup>20</sup> monkes soffred men come & honour þat holy body of Seynt Thomas þe martre, 28 prou3 conseile of Sir<sup>1</sup> Hugh þe Spenser þe Sone, and prou3 conseile also of Maistre Robert Baldok<sup>4</sup>, a<sup>21</sup> false<sup>22</sup> piled clerk<sup>4</sup> þat was þe Kynges Chancellor, þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> consented that þai shulde be sette 23 to her<sup>1</sup> wages, and Lete make Wardeynes ouer her<sup>1</sup> owen Godes<sup>24</sup> longe 32 tyme. ¶ And prou3 þe<sup>7</sup> commandement of þe forsaide Sir<sup>1</sup> Hugh þe Sepenser, xiiij Gascoignes wel armed kepte þe hull þer þat þe gode<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> dede DO.    <sup>2</sup> om. DO.    <sup>3</sup> seyden O.    <sup>4</sup> leaf 133.

<sup>5</sup> vertues D.    <sup>6</sup> on O.    <sup>7</sup> om. O.    <sup>8-11</sup> when he herd al of O.

<sup>9-12</sup> Messenger fro O.    <sup>10</sup> om. D.    <sup>11</sup> þe O.

<sup>12-13</sup> went toward D.    wente toward O.    <sup>14</sup> her<sup>1</sup> D.    <sup>15</sup> þat O.

<sup>16</sup> tydyng<sup>4</sup> DO.    <sup>17</sup> do D.    <sup>18</sup> close in D.    <sup>19-18</sup> aþ a3ens O.

<sup>19</sup> to D.    <sup>20</sup> þat þe DO.    <sup>21</sup> þe DO.    <sup>22</sup> fals cursed O.

<sup>23</sup> leaf 133, back.    <sup>24</sup> gode D.    good O.

<sup>25</sup> gode man D.    good man O.

Seint Thomas was don vnto his<sup>1</sup> dep and bihedede,<sup>2</sup> so þat no pilgrime might come. By þat way ful wel wende he forto<sup>3</sup> haue binome<sup>4</sup> Cristus might and his power, and þe grete loos of miracles  
4 þat he shewede for his martre Thomas þou3-out<sup>5</sup> al Cristendome.

¶ And þat same tyme þe Kyng made Robert of Baldok, a pilede clerc and a false, þrou3<sup>6</sup> conseile &<sup>6</sup> prairer of Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe sone, Chancellor of Engeland. And in þe<sup>7</sup> same tyme  
8 was þe castel of Wallingford holden a3eynes<sup>8</sup> þe Kyng, þrou3 þe prisoners þat were wiþin þe castel, for Seint Thomas quereH of Lancastre. Wherefore þe pep[l]e of þe contre come & tok the castel oppoñ þe<sup>9</sup> prisoners; wherefore Sire Iohn of Goleintoñ, knyzt, and  
12 Sir Edmund of<sup>10</sup> Bech, parsoñ, and a squyer þat me callede Roger of Walton, wer' taken<sup>11</sup> and sent to the Kyng to Pounfret; and þere þai wer' done into prison; and þe forsaide Roger was sent vnto  
3ork, and þere he was draw and honged.

¶ And aftirward,<sup>12</sup> Sir Roger Mortimer of Wygemore brak out of þe Toure of London<sup>13</sup> in þis maner: <sup>14</sup>þe forsaide Sir Roger<sup>14</sup> herde<sup>15</sup> þat he shulde bene<sup>16</sup> draw and hongede at London, <sup>17</sup>in þe morne<sup>17</sup> after Seint Laurence day; <sup>18</sup>and on þe dai bifore,<sup>18</sup> he helde  
20 a fair fest in þe Tour of London, and þo was Sir Stephen <sup>19</sup>Segraue, Conestable of London, and meny grete men wiþ him. ¶ And when þai shulde sopen,<sup>20</sup> þe forsaide Stephen sent for alle þe officers of the Toure; and þai come and soppede wiþ him; and when þai  
24 shulde take her leue of him, a squyer þat me callede Stephen, þat was ful priue wiþ þe forsaide Roger, þrou3 heir conseile 3af ham alle soche a drynk, þat þe lest of ham alle slepte ij dayes & ij nightes; and in þe<sup>21</sup> mene-tyme he scapede away by water, þat is to  
28 seyn, by þe<sup>22</sup> Tamise, and went ouer þe see, and helde him in Fraunce; wherefore þe Kyng was sore annoied, and þo put þe same Stephen out of his Conestablers.

**How þe Quene IsabeH went into Fraunce forto treten<sup>23</sup> of pees**  
32 bituene her lord, þe<sup>1</sup> Kyng of Engel<sup>and</sup>, & þe Kyng of Fraunce, her broþer. *Capitulo Ducentesimo Secundo.*

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> byheded O.    <sup>3</sup> to O.    <sup>4</sup> bynomen D. fulfilled O.

<sup>5</sup> þurght O.    <sup>6-6</sup> om. DO.    <sup>7</sup> þat D.    <sup>8</sup> a3eyn D.

<sup>9</sup> þe forsaide D.    þe forseyd O.    <sup>10</sup> of þe DO.    <sup>11</sup> take O.

<sup>12</sup> anone after D.    anon after O.    <sup>13</sup> London & O.

<sup>14-14</sup> Sir Roger þe forseyd O.    <sup>15</sup> saw D.    <sup>16</sup> be O.

<sup>17-17</sup> on þe morw D.    in þe morowe O.    <sup>18-18</sup> before on day O.

<sup>19</sup> leaf 134.    <sup>20</sup> sope DO.    <sup>21</sup> þat D.    <sup>22</sup> om. DO.    <sup>23</sup> trete DO.

**T**He Kyng<sup>1</sup> went þo vnto London, and þere, þrouȝ counsel of Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, and of his sone, and of maistre Robert of<sup>1</sup> Baldok, a false pilede clere, his Chancellor, lete seise þo alle þe Quenes landes into his owen honde, and also alle þe landes þat were Sir<sup>2</sup> Edward his<sup>2</sup> sones, and were þo<sup>1</sup> put to her<sup>1</sup> wages, aȝeins al maner<sup>1</sup> resoñ; and þat was þrouȝ þe falsnesse of þe Spensers. ¶ And when þe Kyng of<sup>1</sup> Fraunce, þat was þe<sup>3</sup> Quene Isabelles broþer, herde of þis falsnesse, he was sore annoyed<sup>8</sup> aȝeins þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Engeland and his false conseilers; wherfore he sent a lettre vnto Kyng Edward, vnder<sup>1</sup> his seal, þat he shulde come into Fraunce att a certeyn day forto<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>done His homag; and þerto he sompnede him; and elles<sup>6</sup> he shulde lese al Gascoigne. 12 ¶ And so Hit was ordeynede in Engeland, þrouȝ þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> and his Counseil, þat Quene IsabeH shulde<sup>7</sup> wende into<sup>8</sup> Fraunce, forto trete of pees bituene her<sup>1</sup> lord<sup>1</sup> and<sup>1</sup> her<sup>1</sup> broþer; and þat Olyuer<sup>1</sup> of Yngham shulde wende into Gascoigne, and shulde<sup>3</sup> haue wiþ him 16 vij M<sup>1</sup> men and mo of Armes, to bene<sup>9</sup> Senescal and wardein of Gascoign. And so hit was ordeynede þat Quene Isabel went þo ouer<sup>1</sup> þe see, and come into Fraunce, and wiþ her<sup>1</sup> went Sir Aymer<sup>1</sup> of Valence, Erl of Penbrok, þat was þer mordrede sodeynly<sup>10</sup> on a 20 priue<sup>10</sup> sege: but þat was þrouȝ Godes vengeance, for he was on of þe Iustices þat consentede to Seint Thomas dep<sup>11</sup> of Lancastre, & wolde neuer afterward repente him of þat wicked dede. ¶ And at þat tyme Sir Olyuer<sup>1</sup> of Yngham went ouer<sup>12</sup> into Gascoigne, and 24 dede miche harme to þe Kyng of<sup>1</sup> Fraunce, and þo gete aȝein þat Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward hade loste, &<sup>13</sup> more þerto.

**How Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward sent Sir<sup>1</sup> Edward his sone, þe eldest, into Fraunce. Capitulo Ducentesimo Tercio.**

28

**T**He Quene Isabel nad<sup>14</sup> nouȝt bene<sup>14</sup> but a quarter of a ȝer in Fraunce duellyng<sup>15</sup>, þat Sir<sup>1</sup> Edward, his eldest<sup>1</sup> sone, ne axede Leue forto wende into Fraunce forto spek<sup>1</sup> wiþ his moder, Isabel þe quene. And þe Kyng his fader<sup>16</sup> grantede him<sup>16</sup> with 32 gode wille, and saile to him, “go, my fair<sup>1</sup> sone, in Godes blessing<sup>1</sup> and myn; and þenk<sup>1</sup> forto come aȝein as hasteli as þow maiste.<sup>17</sup>”

<sup>1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2-2</sup> Edwardes her<sup>1</sup> D.    Edwardes his O.    <sup>3</sup> om. DO.

<sup>4</sup> MS. forto forto.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 134, back.    <sup>6</sup> et O.

<sup>7</sup> shul shulde sic D.    <sup>8</sup> in D.    <sup>9</sup> be O.    <sup>10-10</sup> in pyne sic O.

<sup>11</sup> om. O.    <sup>12</sup> ouer þe see O.    <sup>13</sup> and miche D.    & myche O.

<sup>14-14</sup> om. DO.    <sup>15</sup> duellede D.    dwelled O.

<sup>16-16</sup> him grantede D.    <sup>17</sup> miȝt D.    myght O.

and he come<sup>1</sup> ouer the<sup>2</sup> see<sup>3</sup> into Fraunce; and þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> of Fraunce, his Vncle, <sup>4</sup>vnderfonge Him wiþ michel<sup>5</sup> honour, and saide to<sup>6</sup> him, “faire sone, 3e <sup>7</sup>ben welcomen<sup>7</sup>; and for cause þat <sup>4</sup>3our<sup>4</sup> fader<sup>4</sup> comeþ<sup>8</sup> nouzt<sup>9</sup> forto done his homage for þe Duchee of Ghien, as his auncestres were wont forto done, y 3eue 3ow<sup>10</sup> þat lordship, to holde hit of me in heritage as<sup>11</sup> 3oure auncestre deden<sup>12</sup> bfore<sup>13</sup> 3ow.” Wherefore he was callede Duk of Gyene.

8 How Kyng Edward exilede his Quene,<sup>14</sup> and Edward<sup>15</sup> his eldest<sup>2</sup> sone. *Capitulo CC quarto.*

**W**Hen Kyng Edward of Engeland herde telle how the Kyng of France hade 3eue þe duche of Gieñe vnto Sire Edward  
12 his sone, wiþouten<sup>15</sup> consent and wille of him, and þat his sone hade vnderfonge þe Duchie <sup>16</sup>of him,<sup>16</sup> he bcome wonder wroþ, and sent<sup>1</sup> to his sone bi his<sup>17</sup> lettre, & to his wif also, þat þai shulde come<sup>18</sup> into Engeland wiþ al þe haste þat þai<sup>19</sup> might. ¶ The Quene  
16 IsabeH, & Sire Edward her sone, <sup>20</sup>were wonder<sup>2</sup> sory and drade<sup>20</sup> of the Kyngus manace and of his wroþ, and principally <sup>21</sup>of the false traitoures<sup>21</sup> þe Spensers, boþe of þe fader and of the sone, & at his commandement þai wolde nouzt come. Wherefore Kyng Edward  
20 was ful sore annoiede, and lete make a crie at London þat, if Quene IsabeH and Edward her sone come nouzt into<sup>22</sup> Engeland, þat þai shulde bene<sup>23</sup> holden<sup>24</sup> as enemys, boþe<sup>25</sup> to þe reaume & to þe croune; and for þat þai wolde nouzt come into Engeland, but boþ  
24 were exilede, þe moder<sup>2</sup> and her<sup>26</sup> sone. ¶ Whe[n]<sup>27</sup> Quene IsabeH herd þis tidingus,<sup>28</sup> she was sore adrad to bene<sup>23</sup> shente þrouz þe false coniettyng of þe Spensers, and went wiþ þe knyghtes þat wer<sup>2</sup> exilede out of Engeland for <sup>29</sup>Seint Thomas quereH<sup>30</sup> of Lancastre,  
28 þat is to seime, Sire Roger Mortymore,<sup>31</sup> Sire William TrusseH, Sire Iohn of CromweH, & meny oþer grete<sup>32</sup> kniztes. ¶ Wherefore þai tok<sup>33</sup> her<sup>2</sup> conseil, & ordeined amoges ham forto make a mariage

<sup>1</sup> went D. <sup>2</sup> om. O. <sup>3</sup> see and went D. <sup>4</sup> leaf 135.

<sup>5</sup> myche O. <sup>6</sup> vnto DO. <sup>7-7</sup> be welcome O. <sup>8</sup> come O.

<sup>9</sup> MS. has nouzt<sup>1</sup> come, with come underlined for omission.

<sup>10</sup> 3ow al D. <sup>11</sup> as al D. as aH O. <sup>12</sup> dede O. <sup>13</sup> biforn D.

<sup>14</sup> Quene Ysabel D. qwen IsabeH O. <sup>15</sup> with-out D. with-out O.

<sup>16-16</sup> om. D. <sup>17</sup> om. D. <sup>18</sup> come a3eyn D. come a3en O. <sup>19</sup> 3e D.

<sup>20-20</sup> weren sore adrade D. were wonder sore adrad<sup>1</sup> O.

<sup>21-21</sup> þe falsnesse of D. of þe falsnes of O. <sup>22</sup> vnto D. <sup>23</sup> be O.

<sup>24</sup> holde DO. <sup>25</sup> boþe ij D. <sup>26</sup> þe D. <sup>27</sup> When þe D.

<sup>28</sup> tydyng O. <sup>29</sup> leaf 135, back. <sup>30</sup> Cause DO.

<sup>31</sup> Mortymere of Wigemore D. Mortymer of Wygemore O.

<sup>32</sup> gode D. good O. <sup>33</sup> nomen D.

bituene þe Duc of Gyene, þe Kyngus sone of Engeland, and the Erles douȝter of Henauk, þat was a noble knyȝt of name, and a douȝty in his tyme. And<sup>1</sup> if þat þing might be<sup>2</sup> brouȝt about and stand, þai trowede, wiþ þe helpe of God, and wiþ his helpe, to<sup>4</sup> recouere heir<sup>3</sup> heritage in Engeland, wherof þai were put out<sup>4</sup> prouȝ the<sup>5</sup> coniettyng of þe false<sup>6</sup> Spensers.

¶ How Kyng Edward, prouȝ conſeile of þe Spensers, sent to þe Duȝſpiers of Fraunce, þat þai ſhulde helpe þat<sup>7</sup> Quene<sup>8</sup> Iſabeſſ, and hire sone Sir Edward, weren<sup>8</sup> exiled out of Fraunce. *Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> v<sup>to</sup>.*

WHen Kyng Edward and þe Spensers herde how Quene Isabel, and Sir Edward her sone, hade Aliede ham to þe<sup>12</sup> Erle of Henauk, and to ham þat were exiled out of Engeland for encheson of Thomas of Lancastre, þey<sup>9</sup> were so sory þat þai niſt what to done. Wherefore Sir Hugh þe Spenser, þe sone, ſaide vnto Sir Hugh his fader, in þis maner wiſe, and ſaide: “Fader, accursede<sup>16</sup> be þe tyme & þe conſeil þat euer ȝe conſentede þat Quene Isabel ſhulde gone<sup>10</sup> into Fraunce forto treten<sup>11</sup> of<sup>12</sup> accorde bituene þe Kyng of Engeland & her broþer þe Kyng of Fraunce, for þat was ȝour<sup>1</sup> conſeile, for at þat tyme for-ſoþe ȝour witte faillede; for Y<sup>20</sup> drede me ſore<sup>13</sup> leſt, prouȝ her & her<sup>14</sup> ſone, We<sup>15</sup> ſhul be<sup>15</sup> ſhent, but if we take þe<sup>16</sup> better conſel.”

¶ Now, fair ſires, vnderſtondeþ how mervailloſ folie<sup>17</sup> and falsehede þe Spensers ymagynede & caſte; for priuely þai lete fille<sup>24</sup> v banelles ferers wiþ ſiluer,—þe ſomme amontede v M<sup>t</sup> ti,—and þai ſent þo<sup>18</sup> banelle oue[r] þe ſe priuely by<sup>18</sup> an Alien þat me callede Arnolde of Spaign, þat was a brocour of London, þat he ſhulde go to þe Duȝſpiers of France, þat þai ſhulde procuren and ſpeken<sup>19</sup> 28 to þe Kyng of Fraunce, þat Quene Isabel and<sup>20</sup> Edward her sone were dryue<sup>20</sup> and exiled out of Fraunce,<sup>21</sup> and, amonge al oþer þingus,<sup>21</sup> þat þai were brouȝ to<sup>22</sup> þe deþ as priuely as þai might.

<sup>1</sup> þat D.      <sup>2</sup> bene D.      <sup>3</sup> his O.      <sup>4</sup> om. O.

<sup>5</sup> þe false D.      þe fals O.      <sup>6</sup> om. DO.      <sup>7</sup> þat þe D.      <sup>8</sup> wer' O.

<sup>9</sup> MS. þat.      <sup>10</sup> go O.      <sup>11</sup> trete DO.      <sup>12</sup> & O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. ſore for, with for underlined for omission.      <sup>14</sup> leaf 136.

<sup>15—17</sup> ſhulleþ bene D.      <sup>16</sup> om. O.      <sup>17</sup> felonye DO.

<sup>18—18</sup> banelles priueliſch ouer þe ſee with D.      bareſſ ouer þe ſee pryuely by O.      <sup>19</sup> ſpeke DO.

<sup>20—20</sup> her sone Edward wer dryuen D.      her sone Edward were dryven O.

<sup>21—21</sup> MS. and amonge al oþer þingus & amonge al oþer þinges.

<sup>22</sup> vnto D.

But Almighty God wolde nouȝt so; ¶ ffor when þis Arnolde was in þe hye see, he was taken<sup>1</sup> wiþ Selanders þat mette him in þe see, and toke<sup>2</sup> him, & lad him to her' Lord<sup>3</sup>, þe Erl of Henaude; & miche  
 4 ioye was made for þat takyng. ¶ And at þe laste, þis Arnolde priuely<sup>4</sup> stale away fro þens, and come<sup>5</sup> to Londoñ. And of þis takyng, and of<sup>6</sup> oþer þinges, þe Erl of Henaude saide to þe Quene Isabel: "dame, <sup>7</sup>make 3ow<sup>7</sup> mery and beþ of gode chier', for 3e  
 8 beþ<sup>8</sup> more riche<sup>9</sup> þan 3e wende forto<sup>10</sup> haue bene; & tak 3e þise v barelles<sup>11</sup> of Siluer' þat were sent to þe Duzsepier of Fraunce forto<sup>12</sup> quelle 3ow & 3our' sone Edward; and þenkeþ hastely forto wende into Engeland<sup>13</sup>; and tak 3e wiþ þow Sir' Iohn of Henaude, my  
 12 broþer, and v C men of Armes; for meny of ham of Fraunce, in whom 3e haue <sup>13</sup>hade grete truste, hade grete deintee þow<sup>14</sup> forto scorne: and Almighty God grant 3ow grace, 3our' enemys forto<sup>15</sup> ouercome." ¶ þe Quene Isabel sent þo þrouȝ Henaude and Flaundres  
 16 for her' sodiours, and ordeinede her' euery day forto<sup>16</sup> wende into Engeland<sup>17</sup> aȝeine; and so she had in her' company Sire Edmund of Wodestoke, þat was Erl of Kent, þat was Kyng<sup>17</sup> Edwardes broþer of Engeland<sup>18</sup>.

20 <sup>18</sup>How Kyng Edward lete kepe þe costes bi<sup>19</sup> þe see, & lete trie alle the pris men of Armes & footmen also þrouȝ al<sup>20</sup> Engeland. Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> vj<sup>to</sup>.<sup>18</sup>

24 **W**Hen Kyng Edward herde telle þat þe Quene Isabel and Edward hir' sone <sup>21</sup>wolde come<sup>21</sup> into Engeland<sup>21</sup> wiþ meny Alienus, and wiþ ham þat were outlawede out of Engeland<sup>21</sup> for her' rebelnesse, he was sore adrade to bene<sup>22</sup> put adoune and lese his kyngdome. Wherefore he ordeynede forto kepe his castelles,<sup>23</sup> in  
 28 Walis as wel as in Engeland<sup>21</sup>, wiþ vitailles and her' apparale, and lete kepe his ryuers, and also þe see costes, wherof þe v Portes token to kepe ham, & also þe see. ¶ And also he commandede ferþermore, &<sup>24</sup> by his lettres ordeynede, þat euery hundred<sup>24</sup> &  
 32 wapentache<sup>25</sup> of Engeland<sup>21</sup>, ij triors,<sup>26</sup> as wel of men of Armes as of

<sup>1</sup> tak D. take O.      <sup>2</sup> token DO.      <sup>3</sup> lord þe O. Lord R.

<sup>4</sup> priueliche D.      <sup>5</sup> comen D.      <sup>6</sup> om. D.

<sup>7-7</sup> now make D.      makeþ 3ow O.      <sup>8</sup> ben. O.      <sup>9</sup> rycher D. richere O.

<sup>10</sup> om. DO.      <sup>11</sup> barelles ful D.      bareþ ful O.      <sup>12</sup> forto DO. for R.

<sup>13</sup> leaf 136, back.      <sup>14</sup> 3ow DO.      <sup>15</sup> to DO.      <sup>16</sup> to O.

<sup>17</sup> sire O.      <sup>18-18</sup> om. O.      <sup>19</sup> of D.      <sup>20</sup> out D.

<sup>21-21</sup> were comen D.      <sup>22</sup> be O.      <sup>23</sup> casteþ D.

<sup>24</sup> ferþermore & O.      ferþermore R.      <sup>25</sup> Wapentage DO.      <sup>26</sup> MS. triors.

<sup>1</sup>men of foote,<sup>1</sup> and þat þai shulde bene<sup>2</sup> put in<sup>3</sup> tuentysome and in hundredesome; and commandet þat al þo men wer' aredy, when eny outesse and crie wer' made, forto pursue and tak þe Aliens þat comen into Engeland forto binime him þe lanck, and forto put him <sup>4</sup>out of his kyngdome. ¶ And more-ouer' he lete crie, prouz his patent, <sup>5</sup>in euery faire and in euery marcat of Engeland, þat þe Quene YsabeH, and Sir' Edward his eldest sone, and þe Erl of Kent, þat þai were take, and safly kepte, wipout<sup>6</sup> eny maner of<sup>7</sup> harme <sup>8</sup>vnto ham doyngt; and alle oþer<sup>7</sup> peple þat come wip ham, anone smyte of her' heuedes,<sup>8</sup> wipout eny maner<sup>9</sup> raunsoñ. ¶ And what man þat might bryng<sup>10</sup> Rogeres heede, þe<sup>11</sup> Mortymer', of Wigemore, shulde haue a<sup>12</sup> Ċ ti of monee for his trauaile. And <sup>12</sup>ferþermore he ordeynede by his patent, & commande,<sup>13</sup> to mak a fire on<sup>14</sup> euery hye huH bisides<sup>15</sup> þe ryuers and in low contres, forto make hye bikenes of tymbre, þat if it so were þat þe Aliens come to<sup>16</sup> þe lande by nyght, þat men shulde<sup>17</sup> tende<sup>18</sup> þe bikenes, þat þe <sup>16</sup>contre miȝt ben<sup>19</sup> warnede, and come and mete her' enemys. And in þe same tyme deide Sir' Roger <sup>20</sup>Mortymer, his<sup>20</sup> Vncle, in þe Toure of Londoñ.

How<sup>21</sup> Quene IsabeH & Sir' Edward, Duc of Gyene, her'<sup>22</sup> Sone, <sup>20</sup>come to lanck at<sup>23</sup> Herwiche; <sup>24</sup>and how þai deden.<sup>24</sup>  
¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Septimo.

**T**He Quene IsabeH and Sir' Edward hir' sone, Duc of Gyene, Sir' Edmund of Wodestok, Erl of Kent,<sup>25</sup> and Sir' Iohn þe <sup>24</sup>Erles<sup>26</sup> broþer of Henauck, and her'<sup>27</sup> company, drade nouȝt þe manace of þe Kyng' ne of his traitoures, for þai truste al in Godes grace, & come vnto Herwiche in Southfole, þe x day <sup>28</sup>in þe mounthe<sup>28</sup> of Ottobr', And in<sup>29</sup> þe ȝere of grace<sup>30</sup> M<sup>t</sup> CCC<sup>31</sup> xxvj. <sup>28</sup>¶ And at<sup>32</sup> þe same tyme, <sup>33</sup>at Londoñ, þere was Kyng Edward<sup>33</sup>

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> foote men D. men on foote O. <sup>2</sup> be O. <sup>3</sup> into D.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 137. <sup>5</sup> with-ouen D. <sup>6</sup> om. DO.

<sup>7</sup> oþer maner D. oþer maner O. <sup>8</sup> heed O.

<sup>9</sup> MS. maner reso, with reso underlined for omission; om. DO.

<sup>10</sup> bryng sire D. brynge sir O. <sup>11</sup> om. O. <sup>12</sup> an DO.

<sup>13</sup> commanded O. <sup>14</sup> oppoñ D. vpon O. <sup>15</sup> beside O.

<sup>16</sup> vnto DO. <sup>17</sup> schul O. <sup>18</sup> light D. <sup>19</sup> be DO.

<sup>20</sup>—<sup>20</sup> Mortymeres D. <sup>21</sup> How þe DO. <sup>22</sup> his O. <sup>23</sup> to O.

<sup>24</sup>—<sup>24</sup> om. O. <sup>25</sup> erl of Kent D. Erle of Kent O. erl R.

<sup>26</sup> MS. erles douȝter, with douȝter underlined for omission.

<sup>27</sup> he sic D. <sup>28</sup>—<sup>28</sup> om. D. <sup>29</sup> om. D. <sup>30</sup> grace a O.

<sup>31</sup> iij sic D. <sup>32</sup> in D.

<sup>33</sup>—<sup>33</sup> Kyng Edward was at Londoñ D. Kyng Edward was at London O.



in<sup>1</sup> the Toure at his metee; and a messenger<sup>2</sup> come into þe haH,  
<sup>3</sup>and saide þat<sup>4</sup> Que[en] IsabeH was comen<sup>5</sup> to lande at<sup>6</sup> Herewiche,  
 and hade brougt in her' company *Sire* Iohn of Henaude, and wiþ  
 4 him men of armes wiþoute nombre. And wiþ þat worde, Sir'  
 Hugh þe Spenser, þe fader, spake &<sup>7</sup> þus to þe Kyng saide<sup>8</sup>:  
 "my most worshipful Lorde,<sup>9</sup> Kyng of Engeland, now mow<sup>10</sup> 3e  
 make gode chere, for certainly þai ben al oures." ¶ The Kyng saw  
 8 þis worde comfortable; 3itte he was ful sorweful & pensif<sup>t</sup> in hert.  
 And þe Kyng hade nouzt 3itte fulliche<sup>11</sup> eten,<sup>12</sup> þat þere ne come  
 into þe halle anoper messenger, and saide þat þe<sup>8</sup> Quene Isabel was  
 arryuede at Herewich, bisides Skipwich<sup>13</sup> in Southfole. Sir' Hugh  
 12 þe<sup>8</sup> Spenser, þe fader, spake<sup>14</sup> to þe messenger, and saide: "telle þe<sup>8</sup>  
 sop in goode fay,<sup>15</sup>" quod he to þe messenger, "my faire frende, is  
 she comen<sup>5</sup> wiþ a grete strengþ?" ¶ "Certis, sir', sop forto say,  
 she hap<sup>16</sup> in her' company but vij C men of Armes." And wiþ þat  
 16 worde, *Sire* Hughe þe Spenser, þe fader, criede wiþ an hye voice,  
 and saide: "Allas, Allas! we<sup>17</sup> beþ alle<sup>17</sup> bitraiede; for certes wiþ  
 so litil power' she<sup>18</sup> nad neuer comen<sup>18</sup> to londe, but folc of þis  
 lande were to her' consentede.<sup>19</sup>" And þerfore, after mete þai  
 20 toke<sup>20</sup> her' conseile, and went toward Walys, forto arere þe Walshe-  
 men azeins Quene IsabeH and Edwarde her' sone, al forto fight;  
 and so þai were in purpos, euerycheon.<sup>21</sup>

**How Maistre Walter of<sup>9</sup> Stapleton, Bisshop of Excestre, þat**  
 24 **was þe Kyngus Tresorer, was biheuedede<sup>22</sup> at London.**  
**Capitulo Ducentesimo Ottauo.**

**A**Nd in þe same tyme, Kyng Edward was sore adrade leste men  
 of London wolde 3elde ham<sup>23</sup> vnto<sup>24</sup> þe Quene Isabel and to Sir'  
 28 Edward her'<sup>25</sup> sone. Wherefore he sent maistre Walter of<sup>9</sup> Stapleton,  
 his Tresorer, forto bene<sup>26</sup> wardein and keper' of þe citee of London  
 wiþ þe Mair'. and so he come to þe GildehaH of London, and axede  
 þe keies of þe 3ates of þe citee, prou3 vertue and strength of his com-  
 32 mission, and wolde haue hade þe Keping of þe citee. ¶ And þe  
 communes<sup>27</sup> ansurede and saide, þat 'þai wolde kepe þe citee to þe

<sup>1</sup> þe sic D.      <sup>2</sup> Messenger O.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 137, back.      <sup>4</sup> þat þe O.

<sup>5</sup> come O.      <sup>6</sup> MS. &.      <sup>7</sup> & seyde O.      <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9</sup> om. D.      <sup>10</sup> MS. mow mow.      <sup>11</sup> ful D.      <sup>12</sup> ete O.

<sup>13</sup> Gypeswych O.      <sup>14</sup> spake þo O.      <sup>15</sup> feþ D.      <sup>16</sup> ne had O.

<sup>17-17</sup> ben O.      <sup>18-18</sup> had neuere come O.

<sup>19</sup> consent D.      consente O.      <sup>20</sup> nome D.      <sup>21</sup> echeon O.

<sup>22</sup> beheded O.      <sup>23</sup> leaf 138.      <sup>24</sup> to D.      <sup>25</sup> his D.      <sup>26</sup> be DO

<sup>27</sup> Comuners O.

honour of<sup>1</sup> Kyng Edward, and of Isabel þe Quene, and of þe Duc, þe Kyngus sone, wipouten<sup>2</sup> eny mo.' ¶ þe Bisshop was þo sore annoiede, and suore his oth þat þai alle shulde abie, anone as þe Kyng<sup>4</sup> were come<sup>3</sup> out of Walys; and þe comuners<sup>4</sup> anoñ,<sup>5</sup> alle<sup>6</sup> 4 of þe citee, toke<sup>7</sup> þe Bisshope, and lade him amid<sup>8</sup> Chepe; and þere þai smyten<sup>9</sup> of his heuede,<sup>10</sup> & sette<sup>11</sup> his heede<sup>11</sup> in his right hand; and after, þai biheuedede<sup>12</sup> ij of his Squyers þat helde wip þe Bisshope; and one of ham me callede William of Walle, þat was 8 þe Bisshoppes Newew; & þat oper me callede Iohn of Padyngtoñ. and also þai toke a burgeis of London, þat me callede Iohn Marchal, þat was Sir' Hugh þe Spensers aspie, þe fader, and smyten of his heede<sup>13</sup> also. 12

¶ And in þat<sup>14</sup> same tyme þat<sup>15</sup> same Bisshop hade in London a fair' Toure in making, in his cloos oppoñ þe ryuer' of Tamise, þat was wipout þe<sup>6</sup> Temple-Barr', and him failede stone forto<sup>16</sup> make þerof an ende; wherfore he commandede his men forto gone<sup>17</sup> to 16 þe cherche of þe Frere Carmes; and þere þai toke<sup>18</sup> stone, <sup>19</sup>and made þerwip þe tour<sup>19</sup>; and miche sande and<sup>20</sup> morter, and olde robons<sup>21</sup> þer was lefte. ¶ And for<sup>22</sup> þe despite þat þe Bisshop Hade done to<sup>23</sup> holy cherche,<sup>24</sup> he and his ij squyers were buriede in þat 20 sande, as þauz<sup>5</sup> þai hade bene hondes; and þere þai leyen xj wokes til þat þe<sup>5</sup> Quene Isabel sent her' lettres to þe comuners,<sup>25</sup> and praiede ham þat þai wolde soffre and grant þat þe Bisshop moste bene<sup>26</sup> take out of þat place, &<sup>27</sup> buriede at Excestr', at his owen 24 cherche; and so he was; and his ij squyers were buriede at seynt Clementis cherche wipout Temple-Barr'.

¶ And Hit was <sup>28</sup>nouȝt ful grete<sup>28</sup> wonder' þauz þat Bisshop deide in euel deþ, for he was a couetouse man, and hade wip him 28 no mercy, and euel conseilede þe Kyng. And sone þereafter<sup>29</sup> was Arnold' of Spaigne taken, he þat was assentant to haue ladde þo<sup>30</sup> v M<sup>r</sup> ti of Siluer' in v banelles<sup>31</sup> ferers vnto þe Dussipiers of Fraunce, forto helpe and haste the<sup>5</sup> Quene Isabel to hir' deþ, & Edward her' 32 sone also: and þis Arnolde was done vnto þe<sup>32</sup> deþ wipout þe citee of London.

<sup>1</sup> of þe O.      <sup>2</sup> with-out D.      with-oute O.      <sup>3</sup> comen D.

<sup>4</sup> comuners alle O.      <sup>5</sup> om. D.      <sup>6</sup> om. O.      <sup>7</sup> to sic O.

<sup>8</sup> in myddes þe D.      <sup>9</sup> smyte O.      <sup>10</sup> heed' O.      <sup>11-11</sup> it D.

<sup>12</sup> beheded' O.      <sup>13</sup> heuede D.      <sup>14</sup> þe O.      <sup>15</sup> þe D.      <sup>16</sup> to DO.

<sup>17</sup> go O.      <sup>18</sup> token DO.      <sup>19-19</sup> þerwith þe Toure to make O.

<sup>20</sup> MS. and &.      <sup>21</sup> Robons þat O.      <sup>22</sup> leaf 138, back.      <sup>23</sup> vnto O.

<sup>24</sup> MS. has cherche and.      <sup>25</sup> communes D.      <sup>26</sup> be O.

<sup>27</sup> and bene D.      & be O.      <sup>28-28</sup> no DO.      <sup>29</sup> after O.      <sup>30</sup> þe D.

<sup>31</sup> bareth O.      <sup>32</sup> om. DO.

**How Kyng Edward and Sir Hugh þe Spenser were taken, and þe Erl of Arundel. Capitulo CCº ixº.**

**W**hen Kyng Edward had sent Maistre Walter <sup>1</sup> of Staple-  
 4 toñ, <sup>1</sup> his Tresorer, into London, forto kepe þe citee vnto  
 him azein <sup>2</sup> þe <sup>3</sup> Quene Isabel his wif, & azein <sup>4</sup> Edward her <sup>5</sup> sone,  
 anon him-self <sup>6</sup> tok wip him <sup>6</sup> Sir Hugh þe Spenser <sup>7</sup> þe fader, and  
<sup>8</sup> Sir Hugh <sup>8</sup> his sone, & Sir Iohn, Erl of Arundeñ, & Maistre Robert  
 8 Baldok, <sup>9</sup> a false pilede clerc, his Chaunceller, <sup>9</sup> and <sup>10</sup> toke here <sup>10</sup>  
 way towarde Bristowe; And þere þe Kyng abode a litil <sup>11</sup> terme.  
 and made Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader, <sup>12</sup> Keper and Conestable <sup>12</sup>  
 of þe castel. And þe Kyng and þe oper aboue-saile went into  
 12 shipp, and sailede toward Walys, and toke no leue of þe Styward,  
 ne of none of <sup>13</sup> þe Kynges Householde; and went ouer into Walys  
 forto arere þe Walshe-men azeynes Dame Isabel þe Quene, &  
<sup>14</sup> Edward, Duc <sup>14</sup> of Gyene, her sone, & her company. ¶ But þe  
 16 Quene, & þe Duc her sone, and þe Erl of Kent, and Sir Iohn of  
 Henaude, <sup>15</sup> went and pursuede after ham; and her power come and  
 encressede euery day; so at þe laste þe Kyng was taken <sup>16</sup> oppon  
 an <sup>17</sup> hulle in Walys, and Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe sone, in þat oper  
 20 side of þat <sup>18</sup> same huñ, and þe false pilede clerc, ¶ Maistre Robert  
 of Baldok, þere fast bisides ham, and were brouzt azeine into  
 Engeland, as Almighty God wolde. And þe Kyng him-self <sup>3</sup> was  
 in saf kepyng in þe casteñ of Kenyworth; and him kepte Sir  
 24 Henry, þat was Seint <sup>3</sup> Thomas broþer of Lancastre.

& Sir Hugh þe Spenser þe fader come and put him vnto <sup>10</sup> þe  
 Quenes grace, and to Sir Edward her sone, Duc of Gyene. ¶ But  
 Sir Hugh þe Spenser <sup>8</sup> þe sone, <sup>8</sup> after þat <sup>20</sup> he was taken, <sup>21</sup> wolde <sup>22</sup>  
 28 ete no maner mete, ne <sup>23</sup> drynk <sup>8</sup> no maner drynk, <sup>8</sup> for he wist to  
 haue no mercy, but onelich <sup>24</sup> he wiste he shulde bene <sup>25</sup> dede. And  
 þe Quene and her conseil <sup>26</sup> ordeynede þo <sup>27</sup> þat he shulde bene <sup>28</sup>  
 done to dep at London; but he was so feble for his michel <sup>29</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> Mapleton D.    <sup>2</sup> azein O.    <sup>3</sup> om. D.    <sup>4</sup> azeine sir D.    <sup>5</sup> azein O.

<sup>6</sup> his D.    <sup>6-6</sup> none with D.    <sup>7</sup> Spencers boþe O.    <sup>8-8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9-9</sup> his Chancellor a false pilede clerc D.    his Chaunceller a fals piled Clerk O.

<sup>10-10</sup> nomen he sic D.    token her O.    <sup>11</sup> leaf 139.

<sup>12-12</sup> as conestable and keper D.    as Constable & keper O.    <sup>13</sup> in DO.

<sup>14-14</sup> duk Edward D.    <sup>15</sup> Henaude and þai D.    Henaude & þey O.

<sup>16</sup> take O.    <sup>17</sup> a O.    <sup>18</sup> the D.    <sup>19</sup> to D.

<sup>20</sup> þe tyme þat DO.    <sup>21</sup> take O.    <sup>22</sup> nolde D.    he nolde O.

<sup>23</sup> neþer O.    <sup>24</sup> only O.    <sup>25</sup> be O.

<sup>26</sup> conselle hade þo D.    Counceit þo had O.    <sup>27</sup> om. DO.

<sup>28</sup> haue be O.    <sup>29</sup> miche D.    myche O.

fastyng, þat he was dede almost for fastyng; and þerfore hit was ordeynede þat he shulde haue his iugement at Hereford<sup>1</sup>; and at a place<sup>2</sup> of þe toune his <sup>3</sup>hode was taken<sup>4</sup> fram<sup>5</sup> his heued<sup>6</sup>, and also <sup>7</sup>fro Maistre Robert<sup>7</sup> Baldok,<sup>8</sup> þat was <sup>9</sup>a false pilede clere,<sup>9</sup> 4 & þe Kyngus Chancellor. And men sette vppon her Heuedes<sup>10</sup> chapelettes of sharpe<sup>11</sup> netles, and ij squyers blow<sup>12</sup> in her eres wip ij grete bugles<sup>13</sup> hornes, oppon þo<sup>14</sup> ij prisoners; and<sup>15</sup> men might her þo<sup>16</sup> blowyng out wip hornes, mo þan a þousand and one. 8 Symunde of Redyng<sup>17</sup>, bifore ham bar her armes oppon a spere reuersede, in token þat<sup>18</sup> þai shulde be vndone for euermore.

¶ And oppon þe morwe was Sir Hugh þe<sup>19</sup> Spenser þe sone dampned to deþ; and was draw and hongede, biheuedet, & his <sup>12</sup>boweiles taken out of his body, and <sup>20</sup>his bowelles<sup>20</sup> brent. And after he was quarterede, & his quarteres sent to iiij tounes of Engeland, and his heuede<sup>21</sup> sent to Londoñ Brigge. And þis Symonk, for encheson þat he despisede þe Quene Isabel, he was <sup>16</sup>draw and hongede on<sup>22</sup> a stage made<sup>23</sup> <sup>24</sup>in mydes<sup>24</sup> þe forsaide Sir Hughes galwes.<sup>25</sup> And þe same day, a litil fro þens, was Sir Iohn of Arundel biheuede<sup>26</sup>; for he was on of Sir Hugh þe Spensers conseilors. And anone after wa[s] Sir Hug[h] þe<sup>19</sup> Spenser draw & <sup>20</sup>hongede, & biheuedede<sup>27</sup> at Bristow, and after hongede<sup>28</sup> aȝeyn bi þe Armes bi<sup>29</sup> ij strong ropes; and þe iiij<sup>30</sup> day after, he was hew al to peeces; & hundes eten<sup>31</sup> him. And for<sup>23</sup> þat enchesoun þat þe Kyng had ȝeuen<sup>32</sup> <sup>33</sup>him þe Erldom<sup>33</sup> of Winchestre, his heede<sup>34</sup> <sup>24</sup>was lad þider, and put oppon a spere; and þe false Baldok<sup>1</sup> was sent to Londoñ, & þere he deide in prisone amonges<sup>35</sup> þeues, for men<sup>36</sup> dede him no more reuerence þan me wolde do<sup>37</sup> vnto an hunde; and so deide<sup>38</sup> the traitours of Engeland, blissede be Almyghty <sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Herford D.      <sup>2</sup> place of þe place sic D.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 139, back.

<sup>4</sup> take O.      <sup>5</sup> fro DO.      <sup>6</sup> heed O.

<sup>7-7</sup> fram Robert of D.      from Robert of O.      <sup>8</sup> Baldoks O.

<sup>9-9</sup> a piled clere and also þat was false D.      a piled Clerk also þat was fals O.      <sup>10</sup> hedes O.

<sup>11</sup> D has sharp þornes, with þornes struck out with a red line.

<sup>12</sup> blew O.      <sup>13</sup> bugle O.      <sup>14</sup> þe D.

<sup>15</sup> þat DO.      <sup>16</sup> þere D. her O.

<sup>17</sup> Redyng þe kynges Marchal D.      Redyng þe kynges Marschaſt O.

<sup>18</sup> þan sic O.      <sup>19</sup> om. D.      <sup>20-20</sup> om. O.      <sup>21</sup> hed O.

<sup>22</sup> in O.      <sup>23</sup> om. O.      <sup>24-24</sup> amyddes D.      amydde O.

<sup>25</sup> galhouse D.      <sup>26</sup> biheuedede D.      beheded O.      <sup>27</sup> byheded O.

<sup>28</sup> hongen D.      hangd O.      <sup>29</sup> with DO.      <sup>30</sup> fourþe O.

<sup>31</sup> ete O.      <sup>32</sup> ȝene O.      <sup>33-33</sup> þe erl D.      þe Erle O.

<sup>34</sup> heuede it D.      heed it O.      <sup>35</sup> among O.      <sup>36</sup> for men DO.      for R.

<sup>37</sup> don O.      <sup>38</sup> diden O.

God! & <sup>1</sup>hit Was no wonder, for þrouȝ her<sup>2</sup> conseil th[e] gode Erl Thomas of Lancastir<sup>3</sup> was done unto deth and al þat helden with Thomas of Lancastre<sup>2</sup> þrouȝ þo traitoures were vndoñ, and alle<sup>4</sup> her<sup>2</sup> heires disheritede.<sup>3</sup>

**How Kyng Edward was put adoune.<sup>4</sup> ¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducen-tesimo ¶ Decimo.**

**A** Non<sup>5</sup> after þis was done, þe Quene Isabel, and Edward<sup>6</sup> hir sone, and alle þe grete lordes of Engeland<sup>7</sup>, at on assent sent to Kyng Edward<sup>8</sup> to þe castel of Kenylworþ, þere þat þe kyng was in kepyng<sup>9</sup> vnder þe warde of Sir Iohn Hothum, þat was þe<sup>6</sup> bisshop of Ely, & of Sir Iohn of Parey, a baron, for enchesoun þat he shulde ordein his parlement att<sup>r</sup> a certein place in Engeland<sup>7</sup>, forto redresse [and] amende þe state of þe ream. And Kyng Edward<sup>8</sup> ham ansuerede and saide: “Lordes,” quod he, “ȝe see<sup>7</sup> ful wel how hit is. Lo! haueþ her<sup>2</sup> my seal. y ȝeue<sup>8</sup> ȝow my power<sup>9</sup> to ordeine a parlement wher<sup>9</sup> ȝe wille.” And þai toke<sup>10</sup> her<sup>2</sup> leue of him,<sup>11</sup> and come aȝeyne to þe barons of Engeland<sup>7</sup>, and when<sup>12</sup> þai hade þe Kyngus patent of þis þing<sup>1</sup>, and þai shewede hit to<sup>13</sup> þe lordes, and þo was ordeynede þat þe parlement shulde be<sup>14</sup> at Westmynstre, at þe<sup>15</sup> Vtas of Seint Hillari. And alle þe grete lordes of Engeland<sup>7</sup> lete ordein for ham þere aȝeins þat tyme þat þe parlement shulde bene.<sup>16</sup> ¶ And at þe<sup>15</sup> whiche day þat þe parlement was assignede,<sup>17</sup> þe Kyng wolde nouȝt come þere,<sup>18</sup> as he hade sette himself and assignede. And nopelesse þe barons sent to him, on<sup>19</sup> tyme and oþer, and he suore by Godes soule, þat he nolde come þere<sup>20</sup> on foote.<sup>20</sup> Wherefore hit was ordeynede by al þe grete lordes of<sup>21</sup> Engeland<sup>7</sup>, þat he Shulde no Longer<sup>22</sup> bene<sup>23</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup>, but bene<sup>23</sup> deposede; and saide þat<sup>15</sup> ‘þai wolde erone<sup>24</sup> Edward<sup>6</sup> his sone<sup>25</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup>, þe eldeste,<sup>25</sup> þat was Duk of Gyene’; and sent so tydynges<sup>26</sup> to þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> þere þat he was in ward vnder Sir Iohn, Erl of

<sup>1</sup> leaf 140.

<sup>2-2</sup> supplied from D. was done vn-to dep & aȝ þat held with hym O.

<sup>3</sup> disherite D.

<sup>4</sup> adoun and his dignite bynomen him D. a-down & his dignite bynome O.

<sup>5</sup> And D. <sup>6</sup> om. D. <sup>7</sup> sene O. <sup>8</sup> ȝeue DO. <sup>9</sup> ȝe R.

<sup>9</sup> wher þat O. <sup>10</sup> nome D. <sup>11</sup> hem O. <sup>12</sup> þat þat sic D.

<sup>13</sup> vnto D. <sup>14</sup> bene D. <sup>15</sup> om. O. <sup>16</sup> be O.

<sup>17</sup> om. DO. <sup>18</sup> þere for no maner þing<sup>1</sup> DO. <sup>19</sup> o DO.

<sup>20-20</sup> a foote D. o foote O. <sup>21</sup> leaf 140, back. <sup>22</sup> be O.

<sup>23</sup> be DO. <sup>24</sup> crowne kyng O. <sup>25-25</sup> þe elder kyng<sup>1</sup> D. þe elder O.

<sup>26</sup> tydynges O.

Gerrein, and Sire Iohn of Bothun, þat was Bisshop of Ely, and Sir Henry Percy, baroun,<sup>1</sup> and Sire William Trusseh, a knyzt, þat was wip þe Erle Sir Thomas of Lancast<sup>r</sup>, forto 3elde vp her homages vnto him for aH ham of Engeland. ¶ And Sire William Trussel<sup>4</sup> saide þise wordes: “Sir Edward! for encheson þat 3e haue traiede 3our peple of Engeland, and haue vndone meny grete Lordes of Engeland wipouten<sup>2</sup> eny cause, but now 3e bep<sup>3</sup> wipstand,—þankede be God!—and also for<sup>4</sup> 3e wolde nouzt come to þe<sup>5</sup> parle-<sup>8</sup> ment as 3e ordeynede at Westmynstre, as in 3our owen<sup>5</sup> Lettre patent is conteneide, forto trete wip 3our lige men as a Kyng shulde; and þerfore, þrouz aH þe commune assent<sup>t</sup> of alle þe lordes of Engeland, y telle vnto 3ow þise wordes: ¶ 3e shul vnderstonde,<sup>12</sup> Sir, þat þe barons of Engeland atte on assent wille þat 3e bene<sup>3</sup> nomore Kyng of Engeland, but vtterly haueþ<sup>6</sup> put 3ow out<sup>7</sup> of 3our realte for euermore.” ¶ And þe bisshop of Ely saide þo to þe Kyng<sup>t</sup>, “Sir Edward! here y 3elde vp feautes<sup>8</sup> & homage<sup>9</sup> for alle<sup>16</sup> þe Erchebisshoppes and Bisshopes of Engeland, and for al þe clergie.” ¶ þo saide Sir Iohn, Erl of Garrein, “Sir Edward<sup>10</sup>! y 3elde vp her<sup>5</sup> vnto 3ow feaute and homage, for me, and for al þe Erles of Engeland.” ¶ And Sir Henry<sup>11</sup> þe<sup>12</sup> Percy 3af vp also þere<sup>20</sup> his homag,<sup>13</sup> for him and for alle þe barons of Engeland. ¶ And þo saide Sir William Trussel: “y 3elde vp,<sup>14</sup> Sir, now<sup>14</sup> vnto 3ow my<sup>15</sup> homage, fo[r] me & also for alle þe knyzttes of Engeland, and for ham alle þat holden by seriauntrye<sup>16</sup> or by eny oþer maner þing<sup>t</sup> <sup>24</sup> of 3ow, so þat fro þis day afterwarð 3e shulle nouzt be cleymede Kyng, neiþer for Kyng<sup>t</sup> bene<sup>3</sup> holde; but fram<sup>17</sup> þis tyme afterwarð 3e shul bene<sup>3</sup> holde a singuler man of aH<sup>12</sup> þe peple.” And so þai went þens vnto Londoñ, þere þat þe lordes of Engeland ham <sup>28</sup> abode; and sir Edward abode in prysoun vnder gode<sup>18</sup> keping<sup>19</sup>; and þat was þe day of <sup>20</sup>þe Conuersion<sup>20</sup> of seynt Poule in þe xx 3ere of his regne.

Prophecie of Merlyn declarede of Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edward, þe sone of <sup>32</sup>Kyng<sup>5</sup> Edward. *Capitulo CC vndecimo.*

<sup>1</sup> a baroun D. a baron O.      <sup>2</sup> withoute O.      <sup>3</sup> be O.

<sup>4</sup> for enchesoun þat D. for encheson þat O.      <sup>5</sup> om. O.      <sup>6</sup> haue DO.

<sup>7-7</sup> out 3ow O.      <sup>8</sup> feute O.      <sup>9</sup> homages O.      <sup>10</sup> Edward here O.

<sup>11</sup> leaf 141.      <sup>12</sup> om. D.      <sup>13</sup> homages O.

<sup>14-14</sup> now sire D. now sir O.      <sup>15</sup> myn DO.      <sup>16</sup> seriauntye O.

<sup>17</sup> fro D.      <sup>18</sup> þe D.      <sup>19</sup> Kyng Edward his sone O.

<sup>20-20</sup> Conuersion O.

Of þis Kyng Edward, propheciede Merlyn, and saide þat þere  
 shulde come a gote<sup>1</sup> out of a<sup>1</sup> car, þat shulde haue hornes of  
 siluer<sup>1</sup> and a berde as white as snowe; and a drop shulde come out  
 4 at<sup>2</sup> his noseþrelles þat shulde bitokne miche harme, hungre, and  
 dep of þe<sup>3</sup> peple, and gret losse of his lande; and þat in þe bigyn-  
 nyng of his regne shulde ben<sup>4</sup> hauntede michel<sup>5</sup> lecherie; and saide  
 soþ, allas þe tyme! ffor Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng<sup>6</sup> Edwardus  
 8 sone, þat was born<sup>6</sup> in Carnariuan in Walys, for soþ he hade  
 Hornes as<sup>2</sup> siluer, and a berd as snowe, when he was made Prynce  
 of Walys, & to miche he gaf him vnto realte<sup>7</sup> and<sup>8</sup> folie. And  
 soþ saide Merlyn in his prophecie<sup>9</sup> þat þere shulde come<sup>10</sup> out of  
 12 His nose a drop; ffor in his tyme was grete hunger amonges<sup>11</sup> þe  
 pore men, and stronge dep amonge þe ryche, þat deiden<sup>12</sup> in strange  
 lande wiþ miche<sup>13</sup> sorw, and<sup>14</sup> in Scotland; and afterwarde he loste  
 Scotland and Gascoigne; and whiles þat him-self was Kyng<sup>6</sup>, þer  
 16 was miche lecherie hauntede. and also Merlyn tolde and saide  
 þat þis goote shulde seche þe floure of lif & of dep; and he saide  
 soþ, for he spoused Isabel, þe Kyngus dougter of Fraunce.

¶ & in his tyme<sup>15</sup> Merlyn saide<sup>15</sup> þat þere shulde be made<sup>16</sup>  
 20 briges of folc oppoñ diche of þe see; and þat was ful wel sein at  
 Bannokes-born in Scotland, when he was descomfitede þere<sup>17</sup> of þe  
 Scottes. ¶ And Merlyn tolde also þat stoness shulde falle fram<sup>18</sup>  
 castelles, and meny tounes shulde be made playn; and he saide  
 24 soþ, ffor when Kyng Edward was scomfitede in Scotland, and  
 come þo Southward, þe Scottes bisegeðe castelles,<sup>19</sup> and dede ham  
 miche ha[r]me, and brent tounes vnto<sup>20</sup> þe herde erþe. ¶ And  
 aftirward Merlyn<sup>21</sup> saide and tolde þat an Egle shulde come<sup>21</sup> out  
 28 of Cornwaile, þat shulde haue feþeres of golde, þat of pride shulde  
 haue non<sup>22</sup> pier, and shulde despice Lordes<sup>23</sup> of bloode, and after  
 he shulde dye prouþ<sup>24</sup> a beer at Gauersiche: and þat prophecie was  
 ful wel knowe,<sup>25</sup> ffor<sup>16</sup> by þe Egle is vnderstonde Sir<sup>17</sup> Piers of  
 32 Gauastoñ, þat was Erl of Cornewaile, þat was a wonder prout man

<sup>1-1</sup> of O.      <sup>2</sup> of DO.      <sup>3</sup> his D.      *om.* O.      <sup>4</sup> be O.

<sup>5</sup> mich D.      mych O.      <sup>6</sup> bore O.      <sup>7</sup> ryout D.      reaute O.

<sup>8</sup> & to O.      <sup>9</sup> leaf 141, back.      <sup>10</sup> be O.      <sup>11</sup> amonge D.      among<sup>t</sup> O.

<sup>12</sup> deide D.      dide O.      <sup>13</sup> michel D.      <sup>14</sup> and in werre D.      & werre O.

<sup>15-15</sup> seid Merlyn O.      <sup>16</sup> *om.* O.      <sup>17</sup> *om.* D.      <sup>18</sup> fro O.

<sup>19</sup> þe Castels O.      <sup>20</sup> to D.

<sup>21-21</sup> tolde þat þere shulde come an Egle D.      tolde þat an Egle schulð  
 come O.

<sup>22</sup> no DO.      <sup>23</sup> lordeshippes D.      lordschippes O.      <sup>24</sup> by D.

<sup>25</sup> know and founde soth D.      knowe & founde soþ O.

pat dispisede þe baronage of Engeland; <sup>1</sup>but aftirward he was biheuede<sup>2</sup> at Gauersiche, prouþ þe Erl of Lancaster and þe Erl of Warwik. ¶ And Merlyn tolde<sup>3</sup> þat in his tyme it<sup>4</sup> shulde seme þat þe bere shulde brenne, & þat a bataile shulde be<sup>5</sup> done<sup>6</sup> oppoñ <sup>4</sup>an Arme of þe See in<sup>7</sup> felde arraiele like a shilde, wher shulde dye meny white heuedes<sup>8</sup>: & he saide soþ; for, by þe brynnyng<sup>9</sup> of þe bere<sup>9</sup> is bitokenede grete drede þrouþ cotting of suorde. at þat bataile, ordeynede in a felde as a shelde oppoñ an Arme of <sup>8</sup>þe see, is bitokenede þe bataile of Mitone. ffor þere come þe Scottes in maner of a shelde, <sup>10</sup>in maner of a wynges,<sup>10</sup> and quelled oppoñ Swale, men of Religioun, prestes & seculers; wherfor þe Scottes callede þat bataile, in despite of Englisshemen, 'þe white <sup>12</sup>bataile.'

¶ And after, Merlyn saide þat þe forsaide Beer shulde<sup>11</sup> do þe forsaide <sup>4</sup>goot miche harme, and þat shulde be<sup>12</sup> oppoñ þe<sup>13</sup> Southwest, and also oppoñ his bloode; and saide also þat þe goot <sup>16</sup>shulde lese miche<sup>14</sup> of his lande, <sup>4</sup>til þe<sup>15</sup> time þat shame shulde him ouercome; And þan he shulde <sup>16</sup>cloþe him in<sup>16</sup> a lyons skyn, and shulde wyne aþeyne þat he hade loste, and miche more, prouþ a peple þat shulde come out of þe Northwest, þat shulde make him <sup>20</sup>bene<sup>17</sup> drade, and him avenge of his enemys, prouþ conseile of ij Oweles, þat ferst shulde be<sup>18</sup> in peril to bene vndone; and þat þe ij oweles shulde wende ouer þe see into a straunge <sup>19</sup>lande, and þere þai shulde duelle til <sup>20</sup>a certain time; and after þai shulde <sup>24</sup>come into Engeland aþeyne, and þe ij oweles shulde done miche harme vnto meny oñ, and þat þai shulde conseile þe <sup>21</sup>goot to <sup>21</sup>meve werþ aþeynes [þe] <sup>22</sup>Bere, and þat goot shulde come, and þe Oweles, <sup>22</sup>vnto an Arme of þe Se at Burton op Trent, and shulde <sup>28</sup>wende ouer, and þat for drede þe bere shulde flee, wip a swyne<sup>23</sup> in his company, <sup>24</sup>vnto Bur, <sup>24</sup>toward þe North,<sup>25</sup> prouþ an vnkynle out-puter; and þat þe Swyn<sup>26</sup> þan shulde be slay<sup>27</sup> <sup>28</sup>with sorwe; and þe bere shulde be slayn<sup>28</sup> ful neiz his owen nest, þat shal<sup>29</sup> <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> leaf 142.      <sup>2</sup> behedeþ O.      <sup>3</sup> saide D.      <sup>4</sup> om. D.      <sup>5</sup> ben D.

<sup>6</sup> do O.      <sup>7</sup> in a DO.      <sup>8</sup> heedes O.      <sup>9-9</sup> MS. of þe bere of the bere.

<sup>10-10</sup> with her wynges D.      <sup>11</sup> MS. shulde shulde.      <sup>12</sup> ben O.

<sup>13</sup> MS. þe North, with North underlined for omission; om. D.

<sup>14</sup> miche del D.      myche dele O.      <sup>15</sup> þat D.

<sup>16-16</sup> be cloþen him with D.      <sup>17</sup> be O.      <sup>18</sup> bene D.

<sup>19</sup> leaf 142, back.      <sup>20</sup> to D.      <sup>21-21</sup> goot forto DO.      bere to R.

<sup>22-22</sup> forside and þat þe goot and þe oweles shulde come D.      forside bere & þat þe goot & þe owles shuld come O.

<sup>23</sup> Swan O.      <sup>24-24</sup> om. D.      <sup>25</sup> North vnto Bur D.      <sup>26</sup> swan DO

<sup>27</sup> slayne D.      slayn O.      <sup>28-28</sup> om. D.      <sup>29</sup> schuld O.



stonde oppoñ Pountfrett, vppoñ wham pe sone shal<sup>1</sup> shede his beemes, & meny fole him shal<sup>1</sup> seche for pe miche vertue. and he saide ful sop; ffor pe gode Erl Thomas of Lancast<sup>r</sup> was born<sup>2</sup> in pe Northwest, and cosyn to pe Kyng<sup>t</sup>, sone of his vncle; and by lawe he made pe Kyng lese miche lande pe whiche he hade purchasede<sup>3</sup> wel foliche,<sup>3</sup> til at pe laste pe Kyng<sup>t</sup> perof tok shame, and him-self fillede wip cruelte; and after he gate azeine pat he hadde lost<sup>t</sup>, and miche more, prou<sup>3</sup> fole pat he lete assemble out of pe Northwest, pat made him to bene adrade,<sup>4</sup> and avengede<sup>5</sup> him of his barons,<sup>6</sup> prou conseile of Sir<sup>r</sup> Hugh<sup>t</sup> pe Spenser<sup>7</sup> pe fader, and of Sir<sup>r</sup> Hugh<sup>7</sup> his sone, pat biforne<sup>8</sup> were outlawede out<sup>9</sup> of Engeland for her wickidnesse. ¶ But afterwar<sup>t</sup> come azeine into Engeland Sir<sup>r</sup> Hughe pe Spenser the fader, out of Fraunce, and so miche conseilede the<sup>10</sup> Kyng<sup>t</sup> pat He Shulde Werr<sup>r</sup> oppoñ Thomas, erl of Lancast<sup>r</sup>, so pat pe Kyng and pe Spensers, and pe Erl of Arundel and her power, mete wip Thomas of Lancast<sup>r</sup> atte Burtoñ op Trent, and him pere descomfitede; and<sup>11</sup> Hunfray, erl of Hereford<sup>t</sup>,<sup>12</sup> was in her<sup>13</sup> company. and after, fledde<sup>14</sup> pe forsaide Thomas and Hunfray, wip her company at Burbrig<sup>t</sup>, wip sir<sup>r</sup> Andrew of Herkela, pat is callede<sup>15</sup> pe vnkynde out-putter<sup>r</sup>, and also sir<sup>r</sup> Symond<sup>t</sup> Warde, Shirref<sup>16</sup> of 3ork<sup>t</sup>: pai come and mette wip Thomas of Lancastre wip an huge company, and ham<sup>17</sup> pere descomfitede. and in pat Scomfiture pe Erl of Hereford<sup>t</sup><sup>18</sup> was slayn oppoñ pe brige, cowardly, wip a spere, in the fundement; and pe Erl Thomas was taken<sup>19</sup> & ladde vnto Pountfrett; and per<sup>20</sup> he was bihedede<sup>21</sup> bisides his owen castel. But aftirward, many a<sup>22</sup> man him souzt, for miracles pat God dede for him.

28 ¶ And in pat tyme Merlyn saide for sorwe and harme [shuld die]<sup>23</sup> a peple of his land<sup>t</sup>, wherfore meny landes shulde bene<sup>24</sup> on him pe bolder<sup>24</sup>: and he saide sop, ffor by enchesoun of his barouns pat were<sup>25</sup> done vnto pe dep for<sup>25</sup> Seint Thomas loue<sup>26</sup> of Lancastre, 32 peple of meny londes bicome<sup>27</sup> pe bolder<sup>r</sup> forto meve werr<sup>r</sup> azeins<sup>28</sup> pe Kyng<sup>t</sup>, for her bloode was turnede into<sup>29</sup> meny naciouns.

<sup>1</sup> schuld<sup>t</sup> O.    <sup>2</sup> bore O.    <sup>3—3</sup> ful falsely D.    wilfullich O.    <sup>4</sup> drade D.

<sup>5</sup> vengede D.    venge<sup>t</sup> O.    <sup>6</sup> enemys D.    <sup>7—7</sup> & O.    <sup>8</sup> before O.

<sup>9</sup> om. D.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 143.    <sup>11</sup> and sir<sup>r</sup> DO.    <sup>12</sup> Herford<sup>t</sup> DO.    <sup>13</sup> his DO.

<sup>14</sup> fledden DO.    <sup>15</sup> MS. has callede Sir<sup>r</sup> Andrew of Herkela pat is callede.

<sup>16</sup> erl D. Erle O.    <sup>17</sup> hym O.    <sup>18</sup> Herford DO.    <sup>19</sup> take O.

<sup>20</sup> po O.    <sup>21</sup> behede<sup>t</sup> O.    <sup>22</sup> om. DO.    <sup>23</sup> om. in all thre MSS.

<sup>24—24</sup> oppoñ him D.    vpon hem pe boldere O.

<sup>25—25</sup> om. D.    done to deth for O.    <sup>26</sup> querel D.    quere<sup>t</sup> O.

<sup>27</sup> becomen O.    <sup>28</sup> oppoñ D.    vpon O.    <sup>29</sup> to DO.

¶ And afterward Merlyn tolde and saide pat pe forsaille Oweles shulde done<sup>1</sup> miche harme vnto pe flour<sup>2</sup> of lif & of dep, & pai shulde<sup>3</sup> bring Her<sup>4</sup> vnto<sup>5</sup> miche disese, so pat she shulde wende ouer pe<sup>6</sup> see into Fraunce for to make pees<sup>7</sup> to pe flour<sup>8</sup> de lice, 4 and pere she shulde abide til a<sup>9</sup> tyme pat her seede shulde come & seche her<sup>10</sup>; and pere pai shulde abide<sup>11</sup> til a tyme pat pai shulde clopen<sup>12</sup> ham wip grace; and po ij Oweles she<sup>13</sup> shulde seche, and put ham vnto Spitouse<sup>14</sup> dep. and pat prophecie was wel knowen<sup>15</sup> 8 and was ful sop; for, Sir<sup>16</sup> Hugh pe Spenser pe fader, and<sup>17</sup> sir<sup>18</sup> Hugh<sup>19</sup> pe sone, dede<sup>20</sup> miche sorwe and persecucioñ vnto pe Quene Isabel, prou; her<sup>21</sup> procurment, to her<sup>22</sup> Lorde pe Kyng. ¶ and so pai ordeinede amonges ham pat she was put vnto hir<sup>23</sup> wages, pat is to 12 seyn, xxs on<sup>24</sup> pe day. Wherfore pe Kyng of Fraunce, her<sup>25</sup> broper, was wonder<sup>26</sup> sore<sup>27</sup> annoiede, and sent into Engeland by his lettres<sup>28</sup> vnto Kyng Edward, pat he<sup>29</sup> shulde come to<sup>30</sup> his parlement to Parys in<sup>31</sup> Fraunce; but Kyng Edward was sore adrade forto 16 come pere, for he wende to bene arest<sup>32</sup> til pat he hade made Gode<sup>33</sup> for pe trespasse pat pe Spensers hade done, and also grete harme pat pai hade done vnto pe<sup>34</sup> Quene Isabel, his sostre<sup>35</sup>: Wherfore, prou; here ordenance & her<sup>36</sup> consent<sup>37</sup> of pe Spensers, the Quene Isabel 20 went ouer<sup>38</sup> pe see into Fraunce, forto make accorde bituene Kyng Edward and pe Kyng of Fraunce, hir<sup>39</sup> broper. ¶ And pere duelled she in Fraunce til<sup>40</sup> Edward, her<sup>41</sup> Eldeste sone, come her<sup>42</sup> to<sup>43</sup> seche; and so pai duelled<sup>44</sup> pere bope til pat Aliaunce was 24 made bituene Ham and pe gentil Erl of Henaud, pat if pai wip his<sup>45</sup> helpe mygh[t] destroi and ouercome pe venyme and the falsenesse of pe Spensers, pat Sir<sup>46</sup> Edward shulde spouse Dame Philipp, pe worshipful lady,<sup>47</sup> pe Erles Doughter of Henaud. ¶ wherfore pe 28 Quene Isabel, and Sir<sup>48</sup> Edward her<sup>49</sup> [son], and Sir<sup>50</sup> Edmund of Wodestok, pe Kynges broper of Engeland, and Sir<sup>51</sup> Iohn of Henaud, and Sir<sup>52</sup> Roger Mortymer of Wygemore, and Sir<sup>53</sup> Thomas Rocelyn, and sir<sup>54</sup> Iohn of Cromwel, and Sire William Trusse, and 32 meny opere of pe Aliaunce of pe gentil Erle Thomas of Lancastre,

<sup>1</sup> do O.    <sup>2</sup> leaf 143, back.    <sup>3</sup> into DO.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5</sup> MS. pees bituene, with bituene underlined for omission.

<sup>6</sup> on D.    on a O.    <sup>7</sup> abide bope D.    <sup>8</sup> clope O.    <sup>9</sup> she DO.    he R.

<sup>10</sup> pitous O.    <sup>11</sup> know D.    knowe O.    <sup>12-12</sup> om. O.    <sup>13</sup> deden O.

<sup>14</sup> in DO.    <sup>15</sup> sore O.    sone R.    <sup>16</sup> lettre D.    <sup>17</sup> sche O.

<sup>18</sup> vnto O.    <sup>19</sup> into O.    <sup>20</sup> om. O.

<sup>21</sup> MS. sostres, with the last s underlined for omission.    <sup>22</sup> til pat O.

<sup>23</sup> forto D.    <sup>24</sup> leaf 144.    <sup>25</sup> his D.    here R.    <sup>26</sup> lady and DO.

pat wer<sup>1</sup> exilede out of Engeland<sup>1</sup> for his querelle, and wer<sup>2</sup> disheritede<sup>3</sup> of her<sup>1</sup> londes, ordeynede ham a<sup>4</sup> grete power<sup>1</sup>, and arryuede<sup>5</sup> at Herewiche in Southfolc. and sone after<sup>6</sup> pai<sup>4</sup> pursuede<sup>7</sup> þe Spensers til pat pai wer<sup>1</sup> take<sup>8</sup> and put vnto spitouse<sup>9</sup> dep, as bifore is saide, and her<sup>1</sup> company, and also for þe<sup>10</sup> grete falsenesse pat pai deden<sup>11</sup> vnto Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward & to<sup>12</sup> his peple.

¶ And Merlyn saide also more, pat þe goote shulde bene<sup>13</sup> put 8 into grete disese; & in grete anguisshe & in grete sorwe he shulde lede<sup>14</sup> his lif. and he saide sop: for after þe tyme pat Kyng Edward was tak<sup>1</sup>, he was put into warde til pat þe Spensers were put vnto dep. ¶ and also, for enchesou<sup>n</sup> pat he wolde nouzt come 12 vnto<sup>15</sup> his owen parlement at Londo<sup>n</sup>, as he had ordeyned and assignede him-self<sup>1</sup>, and to his<sup>16</sup> Baronage,<sup>17</sup> and also wolde nouzt gouerne ne<sup>18</sup> reule his peple ne his reaume as a kyng shulde done, somme of þe barons of Engeland<sup>1</sup> come<sup>19</sup> & zelden vp her<sup>1</sup> homage<sup>20</sup> 16 vnto him, for ham<sup>21</sup> and for alle þe oper of þe reaume, in þe day of<sup>22</sup> þe Conuersiou<sup>n</sup><sup>22</sup> of Seint Poule, and in þe 3er<sup>1</sup> of his regne xx; and pai put him out of his realte for euermore; & euer<sup>1</sup> he leuede his lif<sup>1</sup> aftirward<sup>1</sup> in miche sorw and anguisse.

## 20 Of Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward<sup>1</sup> þe þridde<sup>23</sup> after þe conquest. Capitulo

### ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ Duodecimo.

**A**Nd after þis Kyng Edward<sup>1</sup> of Carnariuan, regnede Sire Edward of Wyndesore his sone, þe whiche was cronede 24 Kyng, and annoyntede, at Westminster, þrouz consent and wille of alle þe grete Lordes of<sup>24</sup> þe reaume,<sup>24</sup> þe Sonday in<sup>25</sup> Candelmasse eve of oure Lady, In þe 3er<sup>1</sup> of grace M<sup>t</sup> CCC<sup>26</sup> xxvi, pat was pat tyme of age but xv 3er<sup>1</sup>.<sup>27</sup> and for enchesou<sup>n</sup> pat<sup>27</sup> his fader<sup>1</sup> was 28 in warde in þe castel of Kenylworþ, and eke was put dou<sup>n</sup> of his realte, þe reaume of Engeland<sup>1</sup> was as wiþout Kyng<sup>1</sup>, fro þe feste of Seynt Kateryne in þe 3er<sup>1</sup> aboue-saide, vnto þe fest of Candelmasse;

<sup>1</sup> Engeland<sup>1</sup> and Sir Iohn of Henaude and Sir Roger Mortymere D.

<sup>2</sup> weren O. <sup>3</sup> disherite D. disherited<sup>1</sup> O. <sup>4</sup> om. O.

<sup>5</sup> arryueden O. <sup>6</sup> afterward DO. <sup>7</sup> pursueden O. <sup>8</sup> taken DO.

<sup>9</sup> pitous O. <sup>10</sup> her O. <sup>11</sup> dede O. <sup>12</sup> om. D. <sup>13</sup> be O.

<sup>14</sup> lese D. <sup>15</sup> to DO. <sup>16</sup> leaf 144, back.

<sup>17</sup> A bere is written in the margin at the head of this page, in a different (?) hand.

<sup>18</sup> and DO. <sup>19</sup> comen O. <sup>20</sup> homages DO. <sup>21</sup> him D.

<sup>22-22</sup> Conuersacion O.

<sup>23</sup> þirde O. <sup>24-24</sup> Engeland<sup>1</sup> D. <sup>25</sup> on D. <sup>26</sup> CCC & O.

<sup>27-27</sup> MS. and for enchesou<sup>n</sup> þat and for enchesou<sup>n</sup> þat.

and þo were <sup>1</sup>al maner<sup>1</sup> pleez of þe Kyngus Benche astent. ¶ And þo was commanded to alle þe shirreffes of Engeland þoruȝ write<sup>2</sup> to warne þe partieȝ defendandȝ þrouȝ somp[n]ing<sup>3</sup> aȝein, and also ferþermore þat alle þe prisoners þat were in þe Kyngus Gayole þat 4 were atachede þrouȝ shirrefs shulde <sup>3</sup>be Late go quiet. ¶ The Kyng Edward, after<sup>4</sup> His coronacioun, at þe<sup>4</sup> prier<sup>4</sup> and biseching<sup>4</sup> of his lieges of þe reaume, grauntede<sup>5</sup> a chartre of stedefast pees to alle ham þat wolde it<sup>6</sup> axe. ¶ And Sire Iohn of Henaude and his 8 company toke<sup>7</sup> his leue of þe Kyng and of þe lordes of his<sup>8</sup> reaume, & turnede home to her<sup>7</sup> owen contre aȝeyn; and eueryche<sup>9</sup> of ham hade ful riche ȝiftes, every man as he was of value and of State. ¶ And þo was Engeland in pees and in<sup>10</sup> rest, & grete loue<sup>11</sup> 12 bituene þe Kyng and his lordes; and communeliche<sup>12</sup> Englisshemen saide amongus ham þat þe deuel was dede. ¶ But þe tresour<sup>13</sup> of þe Kyng his fader<sup>13</sup>, and<sup>13</sup> of the Spensers, boȝ of þe fader<sup>13</sup> and of<sup>4</sup> þe sone, and þe tresour of þe Erl<sup>14</sup> of Arundel, and of Maistre 16 Robert<sup>15</sup> Baldok<sup>15</sup> þat was þe Kyngus chaunceller<sup>15</sup>, was departede after<sup>15</sup> þe Quene Isabels ordenaunce, and Sir Roger Mortymer<sup>15</sup> of Wigemore, so þat þe Kyng<sup>15</sup> hade noping þerof but at her<sup>15</sup> wille and her<sup>15</sup> deliuerance, neiper of hir<sup>15</sup> landes, as afterward<sup>15</sup> ȝe shul here 20 more openly.

**How Kyng Edward went to Stanhop forto mete þe Scottes.**

¶ Capitulo ¶ Ducentesimo ¶ xiiij.

**A**Nd ȝitte<sup>4</sup> in þe same tyme was Kyng Edward in þe castel of 24 Kenylworth, vnder<sup>1</sup> þe kepyng of Sir Henry þat was Erl Thomas broȝer of Lancast<sup>1</sup>, þat þo was Erl of [Leycestre; and þe Kyng grauntede him the erldome of]<sup>16</sup> Lancastre þat þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> hade seisede into his hande, and put out Thomas of Lancastre his 28 broȝer, and þo was he<sup>17</sup> Erl of Lancastre & <sup>15</sup>of Leicestre, and eke Stiward of Engeland, as his broȝer was in his tyme. ¶ but Sir Edward, þat was Kyng Edwardes fader<sup>19</sup>, made sorw wipouten<sup>20</sup> ende, for cause þat he might nouȝt speke wiȝ his wif<sup>19</sup> ne wiȝ his 32 Sone; wherfor hit was miche meschief<sup>21</sup>; ffor þauȝ hit were so þat

<sup>1-1</sup> alle þe D.

<sup>2</sup> Engeland þoruȝ write D. Engeland þurgh writte O. Engeland R.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 145. <sup>4</sup> om. O. <sup>5</sup> grauntede ham D. graunted hem O.

<sup>6</sup> him D. <sup>7</sup> nome DO. <sup>8</sup> the D. þe O. <sup>9</sup> eche O.

<sup>10</sup> om. DO. <sup>11</sup> loue was D. <sup>12</sup> Comenly O.

<sup>13</sup> and þe tresour D. & þe tresour O. <sup>14</sup> erles DO.

<sup>15</sup> MS. Robert Robert. <sup>16</sup> supplied from D. <sup>17</sup> þe sic O.

<sup>18</sup> leaf 145, back. <sup>19</sup> MS. fader fader. <sup>20</sup> with-out O. <sup>21</sup> nedfuȝ O.

he were<sup>1</sup> ladde & reulede þrouȝ<sup>2</sup> false conſeile, ȝitte<sup>3</sup> he was Kyng Edwardus ſone, & come<sup>4</sup> of þe worpiest bloode of al<sup>5</sup> þe worlde; and þilk<sup>6</sup> to whom he was <sup>6</sup>wonede forto<sup>6</sup> ȝeue grete ȝiftes and  
 4 large, were<sup>7</sup> moſt pryue wip þe Kyng, his owen ſone; and þai were his enemyſ boþe by nyght and by day, and procurede forto make debate and contak bituene him and his ſone, and Isabel his wif. but þe ffrer<sup>8</sup> Prechoures to him were gode frendes euermore,<sup>8</sup> and  
 8 caſte and ordeynede, boþe nyght and day, how þai might bryng him out of priſon. ¶ And amonge her<sup>9</sup> company þat þe ffreres priueliche<sup>9</sup> hade brouȝt, þere was a ffrere þat me callede Dunheuede<sup>10</sup>; and he hade ordeynede an[d] gaderede a grete company  
 12 of folc forto helpe at þat nede; but þe ffrere was take a[nd] put into þe caſtel of Pountfret, and þer he deide in priſone. ¶ And Sir Henry, Erl of Lancaſtr, þat hade þe <sup>11</sup>Kyngus fader<sup>11</sup> in kepyng, prouȝ<sup>12</sup> commandement of þe Kyng, delyuerede Edward, þe Kingus fader, by endentur<sup>13</sup> vnto Sire Thomas of Berkelee, and to Sir Iohn Mautrainers; & þai lad him fram<sup>13</sup> þe caſteH of Kenylworth vnto þe caſteH of Berkelee, <sup>14</sup>and kepte him þere ſafly.<sup>15</sup>  
 ¶ And at Eſte[r] nexte after<sup>16</sup> his coronacioun, þe Kyng ordeynede  
 20 an huge hoſt forto feiȝt aȝeins<sup>16</sup> þe Scottes; and Sir Iohn, þe Erles broþer of Henauȝ, from<sup>17</sup> byȝonde þe ſee, come forto helpe Kyng Edward, and brouȝt wip him<sup>18</sup> v̄ C̄ men of Armes, and arryuede at Douer; and þai hade leue forto gone<sup>19</sup> forth til þat<sup>18</sup> þai <sup>20</sup>come  
 24 vnto<sup>20</sup> Ȝork, þere þat þe Kyng abode ham. ¶ And þe Scottes comen<sup>21</sup> pider<sup>21</sup> vnto þe Kyng forto make pees and accorde, but þe accordement bituene ham laſte but a<sup>22</sup> litel while.<sup>23</sup> and at þat tyme þe Engliſſhe-men were clope<sup>24</sup> alle in cotes & hodes, peyntede<sup>25</sup> wip  
 28 lettres & wip<sup>22</sup> floures ful ſembli,<sup>26</sup> wip longe berdes; and perfore þe Scottes made a bille þat was faſtenede oppoñ þe cherche dores of Seint Peres<sup>27</sup> toward Stangate. & þus ſaide þe Scripture in deſpite of the<sup>18</sup> Engliſſhe-men ¶ Longe berde hertles, peyntede Hode  
 32 witles, Gay cote graceles, makeþ<sup>28</sup> Engl[i]ſſheman<sup>29</sup> priftles.

¶ And on<sup>5</sup> þe Trinite day next <sup>30</sup>comyng, biganne<sup>30</sup> þe contak

<sup>1</sup> was O.    <sup>2</sup> by DO.    <sup>3</sup> þit sic D.    <sup>4</sup> comen O.    <sup>5</sup> om. DO.

<sup>6-6</sup> wont D.    wonte to O.    <sup>7</sup> weren O.    <sup>8</sup> for euermore D.

<sup>9</sup> priuely D.    pryuyly O.    <sup>10</sup> Donebat O.

<sup>11-11</sup> fader of þe Kyng O.    <sup>12</sup> þurgh þe O.    <sup>13</sup> fro O.

<sup>14</sup> leaf 146.    <sup>15</sup> falſly O.    <sup>16</sup> with D.    <sup>17</sup> fro DO.    <sup>18</sup> om. D.

<sup>19</sup> go O.    <sup>20-20</sup> comen to D.    <sup>21</sup> come O.

<sup>22</sup> om. O.    <sup>23</sup> tyme DO.    <sup>24</sup> clopede D.    clothed O.

<sup>25</sup> y-peynted O.    <sup>26</sup> ſemely DO.    <sup>27</sup> Petre D.    om. O.

<sup>28</sup> makes DO.    <sup>29</sup> Englonð O.    <sup>30-30</sup> ſewyng<sup>1</sup> big sic D.

in þe citee of 3ork<sup>t</sup> bytuene þe Engliſshemen and þe Henaudres. and in þat debate were quelled of þe Erldom of Nichole and Mordrede, <sup>xx</sup>iiij; and after, þai wer<sup>t</sup> buried vnder<sup>a</sup> a stone in Seynt Clementis cherche haw in Fossegate. And for enchesouñ þat þe Henaudres 4 come<sup>1</sup> forto helpe þe Kyng<sup>t</sup>, hir<sup>t</sup> pees was<sup>2</sup> criede, oppoñ payne of lif and lime. and in þat opere Half, it was<sup>3</sup> fonden<sup>4</sup> by enquest of þe citee, þat þe Engliſſhe-men biganne þe debate.

**How þe Engliſſhe-men Stopped þe Scottes in þe park<sup>t</sup> of 8 Stanhope, and How þai turnede a3eyne into<sup>5</sup> Scotland. Capitulo CC xiiij.**

**A**Nd at þat tyme þe Scottes had assemblede al her power<sup>t</sup>, and come<sup>6</sup> into Engeland, and quelled & robbed alle þat þai 12 might tak,<sup>7</sup> and brent and destroyed al þe North contre prou3-out, til<sup>8</sup> þai come<sup>8</sup> to þe Parke of Stanhope in Wyredale: and þer þe Scottes helde ham in a buſſhement. ¶ But whe[n] þe Kyng<sup>t</sup> hade herde prou3 certeyne aspies wher<sup>t</sup> þe Scottes were, anone right wiþ 16 his host he biſegede þe forsaide park, so þat þe Scottes wiste neuer wher<sup>t</sup> forto goñ out, but onliche<sup>9</sup> vnto her<sup>t</sup> arnes, and þai abiden in þe parke xv daies; and vitales ham failede on<sup>10</sup> euery side, so þat þai wer<sup>t</sup> gretly empeyrede of her<sup>t</sup>11 bodyes. ¶ And siþ þat Brut 20 come ferst into<sup>12</sup> Britaigne, vnto þis tyme, was neuer ſeyne ſepenes<sup>13</sup> so fair<sup>t</sup> an host, what of Engliſshemen and of Aliens, and of men on foot,<sup>14</sup> whiche ordeyned ham forto fei3t wiþ þe Scottes, prou3 egging of Sire Henry, Erl of Lancast<sup>r</sup>, and of Sir<sup>t</sup> Iohn of<sup>15</sup> 24 Henaude, þat wolde haue gone ouer þe water of Wythe forto haue fou3t wiþ þe Scottes; but Sir<sup>t</sup> Roger of Mortymer<sup>t</sup> consentede nou3t þerto, for he hade princeliche<sup>16</sup> tak<sup>17</sup> mede of þe Scottes, ham forto helpe, þat þai myght wende a3eyne into hir<sup>t</sup> owen contre. ¶ And 28 þe<sup>18</sup> same Mortymer counseiled mich<sup>19</sup> Thomas of Broþertoñ, þat þe Erl Marchal, þat was Kyng<sup>t</sup> Edwardes vncle, þat the<sup>20</sup> forsaide Thomas shulde nou3t assemble at þat tyme vnto þe Scottes; and he assented; but he wiste nou3t þe doying bituene þe Scottes and 32 þe forsaide Mortymer. and for enchesouñ þat he was Marchal of

<sup>1</sup> comen DO.    <sup>2</sup> wer<sup>t</sup> D.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 146, back.    <sup>4</sup> founde DO.

<sup>5</sup> to O.    <sup>6</sup> comen D.

<sup>7</sup> take without nombre D.    take withoute nombre O.

<sup>8-9</sup> þat þai comen D.    <sup>9</sup> only O.    <sup>10</sup> in DO.    <sup>11</sup> he sic D.

<sup>12</sup> vnto D.    <sup>13</sup> seth O.    <sup>14</sup> foote the D.    foote þe O.    <sup>15</sup> om. DO.

<sup>16</sup> priuily O.    <sup>17</sup> taken DO.    <sup>18</sup> þat D.

<sup>19</sup> somiche D.    so mych O.    <sup>20</sup> leaf 147.

Engeland, and to him pertheyned<sup>1</sup> euer<sup>2</sup> þe vauntward. he sent hastily to þe Erl of Lancastre and to Sire Iohn of Henaude, þat þai shulde nouȝt feiȝt oppoñ þe Scottes, in preiudice and in<sup>3</sup> harm-  
 4 yng<sup>4</sup> of him and<sup>4</sup> his fee, and if þai dede, þat þai shulde stande to<sup>5</sup> her' owen peril. and þe forsaide Erl Marchal was al aredy<sup>6</sup> wiþ his bataile at þe redose of þe Erl of Lancastre forto haue fouȝten<sup>7</sup> wiþ him and wiþ<sup>8</sup> his fole, if he hade meuede forto feiȝt wiþ þe  
 8 Scottes. and in þis maner<sup>9</sup> he was desceyuede, and wiste <sup>no</sup>maner þinge of þis<sup>9</sup> tresouñ; and þus was þe Kyng<sup>10</sup> Principaly<sup>10</sup> desceyuede.

¶ And when it was nyȝt,<sup>11</sup> Mortymer<sup>11</sup>, þat hade þe wacche forto  
 12 kepe of þe host, þat nyȝt destourblede þe wacche þat nopiȝng most be<sup>12</sup> done. and <sup>in</sup>þe<sup>13</sup> meny-while þe Scottes stele<sup>14</sup> by nyȝt toward her' owen contre, as fast as þai myȝt; and so was þe Kyng falsely <sup>desceyuede</sup>&<sup>15</sup> bitraide, þat wende þat alle þe traitoures  
 16 of his land had bene brouȝt vnto an ende, as it<sup>2</sup> was saide bifore.  
 ¶ Now here, ȝe lordes, how traterously Kyng<sup>16</sup> Edward was desceyuede, and how mervailously and<sup>16</sup> boldely þe Scottes dede of wer<sup>17</sup>; ffor þe same nyȝt<sup>17</sup> Iames Douglas, wiþ CC men of Armes,  
 20 ryden prouȝ-out þe host <sup>of</sup>Kyng Edward, þe same nyȝt þat þe Scottes were scapede toward her' owen contre, as is aboue [said], til þat<sup>19</sup> þai comen<sup>20</sup> to þe Kyngus Pauylouñ, and quellede þere<sup>21</sup> men in her' beddes; and criede<sup>22</sup> somme “Noward, Noward!” and anopere  
 24 tyme, “A Douglas, A Douglas!” wherfore the Kyng, þat was in his pauylouñ, and miche oper fole, were wonder' sore afraide; but, —blessede be Almyghty God!—þe Kyng was nouȝt taken; and in grete perile was þe reauume of Engeland. ¶ And þat nyȝt the  
 28 mone shone <sup>ful clere</sup><sup>23</sup> and briȝt; and for al þe Kyngus men, þe Scottes ascapede harmeles. and in þe morwe, when þe Kyng<sup>24</sup> wist þat þe Scottes were ascapede,<sup>24</sup> he was wonder' sory, and ful hertly wepte wiþ his ȝonge eyne; and<sup>25</sup> ȝitt wist he<sup>25</sup> nouȝt who <sup>had</sup><sup>26</sup> done<sup>26</sup> him þat<sup>27</sup> tresouñ; but þat<sup>28</sup> tresouñ was wel knowe<sup>29</sup> a gode

<sup>1</sup> pertheyneth O.    <sup>2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> and of DO.

<sup>5</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>6</sup> arrayede D.    arayed O.    <sup>7</sup> fouȝt D.    fought O.

<sup>8</sup> MS. wiþ him and wiþ.

<sup>9-9</sup> nopiȝng of þe D.    nopiȝng of þis O.    <sup>10</sup> priueliche D.

<sup>11</sup> nyȝt þe D.    nyȝt þe O.    <sup>12</sup> bene D.    <sup>13-13</sup> þat D.    <sup>14</sup> stale D.

<sup>15-15</sup> om. O.    <sup>16</sup> and how D.    <sup>17</sup> myȝt sic D.    <sup>18</sup> leaf 147, back.

<sup>19</sup> MS. þat þat.    <sup>20</sup> come DO.    <sup>21</sup> þere meny DO.

<sup>22</sup> crieden D.    <sup>23-23</sup> fayre D.

<sup>24</sup> ascapede into her' owen contre D.    ascaped into her Cuntr' O.

<sup>25-25</sup> wist O.    <sup>26-26</sup> þat had do O.    <sup>27</sup> þis D.

<sup>28</sup> þat false D.    þat fals O.    <sup>29</sup> y-knowe O.

while after, as þe story telleþ. ¶ The Kyng Edward<sup>1</sup> come þo aȝeyne vnto<sup>2</sup> ȝork<sup>3</sup>, ful sorweful, and his hoste departede, and euery man went into<sup>2</sup> his owen contre wip ful heuy and mornyng semblant.<sup>3</sup> and þe<sup>4</sup> Henaude toke<sup>4</sup> her<sup>5</sup> leue, and went into her<sup>5</sup> owen 4 contre; and þe Kyng, for her<sup>5</sup> trauaile, hugely ham rewarded<sup>6</sup>, and for enchesoun of þat viage, þe Kyng had despended<sup>7</sup> niche of his tresour<sup>8</sup>, and wastede.

¶ And in þat tyme wer<sup>9</sup> seyne ij mones in þe firmament: þat on 8 was clere, and þat oþer was<sup>5</sup> dere, þat<sup>6</sup> men myȝt hit<sup>7</sup> þo see þ[r]ouȝ-  
out<sup>8</sup> al þe worlde. and<sup>9</sup> Grete debate was þat same tyme aȝeyn  
10 þe<sup>7</sup> Pope Iohn þe xxij after þat<sup>5</sup> Seynt Petre was Pope, and þe  
Emperoure of Almaine, þat made him Emperour<sup>9</sup> aȝeins þe Popes 12  
wille, þat þo helde his see at Auy[n]ouñ; wherfore þe Emperour  
made his erie at Rome, and ordeynede anoper Pope þat hight<sup>11</sup>  
Nicholas, þat was a ffrer<sup>9</sup> menour; and þat was<sup>12</sup> aȝeynes þe right  
of holy cherch, wherfore he was cursede<sup>5</sup>; and þe power<sup>9</sup> of þat 16  
13 oþer Pope<sup>13</sup> sone was laide; and for enchesoun þat soche mervailles  
were seyne, men saide þat þe wor[l]de was neȝ at an<sup>5</sup> ende.

Of þe dep of Kyng Edward of Carnaruan, sometyne Kyng of  
Engeland. *Capitulo Ducentesimo Quintodecimo.* 20

**A**Nd now [go] we aȝeyne vnto Sir Edward of Carnaruan, þat  
was<sup>14</sup> some-tyme Kyng<sup>14</sup> of Engeland, and was put adoune<sup>15</sup>  
of his dignite. allas for his tribulacioun! and sorwe him bifelle  
prouȝ false counsel þat he leuede, & truste oppoñ ham to niche, þat 24  
afterward<sup>6</sup> was destroyede<sup>16</sup> prouȝ her<sup>5</sup> falsnesse, as God wolde.  
¶ And þis Edward of Carnaryuan was in þe castel of Berkele, vnder  
þe kepyng of Sir Morice of Berkeley and of Sire Iohn of Mau-  
trauers. and to ham he made his compleynt of his sorwe and of 28  
his disese; and oftetyms he axede of his wardeyns what he hade  
tressepassede aȝeins Dame Isabel his wif, and Sir Edward his sone,  
þat was new made Kyng<sup>9</sup>, þat pai wolde nouȝt visite him. ¶ [þo  
ansuerede one of his wardenes]<sup>17</sup> ¶ “My worpi lord, displese ȝow 32  
nouȝt þat y shal ȝow telle; þe enchesoun is, for it is done ham to  
vnderstonde þat, if my Lady ȝour<sup>9</sup> wif come eny ping<sup>9</sup> neȝ ȝow, þat ȝe

<sup>1</sup> om. O.    <sup>2</sup> toward D.    <sup>3</sup> MS. semblant se.

<sup>4</sup>—<sup>4</sup> Henaudes nome D.    Henaudes toke O.    <sup>5</sup> om. D.    <sup>6</sup> as DO.

<sup>7</sup> om. DO.    <sup>8</sup> prouȝ D.    <sup>9</sup> and a DO.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 148.

<sup>11</sup> me callede D.    <sup>12</sup> was þe[re] D.    <sup>13</sup>—<sup>13</sup> Pope afore hym O.

<sup>14</sup>—<sup>14</sup> kyng<sup>9</sup> symetyne D.    kyng sumtyme O.    <sup>15</sup> adouñ some-tyme D.

<sup>16</sup> destroyede D.    distroyed<sup>6</sup> O.    om. R.    <sup>17</sup> supplied from D.



wolde <sup>1</sup>her' strangle and quelle, and <sup>2</sup>al so pat 3e Wolde do to <sup>2</sup>my  
 Lor<sup>k</sup> 3our' Sone." ¶ po ansuerede he wip simple chere, and saide :  
 "allas, allas ! am y nouzt in prisoun, and aH at 3our' owen wille ?  
 4 Now God it wote, y pouzt it neuer ; and now y wolde <sup>3</sup>pat y were  
 dede ! so wolde God pat y were ! for pan were al my <sup>4</sup>sorwe  
 passede." ¶ Hit was nouzt longe after pat pe Kyng, prouz conseil  
 of pe Mortymer', grantede pe war<sup>k</sup> and pe kepyng<sup>t</sup> of Sire Edward  
 8 his fader', to Sire Thomas<sup>5</sup> Toiourneye and to pe forsaide Sir' Iohn  
 Mautrauers, prouz pe Kyngus lettre, and put out holliche <sup>6</sup>pe for-  
 saide <sup>6</sup>Sir' Morice, of pe warde of pe Kyng<sup>t</sup>. and pai tok<sup>7</sup> and lad  
<sup>8</sup>him to <sup>8</sup>pe castel of Corf, pe whiche castel pe Kyng<sup>t</sup> hatede as  
 12 eny dep ; and pai kepte him pere safly<sup>9</sup> til pat<sup>10</sup> it come to <sup>11</sup>Seint  
 Matheus day in Septembre, in pe 3ere of Grace M<sup>t</sup> CCC xxvij, pat  
 pe forsaide Sir' Roger<sup>12</sup> Mortymer' sent pe maner of pe <sup>13</sup>dep, how  
 and in what maner he shulde be done to dep. ¶ And anone as pe  
 16 forsaide Thomas and Iohn Hade seyne pe lettre and pe <sup>14</sup>commande-  
 ment, pai maden <sup>15</sup>Kyng Edward of Carnaruan gode chere and gode  
 solace, as pai myght atte pat soper' ; and noping<sup>t</sup> pe Kyng wiste of  
 her' traitoures.<sup>16</sup> ¶ And when tyme was forto gone<sup>17</sup> to be<sup>k</sup>, pe  
 20 Kyng went vnto<sup>18</sup> his be<sup>k</sup>, and laye, and slepte faste. And as pe  
 Kyng lay and slepte, pe traitoures, false forsuorne<sup>19</sup> ageins her'  
 homage and her' feaute, come<sup>20</sup> priueliche<sup>21</sup> into pe Kyngus  
 chaumbre, and her' company <sup>22</sup>wip Ham, and Laiden an Huge  
 24 table oppon his Wombe, and wip men pressede and helde<sup>23</sup> fast  
 adoune pe iiij corners of pe table oppon his body : wherwip pe gode  
 man awoke, and was wonder' sore adrade to bene<sup>24</sup> dede pere, and  
 slayn, and turnede his body opsadouñ. ¶ pe tok<sup>25</sup> pe false  
 28 tiraunt<sup>3</sup>,<sup>26</sup> and as<sup>27</sup> wode traitoures,<sup>28</sup> an horne, and put hit into<sup>29</sup>  
 his fundement as depe<sup>30</sup> as pai might, and toke a spete of Copur'  
 brennyng<sup>t</sup>,<sup>5</sup> & put hit prouz pe horne<sup>31</sup> into his body, and ofte-  
 tymes rollede perwip his bowailes ; and so pai quelledede here  
 32 Lorde, pat<sup>32</sup> noping was perceyuede ; and after, he was enterede at  
 Gloucestr'.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 148, back.      <sup>2-2</sup> pat 3e wol do also O.      <sup>3</sup> wil O.

<sup>4</sup> myn O.      <sup>5</sup> om. D.      <sup>6-6</sup> om. O.      <sup>7</sup> toke pe kyng<sup>t</sup> D.

<sup>8-8</sup> pe kyng vnto O.      <sup>9</sup> saflych D.      <sup>10</sup> om. DO.      <sup>11</sup> vnto DO.

<sup>12</sup> Thomas DO.      <sup>13</sup> his D.      <sup>14</sup> om. O.      <sup>15</sup> maden pe D.      made O.

<sup>16</sup> treytourresse O.      <sup>17</sup> go O.      <sup>18</sup> to D.      <sup>19</sup> forsuore D.

<sup>20</sup> comen O.      <sup>21</sup> priuely D.      priunly O.      <sup>22</sup> leaf 149.      <sup>23</sup> held it O.

<sup>24</sup> be O.      <sup>25</sup> nome D.      <sup>26</sup> traitou[r]s D.      traytours O.

<sup>27</sup> as fals & O.      <sup>28</sup> tiraunt<sup>3</sup> D.      tiraunt<sup>es</sup> O.      <sup>29</sup> in D.      vnto O.

<sup>30</sup> dede sic O.      <sup>31</sup> horne brennyng<sup>t</sup> D.      <sup>32</sup> and D.

How Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward spoused<sup>e</sup> Philippe, þe Erles daughter of Henaude, at 3ork<sup>1</sup>. *Capitulo Ducentesimo xvj<sup>10</sup>.*

**A**Nd after cristes-masse<sup>1</sup> þo next sewyng<sup>1</sup>, sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn of Henaude brouzt<sup>2</sup> wip him Philipp, his broper<sup>3</sup> Douzter, pat was 4 Erl of Henaud<sup>4</sup>, his nece,<sup>4</sup> into Engeland; and Kyng Edward spoused<sup>e</sup> her<sup>1</sup> at 3ork<sup>1</sup> wip michel honour<sup>1</sup>; and Sir<sup>1</sup> Iohn of Hothum, Bisshop of Ely, and Sir<sup>6</sup> William of Melton, Erchebisshop of 3ork, songe þo<sup>7</sup> þe masse, þe Sondag in þe <sup>8</sup>Eve of þe 8 Conuersion<sup>8</sup> of Seynt Poule, in þe 3er<sup>1</sup> of grace M<sup>1</sup> CCC xxvij. ¶ but for enchesoun pat þe kyng was<sup>9</sup> but 3onge and tender of age when he was cronede, and meny wrongus were<sup>10</sup> Done<sup>11</sup> whiles his fader<sup>11</sup> leuede, for enchesoun pat he trowede þe<sup>12</sup> counseilers pat 12 were false aboute him, pat conseilede him to done oþerwise þan resoun wolde, wherfore grete harme was þo vnto<sup>13</sup> the <sup>14</sup>reame and to þe Kyng, and al men directede<sup>15</sup> þe Kyngus dede,<sup>16</sup> and hit was nouzt—so Almyghty God hit<sup>7</sup> wote,<sup>17</sup>—wherfor it was 16 ordeynede att<sup>18</sup> þe Kyngus crounyng<sup>18</sup>, pat þe Kyng, for tendre of his age, shulde be gouernede be tuelf grete Lordes of Engeland, wipouten<sup>19</sup> þe whiche noping shulde be<sup>20</sup> done, pat is forto seyne, þe Erchebisshoppe of Kanterbery, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork<sup>1</sup>, þe 20 Bisshopp of Wynchestre and þe Bisshop of Hereford,<sup>21</sup> And þe Erl of Lancastre, and<sup>22</sup> þe Erl Marchal, and þe Erl of Kent, pat were þe Kyngus vncles, and þe Erl of Gerreint,<sup>23</sup> Sir<sup>1</sup> Thomas Wake, Sir<sup>1</sup> Henry of<sup>6</sup> Parey, Sire Olyuer of Yngham, and Iohn of 24 Roos, barons. ¶ Alle pise were <sup>24</sup>suore troweliche<sup>24</sup> forto conseil þe Kyng<sup>1</sup>, and pai shulde ansuere euery 3ere in þe parlement of pat shulde <sup>25</sup>be done<sup>25</sup> in þe tyme of pat<sup>26</sup> gouernaile. ¶ But pat ordenance was sone vndone,<sup>27</sup> and pat was miche <sup>28</sup>losse and 28 harme<sup>28</sup> to al Engeland; ffor þe Kyng and alle þe lordes pat shulde gouerne him, were gouernede & reulede after þe Kyngus moder, Dame Isabel, and by Sir<sup>1</sup> Roger þe<sup>22</sup> Mortymer<sup>1</sup>; and as pai wolde, al ping<sup>1</sup> was done, bope<sup>29</sup> amonges hye and<sup>30</sup> lawe. ¶ And 32

<sup>1</sup> Cristemas O.    <sup>2</sup> brouzt þo D.    <sup>3</sup> Brother O.    <sup>4-4</sup> om. D.<sup>5</sup> wedede D.    <sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> om. DO.    <sup>8-8</sup> Conuersacion O.<sup>9</sup> nas O.    <sup>10</sup> weren O.<sup>11-11</sup> while his [fader] D.    while þat his fadir O.<sup>12</sup> his D.    <sup>13</sup> to O.    <sup>14</sup> leaf 149, back.    <sup>15</sup> directe it sic O.<sup>16</sup> dedes D.    <sup>17</sup> wold O.    <sup>18-18</sup> Crounyng of þe kyng O.<sup>19</sup> withoute O.    <sup>20</sup> bene D.    <sup>21</sup> Herford DO.    <sup>22</sup> om. O.<sup>23</sup> Garenne O.    <sup>24-24</sup> trewly swore O.    <sup>25-25</sup> done be O.<sup>26</sup> þe D.    <sup>27</sup> y-done O.    <sup>28-28</sup> harme and losse D.<sup>29</sup> MS. boue.    <sup>30</sup> and amonge D.

pai toke<sup>1</sup> vnto ham castelles,<sup>2</sup> tounes, Landes and rentz, in grete harme and losse vnto the crowne, and of þe Kyngus state also, out of mesur<sup>3</sup>.

4 How þe pees was made bituene þe Englisshemen and þe Scottes ;  
& also of<sup>3</sup> þe iustifyng<sup>4</sup> of Troilebaston. Capitulo ¶ Du-  
centesimo ¶ Septuadecimo.

8 **T**He Kyng Edward, at Whitsontide, þe secunde zere of his  
regne, prou<sup>3</sup> conseile of his moder and of Sir Roger<sup>5</sup> Mor-  
tymer, ordeynede a parlement at Nor[t]hampton; at þe whiche  
parlement þe Kyng, prou<sup>3</sup> her conseil and none opere of þe land<sup>6</sup>  
wipin age, grantede to bene<sup>7</sup> accordede wip þe Scottes in pis  
12 maner, þat al þe feautes and homages þat þe Scottes shulde done  
to<sup>8</sup> þe crowne of Engeland, forzaf ham vnto the Scottes for euer-  
more, by his chartre ensealede. ¶ and ferpermore an endenture  
was made of þe Scottes vnto<sup>9</sup> Kyng Edward, þat was Kyng  
16 Henries sone, whiche endenture pai callede his<sup>10</sup> Ragemain, in the  
whiche were contenede alle þe homages and feautes, ferst of þe  
Kyng of<sup>3</sup> Scotland, and of alle þe prelates, Erles and barons of  
aH<sup>11</sup> þe reaume of Scotland, wip her seals sette peron, and oper  
20 chartres and remembrance; þat<sup>12</sup> Kyng Edward and his barons had  
of her right in þe reaume of Scotland, hit was forzene ham azein  
holliche,<sup>13</sup> and also wip þe blac crois of Scotland, þe whiche þe  
gode Kyng Edward conquerede in Scotland, and brouzt hit out of  
24 þe Abbay of Scone, þat is a ful precieuse relique. ¶ And also  
ferpermore he relessede and forzaf alle þe landes þat þe barons of  
Engeland had in Scotland by olde conqueste. and pis pees forto  
halde and laste, þe Scottes were bonden<sup>14</sup> to þe Kyng in xxx M<sup>+</sup>  
28 ti<sup>15</sup> of siluer, to ben<sup>7</sup> paidede wipin iij zere, þat is to seyne, euery  
zere x M<sup>+</sup> ti, by even porcioñs. 16 ¶ And ferpermore, ouer al pis,  
pai<sup>17</sup> spake<sup>18</sup> bituene þe Par[t]ies [a]boue-saide, þat David Driton-  
nanter, þat was Robert Brus<sup>19</sup> sone,—þe false tirant and traitour,  
32 and false forsuorne azeynes his oth, þat aroos azeynes his liege  
Lord, þe noble<sup>20</sup> Kyng Edward, and falseliche<sup>21</sup> made him Kyng

<sup>1</sup> token O.

<sup>2</sup> castell and D.

<sup>3</sup> om. O.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 150.

<sup>5</sup> Roger þe D.

<sup>6</sup> lande and D.

<sup>7</sup> be O.

<sup>8</sup> vnto DO.

<sup>9</sup> vnto þe O.

<sup>10</sup> it O.

<sup>11</sup> om. DO.

<sup>12</sup> MS. þat þat.

<sup>13</sup> holly D.

<sup>14</sup> bounde O.

<sup>15</sup> pound O.

<sup>16</sup> leaf 150, back.

<sup>17</sup> þe sic O.

<sup>18</sup> speken D.

<sup>19</sup> the Brutes D.

<sup>20</sup> þe Brus O.

<sup>21</sup> gode D.

<sup>22</sup> falsely D. falsly O.

of Scotland, as is saide bifore,—& his sone shuld be Kyng of Scotland, pat was of age but<sup>1</sup> v 3ere. ¶ & so, prou3 hir<sup>2</sup> cursede conseil, pis Dauid spoused at Berewik Dame Iohne<sup>3</sup> of pe<sup>3</sup> Toure, pat was Kyng Edwardus sustre, as pe geste<sup>4</sup> telleþ, oppoñ<sup>4</sup> Marie Magdalein<sup>5</sup> day In<sup>6</sup> pe 3er<sup>6</sup> of grace M<sup>1</sup> CCC xxviiij, to grete harme and enpeiryng<sup>7</sup> to al pe Kyngus bloode, Wherof pat gentil lady come, Allas pe time! for wonder miche was<sup>7</sup> pat fair<sup>7</sup> Damyseþ disparage,<sup>8</sup> sip pat she was mariede wipout<sup>9</sup> pe commune assent of alle<sup>10</sup> pe lordes of Engeland. ¶ And fro pe<sup>11</sup> tyme pat Brut hadde conquerede Albyoñ, and nempnede pe lanck after his owen name Brytayngñ, pat now is callete Engeland, after pe name of Engist; and so was pe reaume of Scotland holden<sup>12</sup> of pe<sup>12</sup> reaume of Engeland, and of pe croune, by feaute and<sup>13</sup> homage. For Brut conquerede pat lande, and 3af it to Albanac, his<sup>14</sup> secunde sone; and he callete pe lanck Albany after his<sup>15</sup> name, so pat pe heires pat comen after him helde<sup>16</sup> of Brut, and of his heires, 16 pe Kyngus of Britaign, by feaute and homage; and fro pat<sup>17</sup> tyme vnto pis Kyng Edward, ¶ pe reaume of Scotland was holden<sup>18</sup> 19 of pe reaume of Engeland by feaute<sup>20</sup> and by<sup>21</sup> seruices abonesaide, as pe cronicles of Engeland and of Scotland berep<sup>22</sup> witnesse 20 more plenerly. and acursede be pe tyme pat pis parlement was ordeynede at Northamton! for pere, prou3 false conseile, pe Kyng was<sup>23</sup> pere falsly disherited<sup>23</sup>; and 3itt he<sup>24</sup> was wipin age. ¶ And 3ette, when Kyng Edward was put doune<sup>25</sup> of his realte of 24 Engeland, 3itte men put him nou3t out of pe feautes and seruises<sup>26</sup> of pe reaume of Scotland, and of pe Fraunchises Disheritede for euermore. ¶ And nopeles pe grete lordes of Engeland were a3eins to conferme pe pees & the trewes abonesaide, saf oneliche<sup>27</sup> pe 28 Quene Isabel, pat was pe Kynges moder Edward, and pe Bisshop of Ely, and pe Lorde Mortymer. ¶ But resoun and law wolde nou3t pat a final pees shulde be made bituene ham, wipouten<sup>28</sup> commune assent of Engeland.

<sup>1</sup> of DO.    <sup>2</sup> his O.    <sup>3-3</sup> atte O.    <sup>4-4</sup> telle3 oppoñ seynt sic D.

<sup>5</sup> Magdaleyns D.    <sup>6</sup> om. O.    <sup>7-7</sup> the D.

<sup>8</sup> disparagede D.    <sup>9</sup> a3eyns al D.    <sup>10</sup> a3ens al O.

<sup>11</sup> om. O.    <sup>12</sup> pat O.    <sup>13</sup> MS. holden holden.    <sup>14</sup> & by O.

<sup>15</sup> MS. has his eldest, with eldest underlined for omission.

<sup>16</sup> his owen D.    <sup>17</sup> helden O.    <sup>18</sup> fro pat DO.    <sup>19</sup> fro R.

<sup>20</sup> holde O.    <sup>21</sup> leaf 151.    <sup>22</sup> fentes O.    <sup>23</sup> om. DO.

<sup>24</sup> beren O.    <sup>25-25</sup> falsly disherite D.    <sup>26</sup> MS. it.

<sup>27</sup> adoune D.    <sup>28</sup> adoune O.    <sup>29</sup> homages D.    <sup>30</sup> onely D.    <sup>31</sup> only O.

<sup>32</sup> with-out D.    <sup>33</sup> with-oute pe O.

Of the debate þat was bituene Quene<sup>1</sup> IsabeH and Sire Henry,  
Erl of Lancastre and of Leycestre; and of <sup>2</sup>the ryding of<sup>2</sup>  
Bedford. Capitulo Ducentesimo xvij<sup>o</sup>.

4 **W**Hen þe forsaide Daudi had spoused Dame Iohne of þe  
Tour in þe toune of Berwik, as bifore is saide, þe Scottes,  
in despite of þe Engliſſhe-men, callede Dame Iohn þe Countesse  
'make pees,' for þe cowardise pees forto ordeyne; but þe Kyngus  
8 person bare þe <sup>2</sup>wite & þe<sup>2</sup> blame, wiþ wrong, of þe makyng  
of þe accorde; and al was done þrouȝ þe Quene & Roger  
þe Mortymer. ¶ And hit was nouȝt longe after, þat<sup>3</sup> þe quene  
Isabel <sup>4</sup>ne toke into Her<sup>5</sup> Honde al þe Lordeshipp of Pountfret,†  
12 and almost al þe landes <sup>2</sup>þat were<sup>2</sup> of value, þat perteynede<sup>6</sup> vnto<sup>7</sup>  
þe croune of Engeland, so þat þe Kyng had nouȝt forto<sup>7</sup> dispende,  
but of his Vsues<sup>8</sup> and of his eschequer; ffor þe Quene Isabel and  
þe Mortymer had a<sup>9</sup> grete manie of<sup>10</sup> her' retenue,<sup>11</sup> þat folwede  
16 euermore þe Kyngus courte, and went and tok þe Kyngus prises  
for her' penyworthes at gode chepe; wherfore þe contre þat þai  
comen<sup>12</sup> in were ful sore adrade, and almost destroyed. ¶ þo  
bigan<sup>13</sup> þe communitie<sup>14</sup> of Engeland forto hate <sup>15</sup>Isabel þe Quene,<sup>15</sup>  
20 þat so miche<sup>16</sup> louede her' when she come aȝein forto pursue the false  
traitoures þe Spensers fro Fraunce, þat same tyme þe false traitour  
Robert of Holand þat bitraede his lorde<sup>17</sup> Thomas of Lancastre was  
þo deliuerede out of prison, and was wonder' pryue wiþ þe<sup>18</sup> Quene  
24 IsabeH and also wiþ þe Mortymer; but þat auailede him but litel,  
for he was tak at Michelmasse þat next come after, as he rode  
toward þe Quene Isabel to London; and Sir' Thomas Whither'  
smote of his heede<sup>19</sup> bisides þe toune of Seynt Albanus. and þis<sup>18</sup>  
28 Sir' Thomas duelled þo wiþ Sir' Henry, Erl of Lancastre; and he  
put him in hidyng for drede of þe Quene, for she louede him  
wonder miche, and praiede<sup>20</sup> vnto þe Kyng' <sup>2</sup>for him,<sup>2</sup> þat þe same  
Thomas most ben<sup>21</sup> exiled <sup>2</sup>out of Engeland.<sup>2</sup>  
32 ¶ And þe noble Erl, Sir' Henry of La[n]castr', had ofte-tymes  
<sup>22</sup>Herde þe commune clamour of þe Engliſſhe-men, of þe michel<sup>23</sup>  
diseas<sup>24</sup> þat were done in Engeland, and also for diuerse wronges

<sup>1</sup> om. D. þe qwen O.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. D.      <sup>3</sup> þan sic D.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 151, back.      <sup>5</sup> her' owen D.      her owne O.      <sup>6</sup> perteyneden O.

<sup>7</sup> to D.      <sup>8</sup> Issues D.      vses O.      <sup>9</sup> om. D.      <sup>10</sup> in D.

<sup>11</sup> retenaunce O.      <sup>12</sup> come O.      <sup>13</sup> bigonne D.      <sup>14</sup> Comminalte O.

<sup>15-15</sup> þe Quene IsabeH D.      <sup>16</sup> om. D.      <sup>17</sup> lord sir DO.

<sup>18</sup> om. O.      <sup>19</sup> heuede D.      <sup>20</sup> praye D.      <sup>21</sup> be O.      <sup>22</sup> leaf 152.

<sup>23</sup> myche O.      <sup>24</sup> diseses DO.

þat were done amonges<sup>1</sup> þe commune peple, of<sup>2</sup> whiche þe Kyng  
bare þe blame wiþ wrong<sup>3</sup>, for he nas but ful 3onge and tendre of  
age, and þouȝt, as a gode man, forto done<sup>3</sup> away and slake þe  
slaundre of þe Kyngus persone, if þat he might in eny maner<sup>4</sup> 4  
wise, so as<sup>4</sup> þe Kyng was þerof noþing gulti, wherfore he was in  
perel of lif and lyme. ¶ And so he assemblede al his retynance,<sup>5</sup>  
and went & spake vnto ham of þe Kyngus honour, and also forto  
amende his estate. and Sir<sup>6</sup> Thomas of Broþertoñ, Erl Marchal, 8  
and Sir<sup>7</sup> Edmund of Wodestok<sup>8</sup>, þat were þe Kyngus vncles, and  
also men of Londoñ, maden<sup>6</sup> her<sup>9</sup> oth, him forto<sup>7</sup> mayntene in þat  
same querele. ¶ And her<sup>9</sup> cause was þis, þat þe Kyng shulde holde  
his householde and his many<sup>8</sup> as<sup>9</sup> perteynede a Kyng<sup>9</sup> forto done,<sup>10</sup> 12  
and haue also his realte; and þat<sup>11</sup> þe Quene Isabel shulde deliuer<sup>1</sup>  
out of her<sup>9</sup> honde, <sup>12</sup>into þe Kyngus honde,<sup>12</sup> al maner lorde-  
shippe,<sup>13</sup> rentes, tounes, <sup>14</sup>and castelles<sup>14</sup> þat perteynede to<sup>15</sup> þe  
croune of Engeland, and þat she shulde leue wiþ þe þridde<sup>16</sup> part of 16  
þe rentes of Engeland, as opere Quenes hade done <sup>17</sup>or þis tyme,<sup>17</sup>  
and wiþ none oper þing. ¶ And also þat Sir<sup>18</sup> Roger Mortymer  
shulde duelle oppoñ his owen Londes, for þe whiche landes he  
hade holpen disherite miche peple, so þat þe commune peple were 20  
nouȝt<sup>11</sup> destroiiede þrouȝ hir<sup>18</sup> <sup>19</sup>wrongeful takyng.<sup>19</sup> ¶ And also to  
enquere How, and by<sup>20</sup> whome, þe Kyng was bitraide and falsely<sup>21</sup>  
deseyuede at Stanhope, and þrouȝ whos conseil <sup>22</sup>þat þe Scottes  
went<sup>23</sup> away by nyght fram<sup>24</sup> þe Kyng. ¶ And also how, and þrouȝ 24  
whos conseil,<sup>22</sup> þe ordenance þat were<sup>25</sup> made at þe coronaciō of  
Kyng Edward wer<sup>1</sup> put adouñ, þat is to seyne, þat þe Kyng, for  
<sup>26</sup>helpyng and amendement<sup>26</sup> of þe reaume, and in honour of him,  
shulde be<sup>27</sup> gouernede and reulede by xij, þe grettest & wiseste 28  
Lordes of þe reaume; and wiþouten<sup>28</sup> ham shulde noþing be  
grauntede ne done, as 'bifore is saide; the whiche gouernances  
maliciou[s]ly were put adouñ<sup>29</sup> fro þe Kyng; wherfor me[ny]  
harmes, shames and reprofes haue falle vnto þe Kyng and to his 32

<sup>1</sup> among O.    <sup>2</sup> of the DO.    <sup>3</sup> do O.    <sup>4</sup> þat D.    þat as O.

<sup>5</sup> retenaunt; D.    <sup>6</sup> made D.    <sup>7</sup> to D.    <sup>8</sup> meyne O.

<sup>9-9</sup> a kyng<sup>9</sup> perteynede D.    <sup>10</sup> perteyneth vnto a kyng O.    <sup>10</sup> do O.

<sup>11</sup> om. D.    <sup>12-12</sup> om. D.    <sup>13</sup> lordeshippes D.    <sup>13</sup> lordschippes O.

<sup>14-14</sup> castelles D.    <sup>15</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>16</sup> þirde O.

<sup>17-17</sup> bifore her<sup>9</sup> D.    <sup>18</sup> byfore her O.    <sup>18</sup> leaf 152, back.

<sup>19-19</sup> takyng<sup>9</sup> so wrongeful D.    <sup>20</sup> MS. by by.    <sup>21</sup> falseliche D.

<sup>22-22</sup> om. O.    <sup>23</sup> wenten D.    <sup>24</sup> fro D.    <sup>25</sup> was DO.

<sup>26-26</sup> amendement and helpyng D.    <sup>26</sup> amendement & helpyng O.

<sup>27</sup> ben D.    <sup>28</sup> with-out O.    <sup>29</sup> donñ DO.

reaume. And þat is to<sup>1</sup> vnderstonde, for-asmiche as Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward, some-tyme Kyng of Engeland, was ordeynede, by assent of <sup>2</sup>þe communitie<sup>2</sup> in plein parlement, forto bene<sup>3</sup> vnder þe warde  
 4 and Gouvernance of Henry, Erl of Lancastre, his cosyn, for saluacion of his body he was taken<sup>4</sup> out of þe castel of Kenylworth, þere þat he was in ward, and þrouȝ colour of þe Quene Isabel and of þe Mortymer, wipout<sup>5</sup> consent of eny parlement,  
 8 þai<sup>6</sup> tok<sup>7</sup> and lad him þer þat<sup>8</sup> never<sup>9</sup> after none of his<sup>9</sup> Kynrede myȝt wip him speke ne see, and after traiterously<sup>10</sup> toke and mordrede him<sup>10</sup>; for whos deþ a foule sclandre aroos þrouȝ-out all Cristendome, when hit was done. ¶ And also al<sup>9</sup> þe tresoure þat<sup>11</sup>  
 12 Sir<sup>12</sup> Edward of Carnaryuan hade lefte<sup>13</sup> in meny places of<sup>14</sup> Engelonȝ and in Walys, were wasted and born<sup>15</sup> away<sup>16</sup> wipouten þe<sup>16</sup> wille of Kyng Edward his sone, in destruccioun of him and of his folc. ¶ Also, þrouȝ whos conseil<sup>17</sup> þat þe Kyng<sup>17</sup> ȝaf vp þe  
 16 Kyngdome of Scotlanȝ, for þe whiche reaume þe Kyngus ancestres hade ful sore trauaile,<sup>18</sup> and so dede meny a nobleman for her ryght; and was diliuerede al þe right vnto<sup>19</sup> David, þat was Robert le Brus<sup>20</sup> sone, þat no right hade vnto þat reaume, as al<sup>1</sup> þe  
 20 worlde hit wiste. ¶ And also, by whom þe chartres & remembrances þat þai hade of þe right of Scotlanȝ were<sup>21</sup> take out of þe tresorie, and taken to þe Scottes, þe Kyngus enemys, to disheriteson<sup>22</sup> of him and of his successours, and to grete harme to<sup>23</sup> his lieges,  
 24 & grete reprove to<sup>24</sup> alle Englysshe-men for euermore. ¶ Also, wherfore Dame Iohn of þe Toure, þe Kyngus sustre Edward, was disparaged and mariede vnto David, þat was Robert þe Brus<sup>25</sup> sone, þat was a traitour and<sup>26</sup> enemy vnto Engeland; and þrouȝ  
 28 whos conseil she was tak<sup>27</sup> into our enemys Hondes, out of Engelonȝ.

¶ And in þe mene-tyme, while<sup>28</sup> the Gode Erl Henry of Lancast<sup>r</sup> and his company tok<sup>29</sup> conseil how þise poynte[s] aboue-  
 32 saide might bene amendede vnto þe worshipp of þe Kyng, and to his profite, and to þe profite also of his lieges, þe Quene Isabel,

<sup>1</sup> om. D.      <sup>2-2</sup> comminalte O.      <sup>3</sup> be O.      <sup>4</sup> take DO.

<sup>5</sup> with-outen D.      <sup>6</sup> MS. þat.      <sup>7</sup> nome D.      <sup>8</sup> as D.      <sup>9</sup> om. O.

<sup>10-10</sup> nome and him mordrede D.      toke hym & mordred hym O.

<sup>11</sup> of O.      <sup>12</sup> kyng D.      <sup>13</sup> leaf 153.      <sup>14</sup> in O.      <sup>15</sup> bore O.

<sup>16-16</sup> with-oute O.      <sup>17-17</sup> Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward D.      <sup>18</sup> Trauaylled O.

<sup>19</sup> to D.      <sup>20</sup> Bruseȝ D.      Brus his O.      <sup>21</sup> weren D.

<sup>22</sup> disherityng O.      <sup>23</sup> of D.      <sup>24</sup> vnto DO.

<sup>25</sup> MS. Brus so with so underlined for omission; Bruseȝ D.      Brus his O.

<sup>26</sup> and an D.      <sup>27</sup> taken D.      <sup>28</sup> whiles DO.      <sup>29</sup> nome D.      token O.

prouȝ conietting and sotelte of<sup>1</sup> þe Mortymer', Lete ordein a parlement at Salesbury; and at þe same Parlement þe Mortymer' was made Erl of<sup>2</sup> Marche, azeins alle þe barons wille of Engeland, in preiudice of þe Kyng and of his croune; & <sup>3</sup>Sir' Iohn of Eltham, 4 þe Kynges broþer,<sup>4</sup> was gert<sup>5</sup> wiþ a suerl̃ of Cornwail, and þo was callede Erle of Cornwaile; and euermore þe Quene Isabel so miche procurede azeinȝ<sup>6</sup> hir' sone þe Kyng', þat she hade þe warde of <sup>7</sup>þe forsaid<sup>7</sup> Sir' Edward and of his Landes. ¶ And at<sup>8</sup> þat 8 parlement þe Erl of Lancastre wolde nouȝt come, but ordeyned<sup>8</sup> al his power' azeins þe Quene Isabel and the Mortymer'; and<sup>9</sup> men of Londoñ ordeynede ham<sup>10</sup> wiþ vj Ċ men of armes <sup>11</sup>him forto helpe.<sup>11</sup>

12

¶ When þe Quene IsabeH wist of the<sup>12</sup> Doyng', she suore by God and by his names ful angrely, þat in euel tyme he þouȝ[t] on<sup>13</sup> þo poyntes. ¶ Tho sent þe Quene Isabel and þe Mortymer' after' her' retenue, and after þe Kyngus retenue, so þat þai hade 16 ordeynede amongus ham an huge ost; and þai conseilede þe Kyng so þat oppoñ a nyght þai ryden xxiiij<sup>14</sup> [myle] toward Bedford, þere þat þe Erl of Lancast' was wiþ his company, and þouȝt haue him destroiēde. and þat night she rode biside<sup>15</sup> the 20 Kyng' her' sone, as a knyȝt armede, for drede of Dep. ¶ And hit was done þe Kyng Edward to vnderstond, þat þe Erl Henry of Lancastre & his company wolde haue destroiēde þe Kyng and his conseil<sup>16</sup> for euermore, wherfor þe Kyng was <sup>17</sup>somedel towardes 24 him<sup>17</sup> heuy & annoiēde. ¶ When<sup>18</sup> þe Erl Marchal and þe Erl of Kent, þe Kyngus broþer, herde of þis þing', þai ryden so in message bituene ham, þat þe Kyng grantede him his pees to þe Erl Henry of Lancastre for a<sup>19</sup> certeyn raunsoñ of xj M<sup>+</sup> ti; but þat was 28 neuer <sup>20</sup>paide afterwarl̃. ¶ And þise were þe Lordes þat Helde<sup>21</sup> wiþ Sir' Henry of Lancastre: Sir' Henry Beaumondl̃, Sir' Fouk fitȝ-Warein, Sir' Thomas Rooselyn, Sir' William Trussel, Sir' Thomas Wyther', and about an Ċ of knyȝtez mo, þat<sup>22</sup> were to 32 ham consenting'; and alle þo were exilede þrou conseile of<sup>23</sup> Quene Isabel & of þe Mortymer', for þe Mortymer' couetede<sup>24</sup> forto haue

<sup>1</sup> and also of DO.    <sup>2</sup> of þe O.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 153, back.    <sup>4-4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5</sup> gerd D.    <sup>6</sup> MS. azeinȝ þe.    <sup>7-7</sup> om. O.    <sup>8</sup> to D.

<sup>9</sup> and þe D.    <sup>10</sup> ham forto help D.    hem for-to helpe O.

<sup>11-11</sup> om. DO.    <sup>12</sup> þis D.    <sup>13</sup> oppoñ D.    vpon O.    <sup>14</sup> xxiiij O.

<sup>15</sup> bisides D.    <sup>16</sup> Cumpanye O.    <sup>17-17</sup> toward hym sumdel D.

<sup>18</sup> wherfore O.    <sup>19</sup> MS. a a.    <sup>20</sup> leaf 154.    <sup>21</sup> helden O.

<sup>22</sup> þan sic O.    <sup>23</sup> of þe D.    <sup>24</sup> coniectede D.



her<sup>1</sup> londes, if he might prou<sup>2</sup>z eny maner coniettyng<sup>3</sup>; for he was so couetous, and hade to miche<sup>1</sup> his wille, and þat was Grete pitee.

How Kyng Edward<sup>4</sup> went ouer þe see forto Don his homage vnto  
4 þe Kyng of France for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ *Capitulo*  
*Ducesimo Decimo nono.*<sup>2</sup>

**H**It was nou<sup>3</sup>t longe<sup>3</sup> after<sup>1</sup>, þat þe Kyng of France, prou<sup>2</sup>z  
conseile of his Dussepirs, sent to Kyng<sup>4</sup> Edward<sup>4</sup> of  
8 *Engeland*, þat he shulde come to Parys, and do<sup>4</sup> his homage, as  
resou<sup>n</sup> hit<sup>5</sup> wolde, for þe Duchee of Gyene. ¶ And so, prou<sup>2</sup>z  
consent of þe lordes of *Engeland*, Kyng Edward went ouer<sup>1</sup> þe  
see; [and] at<sup>6</sup> *Ascencioun* he come vnto<sup>7</sup> Parys þe iij 3ere of his  
12 regne, forto done his homage [vnto þe Kyng of Fraunce. and þe  
Kyng vnderfonge his homage]<sup>8</sup> and made michel<sup>9</sup> ioye and  
worship. But or Kyng Edward hade made his homage<sup>10</sup> vnto þe  
Kyng<sup>4</sup> of France,<sup>10</sup> hastely he was sent<sup>11</sup> a3eyne into *Engeland*  
16 prou<sup>2</sup>z þe Quene *Isabel* his moder<sup>1</sup>; and anone hastely he come  
a3eyne into *Engeland* oppo<sup>n</sup> *Whitsonday*, wiþout<sup>12</sup> eny takyng  
leue of þe Kyng of *Fraunce*; wherfore he was wonder<sup>1</sup> worp  
[ = wroth ].

20 How Sir<sup>1</sup> Roger<sup>13</sup> Mortymer<sup>1</sup> bare him so<sup>14</sup> proudely &<sup>14</sup> hie.  
*Capitulo CC xx.*<sup>15</sup>

**A**Nd now shul 3e<sup>17</sup> hure How<sup>18</sup> sir<sup>1</sup> Roger þe<sup>3</sup> Mortymer<sup>1</sup> of  
Wygemore, þat desirede and couetede to bene at an<sup>5</sup> hye  
24 state, so þat þe Kyng grantede him to bene<sup>19</sup> callede þe<sup>20</sup> Erl of<sup>21</sup>  
*Marche* <sup>22</sup> prou<sup>2</sup>z-out al his Lordeship. ¶ And he bicom<sup>e</sup> þo so  
prout,<sup>23</sup> þat he wolde lese and forsake þe name þat his<sup>24</sup> Ancestre  
haden<sup>24</sup> euer bifore; And for þat enchesou<sup>n</sup> he lete him calle Erl  
28 of<sup>21</sup> *Marche*<sup>22</sup>; And none of þe *communes* of *Engeland* derste calle  
him by none<sup>5</sup> oþer name, for he was callede so, prou<sup>2</sup>z þe Kyngus  
crie þat men shulde calle him þe<sup>20</sup> Erl of<sup>21</sup> *Marche*. ¶ And þe  
Mortymer<sup>1</sup> <sup>25</sup> þo bare him<sup>25</sup> so hauten and so proude, þat wonder hit  
32 was to wete; and also disgisede him wiþ wonder<sup>1</sup> ryche cloþes  
oute of al maner resou<sup>n</sup>, boþe of shaping and of<sup>5</sup> wering<sup>1</sup>; Wherof

<sup>1</sup> mychel O.    <sup>2</sup> MS. octauo; viij<sup>o</sup> O.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> done O.  
<sup>5</sup> om. D.    <sup>6</sup> at þe D.    <sup>7</sup> to O.    <sup>8</sup> supplied from D.    <sup>9</sup> myche O.  
<sup>10-10</sup> om. DO.    <sup>11</sup> sent for D.    <sup>12</sup> withouten D.    <sup>13</sup> Roger þe DO.  
<sup>14-14</sup> proutliche and so D.    proudly & so O.    <sup>15</sup> MS. xix.  
<sup>16</sup> leaf 154, back.    <sup>17</sup> he O.    <sup>18</sup> of DO.    <sup>19</sup> be O.    <sup>20</sup> om. DO.  
<sup>21</sup> of þe O.    <sup>22-22</sup> om. D.    <sup>23</sup> proude & so hauteyn O.  
<sup>24-24</sup> Auncestres had O.    <sup>25-25</sup> bar hym þ<sup>o</sup> O.

the Englisshe-men hade grete wonder<sup>1</sup>, how and<sup>1</sup> in what maner<sup>1</sup> he might contreue or fynde soche<sup>2</sup> maner pride; and þai saide amonges ham alle communeliche,<sup>3</sup> þat his pride shulde nouzt longe endure. ¶ And þe<sup>4</sup> same tyme, Sire Geffray þe Mortymer<sup>4</sup> þe 3onge, þat was þe Mortymers sone, lete him calle Kyng of Folye; and so<sup>5</sup> hit bifelle aftirward<sup>1</sup> indede, ffor he was so ful of pride and of wrecchednesse, þat he helde a rounde table in Walys to alle men þat<sup>6</sup> þider<sup>1</sup> wolde<sup>6</sup> come, and countrefetede<sup>7</sup> þe maner<sup>8</sup> &<sup>8</sup> doynge<sup>1</sup> of Kyng Arthure; table; but openly he failede, ffor þe noble knyzt Arthure<sup>9</sup> was þe<sup>10</sup> moste worpi lord<sup>1</sup> of renoun þat was in al þe worlde<sup>11</sup> in his tyme, and<sup>12</sup> jitte come neuer non soche after<sup>1</sup> him, for alle þe noble knyzt<sup>13</sup> þ[r]ouȝ Cristendome of dede<sup>12</sup> of Armes alosed, du[e]llede wiþ Kyng<sup>1</sup> Arthure, and helde him for her<sup>1</sup> lord<sup>1</sup>; and þat was wel sene,<sup>14</sup> for he conquere<sup>15</sup>de a Romainn þat me callede Frolle, & gete of him þe reaume of France, and quellede him wiþ his owen<sup>16</sup> hande.<sup>17</sup> ¶ And also he fauȝt wiþ a Geaunt<sup>16</sup> þat me callede Dynabus and quellede him,<sup>18</sup> þat hade rauisshe<sup>19</sup>de Elyne, þat was Kyng Hoeles nece, Kyng<sup>5</sup> of Lital Britaign; and afterward<sup>1</sup> he quellede in bataile þe Emperour of Rome, þat me callede Lucye, þat had<sup>1</sup> assemblede aȝeyns Kyng Arthur<sup>1</sup> forto feiȝt<sup>20</sup> wiþ him<sup>20</sup> so miche peple<sup>20</sup> of Romayns and of<sup>16</sup> Peiȝtes and of Sarasyngus, þat no man couȝ ham nombre; and he descomfitede ham alle, as þe story of him more pleynloker<sup>21</sup> telleþ. ¶ And in þe<sup>22</sup> same tyme, commune loos sprong<sup>1</sup> in Engeland, þrouȝ conietting<sup>1</sup> and ordenaunce of þe frere Prechoures,<sup>23</sup> þat Sir<sup>1</sup> Edward of Carnaryuan, þat was Kyng Edwardus fader<sup>1</sup>, of whom þe geest<sup>24</sup> telles, saide<sup>24</sup> þat he was alif<sup>25</sup> in the castel of Corf; wherfore alle þe commune[s] almost of Engeland were<sup>26</sup> in sorwe and<sup>27</sup> drede<sup>28</sup> wheper hit were so or<sup>28</sup> nouȝ; þai wist neuer<sup>1</sup> how<sup>29</sup> þe Mortymer<sup>1</sup> traiterously hade<sup>30</sup> done him mordre.<sup>30</sup>

<sup>1</sup> or D.      <sup>2</sup> such a O.      <sup>3</sup> communely D.      comunly O.<sup>4</sup> þat D.      <sup>5</sup> om. D.      <sup>6-6</sup> wolde þider<sup>1</sup> D.<sup>7</sup> Counterfete O.      <sup>8</sup> & þe O.<sup>9</sup> MS. Arthure and, with and underlined for omission.      <sup>10</sup> om. DO.<sup>11</sup> worde sie D.      <sup>12</sup> leaf 155.      <sup>13</sup> knyzt<sup>1</sup> D.      knyghtes O.      knyzt R.<sup>14</sup> ysene O.      <sup>15</sup> conquere<sup>1</sup>de in bataile D.      Conquere<sup>1</sup>de in batayle O.<sup>16</sup> om. O.      <sup>17</sup> hondes D.<sup>18</sup> Dynabȝ and quellede him D.      Dynabus & qwelld<sup>1</sup> hym O.      Dynabus R.<sup>19</sup> rauisshe<sup>1</sup>de fair<sup>1</sup> D.      rafished<sup>1</sup> faire O.      <sup>20-20</sup> om. O.<sup>21</sup> plenerly O.      <sup>22</sup> þat D.      <sup>23</sup> menours O.<sup>24-24</sup> telleþ saiden D.      telleþ seyden D.      <sup>25</sup> on lif D.      <sup>26</sup> weren O.<sup>27</sup> or D.      <sup>28</sup> or wer<sup>1</sup> D.      <sup>29</sup> how þat O.<sup>30-30</sup> him done mordrede D.      ydone hym y-mordred<sup>1</sup> O.

How Edmunde of Wodestok, <sup>1</sup>þat was Erl of Kent, and þe Kyngus broþer, Edward of Carnaryuan, <sup>1</sup>was biheuedede <sup>2</sup>at Wynchestr. *Capitulo CCº xxiº.*<sup>3</sup>

4 **A** Nd oppoñ a tyme hit was <sup>4</sup>so, þat Sir Edmunde of Wodestok, Erl of Kent, spake vnto þe Pope <sup>5</sup>Iohn þe xxij at Auy[n]on, and said þat Almyghty God had meny tymes done, for <sup>6</sup>Thomas loue <sup>7</sup>of Lancastre, meny Gret <sup>8</sup>miracles to meny men and <sup>9</sup>wymen 8 þat Were þrouz diuerse sikenesse <sup>10</sup>vndoñ as to <sup>11</sup>the world, and þrouz his praier þai were brouzt vnto her hele. ¶ And so Sir Edmunde praiede þe Pope <sup>12</sup>hertly þat he wolde graunt him grace þat þe forsaide Thomas might bene <sup>13</sup>translated; but þe Pope 12 saide, 'nay, he shulde nouzt bene <sup>13</sup>translatede, þe same Thomas, Erl of La[n]castre, vnto þe tyme þat he were bettre certefied of þe clergie of Engeland, and seyne by hir obediens what þing God had done for þe loue of Thomas of Lancastre, after þe suggestioñ 16 þat þe forsaide Edmunde of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, had vnto him made.' <sup>14</sup>¶ And when þis Edmunde saw þat he miȝt nouzt spede of his purpos as tochyng þe translacioun, He praiede him þo of his conseile as toching Sir Edward of Carnaryuan, his broþer, 20 and saide <sup>7</sup> nouzt longe <sup>15</sup>goñ þat <sup>15</sup>he was Kyng of [England], what þing mygh[t] beste bene <sup>16</sup>done as tochyng his delyuerance, siþ þat a commune fame is <sup>17</sup>þrouz-out al Engeland þat he was alif, <sup>18</sup>and hole and saf. ¶ When þe Pope herde him telle þat Sir Edward 24 was alif, he commanded þe Erl, oppoñ his benisoñ, þat he shulde helpe, wiþ al þe power þat he might, þat he were delyuerede out of prisoñ, and saf his body in al maner <sup>19</sup>þat he myght; and, forto bryng þis þing vnto an ende, he assoilede him and his company a 28 pena & a culpa, and alle þo þat halpen to <sup>20</sup>his delyuerance.

¶ Tho tok <sup>21</sup>Edmunde of Wodestoke, Erl of Kent, his leue of þe Pope, and comme aȝeyn into <sup>20</sup>Engeland. And when Edmunde was comen <sup>22</sup>somme of þe frere prechoures come and saide þat Sir 32 Edward his broþer ȝitte was alyf in þe <sup>23</sup>Castel of Corf, vnder the keypyng of Sir Thomas þe <sup>24</sup>Gurnay. ¶ þo spede him þe forsaide

<sup>1-1</sup> om. D.      <sup>2</sup> beheded O.      <sup>3</sup> MS. xx.

<sup>4</sup> bifelle D.      befett O.

<sup>5</sup> pope struck out, and Bisshop of Rome written over in another hand in O.

<sup>6</sup> for seynt D.      <sup>7</sup> om. O.      <sup>8</sup> grete mervailles D.      <sup>9</sup> leaf 155, back.

<sup>10</sup> maladyes DO.      <sup>11</sup> vnto DO.      <sup>12</sup> struck out in O.      <sup>13</sup> be O.

<sup>14</sup> y-made O.      <sup>15-15</sup> agone O.      <sup>16</sup> be DO.      <sup>17</sup> om. D.

<sup>18</sup> on lif D.      in lyve O.      <sup>19</sup> þing D.      <sup>20</sup> vnto D.      <sup>21</sup> nome D.

<sup>22</sup> Come O.      <sup>23</sup> leaf 156.      <sup>24</sup> of D.

Edmund, as<sup>1</sup> faste as he might, til pat he come to<sup>2</sup> þe castel of Corf, and acqueyntede him,<sup>3</sup> and spake so faire wip Sir' Iohn Daueril, pat was conestable of þe forsaide castel, and ȝaf him riche ȝiftes forto haue acqueyntance of him, and forto<sup>4</sup> know of his 4 conseil. and pus hit bifelle, þat þe forsaide Sir' Edmund<sup>5</sup> praiede specialy forto telle him priuely of his lorde his broþer, Sir' Edward, if þat he leuede or were dede. <sup>6</sup>if þat<sup>6</sup> he were <sup>7</sup>on lif,<sup>7</sup> he praiede of<sup>8</sup> him <sup>9</sup>ones to haue<sup>9</sup> a sight. ¶ And þis Sir' Iohn 8 Daueril was an hye-hertede man, & ful of corage, and ansurede shortely vnto Sir' Edmund, and saide, þat Sir' Edward<sup>10</sup> his broþer was in hele & vnder' his kepyng, ¶ and derst shew him vnto no man, siþ it was defendede him in the Kyngus half, Edward, þat was 12 Edward<sup>11</sup> sone of Carnauan, and also þrouȝ commandement of þe Quene Isabel, þe Kyngus moder, and of Sir' Roger þe Mortymer. þat he shulde<sup>12</sup> shew his body <sup>13</sup>to no man<sup>13</sup> of þe worlde, saf onely<sup>14</sup> vnto ham, oppoñ peyne<sup>15</sup> of lif and lyme, and to disherite- 16 souñ of his heires for euermore. but þe false traitour' falsely liede, for he was nouȝt in his ward, but he was tak þens, and lade to<sup>16</sup> þe castel of Berkelee þrouȝ Sir' Thomas Gurnay, þrouȝ commande- ment of þe Mortymer, til þat he was dede, as bifore is saide more 20 plenerly.<sup>17</sup> ¶ But Sir' Edmund of Wodestok wist noþing, þat<sup>18</sup> his broþer was dede. Wheroppon he toke a lettre vnto þe<sup>8</sup> forsaide Sir' Iohn, and praiede him hertly þat<sup>19</sup> he wolde take hit to<sup>20</sup> Kyng Edward his broþer, as to His worþi Lorde; and he toke<sup>21</sup> þe lettre 24 of him, and bihight to him<sup>22</sup> forto done<sup>23</sup> his message wip-uten<sup>24</sup> eny maner' faille. and wip þat, Sir' Edmund to[k]<sup>25</sup> of him his leue, þat is to seyne, of þe forsaide Iohn, and went þo into his owen contre and Lordeship in Kent, þat he hade þer. ¶ And 28 anon as þis same Iohn wist þat Sir' Edmund of Wodestoke was Gone into Kent, his owen Lordeship, anone he went in al the<sup>8</sup> haste þat he might fro þe castel of Corf, and come <sup>26</sup>to Sir' Roger<sup>26</sup> Mortymer, and toke him þe<sup>27</sup> lettre þat Sir' Edmund of Wodestoke, 32 Erl of Kent, hade take him closede, & enselede<sup>28</sup> wip his owen seal.

<sup>1</sup> also D.    <sup>2</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>3</sup> om. DO.    <sup>4</sup> to DO.    <sup>5</sup> MS. Edward.

<sup>6-6</sup> and if D. and if þat O.    <sup>7-7</sup> a-lyve O.    <sup>8</sup> om. O.

<sup>9-9</sup> forto haue ones D. forto haue onys O.    <sup>10</sup> MS. Edmund.

<sup>11</sup> Edwardes DO.    <sup>12</sup> MS. shulde shulde.

<sup>13-13</sup> vnto nomaner man DO.    <sup>14</sup> oneliche D.    <sup>15</sup> losse DO.

<sup>16</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>17</sup> pleyner D.    <sup>18</sup> þat Edward DO.    <sup>19</sup> leaf 156, back.

<sup>20</sup> vnto DO.    <sup>21</sup> vnderfong<sup>t</sup> D. vndirfonge O.    <sup>22</sup> sir Edmund DO.

<sup>23</sup> do O.    <sup>24</sup> withoute O.    <sup>25</sup> nome D.

<sup>26-26</sup> vnto sir Roger þe DO.    <sup>27</sup> om. D.    <sup>28</sup> seled O.

¶ And when Sir Roger hadde vnderfonge þe lettre, <sup>1</sup>he vnclosede <sup>2</sup>þe lettre, <sup>2</sup>and <sup>1</sup>saw what was conteynede þerin, and gan <sup>3</sup>Hit forto rede; ¶ Wherof þe bigynning<sup>4</sup> was þis:

- 4 “Worshippis and reuerence,<sup>4</sup> wip broþeres liegeance<sup>5</sup> and subieccioun. Sir knyght, worshipful and dere broþer! if it 3ow plese, y pray<sup>6</sup> hertly þat 3e bene of gode comfort, ffor y shal so ordeyne for 3ow, þat sone 3e shul come out of prisoun, and bene<sup>7</sup> 8 deliuerede of that disese þat 3e bep<sup>8</sup> in. and vnderstondeþ of 3our Grete lordeshipe, þat y haue vnto me assentant almoste al þe grete [lordes]<sup>9</sup> of Engeland, wip al her’ apparail, þat is to seyne, wip Armure, wip tresour<sup>9</sup> wipout nombre, forto mayntene and helpe 12 3our’ quereþ so ferfourth that 3e shul ben<sup>7</sup> Kyng a3ein as 3e were biforne;<sup>10</sup> and þat þai alle haue suorne to me oppoñ a boke, and alsewel<sup>11</sup> prelates as<sup>9</sup> Erles & baroñs.”

- ¶ when Sir Roger þe<sup>12</sup> Mortymer’ saw and vnderstode þe myght 16 and the <sup>13</sup>strengþ of the Lettre, anone for wrap his hert gan<sup>14</sup> bolne, and euel hert bare toward Sir<sup>9</sup> Edmund’ of Wodestok’ þat was Erl of Kent. ¶ and so, wip al þe haste þet he might, he <sup>15</sup>went vnto<sup>15</sup> Dame Isabel þe Quene, þat was þe Kyngus moder’, and shewed 20 her’ Sir Edmundus Lettr’, <sup>16</sup>Erl of Kent,<sup>16</sup> and his wille and his purpos, and how he hade coniettede & ordeynede to put adoun Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, hire sone, of his realte and of his Kyngdome. ¶ “Now certes, sir Roger,” quod she,<sup>17</sup> “hap<sup>18</sup> Edmund 24 done so? be my faderes<sup>19</sup> soule,” quod she, “y wil <sup>20</sup>bene þerof<sup>20</sup> avengede, if þat God graunt me<sup>21</sup> my<sup>9</sup> lyf, and þat in a<sup>21</sup> shorte tyme.” ¶ And anone wip þat, þe Quene Isabel went vnto Kyng’ Edward’ here<sup>22</sup> sone, þere þat he was at þe<sup>9</sup> parlement at Wynchestre 28 forto haue amendede þe <sup>23</sup>wronges & trespasses<sup>23</sup> þat were done amongus<sup>24</sup> þe peple in<sup>25</sup> his reaume. ¶ And þo toke<sup>26</sup> she and shewed him þe lettre þat Sir<sup>21</sup> Edmund’ of Wodestok, <sup>16</sup>Erl of Kent,<sup>16</sup> hade made, and ensealede it<sup>9</sup> wip his seal, and bade him, 32 oppoñ her<sup>27</sup> benyson, þat he shulde avengede bene oppoñ him, as oppoñ his dedeliche<sup>28</sup> enemy.<sup>29</sup> ¶ Tho was þe quene so wroþ toward Sir Edmund, <sup>16</sup>Erl of Kent,<sup>16</sup> and cessede neuer to pray vnto her’

<sup>1-1</sup> & O. <sup>2-2</sup> it D. <sup>3</sup> began O. <sup>4</sup> reuerences DO.

<sup>5</sup> liegeaunces O. <sup>6</sup> praye 3ow D. <sup>7</sup> be O. <sup>8</sup> bene D.

<sup>9</sup> om. O. <sup>10</sup> before O. <sup>11</sup> aswel D. asweel O. <sup>12</sup> of O.

<sup>13</sup> leaf 157. <sup>14</sup> began to O. <sup>15-15</sup> sent to D. <sup>16-16</sup> om. O.

<sup>17</sup> þe quene D. þe qwene O. <sup>18</sup> had O. <sup>19</sup> fader D. fadir O.

<sup>20-20</sup> þerof bene D. be þerof O. <sup>21</sup> om. D. <sup>22</sup> he sic D.

<sup>23-23</sup> trespasses and wronges D. <sup>24</sup> among O. <sup>25</sup> of D.

<sup>26</sup> nome D. <sup>27</sup> he sic D. <sup>28</sup> dedely D. <sup>29</sup> MS. eneny.

sone þat he schulde sende in<sup>1</sup> haste after him. and oppon þat, þe Kyng<sup>2</sup> sent by his lettres after<sup>3</sup> Sir<sup>4</sup> Edmund<sup>5</sup> of Wodestok<sup>6</sup>, þat he schulde<sup>2</sup> come &<sup>3</sup> speke wip him at Wynchestre, alle maner þinges lafte. ¶ And when Sir<sup>7</sup> Edmund<sup>8</sup> saw þat þe Kyng sent after him<sup>4</sup> 4 wip his lettre enselede, he hastede him in aH<sup>5</sup> þe hast<sup>5</sup> þat he myght<sup>6</sup>, til þat he come to Wynchestre. ¶ But<sup>6</sup> þo<sup>7</sup> þe Quene Wist þat Edmund<sup>8</sup> was come<sup>8</sup> vnto Wynchestre, and<sup>9</sup> anone she<sup>10</sup> praiede so faste<sup>10</sup> vnto Edward<sup>11</sup> her<sup>12</sup> sone, þat þe gode Erl was<sup>8</sup> arrestede<sup>11</sup> anone, & ladde vnto the barr<sup>12</sup> bifore Robert of Hamond<sup>13</sup>, þat was crouner<sup>12</sup> of þe Kyngus Household<sup>13</sup>; and he<sup>4</sup> asociiede vnto<sup>13</sup> him Sir<sup>14</sup> Roger þe Mortymer<sup>15</sup>. and þo spake þe forsaide Iohn<sup>16</sup> vnto him and saide: “¶ Sir<sup>17</sup> Edmund<sup>18</sup>, Erl of Kent, 3e shul<sup>12</sup> vnderston<sup>18</sup> þat it is done vs to wete, and principalli vnto oure liege lord<sup>19</sup>, Sir<sup>20</sup> Edward<sup>21</sup>, Kyng of Engeland—þat Almyghty God saue and kepe!—þat 3e beþe<sup>14</sup> his dedely enemy & his traitour, and also a commune enemy vnto þe reaume; and þat 3e haue<sup>15</sup> 16 bene about meny a day forto make priueliche<sup>16</sup> deliuerance of Sir<sup>17</sup> Edward<sup>18</sup>, some-tyme Kyng of Engeland, 3our<sup>19</sup> broþer, þe<sup>4</sup> whiche was put adoune of his realte by commune assent of alle þe lordes of Engeland, in enpeiring<sup>17</sup> of our<sup>20</sup> Lord þe Kyngus Estate, and also 20 of his reaume.” ¶ þo ansuerede þe gode man and saide: “For-soþ, Sir<sup>21</sup>, vnderstandeþ wel þat y was neuer<sup>22</sup> assenting forto enpeir<sup>18</sup> þe state of our<sup>23</sup> Lorde þe Kyng<sup>24</sup>, ne of his<sup>19</sup> croune, and þat y put me to ben<sup>20</sup> demede oppon<sup>21</sup> my pires.” ¶ And wip þat word<sup>25</sup>, Sir<sup>26</sup> 24 Roger þe<sup>4</sup> Mortymer<sup>27</sup> shewede him<sup>22</sup> þe Erles lettre & his seal, and saide þo: 23 “Sir<sup>28</sup> Edmund<sup>29</sup>, knowe 3e nouzt<sup>24</sup> þe prynt of pis lettre þat he<sup>25</sup> hade take vnto<sup>26</sup> Sir<sup>27</sup> Iohn<sup>28</sup> DaueryH<sup>29</sup>?” and he saw þe print of his seal, but he saw nouzt what was contenede perin; 27 28 and þe Erl him-self<sup>30</sup> wende þat hit hade bene<sup>28</sup> on of his lettres þat hade bene of no [charge]. 29 ¶ þo saide þe Erl to Sir<sup>31</sup> Roger Mortymer<sup>32</sup>, þat He wolde nouzt fo[r]sake þe lettre, and þat<sup>30</sup> was þe prynt of his seal. and anone wip þat word, þe wile and<sup>31</sup> false 32

<sup>1</sup> in al O.    <sup>2</sup> schuld & sic O.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> om. D.

<sup>5-5</sup> om. DO.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 157, back.    <sup>7</sup> when D.    <sup>8</sup> comen D.

<sup>9</sup> om. DO.

<sup>10-10</sup> prayede and so fast<sup>11</sup> Went<sup>12</sup> D.    prayed & so faste wente O.

<sup>11</sup> areste O.    <sup>12</sup> Coroner<sup>13</sup> DO.    <sup>13</sup> to O.    <sup>14</sup> ben O.

<sup>15</sup> han O.    <sup>16</sup> prynly O.    <sup>17</sup> peyryng<sup>18</sup> D.    pesynge O.

<sup>18</sup> appaire D.    <sup>19</sup> þe DO.    <sup>20</sup> be O.    <sup>21</sup> of D.

<sup>22</sup> ham D.    hem O.    <sup>23-23</sup> om. D.    <sup>24</sup> ouzt D.    oght O.

<sup>25</sup> 3e O.    <sup>26</sup> to O.    <sup>27</sup> in þe lettre DO.    <sup>28</sup> be O.    <sup>29</sup> leaf 158.

<sup>30</sup> þat it O.    <sup>31</sup> & þe O.

Mortymere<sup>1</sup> bygan to vndo pe *lettre*, and gan<sup>1</sup> hit forto rede in audience of al pe court. ¶ And po saide Sire Robert of Hamuht,<sup>2</sup> “Sir<sup>3</sup> Edmund,” *quod* he, “sip<sup>4</sup> pat 3e haue made knowyng openly 4 in pis court pat pis is 3our<sup>5</sup> *lettre* ensealede wip 3our<sup>6</sup> seal, and pe tenour of pe<sup>7</sup> *lettre* seip pat 3e wolde haue<sup>8</sup> bene aboute forto haue<sup>9</sup> delyuerede pe body of pat worshipful knyzt Sir<sup>10</sup> Edward, some- tyme Kyng of Engeland, 3our<sup>11</sup> broper, and forto helpe<sup>12</sup> him pat he 8 shulde haue<sup>13</sup> bene<sup>14</sup> Kyng a3eyne, and gouerne<sup>15</sup> his peple as he<sup>16</sup> was wont<sup>17</sup> bifore tymes, in empeiring of our<sup>18</sup> liege lorde pe Kyngus state,<sup>19</sup> pat is now,—wham God kepe fram alle desese!<sup>20</sup>—¶ And pis court wil pat 3e bene vndone of lif and lyme, and pat 3our<sup>21</sup> heires 12 bene disheritede for euermore, Saf pe *grace* of our<sup>22</sup> lorde pe Kyng.” po was pe Erl, Sir<sup>23</sup> Edmund of Wodestok, put a3eyne into prisoun, vnto<sup>24</sup> ful saf ward til oppoñ pe morwe; and po come pe Mortymere vnto pe Kyng, pere pat he satte at his mete, and tolde him how 16 pe Erl was Dampnede by wai of lawe, and also of lyf and lyme, and his<sup>25</sup> heires disheritede<sup>26</sup> for euermore, prou3 oppen knowe- liching<sup>27</sup> in plein court; wherfore him pouzt hit were gode pat pe forsaide Erl were hastely quellede, wipouten<sup>28</sup> wetyng of pe Kyng; 20 for elle3<sup>29</sup> the Kyng wolde for3eue him his dep, and pat shu[l]de turne ham<sup>30</sup> vnto miche<sup>31</sup> sorwe so as<sup>32</sup> he was enpechede. ¶ Anone pe Quene Isabel, prou3 conseile of pe Mortymere, and wipout eny opere conseile, sent in haste to pe baliffys of Wynchestre, pat pai 24 shulde smyte of Sir<sup>33</sup> Edmundes heede<sup>34</sup> of Wodestok, Erl of Kent, wipout<sup>35</sup> eny maner<sup>36</sup> abidyng<sup>37</sup> or respite oppoñ payne<sup>38</sup> of lif and lyme. ¶ po tok<sup>39</sup> pe bailliffes Sir<sup>40</sup> Edmund<sup>41</sup> of Wodestok<sup>42</sup> out of prisoun, and lade him bisides the casteH att Wynchestre, and 28 pere pai made a gonge-fermer<sup>43</sup> smyte of his heuede,<sup>44</sup> for none oper man derst hit done; & so deide he pere—allas the tyme!—pat is to seyne, the x Day of Ottobre, pe pridde<sup>45</sup> 3er<sup>46</sup> of Kyng Edwardes regne. And when pe Kyng wist perof, he was wonder<sup>47</sup> sory, and 32 lete entere him at pe<sup>48</sup> frere menoures at Wynchestre.<sup>49</sup>

<sup>1</sup> began O.    <sup>2</sup> Hamond D.    <sup>3</sup> 3oure O.    <sup>4-4</sup> om. O.

<sup>5</sup> haue holpen DO.    <sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> be O.    <sup>8</sup> gouerned O.

<sup>9-9</sup> woned O.    <sup>10</sup> estate D.    <sup>11</sup> diseses O.    <sup>12</sup> vndir O.

<sup>13</sup> om. O.    <sup>14</sup> disherite D. of his disherited O.    <sup>15</sup> knowleche O.

<sup>16</sup> withoute O.    <sup>17</sup> leaf 158, back.    <sup>18-18</sup> to michel D. to myche O.

<sup>19</sup> as he D. as 3e O. as R.    <sup>20</sup> heuede D.    <sup>21</sup> with-outen D.

<sup>22-22</sup> biddynge or respite oppoñ payne D. abydynge or respyte vpon payne O. abidyng<sup>4</sup> or respite R.

<sup>23</sup> token O.    <sup>24-24</sup> om. DO.    <sup>25</sup> heed O.    <sup>26</sup> iij O.

<sup>27</sup> MS. Wynchestres.

Of the Dep of Sir Roger Mortymer<sup>1</sup>, Erl of þe Marche. ¶ Capitulo  
¶ Ducentesimo ¶ <sup>1</sup>Vicesimo ¶ Secundo.<sup>1</sup>

**A**Nd so hit bifelle at pat tyme, pat Sir Roger the<sup>2</sup> Mortymer<sup>3</sup>, Erl of the Marche, was so prout & so hauten, pat he helde no<sup>4</sup> lorde of the reau<sup>5</sup>me<sup>3</sup> his pier<sup>1</sup>; and þo bicome he so couetouse, pat he folwede Dame Isabe<sup>6</sup>þ þe Quenes<sup>4</sup> court, þe Kyngus moder<sup>7</sup> Edward, and bisette his penyworthe<sup>8</sup> wip þe officers of þe Quenes househalde in þe same maner as þe Kyngus<sup>6</sup> officeres deden; & so<sup>8</sup> he made his takyngus as tochyng<sup>9</sup> vitales, and also of cariages; and al he dede for enchesou<sup>10</sup>n of Spenses, and<sup>2</sup> forto gadre tresoure; and so he dede wipout nombre in al pat he myght. ¶ Tho made he him wonder<sup>11</sup> priuee<sup>7</sup> with þe Quene Isabe<sup>6</sup>þ; and so miche<sup>12</sup> Lordeshippe And retenue hade, so pat alle þe grete Lordes of Engeland<sup>13</sup> of him wer<sup>14</sup> adrade. wherfore þe Kyng and his Conseile towarde<sup>8</sup> him wer<sup>15</sup> agreuede, and ordeynede amongus ham forto vndo<sup>9</sup> him be<sup>10</sup> pure resou<sup>11</sup>n and lawe, ffor enchesou<sup>12</sup>n pat Kyng<sup>16</sup> Edward<sup>17</sup>, pat was<sup>12</sup> þe Kyngus<sup>12</sup> fader<sup>18</sup>, traterously prou<sup>3</sup> him was mordred<sup>19</sup> in the castel of Berkelee, as bifore<sup>13</sup> is saide more plenerly, in the CC and xvij Chapter of þis book. ¶ And somme pat were of þe Kyngus Conseil louede<sup>14</sup> þe Mortymer<sup>15</sup>, and tolde him in<sup>20</sup> priuete<sup>16</sup> how pat þe Kyng and his conseil wer<sup>15</sup> about fram<sup>16</sup> day to day hym forto shende and vndo<sup>17</sup>;<sup>17</sup> Wherfore þe Mortymer<sup>18</sup> was sore annoiede, and angry as þe<sup>18</sup> Deuel azeynes ham pat wer<sup>19</sup> of þe Kyngus Conseil, and<sup>20</sup> saide pat he wolde on ham bene avengede,<sup>24</sup> how-se-uer he toke on. ¶ Hit was nouzt longe afterward, pat<sup>19</sup> Kyng Edward<sup>20</sup> and Dame Philipp his wif<sup>21</sup>, and Dame Isabe<sup>6</sup>þ þe Kynges moder<sup>22</sup>, and Sir Roger Mortymer ne went vnto Notyng<sup>23</sup>ham, pere forto soiourne. ¶ and so hit bife<sup>24</sup>,<sup>20</sup> pat þe Quene Isabe<sup>6</sup>þ,<sup>28</sup> prou<sup>3</sup> conseile of the<sup>21</sup> Mortymer<sup>22</sup>, toke to her<sup>23</sup> þe<sup>2</sup> keyes of þe zate<sup>22</sup> of þe castelle of Notyng<sup>23</sup>ham, so pat no man might come neper in ne<sup>23</sup> out by nyzt, but prou<sup>3</sup> þe<sup>2</sup> commandement of þe Mortymer<sup>24</sup>, ne þe Kyng<sup>25</sup>, ne none of his Conseil. ¶ And pat tyme Hit felle<sup>24</sup> so<sup>32</sup> pat þe<sup>25</sup> Mortyme[r], as a Deuel for wrap, bolnede<sup>26</sup> for wrap<sup>26</sup> pat

<sup>1-1</sup> xxj<sup>o</sup> D.    <sup>2</sup> om. D.    <sup>3</sup> lande D.    <sup>4</sup> quenes DO.    kyngus R.  
<sup>5</sup> penyworthes DO.    <sup>6</sup> quenes D.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 159.  
<sup>8</sup> towards DO.    <sup>9</sup> vndone O.    <sup>10</sup> prou<sup>3</sup> D.    þurgh O.  
<sup>11</sup> Tresou O.    <sup>12-12</sup> Kyng Edwardes D.    <sup>13</sup> aboue D.  
<sup>14</sup> Loueden DO.    <sup>15</sup> weren O.    <sup>16</sup> fro O.    <sup>17</sup> vndone D.  
<sup>18</sup> a D.    <sup>19</sup> pat þe D.    <sup>20</sup> fel D.    <sup>21</sup> om. O.  
<sup>22</sup> zates DO.    <sup>23</sup> nor O.    <sup>24</sup> bifelle D.    <sup>25</sup> þe DO.    om. R.  
<sup>26-26</sup> om. D.    & also for wrathe O.



he hade toward<sup>1</sup> the Kynges men Edward, and principally<sup>2</sup> azeins ham pat<sup>3</sup> hade him<sup>3</sup> accusede to þe Kyng of þe dep of Sire<sup>4</sup> Edward his<sup>4</sup> fader. ¶ And priueliche<sup>5</sup> a conseile<sup>6</sup> was taken<sup>7</sup> bituene 4 <sup>8</sup>Quene Isabel<sup>8</sup> and the Mortymer', and þe Bisshop of Lincolne, and Sir Symond of Bereford and Sir Hughe of Trompeton,<sup>9</sup> and oper priue of hir' conseile, forto vndo<sup>10</sup> ham alle pat hade accusede þe Mortymer' vnto the Kyng of his fadres dep, <sup>11</sup>Sir' Edward,<sup>11</sup> of 8 tresoun and of felonye. Wherefore alle þo pat were of the Kynges Conseile, when þai wist of the Mortymeres castyng pryuely, comen<sup>12</sup> to þe Kyng Edward, and saide pat þe Mortymer' wolde ham<sup>13</sup> destroie, for cause pat þai had accusede him of Kyng<sup>14</sup> Edwardus 12 Dep, his fader', & praiede him pat<sup>15</sup> he wolde maintene ham in her trew quereH; and þe Kyng granted ham hir' bone, and saide pat<sup>16</sup> he wolde maintene ham in hir' right. ¶ And pise were þe lordes 17 pat pursuede<sup>17</sup> þis quereH: Sire William Montagu, Sire Hunfray 16 de Boungh, Sire William his broþer, Sire Rauf of Stafford, Sire Robert of Hufford, Sir William of Clynton, Sir Iohn Neyl of Horneby, and meny opere of her' consent; and alle pise suorne oppoñ a<sup>18</sup> bok to mayntene þe quereH in-asmiche<sup>19</sup> as thei<sup>20</sup> 20 might.

¶ And hit<sup>21</sup> bifelle so after, pat Sir William Mountagu ne none of þe Kynges frendes moste nouzt<sup>14</sup> bene<sup>22</sup> herburghede in the castel, for the Mortymer', but went & toke her' herbugage<sup>23</sup> in 24 diuerse places in<sup>24</sup> the toun of Notingham; and þo were þai sore adrade leste þe Mortymer' shulde ham destroie. ¶ And in haste pere come vnto<sup>25</sup> Kyng Edward, Sir William Mountagu pere pat he was in his castel, <sup>26</sup>and priuely tolde him pat he ne none of his 28 company shulde nouzt take þe Mortymer wipout conseil & helpe of William of Eland, Conestable of þe same casteH. ¶ "Now certes," quod þe Kyng, "y leue þow ful wel; and perfore y conseile þow pat 3e go<sup>27</sup> to þe forsaide conestable,<sup>28</sup> and commande<sup>29</sup> him in my name 32 pat he be þour' frende and þour' helpe forto take the Mortymer', al

<sup>1</sup> azeynes D. azeins toward O.    <sup>2</sup> priueliche D.    <sup>3-3</sup> him hade D.

<sup>4-4</sup> Edwardes O.    <sup>5</sup> priuely D.    pryuely O.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 159, back.

<sup>7</sup> take O.    <sup>8-8</sup> MS. quene quene Isabelbel; þe quene Isabel DO.

<sup>9</sup> Trumpyngton) O.    <sup>10</sup> vndone O.    <sup>11-11</sup> om. DO.

<sup>12</sup> come O.    <sup>13</sup> altered from him in MS.    <sup>14</sup> om. D.

<sup>15</sup> MS. pat þai, with þai underlined for omission.    <sup>16</sup> om. DO.

<sup>17-17</sup> to pursue DO.    <sup>18</sup> þe DO.

<sup>19</sup> in-alse-miche D.    <sup>20</sup> þai D.    þey O.    hei R.    <sup>21</sup> MS. his.

<sup>22</sup> be O.    <sup>23</sup> herburghe D.    herburgh O.    <sup>24</sup> of D.    <sup>25</sup> vnto þe O.

<sup>26</sup> leaf 160.    <sup>27</sup> gone D.    <sup>28</sup> om. O.    <sup>29</sup> comanndeth O.

ping<sup>1</sup> lafte, oppoñ peril of lyf and <sup>2</sup>lyme." "<sup>3</sup>Sir," quod<sup>3</sup> Mountagu,<sup>4</sup>  
 "Sir, my lord, graunt mercy!" ¶ Tho went forth the forsaide  
 Mountagu, and come to þe conestable of þe<sup>5</sup> casteH, and tolde him þe  
 Kyngus wille. and he ansuerede and saide þe Kynges wille shulde <sup>4</sup>  
 be<sup>6</sup> done, in-asmychel<sup>7</sup> as he might, and wolde nouȝt spare for no  
 maner' dep; and so he<sup>8</sup> suore and made his oth. ¶ þo saide Sir  
 William of Mountagu <sup>9</sup>to þe conestable,<sup>9</sup> in<sup>10</sup> hering<sup>10</sup> of<sup>11</sup> alle ham<sup>11</sup>  
 pat were<sup>12</sup> Helpyng <sup>13</sup>to þe same<sup>13</sup> quereH: "Now certes, dere <sup>8</sup>  
 frende, vs bihoueþ forto<sup>14</sup> werche and done by ȝour<sup>15</sup> queyntise, to  
 take þe Mortymer', siþ pat ȝe bene<sup>16</sup> keper of þe casteH, and haueþ<sup>17</sup>  
 þe keyes in<sup>18</sup> ȝour' [warde]." ¶ "Sir," quod þe conestable, "wil  
 ȝe vnderstonde pat þe gates of þe castel bep<sup>19</sup> loket wiþ þe lokes <sup>12</sup>  
 pat Dame Isabel sent hider'; and by nyght she haþ þe keyes þerof,  
 and leiþ ham vnder þe cheuesel of her' bede vnto the morne; and  
 so y may nouȝt come into þe castel by þe ȝates in no maner' wise;  
 but y know a<sup>20</sup> Alie pat stracches<sup>21</sup> out of the ward, vnder' erpe, <sup>16</sup>  
 vnto<sup>22</sup> the castel, þat goþe into<sup>23</sup> þe weste, the<sup>24</sup> whiche alie Dame  
 Isabel <sup>25</sup>þe Quene, ne none of her' men, ne<sup>11</sup> þe Mortymer', ne  
 none of his company knoweþ hit nouȝt; and so y shal lede ȝow  
 prouȝ pat<sup>26</sup> Alie; and so ȝe shul come into þe castel wiþout<sup>27</sup> aspies <sup>20</sup>  
 of eny man pat bep ȝour enemys."

¶ And pat<sup>28</sup> same nyght Sir' William Mountagu, & alle the  
 lordes of þe<sup>29</sup> quereH, and þe same Conestable also, <sup>30</sup>went ham<sup>30</sup> to  
 horse, and made<sup>31</sup> semblant as hit wer' forto wende out of þe <sup>24</sup>  
 Mortymeres sight; but anone as þe Mortymer' herde pis tydyngus,<sup>32</sup>  
 he wende pat pai wolde haue gone ouer þe see for drede of him;  
 & anone he and his company toke conseile amonges ham forto lette  
 hir' passage, and sent lettres anone vnto the portes, so pat none of <sup>28</sup>  
 the grete lordes shulde wende <sup>33</sup>ham home into<sup>33</sup> her' owen contre,  
 but if he were areste & taken. ¶ And amonge<sup>34</sup> opere pingus,  
 William Eland, Conestable of þe forsaide castel, priueliche<sup>35</sup> lade  
 Sir' William Mountagu and his company by þe forsaide way vnder <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> pinges D.      <sup>2</sup> & of O.      <sup>3-3</sup> þo saide þe D.      <sup>4</sup> Mountegu þo O.

<sup>5</sup> þe same D.      <sup>6</sup> ben D.      <sup>7</sup> in-alsemychel D.      <sup>8</sup> inasmyche O.

<sup>9</sup> om. D.      <sup>9-9</sup> om. D.      <sup>10</sup> in hem sic O.      <sup>11</sup> om. O.

<sup>12</sup> wer' þere O.      <sup>13-13</sup> vnto þe D.      <sup>14</sup> to D.

<sup>15</sup> ȝour counseile and D.      <sup>16</sup> bep D.      <sup>17</sup> haue O.

<sup>18</sup> MS. in in.      <sup>19</sup> be O.      <sup>20</sup> an D.      <sup>21</sup> straccheþ D.      <sup>22</sup> strecheþ O.

<sup>23</sup> into DO.      <sup>24</sup> om. DO.      <sup>25</sup> leaf 160, back.

<sup>26</sup> MS. pat casteH, with casteH underlined for omission.

<sup>27</sup> wiþ-outen D.      <sup>28</sup> þe DO.      <sup>29</sup> his O.      <sup>30-30</sup> wenten D.

<sup>31</sup> maden O.      <sup>32</sup> tydyng O.      <sup>33-33</sup> home vnto DO.

<sup>34</sup> amonge al D.      <sup>35</sup> om. D.      pryuyly O.

the<sup>1</sup> erþ, so<sup>2</sup> til þat þai comen into<sup>3</sup> the castel, and went vp into<sup>4</sup> the Toure pere þat þe Mortymer<sup>5</sup> was in.<sup>6</sup> But Sir Hughe of Trompitoñ<sup>6</sup> ham ascriede hidously, and saide, "A, traitoures! hit is al<sup>5</sup> for nouȝt þat ȝe<sup>7</sup> þep comen<sup>7</sup> into þis castel. ȝe shul dye ȝitte in<sup>2</sup> euel dep euerychoñ."<sup>8</sup> And anone on of ham þat was in the<sup>1</sup> Mountagues company, vp wip a mace, and smote the same Hughe oppoñ þe heuede,<sup>9</sup> þat þe bray[n] barst<sup>10</sup> out and felle on 8 þe Ground; and so was he dede in euel dep. ¶ Tho toke<sup>11</sup> þai þe Mortymer<sup>5</sup>, as he<sup>12</sup> Armede him atte þe toures<sup>13</sup> dore, When he herde þe noise of ham for drede. And When<sup>14</sup> Quene IsabeH saw þat þe Mortymer<sup>5</sup> was taken,<sup>15</sup> she made miche sorwe in hert<sup>1</sup>, and 12 þise wordes vnto ham saide: ¶ "Now, fair<sup>1</sup> sires, y ȝow praye þat ȝe done non<sup>16</sup> harme vnto his body; a worpi knyȝt,<sup>17</sup> our<sup>18</sup> wel bilouede frende and<sup>1</sup> our<sup>1</sup> dere cosyn." ¶ Tho went þai þens, and come<sup>19</sup> & brouȝt the Mortymer, and presentede him vnto Kyng 16 Edward<sup>1</sup>, and<sup>20</sup> commaundede to brynge him into<sup>21</sup> sauf warl. ¶ But anone as þai þat were consent vnto<sup>22</sup> þe Mortymers doynge herde telle þat he was taken,<sup>23</sup> þai went and hid ham, and priueliche<sup>24</sup> by niȝt went out of the toune, eueryche<sup>25</sup> on<sup>26</sup> 20 his side, wip heuy hert and mornynge, & leuede oppoñ her oweñ<sup>1</sup> londes as wel as þai myght. ¶ And so þe<sup>27</sup> same ȝer<sup>28</sup> þat<sup>29</sup> þe Mortymer was taken,<sup>30</sup> he hade at his retynn<sup>xx</sup> ix<sup>31</sup> knyȝtȝ, wipouten<sup>32</sup> squyers & serieantȝ of Armes and footmen. And þo 24 was þe Mortymer<sup>5</sup> lade to London, and Sir Symond<sup>1</sup> of Bereforl was lad wip him, and was<sup>33</sup> take to þe conestable to kepe. ¶ But afterward was þe Mortymers lif examynede at Westminster bifore þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> & bifore<sup>5</sup> alle þe grete Lordes of Engeland for peril þat 28 might falle to<sup>4</sup> þe reaume, & forto<sup>34</sup> enquer<sup>1</sup> also whiche wer<sup>1</sup> assentynge vnto<sup>34</sup> Sir Edwardes dep, þe Kyngus fader<sup>1</sup>, and also þrouȝ whom þe Scottes askaped at<sup>35</sup> Stanhope into Scotland wipout þe wille of Kyng Edward<sup>1</sup>; ¶ And also how the chartre of Ragaman 32 was delyuerede vnto þe Scottes, wherin<sup>36</sup> þe Homages and<sup>37</sup> feautees

<sup>1</sup> om. DO.<sup>2</sup> om. O.<sup>3</sup> vn-to O.<sup>4</sup> vnto D.<sup>5</sup> om. D.<sup>6</sup> Trumpyngton O.<sup>7-7</sup> be come O.<sup>8</sup> echeon O.<sup>9</sup> heed O.<sup>10</sup> brast DO.<sup>11</sup> token O.<sup>12</sup> MS. has þai underlined for omission, and he written in the margin.<sup>13</sup> leaf 161.<sup>14</sup> when þe D.<sup>15</sup> whan þe O.<sup>16</sup> take O.<sup>17</sup> no O.<sup>18</sup> knyȝt and D.<sup>19</sup> a O.<sup>20</sup> comen O.<sup>21</sup> and he DO.<sup>22</sup> in O.<sup>23</sup> to D.<sup>24</sup> take O.<sup>25</sup> pryuyly O.<sup>26</sup> euerychoñ D.<sup>27</sup> eche O.<sup>28</sup> in O.<sup>29</sup> þat DO.<sup>30</sup> MS. nyght underlined for omission, and ȝer written in the margin.<sup>31</sup> MS. þat þat.<sup>32</sup> take O.<sup>33</sup> ix score DO.<sup>34</sup> withoute O.<sup>35</sup> werne D.<sup>36</sup> to DO.<sup>37</sup> fro DO.<sup>38</sup> leaf 161, back.<sup>39</sup> and þe O.

of Scotland<sup>1</sup> were<sup>1</sup> contened, pat pe Scottes shulde do<sup>2</sup> euermore to<sup>3</sup> pe Kyngus of Engeland for pe reaume of Scotland. Wherefore in his absence<sup>4</sup> he was dampned to bene<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>honget & draw<sup>5</sup> for his tresouñ. And pis meschief come to<sup>3</sup> him on Seint Andrewes 4 eve,<sup>6</sup> In pe 3ere of pe incarnacioñ of our<sup>7</sup> Lord Ihesu Criste, M<sup>7</sup> CCC<sup>7</sup> xxx.

**How Kyng Edward<sup>8</sup> gete a3eyn<sup>8</sup> into his honde<sup>8</sup> graciouslyliche<sup>9</sup> pe feautes and pe<sup>10</sup> homages of Scotland, wherof he was 8 put out prou3 pe false conseil of IsabeH his moder<sup>9</sup>, & of Sir Rogere Mortymer<sup>9</sup> <sup>4</sup>pat was made<sup>4</sup> Erl of pe<sup>11</sup> Marche. Capitulo Ducentesimo xxij<sup>10.12</sup>**

**N**OW<sup>13</sup> 3e haue [herde] Lordes, how Sir Iohn of Bailoil, in 12 tyme of pees, was chosen to bene<sup>14</sup> Kyng of Scotland, for enchesoñ pat he come of pe eldest dou3ter of pe Erl Dauid of Huntingdoñ,<sup>15</sup> pat was Kyng Alisaundres broper of Scotland, pat<sup>16</sup> deide wipouten<sup>17</sup> heir<sup>9</sup> of his body bigeten;<sup>18</sup> and how pis Iohn made 16 feaute & homage to Kyng Edward, pat was Kyng Henries sone pe prid, for his landes of Scotland; and how he afterward wipsaide<sup>19</sup> his homages,<sup>20</sup> prou3 conseile of pe Scottes, In pe<sup>21</sup> 3ere of the<sup>10</sup> Incarnacioñ M<sup>7</sup> celxxij<sup>9</sup>,<sup>22</sup> and <sup>23</sup>sende vnto<sup>23</sup> pe pope,<sup>24</sup> prou3 false 20 suggestioñ pat he made his oth vnto<sup>25</sup> pe forsaide sir<sup>26</sup> Edward, ouer his estate and his wille, of pe<sup>11</sup> whiche oth pe Pop<sup>27</sup> <sup>28</sup>assoilede him,<sup>28</sup> prou3 his bulles to him sent. ¶ And anone as Kynge Edward wiste perof, he ordeynede anone his <sup>29</sup>barons, and come 24 Vnto Berewike, and conquerede pe toune; at pe<sup>30</sup> whiche conqueste pere were slayn xxv M<sup>7</sup> & vij<sup>c</sup>. and<sup>31</sup> Bailoil, pat was Kyng of Scotland, come<sup>11</sup> & 3elde him vnto Kyng Edward; and pe Kyng afterward<sup>32</sup> delyuerede him out of pe tour of Londoñ, and alle pe 28

<sup>1</sup> werin sic O.    <sup>2</sup> done DO.    <sup>3</sup> vnto O.    <sup>4-4</sup> om. O.

<sup>5-5</sup> drawe and hongete D. to be drawe & honged he was dampned O.

<sup>6</sup> eve & DO.    <sup>7</sup> CCC and O.    <sup>8-8</sup> vnto him D. vnto hym O.

<sup>9</sup> graciously alle O.    <sup>10</sup> om. DO.    <sup>11</sup> om. D.

<sup>12</sup> MS. xxiiij; xxij<sup>do</sup> D. xxiiij<sup>o</sup> O.    <sup>13</sup> How sic O.    <sup>14</sup> be O.

<sup>15</sup> Heretingoñ D. Heretyngeton O.    <sup>16</sup> MS. pai.    <sup>17</sup> withoute O.

<sup>18</sup> begete O.    <sup>19</sup> forsoke O.    <sup>20</sup> homage DO.    <sup>21</sup> per sic O.

<sup>22</sup> CCClxxij O.    <sup>23-23</sup> sent to D. sent vnto O.

<sup>24</sup> pope struck out, and bysshope of Rome written over in a different hand in O.

<sup>25</sup> to D.    <sup>26</sup> kyng<sup>t</sup> DO.

<sup>27</sup> pope struck out, and bisshope written over in O.

<sup>28-28</sup> him assoilede D. hym assoylled O. assaide him R.    <sup>29</sup> leaf 162.

<sup>30</sup> om. O.    <sup>31</sup> And pe DO.    <sup>32</sup> Edward D.

grete lorde[s] of Scotland wip him, þat were taken<sup>1</sup> at Berwike, and 3af ham sauf condit to goñ into Scotland. And the Scottes seþenes, prou3 her' falsenesse, werrede oppoñ Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward<sup>1</sup>.  
 4 ¶ And when Sir' Iohn Bailoile, Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Scotland<sup>1</sup>, saw al þis, he went & put him ouer<sup>2</sup> þe<sup>3</sup> see vnto Dompier', and leuede þere oppoñ his owen landes as wel as he might, til þat þe Scottis wolde amende ham of hir' misdedes & trespasse3;<sup>4</sup> and lad with him Sir'  
 8 Edward<sup>1</sup>, his sone. Wherefore þe Scottes, in despite of him, callede him "Sir' Iohn Turnetabard<sup>1</sup>,"<sup>5</sup> for cause þat he<sup>6</sup> wolde nou3t<sup>6</sup> offende ne trespasse a3eynes Kyng<sup>1</sup> Edward<sup>1</sup> of Engeland; and so he forsoke his reame of Scotland, and sette þerof but litil pris.  
 12 ¶ And þis Sir' Iohn, Longe duelled in Fraunce, til þat he deide þere; and Sir' Edward<sup>1</sup> his sone<sup>7</sup> vnderfonge his heritage,<sup>7</sup> and dede homage vnto þe Kyng<sup>1</sup> of France for his landes of Dunpier'.

¶ And so hit felle afterward<sup>1</sup> þat Edward<sup>1</sup>, þat was Iohn  
 16 Bailoilles sone, had<sup>8</sup> wip him a squyer' of Engeland þat was born<sup>9</sup> in 3ork-shire, þat men callede Iohn of Barnaby; and þis<sup>10</sup> Edward<sup>1</sup> Bailoil louede him miche, & was nei3 him, and<sup>11</sup> wip him<sup>11</sup> ful pryuee. <sup>12</sup>¶ And so þis Iohn of Barnaby was in debate with a  
 20 Frenche-man in þe toune of Dounpier'; and so he quelled him, and went in his way, in al the haste þat he might, into þe castel fortill<sup>13</sup> haue socoure and helpe of his lord<sup>1</sup>. ¶ And anone come þe Officeres of þe toune<sup>14</sup> forto<sup>15</sup> take Iohn of Barnaby as a felouñ.  
 24 and Sir' Edward<sup>1</sup>, his lord<sup>1</sup>, halpe him, and rescuede him,<sup>3</sup> and by ny3t made him wende out of the castel; and so he went his way, and come into Engeland with-out<sup>16</sup> eny harme. ¶ And when þe Kyng of Fraunce saw þat<sup>17</sup> Sir' Edward<sup>1</sup> had rescuede his  
 28 felouñ, he bicome wonder' wroþ a3eyns Sir' Edward<sup>1</sup>, and anoñ lete him bene<sup>18</sup> arest<sup>1</sup>, and toke into his hande alle his landes. ¶ Tho duelled Sir' Edward in prison vnto þe tyme þat Sir' Henry<sup>19</sup> Beaumond<sup>1</sup> come into Fraunce; þe whiche Henry<sup>20</sup> some-tyme  
 32 was<sup>20</sup> Erl of Angos<sup>21</sup> in Scotland, prou3 his wif,<sup>21</sup> and was put out of þe forsaide Erldome when þe accord<sup>1</sup> was made<sup>22</sup> bituene Engeland & Scotland, prou3 þe Quene IsabeH & Sir' Rogere þe<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> take DO.    <sup>2</sup> one D.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> trespass O.<sup>5</sup> Turnelabard<sup>1</sup> DO.    <sup>6-6</sup> ne wolde O.    <sup>7-7</sup> his heritage vndirfonge O.<sup>8</sup> lad<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>9</sup> bore O.    <sup>10</sup> MS. þis þis.    <sup>11-11</sup> om. DO.<sup>12</sup> leaf 162, back.    <sup>13</sup> for-to O.    <sup>14</sup> Toun of Dunpiere O.<sup>15</sup> forto DO.    fortok R.    <sup>16</sup> wipouten D.<sup>17</sup> MS. þat kyng, with kyng underlined for omission.    <sup>18</sup> be DO.<sup>19</sup> Henry of<sup>1</sup> D.    Henry of O.    <sup>20-20</sup> was sumtyme O.<sup>21-21</sup> prou3 his wif<sup>1</sup> in Scotland<sup>1</sup> D.    <sup>22</sup> om. DO.    <sup>23</sup> om. D.

Mortmyer' & her' companye, for þe mariage þat she made bituene  
 Dauid, þat was Robert þe Brus<sup>1</sup> sone, and Dame Iohn of<sup>2</sup> þe toure,  
 Kyng Edwardus sustre of Engeland, and wel vnderstode<sup>3</sup> þis, þat  
 at the ende he shulde come to his ryght, but if [it] were prou<sup>4</sup> þe<sup>4</sup> 4  
 Edward BailloilH, þat was right heir' of the reaume of Scotland.  
 ¶ And þe Kyng of Fraunce, Lowys, louede wel<sup>5</sup> þis Sir' Henry,  
 and was wip him ful priuee, and <sup>6</sup>pouzt forto<sup>7</sup> make<sup>8</sup> delyuerance  
 of Sir' Edward Bailloiles body, if he might in eny maner. ¶ Tho 8  
 praiede he þe Kyng, þat he wolde graunt him of his grace Sir'  
 Edward Bailloilles body vnto þe next parlement, þat he miȝt leue  
 wip his owen rentes in þe mene-tyme, and þat he myȝt<sup>9</sup> stande to  
 bene<sup>10</sup> Iugede by his pieris at the<sup>11</sup> parlement. ¶ the Kyng 12  
 grantede him his praieres,<sup>12</sup> and made þe forsaide Sir' Edward ben  
 delyuerede out of prisoun in the maner' aboue-saide. and anone  
 as he was out of prisoun, Sir' Henry toke him forth wip him, & lad  
 him<sup>13</sup> into Engeland and<sup>14</sup> made him duelle priueliche<sup>15</sup> <sup>16</sup>in the<sup>16</sup> 16  
 Maner' of Sandhal oppoñ<sup>17</sup> Owe in ȝorke-shire, wip þe Lady Vescy.  
 and so he ordeynede him pere an Huge retenance of peple of  
 Englisshemen, and also<sup>18</sup> of Aliens, forto conquere aȝeyne<sup>18</sup> his  
 heritage. ¶ And so he ȝaf miche siluer' vnto soudeoures and to 20  
 Alienes forto helpe him; and pai bihight him forto helpe<sup>19</sup> in al  
 þat pai<sup>20</sup> might, but pai failede him at his most nede.

And at þat tyme<sup>21</sup> Donalde, Erl of Morref, herde telle how þat  
 Sir' Edward was comen<sup>22</sup> into Engeland, and come to him, and 24  
 made wip him grete ioye of his commyng aȝeyne, and saide to<sup>23</sup>  
 him, and bihigh[t] þat alle<sup>24</sup> grete lordes<sup>11</sup> of Scotland<sup>25</sup> shulde  
<sup>26</sup>bene to him<sup>26</sup> entendant, and <sup>27</sup>holde him<sup>27</sup> for hir' Kyng', as right  
 heir' of Scotland. and so miche pai wolde done, þat he shulde 28  
 be<sup>28</sup> crownede Kyng of þat lande, and <sup>29</sup>to him dede<sup>29</sup> <sup>30</sup>feaute &  
 Homage.<sup>30</sup> <sup>31</sup>þo come Sir' Henry of Beaumond to Kyng Edward of  
 Engeland, and praiede him, in way of charite, þat he wolde grant

<sup>1</sup> Brus his O.    <sup>2</sup> at O.    <sup>3</sup> vnderstondeþ D.    <sup>4</sup> sir DO.  
<sup>5</sup> miche D.    mych O.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 163.    <sup>7</sup> to D.    <sup>8</sup> make a O.  
<sup>9</sup> most D.    muste O.    <sup>10</sup> be O.    <sup>11</sup> om. O.  
<sup>12</sup> prayer D.    prayere O.    <sup>13</sup> him forth D.    <sup>14</sup> and laide sic D.  
<sup>15</sup> priuily O.    <sup>16-16</sup> at a D.    atte a O.    <sup>17</sup> op O.    <sup>18</sup> om. D.  
<sup>19</sup> helpe him D.    <sup>20</sup> he D.    <sup>21</sup> I-tyme sic O.  
<sup>22</sup> priuely come D.    priuily come O.    <sup>23</sup> vnto D.  
<sup>24</sup> alle þe D.    aH þe O.    <sup>25</sup> Engeland O.  
<sup>26-26</sup> to him bene D.    be to hym O.  
<sup>27-27</sup> shulde him holde D.    schuld hym hold O.    <sup>28</sup> bene D.  
<sup>29-29</sup> dede to him D.    dede to hym O.    <sup>30-30</sup> homage & feute O.  
<sup>31</sup> leaf 163, back.

of his grace vnto Sir Edward Bailoil, þat he moste<sup>1</sup> saffliche gone<sup>2</sup>  
 bi land fram<sup>3</sup> Sandhaß vnto Scotland, forto conquere his riȝt  
 heritage in Scotland. ¶ the Kyng Edward ansuerede and saide  
 4 vnto him: “yf þat y soffre þe Bailoil wende þrouȝ my londe  
 toward Scotland, þan þe peple wolde say þat <sup>4</sup>y were<sup>4</sup> assenting  
 to<sup>5</sup> þe company.” ¶ “Now, Sir, y praiſe ȝow þat ȝe wolde grant  
 him leue to take vnto [him] soudeoures of Engliſſhe-men, þat þai  
 8 myȝt safly lede him þrouȝ ȝour land vnto<sup>6</sup> Scotland; and, Sir,  
 oppoñ þis couena[n]t, þat if<sup>7</sup> it so bifalle—þat God hit forbede!—þat  
 þai bene<sup>8</sup> descomfited in bataile þrouȝ þe Scottes, þat y and alle þe  
 lordes þat holden with Bailoil ben for euermore put out of oure<sup>9</sup>  
 12 rentȝ þat we haueþ in Engeland.” ¶ and þe Kyng, oppoñ þis  
 couenant, grantede hir bone, as toching him and þo þat were of  
 þe<sup>10</sup> same quereß, þe whiche cleimede forto<sup>11</sup> haue londes &<sup>12</sup> rentȝ  
 in þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And þise were þe names of þe same  
 16 Lordes þat pursuede þis mater, þat is to seyn,<sup>13</sup> Sir Edward<sup>14</sup>  
 Bailoil, þat chalangede þe reaume of Scotland; Sir Henry  
 Beaumont, Erl of Angos; Sir Daid of Stroboly, Erle of Atheles;  
 Sire Geffray of Mountbray, Walter Comyn, and meny opere þat  
 20 were put out of hir<sup>15</sup> heritage in Scotland when þe pees was  
<sup>16</sup>made bituene Engeland and Scotland, as bifore is saide.

¶ And ȝe shal vnderstonð þat þise lordes toke wiþ ham v C  
 men of Armes and ij M<sup>t</sup> Archires<sup>17</sup> of footmen, and<sup>18</sup> þo went vnto<sup>19</sup>  
 24 ship atte Rauenesere, and sailede by þe see til þat þai come<sup>20</sup> vnto  
 Scotland, and<sup>21</sup> come to lande at Kynkeorne, xij mile fro<sup>22</sup> Seint  
 Iohnes toune, and sende<sup>23</sup> oute hier shippes aȝeine, for þai shulde  
 nouȝt ben<sup>24</sup> hurt ne apairede,<sup>25</sup> neiþer þat no man shulde gone<sup>2</sup> into  
 28 shippe aȝeyne, þouȝ þat<sup>26</sup> þai hade nede, but abide at al periles, and  
 nouȝt flee, but <sup>27</sup>stande, and raþer<sup>27</sup> soffre deþ þan flee, to mayntene  
 hir trew querelle. ¶ when þe Erl of Fif,<sup>28</sup> a fers man and a sterne,  
 herde telle þat þe Bailoil was comen<sup>29</sup> forto take þe lande of  
 32 Scotland, he come in haste vnto Kynkeorn wiþ x M<sup>t</sup> Scottes,  
 forto destourble him, þat he shulde nouȝt come to land. ¶ But  
 Sir Edward Bailoil and his company had taken þe land, maugre

<sup>1</sup> myȝt D.      <sup>2</sup> go O.      <sup>3</sup> fro DO.

<sup>4-4</sup> he shulde ben D.    he schuld ben O.      <sup>5</sup> vnto DO.      <sup>6</sup> into O.

<sup>7</sup> om. D.      <sup>8</sup> were O.      <sup>9</sup> ȝour O.      <sup>10</sup> þat O.      <sup>11</sup> to DO.

<sup>12</sup> or O.      <sup>13</sup> sey O.      <sup>14</sup> MS. Iohn; Edward þe DO.      <sup>15</sup> om. D.

<sup>16</sup> leaf 164.      <sup>17</sup> Archers and D.    Archiers & O.      <sup>18</sup> & of O.

<sup>19</sup> into O.      <sup>20</sup> comen O.      <sup>21</sup> MS. at.      <sup>22</sup> fram D.      <sup>23</sup> sent DO.

<sup>24</sup> be O.      <sup>25</sup> enpeirede D.    Empeyred O.      <sup>26</sup> om. O.

<sup>27-27</sup> rather stande & O.      <sup>28</sup> Wif<sup>t</sup> sic D.      <sup>29</sup> come O.

him and his company, and him descomfitede; at þe whiche  
 scomfiture Sir<sup>1</sup> Alisandre of Seton<sup>1</sup> was þer quelledde, and meny  
 oper. ¶ The Erl of Fif was þo wonder<sup>2</sup> sory, and ful euel<sup>2</sup>  
 shamede<sup>3</sup> þat so litil<sup>4</sup> company hade him descomfitede, and shame- 4  
 fulliche<sup>5</sup> put<sup>6</sup> him & alle<sup>6</sup> his company þat was<sup>7</sup> alif forto flee.<sup>8</sup>  
 þo come Sir<sup>9</sup> Edward the<sup>9</sup> Bailoil, and toke þe contre al about him,  
 til þat<sup>10</sup> he come to þe Abbay of Dunfermelyn; and þere he fonde  
 vitailles for him and<sup>11</sup> for his men.<sup>12</sup> and amonge aȝ oper þinges, 8  
 He fonde in a chambre aboue<sup>13</sup> v C of grete<sup>14</sup> stafes of fyne oke,  
 with longe<sup>9</sup> pikes of yren and of stele: he tok<sup>15</sup> and delyuerede  
 ham to þe most strongeste of his company. ¶ And anone after  
 he went fro þens, and loggede him in a felde ij mile fro Seint 12  
 Iohn<sup>16</sup> toune. and when þe burgeys of þe toune herde how þe Erl  
 was descomfitede prou<sup>3</sup><sup>17</sup> Sir<sup>18</sup> Edward<sup>18</sup> Bailloile, þai were sore  
 adrade, and broken þe briggez þat þai had<sup>18</sup> made ouer þe water of  
 Erne, so þat þe Bailoil might nouȝt goȝ<sup>19</sup> ouer; Wherefore he 16  
 loggede him þere al þat nyght, but litel hede he toke to<sup>20</sup> reste, and  
 saide vnto his peple, ¶ “Now, dere lordes, ȝe knowe<sup>21</sup> ful wel þat  
 we bene<sup>22</sup> now<sup>9</sup> loggede<sup>23</sup> bituene oure enemys; and if þai mow vs  
 hampre, þere nys<sup>24</sup> but litil<sup>18</sup> dep; whe[r]fore if we abide here aȝ 20  
 þis nyght stille, y leue þat hit shal turne vs to miche harme; for þe  
 power<sup>1</sup> of Scotland<sup>1</sup> may euery day wax and encrease, and we may  
 nouȝt so; and we bene ful<sup>25</sup> litel peple as aȝeins ham. wherefore y  
 praye ȝow, for the loue of Almyghty God, make we vs bolde and 24  
 hardy, and<sup>9</sup> þat we mow mightely take þe Scottes þis nyght, and  
 boldely werr<sup>1</sup> oppoȝ<sup>1</sup> ham; and late vs pu[r]sue ham þis nȝt; and<sup>26</sup>  
 if þai bene<sup>22</sup> trauailede prou<sup>3</sup> vs, and þai see oure hardynesse, so  
 þat opere Scottis þat comen, and mete ham & see ham so trauailede<sup>27</sup> 28  
 and wery, þe sorer wil bene adrade wip vs forto feizten;<sup>28</sup> and  
 fressheliche<sup>29</sup> þan<sup>30</sup> we shullen<sup>30</sup> feizt, and oppoȝ<sup>1</sup> Ham pursue, so  
 þat, prou<sup>3</sup> the grace of Almighty God, al the worlde shal speke of<sup>18</sup>  
 þe<sup>32</sup> douȝtynesse of our<sup>1</sup> chainualry.” ¶ And, sires, vnderstonde<sup>33</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> Seton þe sone DO.<sup>2</sup> il D.<sup>3</sup> aschamed<sup>1</sup> O.<sup>4</sup> l[i]tel a O.<sup>5</sup> shamelich D. shamelich O.<sup>6-6</sup> him and D. hym & al O. & alle R.<sup>7</sup> were D.<sup>8</sup> slee sic D.<sup>9</sup> om. D.<sup>10</sup> om. DO.<sup>11</sup> leaf 164, back.<sup>12</sup> folc D.<sup>13</sup> folk O.<sup>14</sup> aboute O.<sup>15</sup> gode D.<sup>16</sup> nome ham D. toke hem O.<sup>17</sup> Iohnes D. Iohnys O.<sup>18</sup> burgh þe O.<sup>19</sup> om. O.<sup>20</sup> go O.<sup>21</sup> of DO.<sup>22</sup> Knowen D.<sup>23</sup> be O.<sup>24</sup> ylogged<sup>1</sup> O.<sup>25</sup> is no bote O.<sup>26</sup> but DO.<sup>27-26</sup> om. D.<sup>27</sup> y-trauaylled<sup>1</sup> O.<sup>28</sup> fight O.<sup>29</sup> fresshely D.<sup>30</sup> fersly O.<sup>31-30</sup> schul we O.<sup>32</sup> leaf 165.<sup>33</sup> oppoȝ<sup>1</sup> D.<sup>34</sup> vnderstonde<sup>1</sup> D.



wel þat aȝ the company þat come<sup>1</sup> with Sir Edward Bailoile  
 grauntede wel<sup>2</sup> vnto þis<sup>2</sup> conseil, and were þerof glade, and anone  
 4 þe Bailoile and his company sore folwede ham, and dede ham  
 miche sorwe þrouȝ her' assaut, so þat þai myght nouȝt, for feble,  
 ham helpe, and for litel peple. ¶ But þo saide amongus ham :  
 " what is<sup>4</sup> vs now<sup>4</sup> bifalle, þat so litel peple as þe Bailoil hap in  
 8 wenge, done vs so miche trauaile and sorwe? now certes hit  
 semep vs þat he werches<sup>5</sup> by grace, for he is wonder graciose in  
 his querelle, and al<sup>6</sup> we certes shul bene<sup>7</sup> dede er þat we may  
 come to him, vs forto zelde, siþ þat his fader' sette of<sup>8</sup> vs no pris."   
 12 ¶ And amonge alle opere þengus, þe Bailoil & his peple passede  
 þe watere of Erne, so þat Sir Roger of Suynertoñ, þe<sup>9</sup> sone, was<sup>10</sup>  
 fers and angri, and went forth; and þai saw miche<sup>11</sup> peple of men  
 of armes ful wel arraiede; and forþ þai went vnto<sup>12</sup> ham, and<sup>13</sup> wiþ  
 16 ham fouȝten,<sup>13</sup> and quelled as<sup>14</sup> meny as wolde abide, and<sup>15</sup> toke;<sup>16</sup>  
 and noblesse at þat assaut þai wende þat hit hade bene þe grete  
 host of Scotland. and when hit come<sup>17</sup> to þe morne,<sup>17</sup> þai gadrede  
<sup>18</sup>ham and restede<sup>18</sup> a while. ¶ But þe while<sup>19</sup> þat þe Englissh-  
 20 men restede,<sup>20</sup> þe noble Baroñ Thomas<sup>21</sup> of Vesey, and<sup>22</sup> þe noble  
 baroñ of Stafford, prekeden hir<sup>23</sup> horse vp and douñ by þe hulles,  
 forto Kepe þe estres of þe contreye. ¶ and as þai prekeden vp  
 and douñ, þai saw a grete hoste of gode arraye, ordeynede in iij  
 24 wenges, wiþ helmes and shelde<sup>24</sup> shynyng, comyng<sup>25</sup> oppon ham,  
 and þo come þo ij lordes aȝeyne vnto<sup>26</sup> þe Bailoiles folc, and saide,  
 " Now, for the loue of Almyghty God, bep of gode comfort, for ȝe  
 shul haue bataile anone right!" ¶ And þo spake Sir Fouk, þe  
 28 sone of Gerrein, a barouñ of grete renouñ and of dede of Armes :  
 " Sires lordynges, vnderstondep [þ]at y wil saien y haue seyne  
 meny diuerse wenges, as wel amonges<sup>27</sup> Sarasynus and<sup>28</sup> Gewes as  
 amonge þe Scottes; and ȝitt see<sup>29</sup> y neuer þe ferþe<sup>30</sup> part of þe  
 32 wenge feizten. and þerfor, and<sup>31</sup> we wil abide our' enemys, we bep<sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> comen DO.    <sup>2-2</sup> to þat' D.    vnto þat O.    <sup>3</sup> þai D.    þey O.

<sup>4-4</sup> now vs DO.    <sup>5</sup> worcheth O.    <sup>6</sup> om. D.    <sup>7</sup> be O.

<sup>8</sup> vpon D.    <sup>9</sup> þo D.    <sup>10</sup> þat was O.    <sup>11</sup> meny O.    <sup>12</sup> to D.

<sup>13-13</sup> fauȝt with ham D.    <sup>14</sup> also D.    <sup>15</sup> or DO.    <sup>16</sup> take O.

<sup>17-17</sup> vnto þe morwe D.    <sup>18-18</sup> ham to-geder and restede ham D.

<sup>19</sup> whiles DO.    <sup>20</sup> restede ham D.    rested hem O.

<sup>21</sup> *Against this is written in the margin in a contemporary (?) hand:*

Thomas Vesey and the barron of Stafford.

<sup>22</sup> om. O.    <sup>23</sup> leaf 165, back.    <sup>24</sup> sheldes D.    scheldes O.

<sup>25</sup> comy sic D.    <sup>26</sup> to D.    <sup>27</sup> among O.    <sup>28</sup> as O.    <sup>29</sup> saw DO.

<sup>30</sup> ferde D.    <sup>31</sup> if DO.    <sup>32</sup> ben O.

ynow forto feizt aʒeynes ham; but if<sup>1</sup> we be<sup>2</sup> nouʒt of gode hert and of gode wille forto feizt wiþ ham, for certes<sup>3</sup> we ben ful<sup>4</sup> fewe aʒeyns þis company. ¶ And þerfore, for the loue of God, take we vnto vs gode hert, and lete vs bene<sup>5</sup> holde; and þenke we<sup>4</sup> neiþer oppoñ<sup>6</sup> oure wifes ne<sup>7</sup> oppoñ our' cheldren, but oneliche<sup>8</sup> to conquer' ham in bataile; and, þrouz þe helpe of our' Lord God, oure enemys we shul<sup>9</sup> ouercome."

¶ And with þat, come þe hoste of þe<sup>10</sup> Scottes toward ham ful<sup>8</sup> sorely,<sup>11</sup> &<sup>10</sup> aʒeins Sir<sup>10</sup> Edward of<sup>12</sup> Bailoile, in iij baitailes wel araiede in Armure; and wonder fressheliche<sup>13</sup> pai comen<sup>14</sup> toward þe Bailoiles men. But when Sir' Donalde,<sup>10</sup> Erl of Marcile, saw al<sup>15</sup> þis, he saide to Robert þe<sup>10</sup> Brus, <sup>16</sup>þe sone of Robert þe<sup>17</sup> Brus,<sup>16</sup> 12 pise wordes: "Sir' Robert," quod he, "ful sore me forþenkeþ at myn hert' þat þis folc, þat þe<sup>18</sup> Bailoile hap brouzt wiþ him, shulde<sup>19</sup> dye wiþ dent of Scottisshe menez<sup>20</sup> suorde,<sup>21</sup> siþ þat pai bene<sup>22</sup> Cristen men as wel as <sup>23</sup>we bene<sup>23</sup>; and þerfore me þenke<sup>24</sup> þat hit were 16 grete charite to sende vnto ham forto zelde ham vnto<sup>25</sup> our' mercy and grace, and raunsoun ham<sup>26</sup> þrouz greuous raunsoñs,<sup>27</sup> forasmiche as pai haue take<sup>28</sup> our' land and done ille."<sup>29</sup> ¶ "Now, certes," quod Sir' Robert<sup>30</sup> Danolde, "y haue wel perceyuede þat þow<sup>16</sup> art 20 an enemy and traitour vnto Scotland, siþ þat þow<sup>16</sup> wil<sup>31</sup> consent to saue oure dedely enemys þat haue<sup>32</sup> done vs miche sorwe and shame; and nowe hit semep wel<sup>33</sup> þat ʒe bep<sup>2</sup> of her' assent." ¶ "Certes, Robert," quod Sir' Donald, "falseliche<sup>34</sup> ʒe lye! y am 24 nouzt of her' company ne of her' consent; and þat hastely ʒe shul see, for y wil feizt wiþ ham raper þan eny of þis<sup>35</sup> company." "And certes," Sir<sup>10</sup> Robert saide, "y shal, <sup>36</sup>magre þin heede,<sup>36</sup> assaile ham or þow." ¶ And wiþ þat pai þrekenen<sup>37</sup> her' stedes fersely<sup>38</sup> oppoñ 28 Caskemore, and her' wenges ham folewede on a<sup>10</sup> renge. and þo come pai, and mette þe<sup>39</sup> Bailloil and his company at an hongen<sup>40</sup> bouzt of þe more in a streite passage. and so faste pai hastede ham vnto þe Englisshemen, so þat þousandes felle<sup>41</sup> to þe gronde, eche 32

<sup>1</sup> if þat DO.      <sup>2</sup> bene D.      <sup>3</sup> certes we O.      certes R.      <sup>4</sup> but O.  
<sup>5</sup> be O.      <sup>6</sup> on O.      <sup>7</sup> neyþer O.      <sup>8</sup> only O.      <sup>9</sup> shullen D.  
<sup>10</sup> om. D.      <sup>11</sup> serely O.      <sup>12</sup> þe DO.      <sup>13</sup> ferselich D.      ferslych O.  
<sup>14</sup> come DO.      <sup>15</sup> leaf 166.      <sup>16-16</sup> om. D.      <sup>17</sup> om. O.  
<sup>18</sup> þis O.      <sup>19</sup> shul D.      schul O.      <sup>20</sup> men D.      <sup>21</sup> Swerdes O.  
<sup>22</sup> bep D.      <sup>23-23</sup> ʒe bep D.      <sup>24</sup> þenkeþ D.      þinkeþ O.  
<sup>25</sup> to DO.      <sup>26</sup> þem O.      <sup>27</sup> raunson O.      <sup>28</sup> taken D.      <sup>29</sup> enel D.  
<sup>30</sup> Robert brus D.      <sup>31</sup> wilt O.      <sup>32</sup> haue D.      <sup>33</sup> vs D.  
<sup>34</sup> falslye O.      <sup>35</sup> his O.      <sup>36-36</sup> maug[r]e þine of þin heede sic D.  
<sup>37</sup> þrekeþe D.      <sup>38</sup> ferslych O.      <sup>39</sup> wiþ D.      <sup>40</sup> hongyng O.  
<sup>41</sup> fellen D.

oppoñ *oper*, <sup>1</sup>into on hepe, <sup>1</sup>bope horse and man. ¶ The Bailoil  
<sup>2</sup>and his men þo <sup>2</sup><sup>3</sup>mighgtely stoden azeynes Ham, and faste  
 quelledede þe Scottis vnto þe grounde, & meny sore woundede, so longe  
<sup>4</sup>til þat þai stoden oppoñ ham, and foynede ham with her' suordes  
 & speres prou3-out here bodyes; and so sore trauailede oppoñ ham  
 til þai <sup>4</sup>bicome <sup>5</sup>ful wery, and wist nouzt what to done. and þe  
 Scottes þat were lafte alif fledden to saue ham-self, in the best  
<sup>8</sup>maner þat þai myght. ¶ And þo persuede <sup>6</sup>Edward Bailoile & his  
 men, and quelledede of ham <sup>7</sup>til þat hit was nyght. <sup>7</sup>and fro þens þai  
 went vnto <sup>8</sup>Seint Iohnes Toune, and toke hit, and helde ham pere  
 and vitailedede ham-self atte her' owen wille, for þai fonden ynouz <sup>9</sup>  
<sup>12</sup>wherwith to make ham mery. ¶ þo made þe Bailoile his men þat  
 wer' woundede gone to shippe forto wende into Engeland, forto  
 hele her' <sup>10</sup>woundes.

And in þat same tyme þere was a Flemynge in þe see, a stronge  
<sup>16</sup>þef robour <sup>11</sup>þat me callede 'Crab'; and þis Flemynge was dryuen  
 out of Flaundres for his wickednesse; and þerfore he come into  
 Scotland, and helde him <sup>10</sup>wip þe Scottis, and dede <sup>12</sup>as miche  
 harme vnto the Englysshe-men as he myght. ¶ And þis Crab  
<sup>20</sup>mette in þe see þis <sup>13</sup>Bailoiles men þat wer' <sup>10</sup>wondede in bataile,  
 þat were sent azeyn into <sup>14</sup>Engeland forto hele her woundes. and  
 þis Crab 3af vnto ham a grete assaut, and wolde haue quelledede  
 ham euerychoñ <sup>15</sup>; but þe Englysshe-men defendet ham wel and  
<sup>24</sup>manliche, <sup>16</sup>and descomfitede <sup>17</sup>Crab and his company; and þo gan  
 he forto <sup>18</sup>flee into Scotland. ¶ And as he come towarde Seint  
 Iohnes toune, he fonde a grete company of Scottis, þat were comen <sup>19</sup>  
 azeyn to-geder after þe scomfiture <sup>20</sup>of Gaskemore, þe whe[ch]  
<sup>28</sup>bisegede Bailoil and his men in þe same toune of Seint Iohn; and  
 anone tolde <sup>21</sup>to þe Scottis how <sup>22</sup>þat he <sup>22</sup>descomfitede of þe  
 Englysshe-men þat were sore wondet at Gaskemore, <sup>23</sup>& went <sup>23</sup>  
 toward Engeland forto hele her' wonde <sup>24</sup>; and saide vnto þe  
<sup>32</sup>Scottes, þat þai shulde haue no grace ne might azeynes Edward

<sup>1-1</sup> om. D. into an hepe O. <sup>2-2</sup> þo & his men O. <sup>3</sup> leaf 166, back.

<sup>4</sup> þat þai D. þat þey O. <sup>5</sup> becomen O.

<sup>6</sup> pursewede ham sire D. pursued hem sir O.

<sup>7-7</sup> om. D. til it was nyght O. <sup>8</sup> to D. <sup>9</sup> ynow DO.

<sup>10</sup> om. O. <sup>11</sup> a roboure D. a robber O. <sup>12</sup> de sic D.

<sup>13</sup> om. D. þe O. <sup>14</sup> vnto D. <sup>15</sup> echeon O.

<sup>16</sup> leaf 167. <sup>17</sup> descomfit D. <sup>18</sup> om. D.

<sup>19</sup> come O. <sup>20</sup> discomfiture O. <sup>21</sup> MS. tolde tolde.

<sup>22-22</sup> he was DO. <sup>23-23</sup> þat were D. þat went O.

<sup>24</sup> MS. wonde and sad, with and sad underlined for omission; woundes DO.

Bailoile, for enchesoun þat he had scomfitede<sup>1</sup> & empairede al the chualrye of Scotland wip an handeful of men, as to acount azeins þe Scottis þat wer' slayn. Wherefore he conseilede ham to<sup>2</sup> remeve þe sege fram<sup>3</sup> Seynt Iohnes tounne,<sup>4</sup> and kepe ham in þe best 4 maner þat pai couþe or<sup>5</sup> myght. ¶ The Scottes vnderstode<sup>6</sup> þat Crab saide ham soþ, and forsoke þe sege and went þens by nyght, and halpe ham-self in the beste maner þat pai might.

¶ When þis tidying<sup>7</sup> was know þrouz Scotland, how þat þe 8 lordes and knyghtes were scomfitede at Gaskenmore of Scotland þrouz Sir Edward<sup>8</sup> Bailoil, 3e shullen<sup>9</sup> vnderstonde þat the Lordes and<sup>10</sup> ladies & gentiles of Scotland comen wonder' faste vnto Seynt Iohnes tounne, and 3elde<sup>11</sup> ham vnto<sup>12</sup> Baloile, and to<sup>13</sup> ham dede<sup>13</sup> 12 <sup>14</sup>feaute and homage<sup>14</sup> for hir' londres, and 3elden ham vnto his pees, [and helde<sup>15</sup> him for heir' lord. and he vnderfonge of ham heir' homages, and grauntede ham his pees; and fro þens he went to þe Abbay of Scone, and þere he was cronede Kyng of Scotland. and 16 after, he lete crie his pees]<sup>16</sup> prouz<sup>17</sup> out þe Land. and at þat<sup>18</sup> same tyme Hit bifelle<sup>19</sup> þat Kyng Edward of Engeland helde his parlement amongus<sup>20</sup> his Lieges at þe<sup>4</sup> Newe-CasteH oppoñ Tyne, forto amende þe trespasses<sup>21</sup> and þe wronges þat had ben<sup>22</sup> done in his 20 land. and Sir Edward þe Bailoil, Kyng of Scotland, come to him pider', and dede<sup>23</sup> vnto him faute and homage<sup>23</sup> for þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And in þis maner' Kyng Edward of Engeland gaderede azeyn þe homages and fautes of Scotland, wherof he was 24 put out þrouz conseil and assent of Dame IsabeH his moder', and of Sire Rogere Mortymer', Erl of þe Marche.

¶ Tho toke Sir Edward Bailoil, Kyng of Scotland, his leue of Kyng Edward of Engeland, and went þens into his owen lande of 28 Scotland, and sette but lital<sup>24</sup> be ham<sup>24</sup> þat hade conseilede him and holpen him in his quereH; wherfore pai went from<sup>3</sup> him, and went & leuede by her' owen<sup>25</sup> londres and rentz in<sup>26</sup> Scotland. ¶ And so hit<sup>27</sup> bifelle afterward nouzt longe, <sup>28</sup>þat þe Kyng of Scotland<sup>28</sup> ne 32

<sup>1</sup> discomfited O.    <sup>2</sup> forto DO.    <sup>3</sup> fro O.    <sup>4</sup> om. O.    <sup>5</sup> & O.

<sup>6</sup> vnderstode þo D.    vndirstode þo O.    <sup>7</sup> tydyinges D.

<sup>8</sup> Edward þe D.    <sup>9</sup> schal O.    <sup>10</sup> and þe D.    <sup>11</sup> 3elden D.

<sup>12</sup> vnto þe DO.    <sup>13-13</sup> him deden D.    hym deden O.

<sup>14-14</sup> homage & fewte O.    <sup>15</sup> helden O.    <sup>16</sup> supplied from D.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 167, back.    <sup>18</sup> the D.    þe O.    <sup>19</sup> fel D.    <sup>20</sup> among O.

<sup>21</sup> trespasse D.    Trespas O.    <sup>22</sup> be O.

<sup>23-23</sup> to him homage and faute D.    to hym feute & homage O.

<sup>24-24</sup> hem by O.    <sup>25</sup> om DO.    <sup>26</sup> of D.    <sup>27</sup> MS. his.

<sup>28-28</sup> MS. þat þe kyng of Scotland þat þe kyng of Scotland.

remevede and come to þe toune of Anand, and pere toke<sup>1</sup> his  
 duelyngt. and pider come to him a company of knyȝtes, stronge  
 men and worthy, & ȝelde<sup>2</sup> ham vnto þe kyng, and bare ham so  
 4 faire in dede, and in contynauce so þat he trust miche oppoñ  
 ham. [and anone as þe traitoures sawe þat he trust miche oppoñ  
 ham],<sup>3</sup> þai ordeynede amongus ham l. in o<sup>4</sup> company, and <sup>5</sup>wolde  
 haue<sup>5</sup> slayn<sup>6</sup> her<sup>7</sup> Kyng; but, prouȝ þe grace of Almyghty God he  
 8 brake <sup>7</sup>out prouȝ a<sup>7</sup> walle [by] <sup>8</sup>an Hole in his <sup>9</sup>chambre; and, as  
 God wolde,<sup>9</sup> scaped her<sup>7</sup> traitery. and alle his men <sup>10</sup>wer<sup>10</sup>  
 quelled<sup>10</sup>; and he ascapede wip miche drede to þe Toune of  
 Cardoile, and pere helde him, sore annoiede: and pis bifelle on<sup>11</sup>  
 12 oure Ladyes eve þe<sup>12</sup> Concepcioun.

¶ Tho sent <sup>13</sup>Kyng Edward <sup>13</sup>Bailoil to Kyng Edward of  
 Engeland, how falsely and traiterously he was in litel while<sup>14</sup> put  
 vnto<sup>15</sup> shame and sorwe, prouȝ his lige men, oppoñ whom he <sup>16</sup>truste  
 16 wonder<sup>16</sup> miche<sup>17</sup> and praiede him, for þe loue of Almyghty God  
 þat he wolde mayntene him and helpe<sup>18</sup> [him] aȝeys his enemys.  
 ¶ the Kyng of Engeland hadde of him þo grete pite, & bihight  
 him<sup>19</sup> helpe and socour, and sent him worde þat he shulde halde  
 20 him in pees stille in the citee of Cardoile, til þat he hade gaderede  
 his power. ¶ Tho ordeynede Kyng Edward of Engeland a conseil  
 at London, and lete gader his men in diuerses<sup>20</sup> shires of Engeland,  
 and when he was redy, he went toward þe toune of Berwik-<sup>vp</sup>-  
 24 Twyde; and pider<sup>21</sup> come to him<sup>21</sup> Kyng Edward of Scotland, wip  
 his power, and bisegede the toune, and made wipout þe toune a  
 fair<sup>22</sup> toune of paupylouns, and diked ham wel al<sup>12</sup> aboute, so þat þai  
 hade non<sup>22</sup> drede of þe Scottes; & made meny assautes<sup>23</sup> wip gonnes  
 28 and wip opere engynes to þe toune, wherwip þai destroyede meny  
 a fair<sup>24</sup> hous; and cherches also <sup>24</sup>were beten<sup>24</sup> adoune <sup>25</sup>vnto the  
 erþe, wip gret stones, <sup>26</sup>and spitouse comyng<sup>26</sup> out of <sup>27</sup>gonnes and  
 of opere gynnes. and nopeles þe Scottes kepte wel þe toune, þat þo  
 32 ij kyngus<sup>28</sup> miȝt nouȝt come þerin longe tyme. and nopeles the

<sup>1</sup> nome D.    <sup>2</sup> ȝolden O.    <sup>3</sup> supplied from D.    <sup>4</sup> a O.

<sup>5-5</sup> om. O.    <sup>6</sup> quelled<sup>6</sup> D.    quelled<sup>6</sup> wolde haue O.

<sup>7-7</sup> prouȝ an D.    burgh a O.    <sup>8</sup> leaf 168.    <sup>9-9</sup> om. sic D.

<sup>10-10</sup> weren y-quelled<sup>10</sup> O.    <sup>11</sup> in O.    <sup>12</sup> om. O.

<sup>13-13</sup> struck out in D.    <sup>14</sup> tyme DO.    <sup>15</sup> to DO.

<sup>16-16</sup> trusted<sup>16</sup> D.    <sup>17</sup> mychel O.    <sup>18</sup> om. D.    <sup>19</sup> him þo D.

<sup>20</sup> diuers O.    <sup>21-21</sup> comen to D.    <sup>22</sup> no DO.    <sup>23</sup> assaute O.

<sup>24-24</sup> weren bete O.    <sup>25</sup> leaf 168, back.

<sup>26-26</sup> þat dispitously comen D.    þat spytously comen O.

<sup>27</sup> of the D.    <sup>28</sup> knyghtes O.

Kynges abiden pere so longe, til po pat were in pe toune faillede vitales; and also pai were so wery of wakyng<sup>1</sup> pat pai wiste nouzt what to Done. ¶ And 3e shulle vnderstonde pat po <sup>1</sup>pat wer<sup>1</sup> in<sup>1</sup> the toune of Berwik<sup>1</sup>, prouz hir<sup>1</sup> comune conseile and her<sup>1</sup> assent, lete 4 crie oppoñ pe walles pat pai miȝt haue pees of pe Englisshe-men; and perof pai praiede<sup>2</sup> pe Kyng, and of his grace, and praiede him of trewes for viij daies, oppoñ pis couenant, pat,<sup>3</sup> if pai were nought rescuede in pat side of pe toune toward Scotland<sup>4</sup>, of pe<sup>4</sup> Scottis, 8 wipin viij daiez, pat pai wolde ȝelde ham vnto the Kyng, and pe toune also. and to holde pise couenaunt<sup>3</sup>,<sup>5</sup> pai profured<sup>6</sup> to pe Kyng xij hostages<sup>6</sup> oute of pe toune of Berwik<sup>1</sup>. ¶ When the hostages wer<sup>1</sup> delyuerede vnto pe Kyngus, anone po of pe toune 12 sent<sup>7</sup> vnto pe Scottes, and tolde ham of hir<sup>1</sup> sorwe & meschief. and pe Scottes comen po pryneliche<sup>8</sup> ouer pe water of Twyde, to pe bouzt of pe Abbay; and Sir William Dikett, pat was pe<sup>9</sup> Styward of Scotland<sup>4</sup>, and meny oper pat comen wip him, put ham pere in 16 grete perile of hamsel att pat tyme of hir<sup>1</sup> lif; for pai comen ouer<sup>10</sup> a bruge <sup>11</sup>pat was to-broken,<sup>12</sup> and pe stones away. and meny of hir<sup>1</sup> company were pere drenchede<sup>13</sup>; but pe forsaide William went ouer<sup>1</sup>, and <sup>14</sup>opere of<sup>14</sup> his company, and come<sup>15</sup> by pe <sup>16</sup>Englisshe 20 shippis,<sup>16</sup> and quelled in a barge of Hulle xvj men; and after pai went into the toune of Berwik<sup>1</sup> by the water side; Wherefore pe Scottis helde po pe touñ rescuede, and axede hir<sup>1</sup> hostages aȝeyne of pe Kyng of Engeland<sup>18</sup>. ¶ And pe Kyng sent ham worde aȝeyne pat 24 pai askede the hostages wip wronge, siȝ pat pai comen<sup>17</sup> into the toune by Engeland<sup>18</sup> syde; for couenaunt was bituene ham pat pe toune shulde be rescuede by the half of Scotland<sup>4</sup>.<sup>19</sup> anon Kyng Edward<sup>1</sup> po commanded<sup>20</sup> ham <sup>21</sup>to ȝelde pe toune or he wolde haue 28 pe hostages. and pe Scottis saide pat pe toune was rescuede wel ynow, and perto pai wolde holde ham. ¶ When Kyng Edward<sup>1</sup> saw<sup>22</sup> pe Scottis breke her<sup>1</sup> couenaunt<sup>3</sup> pat pai made, he was wonder<sup>1</sup> wrothe, and anone lete take Sire Thomas fitz and Sire Alisaundre of Setoñ, 32 Wardeyne of Berwik<sup>1</sup>,—the whiche Thomas was person of Dunbarr<sup>1</sup>,—and lete ham be taken<sup>23</sup> ferst<sup>1</sup> bfore pe<sup>24</sup> oper hostages, for

<sup>1-1</sup> of D.    <sup>2</sup> praiden D.    <sup>3</sup> om. O.    <sup>4</sup> MS. pe pe.

<sup>5</sup> couenant D.    Couenaunt O.    <sup>6-6</sup> xij hostages vnto pe kyng<sup>1</sup> D.

<sup>7</sup> senten O.    <sup>8</sup> prynly O.    <sup>9</sup> po DO.    <sup>10</sup> opere D.    <sup>11</sup> leaf 169.

<sup>12</sup> broke O.    <sup>13</sup> ydreunt O.    <sup>14-14</sup> om. O.    <sup>15</sup> comen D.

<sup>16-16</sup> shippes of Engeland D.    Shippes of Engeland<sup>1</sup> O.    <sup>17</sup> come D.

<sup>18</sup> Engelandes D.    Engelandes O.    <sup>19</sup> Scotland<sup>4</sup> and DO.

<sup>20</sup> commande D.    <sup>21</sup> om. O.    <sup>22</sup> seye D.    <sup>23</sup> tak<sup>1</sup> D.    take O.

<sup>24</sup> per O.

enchesoun pat Sir' Alisaundres fader<sup>1</sup> was keper' of<sup>2</sup> pe toune. and pe Kyng commandede euery day forto<sup>1</sup> take <sup>3</sup>ij hostages<sup>3</sup> of pe toune til pat pai were alle done, vnto pe dep, but if pai <sup>4</sup>wolde 4 zelde<sup>4</sup> pe touñ; and so he wolde<sup>5</sup> teche ham to<sup>6</sup> breke her' couenaunt<sup>3</sup>. ¶ And when po of pe toune herde pis tydynges, pai bicom<sup>7</sup> wonder' sory, and sent<sup>8</sup> to pe Kyng of Engeland, pat he <sup>9</sup>wolde graunt ham oper viij dayes of respite, so pat bituene CC men of 8 Armes and xx<sup>ti</sup> <sup>10</sup>men<sup>11</sup> of Armes<sup>10</sup> mygh[t] by<sup>12</sup> strengþ goñ<sup>13</sup> bituene ham vnto<sup>14</sup> pe toune of Berwik, ham forto vitale, so pat pe toune moste be<sup>15</sup> holde for rescuede. ¶ And if it so were pat xxj or xxij or mo were slayn of po CC biforesaide, pat pe toune shulde 12 nouȝt ben<sup>16</sup> halde for rescuede. & pis couenaunt <sup>17</sup>for to holde,<sup>17</sup> pai sent to him opere xij <sup>18</sup>of pe toune<sup>18</sup> in hostages,<sup>19</sup> ¶ The Kyng of Engeland grantede ham her' praier, and tok pe hostages. on Seynt Margaretes eve, In the 3er' of grace M<sup>+</sup> CCC xxxij,<sup>20</sup> pe Scottis 16 comen ferseliche<sup>21</sup> in iiij wengus wel arraiede in Armes, forto mete Kyng Edward of Engeland and Edward pe Kyng of Scotland, & wip hir' power', and come fast and sharpely aȝeynes evesong tyme. and pe same tyme was flode at Berwik, in the water of Twede, pat 20 no man myght wende ouer', on horse neiper on foote, and pe water was bituene po ij kyngus and pe reame of Engeland: and pat tyme abyden the Scottis in pat oper side, for enchesoun pat pe Englisshemen shulde haue <sup>22</sup>bene drenchede<sup>22</sup> or slayñ.

24 **T**His was pe arraie of the Scottis as<sup>23</sup> pai <sup>24</sup>comen in bataile<sup>24</sup> aȝeynes pe ij Kyngus of Engeland & of Scotland: In pe vant-ward<sup>25</sup> of Scotland were pise Lordes:—

¶ The Erl of Morrif, Iames FriseH, Symond FriseH, Walter 28 Stiward, Raynolde Cheyne, Patrik of Graham, <sup>26</sup>Iohn le Graunt, Iames of Cardoile, <sup>27</sup>Patrik Parkeres, Robert Caldecotes,<sup>26</sup> Philip of Meldrum, Thomas Gilbert, Wiseman, Adam Gurdoun, Iamys Gramat, Robert Boyde, Hughe Park, wip xl knyȝtes newe dobbede, 32 and vj Ċ men of Armes, & iij M<sup>+</sup> of commune.<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> om. D.    <sup>2</sup> of pe DO. of R.    <sup>3-3</sup> hostages too O.    <sup>4-4</sup> zelden DO.  
<sup>5</sup> shulde D. schuld O.    <sup>6</sup> forto DO.    <sup>7</sup> becomen O.  
<sup>8</sup> senten DO.    <sup>9</sup> leaf 169, back.    <sup>10-10</sup> om. O.    <sup>11</sup> MS. men men.  
<sup>12</sup> MS. by by.    <sup>13</sup> go O.    <sup>14</sup> in-to O.    <sup>15</sup> ben D.    <sup>16</sup> be O.  
<sup>17-17</sup> to ben halden D. to be holde O.    <sup>18-18</sup> om. D.    <sup>19</sup> hostage O.  
<sup>20</sup> MS. xxij.    <sup>21</sup> fressheliche D. fersly O.    <sup>22-22</sup> be dreynt O.  
<sup>23</sup> how pat DO.    <sup>24-24</sup> come in bataylles O.    <sup>25</sup> vantage DO.  
<sup>26-26</sup> Decotes sic O.    <sup>27</sup> leaf 170.    <sup>28</sup> communes D.

In þe ferst partie of þe halfe bataile of Scotland wer' þise lordes:—

¶ The styward of Scotland, þe Erl of Moneteth, Iames his Vnele, William Douglas, David of Lyndeseye, Maucolyn Flemyng,<sup>4</sup> William of Keth, Dunkan Kambok, wip xxx bachilers new dobbede.

In þe secunde part of þe half Lien-warde of the bataile of Scotland, were þise lordes:— 8

¶ Iames Stiward of Colden, Aleyne Styward, William Abbrehyn, William Morice, Iohn fitz William, Adam le<sup>1</sup> Mose, Walter fitz Gilbert, Iohn of Cherlton, Robert Walham, wip vij C men of armes, & xvij M<sup>t</sup> of communes.<sup>2</sup> 12

In þe þridde ward of þe bataile of Scotland were þise Lordes:—

¶ The Erl of Marr, þe Erl of Roff, þe Erl of Straherne, þe Erle of Sotherland, William<sup>3</sup> Kirkeleye, Iohn Cambron, Gilbert de 16 Haye, William of Rameseye, William Proudegest, Kirstyn Harð, William Gurdon, Arnolde Garde, Thomas Dolfyn, wip xl knyghtes new dobbede, ix C men of Armes, aud xv [M<sup>t</sup> of] communes.<sup>2</sup>

In þe ferp<sup>4</sup> warde of þe bataile of Scotland were þise lordes:— 20

¶ Archebald Douglas,<sup>5</sup> Erl of Leneux, Alisaunder le Brus, Erl of Fiff, Iohn Cambel,<sup>6</sup> Erl of Atheles,<sup>7</sup> Robert Lawether, William<sup>8</sup> Vipount, William of Lonston, <sup>9</sup>Iohn de<sup>9</sup> Labelles, Gros de She-<sup>10</sup>renlowe, Iohn of<sup>11</sup> Lyndeseye, Alisaunder de Gray, Ingam De <sup>24</sup>Vmfreuil, Patrik de Pollesworth, David de Wymes, Michel Scott, William Landy, Thomas de Boys, Rogere de Mortymer, with xxx bachilers, ix C men of Armes, and<sup>12</sup> xvij M<sup>t</sup> communes.<sup>13</sup>

[In þe v<sup>te</sup> warde of þe bataile of Scotland were these lordis:—]<sup>14</sup> 28

¶ The Erl of Dunbarre, keper of þe castel of Berwik, halpe þe Scottis wip l. men of Armes. And Sir Alisaundre of Seton, keper of þe toune of Berwik, wip<sup>15</sup> C men of Armes, [and the comons of þe toun with CCCC men of armes],<sup>16</sup> ¶ and x M<sup>t</sup> & viij C of fote- 32 men: þe somme of þe Erles and lordes amontep lv<sup>17</sup>; þe somme of<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> de O.      <sup>2</sup> Comune O.      <sup>3</sup> William of DO.      <sup>4</sup> MS. ferste.

<sup>5</sup> Douglas þe DO.      <sup>6</sup> Camber O.      <sup>7</sup> Athel D.      <sup>8</sup> William of DO.

<sup>9-9</sup> Iohan D.      <sup>10</sup> leaf 170, back.      <sup>11</sup> De DO.      <sup>12</sup> om. O.

<sup>13</sup> and iiij C of communes D. & iiij C of Comune O.

<sup>14</sup> supplied from D. om. in OR.      <sup>15</sup> with an D.      with a O.

<sup>16</sup> supplied from D.      <sup>17</sup> lxv D.      lv M<sup>t</sup> O.      <sup>18</sup> of þe D.



bachileres newe dobbede amountep<sup>1</sup> C and xl; þe some of men of Armes amountep iij M<sup>1</sup><sup>2</sup> vj C & l; þe [som of p<sup>e</sup> comons amountith lxiiij M<sup>1</sup> & CC, The]<sup>3</sup> somme of commune<sup>4</sup> peple aboue-  
4 saide<sup>5</sup> amountep lxviiij M<sup>1</sup><sup>6</sup> & xlv. ¶ And þise<sup>7</sup> lv grete<sup>6</sup> Lordes ladden alle þe opere<sup>8</sup> lordes aboue-saide<sup>9</sup> in iiij batailes, as<sup>10</sup> is tolde bifore, alle on<sup>11</sup> foote.

¶ And þe<sup>7</sup> Kyng Edward of Engeland<sup>12</sup> and<sup>12</sup> Edward, Kyng<sup>7</sup> of  
8 Scotland, hade wel apparaled<sup>e</sup> her<sup>13</sup> fole<sup>13</sup> in iiij batailes, forto feizt<sup>14</sup> on foot azeynes<sup>14</sup> her<sup>1</sup> Enemys. And þe<sup>15</sup> Englisshe mynstralles blow<sup>16</sup> her<sup>1</sup> trompis ¶ and hir<sup>1</sup> pipes, and hidously ascriede þe Scottis. and þo hade euery Englisshe bataile ij wenges of pris  
12 Archiers, þe whiche at þat bataile shotten Arwes so faste and<sup>17</sup> sore þat þe Scottis myght nouzt helpe hamself<sup>1</sup>; and so<sup>18</sup> þai smyten [p<sup>e</sup>] Scottis, þousandes to þe<sup>19</sup> grounde; and<sup>20</sup> þai gon<sup>21</sup> forto fle fro þe Englisshe-men forto saue hamselfe.<sup>22</sup> ¶ And<sup>20</sup> when þe English<sup>23</sup>  
16 knafes saw þe scomfiture, <sup>24</sup>and þe Scottis falle faste<sup>7</sup> to the<sup>19</sup> ground, þai priken<sup>25</sup> hir<sup>1</sup> maistres hors wip þe Spores forto kepe ham fro<sup>26</sup> perile, and sette her<sup>1</sup> maistres at no force. ¶ And when þe Englisshe-men saw þat, þai lopte on her<sup>1</sup> hors, and fast pursuede  
20 þe Scottis; and alle<sup>27</sup> þat abiden, þai<sup>6</sup> quelled<sup>e</sup> doune ryght. þere<sup>28</sup> might men<sup>28</sup> see þe douztynesse of þe noble Kyng Edward and of his men, how manliche<sup>29</sup> þai pursuede þe Scottis, þat flowen for drede. ¶ And þere<sup>30</sup> might men<sup>30</sup> see meny a Scottishe-man caste  
24 douñ vnto þe erthe dede, and hir<sup>1</sup> baneres displaiede, &<sup>19</sup> hackede into pices, and meny a gode habrigoun<sup>31</sup> of stele in hir<sup>1</sup> blode bapede<sup>32</sup>; and meny a tyme þe Scottes were gadrede in<sup>33</sup> companyes, but euermore þai were descomfitede. ¶ And þus hit bifelle, as  
28 God wolde, þat þe Scottis hade<sup>34</sup> þat day no more foisoun ne myght azeynes þe Englisshe-men, þan xx shepe<sup>6</sup> shulde haue azeyns v wolves; and so<sup>35</sup> were þe Scottis descomfitede; and 3itte þe

<sup>1</sup> amountith an D. amountep a O. <sup>2</sup> M<sup>1</sup> & D.

<sup>3</sup> supplied from D. somme of þe communes amountep lx M<sup>1</sup> & iiij M<sup>1</sup> & ij C þe O.

<sup>4</sup> the D. þe O. <sup>5</sup> aboue-yseyd<sup>e</sup> O. <sup>6</sup> om. O. <sup>7</sup> om. D.

<sup>8</sup> toþer D. <sup>9</sup> abouen-sayd<sup>e</sup> O. <sup>10</sup> as it D. <sup>11</sup> in DO.

<sup>12</sup> and king D. <sup>13</sup> puple D.

<sup>14</sup>—<sup>14</sup> in fote azenst D. in foot azens O. <sup>15</sup> then D.

<sup>16</sup> blewen D. blew O. <sup>17</sup> and so D. <sup>18</sup> thus D. <sup>19</sup> om. DO.

<sup>20</sup>—<sup>20</sup> om. O. <sup>21</sup> begon D. <sup>22</sup> her lyvis D. <sup>23</sup> MS. Scottishe.

<sup>24</sup> leaf 171. <sup>25</sup> prikkid<sup>e</sup> D. preked O. <sup>26</sup> from D.

<sup>27</sup> at tho D. <sup>28</sup>—<sup>28</sup> men myzt D. men myghte O.

<sup>29</sup> manly O. <sup>30</sup>—<sup>30</sup> men myht D. men myghte O.

<sup>31</sup> habirion D. haberion O. <sup>32</sup> bathe DO. <sup>33</sup> in-to DO.

<sup>34</sup> hadden at D. <sup>35</sup> thus D.

<sup>1</sup>Scottes men<sup>1</sup> had v men aȝeyns on<sup>2</sup> Englisshe-man. And þat bataile was done at Halydounhiȝ bisides þe toune of Berwik: at þe<sup>3</sup> whiche bataile were slayn of þe Scottis xxxv M<sup>†</sup> & <sup>3</sup>vij<sup>c</sup> & xij, and of Englisshemen but vij oneliche, & þo were footemen. & þis <sup>4</sup>Victorie bifelle <sup>4</sup>to þe<sup>4</sup> Englisshe-men on<sup>5</sup> Seynt Margaretes eve, In þe ȝer<sup>†</sup> of our<sup>†</sup> lord<sup>†</sup> Ihesu Crist<sup>†</sup> <sup>6</sup>M<sup>†</sup> CCC<sup>6</sup> xxxij. And while<sup>7</sup> þis doying laste,<sup>8</sup> þe English knafes tok<sup>9</sup> þe pillfre of þe Scottes þat were quelled, euery man þat he myght take, wiþout<sup>10</sup> eny <sup>8</sup>challange of eny man.<sup>11</sup> Deo gracias!

<sup>1-1</sup> Scottis D. Scottes O. <sup>2</sup> an D. <sup>3</sup> om. D. <sup>4-4</sup> on-to D.

<sup>5</sup> in DO. <sup>6-6</sup> a M<sup>†</sup> CCC and D. <sup>7</sup> whilis D. <sup>8</sup> was D.

<sup>9</sup> nomen D. <sup>10</sup> with-uten D. <sup>11</sup> man Amen O.

## APPENDIX A.

## THE ROMANCE OF THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL,

A.D. 1333.

[1. *The longer poetical Version in Harl. 4690, leaf 82, back; corresponding to the prose on p. 285, line 14 ff.*]

¶ And anone þe Skottes beganne to flee fro þe Engliche menne, to saue þer lyves. butt wanne þe knaves & þe Skottisch pages þat weren behinde the Skottes, to kepe her horses, seyen the discomfiture, þei priken her maisters horses away, to kepe hem 4 selfe from perelle; and so þei towke no hede off her maisters. And þen þe Engliche men towken many off þe Skottes horses, and priken after þe Skottes, & slewe hem downe Righte. And there men mighte see the nowbell King Edward off Englonde & his 8 folke, heugh mannefully þei chasedon the Skottes; were-off þis Romance was made :—

There men mighte well see		The Scots
Many a Skotte lightly flee,	12	fled,
And þe Engliche after priking,		the English
With scharp swerdes þem stiking;		after them.
And pere her Baners weren ffounde	[leaf 83]	
Alle displayedde on the Grounde,	16	
And layne starkly on Blode		
As þei hadde ffought on þe ffloode.		
Butt þe Scottes, (ille mote þei þee !)		
pought þe Englisch adrenit schulde be;	20	The Scots
for bi cause þei mighte not flee,		thought the
butte iff þei adrenite schulde bee;		English must
butte þei kepte hem manly on londe,		be drown'd;
so þatte þe Scottes might nott stonde,	24	
and felde hem downe to Grounde,		but they slew
Many powsandes in þatte stounde;		thousands of
and þe Engliche men pursuyed hem so,		Scots,
Tille þe ffloode was alle a-Goo :	28	
Alle þus þe Skottes discomfite were		
in litell tyme wiþ Grete feere;		

(tho the Scots were 9 to 1)	ffor no noþer wise dide þei stryve, Butt as .xx. shape among wolfes fyve ; ffor .v. off hem þen were ayenste an Englischman þere.	4
by the grace of God, at Halidon Hill near Berwick.	So þere itte was welle semyng þatte <i>with</i> multitude is no scomfiting, Butt <i>with</i> God, fulle off mighte, wham he will helpe in trewe ffighte.	8
35,712 Scots and more lay dead, and only 7 English.	so was þis, Bi goddes Grace, Discomfiture off Skottes in þat place, that men cleped Halidown Hille ; ffor þere þis Bateill Befelle, Atte Berwike, Be-side þe towne.	12
The victory of Halidon Hill was on St. Margaret's Eve,	This was do <i>with</i> mery sowne, wiþ pipes, Trompes, & nakers þer-to ; And loude clariounes þei Blew also.	16
19 July, 1332-3.	And þere þe Scottes leyen dede, xxx. M <sup>l</sup> . Be-yonde Twede, & v. M <sup>l</sup> tolde there-to, <i>with</i> vii· C· xii· and mo ; & of Englischemen But sevenne,— worschipped Be God in hevenne !— & þat wer men on ffote Goyng, By foly of her owne Doyng.	20
The English took the Scots' armour and clothes.	on seinte Margete-ys Eue, as y yow tell, Befille þe victory of Halidoune Hille, In þe yere of God almightie, a M <sup>l</sup> iii· C and ii· and pritty.	24
But where their Kings	atte þis Discomffiture þe Englisch knightes towke her hure of þe Skottes þatte weren dede, Clopes & haberiounes for her mede ; And watte-euer þei might finde on þe Skottes, þei lefte not behinde ; And þe knaues, by her purchas, hadde þere a mery solas, for þei hadde for her degree, In alle her lyffe þe Better to be : Alle þus þe Bateille towke Ending. But y canne not telle off þe yen Going	28
		32
		36
		40

[leaf S3, col. 2]

Off þe too kingges, were þei become,	went to, I
& weþer þei wenten oute or home ;	don't know.
But Godde, þatte is heven king,	
sende vs pees and Gode Ending !	4

[2. *A shorter fragmentary version in MS. Arundel LVIII,  
College of Arms, leaf 334, back.*]

There þan men myght se	
Many a Scott swiftly fle,	The Scots
And þe Englysshmen after prikyng,	fled, the
Wip sharp swerdys þe Scottes stykyng ;	English pur-
& þere hure banyrs weryn founde	sued 'em.
al displayd, lyeng on grounde ;	8
and pay lay sprad on blood,	
as þey foughten on þe flood.	12
That þe Englisshmen drent shold be,	
ffor þat þey hopyde to se,	The Scots
ffor so þey hopyde to spede,	hoped the
Seyng þe flood þat was on Twede.	English
ffor þe Englisshmen myght not fle	would be
but yf a-drent þey shold be ;	drownd ;
& þan pere-to lop þey were,	
for þey þought nought in no such fere,	20
But þey kept hem on londe,	
So þat þe Scottes myght nought stonde ;	
ffor þey were fillyd to grounde,	
many a þousand in þat stounde ;	24
& þe Englisshmen pursywid hem so,	but they kild
fort þe flood was al a-go.	many thou-
And þis þe Scottes discomfytyd ; were	sand Scots.
In lytil tyme wip gret fere.—	28

290.

7

# The Brut.

---

Early English Text Society.

Original Series, 136.

1908.

5

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 13, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.



# The Brut

OR

## The Chronicles of England,

EDITED FROM

MS. RAWL. B 171, BODLEIAN LIBRARY, &c.

BY

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE, PH.D.

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND GLOSSARY.

### PART II

*(completing the Text, with the Roll of Battle Abbey, including  
the name CHAUCER.)*

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD.,

DRYDEN HOUSE, 43 GERRARD STREET, SOHO, W.

AND BY HENRY FROWDE, OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS,

AMEN CORNER, E.C.

1908.

## ERRATA.

- p. 298. The headline must be : *Caen* instead of *Schluse*.  
p. 333. In the head of the page : *MS. Lambeth* 331 instead of *Harley* 331.

**Original Series, No. 136.**

---

RICHARD CLAY & SONS, LIMITED, LONDON AND BUNGAY.

## PREFACE.

THIS second part finishes the text of the Chronicle, or rather, series of Chronicles, contained in the present volumes. In the first part I have printed the text of the common Brut which comes down to A.D. 1333, while this second part contains the continuations of the Brut, composed by various authors at different times, in different places and with very varying intentions. Out of the great number of Continuations I have chosen only such as have not been published as yet; and among these, only such as afford new material for the student of History or Literature. If a Continuation exists in several MSS., I have always chosen the best MS., not the oldest, for publication, and have taken the one or two next best MSS. for collation. In a few cases, however, the Continuations are extant in one recension only. The text has been printed from the MSS. as it stands, without attempting conjectural emendations, but occasionally a word or sentence accidentally omitted has been supplied from the other MSS., in the text instead of in a footnote, for the convenience of readers. But in all cases of this kind the reading of the original has been put in a footnote. Letters or fragments of words accidentally omitted are mostly added in brackets. In the footnotes, mere variations of spelling have not been inserted as a rule, while inversions of words are always noticed.

The present publication will be welcome, as well to the Student of Literature as to the Student of History. The former will recognise in it the work which, in its various forms, has been for three centuries the most popular Chronicle of England, and will find in it some interesting matter, not only in the inserted poems, among which the two mocking songs against the Flemings (p. 582 and p. 600) are published for the first time, but also in a fair number of prose passages of which I shall only refer to that dealing with Henry V's dismissal of his old rioting companions (p. 594).

The Student of History will recognise in our text the first large

Chronicle in the English language which has been laid under contribution by nearly all the great Chronicle-writers of the 16th and 17th centuries. As to its historical value I readily admit that the authors of the common Brut and its Continuations have for the most part recorded such matter as is not new, and much that, in the present state of historical literature, will appear to many readers trivial and unimportant. But these disadvantages are inseparable from the uniform practice of annalists of the middle ages. I am, however, decidedly of opinion that there is an amount of original historical information contained in the various Continuations which outweighs the obvious trivialities, mistakes and repetitions; and even the superficial reader will see that long parts of the Continuations are given with a vividness which marks the narration like that of an eye-witness. The whole discussion of historical points connected with the Brut is reserved for the Introduction and the Notes in the third volume.

The following account of the MSS. used for the text and collation in the present volume may suffice. The letters prefixed to each designate them in the notes below the text:

The *first Continuation* from A.D. 1333 to A.D. 1377 called *B*, is taken from

*C* = MS. Corpus Christi Coll. Camb. 174, which was written in the beginning of the 15th century and closes with the burial of Edward III in 1377.

The text, though the best among the MSS. of the same recension, is not a good one. It has been collated with

*T* = MS. Br. Mus. Add. 24,859, a late but accurate transcript from a MS. of the second half of the 15th century which closes with the capture of Rouen in 1419, and

*R* = MS. Br. Mus. Reg. 17 D XXI, likewise a late but faithful transcript from a MS. of the second half of the 15th century which ends in the same year.

*Appendix B* describing the character of Edward III, is taken from

*W* = MS. Harley 753, a late 15th century MS. which closes in the year 1430. It has been collated with

*X* = MS. Lambeth 331, a 15th century MS. breaking off in 1422.

*Y* = MS. Lambeth 491, which shows a hand of the early 15th century, and ends in 1377.

*Z* = MS. Lambeth 738, which is written by two 15th century hands, and ends in 1418.

*The Continuation* from A.D. 1377 to 1419, called *C*, is taken from

*Kk* = MS. Un. Libr. Camb, Kk I 12, which was written about the middle of the 15th century and closes in the year 1419. It has been collated with *T* and *R* described above.

*Appendix C*, a fuller version of the time from A.D. 1399 to 1401. is taken from

*Ra* = MS. Rawl. B 173, which was written in the 15th century and closes in 1431. It contains a very bad text, but is unique for the piece it contains.

*The Continuation* from A.D. 1418 to 1430, called *D*, is taken from

*G* = MS. Galba E VIII, which is written in a fine 15th century hand and closes in 1430. It has been collated with

*A* = MS. Harley 2256, the text of which agrees in every respect with that of the foregoing Galba MS.; and where *A* is defective, with

*B* = MS. Harley 266, a MS. of the same type.

*Appendix D*, which gives additional matter for the years A.D. 1418 to 1430, is taken from

*Hh* = MS. Un. Libr. Camb. Hh VI 9, which was written in the 15th century, and closes in 1434.

*The Continuation* from A.D. 1419 to 1431, called *E*, is taken from

*E* = MS. Egerton 650, which shows a hand of the time about 1450, and closes in 1431.

*Appendix E*, containing a differing version for the time 1422-31, is taken from *Ra* = MS. Rawl. B 173, which is described above.

*The Continuation* from A.D. 1430 to 1446, called *F*, is taken from

*Tr* = MS. Trin. Coll. Camb. O 9, 1 which closes in 1446. It has been collated with

BRUT.

\*

*U* = MS. Un. Libr. Cambr. Hh VI 9 down to 1434 where *U* closes.

*The Continuation* from A.D. 1419 to 1461, called *G*, is taken from

*Ad* = MS. Br. Mus. Add. 10,099, which was written in the end of the 15th century, and closes in 1461. It has been collated with

*H* = MS. Harley 3730, which breaks off in 1452, and

*C* = Caxton's first printed edition of 1480, which closes in 1461.

*The Collection* of various pieces between 1066 and 1436, called *H*, is taken from

*Ha* = MS. Harley 53 which was written in the 15th century and breaks off during the siege of Calais in 1436. It has been collated with

*L* = Lambeth 6, a finely illuminated MS., which shows a hand of the end of the 15th century, and closes with the end of the siege of Calais in 1436. Its text, however, is not so good as that of *Ha*.

*The Continuation* of the foregoing piece *H*, called *I*, is taken from *L*, which is unique in this part.

*The Collection* of pieces between Havelok's time and A.D. 1475, called *K*, is taken from

*La* = MS. Lambeth 84, whose unique text shows a hand of the end of the 15th century, and closes in 1475.

For anything else the reader is referred to the third volume of the present edition, which will contain Introduction, Notes, Glossary and Index.<sup>1</sup> Finally, I have again to express my thanks to Dr. Frederick J. Furnivall for his constant and invaluable help. In both volumes the headlines over the pages are added by him.

FRIEDRICH W. D. BRIE.

Marburg a/L., August 1908.

<sup>1</sup> An abstract of the Introduction has appeared in German under the title : Geschichte und Quellen der mitttelenglischen Prosachronik *The Brute of England* oder *The Chronicles of England*. Marburg. N. G. Elwert. 1905.

## SUMMARY OF CONTENTS.

## B.

*Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1333 to 1377.*

*Chapters 224-8.*

Edward III takes Berwick. Balliol does homage for Scotland. Cornwall is made a Duchy. Edward claims France, and makes his preparations for war. The English win the battle of Sluys, A.D. 1340, and besiege Tournay. Want of money compels Edward to make peace with France. Storms at sea on his way back. Edward goes to Scotland. His son is made Prince of Wales. Constitution of the Round Table. The English imitate the foolish dress of strangers. Expedition into Brittany, A.D. 1345. Edward enters Normandy at La Hogue. English Victory at Caen. Battle of Crecy, A.D. 1346. Edward besieges Calais. The Scotch invaders beaten at Nevil's Cross. The King of France avoids a proposed combat near Calais. Calais surrenders, A.D. 1347. Citizens kindly treated. The Plague of 1348-9. Frustrated treachery of Geoffrey of Charney at Calais ... pp. 291-303

*Chapters 229-231.*

Sea-fight between the Spaniards and English, A.D. 1349. New Coinage. General dearth. A Drought. Negotiations about Guienne, furthered by the Pope, but broken up by the English. French attempt on Guienne. Edward crosses the sea, but John of France flees, A.D. 1355. The Scotch try to take the Castle of Berwick. Berwick surrenders. Edward III is crowned King of Scotland. The Black Prince in Gascony. Battle of Poitiers, A.D. 1356. The French King as prisoner in England. The festival of St. George, A.D. 1358. Marriage of Duchess Blanche. Edward invades Burgundy, A.D. 1360, and sets fire to the suburbs of Paris. English naval victories. Great Storm near Orleans. Treaty of Bretigny. King John of France is freed. Thunder-storms, and appearance of the Devil. Anglo-French Treaty confirmed at Westminster. Wonders and apparitions. Marriage of the Prince of Wales to Joan of Kent, A.D. 1361 ... pp. 303-314

*Chapters 232-235.*

Wind, Rain and Frost. Law-pleading in English, A.D. 1363. Charles of Blois slain, A.D. 1364. Peter's Pence not to be paid. King

Pedro of Spain is deposed by his brother, A.D. 1366. Danish Invaders are repulsed in the North-sea. The Black Prince helps King Pedro of Spain. Battle of Navarra. Marriage of Prince Lionel, Duke of Clarence, A.D. 1366. Great Pestilence, A.D. 1369. Death of the Earl of Warwick at Calais. Sir John Hawkwood. Robert Knollis's expedition to France. Limoges rebels against the Black Prince. The King of Navarra's visit to England. King Pedro's daughters married to the Duke of Lancaster and the Earl of Cambridge. Spaniards surprise Englishmen at Rochelle. pp. 314-326

*Chapters 236-239.*

The Duke of Lancaster's expedition to Bordeaux, A.D. 1373. Disputes between Edward III and the Pope. Truce with France for one year. Great pestilence. The Earl of Pembroke is taken prisoner by the Spanish, A.D. 1374. The Commons refuse further money unless the King proves his need of it, A.D. 1376. Alice Ferrers and Lord Latimer. Piers de la Mare imprisoned. Death of the Black Prince, A.D. 1377. Revolt of Warwick's tenants. Subsidy granted to Edward III. Sir John Munsterworth executed for treachery. Death of Edward III, A.D. 1377      ...      ...      ...      ...      ...      pp. 326-332

*Appendix B.*

The Character of Edward III.      ...      ...      ...      pp. 333-334

C.

*Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1377 to 1419.*

*Chapters 239-240.*

Coronation of Richard II. Hawle and Shakyll, A.D. 1378. French gallies burn English Towns. Revolt of Jack Straw and Wat Tyler, A.D. 1381. Walworth slays Jack Straw. Punishment of the rebels, Earthquake, A.D. 1382. Crusade of the Bishop of Norwich, A.D. 1383. Fight near Dunkirk, A.D. 1383. Marriage of Richard II with Anne of Bohemia,<sup>1</sup> Expedition of the Duke of Lancaster into Spain, A.D. 1386. The King of Armenia visits England. Treaty with the Scots. The Earl of March slain in Ireland, A.D. 1398. The rising of the Five Lords, A.D. 1387. Flight of the evil counsellors. Tournament for foreigners in London, A.D. 1388. John of Gaunt's Expedition to Spain, A.D. 1387. Dispute between Londoners and the Bishop of Salisbury about a baker's broken head. King Richard's Quarrel with the Londoners. Reconciliation, and great reception of him. Jousts in Smithfield. Death of Queen Anne, A.D. 1394,<sup>2</sup>      ...      ...      ...      ...      ...      pp. 335-348

<sup>1</sup> "Right as our firste lettre is now an A"—Anne, crowned Queen of England on Jan. 14, 1382—Lowes on the date of Chaucer's *Troilus*, Book I, st. 25, in Publ. of Modern Lang. Assoc. of America, June 1908.

<sup>2</sup> See Lowes on the effect of this on the shorter and revised Prologue to Chaucer's *Legend of Good Women*.



*Chapters 241-242.*

King Richard marries Isabella of France, A.D. 1396. Coronation of the Queen. King Richard arrests the Duke of Gloster, and sends him to Calais, A.D. 1397. Murder of the Duke. Other arrests. The great Parliament at Westminster. Muster of Richard's adherents. The Earl of Arundel sentenced and executed. Others condemned to perpetual imprisonment. Creation of Nobles. Duel between Bolingbroke and Norfolk stopt by the King, A.D. 1398. False Blank Charters. Richard's Expedition to Ireland, A.D. 1399. Return of Bolingbroke. Richard deposed, and Bolingbroke made King ... .. pp. 349-359

*Chapter 243.*

Coronation of Henry IV, A.D. 1399. Richard II starved. Plot against Henry IV; conspirators executed, A.D. 1400. Debate between Owen Glendower and Lord Grey de Ruthin, A.D. 1401. The King invades Wales. A comet, A.D. 1402. Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403. The Emperor of the Turks in London. The Marriage of Henry IV, A.D. 1403. Marriage of the Princess Blanche. English naval victory near Flanders, A.D. 1404. Execution of Serle. Duel in Smithfield. Archbishop Scrope's rebellion and execution, A.D. 1405. Marriage of the Earl of Kent, A.D. 1407. Death of Sir Robert Knollis. Princess Philippa is married to the King of Denmark, A.D. 1405. Duel in Smithfield. Death of Northumberland and Bardolf, A.D. 1408. The Earl of Kent killed at St. Brioux, A.D. 1408. Six days' jousting by Hainaulters in London, A.D. 1409. Duel in Smithfield between Gloucester and Arture. Rys ap Die's Execution. English Victory at St. Cloud, A.D. 1411. Victory at La Hogue, A.D. 1412. Henry IV dies in "Jerusalem." A.D. 1413 ... .. pp. 359-372

*Chapters 244-245.*

Henry V re-buries Richard II, A.D. 1413. Lollards' conspiracy discovered, A.D. 1414. The sending of the tennis-balls. Henry V's war-preparations. Conspiracy against the King's life, A.D. 1415. Henry invades France and besieges Harfleur. Surrender of Harfleur. Battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. Killing of the French prisoners. The English Dead. Henry V's reception in London. The German Emperor meets King Henry. Henry V's muster of ships. Second Invasion of France, A.D. 1417. Surrender of the French cities. Siege of Cherbourg. Arrival of the Earl of March in France. Sir John Oldcastle's imprisonment and execution, A.D. 1417. Siege of Rouen, A.D. 1418. Siege of Caudebec. Names of the Governors of Rouen. Distress of the City. Rouen surrenders, A.D. 1419 ... .. pp. 373-391

*Appendix C.**Fuller Version of the time from 1399 to 1401.*

Conspirators against Henry IV punished. Execution of Roger Clarendon and the prior of Laund. Rebellion of Owen Glendower.

Lord Grey de Ruthin taken prisoner. The capture of Edmund Mortimer. Henry V's fruitless expedition into Wales ... pp. 392-393

## D.

*Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1418 to 1430, including John Page's Poem on the siege of Rouen.*

Henry V besieges Rouen, A.D. 1418. Stations of his generals. Chain and bridges across the Seine. Candebeac wants to share the fate of Rouen. Cherburg won by Humphrey of Gloster. Reinforcements for Henry V. Rumoured approach of the French King. Chief Captains of Rouen. Defence of the city. Henry arranges a sham fight with a rescuing power, to deceive the French in Rouen. Deaths from starvation. Henry feeds the expelled starving Roueniers. The City sends delegates into the English camp. *Beginning of the Poem.* The delegates want safe-conduct to the King. The King is ready to see them. They ask him for mercy. Henry grants them time. Tents are pitched to treat in. The Roueniers refuse the English terms. The poor in Rouen insist on the rich yielding to Henry V. If no rescue comes in eight days, Rouen is to be given up to Henry V. Delivery of the keys. The English welcomed in Rouen. Henry V hears mass in the Minster. *End of the Poem.* Queen Joan arrested. Death of Friar Randulf. Meeting of Henry V and the French Queen. No agreement. Pontoise taken by the English. Treaty of Troyes, A.D. 1420. Henry V weds Katherine of France. Their reception in London. Death of the Duke of Clarence. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. Henry V besieges Meaux in Brie. Capture of Meaux. Death of Henry V, A.D. 1422.

The child Henry VI reigns. His Guardians. Wonderful escape of Gloster's wife. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425. Death of the Duke of Exeter, A.D. 1426. The Bishop of Winchester is made Cardinal. Siege of Orleans, A.D. 1428. The Earl of Salisbury killed. Siege of Orleans raised by the French. Boat with Duke of Norfolk swamped, A.D. 1429. Great Dearth. Coronation of Henry VI, A.D. 1430. Reinforcements sent to France. Smithfield Duel stopt. Henry VI crosses the sea. His success in France. Joan of Arc taken, A.D. 1430

pp. 394-439

*Appendix D.*

*Additional matter from the time A.D. 1420 to 1428.*

Will Wawe hanged. Great Rain in 1427. Royal Seal counterfeited. A Widow's Murderer stoned. The heretic Richard Hunder burnt ... .. pp. 440-443

## E.

*Continuation of the Brut from the capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419 to 1430.*

Queen Joan arrested. Henry V weds Catherine, A.D. 1420. Feast at the Queen's coronation. The *menu* at the banquet. Death of the

Duke of Clarence. Henry V goes to France. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. Death of Henry V. His corpse brought to London. French homage to Henry VI. The heretic William Taylor burnt. Siege of Orleans raised, A.D. 1429. Lord Talbot taken prisoner. Great dearth. Henry VI in London. His coronation at Westminster. Duel in Smithfield stopt, A.D. 1430      ...      ...      ...      pp. 444-451

*Appendix E.*

*Additional matter for the time from A.D. 1422 to 1431.*

The child Henry VI brought to London. Sir John Mortimer beheaded. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425. Parliament at Leicester. False Wines in London. Siege of Orleans raised, A.D. 1429. Lord Talbot taken prisoner. Coronation of Henry VI, A.D. 1430. Parliament at Westminster      ...      ...      ...      pp. 452-455

F.

*Continuation of the Brut from A.D. 1430 to 1446.*

Spanish Ambassadors insulted, A.D. 1430. A Lollard burnt. Jack Sharp executed, A.D. 1431. Ludgate-prison built. Henry VI's journey from Calais to Rouen. Reception in Paris. Wonderful shows. The King visits his grandmother. Coronation at Paris, A.D. 1431. Reception in London, A.D. 1432. Cornhill and Cheapside. St. Paul's and Westminster Abbey. Parliament at Westminster. Foreign Ambassadors. Convocation at Basel. The Earl of Huntingdon goes into Normandy. Great Pestilence, A.D. 1434. Hard frost. Negotiations for peace with France, A.D. 1435. Money for war granted to Henry VI. English troops to Normandy. Fights round Calais. The English besieged in Calais are rescued, A.D. 1436. Flemish towns taken. Scotch invasion repulsed. Hard Frost, A.D. 1436. Death of Queen Katherine. Foreigners at the English Parliament. The Duke of York comes back to England, A.D. 1437. A Murderer sentenced. Heretics burnt. Dear food. Storms and Earthquake. The Earl of Huntingdon goes to France. Peace-meeting at Calais, A.D. 1439. Cruel murder discovered. Parliament at Westminster and Reading. Ship-thieves hanged. Heretics burnt. Duel in Smithfield, A.D. 1440. Expedition to France. Henry VI visits the City. Storm raised by witches. The clerk Roger retracts his devilish art. Eleanor Cobham found guilty of treason and witchcraft, A.D. 1441. Her public penance. The clerk Roger is hanged. Duel in Smithfield. Lord Talbot's expedition to France, A.D. 1442. Arrant thieves hanged. A woman pressed to death for bad language. Negotiations for Henry VI's marriage. King's offender pardoned. Princess Margaret betrothed to Henry VI, A.D. 1444. St. Paul's steeple burnt, A.D. 1445. King Henry's wedding. Queen Margaret's procession and coronation. French Ambassadors come to treat for peace  
pp. 456-490

## G.

*Continuation of the Brut from the Capture of Rouen,  
A.D. 1419 to A.D. 1461.**Chapters 2451–251.*

Murder of the Duke of Burgundy, A.D. 1419. Queen Joan arrested. Henry V weds Katherine of France, A.D. 1420. The Duke of Clarence slain. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. The Queen visits Paris. Death of Henry V, A.D. 1422. Praise of Henry V, who was wild in youth, but virtuous when King. His French wars incited by the clergy. His foundations of religious houses. Gloster made Protector. Battle of Verneuil, A.D. 1424. Gloster weds the Duchess of Holland. His Hainault attack fails. Affray in the City, A.D. 1425. Henry VI and Nobles knighted. Much rain. Lord Salisbury shot at Orleans, A.D. 1428. Widow's murderer stoned. Henry VI crowned, A.D. 1430. Joan of Arc burnt, A.D. 1431. Henry VI's coronation at Paris. Rebellion of the soldiers at Calais. Pope Eugenius IV deposed. Congress of Arras, A.D. 1435. French plot to seize Calais discovered. The Duke of Burgundy besieges Calais. Siege raised by the Duke of Gloster, A.D. 1436. Flemish towns ransacked. Roxburgh besieged by the Scots. Death of Queen Katherine, A.D. 1437. Treaty between the King and the Duke of Burgundy ... .. pp. 491–506

*Chapters 251–255.*

Death of Sigismund of Germany. Owen Tudor's imprisonment, A.D. 1438. Death of Warwick at Rouen. Great dearth. Frederick is chosen Emperor of Germany. Eleanor Cobham is accused of treason, A.D. 1441. Her accomplices. Disputes as to the Lord Mayor. St. Paul's steeple burnt, A.D. 1445. Henry VI's marriage with Margaret. Duel at Smithfield stopt by the King. Henry's marriage dearly bought. Losses by it. Suspicious death of Duke Humphrey of Gloster, A.D. 1447. The papal Schism. Felix resigns. Rouen and Normandy lost. Constantinople taken by the Turks. Dutch ships captured. Rouen taken by the French, A.D. 1448. Captain Bluebeard executed, A.D. 1450. The Duke of Suffolk's end, A.D. 1450. Jack Cade's rebellion. His entrance into London. Lord Say beheaded. Jack Cade killed by Alexander Iden, A.D. 1450. ... .. pp. 506–520

*Chapters 256–263.*

Rebellion of the Duke of York. Prince Edward born, A.D. 1453. Lord Mayor's show on the Thames. Rebellion of the Lords. First Battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1455. The Duke of York made Protector. Lombard Riot in London. Great Fish caught. Prisoners of Newgate break out. The French pillage Sandwich. Bishop Peacock's abjuration. Concord among the Lords, A.D. 1458. Battle of Bloreheath, A.D.

<sup>1</sup> Compare under C. The reckoning differs by one chapter.

1459. Trollop deserts the Yorkists. Failure of the Yorkist revolt, A.D.  
 1459. The Yorkists keep Calais, and increase in number. Sandwich  
 taken, A.D. 1460. Lord Warwick goes to Ireland, to speak with the  
 Duke of York. Yorkist Lords come to London. Battle of Northampton,  
 A.D. 1460. Henry VI to be King for his life; and York acknowledged  
 as his successor. Battle of Wakefield, A.D. 1460. The Duke of York  
 slain. Second Battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1461. Henry VI captured.  
 Londoners negotiate with the Queen. Flight of the rich merchants.  
 Henry VI deposed. Edward IV made King. Battle of Towton, A.D.  
 1461. Coronation of Edward IV      ...      ...      pp. 520-533

## H.

*Various Pieces from MS. Harley 53, from A.D. 1066 to 1436.*

I. Coronation of William I's Queen. Battle Abbey escutcheons.  
 Battle Abbey Roll of the names of the Norman knights ... pp. 534-537

II. Edward III resolved to chastise the French, A.D. 1346. Roll  
 of the English for Crecy and Calais. Battles before and at Crecy.  
 Siege of Calais. Scotch invaders are beaten at Nevil's Cross, A.D. 1346.  
 The King of France avoids a proposed combat near Calais pp. 537-544

III. Bolingbroke's return to England, A.D. 1399. Richard II is  
 deserted, and taken prisoner. Bolingbroke's son Henry talks friendly  
 with Richard II. Richard II starved. His corpse exhibited. A  
 Conspiracy disclosed to Henry IV by the Duke of Aumerle, A.D. 1400.  
 Conspirators beheaded. Revolt of Owen Glendower, A.D. 1400. The  
 King's expedition to Wales. Scotch beaten at Homildon Hill, A.D. 1402.  
 The King buffets Sir Henry Percy. Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403.  
 The Emperor of Constantinople in London. Ships captured at sea.  
 Battle of Marek, A.D. 1405      ...      ...      pp. 544-551

IV. The Lollards' conspiracy against Henry V discovered, A.D. 1414.  
 Sir John Oldecastle arrested. Henry V's claim to France. His prepara-  
 tions for an invasion, A.D. 1415. Traitors beheaded. Siege of Harfleur.  
 The great gun Goodgrace. Names of Harfleur Hostages. Surrender  
 of Harfleur. Battle of Agincourt, Oct. 25, 1415. The English King's  
 words to his men. His personal bravery. Names of the French Lords  
 killed at Agincourt. The English dead. French prisoners killed.  
 Henry V's reception in London, A.D. 1466. Visit of the German  
 Emperor. Council at Calais      ...      ...      pp. 551-559

V. Capture of Rouen, A.D. 1419. Attempt at peace between England  
 and France. The Duke of Burgundy slain. The Treaty of Troyes,  
 A.D. 1420. Henry V betrothed to Katherine of France. Their return to  
 England, A.D. 1421. Death of the Duke of Clarence. Henry V's second  
 expedition to France. Birth of Henry VI, A.D. 1421. The Earl of  
 Warwick made keeper of Henry VI, A.D. 1422. Sir Roger Mortymer  
 executed. Verneuil surrendered to the French. Battle of Verneuil,  
 A.D. 1424. Names of the Scotch and French slain in the battle.  
 The Prince of Portugal in England. Quarrel in London, A.D. 1425.

Henry VI knighted. William Wawe hanged. The Bishop of Winchester goes to Normandy against the Pope's order, A.D. 1427. Henry VI's coronation at Westminster. Henry VI in Paris, A.D. 1431. Rebellion of the soldiers at Calais about their wages. Congress of Arras, A.D. 1435. The men of Popering's bad behaviour. The Duke of Burgundy besieges Calais, A.D. 1436. The Flemings scorn the English by pictures and interludes. The French, disguised as fishermen, try to surprise Calais. Death of the Duke of Bedford. Calais well fortified. Calais men sworn to Henry VI. English force gathered to rescue Calais. Successful English raids from Calais. The English surprised while hunting hares. The Picards beaten in the Golden Dale. The Flemings capture the Castle of Oye. William Bullion treated as a traitor. Marck surrenders to the Flemings. The Flemings besiege Calais, A.D. 1436. The Picards ruin Guisnes Castle. Sandgate's shameful surrender. The Flemings try to block the harbour of Calais. The men of Bruges and their "Bad Thursday" at Calais. The bulwark of the men of Ghent taken

pp. 559-580

## I.

*End of the Siege of Calais, A.D. 1436, from MS. Lambeth 6.*

The besieged English receive reinforcements. The Duke of Burgundy and the Flemings abandon the siege. The Siege of Guisnes given up by the Picards. The Englishmen's mocking song against the Flemings

pp. 581-584

## K.

*Various Pieces from MS. Lambeth 84, from Havelok's time to A.D. 1475.*

- I. Story of Havelok's son Curan and Argentil ... pp. 585-588
- II. Richard II's quarrel with his uncle, the Duke of Gloster, about the soldiers from Brest, A.D. 1397 ... pp. 588-589
- III. Deposition of Richard II, and Election of Henry IV, A.D. 1399. Prophecy that Richard II should be destroyed by a toad pp. 589-590
- IV. Richard II murdered by Piers of Exton, A.D. 1400. His corpse brought to London and to Langley. Reported starvation of Richard II. His treasure ... pp. 590-592
- V. The causes of the Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403 ... p. 593
- VI. Accession and character of Henry V, A.D. 1413. Dismissal of his old companions. With the help of Katherine Swynford, he sets his court in order. He stops a duel ... pp. 593-596
- VII. Battle of Agincourt, A.D. 1415. The English King's crown captured and sent to Paris. The people from Paris hasten to Agincourt. French prisoners killed. The list of dead ... pp. 596-598
- VIII. The Siege of Rouen, A.D. 1418. Prophecies of Surrender. Every eldest son in Rouen made a King on St. Dennis' Eve ... p. 598

IX. Prophecy at Henry VI's birth, A.D. 1421. His coronation. The Popering men's bad behaviour. The Duke of Exeter's revenge. English Ballad against the Flemings ... .. pp. 598-601

X. The first battle of St. Albans, A.D. 1455. The Battles of Blore heath and Ludlow, A.D. 1459. The Battles of Northampton and Wakefield, A.D. 1460: of St. Albans and Wigmore, A.D. 1461

pp. 601-602

XI. Battle of Towton, A.D. 1461. Henry VI taken prisoner. Battle of Barnet, A.D. 1471. Death of Henry VI. King Edward IV goes to France, A.D. 1475. The French pox, the stitch and the flix

pp. 602-604

*Appendix to H.* (Compare p. 535-537.)

Alphabetical List of the Battle Abbey Roll in MS. Harley 53

pp. 605-607





## [B]

[FROM THE BATTLE OF HALIDON HILL (A.D. 1333) TO THE  
DEATH OF EDWARD III (A.D. 1377).]

[*MS. Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, No. 174, leaf 172, back.*]

¶ Ande so, after þis gracious victorie, þe King turnyd him  
aȝen vnto þe same seege of Berwyk. & whan þey of þe sege,<sup>1</sup> sawen  
& herd hov þat þe<sup>2</sup> King Edward had sped, þey ȝolden to him þe  
4 toun, with þe castell, on þe morwe after þat þe bataile was, þat ys  
forto seyn, on Seint Margaretes day. And þan þe King ordeyned  
Sere Edward Bayllol, with opere noble & worþy men, to be <sup>3</sup> keepers  
and gouernours of Scotlonde in his absence; & hym self turned  
8 aȝen, and come into Englonde after þis victory, with myche ioye &  
worship.

¶ And in þe next ȝere sewyng,<sup>4</sup> þat ys forto<sup>5</sup> seyn, þe ȝere of our  
Lord M<sup>c</sup>. CCC. & xxxij,<sup>6</sup> & of King Edward, þe vj.,<sup>7</sup> he wente aȝen  
12 into Scotland in þe wynter tyme; at whiche viage þe castell of  
Kylbrigge in Scotland, for hym & his men þat with hym comen,  
he recouered, & had<sup>8</sup> aȝens the Scottis, al þat<sup>9</sup> his owne luste.<sup>10</sup>  
¶ And in þat same ȝere, Sere Edward Baillol, king of Scotlande,  
16 held his parlement in Scotland, with meny noble lordes of Enge-  
lond, þat were at þat same parlement, for enchesoun of hire landes  
and lordshipes þat þey had in þe reume of Scotland, and helden of  
þe same Baillol. & in þe vij. ȝere of his regne, aboute þe feste of  
20 sent Iohn<sup>11</sup> Baptiste, Sire Edward Baillol, þe verry and trewe King  
of Scotland, as by heritage & riȝte lyne, made his homage and  
feaute vnto King Edward of Englonde for þe reaume of Scotland,  
at þe Nev Castell vp Tynt, in precense of meny worþi lordez, and  
24 also of communes of boþe reaumes, & anon after in þe same ȝere of<sup>12</sup>  
King Edward of Englonde resceyued of þe duke of Britaigne his  
homage for þe erldome & lordship of Richemound.<sup>13</sup> ¶ And so  
folwyng in þe neyne ȝere of his regne, after Micelmasse, King  
28 Edward rode into Scotlonde, and þer was faste by sent Iohnnes  
toun almoste al þe wynter tyme; & he helde his cristiscemasse at

<sup>1</sup> towne T. toun R. <sup>2</sup> þe om. R. <sup>3</sup> leaf 173. <sup>4</sup> folwyng R.

<sup>5</sup> to T. <sup>6</sup> M<sup>c</sup>CCC xxxiii T. MCCC xxxiiij R. <sup>7</sup> vj ȝeer R.

<sup>8</sup> had it T. <sup>9</sup> at T. at R. <sup>10</sup> wille. <sup>11</sup> Iohn þe TR.

<sup>12</sup> of om. R. <sup>13</sup> erldom of Richemonde & lordship R.

þe Castel of Rokysburgh. & in þe same ȝere þoruȝt-out al Engeland, aboute sent Clemeys tyde, in wynter þere arose a<sup>1</sup> suche a sprynggyng and wellinge op of wateres <sup>2</sup>and floodes, bothe of þe see and also of fresshe ryvers & sprynges, þat þe see brynke wallaes <sup>4</sup>& coostes broken vp.<sup>3</sup> Men,<sup>4</sup> bestes, and houses in meny places, & namely in lowe cuntres, violently and sodenly<sup>5</sup> were dreynt and dryven away; and þe fruyte of þe erþe, þoruȝ continuance and abundaunce of þe see watres, euermore after<sup>6</sup> were turned into more <sup>8</sup>saltnes & sournes of sauour.

¶ The x. ȝere of King Edward, he entred þe Scottysse see after Missomere; & to meny of þe Scottes he ȝaf batayll, and ouercome him,<sup>7</sup> and meny he treted & bowede vnto his pees, þoruȝ his <sup>12</sup>doughtynes. & after Michelmasse þan next folwyng, was þe Erl of Moryf ytake att Epinburgh, & brouȝt into Engeland, & put into prisoun. ¶ And in þe moneþes of Iuyn and Iuull<sup>8</sup> þan next folwyng, in the xj. ȝere of his regne, was seyn and aperede in þe <sup>16</sup>firmament, a bemyd<sup>9</sup> sterre, þe whiche clerqus calleþ ‘stella comata’; and þat sterre was seyn in diuerce parteis of the firmament; wherafter anon þer folwyd in Engeland good chepe, and wonder grete plente of<sup>10</sup> chaffaree, vitale and marchaundice, and <sup>20</sup>þere aȝens, hunger, sraffte, mischif,<sup>11</sup> and nede of money, in-somuche þat a quarter of whete att London was suolde for .ijs., and a good fatte oxe at a noble, and v. good dowe briddes for a j.d. In whiche ȝere, on Holy Roed ȝeue, deide Sere Iohn of Elham, Erl of <sup>24</sup>Cornewaile, King Edwardus broþer, and lithe at Westmynstre.

**Hov King Edward made a Duchye of þe Erldom of Cor[n]waile; & also of vj. opere erles þat were newe made; & of þe ferste Chalangyng of þe reaume of Fraunce. Cap<sup>o</sup> CC<sup>mo</sup>. <sup>28</sup>xxv<sup>to</sup>.<sup>12</sup>**

<sup>13</sup>In þe ȝere of our Lord a<sup>14</sup> Mt. CCC. xxxvii., and of King Edward xij.,<sup>15</sup> in<sup>16</sup> þe moneþe of March, duryng þe parlement at Westminstre in lente tyme, King Edward made of the erldome of <sup>32</sup>Cornevayle a duchye, þe whiche duche he ȝaf to Edward his ferste sone wiþ<sup>17</sup> þe erldome of Chestre. also King Edward made at þat tyme vj. opere erles, þat ys forto sey, Sere Henry, þe Erl of

<sup>1</sup> a om. TR.    <sup>2</sup> leaf 173, back.    <sup>3</sup> vp om. T.    vp so þat R.

<sup>4</sup> and bope men T.    <sup>5</sup> Cuntrees sodenli and violenti R.    <sup>6</sup> after om. TR.

<sup>7</sup> hem T.    <sup>8</sup> of Iuyff and Iuyn R.    <sup>9</sup> lemed R.    <sup>10</sup> of alle R.

<sup>11</sup> mischif om. T.    <sup>12</sup> CCxxvj R.    <sup>13</sup> leaf 174.    <sup>14</sup> a om. T.

<sup>15</sup> xij<sup>e</sup> yeer T.    <sup>16</sup> Edward þe xij ȝeer in R.    <sup>17</sup> þe R. om. C.

Lancastres sone, Erl of Leycestre; William of Bowham, Erl of Northampton; William of Mountgen, Erl of Salesbery; Hughe of Awdelee, Erl of Gloucestre; Robert of Vfforde, Erl of Suthfolk; 4 and William of Clynton, Erl of Huntyngdone. In that same 3ere, hit<sup>1</sup> was ordeynede in þat same parlement, þat noman shulde were no clope þat was woruȝt oute of Engeland, as clope of gold, of silk, damaske, vellewet, saton, baudekyn, ne non suche opere; ne non<sup>2</sup> 8 wyldware in Furrenre of bezonde<sup>3</sup> see, but suche as myȝte Spende an C. li. of rente erliche<sup>4</sup>: but pis ordeynaunce and<sup>5</sup> statute was of<sup>6</sup> litel effecte, for hit was noȝing holde.

¶ In þe xiiij. 3ere of hys regne, King Edward wente ouere see 12 into Braban, wiȝ Quene Phelip his wif<sup>7</sup> pere beryng<sup>8</sup> childe,<sup>9</sup> and<sup>10</sup> att Andwerp, pere<sup>11</sup> he duellid more þen a 3ere, to trete wiȝ þe Duke of Braban and opere allyed vnto him of þe calynggyn of þe reaume of Fraunce to King Edward, be riȝte and by herytage, after 16 þe deȝ of Carol þe grete, King of Fraunce, broper Germayne of<sup>12</sup> quene Isabelle,<sup>13</sup> King Edwardus Moder, þe whiche<sup>14</sup> was holden and ocupied vnrightfully by Philip of Valeys, þe Emessone of King Carol: ¶ þe whiche duke, and al his, in þe forseyd þinges<sup>15</sup> and in 20 al opere þerto longyng, wiȝ al his men and goodes, King Edward founde redy vnto him, and maden and behyȝten<sup>16</sup> suerte, by good fayghte and truste; and after þat, þe king hasted him into Engeland aȝen, and left pere þe quene stille behynde hym in Braban.

¶ þan in þe xiiij. 3ere of his regne, whenne al þe lordez of his<sup>17</sup> reaume, and oper þat ownen to be at his parlement, weren clepte and assembled togedre in þe same parlement, holden at London after þe feste of sent Hillary, þe Kingez nedes were putt forþe and 28 promoted as toching þe kingdome of Fraunce; for whiche nedeȝ to be spede, þe King askeȝ þe vii<sup>18</sup> part of alle þe meble goodeȝ of Engeland, and þe wolles, and þe ix. þe<sup>19</sup> schef of euery<sup>20</sup> corn; and þe lordez of eny<sup>21</sup> toun wher suche þinges schulde be taxid and gaderd, 32 shulde ansuere to þe King þerof; and al he had and helde at his owene liste<sup>22</sup> and wil. wherfor, yf y shal knowliche þe verrey treuþe,<sup>23</sup> þe ynnere loue of þe peple was turned into hate, & þe

<sup>1</sup> hit *om* T.    <sup>2</sup> noon *oper* R.    <sup>3</sup> beyonde þe T.    biyonde þe R.

<sup>4</sup> yeerli rente T [cp. *Newers day*, 302/12].    <sup>5</sup> and þis T.    & þis R.

<sup>6</sup> off fult R.    <sup>7</sup> wif and T.    <sup>8</sup> sche bere T.

<sup>9</sup> pere beryng childe *om.* R.    <sup>10</sup> and *om.* T.    <sup>11</sup> and pere T.

<sup>12</sup> to T.    <sup>13</sup> Isobelle that was T.    <sup>14</sup> that T.    <sup>15</sup> leaf 174, back.

<sup>16</sup> behighte him R.    <sup>17</sup> þe T.    <sup>18</sup> xve T.    xv. R.

<sup>19</sup> þe *om.* TR.    <sup>20</sup> alle maner T.    <sup>21</sup> eueri T.    euerie R.

<sup>22</sup> luste T.    lust R.    <sup>23</sup> þe treuthe verray R.

commune prays into cursinge, for cause þat the commune peple were strongliche ygreued. ¶ also þe forsaide Philip of Valeys of Fraunce, had gadered to him a grete oste, and destroyede þere in his parteyes and kingdome, meny of þe Kingez frendeȝ of Engelande, 4 with tounes & castellis, and meny opere of hire lordshippez; and meny harmes, schames, and despiteȝ, dede vnto þe Quene. wherfore þe King, whan he ha[r]d<sup>1</sup> of þis<sup>2</sup> tydinge, he was stron[g]lyche meued, and þerwip an-anger[d], and sente diuerse letters ouere see 8 to þe Quene, and to opere þat were his frendeȝ, gladyng him, and certyfienge þat he wolde be þer<sup>3</sup> him-self in al þe haste þat he myȝt. ¶ And anon, after Ester, when he had sped of al þing þat hym neded, & come fore,<sup>4</sup> he wente ouere see aȝen; of whos comyng, þe 12 quene & al his frendis were wonder glad, & maden myche ioie; and al þat were his enemys, and aȝens hym helden,<sup>5</sup> madyn as<sup>6</sup> muchel sorwe. ¶ In þe same tyme þe King, þoruȝ councel of his treue leiges, & counsell<sup>7</sup> of his lordes þat þere weren present wip 16 him, toke þe King of Fraunces name,<sup>8</sup> and toke & melled þe Kingez armes of Fraunce qwarterly with þe armes of Engeland, & commaunnded forþwip his coigne of gold, vnder descripcioun of the name of Engeland and of Fraunce, to be made, þe<sup>9</sup> beste þat myȝte be, 20 þat ys for to seyn, þe floreyȝ þat was clept þe ‘noble,’ of<sup>10</sup> value of vj.s. & viij.d., and þe ‘half-noble’ of<sup>11</sup> iij.s. iij.d., & þe ‘ferping’ of value of xx.d.

**Hov King Edward come to þe Selus, and descomfited alle þe 24 poer<sup>12</sup> of Fraunce in þe same havene. Capitulo<sup>13</sup> CC<sup>mo</sup> xxvj<sup>to</sup>.<sup>14</sup>**

And in þe next ȝere after, þat ys forto seyn, þe xv. ȝere of his regne, he comaunded, & lete<sup>15</sup> write in his charters, writtes, & opere 28 letters, þe date of his regne of Fraunce ferst,<sup>16</sup> & while þat he was þus doying & trauailyng in Fraunce, þoruȝ his councel he wrote to al prelatiȝ, dukes, Erles, barouns, &<sup>17</sup> noble lordez of his cuntre, and also to diuers of þe commune peple, diuers lettres and maunde- 32 mentis, beryng date at Gandanum þe .viij. day<sup>18</sup> Feuerer. ¶ And anon aftir, wip-yn<sup>19</sup> litel tyme, he come aȝen into Engeland, wip þe

<sup>1</sup> herde TR.      <sup>2</sup> these T.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 175.      <sup>4</sup> & come fore om. T.

<sup>5</sup> helden om. T.      <sup>6</sup> as om. T.      <sup>7</sup> counsell om. R.

<sup>8</sup> kingis name of fraunce T.      <sup>9</sup> þe om. T.      <sup>10</sup> of þe R.

<sup>11</sup> of value of T.      off value of R.      <sup>12</sup> power R.      <sup>13</sup> Capitulo om. T.

<sup>14</sup> xxvj<sup>to</sup> om. T.      CC xxvij R.      <sup>15</sup> diide T.      <sup>16</sup> ferst om. R.

<sup>17</sup> and þe TR.      <sup>18</sup> day of TR.      <sup>19</sup> yn a T.

quene and hire childrin. And in þe same ȝere, on Missomer even, he bigan to sayle towarde Fraunce aȝen, & manly & stilly ful vpon Philip of Valeys, the whiche long tyme lay, and had<sup>1</sup> gaderid to  
 4 him a ful <sup>2</sup>huge and boystous navee of diuers nacions, in þe hauene of Schus. And þere þey fouȝten togedir þe Kinge of Fraunce, and he wiþ her osten from midday vnto þe morwe. ¶ In wiche batail were slayn xxx m<sup>t</sup> men of þe kingeȝ cumpanye of Fraunce, and  
 8 meny shippes & Coggeȝ were take; and so, þoruȝ Godeȝ helpe, he had þere þe victorie, and bere pens a glorious chiuache. And in þe same ȝere, aboute sent Iames tyde, wiþout þe ȝates of sent Omers, Robert of Artoys, wiþ men of Engelond and of Flaundres, bitterly  
 12 fauȝt aȝens þe duke of Burgoyne & þe Frensshe men; at wiche bataile þer were slayn & take <sup>3</sup>of þe Frensshe men, xv. barouns, .iiij. knyȝtis; & shippeȝ & barges were take,<sup>3</sup> vnto þe noubre of .CC. &<sup>4</sup> xxx. ¶ The same ȝere, þe King making &<sup>5</sup> abydyng  
 16 oppon þe see<sup>6</sup> of Tourney, þe Erl of Henaude, wiþ englissh archers, made asawte to þe toun of Seyntanmund, wher þat he slow L. knyȝtis & meny opere, and destroyed also þe toun.

And in þe .xvj. ȝere of his regne folwyng, in þe wynter tyme,  
 20 þe king, duelling still oppon þe forsaid sege, sent oft into Engelond to his tresorer & oper purveyours for gold<sup>7</sup> & meny, þat shulde be sent to hym þer in his nede; but his procuratours & messagers cursidly & ful slowly serued him at his nede, & him deceyved.  
 24 ¶ On was faute & laches þe King toke trews bytwene hym & þe King of Fraunce. & þe King, ful of sorow woo & shame in his hert, wiþdrowe him from þe see,<sup>8</sup> and come into Brytaigne; & þer was so grete strif<sup>9</sup> for vitailles, þat<sup>10</sup> he lost meny of his peple. &  
 28 whan he had do þere<sup>11</sup> þat he come for, he dressid hym ouer see<sup>12</sup> into Engelond warde. ¶ And as he sayled toward Engelond, in þe hye see, þe moste mishappes, stormes & tempeste, thundres & lighntyngeȝ, fil to hym in þe see, þe whiche was seyde þat it was  
 32 done & areysed þoruȝ evel spirites made by sorcery and Nigromancye of hem of Fraunce. Wherefore þe Kingeȝ hert was ful of sorwe & angwysshe, weyling & sighyng, & said vnto oure lady on þis wyse. ¶ “O blessid lady, sent Marye! what is þe cause þat

<sup>1</sup> had *om.* T.      <sup>2</sup> leaf 175, back.      <sup>xx</sup><sup>3-3</sup> of þe frensshe men xv barons .iiij. knyȝtis & shippeȝ & barges were take *om.* T.      <sup>4</sup> and *om.* T.      <sup>5</sup> making and *om.* T.<sup>6</sup> sege T. king abydyng vp on þe sege R.<sup>7</sup> for gold and R. for gold *om.* C. purveyours for gold T.      <sup>8</sup> sege R.<sup>9</sup> leaf 176.<sup>10</sup> so þat T.<sup>11</sup> þere *om.* R.<sup>12</sup> the see T.

euermore, goyng into Fraunce, al þingeȝ & wederes fallyn to me ioyful & likyng & gladsome, & as y wolde haue hym<sup>1</sup>; but alwey turnyng into Engelond ward, al þinges fallen vnprofitable & harmful?" ¶ Neuer þe latter, he, scapyng alle þe perilles of þe see, as 4 God wolde, come<sup>2</sup> by nyght to þe tour of London. & þe same ȝere þe King held him<sup>3</sup> Cristemas att<sup>4</sup> Menres, and sent word to þe Scottes by his messagers, þat he was redy, and wolde fiȝte wiþ him; but þe Scottis wolde not abyde þat, bot fled ouere þe Scottish see, 8 & hid hem as wel as þey myȝte.

¶ And in<sup>5</sup> þe xviij. ȝere of his regne, aboute þe feste of Conuersion of seint Paule, King Edward, wan he had be in Scotland, & þe Scottis were fledde, he come aȝen into Engelond, & a litel afore 12 Lente was þe turnement at Dunstable, to þe wiche turnement comen al þe ȝong bachelrye & chyualrye of Engelond, with meny erles & oþer lordes; at þe wiche turnement þe King himself was þere<sup>6</sup> present. ¶ And þe nexte ȝere folwyng, <sup>7</sup>in þe xvij. ȝere of his 16 regne, at his parlement holden at Westminster in þe xv.<sup>8</sup> of Pasche, Kyng Edward þe þrid made Edward, his ferst bygeten sone, Prince of Walys.<sup>9</sup> ¶ And in þe xix ȝere of his regne, anon after in Janyuer, before<sup>10</sup> Lente, þe same King Edward lete make ful<sup>11</sup> noble Iustices<sup>3</sup>, 20 and grete festis, in þe place of his berþe, at<sup>12</sup> Wyndessore, þat þere weren neuere non suche seyn þere<sup>13</sup> afore.<sup>14</sup> at whiche festis and rialte were ij. Kinges, .ij. queneȝ, þe Prince of Walys, þe Duk of Cornewaile, x erlis; .ix. Cuntesse, barouns,<sup>15</sup> & many burgeys, þe 24 wiche myȝt nouȝt liztly be nounbred; & of diuers landes beȝonde<sup>16</sup> þe see, were many strangers. and at þe<sup>17</sup> same tyme when þe<sup>18</sup> Iustes were don, King Edward made a grete soper, in þe wiche he<sup>19</sup> ordeyned feest, and bygan þe<sup>20</sup> Rounde Table, & ordeyned & 28 stefastyd þe day of þe forsaide Rounde Table to be holde þer at Wyndissore in<sup>21</sup> Whitesen-wike euermore after erly.

¶ In<sup>22</sup> pis tyme, Englysshe men so muche hauntted and cleuyd to þe wodnes and<sup>23</sup> foley of þe strangers, þat fro þe tyme of þe 32 comyng of þe Henauderns, xvij. ȝere passid, þey ordeyned and chaungyd ham euery ȝere diuers schappis of<sup>24</sup> disgynges of cloþing, of long large and wyde cloþis, destitu and desert fram al old honeste

<sup>1</sup> hem T.    <sup>2</sup> and come TR.    <sup>3</sup> his R.    <sup>4</sup> at þe T.    <sup>5</sup> in om. T.  
<sup>6</sup> þere om. R.    <sup>7</sup> leaf 176, back.    <sup>8</sup> xv<sup>e</sup> day T. xv day R.    <sup>9</sup> Wawys C.  
<sup>10</sup> in R.    <sup>11</sup> ful om. TR.    <sup>12</sup> at Tk. and C.    <sup>13</sup> þere om. T.  
<sup>14</sup> seen) afor þat R.    <sup>15</sup> barouns om. T.    <sup>16</sup> beȝonde þe see T. þe see om. C.  
<sup>17</sup> þat T.    <sup>18</sup> þe R.    <sup>19</sup> whiche he R. he om. C.    <sup>20</sup> his TR.  
<sup>21</sup> in þe R.    <sup>22</sup> And in TR.    <sup>23</sup> of T.    <sup>24</sup> and R.

and good vsage; & anoþer tyme schorte clopis & stret-wasted, dagged & ket, & on euery side<sup>1</sup> desslatered & boned, wip sleues & tapets of sircotys, & hode<sup>3</sup> ouere longe & large, & ouermuche hang-  
 4 ynde, þat if y soþ schal say, þey were more liche to turmentours & deuels in hire cloping & schewyng & oþer arraye þen comen.<sup>2</sup>  
 ¶ And þe wemmen more myseli ȝet pasted <sup>3</sup>þe men<sup>4</sup> in array, and cureslicher; for þey were so strete cloped þat þey lete hange fox  
 8 tailles sawyd beneþe with-inforþ hire clopis, forto hele and heyde hire ars; þe whiche disgysenge<sup>3</sup> & pride perauenture afterward brouȝte forþe & encausid many mys-happis & mischeuys<sup>5</sup> in þe reame of Engeland.

12 ¶ The xx ȝere of King Edward he wente ouere<sup>6</sup> into Brytaine & Gascoigne: in wos companye wente þe Erl of Warwyk, þe Erl of Suthfok, þe Erl of Honntyngdone & þe Erl of Arundel, and meny oþer lordes, & commune peple in a gret multitude,<sup>7</sup> with a  
 16 grete navey of ij. C.<sup>8</sup> & xl. shippis, anon after mydsomer, forto avenge him of meny wronge<sup>3</sup> & harmes<sup>9</sup> to hym done be Philip of Valeys, King of Fraunce, ȝens þe treues byfore-hand<sup>10</sup> grauntyd, þe whiche trewes he fasly & ownetreuly, by cawelaciones, loste and  
 20 disqwatt.

Hov King Edward sayled into Normandye, & arryued at Hogges wip a gret oste; & of þe batayle of Selus, and of<sup>11</sup> þe bygynnyng of þe seege of Calys, & also of þe  
 24 batayll of Duresme. Cap<sup>o</sup>. CC<sup>mo</sup> xxvij<sup>mo</sup>.<sup>12</sup>

I N þe xxj. ȝere of his regne, King Edward, þoruȝ counsel of al þe grete lordez of þis<sup>13</sup> reame, clepid & gadered togedre in his parlement at Westminster before Estern, ordeyned him  
 28 forto<sup>14</sup> passe ouer þe se ȝen, for to discesce and destrouble þe rebellis of Fraunce. and when his navey was come togedre & made redy, he went with an huge oste, þe xij. day of Juyll, & sayled into Normandye, & arryued at Hogge<sup>3</sup>.<sup>15</sup> & whan he had  
 32 restid him þere vj. daies, for bycause of trauelyng of the see, & forto haue out al his men wip al hire nessessaryes, out of hire shippes, he wente toward Cadomon,<sup>16</sup> brengyng, wastyng, & destroyenge al þe tounes <sup>17</sup>as he went by þe way. ¶ And þe xxvj day

<sup>1</sup> side TR. <sup>2</sup> þen comen om. T. <sup>3</sup> leaf 177.

<sup>4</sup> þe men om. T. <sup>5</sup> meny mischiefs and myshappe<sup>3</sup> R. <sup>6</sup> ouere om. R.

<sup>7</sup> multitudo C. <sup>8</sup> om. R. <sup>9</sup> meny harme<sup>3</sup> & wronges R.

<sup>10</sup> biforhand R. byfore had C. <sup>11</sup> of om. T.

<sup>12</sup> ccxxvij R. xxvij om. T. <sup>13</sup> his R. <sup>14</sup> to T.

<sup>15</sup> and arryued at hogge<sup>3</sup> om. TR. <sup>16</sup> Rone T. Paris R. <sup>17</sup> leaf 177, back.

of Juyll, at þe brigge of Cadomy, manly & orpudly ystrengþed and defended wiþ Normannes, he had þere a stronge batayll, & a<sup>1</sup> longe-duryng, þoruþ which<sup>2</sup> grete<sup>3</sup> multitud of people was slayn. ¶ And þere were take prisoners, þe Erl of Ewe, þe Lord 4 of Tankerwyle, & an C. oþer kinge<sup>4</sup> and men of armes, & vj C. foote men ynombred; and þe toun & þe subbarbus vnto þe bare wallys of al þing þat myzte be bore & caryed out, was robbid and despoyled. ¶ aftirward þe King, passing forþe by þe cuntre 8 aboute þe brede of xx. mile, he<sup>5</sup> wastyd alle manere þing þat he founde. Whan Philip of Valeys perseuyd<sup>6</sup> al þis, al-pouþ he were faste by with a stronge oste, he wolde nouzt come no ner, but brek al þe briggys bezonde þe water of Seyn, fro Roon vnto Paris, 12 & him self fledde vnto<sup>7</sup> þe same Citee of Paris<sup>8</sup> wiþ al þe haste þat he myzte. ¶ fforsothe, þe noble King Edward, when he come to Paris brigge, and founde hit broken, wiþinne ij. dayes he lete make hit azen; & in þe morwe after þe assumplicioun of oure 16 Lady, King Edward passed ouere þe water of Seyen, goyng toward Cryesce, & distroyed by þe way tounes wiþ þe<sup>9</sup> people duelling perinne.<sup>10</sup> & in þe feste of sent Bartolomev, he passid ouere þe water of Comme owne hurte<sup>11</sup> wiþ al his oste þer as neuer afore 20 honde was eny manere wey in<sup>12</sup> passage werto a M<sup>13</sup> men were slayn of hem þat letted hire passage ouer.

[*The Battle of Crecy.*]

¶ þerfore, þe xxvj. day of auguste, King Edward in a felde faste by Creysey, hauyng iij.<sup>14</sup> bataillis of englishe men, countryd 24 and mette wiþ Philip of Valeys, hauyng <sup>15</sup> wiþ him iiij. batailles, of þe wiche þe leste passid gretely þe nombre of þe Englishe peple. & whan þes ij. ostes metten togedir, þer fil oppon him<sup>16</sup> þe King of Beme, þe Duke of Loroyn and erles also of Flaundres, Dalasoun, 28 Bloys, Harecourt, Aumerle, and Nyvers, & meny oþer erlis, barouns,<sup>17</sup> lordes, Kinge<sup>18</sup>, & men of armes, þe noumbre of a M<sup>19</sup> V. C. xliij.,<sup>19</sup> wiþout foet men & oþer men in<sup>20</sup> armevre, þat were noþing rekened. ¶ And for al þis, þe same vnglorious Philip wiþdrowe him, wiþ þe 32 residue of al his peple; wherfore it was seyd in *commune* among

<sup>1</sup> a om. T.    <sup>2</sup> whiche a T. with C.    <sup>3</sup> þoruþ whiche a greet R.

<sup>4</sup> knyghtis T. knȳtis R.    <sup>5</sup> and R.    <sup>6</sup> herde R.

<sup>7</sup> to R.    <sup>8</sup> & him self fledde vnto þe same Cite of Paris om. T.

<sup>9</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>10</sup> þerine om. T.    <sup>11</sup> owne hurte om. T.    <sup>12</sup> ne TR.

<sup>13</sup> Where ij M<sup>14</sup> R.    <sup>14</sup> þe iij<sup>c</sup> T.    <sup>15</sup> leuf 178.    <sup>16</sup> hem TR.

<sup>17</sup> barons and T.    <sup>18</sup> knyghtis T.    <sup>19</sup> oþer lordis erlis Barons knyȳtis R.

<sup>20</sup> M<sup>19</sup>VC xij T.    M<sup>19</sup> vij<sup>c</sup> xliij R.    <sup>20</sup> y TR.



his owne peple ‘*Nostre beall Retret,*’ that is for to sey, ‘Our faire wipdraweþ hym.’ þan Kyng Edward & our Englyssh men, þank-  
yng God for suche a victorie, after hire grete labour, takyng to  
4 hem al þyng nedeful for her sustenaunce & sauynge of hire lyf  
ferdred of hire enemys, rested hem þere. ¶ And ful erly in<sup>1</sup> þe  
morwe, after þe Frensshe men wip an houe passyng oste come  
aȝen for to ȝeue batayll & fȝte wip þe Englysshe men, wip whom  
8 metten & countreden þe Erles of Warwyk, Norhampton & Norfolk,  
wip hire companye & slown ij. M<sup>t</sup>,<sup>2</sup> & token meny prisoners of  
þe gentils of ham; and þe remenaunt of þe same oste fled iij.  
mile þens.

[*The Siege of Calais, and the Invasion of England by the Scots.*]

12 ¶ And þe third day after the bataill, þe kyng wente to Caley  
warde, destroyng al þe cuntre as he rode; whider,<sup>3</sup> whan þat<sup>4</sup> he  
was comen,<sup>5</sup> þat is forto seyn, þe .iiij. day of Septembre, he bygan  
to besege þe toun wip þe castell, and continued his sege fro þe  
16 forseyd iij. day of Septembre vnto þe iij. day of Auguste þe next  
ȝere after. & in<sup>6</sup> þe same ȝere, duryng þe sege of Caley, þe King  
of Scotlond,<sup>7</sup> with a ful grete multitude of Scottis, come into  
Engelond, to Nevyles crosse, about seint Lukes day þe euangglist,  
20 hoppyng & trustyng to haue found al the land destitut & voyde  
of peple, forasmuche as þe Kyng of Engelond was bezend þe see,  
saue only prestes & men of holy chirche, & women & childrin, &  
ploghmen, & such oper laborers. ¶ And þer þey robbeden, &  
24 deden mych priue<sup>8</sup> sorow; but ȝet fond þey ynowe þat ham  
wipstode, by þe grace of God. And so a day of batayll was  
assigned bytwene hem; & certeyne lordes & men of holy cherche  
þat were in þat cuntre, wip opere comune peple, fast by þe Citee  
28 of Duresme; at whiche day, þoruȝ þe grace and þe helpe of God<sup>9</sup>  
þe Scottis<sup>10</sup> were ouercomen, & ȝet were þey threfold so meny of  
hem<sup>11</sup> as of<sup>12</sup> Englysshe men<sup>13</sup>; and þere was slayn al þe chivalrye  
and knyȝthod of þe reaume of Scotland. ¶ And þer were take,  
32 as þey wolden haue fleed, Dauid, King of Scotlond, þe Erl of  
Mentyf, sere William Douglas, & many oper grete men. & after  
þat, oure Englysshe men, when þey had restyd ham a fewe dayes,  
& had ordeyned keepers of þe<sup>14</sup> Northcuntre, þey comen to London,

<sup>1</sup> on T.    <sup>2</sup> ij M<sup>t</sup> men T.    <sup>3</sup> whider om. TR.    <sup>4</sup> pat om. R.

<sup>5</sup> was come þider R.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 178, back.    <sup>7</sup> Scotlond C.    <sup>8</sup> oper T.

<sup>9</sup> help & grace of God R.    <sup>10</sup> Cottis C.    <sup>11</sup> of hem om. R.    <sup>12</sup> þe R.

<sup>13</sup> peple TR.    <sup>14</sup> þe land of the T.

and brouȝt with ham þe King of Scotlond, & þes opere lordeȝ þat were taken prisoners, vnto<sup>1</sup> þe tour<sup>2</sup> of London, wiþ al þe haste þat þey myȝte; & þer þey lefte ham in saue kepyng, vnto þe Kinges comynge,<sup>3</sup> and went<sup>4</sup> home aȝen into hire owne cuntre. & after- 4 ward was þe Kinges raunsome of Scotlond taxid vnto an C. M<sup>t</sup> mark<sup>5</sup> of seluere, to be payed in x ȝer, þat ys forto sayne, euery ȝere x þousand mark.

Of the conqueste and <sup>6</sup>wynnge of Caleys, and of<sup>7</sup> grete <sup>8</sup>pestelence & raynes þat fillen sone aftir; and of þe tresoun ordeyned aȝens Caleys. Capitulo<sup>8</sup> CC<sup>mo</sup>. xxvij<sup>o</sup>.<sup>9</sup>

**I**N þe xxij ȝere of King Edwardys regne, he wente ouere in þe wynter time, & lay al þe wynter in<sup>10</sup> þe seege of Caleys. <sup>11</sup>þe <sup>12</sup>whiche year, while þe sege lasted, Philip of Valeys,<sup>11</sup> Kyng of Fraunce, cast & purposed, trecherously & wiþ fraude, to put away þe sege,<sup>12</sup> & come þe xxvij day of Iuyll in þe same ȝere wiþ a grete oste & a strong poer, & neighred vnto þe sege of Caleys. ¶ þe <sup>16</sup>whiche Philip, þe last day of Iuyll, sent to King Edward word þat<sup>13</sup> he wolde ȝeue him playn bataill þe .iij. day next after þat, about euesong tyme, if þat he durst come fro þe sege & abyde hit. And whan Kynge Edward herd þat, wiþout eny long taryng or grete <sup>20</sup>auisement, he accepted gladly þe day & hour of bataill þat Philip had assigned. And whan the Kyng of Fraunce herd þat, wiþout eny long taryng or grete auyusement, þe next nyght after he set hys tentys afyre, and vanysshed & went away þens cowardly. ¶ Than <sup>24</sup>þey þat were in<sup>14</sup> þe toun and in þe castell bysegged, seyng al þis, how þat þei hade non oper helpe ne socour of þe Kinge of Fraunce ne of his men, & also þat her vitailles wiþin hym<sup>15</sup> were spended and wasted, & for defaute of vitailles & of<sup>16</sup> refresshyng þey eten <sup>28</sup>hors, houndes, cattes & mys, for to kepe her troupe as long as þey myȝte. ¶ And whan they sawe, & was found amongeȝ hem at þe last þat þey had no þing amonge hem<sup>17</sup> forto ete ne lyve by, ne no socour ne resceuyng of þe Freussshemen; on þe toþer<sup>18</sup> syde <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> to T. <sup>2</sup> tone C. towr TR. <sup>3</sup> comyng to London T.

<sup>4</sup> wente TR. when C. <sup>5</sup> an C M<sup>t</sup> c CR. <sup>6</sup> leaf 179. <sup>7</sup> of þis R.

<sup>8</sup> Capitulo om. T. <sup>9</sup> xxvij<sup>o</sup> om. T. cexxix R. <sup>10</sup> at T.

<sup>11–11</sup> þe whiche yeer while þe sege lasted Philip of Valeys T. the whiche yeer while the Sege lasted Philip of Valeis R. om. C.

<sup>12</sup> þe sege TR. þe om. C. <sup>13</sup> sent word to King Edward þat R.

<sup>14</sup> withine T. <sup>15</sup> hem T. <sup>16</sup> of om. T. <sup>17</sup> amonge hem om. R.

<sup>18</sup> on þat oper TR.

þey weste wel þat <sup>1</sup>þey must deie<sup>2</sup> for defaute, eyþer<sup>3</sup> ȝelde<sup>4</sup> vp þe  
 toun; and anon wenten & tokin<sup>5</sup> done þe banerys &<sup>6</sup> þe armes of  
 Fraunce on euery side þat were hanged out, & wenten on þe walles  
 4 of þe toun, and in oþer diuers plaeyis, as naked as þey were bore,  
 saf hire chirtys and<sup>7</sup> brechys, & heldyn hire swerdus naked, & þe  
 poynt downward, in hire handez, & puttyn ropys & halterys  
 abowte hire<sup>8</sup> neekys, and ȝolden vp þe keyes of þe toun and of þe  
 8 Castell to Kyng Edward, wiþ grete fere and drede of hert. ¶ And  
 when the King sav þis, as a mereyable king and lord, resceyued  
 hym al to his grace; & a feue of þe grettste persones of stat and  
 of gouernaunce of þe toun he sent into Engelond, þer for to abyde  
 12 hire raunsome & þe kinges grace; & al þe communialte of þe toun  
 þe king lete go wher þey wolde in pees, & wiþoute ony harme, &  
 lete ham bere with ham al hire þinge; þat þey myȝte bere & cary  
 away,<sup>9</sup> keping þe toun and the Castell to hymself. ¶ þan, þoruȝ  
 16 mediacioun of cardenalles þat were sent fro þe pope, trewes was take  
 þer bituene Fraunce & Engelond for ix monethes þan next folwyng;  
 & aboute mychelmasse King Edward came aȝen vnto Engelond  
 wiþ a glorious victorye.

[*The Plague of 1348.*]

20 ¶ And in þe xxiiij. ȝere of his regne, in þe Este parteyis of þe  
 worlde þer aros & bygan a pestilence, & dep of Sarasineȝ and  
 Payngneins, þat so grete a dep was neuer herde of afore,<sup>10</sup> and þat  
 wasted away so þe peple þat vnneþes þe x<sup>the</sup> persone was left  
 24 a<sup>11</sup>-lyue. & in þe same ȝere, aboute þe Sowthcuntreys and also in<sup>12</sup>  
 þe west cuntres, þere fell so much<sup>13</sup> reyne and so grete waters þat,  
 from Cristemasse vnto<sup>14</sup> Midsomer, þer was vnneþes day ne nyght  
 but þat it rayned sumwhat; þoruȝ whiche watres, þe pestilence was  
 28 sone fectid<sup>15</sup> & so habundant in all cuntres, & namely aboute þe  
 court of Rome & oþer places & sore<sup>16</sup> costes,<sup>17</sup> þat vnneþes þere were  
 left alyve<sup>18</sup> folk to bery ham þat were ded, honestly, but maden  
 grete diche and puttes þat were wonder brood and depe, & þerin  
 32 beried, & made a reinge of þe<sup>19</sup> dede bodyes, & anoþer reinge of erpe  
 aboue ham; & þus were þey buried, & non oþer wise, but yf it were  
 þe fewer þat were grete men of state.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 179, back.<sup>2</sup> eythir die T.<sup>3</sup> or ellis T.<sup>4</sup> þey moste ouþer die for defaute or ellis yelde R. <sup>5</sup> took a T.<sup>6</sup> of TR. <sup>7</sup> and her TR.<sup>8</sup> þeir R.<sup>9</sup> away om. T.<sup>10</sup> before R.<sup>11</sup> on T.<sup>12</sup> in om. R.<sup>13</sup> leaf 180.<sup>14</sup> to T.<sup>15</sup> was so effect T. was so effected R.<sup>16</sup> sondry T.<sup>17</sup> & sore costes om. R.<sup>18</sup> on lyue T.<sup>19</sup> þe om. R.

¶ And after al þis, in þe xxiiij ȝere of his regne, hit was done King Edward to wite and vnderstonde of a tresoun þat was bygun at Caley, and ordeyned for to selle þat<sup>1</sup> toun for a grete somme of Florens vnto King Philip of Fraunce, þoruȝ þe falsnes & þe<sup>2</sup> 4 ordinance of a knyȝt þat me called Sir Geffrey of Charney, þat was wonder priuey wiþ þe King of Fraunce. ¶ And whan þe King herd þis, he toke wiþ hym þe noblys & þe gentils, & opere worpy & orped men of armes, þat were þere present wiþ hym for þe 8 solempnite of þat<sup>1</sup> hey<sup>3</sup> feest, & wel & wisely, in al þe haste þat he myȝt, & as priuely as he myȝt, he wente hym<sup>4</sup> ouere see,<sup>5</sup> and þat same tyme þe King held hys Cristemas at Haueryng. ¶ And in þe morwe after<sup>6</sup> Newers day, þe King was in þe Castell of 12 Caley, wiþ his men of armes, þat none of<sup>7</sup> þe aliens wist þerof. And thilk<sup>8</sup> fals conspiratour & traytour, Geffrey of Charney, seth<sup>9</sup> he myȝte not opynly haue his purpos of þe castell, pryuely & stelyngly he comen yn, & held þe toun wiþ a grete oste. 16 And when he wiþ his men were comen yn, he payed þe forsaide somme of florens, as couenaunt was bituene him, to a Geneweys in þe toun þat was keper of þe castell, & consentyng to þe same Gefferey in al þis<sup>11</sup> falsnesse & trecherye, & bonde þe Englysshe mynesters and 20 seruauȝtȝ þat were in þe castel, þat þey myȝt nouȝt helpe hamself, ne lete ham of hire purpos. & þan, wenyng þat þey had be siker ynov, þey spaken hire wickednesse & falones oppynly & an hey, þat al men myȝt here. ¶ And nov shul ȝe here hov þey were 24 desceyued; for þey comme in by a preuy posterne ouer a litel brigge was drawyn opp<sup>12</sup> of tre; & when þey were come yn sotelly and preuely, þe brigge was dravyn op and kepte, þat non of ham þat were come yn myȝte go out, ne no moo come yn to hym. ¶ And 28 anon our Englysshe men wente oute at priuy holes and wendawes, & ouere þe wallys of þe toun & of þe castel, & wenten & fouȝten manly wiþ þe Frenche men þat were wiþoute, & had the better of ham, þe wiche when þey were oucupied by ham self on<sup>13</sup> hire side. þe King, 32 þat was wiþin þe toun, hauyng wiþ him<sup>14</sup> scharstly but xxx. men of armes, dreve out his swerd, & with a lowed voys cried on hey: "*A sent Edward! a sent Gorge!*" And when folk herde þat, þey come rennyng to him, and ȝeauen þer<sup>15</sup> to hire enemyȝ so stronge 36

<sup>1</sup> þe TR.      <sup>2</sup> þe om. R.      <sup>3</sup> hey om. T.      <sup>4</sup> hym om. R.      <sup>5</sup> þe see R.

<sup>6</sup> next T.      <sup>7</sup> of alle T.      <sup>8</sup> And whane þat R.      <sup>9</sup> saw þat R.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 180, back.

<sup>11</sup> þis om. T. his R.      <sup>12</sup> was drawyn opp om. TR.

<sup>13</sup> on of C. on TR.

<sup>14</sup> wiþ him om. R.      <sup>15</sup> þer om. T.

assaute þat þer were mo þen ij. C. men of armes, and meny oper, slayn, & meny fledden ; & so, by þe grace of God, þe victorye fel to þe Englysshe men. ¶ þan þe King toke with him þis Gefferey, þat  
4 was fynder of þis trecherye, and also many oper Frenshe prisoners, & withyn a while <sup>1</sup>after wente<sup>2</sup> agen into Engeland.

[*The Plague, or Black Death.*]

And in þis same 3ere, and in þe 3ere afore, & also in þe 3ere aftir, was so grete a pestilences of men fro þe Est into þe west, & namely  
8 þoruȝ bocches, þat he þat siked þis day, deid on þe iij. day after. ¶ To þe wich men þat so deiden in þis pestilens, þat haddyn but litel respyte of lyggyng, þe pope Clement, of his goodnes & grace, ȝaf ham ful remission & foryeuyng of all hire synnes þat þey  
12 were schryven of. & þis pestilence lasted in London fro Michelmasse into <sup>3</sup>Auguste next folowyng almoste an hool 3ere. & in þes dayes was deþ wiþoute sorwe, wedding wiþoute frendship, wilfull penaunce, and derþe wiþout scarste, and fleyng wiþoute refute or <sup>4</sup>  
16 socour ; ¶ ffor meny fledden fro place to place by-cause of þe pestilens ; but þey were <sup>5</sup>enfecte, & myȝt not ascape þe depe, after þe prophete Isaye <sup>6</sup>seith : “ ho <sup>7</sup>þat fleep fro þe face of drede, he  
shal fall into þe diche ; <sup>8</sup>& he þat wyndeþ hymself out of þe diche,<sup>8</sup>  
20 he shal be holde and teyd wiþ a grenne,” but whan þis pestilens was cesid & endid, as God wolde, vunenþes þe x. parte of þe peple was left alyve,<sup>9</sup> and in þe same 3ere bygan a wonder þing þat al þat euere  
were born after þat pestilens hadden ij. chekteth in her heed lasse  
24 þan þey had afore.

**How King Edward had a grete bataylle of þe Spaynardes in þe see faste by Wynchel-see, & of meny opere þingeȝ.**  
**Capitulo CC.<sup>mo</sup> xxix.<sup>o</sup>**<sup>10</sup>

28 And in þe xxv. 3ere of his regne, about sent Johnnes tyde in heruest, in þe see faste by Wynchelse, King Edward had a grete batayll wiþ men of Spayne, wher þat <sup>11</sup>hire shippes & navee ley cheyned togider, þat eipere they muste fȝt or drenche. ¶ And so,  
32 whan al our worpi men of armes on þe see coostes fast by Wynchel-see & Romeny were gadred,<sup>12</sup> & ouer navee & shippes al redy to þe werre, þe Englyssh men metten manly & stifly with hire enemys,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 181.    <sup>2</sup> wente R. om. C.    <sup>3</sup> vnto R.    <sup>4</sup> of T.

<sup>5</sup> were om. R.    <sup>6</sup> Isaye þat T.    <sup>7</sup> who R.

<sup>8-9</sup> om. R.    <sup>9</sup> onlyue T.    <sup>10</sup> xxix om. T. cccxxx R.

<sup>11</sup> leaf 181, back.    <sup>12</sup> gatherid togidere T. gadred to gedir R.

comyng fersly azens ham, & when þe Spaynesshe vessellis & nauey were closid yn al about, *per* men myzte se a stronge bataile vn boþe sides, and long duryng; in þe whiche Batayle *per* ner<sup>1</sup> but fewe þat fauzten but þat<sup>2</sup> þey were sputesly herte, & fowle. and after 4 þe batayle *per* were xxiiij shippes of hereȝ ytaken; & so þe<sup>3</sup> Engligsshe men had þe better.

[*The new Coinage. The dear Summer. A Drought.*]

¶ And in þe next ȝere after<sup>4</sup> folwyng, of his regne xxvj<sup>ti</sup>, þe King, þoruȝ his councele, lete ordeyne & make his neve money, þat 8 ys forto sey, þe peny, þe grote of valew of iiij. pens, & þe half-<sup>5</sup> grote þe<sup>6</sup> valew of ij d.; but hit was of lesse wyȝth þan þe old sterlyng was, by v. s. in þe pound. ¶ And in þe xxvij. ȝere of his regne was þe<sup>7</sup> grete derpe of vitailles, þe wiche was clepid þe dere 12 somer. ¶ And in þe xxviij. ȝere of his regne in þe parlement holdyn at Westminster after Ester, Sere Henry, Erl of Lancastre, was made Duk of Lancastre. and in pis<sup>8</sup> same ȝere was so grete a drowthe þat, fro þe moneþ of Marche unto þe moneþ of Iuyll, *per* 16 fel no rayne into<sup>9</sup> þe erpe; wherfore al<sup>10</sup> fruttys, sedis and erbis, for þe more<sup>11</sup> part was lost; in defaute wherof *per* come so grete desise of men and bestes, & derpe of vetailes in Engeland, so þat pis lande, þat euer byfore was plentues, had nede þat tyme to seche 20 his vytaylis and refreschyng of oþer out yles and cuntres.

[*Negotiations about Guienne dropt.*]

¶<sup>12</sup> And in þe xxix ȝere of King Edward, hit was acorded, graunted and swore, bytwene þe King of Fraunce & þe King of Engeland, þat he shulde haue aȝen al his landeȝ and lordshippes þat 24 longe to þe Duche of Guyne of old tyme, þe wiche had bene with-drawe & wrongfully occupied by diuers Kyngeȝ of Fraunce byforhand, to hane & to hold to Kyng Edward & to his eyrs & successours for euermore, frely, pesible, & in good quyete, vppon pis 28 covenant, þat þe Kyng of England shold lene of,<sup>13</sup> & relese all<sup>14</sup> right & clayme þat he had & claymed of þe kingdome of Fraunce, & of þe title þat he toke *per*of. Oppon wiche speche & couenantes, it was sent to þe court of Rome on boþe sydes of þe Kyngeȝ,<sup>15</sup> þat 32 þe forsaid couenant shold be enbulled. but God ordeyned betere for þe Kyngeȝ worship of Engeland; for, what þoruȝ fraude &

<sup>1</sup> ne were but T.      <sup>2</sup> þat om. T.      <sup>3</sup> oure T.

<sup>4</sup> after om. T.      folowyng R.      <sup>5</sup> and half a TR.      <sup>6</sup> of TR.

<sup>7</sup> þe om. R.      <sup>8</sup> þe TR.      <sup>9</sup> on TR.      <sup>10</sup> alle þe R.      <sup>11</sup> moste R.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 182.      <sup>13</sup> of om. R.      <sup>14</sup> al þe R.      <sup>15</sup> of þe kyngeȝ om. T.

deceyte of þe Frensshmen, & what þoruȝ lettynge of þe pope & of þe court of Rome, þe forsaid couenauntes were to-squat & left of.

[*Transfer of the Staple of Wool to England.*]

¶ And in þe same ȝere þe Kyng reuoked, by his wys & descrete  
4 counceyll, þe staple of wolles out of Flaundres into Engelond, wip  
al þe libertees, fraunchises & free customes þat longen þerto, &  
ordeyned hit in Engelond in diuers places, þat ys forto<sup>1</sup> seyn, at  
Westminster, Caunterbery, Chichestre, Bristowe, Lincoln, & Hull,  
8 wip al þe forsaid þyngeȝ þat longen þerto. and þat þis þing sholde  
be þus done,<sup>2</sup> þe Kyng swore hym self þerto, & prins Edward his  
sone, wip oþer meny grete witnessse þat were þere than<sup>3</sup> present.

[*The French attempt on Guienne frustrated.*]

And in þe .xxx. ȝere of his regne, anon after Wytsonday, in þe  
12 parlement ordeyned at Westminster, hit was told and certyfyed  
to<sup>5</sup> þe King, þat Philip þat held þe kingdome of Fraunce was dede,  
and þat John his sone was crowned King, & þat þis John had ȝoue  
Karoll his sone þe Duchie of Guyone. ¶ Of þe<sup>6</sup> wiche þing, King  
16 Edward, whan he herd þerof, he<sup>7</sup> had grete indignacioun vnto hym,  
& was wonder wroþ, & strongly meved: and þer, afor<sup>8</sup> al þe worþy  
lordes þat þere were assembled at þat parlement, he clept<sup>9</sup> Edward  
his son to hym, to wiche<sup>10</sup> þe Duchye of Guyene by right heritage  
20 shold longe to, and ȝaf hit hym þer, byddyng and strengþing him  
þat he shulde ordeyne him to defende and avenge him oppon his  
enemys, & saue & mayntene hys ryȝt. ¶ And afterward, King  
Edward him self, and his eldiste<sup>11</sup> sone Edward,<sup>12</sup> wenten to diuerce  
24 placeȝ and senten in Engelond a pilgrimage, forto haue þe more  
grace and help of God and of his sentȝ. and þe secunde kalend  
of Iuyll, when al þing was redy to þat viage and batayleȝ, and al<sup>13</sup>  
his retennev & power assembled, and hire navey also redy, he toke  
28 wip him þe Erl of Warwyk, þe Erl of Suthfolk, þe<sup>14</sup> Erl of Salys-  
bery, & þe Erl of Oxenford, and a M<sup>t</sup> of<sup>15</sup> men of armes, and as  
many archerys, in þe Natiuite of our Lady, and at Plymmough  
token hire shippes, and bygan to sayle. ¶ And when<sup>16</sup> he come  
32 and was arryued in Guyene, he<sup>17</sup> was þer worshipfully take<sup>18</sup> and<sup>19</sup>

<sup>1</sup> to R.    <sup>2</sup> þo R.    <sup>3</sup> were þanne þere R.    <sup>4</sup> leaf 182, back.

<sup>5</sup> to om. T.    <sup>6</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>7</sup> he om. R.    <sup>8</sup> þerfore R.

<sup>9</sup> also and cleped R.    <sup>10</sup> whom TR.    <sup>11</sup> eldiste om. R.

<sup>12</sup> Prince Edward T.    <sup>13</sup> al om. T.    <sup>14</sup> þe erle TR.    þe om. C.

<sup>15</sup> of om. TR.    <sup>16</sup> when om. T.    <sup>17</sup> and he T.    <sup>18</sup> take om. R.    <sup>19</sup> and om. C.

resceyued<sup>1</sup> of þe moste noble men and lordeȝ of þat cuntre. And anon after, King Edward toke wiþ him his ij. sones, þat ys forto seye,<sup>2</sup> Sir Lyonell, Erl of Vltoun, and Sere Iohn his broþer, Erl of Rychemonde, and Sere Henry, Duke of Lancastre, wiþ meny Erles 4 and lordes and men of armes, and too <sup>3</sup>M<sup>r</sup> archers, and sayled into<sup>4</sup> Fraunce, and reste him awhile at Caleys. ¶ And afterward, þe King went wiþ his folk aforsaide, and wiþ opere sowdiours of bezende þe see þat þere aboden þe Kinges comynge, þe secunde day 8 of Nouembre, & toke his iorneye toward King Iohn of Fraunce, þere as he trowed to<sup>5</sup> haue y<sup>6</sup>found him faste by þe toun of Odomarum, as his letters and couenauntȝ made mencion þat he wolde abyde him þere wiþ his oste. ¶ And whan King Ion of 12 Fraunce herde of þe Kyngeȝ cominge of Engeland, he wente away wiþ his men & his cariage, cowardly & schamfully fleyng, wastyng al vitailȝ ouer<sup>7</sup> al, þat<sup>8</sup> Englysshe men shold nauȝt haue therof. ¶ And when King Edward herde þat he fled, he pursued him wiþ 16 al his mayne til<sup>9</sup> Hedoun; and þen he, by-holdyng þe wantyng and þe scarsites of vitailȝ, and also the cowardice of the King of Fraunce, he turned aȝen, wastyng al þe cuntre.

[*The Scots attack Berwick.*]

¶ And while al þese þingeȝ were a<sup>10</sup>doynge, þe scottes prevyly and 20 by nyȝt token þe toun of Berwyk, sleynge ham þat wiþstode ham, and no man ellis; but,—blessid by god!—þe castel neuer-þe-latter was sauȝd and kepte be Englysshe men þat were þerin. þen þe Kinge perceuyng al þis, turned aȝen into Engeland as worþ as he 24 myȝte.<sup>11</sup> ¶ Wherefore in a parlement at Westminster was graunted to þe King of euery sake of<sup>12</sup> wolle .l. s. duryng þe terme of vj. ȝere þat he myȝt þe myȝtlyker fyght and deffende þe reaume aȝens þe Scottis and opere mys-doers: and so, when al þinges were redy, 28 þe King hastyd hym to þe seege warde.

**Hov King Edward was crouned King of Scotland, and hov  
Prins Edward toke þe King of Fraunce,<sup>13</sup> & of þe bataylle  
of Peyters.<sup>13</sup> Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup> Tricesimo.<sup>14</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> and resceyuyd T.      <sup>2</sup> þat ys forto seye om. TR.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 183.

<sup>4</sup> toward TR.      <sup>5</sup> forto T.      <sup>6</sup> y om. TR.

<sup>7</sup> ouerall R.      <sup>8</sup> oper al C.      <sup>9</sup> þat þe T.      <sup>10</sup> in T.

<sup>11</sup> myȝhte be R.      <sup>12</sup> of om. T.      <sup>13-13</sup> om. T.

<sup>14</sup> Tricesimo om. T.      cccxxi R.



<sup>1</sup> And in þe xxxj. ȝere of his regne, þe xiiij day of Ianuere, þe King beyng in þe castel of Beywyk wip a fewe men, but<sup>2</sup> havyng þer fastby a<sup>3</sup> gret oost, þe toun was ȝold to him wipout  
<sup>4</sup> eny<sup>4</sup> manere fens or<sup>5</sup> difficulte. þan þe King of Scotlond, þat ys forto sey, Sire Iohn Bayllol, considering how þat God dede meny merueylles þingeȝ & gracious<sup>6</sup> for King Edward at his owene will fro day to day, he toke<sup>7</sup> & ȝaf op<sup>8</sup> þe reaume of Scotland, & þe  
<sup>8</sup> croune of Scotland,<sup>9</sup> att Rokesburgh,<sup>10</sup> in-to þe Kingeȝ handes<sup>11</sup> of Engelond, vnder his patent lettres þer of y<sup>12</sup>made. ¶ And anon after King Edward, in presence of al þe prelates & oþer worpi men & lordeȝ þat þere were, lete croune hym King þer-of<sup>13</sup> þe reaume  
<sup>12</sup> of<sup>14</sup> Scotland. and whan al þingeȝ were done & ordeyned in thilk cuntres at his luste, he turned aȝen into Engelond wip a<sup>15</sup> houghe worship.

¶ And while þat<sup>16</sup> þis viage was adoyng in Scotland, Sir  
<sup>16</sup> Edward, Prins of Walys, as a man enspired of God, was in Guyne, in þe Citee of Burdeux, trefyng & spekyng of þe chalangyng, &<sup>17</sup> of the Kingeȝ right of Engelond, þat he had to þe reaume of Fraunce; and þat he wold avenged be<sup>18</sup> wip stronge hond. & aȝ þe prelates,  
<sup>20</sup> peris, & myȝty men of þe cuntre, consentid wele to hym. ¶ þan Sere Edward, the Pryns, wip a grete oste y<sup>19</sup>gaderid to hym, þe vj. day of Iuyl went fro Burdeux, goyng & trauaylyng by meny diuers cuntres. And he toke meny<sup>20</sup> prisoners, mo þan vj<sup>M</sup> men of  
<sup>24</sup> armes, by the<sup>21</sup> cuntre as he iourneyed,<sup>21</sup> & toke þe toun of Remorantyn in Saloigne, & beseged þe castell vj. dayes. and at þe vj. dayes ende þey ȝolden þe castell vnto hym; and<sup>22</sup> þere were taken þe Lord of Croin, and Sere Bursigand, and meny oþere knyghtes,  
<sup>28</sup> and men of armes mo þan iiii<sup>xx</sup>.

[The Battle of Poitiers.]

And fro þens by Tureyne & Petey,<sup>23</sup> faste by Chaneney, his noble men þat were with him hadden a strong bataill wip Frenssh men, and a<sup>24</sup> C. of hire<sup>25</sup> men<sup>26</sup> of armes were slayn. and þe Erle

<sup>1</sup> leaf 183, back.    <sup>2</sup> but om. T.    <sup>3</sup> bi a T.    <sup>4</sup> any defence or any T.

<sup>5</sup> fens or om. T.    <sup>6</sup> & gracious om. R.    <sup>7</sup> toke up T.

<sup>8</sup> and ȝaf vp om. T.    <sup>9</sup> of Scotland om. T.

<sup>10</sup> Rokesburgh and bi Baillol þe kyng of Scotland y yonen frely T.

<sup>11</sup> þe hondis of the kyng T.    <sup>12</sup> y om. T.    <sup>13</sup> him þere king off R.

<sup>14</sup> þe reaume of om. R.    <sup>15</sup> An TR.    <sup>16</sup> þat om. T.    <sup>17</sup> & om. TR.

<sup>18</sup> wolde be avengid T.    <sup>19</sup> y om. R.    <sup>20</sup> meny om.

<sup>21-21</sup> cuntre and he ordeynyd T.    <sup>22</sup> leaf 184.    <sup>23</sup> MS. indistinct.

<sup>24</sup> an R.    <sup>25</sup> of hire om. R.    <sup>26</sup> And an C men T.

of Damice & þe stiward of Fraunce weren take, wiþ a<sup>1</sup> C. men of armes. In þe wiche 3eer, þe xix day of Septembre, fast by Peyters, – þe same prins, with a M<sup>t</sup> and ix<sup>c</sup> men of armes and archers, ordeyned a bataill to Kyng Iohn of Fraunce, comyng to þe prins- 4 ward wiþ vij. M<sup>t</sup> cosyn men of armes, and oþer miche peple in a houghe<sup>2</sup> passyng noumbre<sup>3</sup>; of<sup>4</sup> þe whiche þer was yslayne<sup>5</sup> þe Duke of Burboun and þe Duke of Athenez, & meny oþere noble men, & of þe pris men of armes a M<sup>t</sup>, & of oþere (after þe trewe account & s rekenyng) viij. C.; and þe King of Fraunce was þer take, and Sere Philip his 3onger sone, and meny dukes & noble men & worþy knyztys, and men of armes aboute .ij. M<sup>t</sup>; and so<sup>6</sup> þe victorie fill þere to þe Prins & to þe peple of Engeland, by þe grace of God. 12 ¶ And meny þat were take prisoners were set at her raunsoun, & oppon her troupe & kny3thoode were charged, and had leue to go; but þe Prins toke wiþ hym þe King of Fraunce, and Philip his sone, wiþ al þe reuerence þat he my3te, & wente a3en to Burdeux 16 with a glorious victorie. ¶ þe somme of þe<sup>7</sup> men þat were take prisoners, & of þe man þat were slayn, þis day of<sup>8</sup> bataill, was iiij. [M<sup>t</sup>]CCCC. xl.<sup>9</sup> And in þe xxxij. 3ere of Kyng Edward, þe .v. day of Maij, Prins Edward, wiþ King Iohn of Fraunce<sup>10</sup> and Philip his 20 sone, and meny worþy<sup>11</sup> prisoners, arryved graciously in þe hauene of Plymmouth; & þe xxiiij. day of þe same moneþ, about iiij. after none, þey comen to London by London brigge, & so wente forþe to þe Kynge3 paleys of<sup>12</sup> Westmynstre. ¶ and þere fill so grete pres & 24 multitude of peple abute ham, to byholde and se þat<sup>13</sup> wonder and þat<sup>14</sup> real<sup>15</sup> sizth, that<sup>16</sup> vnnepes fro Midday þey my3te come to Westmynster. And þe Kynge3 raunsoun of Fraunce was taxied & set to iiij. Milions of Scutes,<sup>17</sup> of whom<sup>18</sup> ij. shuld<sup>19</sup> be paid a 28 noble<sup>20</sup>; & 3e shul vnderstonde þat a Milioun is a M<sup>t</sup>. M<sup>t</sup>. And after somme men, his raunsoun was set at iiij. M<sup>t</sup><sup>21</sup> floreyms; & al is on in effecte.

And in<sup>22</sup> þis same 3ere was made solempne iustes in Smeþefeld, 32 beyng þer present, þe King of Engelande, þe King of Fraunce & þe King of Scotlond, &<sup>23</sup> meny worþi noble<sup>23</sup> lordes. ¶ The xxxiiij.

<sup>1</sup> an TR.      <sup>2</sup> in a houghe *om.* T.      <sup>3</sup> the nombre T.

<sup>4</sup> aforesaid of T.      oft passinge þe noumbre R.      <sup>5</sup> slayne TR.      <sup>6</sup> so *om.* T.

<sup>7</sup> þe *om.* TR.      <sup>8</sup> in T.      to R.      <sup>9</sup> iiij. M<sup>t</sup> iiij. C. and xl<sup>th</sup> T.

<sup>10</sup> *leaf* 184, *back*.      <sup>11</sup> oþer TR.      <sup>12</sup> at T.      <sup>13</sup> þat hit was T.

<sup>14</sup> þat *om.* R.      <sup>15</sup> for hit was a roia<sup>t</sup> T.      <sup>16</sup> and þat T.

<sup>17</sup> floreyms R.      <sup>18</sup> wher of R.      <sup>19</sup> ij mylions schulle T.

<sup>20</sup> anoon T.      a noble *om.* R.      <sup>21</sup> iiij mylions of T.      <sup>22</sup> in *om.* T.

<sup>23</sup>–<sup>24</sup> noble and worthi T.      meny oþer noble and worthi R.

3ere of his regne þe same King Edward at Wyndesore, as wel for<sup>1</sup>  
loue of knyȝthood as for his owne worship, & at þe reuerence of þe  
King of Fraunce &<sup>2</sup> oþer lordeȝ þat were þere at þat tyme, he held<sup>3</sup>  
4 a wonder rial<sup>4</sup> and<sup>5</sup> costlow feest<sup>6</sup> of sent Gorge, passyng eny þat  
was hold euere afore.<sup>7</sup> wherfor þe King of Fraunce, in scornynge,  
sayd þat he saw neuere ne herd such solempne festes ne ryalties  
holden ne done with taylles, wipoute<sup>8</sup> payng<sup>9</sup> of gold or siluer.

[*The Marriage of Duchess Blanche.*]

8 ¶ And in þe xxxiiij. 3ere of his regne, þe xiiij. kalend of Iuyll,  
Sere Iohn, Erle of Richemund, Kyng Edwardes sone of Engeland,  
weddid dame Blaunche, duk Herryes douȝter of Lancaster, cosyn  
to þe same Iohn, by dispensacioun of þe Pope. and in þe mene  
12 tyme were<sup>10</sup> ordeyned iustes at London iij. dayes of<sup>11</sup> þe rogacions,<sup>12</sup>  
þat is forto sey, þe Maiere of London, wip his xxiiij<sup>ti</sup> aldermen,  
aȝens al þat wold come. In whos name and stede þe King priuely  
wip his iiij. sones, Edward, Leonell, Iohn & Edmund, & oþere xix.  
16 grete lordes, helden þe feld wip<sup>13</sup> worshopp.

¶ And þis same 3ere (as it was tolde & seyde of ham þat sawe hit)  
þere come out blood of þe toumbe of Thomas, sumtyme Erl of  
Lancaster, as ffresshe as þat day þat he was done to þe<sup>14</sup> deþe. And  
20 in þat same 3ere King Edward chose his sepulture & his liggyng at  
Westminster, faste by þe shryne of Sent Edward.

[*Edward III goes again to France.*]

And anon after, þe xxvij. day of Octobre, he wente ouere see  
to<sup>15</sup> Caleys, makyng protestacioun þat he wold neuere come aȝen  
24 into Engeland til<sup>16</sup> he had fully endid þe werre bytuene Fraunce and  
him. ¶ And so, in þe xxxv. yere<sup>17</sup> of his regne, in þe wynter tyme,  
King Edward was and<sup>18</sup> trauayled in þe Ryne costes; and aboute  
Seynt Hillere tyde he departed his oste, and went to Burgoyne-  
28 warde; wip whom þan mette pesibely þe Duk of Burgoyne, byhot-  
yng to hym lxx. M<sup>t</sup> Floreyne þat he shold spare his men<sup>19</sup> & his  
peple. And þe King<sup>20</sup> graunted at his request, & dwelled þere vnto  
þe xvij. day of March, þe wiche day it come to King Edwardes ere  
32 þat straunge pennes on<sup>21</sup> þe see vnder þe Erle of Sent Paule, þe xv

<sup>1</sup> for the T.    <sup>2</sup> and of T.    <sup>3</sup> beheld C. he helde TR.    <sup>4</sup> roiaH feste T

<sup>5</sup> and a T.    <sup>6</sup> feest om. T.    <sup>7</sup> bifore T.    <sup>8</sup> oute eny R.

<sup>9</sup> any payying T.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 185.    <sup>11</sup> aftir R.    <sup>12</sup> rogacion Daieȝ R.

<sup>13</sup> with om. T.    <sup>14</sup> þe om. TR.    <sup>15</sup> vnto T.    <sup>16</sup> til that T.

<sup>17</sup> yere of T.    yere of R.    yere om. C.    <sup>18</sup> was and om. T.

<sup>19</sup> loud T.    <sup>20</sup> king it R.    <sup>21</sup> were on TR.

day of Marche, liggyng awayte oppon þe tounes of Hastyng, Rye, and oþer places & villages on þe see coostes, hadden<sup>1</sup> entred as enemyes into þe toun of Wynchelsee, & slown al þat euere withstode ham and wipseyd her comyng; wherfore þe King was<sup>2</sup> gretly 4 meved and wraithed. ¶ And he turned aȝen to Parys-ward,<sup>3</sup> commaunded his ost to destroye & slee wip deynt & strengthe of swerd hem þat he had byfore hand y<sup>4</sup>sparid. and þe xij day of Aprill þe King come to Parys; & þere he departed his oost in ix diuerse 8 bataylles, with iiij<sup>c</sup> of knyȝtes newe dubbed, on þe to<sup>5</sup> syde of hem.<sup>6</sup> And Sere Herry, Duk of Lancastre, vnder pees & trewes wente to þe ȝates of þe Citee,<sup>7</sup> profryng to hem þat<sup>8</sup> wold abyde a batayl in þe feld, vnder suche a condicioun, þat yf þe King of 12 Englonde were ouercome (þere as God forbede hit!), þat þen he shold neuere chalange þe kingdome of Fraunce. ¶ and whan he had of hem but a short & an<sup>9</sup> scornfull answee, he told þe King & his lordes what he had herd, & wat þey saide. and þan fortwip 16 þe newe knyghtes, with meny oþere, makyng assaute to þe Citee,<sup>10</sup> destroyeden hougly þe subarbes of þe Citee. And while al þese thinges were adoyng, þe Englissh men made hem aredy to be avengid vpon þe shame &<sup>11</sup> despit þat was done þat ȝeer at 20 Wynchelse, and ordeyneden a nave of iiij<sup>xx</sup> shippes of mennes of London & of<sup>12</sup> oþer marchauntes, & xiiij M<sup>+</sup> of men of armes & archers, & wenten & destroyeden hem, & scymed þe see,<sup>13</sup> & manly token, & helde þe Ile of Caux; wherfore þe Frenssh men, þat is for 24 to sey, þe abbot of Chuyne, þe Erle of Tankerville & Sere Bursigand, þat than was stiward of Fraunce, wip meny of<sup>12</sup> oþer men of þe same cuntre, by commune assent of þe Lord Karoll, þat þo was regent of Fraunce, þey hasted hem, & wenten to<sup>14</sup> þe King of Englonde, 28 askyng & bysekyng hym<sup>15</sup> stedfast pees, & euerelastyng, vpon<sup>16</sup> certeyne condicions þat þer were wreten schewed.<sup>17</sup> ¶ The whiche, whan þe King and his counsell had seen, it plesed ham neuere a dele. 18 But seþ it wolde be non oþere, in<sup>19</sup> tyme of betere acorde & 32 deliberacioun, þe Frenssh men bysily & wip grete instaunce askede trewes for her see coostes; & þe King<sup>20</sup> graunted hem. and in þe

<sup>1</sup> and hadde TR.    <sup>2</sup> leaf 185, back.    <sup>3</sup> Parice warde and TR.

<sup>4</sup> y om. R.    <sup>5</sup> that oon T. on þat o R.    <sup>6</sup> him T.    <sup>7</sup> of Paris R.

<sup>8</sup> that he T. þat he R.    <sup>9</sup> a TR.    <sup>10</sup> Citee and thei T.    <sup>11</sup> & om. TR.

<sup>12</sup> of om. TR.    <sup>13</sup> and skemed þe See and destroyed ham R.

<sup>14</sup> vnto T. to to C.    <sup>15</sup> hym of T. them of R.    <sup>16</sup> vpon a TR.

<sup>17</sup> were schewid wreten T. wreten R.    <sup>18</sup> leaf 186.    <sup>19</sup> til. R.

<sup>20</sup> and he T.

morwe after þe oep̄tas of P̄sche, þe King turned hym with his  
ooste towarde Orlyanunce, destroyng & wastyng al þe cuntre by þe  
wey. And as þey wenten piderward, þere fil oppon hym suehe a  
4 storme & tempest þat non of our nacioun herd ne sawe neuere non  
such; thurght þe whiche, þousandeȝ of our men & of hers (*sic*)  
horses in here<sup>1</sup> (*sic*) iourneyng (as it were þorough vangeaunce),  
sodenly were slayn & perissched, þe which tempestes ful mich ȝet<sup>2</sup>  
8 feril not þe Kyng, ne myche of his peple, þat þey ne wenden forth  
in her (*sic*) viage þat þey had begunne.

[*Peace made between England and France.*]

¶ Wherefore, abute þe feest of Holy-Rode Day in Maii, fast by  
Carnocum, þe forseid lordes of Fraunce, metyng þer with þe King of  
12 En[g]londe, a pesible acorde & a fynal, oppon certeing condicions &  
graunteȝ articulerlich<sup>3</sup> gaderid & wryten togeder, euermore to laste,  
ful discretly made, & to boþe kyngges profitable, & to her reumes,  
boþ wiþ on assent of Karoll þe Regent and Gouvernour of Fraunce,  
16 and of<sup>4</sup> Parys of the same reaume, ywretyn & made vnder þe date,  
at<sup>5</sup> Carnacum, þe xv day of May, þey offred & profred to þe King  
of Engeland, requireng his grace in alle thynges ywriten,<sup>6</sup> þat he  
wold benyngly admitte hem, and hold<sup>7</sup> hem ferme & stable to hem,  
20 & to her eires for euermore. þe wiche þingeȝ and articles, whan  
Kyng Edward had seyn, he<sup>8</sup> graunted hem, so þat boþe parties  
sholde be yswore<sup>9</sup> on Goddis body and on þe holy euanglies, þat  
þe forsaide couenauntȝ shold be stablysshed. & so þey acordeden  
24 graciously; þerfore þere were ordeyned & dressid on euery syde too  
barons,<sup>10</sup> ij. baronettes, ij. knyghtes, to admitte & receyve þe othes of  
þe Lord Karoll, regent of Fraunce, & of Sir Edward,<sup>11</sup> the first sone  
and Eyr of King Edward of Engeland; and þe x. day of Maii ther  
28 was songen a solempne masse at Parys, and aftir þe iiij ‘agnus dei’  
yseid,<sup>12</sup> wiþ ‘dona nobis pacem,’ in presence of the forseid men, that  
there yordeynid<sup>13</sup> to admitte and resceyve the opes, and of all oper  
þat þer myght be, the same Karoll leyd his right honde on the  
32 patene wiþ Goddis body, & his left hand on þe missale, and sayd:  
¶ “We, N and N, sweryn on Goddis body and on þe<sup>14</sup> holy  
gospelleȝ, þat we schulle trewliche and stedfastly holden toward vs

<sup>1</sup> his R.      <sup>2</sup> ȝet *om.* T.      <sup>3</sup> articulerli was R.      <sup>4</sup> of þe T.      <sup>5</sup> of T.

<sup>6</sup> writen R.      <sup>7</sup> hold *om.* T.      <sup>8</sup> hem he R.      <sup>9</sup> swore TR.

<sup>10</sup> too barons *om.* TR.      <sup>11</sup> leaf 186, back.      <sup>12</sup> was seide T. was seid R.

<sup>13</sup> ordeynyd T.      þat were þere ordeyned R.      <sup>14</sup> this T.

þe pees and<sup>1</sup> þe acorde made bytuene þe<sup>2</sup> ij kinge<sup>3</sup>, and in no manere to do the contrarie." & þer, amonge al ij his<sup>3</sup> lordes, for more loue & streng[t]he of wytne<sup>3</sup>, he<sup>4</sup> deled & departed þe reliques of þe croun of Crist to þe knightes of Engeland: and þey<sup>5</sup> curteysly token her 4 leue. And in þe Fryday next, þe<sup>6</sup> same manere othe in presences of þe<sup>7</sup> knightes, & of<sup>8</sup> al<sup>9</sup> oþer worthy men, Prins Edward made at Loners. Afterward, boþe Kynge<sup>3</sup>, and her sones, and þe moste noble men of boþe reaumes, wiþin þe same 3er maden þe same oþe. 8 & forto strengthe al þes forsaid þinge<sup>3</sup> þe King of Engeland axed þe grettest men of Fraunce; and he had his axyng; þat is forto seye, .vj. dukes, viij. Erle<sup>3</sup>, xij. lorde<sup>3</sup>, that is to seyn, baronys and worthy knightes. And whan þe place and þe tyme was assigned 12 in þe whiche bothe Kynge<sup>3</sup> with her counceyll shold come togedir, al þe forsaid thyng<sup>3</sup> bytwene hem yspoke, for to<sup>10</sup> ratifie and make ferme & stable.

þe King of Engeland anone wente toward þe see, & at Houn- 16 flete he bygan to sayle, levyng to his osten that were yleft<sup>11</sup> behind him (bycause of his absence) mych hevynes; & after þe xix day of Maii he come into Engeland, & went to his paleys at Westminster on Seynt Dunstons day. & þe iij. day after, he visited John, þe 20 King of Fraunce, þat was in þe Tour of London, & deliuered him frely from<sup>12</sup> al manere prisoun, saue ferst they were acorded of iijj.<sup>13</sup> Milions of floreyngs for his raunsom, and þe King comforted hym & chered him in alle places, wiþ all solaces & merpe<sup>3</sup> that longen to 24 a king, in his goyng homward.

¶ And þe ix day of Iuyll in þe same 3er, þe same Iohn, King of 25 Fraunce, that aforhand<sup>14</sup> lay here in ostage, wente home aȝen into his owne lande, to trete of þo þinge<sup>3</sup>, & of opere that longeden & 28 fillen to þe gouernance of his reaume. And afterward metten and comen togedir at Caleys bothe ij Kinges, wiþ boþe hire counceyll, about Alhalwen tyde, and þer were shewed the condiciouns and þe poyntes<sup>15</sup> of þe pees, & of þe acorde of boþe sydes ywriten; & 32 ther,<sup>15</sup> withoute eny wipseying, of boþe sides graciously þey<sup>16</sup> þere acorded. and þer<sup>17</sup> was done and sung<sup>17</sup> a solempne masse, and after þe iij. Agnus Dei, vppon Goddes body & also on þe Masse- book, boþe Kynge<sup>3</sup>, & her sones, & þe grettest lorde<sup>3</sup> of boþe 36

<sup>1</sup> as C. and R.    <sup>2</sup> þo R.    <sup>3</sup> his om. R.    <sup>4</sup> se he R.    <sup>5</sup> þey om. T.

<sup>6</sup> aftir þe T.    <sup>7</sup> þe forseide T.    þe forsaid R.    <sup>8</sup> of om.

<sup>9</sup> alle om. T.    <sup>10</sup> to for to C.    <sup>11</sup> left TR.    <sup>12</sup> leaf 187.

<sup>13</sup> iij TR.    <sup>14</sup> afor said þat R.    <sup>15-15</sup> of þe pees . . . ther om. TR.

<sup>16</sup> þey om. TR.    <sup>17-17</sup> was songen and done T.

reaumez, and of hir counceill that pere were<sup>1</sup> þan present, & not had yswore byfor, þe forsaide ope that they<sup>2</sup> had made, & was titled bytwene hem, þey behighten pere to kepe, & all oper coue-  
 4 nauntes þat were bytuene ham yordeyned.<sup>3</sup> ¶ And in þe<sup>4</sup> same 3er men, bestes, trees, & housyng, wiþ sodeyn tempest & strong light-nyng were yperisshe<sup>5</sup>; & the deucl appered bodyly in mannys liknes to myche peple as they went in diuerses plices in<sup>6</sup> the  
 8 cuntre & spake to hem.<sup>7</sup>

[A Parliament at Westminster. Eclipse of the Sun; Marvels, etc.]

Kyng Edwarde in þe xxxvj 3ere of his regne anon after Criste-  
 masse in þe feest of<sup>8</sup> Conuercion of seint Poul, held his par-  
 lement at Westminster, in the which was put forþ and showed þe  
 12 acorde and the tretys þat was stablysshed and ymade<sup>9</sup> betwene þo  
 ij. kynges; the which ac<sup>10</sup>orde plesid to<sup>11</sup> myche peple; and þerfore,  
 by þe Kynges commaundement, pere were gadryd and comyn  
 togider in Westminster chereche, the first Soneday of<sup>12</sup> Lente, that  
 16 is to sey, the ij. Kalend of Feuerell, the forsaide English men and  
 Frensshe men; wher was song a solempne masse of þe Trynyte,  
 of<sup>13</sup> þe Erchbissshop of Caunterbury, Mayster Symond Islepe. And  
 whan Agnus Dei was do, þo<sup>14</sup> King, beyng pere with his sones, and  
 20 also wiþ þe kynges sones of Fraunce, and oper noble and grete  
 lordes, with candels ylight,<sup>15</sup> and crosse ybrought<sup>16</sup> forth al þat were  
 called þerto that were not yswore<sup>17</sup> afor sworn<sup>18</sup> þat same othe that  
 was writen oppon goddis body & oppon þe masse boke in þis wyse,  
 24 “We, N. and N., sweren oppon holy Goddes body, and on<sup>19</sup> þe  
 gospels, stedfastly to hold and kepe toward vs þe pees and þe acorde  
 made betwene the too kynges, and neuere forto do þe contrarie.”  
 And whan they had þus swore,<sup>20</sup> þey token her scrowes that þe  
 28 othes were comprehendid in, to the<sup>21</sup> Notaries.

¶ And this same 3er, in þe Ascencioun, even about Midday, was  
 seyn the Eclipse of þe sunne; and þer folowed suche a newe<sup>22</sup> droght  
 that, for default of rayn, þer was grete bareynes of corn, froyt,<sup>23</sup> and  
 32 hey, and in þe same 3ere, the vj. kalend of Iuyn, pere fill a sang-  
 weyn rayne, almoost like blood, at<sup>24</sup> Burgoyne; and a sangweyn

<sup>1</sup> were pere R.      <sup>2</sup> that thei T.      þat þey R.      they om. C.

<sup>3</sup> ordeyned T.      <sup>4</sup> þis TR.      <sup>5</sup> perissshed R.      <sup>6</sup> of T.

<sup>7</sup> ham. Capitulum cccxxij R.      <sup>8</sup> feest of om. TR.      <sup>9</sup> maad TR.

<sup>10</sup> leaf 187, back.      <sup>11</sup> to om. R.      <sup>12</sup> in T.      <sup>13</sup> bi T.      <sup>14</sup> the TR.

<sup>15</sup> light TR.      <sup>16</sup> brought R.      <sup>17</sup> Swore R.      <sup>18</sup> sworn om. T.

<sup>19</sup> vpon T.      <sup>20</sup> I-swore T.      <sup>21</sup> the om. R.      <sup>22</sup> newe om. R.

<sup>23</sup> of fruyt T.      <sup>24</sup> in R.

crosse, fro morwe vnto pryme, was seyn and apperid at Boloigne in þe eyr, þe whiche meny a man sawe; & after, it mevid & fill in<sup>1</sup> þe myd see.

¶ and in þe same tyme in Fraunce & in Engeland, & in opere 4 meny<sup>2</sup> landes as þey had<sup>3</sup> duelled in<sup>4</sup> playn cuntres & desert bare wytnes, sodenly þer apperid ij castels, of þe whiche wenten out ij. ostes of armed men; and þe to<sup>5</sup> oste was helid and clothed in white, and þe to<sup>6</sup>pere in blak; and whan<sup>7</sup> s<sup>8</sup>batayl bytuene hem was 8 bygunne, the white ouercome þe blake, and anone<sup>9</sup> after, þe blak token hert to hem & ouercome þe white; and<sup>9</sup> after þat, þey went aȝen into her castellis, and þat<sup>10</sup> þe castels & al þe oostes vanissheed away. and in þis same ȝere was a grete & a<sup>11</sup> honge pestilence of 12 peple, and namely of men, whos wyues, as wymmen out of gouernance, token husbondes, as wel straungers as opere lewed and symple peple, þe whiche, forȝetyng her owne wurschip & berthe, coupled & maried hem with hem<sup>12</sup> þat were of lowe degre & litel 16 reputacion.

¶ In this same ȝere deide Herry, þe<sup>13</sup> Duke of Lancastre; & also in this ȝere, Edward, Prins of Walys, weddid þe Cuntesse of Kent, þat was Sere Thomas wyf<sup>14</sup> Holande, þe whiche was departed & 20 deuorsid sumtyme fro þe Erl of Salysbury, for cause of þe same knyght. And about þis same tyme pere bygan & aros a grete companye of diuers nacions gaderid togeder, of wom her leders & gouernours were Englissh peple; & þey were clept 'a peple without 24 an heed,' þe whiche deden mych harme in þe partye of Fraunce; & not long after pere aros anoþer companye of diuers nacions þat was called 'þe white companye,' þe whiche, in þe parties & cuntre of Lumbardye, dede myche sorwe. þis same ȝere Sere Iohn Gaunt, 28 þe sone of King Edward þe third, was made Duk<sup>15</sup> of Lancastre, by resoun & cause of his wyf, þat was þe douȝter &<sup>16</sup> eyre of Herry, sumtyme Duk of Lancastre.

**Of the grete wynde, & howe Prins Edward, þe<sup>17</sup> lordship of 32 Guyene, of King Edward his fader toke of him,<sup>18</sup> & went thider. Capitulo cc. xxxij.<sup>19</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> into T.    <sup>2</sup> meny oper R.    <sup>3</sup> þat R.    <sup>4</sup> in the TR.

<sup>5</sup> þat oon T. and þat on R.    <sup>6</sup> þat opir T.    <sup>7</sup> whenne the T.

<sup>8</sup> leaf 188.    <sup>9-9</sup> after þe blak . . white and om. T.    <sup>10</sup> þanne TR.

<sup>11</sup> An T.    <sup>12</sup> with hem om. T.    <sup>13</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>14</sup> wyf of T.

<sup>15</sup> þe Duke T.    <sup>16</sup> and the T.    <sup>17</sup> had þe T.

<sup>18</sup> toke of him om. TR.    <sup>19</sup> ccº. ccxxxij R.



And in þe xxxvij 3er of King Edward, the xv day of January, that is to sey, on Seynt Mauris day, about evesong tyme, þer aroos & come such a wynd out of þe suoth, wiþ such a fersnes, that he 4 brast &<sup>1</sup> blewe<sup>2</sup> down<sup>3</sup> to ground hye houses, & strong byldynges, toures, cherches, &<sup>4</sup> steeples, & oþer strong<sup>5</sup> þynges; and al oþer strong<sup>6</sup> werkes þat stoden still, were so yshake þerewith, þat þey ben 3ett, and shol be euermore, the febelere & weyker while þey 8 stonde; & þis wynd lasted withoute eny cesyng vij. dayes continuels.

¶ And anon after, þer folowed such watres, in hey tyme & in hervest tyme, þat all feld-werkes were strongly let & left vndone, and in þe same 3ere Prins Edward toke þe Lordship of Guyene, & 12 dede to Kyng Edward his fader feaute & homage þerfore, & went ouer see into Gascoigne, wiþ his wyf & his childryn; & anone after, King Edward made Sere Leonel, his sone, Duke of Clarence, &<sup>7</sup> Edmund, his oþer sone, Erl of Caumbrig. ¶ And in þe xxxviij 3ere 16 of his regne, hit was ordeyned in þe parlement, þat men of lawe, bothe of þe temporall & of<sup>8</sup> holy chirche lawe, fro þat tyme forth shold plede in her moder tunge. And in þe same 3ere comen into Engeland thre kinges, that is to sey, þe King of Fraunce, the King 20 of Cypres, & þe King of Scotlande, by cause to visite & to speke wiþ þe King of Engeland, of whiche<sup>9</sup> þey were wonder welcomen<sup>10</sup> & myche yworshiped.<sup>11</sup> & after þat þey had ben her longe tyme, ij of hem wenten a3en home into<sup>12</sup> her owne kingdomes; but þe 24 King of Fraunce, thurgh grete sikenes & malady þat he had, left still in Engelande.

¶ And in þe xxxix 3er of his regne, was a strong and an houe frost, & that lasted long, that is forto sey, fro Sent Andrewes tyde 28 vnto þe xiiij kalend of Aprill, that þe tilthe &<sup>13</sup> sowyng of þe erthe, & opere suche feld werkes and hand werkes, were myche yyet<sup>14</sup> & lefte<sup>15</sup> vndo, for colde & hardnesse of<sup>16</sup> erthe.

¶ And at Orrey in Brytayne þat tyme was ordeyned a grete 32 dedly batayll bytwene Sere Iohn of Mounfort, Duk of Bry<sup>17</sup>tayne, & Sere Charles of Bloys, but þe victorie fill to þe forseyd Sir John, thurgh help and socour of þe Englissh men; & þere were take meny kni3tes & sqwyers and oþer men þat weren ynoubred.<sup>18</sup> In the

<sup>1</sup> touris chirchis and T.    <sup>2</sup> leaf 188, back.    <sup>3</sup> down om. T.

<sup>4</sup> toares cherches and om. T.    <sup>5</sup> strong om. T.    <sup>6</sup> strong om. R.

<sup>7</sup> and sir R.    <sup>8</sup> of the T.    <sup>9</sup> whom T.    of whom R.

<sup>10</sup> home ayen to T. to R.    <sup>11</sup> worshiped R.    <sup>12</sup> to R.    <sup>13</sup> and þe R.

<sup>14</sup> let R.    <sup>15</sup> moche I left T.    <sup>16</sup> of the T.    <sup>17</sup> leaf 189.

<sup>18</sup> men of name R.

whiche bataill was slayn Charlis hymself, with al pat stood about hym; & of þe<sup>1</sup> Englissh men *per* were slayn but vij. And in this 3ere deid at Savey, Iohn, the King of Fraunce, whose *seruise* & exequyes King Edward lete<sup>2</sup> ordeyne, & dede in diuerses places 4 worschipfully to be done, and to donorre of worschipfull men ordeyned hym worthily to be ledde, wiþ his owne costes & expenses; from<sup>3</sup> þens he was fet into Fraunce, & beried at Seynt Denys. 8

[*Peter's Pence stopt. Rain, Sparrow-fights, Plagues.*]

¶ In the xl 3eer of King Edward the vij, kalend of Feuerer, was born Edward, Prins Edwardes sone, þe whiche, whan he was vij 3ere olde, he deide. And in þe same 3er hit was ordeyned that seynt Petris pens, fro þat tyme forþ shold not be payd, þe whiche 12 Kyng Iva, sumtyme King of Englonð, of þe cuntre of West-Saxons, that bygan to regne in þe 3er of our Lord DClxxix, ferst graunted to Rome, for þe scole of Englonð ther to be continued. And in this same 3er þere fill so mich rayne in hey-tyme, that it wasted<sup>4</sup> & 16 distroyed boþe corn & hey; and *per* was suche a debate & fightyng of sparrows, by diuers places in thes<sup>5</sup> dayes, that men founden vnnumerable multitudes of hem dede in felde as þey wenten. And ther fill also such a pestilens, that neuere non such was sene in no<sup>6</sup> 20 mannes tyme alyve<sup>7</sup>; for meny men, anone<sup>8</sup> as þey were go to bed hool<sup>9</sup> & in good poynt,<sup>10</sup> sodeinly þey deiden. also þat tyme a sikenes þat men callen 'þe pokkes,' slow boþe men and whynmen, þour; hire enfectyng. ¶ and in þe xli. 3er of his regne<sup>11</sup> King 24 Edward, was bore at Burdeux Richard the seconde, <sup>12</sup>sone of Prins Edward of Englonð, þe whiche Richard<sup>13</sup> King Richard of Amoricane heved at þe funtston, after whom he was cleped Richard. & þis same Richard, whan his fader was dede, & Kyng Edward 28 also, was crowned Kyng of Englonð þe xj 3ere of his age, thurgh ryght lyne & heritage, & also by *commune* assent & desir of þe connalte of þe reaume.

[*With Du Guesclin's help King Pedro of Spain is deposed, and King Henry elected, A.D. 1366.*]

¶ About þis tyme, at King Edwardes commandement of 32 Englonð, whan al þe castelles & tounes were 3olde to him, that

<sup>1</sup> þe *om.* TR.    <sup>2</sup> lete *om.* R.    <sup>3</sup> And from T. And fro R.

<sup>4</sup> lasted T.    <sup>5</sup> Tho T.    <sup>6</sup> no *om.* R.    <sup>7</sup> on lyue T.

<sup>8</sup> anone *om.* R.    <sup>9</sup> hool T.    <sup>10</sup> point anon R.    <sup>11</sup> his regne *om.* TR.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 189, back.    <sup>13</sup> Richard was C. Richard TR.

long<sup>1</sup> weren hold in Fraunce by a grete coumpany assembled togider, Sere Bertram Cleykyn, knyzt, and<sup>2</sup> a<sup>3</sup> orpid man & a good werreour, went & purposid hym to put out Piers, Kyng of Spayne, out of his kingdome wiþ help of þe most partye of þe forsaille grete<sup>4</sup> cumpanye; trustyng also oppon help & fauour of þe Pope, for as myche as hit come to his eres that þe same Piers shold lede & vse the most<sup>5</sup> worst & synfullest lyf out.<sup>6</sup> ¶ The wiche Peris, King of Spayne, ysmytyn<sup>7</sup> with drede of this tydyng, fled into Gascoigne to Prins Edward, forto haue help & socour<sup>8</sup> of hym. and whan<sup>9</sup> he was fled out of Spayne, Herry his broþer, þat was a bastarde, by assent of þe moste partie of Spayne, & þorughe help of þat ferfull cumpany þat y spak of arst, was made & crowned Kyng of Spayne: and þe noumbre of þat same cumpany was rekened &<sup>10</sup> set at þe noumbre of lx. M<sup>†</sup> fighting men.

[*A Danish Expedition against England.*]

¶ This same ȝere, in þe monþe of Iuyn, þere come a gret<sup>16</sup> companye & nauee of þe Danes, & gaderyd hem togedir in þe Norþ See, purposyng hem to come into Engeland, to reue & to<sup>11</sup> robbe, and also to<sup>11</sup> slee; with<sup>12</sup> whom, countreden & metten in þe see, Maryners and oper orpyd fightyng men of the same cuntre, &<sup>13</sup> disparpeld hem<sup>14</sup>; & þey,<sup>15</sup> ashamed, went home aȝen into her owne cuntre. But amonge al opere was<sup>16</sup> a boystous and a strong vessell of her nauie that was ouere-sayled of the<sup>17</sup> Englissh men, & was perisshid & dreynt; in þe whiche, þe stiward & oper worthy &<sup>24</sup> grete men of Denmark, were take prisoners, &, by the Kyng of Engeland & his counsell, yprisoned.<sup>18</sup> ¶ The whiche lordes, þe Danes afterward comen & soghten<sup>19</sup> al about for to haue had<sup>20</sup> her goodes þat þei had lost; and þei, not wel apayed ne plesid of<sup>28</sup> þe answere þat þei had here,<sup>21</sup> turned homwardes<sup>22</sup> aȝen leuyng behind hem in her ynnues, pryvyly ywriten,<sup>23</sup> in scrowes and on walles, “Ȝet<sup>24</sup> shall Danos þes Wanes.” Than happed þere an Englissh writer &<sup>25</sup> wrote aȝens þe Danes in þis manere wyse: *Her*  
*32 shall Danes fett<sup>26</sup> banes.*

<sup>1</sup> long *om.* TR.    <sup>2</sup> and *om.* TR.    <sup>3</sup> an TR.    <sup>4</sup> grete *om.* R.

<sup>5</sup> most *om.* R.    <sup>6</sup> out *om.* R.    <sup>7</sup> ysmytyn *om.* T.

<sup>8</sup> socoure and help T.    socour and help R.    <sup>9</sup> whan *om.* T.

<sup>10</sup> rekened & *om.* T.    <sup>11</sup> to *om.* R.    <sup>12</sup> *leaf* 190.    <sup>13</sup> and thei T.

<sup>14</sup> hem *om.* T.    <sup>15</sup> þey *om.* T.    <sup>16</sup> þer was R.    <sup>17</sup> the *om.* T.

<sup>18</sup> prisoned T.    <sup>19</sup> sente R.    <sup>20</sup> had with C.    had TR.

<sup>21</sup> þei T.    here *om.* R.    <sup>22</sup> hoorn R.    <sup>23</sup> writen R.    <sup>24</sup> þe T.

<sup>25</sup> & *om.* R.    <sup>26</sup> sette her TR.

[*The deposed King Pedro of Spain appeals to the Black Prince for help.*]

And in þis tyme, Peirs, Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Spayne, with oþer Kynges, þat is forto sey, þe King of Nauerne, &<sup>2</sup> þe King of Malogre, beyng menes, wenten bitwene, & prayed counceyl<sup>3</sup> & help of Sere Edward, þe Prins þoneȝ, whose counceil, whan he had vnderstonð 4 her articles & desire þat he was requyred of ij.<sup>4</sup> kinges, lothe he was, and ashamed, to sey 'nay,' & contrarie hem; but nopeles he was agast lest it sholde be eny preiudice azens þe Pope.<sup>5</sup> Long he taried hem or he wolde graunte & consente þerto, til he had better 8 counceyl & aysement with good deliberacioun of King Edward, his geter and<sup>6</sup> his fader. ¶ But whan þat<sup>7</sup> he was with euery dayes & continuele bysechynges of so meny noble men yrequired<sup>8</sup> & spoken to, & wiþ meny prayers ysent<sup>9</sup> and made bituene þam, 12 Prins Edward sent to his fader—hoþe by pleynnyng lettres, and also by confortable, conteynnyng al her suggestions and causes, wiþ al þe toþer<sup>10</sup> Kynges epistles & lettres forto haue<sup>11</sup> comfort and helpe of þe wronges, not only to þe Kyng of Spayne ydo, but also for 16 such þinges þat might fal to oþere kynges also, if it ner not þe sonner holpen & amendid, þurgh þe dome & help of knyghthood to hem that it asked & desired. ¶ The which lettres, whan þe kyng and his wys counceyll had seyn & vndirstonden, he had grete 20 compassioun & heynesse of such a kynges spoylyng and robbyng, wiþ myche vermaille<sup>12</sup>; and sent aȝen comfortable letteres to Prins Edward, his sone, and to þe oþere forsaide kynges, & warned hym forto arme hym & ordeigne hym aȝens þat mysdoer, & to wiþstonð 24 hem, by þe help of God, that weren such enemies to kynges.

[*The Black Prince undertakes to help the King of Spain.*]

¶ Whan this<sup>13</sup> noble Prynȝ had resceyued þes letteres, hym-self, wiþ þe oþere kynges byfor all her counceyll clept togeder or þat he wold vndirtake þe querell be<sup>14</sup> bonde, & knet sore þe King þat was 28 deposid wiþ a grete othe, þat is forto sey, þat he shold euere after maynteigne the ryȝt byleue and faith of holi chirche, & holy chirche<sup>15</sup> also wiþ al her mynistres, rightes & libertees, to defende from all her enemies; and all eueles<sup>16</sup> & al þat were þere aȝens, 32

<sup>1</sup> kyng *om.* T.

<sup>2</sup> & *om.* R.

<sup>3</sup> of counseil T.

<sup>4</sup> þe TR.

<sup>5</sup> pope and T.

<sup>6</sup> his geter & *om.* TR.

<sup>7</sup> þat *om.* TR.

<sup>8</sup> required T.

<sup>9</sup> sent T.

<sup>10</sup> oþer R.

<sup>11</sup> leaf 190, back.

<sup>12</sup> mervail R.

<sup>13</sup> þe R.

<sup>14</sup> he R.

<sup>15</sup> & holy chirche *om.* R.

<sup>16</sup> & all eueles *om.* TR.

bytterly to ponyssne & destourble, & al þe rightes libertees & pryuyleges of holy cherche encrece, mayntaigne & amende, & al pinges þat were wrongfully benome, wipdrawe & bore away, by hym  
 4 or by eny opere by cause of hym, hastily to restore aȝen, and to dryve & put out Sarazins & al opere mysbyleued peple out of his kyngdom, wip al his strenghe & power, & suffre ne admitte none such for no manere þing, ne cause to duell theryn; and þat whan he  
 8 had take a cristen womman to wyf, he shold neuere come in to<sup>1</sup> non oper wommans bedde, ne non opere mannes wyf to<sup>2</sup> defoule: al þes<sup>3</sup> forsaiðe pinges, trewlych forto kepe,<sup>4</sup> continue & fulfill al his lyf tyme, he was bound by othe afor notaries, in presence and witnes  
 12 of tho kynges wip opere prins, & þan thilk<sup>5</sup> gracious Prins Edward vndertoke þe cause & þe querele of þe King þat was deposed, & behight hym, with<sup>6</sup> þe<sup>7</sup> grace of God, to restore hym aȝen to his kyngdome, and lete ordeigne & gadre to-gedir forthwip in all haste,  
 16 his nave, wip men of armes, to werre & fight in this forseid cause.

[*Fight of Eagles; Fall of Fiery Stars; Storms and Destruction.*]

¶ And in this same tyme, oppon þe sonde of the Scottyssh see, þat meny a man<sup>8</sup> hit sye ther<sup>9</sup> iij. dayes togedir þere were sene ij. Egleȝ, of þe which the tone<sup>10</sup> come out of þe southe, & þe toper<sup>11</sup>  
 20 out of<sup>12</sup> þe North, & cruelly & strongly þey foughten togider & warstled togider; & þe south Egle first ouercome the Northe egle, & al<sup>13</sup> to-rent and tare hym wip his bille & his clowes, þat he shold not reste ne take no breþe; and aftir, the south egle flye home to  
 24 his owne coostes. and anone after, þere folowed & was seyn in þe<sup>14</sup> morne afore þe<sup>15</sup> sunne rysing; and after, in<sup>16</sup> þe last day of Octobre saf on, þat<sup>17</sup> meny sterres gaderid togedir on an hepe fel down into þe erpe, levyng behind hem fery<sup>18</sup> bemes in manere of  
 28 lightnyng, whos flaumes & hete brent & consumed mennys clopes & mennys here, walkyng on þe erpe, as hit was seen & knowen of meny a man. ¶ and ȝet thilk Northren wynd, that is euere redy & destinat to all evell fro Seynt Katerins even til iij. dayes aftir, lost  
 32 good wipoute nombre vnrecouerable. and in þese same dayes þer fill & comen also such lightnynges, pundres, snowe & hayl, þat hit wastede and destroyed men, bestes, houses and trees.

<sup>1</sup> in TR.    <sup>2</sup> to om. R.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 191.    <sup>4</sup> be kept R.    <sup>5</sup> þat R.  
<sup>6</sup> hym with om. T.    <sup>7</sup> bi the T.    <sup>8</sup> a man om. T.    <sup>9</sup> it saw R.  
<sup>10</sup> that oon T.    <sup>11</sup> þat on R.    <sup>12</sup> that opere T.    <sup>13</sup> þat opere com off R.  
<sup>14</sup> al om. T.    <sup>15</sup> in the T.    <sup>16</sup> in þe R.    <sup>17</sup> om. C.    <sup>18</sup> þe om. R.  
<sup>16</sup> in om. R.    <sup>17</sup> þat om. R.    <sup>18</sup> very R.

Of þe bataill of Spayne bituene Prins Edward & Henry þe  
Bastard of Spayne. *Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup> xxxiiij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>1</sup>

[I]n þe 3er of our Lord a M<sup>t</sup>CCC. lxvij, & of Kyng Edward xliij., þe thrid day of <sup>2</sup>Aprill, þer was a strong bataill & a 4 grete, in a large felde yclept<sup>3</sup> Pryazers, fast by þe water of Nazers in Spayne, bituene Sir<sup>4</sup> Edward Pryns,<sup>5</sup> & Harry, þe Bastarde of Spayne; but þe victorie fill to Pryns Edwarde, by þe grace of God. & þis same Prins Edward had with hym Sere John, þe Duke of 8 Lancastre, his broþer, and worpi oþer<sup>6</sup> men of armes, aboute þe noubre of xxx. M<sup>t</sup>. And þe King of Spayne had on<sup>7</sup> his side, men of diuerce nacions, to þe noubre of a<sup>8</sup> C. M<sup>t</sup>. & passyng. ¶ Wherfore þe sharpnes & þe fersnes of his aduersarye, wiþ his 12 ful boystus & ful<sup>9</sup> grete strengthe, made &<sup>10</sup> strevyn<sup>11</sup> þe ryztfull partye abak a gret wey; but þurgh þe grace of Almyȝty God, passyng eny mannys strengthe, thilk hougest ooste was desparbled myghtfully by þe noble Duk of Lancastre and his oste, or þat Pryns 16 Edward come nye hym. ¶ And whan Harry þe Bastard sey þat, he turned wiþ his men,<sup>12</sup> wiþ so grete haste and strengthe, to fle, þat an honge cumpanye of him in þe forseyd flood, & of þe brigge þer-of,<sup>13</sup> fillen<sup>14</sup> down<sup>15</sup> & perished. and þere were take, þe Erl of 20 Dene and Sere Bertram Cleykyn, þat was chefe<sup>16</sup> maker and cause of the werre, and also chyueteyn of þe vauntward of þe bataill, wiþ meny oþer lordes and knyghtes, to þe noubre of ij. M<sup>t</sup>; of whom ij<sup>c</sup> weren of Fraunce, & meny of Scotlond; & þere were feld in þe 24 felde on our enemys side, of lordes and knyȝtes, with opere mene peple, to þe noubre of vj M<sup>t</sup> & mo; and of Englissh men but a fewe. ¶ And after þis, þat noble Prins Edward restored þe same Piers into his kingdom aȝen. þe whiche Piers afterward, pourȝ 28 trecherye & falsnes of þe forsaid Bastarde of Spayne as he sate atte þe table, he was strangled and deyde. but after þis victorye, meny noble and hardy men of Engeland, in Spayne, pourȝ the flix & odir diuers siknesses, toke her dethe.

32

& in þis same <sup>17</sup>3er in Marche,<sup>18</sup> was seyn 'Stella Comata' bituene þe North costes & þe west, whos bemes strecched toward Fraunce. and in þe 3er next sewyng of King Edwardes regne

<sup>1</sup> *Capitulo CC<sup>o</sup> T. CCxxxiiij R.*    <sup>2</sup> leaf 191, back.    <sup>3</sup> clept TR.

<sup>4</sup> sir om. R.    <sup>5</sup> bituene Prince Edward T.    þe Prins R.

<sup>6</sup> and oþer worthi R.    <sup>7</sup> in R.    <sup>8</sup> an T.    <sup>9</sup> ful om. R.

<sup>10</sup> made & om. R.    <sup>11</sup> droof T.    dryuen R.    <sup>12</sup> wiþ his men om. TR.

<sup>13</sup> þer of om. R.    <sup>14</sup> fil a T.    <sup>15</sup> A downe T.    <sup>16</sup> chefe om. T.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 192.    <sup>18</sup> in Marche om. T.

xliij., in Aprill, *Sere Leonell*, Kyng Edwardes sone, *pat* was duk of Clarence, went towarde Myleyn, *with* a chose meyne of þe gentils of Englonð, forto wedde Galoys douȝter,<sup>1</sup> and haue her to wyf, by  
 4 whom he shold haue half<sup>2</sup> þe Lordship of Mileyn. But after *pat* þey were solempnly wedded, the<sup>3</sup> same Duke, about þe Natiuite of our Lady deid.<sup>4</sup> & in þe same ȝere þe Frensshe men breken þe pees & the trewes, ryding on þe Kinges ground and lordship of  
 8 Englonð, in þe shire & cuntre of Pountyf, & taken & helden castls & tounes, & bere þe Englysshe men on hond falsly<sup>5</sup> & sotilly,<sup>6</sup> *pat* þey were cause of breking of þe<sup>7</sup> truw. And in þis same ȝere deyð þe Duchesse<sup>8</sup> of Lancastre, & is beryed worschipfully in<sup>9</sup> Seynt  
 12 Poules Cherche.<sup>10</sup>

[*A Great Pestilence, A.D. 1369.*]

¶ The xliij ȝere of King Edward regne, was þe grete pestilens of men and of grete beestes; and by grete fallyng of wateres *pat* fill *pat* tyme, *per* fill grete hyndryng & destroyeng of corn, in so  
 16 mych *pat* þe next ȝere after, a busshele whete<sup>11</sup> was solde for xl d. and about þe laste ende of May, Kyng Edward held his parlement at *Westminster*; in þe whiche *parlement* was treted & spoken of þe ope & þe<sup>12</sup> trewes *pat* was broke bituene hem and þe King of  
 20 Fraunce, & how he myȝte best oppon his wrong be avenged. ¶ In þis same ȝer, in þe Assumpcion of our Lady, deid<sup>13</sup> Qwene Philippe of Englonð, a ful noble and good woman; & at *Westminster* ful worschipfully is buried & entered.

24 And about Missomere, þe Duke of Lancastre & þe Erle of Herford, wiþ a grete cumpanye of kniȝtes, wenten into Fraunce, wher þey gete hem but a litell worship and name<sup>14</sup>; for *per* was an houghe oste of Frenssh men oppon<sup>15</sup> Chalkhul brigge,<sup>16</sup> & anoper oste<sup>17</sup>  
 28 of Englysshe men faist by þe same brigge,<sup>16</sup> *pat* longe tyme had leyn þere; and meny worþy men & grete of þe<sup>18</sup> Englysshe men ordeyned & ȝaf counceyll forto fight & ȝeue bataill to þe Frensh men; but þe forsaide lordes wolde noþing<sup>19</sup> consente *þerto*, ne assent,<sup>20</sup> for no  
 32 manere þing. ¶ Ther anon after, hit happid *pat* þe Erl of Warwyke come pedirward forto werre; & whan þe Frenshmen herde

<sup>1</sup> Galeys þe Dukis sister of Mileyne R.      <sup>2</sup> þe half R.      <sup>3</sup> *pat* T.<sup>4</sup> he died T.      <sup>5</sup> men falsly on honde T.      *pat* falsli R.<sup>6</sup> sotilly *om.* T.      <sup>7</sup> þe *om.* R.      <sup>8</sup> Duke T.      <sup>9</sup> at T.<sup>10</sup> chirche at London R.      <sup>11</sup> of whete T.      <sup>12</sup> and of the T.<sup>13</sup> died the T.      <sup>14</sup> and name *om.* R.      <sup>15</sup> *leaf* 192, back.<sup>16-16</sup> & anoper oste . . . brigge *om.* R.      <sup>17</sup> oste *om.* T.      <sup>18</sup> þe *om.* T.<sup>19</sup> not R.      <sup>20</sup> ne assent *om.* R.

of his comynge, or þat pey<sup>1</sup> come fully to londe, pey left her tentis and pavilons, wip al hir vetayles, & fledden<sup>2</sup> and wenten away pre-veyly. And whan þe Erl was come to londe wip his men, he wente in al has[t]<sup>3</sup> into<sup>4</sup> Normandy, and distroyede þe Ile of Cavs, pourz<sup>5</sup> 4 dent of suerde & pourz fire; but alas, in his returnyng into<sup>6</sup> Eng-land-warde home aȝen, at Caleys he was take with siknes of pestil- lence, & deide, nowt lewyng behynde him, after his dayes, non<sup>6</sup> so noble a kniȝt, ne so<sup>7</sup> orpid of armes. ¶ In whiche tyme rayned<sup>8</sup> 8 and werred thilk orpid kniȝt, Sere Iohn Hawkwode, þat was an Engliſshman born, hauyng with hym at<sup>8</sup> his gouernance pilk white cumpanye þat ys abore<sup>9</sup> ynnemned, þe whiche were<sup>10</sup> o tyme aȝens holy chirche, and anoper tyme aȝens lordes werryng, & ordeynede<sup>12</sup> 12 gret batailes; & þer in þat cuntre he dede many mervayles þingeȝ.

And aboute þe Conuersion of Seynt Poule, King Edward, whan he had ȝended and done þe entering and þe<sup>11</sup> exequites, wip grete costes and rialtees, aboute þe tombe<sup>12</sup> & buryng of Quene<sup>16</sup> 16 Phillip his<sup>13</sup> wif, he held his parlement at Westminster. In þe whiche parlement was axed of þe clergie a iij. ȝers disme, þat is forto sey, a gret dime to be paid .iij. ȝer duryng; and the clergie put hit of, and wolde not graunte hit vnto Ester next comyng; <sup>20</sup> 20 & þan pey graunted wele þat in iij ȝere, by certeyne termes, þat disme<sup>14</sup> 14 shold be payed; & also of þe lay fee, was a iij. ȝers xv. ygraunted to þe King.

**Hov sir Robert Knollis, wip oper certeyne<sup>15</sup> lordes of þe** 24  
reaume,<sup>16</sup> wente ouere þe see into Fraunce; & of here  
gouernaunce. *Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup>. xxxiiij<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>17</sup>

**A**nd in þe xlv ȝere of King Edward, in þe bygenyng, King 28  
Edward, wip owne-wise<sup>18</sup> counceyll and vndescret, borwed a grete summe of gold of þe prelatis and lordes, Marchauntes and oper riche men of þe<sup>19</sup> 29 reaume, saynge þat hit sholde be spende in deffendyng of holy cherehe & of his reaume; but neuer þe latter hit profited hit<sup>20</sup> 30 not. Wherefore about Midsomer after, þe king<sup>32</sup> 32 made a grete oste of þe worthiest men of his reaume, amonges whom were somme lordes, þat is forto seyn, þe Lord Fitzwater,

<sup>1</sup> he TR.    <sup>2</sup> fledde pennez R.    <sup>3</sup> haste T.    <sup>4</sup> haste toward R.

<sup>5</sup> to TR.    <sup>6</sup> non om. R.    <sup>7</sup> knyght and TR.

<sup>8</sup> and at TR.    <sup>9</sup> afore R.    <sup>10</sup> were om. TR.    <sup>11</sup> þe om. R.

<sup>12</sup> sepulchre TR.    <sup>13</sup> his wif T.    his wif R.    wif om. C.

<sup>14</sup> leaf 193.    <sup>15</sup> certeyne om. R.    <sup>16</sup> of þe reaume om. TR.

<sup>17</sup> CC<sup>o</sup> T.    CC xxxv R.    <sup>18</sup> with vnwis R.    <sup>19</sup> his TR.

<sup>20</sup> hit om. TR.



þe Lord Gromson, and oper worpi kniȝtes, of whiche kniȝtes þe King<sup>1</sup> ordeyned Sere Robert Knollis, a proved kniȝt and wel assayed in dede of armes, forto be *gouernour*; and þat, þourȝ his 4 *gouernance* and counceyll, al þing sholde be *gouerned* & dressid. and whan þey come into *Fraunce*, as long as þey duelled and helde him hole togider, þe *Frensshmen* þorust<sup>2</sup> nout falle oppon hym. & at þe<sup>3</sup> laste, aboute þe bigynnyng of *wenter*, for enuye and covetyse<sup>4</sup> 8 þat was amonges ham, and also discorded, þey sunddered & partyd him into diuers companyes, vnwysely & follely. But Sere Robert Knollis & his men wenten and kepten ham saf<sup>5</sup> wipinne a Castel in *Britaigne*. & whan þe *frenshe* men saw þat our men were 12 deuyded into diuers companyes & places, nouȝt holdyng ne strengyng ham togeders, as þey awȝte forto done, þey fel fersly on our men, & for þe moste *partey*<sup>6</sup> token ham & slowen<sup>6</sup>; and þo þat þey toke, ledde wip him *presoners*. ¶ And in þe same ȝere 16 Pope Vrban come fro Rome to *Avyoun*, for enchesoun & cause þat he shold acorde and make pees bytwene þe King of *Fraunce* and þe King of *Engelonde* for euermore; but alas, <sup>7</sup>or he bygan þis tretis, he deide wip sikenes, þe xxj day of *Decembre*, & was 20 yburied<sup>8</sup> as for þe tyme in þe cathedral chereh of *Avyon*, fast by þe hye<sup>9</sup> auter. & þe next ȝere after, whan he had leyn so, his bones were taken out of þe erþe, and beryed new in þe abbey of Seynt Victour, fast by *Mareyle*, of þe whiche abbey he was sumtyme 24 abbot hymself.<sup>10</sup> & in boþe places þat he was buried yn, ther<sup>11</sup> bene meny grete miracles done and wroght, thurgh þe *grace* of God, to meny a mannes help, and to þe worship of God. After whom folowed next, & was made Pope Gregore Cardynall, dekene, 28 þat bifore was clept Piers Rogier.

[*The Black Prince takes Limoges, and comes back to England.*]

¶ In this same ȝere þe Citee of *Lymage* rebelled and faght aȝens þe Pryns, as opere Citees in *Guyene* dede, for grete taxes, costages & raunsoms, þat þey wer put-yn and ysette<sup>12</sup> to<sup>13</sup> by Prins Edward, 32 þe whiche charges were unportable, & to chargeable; wherfor þey turned fro him, & fill to þe King of *Fraunce*, & whan Pryns Edward sawe þis, he was sore ychaufed<sup>14</sup> & ygrevyd; and in turnyng

<sup>1</sup> the kyng TR. the om. C.      <sup>2</sup> durest R.      <sup>3</sup> þe om. TR.

<sup>4</sup> and covetyse om. TR.      <sup>5</sup> self R.

<sup>6-6</sup> token hem or slowen hem T. or slowen ham R.      <sup>7</sup> leaf 193, back.

<sup>8</sup> buried TR.      <sup>9</sup> hye om. R.      <sup>10</sup> hymself om. R.      <sup>11</sup> ther om. T.

<sup>12</sup> sette T.      <sup>13</sup> to om. T.      <sup>14</sup> chaufed R.

homward azen to Engelond, *with* sore skyrmisshes & fightyng and grete<sup>1</sup> assautes, fought<sup>2</sup> *with* hem, & toke þe forsaid Citee, & destroyed hit almost to þe<sup>3</sup> grounde, and slow al þat were<sup>4</sup> founde in þe Citee.<sup>4</sup> And þan, forto sey þe sothe, for diuers siknesses and 4 maladies þat he had, and also for defaute of money þat he myght not wipstande ne tarie on his enemys, he hyed hym azen into Engelond. And about þe bygynnyng of Januarij he come into Engelond *with* his wyf and his meyne, levyng behind him in Gas- 8 coigne þe Duk of Lancastre & Sere Edmund,<sup>5</sup> Erl of Caumbrigge, *with* opere worpy and orpid men of armes.

¶ In þe xlvj zere of King Edward, at þe ordinance & sendyng of King Edward, þe King of Nauern come to hym to Claryngdoun, 12 to trete wip ham of certeyn pinges touching his werre<sup>6</sup> in Normandy, wher King Edward had left<sup>7</sup> certen seges in his stede til he come azen; but King Edward myghten not spede of þat þat he asked of hym; and so þe King of Nauerne, *with* grete worshup & grete 16 zeftes, toke his leue, & wente home azen. And about þe begynnyng of Marche, whan þe parlement at Westminster was bygumme; þe King axed of þe clergie a subsidie of L. M<sup>t</sup> ti,<sup>8</sup> þe whiche, by a<sup>9</sup> good avisement & by a general conuocacioun of þe clergie, hit was 20 ygraunted<sup>10</sup> & yordeyned<sup>11</sup> þat hit shold be payede & reised of þe lay fee. And in þis parlement, at þe requeste & axyng of þe lordes, in hatered of men of holy chirche, þe Chaunceler & tho þat were Bisshopes, þe Tresorer & þe Clerk of þe Pryue Sele, were remeued 24 & put out of hire office, & in hire stedes were seculer men put yn. And while þis parlement laste, *per* comen solempne ambassiatours, ysent<sup>12</sup> fro þe Pope to trete wip þe King, of pees, & saiden þat þe Pope desired to fullfille his predecessours will; but for al hir 28 comyng þey spedden not of hir purpos.

**Of þe sege of Rochell, & hov þe Erl of Penbroke was taken of þe Spaynardez. Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup> xxxv<sup>o</sup>.<sup>13</sup>**

The ix day of Juyn, King Edward, in þe xlvj zere of his regne, 32 helde his parlement at Wynechestre; & hit lasted but viij. dayes; to þe<sup>14</sup> parlement was sompned by wryt, of men of holy chirche, iiij. bisshopes & <sup>15</sup> iiij. abbotes, wipoute eny mo. This parlement

<sup>1</sup> and grete *om.* R.

<sup>2</sup> fightyng santis foughten T.

<sup>3</sup> þe *om.* T.

<sup>4-4</sup> founde þerynne R.

<sup>5</sup> Iohn TR.

<sup>6</sup> leaf 194.

<sup>7</sup> lost R.

<sup>8</sup> 1 Ml pound T.

<sup>9</sup> a *om.* R.

<sup>10</sup> graunted R.

<sup>11</sup> ordeyned R.

<sup>12</sup> sent R.

<sup>13</sup> CC<sup>o</sup> T.

CC xxxvj R.

<sup>14</sup> þis R.

<sup>15</sup> & *om.* T.

was<sup>1</sup> holden for Marchauntis of London, of Norwych, & of oþer diuers places, in diuers þinges and poyntes of tresoun þat þey were diffamed of, þat is forto sey, þat þey were rebelle, & wolde<sup>2</sup> rise  
4 aȝens þe King.

¶ This same ȝere þe Duk of Lancastre and þe Erl of Caumbrigge, his broþer, comen out of Gascoigne into Englonð, & token & weddid to hir wyues Petres doghters, sumtyme King of Spayne; of  
8 which <sup>3</sup>ij douȝters þe Duke had þe elder,<sup>4</sup> and þe Erl þe ȝonger. And þe<sup>5</sup> same tyme þer were sent ij Cardinals fro þe Pope, þat is to sey, an Engliſsh Cardinal, & a Cardinal of Parius, to trete of pees bytwene tho ij. reaumes, þe which, whan þey had ben boþe longe  
12 eche in his province, & in places & cuntres fast by, tretyng of þe forſaid pees, at þe laſt þey toke wip hem her lettres of procuraeye, & went aȝen to þe court of Romeward,<sup>6</sup> wipoute eny effecte of hir purpos. ¶ In þis ȝere also þere was a ſtronge bataill on þe ſee  
16 bytwene Engliſsh men & Flemmynges; & þe Engliſsh men had þe victorye, & toke xxv. ſhippes ycharged<sup>7</sup> wip ſalt, ſleyng & drenchyng al þe men þat were þerin, vnwytyng hem þat þey weren of þat cunte. and redily mych harme had fall by cauſe<sup>8</sup> þerof,  
20 ne had pees þe<sup>9</sup> ſonner be made bitwene hem. and in þis ſame ȝer þe Frenſſh men byſeged þe toun of þe<sup>10</sup> Rochell, wherfor þe Erle of Penbrok was ſent into Gaſcoigne with a grete companye of men of armes, forto deſtroye þe ſege; þe which paſſeden þe<sup>11</sup> ſee,  
24 & comen ſafe to<sup>12</sup> þe haven of Rochell. and whan þey were þere at þe haven moupe, or þat<sup>13</sup> þey myght entre, ſodenly comen oppon hem a ſtrong naue of Spayne, þe whiche ouercomen þo<sup>14</sup> þe Engliſsh men, in mych blemyschyng, hurtyng & ſleyng of many  
28 perſones, for as miche as þe Englyſſe men were not þan redy forto fight, ne ware of hem. & in þis comyng oppon<sup>15</sup> of þe Spaynardes, all þe Engliſsh men, eyþer þey were take or ſlayn; & x. of hem were wonded to þe dethe; & all her ſhippes ybrent.<sup>16</sup> ¶ And þere<sup>17</sup>  
32 þey token þe Erle, with an houghe treſour of þe reaume<sup>18</sup> of Englonð, & many oþer noble men alſo, on Miſſomer eve, þe whiche is ſeynt Mildredes day, &<sup>19</sup> led den hem wip<sup>20</sup> him into Spayne. And of þis myſſhif was no grete wonder, for þis Erle was a ful euel lyuer, as

<sup>1</sup> was maad and T.    <sup>2</sup> wolde om. T.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 194, back.

<sup>4</sup> elder TR.    Erle C.    <sup>5</sup> þat TR.    <sup>6</sup> ward om. R.    <sup>7</sup> charged TR.

<sup>8</sup> bycause om. R.    <sup>9</sup> þe pece T.    <sup>10</sup> þe om. T.    <sup>11</sup> in þe T.

<sup>12</sup> vnto T.    into R.    <sup>13</sup> þat om. T.    <sup>14</sup> þo om. T.    <sup>15</sup> on T.

<sup>16</sup> brent R.    <sup>17</sup> þere om. T.    <sup>18</sup> of þe reaume om. T.    <sup>19</sup> þei T.

<sup>20</sup> hem wip om. R.

an opyn lechour; & also in a <sup>1</sup> certeyne parlement he stood and was azens þe <sup>2</sup> riȝtes & þe fraunche of holy chirche<sup>2</sup>; and also he counceyled þe King and his counceyle,<sup>3</sup> þat he shold axe more of men of holy chirch þan of *oper persones* of þe lay fee. ¶ And for <sup>4</sup> þe King & *opere* of his counceyl axcepted & token raper evell opynions & causis azens men of holy chirch, þan he dede forto fende & maynteyne þe riȝt of holy chirch, hit was sen in <sup>5</sup> many tymes after, þourgh lakkyng of fortune and <sup>6</sup> grace, þey had not ne <sup>7</sup> here away so <sup>8</sup> grete victorye ne power azens hir enemyns as þey dede byfore.

þis same ȝere, þe King, wiþ a grete ostee, entred þe see to remeve þe sege of <sup>9</sup> Rochell; but þe wynd was euen contrarye to <sup>10</sup> hem, and suffred hem<sup>11</sup> not longe tyme to <sup>12</sup> goo fer fro þe londe. Wherefore he abode a certeyne time oppon þe see costes, abyding after a good wynde for him; and ȝet come hit not. So at þe <sup>13</sup> laste he come þens wiþ his men to londeward aȝen; and anon as he was <sup>14</sup> <sup>15</sup> londe, þe wynde bygan turne,<sup>16</sup> and was in anoþer coste þen he was byfore.

**Hov þe Duk of <sup>17</sup> Lancastre, with a grete oste, went into Flaundres,<sup>18</sup> & passed by Parys, þoru; Burgoyne. Capitulo 20**  
CC<sup>mo</sup> xxxvj<sup>o</sup>.<sup>19</sup>

**S**one<sup>20</sup> after, in þe xlviii ȝere of King Edward, þe Duk of Lancastere, wiþ a grete oste, wente into Floundres, and passid by Parys, þour; Burgoyne, & þour; alle Fraunce, til he come to <sup>21</sup> Burdeux, wiþoute eny manere wiþstonddyng of þe Frenshe men. & he dede him but litel harme, saf he toke and raunseued many places & townes, & meny<sup>22</sup> <sup>23</sup> men lette hem goon after<sup>24</sup> frely.

¶ The same ȝer þe King sent certeyne enbassetours to þe Pope, <sup>25</sup> praynge hem þat he sholde<sup>26</sup> leue of and melle-not<sup>27</sup> in his court of þe kepynges & reseruaciouns of benefices in Engelond; & þat þo þat were chose to biſshopes sees<sup>28</sup> & dingnites, frely & wiþ ful right myȝte<sup>29</sup> Ioye haue,<sup>30</sup> & be confermed. <sup>31</sup> Of her Metropolanes and <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> leaf 195.      <sup>2-2</sup> rightis of holi chirche and þe fraunchises T.

<sup>3</sup> and his counceyle *om.* TR.      <sup>4</sup> in *om.* R.

<sup>5-5</sup> grace for þey hadde neuer so R.      <sup>6</sup> at T.

<sup>7</sup> and suffred hem *om.* T. to him þat he myȝte not R.

<sup>8</sup> to *om.* R.      <sup>9</sup> þe *om.* T.      <sup>10</sup> at T. at þe R.      <sup>11</sup> to turne T.

<sup>12-12</sup> lancastre wente into flaudris with a greet hoost T.

<sup>13</sup> CC<sup>o</sup> T. CCxxxvij R.      <sup>14</sup> Anoon T. Anon R.      <sup>15</sup> meny *om.* T.

<sup>16-16</sup> men and after lete hem gone T. men and let ham affir go R.

<sup>17</sup> wolde T.      <sup>18</sup> and not medle TR.      <sup>19</sup> sees *om.* R.

<sup>20</sup> ful moche T. right myȝte R.      <sup>21</sup> haue TR. and haue C.

<sup>22</sup> leaf 195, back.

Erchebisshops, as þey were went to be of old tyme of þes poyntes, & of oþer toching þe Kinge and his reame. When þey hadden her answeere of þe Pope, þe Pope enioyned hem þat þey sholde  
4 certyfie hem azen by her letteres of þe Kinges wylle, and of his reame, or þat þey determened out<sup>1</sup> of þe forsaide articles.

¶ In this same 3er, deid John, þe Erchebisshop of 3ork, Iohn, bosship of Ely; William, bisship of Worsschestre, in whos stedes  
8 folweding, and were made bisship by þe<sup>2</sup> anctorite of þe Pope, Mayster Alexander Nevyle to þe Erchebysshoprich of 3ork, Thomas of Arundell to þe Bisshop<sup>3</sup> of Ely, & sere Herry Wakefeld to þe bysshoprich of Worcestre. In whiche tyme it was ordeyned in þe  
12 parlement þat all Cathedrall cherches shold ioi and haue her eleccions hool; & þat þe King, fro þat tyme afterward, sholde not write azens hem þat were ychosen,<sup>4</sup> but rather help ham by his lēttres to her confirmacioun. & this statut was kept, and dede  
16 myche profet & good; & in þis parlement was graunte to þe King a dysme of þe clergye, & a xv of þe lay fee.

¶ The 3ere next<sup>5</sup> after, of King Edward xlix, þe v. day of Iuyn, deid Mayster William Wytlessey, Erchebisshope of Caunter-  
20 bery. Wherfor þe monkes of þe same chirche asked & desired a Cardinall of Engelond to be Erchebisshop; and perfore þe King was agreued, & had ment and purposed to have exiled þe monkes of þe same hous<sup>6</sup>; & so þey<sup>7</sup> spendid mich good or þey myghte haue þe  
24 Kinges grace azen, & his loue; but 3et wold not þe King consente ne graunte to her eleccioun of þe Cardinall, ne þe Pope also, ne his Cardinals.

& about þe bygynnyng of August, it was tretid & spoken at  
28 Brugges of certeyn poyntes & articles hauyng bytwene þe Pope and þe King of Engelande; & pis tretis lasted almoste ij. 3ere. At þe<sup>8</sup> laste it was acorded bytwene ham, þat þe Pope, fro þat ty<sup>9</sup>me forþe, shold nout vse ne dele wiþ þe reseruacions of<sup>10</sup> benefices in Engeland; 32 and þat þe King shold not graunte ne lete no benefices by his wryt þat ys yclept<sup>11</sup> 'Quare impedit'; but as touchyng þe eleccions aboue seyd, þere was noþing touchid ne do; & þat was ywyted<sup>12</sup> & put oppon certeyn clerkes, the<sup>13</sup> whiche raper supposed & hoped<sup>14</sup>  
36 to be auanced & promoted to bysshopriches which<sup>15</sup> þey desired — & coneyted, by þe court of Rome pan by eny eleccions.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> ought T.    <sup>2</sup> þe om. TR.    <sup>3</sup> archebisshopriche R.    <sup>4</sup> chosen TR.

<sup>5</sup> nexte yeer R.    <sup>6</sup> chirche R.    <sup>7</sup> þey om. T.    <sup>8</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>9</sup> leaf 196.    <sup>10</sup> of þe R.    <sup>11</sup> clept TR.    <sup>12</sup> wyted R.    <sup>13</sup> the om. T.

<sup>14</sup> hoped & supposed R.    <sup>15</sup> with that T.    <sup>16</sup> þanne oþer wise R.

This same 3er about Candelmasse, þere comen & metten togider at Brugges, meny noble and worþy men of boþe reaumes, to treten of pees bituene þo ij. kingdomes. And this tretys lasted twey 3er, wiþ grete costes & honge spences of<sup>1</sup> boþe 4 parties; & at þe laste þey went & departed þens wiþout eny accorde or effecte.

¶ The next 3er after, þe xlix<sup>2</sup> 3er of Kyng Edward, þe iiij. None of Maii, beyng 3et void & vacaunt<sup>3</sup> þe Erchebisshop of 8 Caunterbury, Maister Symound Sudbury, Bysshop of London, was<sup>4</sup> made Erchebisshop of Caunterbury; & Maister Will. Courteneye, þat was Bisshop of Herford, was þan made Bysshop of London; & þe Bisshop of Bangor was made Bosship of Herford. 12

And in þis same tyme, in a certeyn tretys, & speking of pees, trews was take bytwene Fraunce & Engeland, fro<sup>5</sup> Missomere vnto Missomere come agen, al on hool 3er. ¶ And about the bygynnyng of Aprill, þe Duke of Brytayne, wiþ meny Erles,<sup>6</sup> barons, and 16 noble and<sup>7</sup> worþy men of Engeland, went ouere see<sup>8</sup> into Brytaine, wher he had al his lust, desire & purpos,<sup>9</sup> ne had þe forsaide trws be so sone ybrake,<sup>10</sup> þe whiche letted hem myche. This same tyme, þe Ile of Constantyn, wher þat the castell of Sent Sauour is yn, þat 20 longe tyme was fought at & byseged of þe Frenshe men,<sup>11</sup> was þan 3olden to þe Frenshemen,<sup>11</sup> wiþ al þe appurtenaunces, into grete harme & hyndryng of þe reaume of Engeland.

And þe<sup>12</sup> same 3er þere were so<sup>13</sup> grete & so passyng hetes, & 24 þerewiþal a grete pestilens in Engeland, & in oþer diuers parties of þe world, þat it destroyed & slow, violently & strongly, both men & wymmen without noumbre.

¶ This same 3er deid Sir Edward, þe lord Spencer, a worthy 28 knyzt and a bolod; & in þe Mynstre of Teukesbury worschipfully is buried.

& lastyng this pestilens, þe Pope, at þe instaunce & prayer of a<sup>14</sup> Englissh Cardinall, graunted to al þe peple þat deid in Engeland 32 þat weren sory and repentaunt for her synnes, & also shryven, ful remyssioun, by ij. bulles vnder lede, vj. monthes þan next to last.

In þis same 3er þe Erl of Penbrook was take & raunsened by<sup>15</sup> Bertram Cleykyn, bytwne Parys & Caleys, as he come towarde 36

<sup>1</sup> on T.    <sup>2</sup> TR.    <sup>3</sup> vacaunt & void R.

<sup>4</sup> london was T. london þey R.    <sup>5</sup> fro R. for C.    <sup>6</sup> erlis & R.

<sup>7</sup> noble and om. R.    <sup>8</sup> þe see T.    <sup>9</sup> purpos and desire R.

<sup>10</sup> ybrake T. take RC.    <sup>11-11</sup> was þan 3olden . . . men om. T.

<sup>12</sup> this TR.    <sup>13</sup> leaf 196, back.    <sup>14</sup> an T.    <sup>15</sup> bi for R.

Engelonde oppon Seint Etheldredis day ; þe whiche Seynt, as hit was said, þe same Erl oft tymes had offended ; & wiþin a while after, he deide. & in Noumbre<sup>1</sup> next after, þere metten at Brugges  
 4 þe Duke of Lancastre & þe Duke of Angeoy, wiþ meny oþer lordes & prelates of hoþe reaumes, forto trete of pees.

Of þe deþe of prins Edward, & of dame<sup>2</sup> Alys Perers, & Piers de la Mare. Capitulo CC xxxviii<sup>o</sup>.<sup>3</sup>

[*A Parliament held at Westminster, A.D. 1376. Alice Ferrers and Lord Latimer.*]

8 Not<sup>4</sup> longe after þe lj. 3ere of þe regnyng of King Edward, he lete ordeyned & holde his parlement at Westminster, þe grettest þat was sen meny 3ere afore. In þe whiche parlement, he axed of<sup>5</sup> Communaltee of þe reaume as he had done byfore, a grete subsede  
 12 to be graunted to hem, for defendyng of hem and of his reame ; but þe communes answered þat 'þey were so oft, day be day, ygreued & charged wiþ so meny talyage3 & subsidies, þat þey my3te  
 16 & wisten wel þat þe King had ynov for sauynge of hem & of his<sup>6</sup> reaume, yf þe reaume wher wel and trewly gouerned, but þat<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>it had be so long euel ygouerned<sup>9</sup> by euel officers, þat the reaume my3t neither<sup>10</sup> be plenteuous of Chaffare and merchaundise, ne  
 20 also wiþ<sup>11</sup> richesse : & þese þinge3 þey profered hem self, if þe King wold, certey[n]ly to preue & stonde by. and if it were found & proued after, þat þe King þan had nede, þey wold þen gladly, enery man, after his power and state, hem wold<sup>12</sup> helpe &  
 24 lene.'

¶ And after þis, þere were publisshed & shewed in þe parlement meny playntes & defautes of officers of<sup>13</sup> þe reaume, & namely of þe Lorde Latymer, þe Kinges Chamberlayn, of his euel gouer-  
 28 naunce, boþe<sup>14</sup> to þe King & eke to þe reame ; & at þe laste also þer<sup>15</sup> was tretid & spoken of Dame Alys Pereis, for þe grete<sup>16</sup> wronge3 & euel<sup>17</sup> gouernaunce þat was done by her & by her counceyl in þe reame ; þe whiche Dame Alys Perers, þe King had holde long  
 32 tyme to his lemman. Wherfor hit was þe lesse wonder thogh,

<sup>1</sup> MS. Noûbre.    <sup>2</sup> dame om. T.    <sup>3</sup> CC<sup>o</sup> T.    <sup>4</sup> Not TR. Bot C.  
<sup>5</sup> of þe R.    <sup>6</sup> þe R.    <sup>7</sup> þat om. R.    <sup>8</sup> leaf 197.    <sup>9</sup> gouerned TR.  
<sup>10</sup> neuer T.    <sup>11</sup> of R.    <sup>12</sup> wold om. R.    <sup>13</sup> diuers of R.  
<sup>14</sup> boþe om. R.    <sup>15</sup> þere it R.    <sup>16</sup> grete om. T.  
<sup>17</sup> yuyt T. euel R. wel C.

purgh þe freelte of þe wommannys exciting & her streyng, consentid to her lewednes & evell counceyll. ¶ The which Dame Alys, & also þe Lord Latymer, & also *oper*<sup>1</sup> such þat sterid þe King to evel gouernaunce, azens his profite & þe reaumes. also al þe *communalte* 4 of þe reame desired & asked þat þei shold be meved & done<sup>2</sup> away, & in her stedes, wyse men & worpy þat were trewe, & welle assayed & proued, and of good gouernaunce, shold be put in her stedes. ¶ So amonge all *opere*, þer was on among þe *communes* þat was a 8 wys knyzt, & a trewe, & an eloquent man, whos name was Piers de la Mare; & þis same Piers was chosen to be speker for the *communes* in þe parlement.<sup>3</sup> & for þis same<sup>4</sup> Piers told & publissed þe trewþe, & rehersed meny wronges azens þe forsaide Dame Alys, & 12 *oper* certeyne persones of þe Kinges counceyll, as he was bode by þe *communes*, & also trustyng mych forto be supported & maynteyned in þis mater by help & fauour of þe Pryns, anon as þe Pryns was dede, at þe instaunce and <sup>5</sup>request of þe forsaide Dame 16 Alys, þis Piers de La Mare was iugged to perpetual prisoun in þe Castell of Notynggham in þe whiche he was ij. 3ere. & þe vj. kalend of Iuyll, lastyng þat same parlement, deid Prens Edwardes ferst sone, þat is forto sey, in <sup>6</sup>Trynite Sounday; in þe worship of<sup>7</sup> 20 whiche feest he was wont euery 3ere, wher þat euere he were in þe worlde, to make & hold þe moost solemnyte þat he myght. ¶ Whos name & fortune of kniþthoode, but yf it had bene of an<sup>8</sup>*oper* Ectour, al men, both Christen & hepen, while he leuyd & 24 was in good poynt, wondred mych, & dred him wonder sore; whos body is worshipfully beryed at Crycherche of<sup>9</sup> Caunterbury.

And in þis same 3ere þe man & þe Erles tenauntes of Warwyk arisen maliciously azens þe Abbot & þe Covent of Euesham & her 28 tenauntes, & destroyeden fersly þe Abbot & þe toun, & wounded & bete her men, & slown of hem meny one, & wenten to her maners & places, & dede myche harme, & brekyn down her parkes & her closes, & brenten & slown her wild bestes, and chaced hem, 32 brekyng her fissespond hedis, & lete þe water of her pondes, stewes & ryuers, renne out; & token þe fissh, & bere it with hem, & deden hem al þe harme þat þey myzte. ¶ In so ferforth, þat forsope þey had be destroyed perpetuely, þat abbay,<sup>10</sup> wip all her 36 membres &<sup>11</sup> appurtenaunces, but yf þe King þe sonner had

<sup>1</sup> *oper om. R.*    <sup>2</sup> put R.    <sup>3</sup> in þe parlement *om. T.*    <sup>4</sup> same *om. R.*<sup>5</sup> *leaf 197, back.*    <sup>6</sup> on R.    <sup>7</sup> of þe R.    <sup>8</sup> of an<sup>8</sup>*oper om. T.*<sup>9</sup> in T.    <sup>10</sup> þat abbay *om. R.*    <sup>11</sup> & *om. T.*



holpen hit & taken heed *perto*. and *perfore* þe King sent his  
*lettres* to þe Erle of Warwyk, chargyng hym, & comaundyng, þat  
 he shulde stynt, redresse & amende the evel doers & brekers of his  
 4 pees. and so, by menyng of lordes & oþere frendes of boþe sides  
 pece<sup>1</sup> & good acorde & loue was made bytwene hem. ¶ And for  
 þis hurlyng, as hit was seyð, þe King wold not be gouerned at þat  
 tyme by his lordes þat *pere* were in þe *parlement*; <sup>2</sup>but he toke and  
 8 made his sone, þe Duk of Lancastre, his *gouernour* of þe reame;  
 the which stood so still *gouernour* til tyme þat he deide.

The same 3er, anon after Candelmasse, or the *parlement* was  
 done, the King axede a subsidie of the clergie and of þe lay fee,  
 12 and hit was graunted him, þat is forto seye, that he sholde haue of  
 euery persone of the lay fee, bothe of men and womman þat passed  
 xiiij. 3er age, iiij d.—outake pore beggars that were knowen opynly  
 for<sup>3</sup> nede, beggars,<sup>4</sup>—and þat he shulde haue of euery man of  
 16 holy chirche þat was beneficed or promoted, xij d., and of al oþere  
 þat were nout promoted iiij d., outake þe iiij. orders of the Frers  
 beggars.

¶ This same 3er, after Myghelmase, Richard, Prin3 Edward;  
 20 sone, was made Prins of Walys; to whon þe King also 3af<sup>5</sup> þe  
 Duche of Cornewayl, wyth þe Erldom of Chestre. and aboute þis  
 tyme, þe Cardinallis of Engelond, þe forþe day bifore Mary  
 Maugdalynes day, after mete, sodeynly was smete & take<sup>6</sup> wip a  
 24 palsie, & loste his speche; and on Marye Mawgdalynes day  
 he died.

Of the deth of Kinge Edward; and how Sere John Munster-  
 worþ, knight, was drawe and honged for his fals tresoun.

28 *Capitulo CC<sup>mo</sup>. xxxix<sup>o</sup>.*<sup>7</sup>

Ryght anon after, in þe lij 3ere of his<sup>8</sup> regne, of King Edward,  
 in þe begynnyng of October, Pope Gregory þe xj. brou3t  
 and remeved wip hem his court from Aveyon to Rome.

32 And þe xij. day of Aprill, John Munsterworþe, knight, at  
 London was drawen, hanged, and þen byheded; and after, his  
 body quartered, and sent to þe .iiij.<sup>9</sup> cheif tounes of Engelond, and  
 his heed sette oppon<sup>10</sup> London Brigge. ¶ For þis same Iohn was

<sup>1</sup> pece and T. and C. <sup>2</sup> leaf 198. <sup>3</sup> for TR. fro C.

<sup>4</sup> nedi pouere beggars T. nedy poer beggars R. <sup>5</sup> yaf also TR.

<sup>6</sup> was take and suiye T. & take om. R. <sup>7</sup> CC<sup>o</sup> T. <sup>8</sup> þe TR.

<sup>9</sup> to foure the T. iiij þe R. <sup>10</sup> on T.

ful vntrewe to þe <sup>1</sup> King and to the reaume, and ful coveytous and vnstable; for he toke ofte tymes grete summes of money of þe King and his counceyll for men of armes wages, that he sholde haue payed ham; and take hit into his owne vse. and he, dreding <sup>4</sup> at <sup>2</sup> the laste he shold he shent and acused, for þe same cause fled pryuily to the King of Fraunce, and was swore to hem, and biecome his man, and behight hym to bringe a <sup>3</sup> grete nave of Spayne in confusion, and distroyende of <sup>4</sup> Engelande. but rightful <sup>8</sup> God, to whom no pryvite is vnknewe, suffrede hym first to be shent and spilt, or that he sholde so trecherously & falsly, his leige lord, the King of Engelande, and his peple and his reaume—in the whiche ground the same Iohn was bore wickedly, thourgh <sup>12</sup> bataill, destroye, or bryng his cursed purpose aboute.

In the feste of Seynt Gregore þo <sup>5</sup> next sewyng, King Edward <sup>3</sup>af to Richard of Burdeux, his eyr, that was Pryns Edwardes sone, att Wyndesore, the ordre of knyghthood, and made hym knyght. <sup>16</sup> the which Kyng Edward, whan he had regned lȝ. <sup>6</sup> ȝere and more, the xj kalend of Iuyn, he deide at Shene, and is beried worshipfully at Westmynster; on whos soule God haue mercy! Amen!

<sup>1</sup> leaf 198, back.<sup>2</sup> þat at TR.<sup>3</sup> him a T.<sup>4</sup> of TR. al C.<sup>5</sup> þe T.<sup>6</sup> liȝ R.

## APPENDIX B.

[THE CHARACTER OF EDWARD III.]

[*MS. Harley 753, fol. 146 ff. (collated with MS. Harley 331 = X, Lambeth 491 = Y, and Lambeth 738 = Z).*]

Of þe description<sup>1</sup> of Kyng Edward. Cap<sup>r</sup>. CC. xxix<sup>o</sup>.<sup>2</sup>

**T**His<sup>3</sup> Kyng Edward was forsoþe of a passyng goodnesse, and ful gracious amonge aH þe worthymen of þe world; for he passyd  
4 and shone by vertue & grace<sup>4</sup> yeven to hym fro God, above aH his predecessours þat were noble men & worthy. And he was a wele hard-herted<sup>5</sup> man, for he dred neuer of none myshappes, ne harmes ne evyH fortune, þat myzt falle a noble warryour, and a fortunate,<sup>6</sup>  
8 bothe<sup>7</sup> on lond<sup>8</sup> and on þe see.<sup>9</sup> And in aH batayle & assembles, with a passyng glory and worshyp<sup>10</sup> he had euere þe victory.

And<sup>11</sup> he was meke and benygne, homely, sobre, & softe to aH maner men,<sup>12</sup> as wele to straungres as to his owne subiectes, And to  
12 oper þat were vnder his gouernaunce.<sup>13</sup> He was deuote & holy, bope to God & holy<sup>14</sup> church; ffor he was worshipped &<sup>15</sup> mayntened holy church and her mynystres with aH maner reuerences.<sup>16</sup> He was treteable & wele avysed in temperaH & worldly nedes, wyse  
16 in counseil, and discrete, soft, meke,<sup>17</sup> & good to speke with. In hys dedes & manere, fulH gentiH & wele ytaught, havyng pite on hem<sup>18</sup> þat were in dissesse; plentevous in yevyng almesse,<sup>19</sup> Besy<sup>20</sup> & corious in bilydyng; And fulH lyghtly he bare & suffred  
20 wronges and harmes. And whan he was yeve to any occupacion, he left aH oper þynges in<sup>21</sup> þe mene tyme, and tent<sup>22</sup> perto; semly of body, & of mene stature; havyng alwey, to high & lowe, a good chere. And þer sprang & shone so mochi grace of hym<sup>23</sup> þat, what

<sup>1</sup> distruction MS and Z.    <sup>2</sup> heading om. Z.    <sup>3</sup> The Z.

<sup>4</sup> vertue of grace YZ.

<sup>5</sup> a wel and a hardy hertid Y. a well and an harty hartid Z.

<sup>6</sup> and so fortunate X. a fortunate Y. a ffortynant Z.

<sup>7</sup> for bothe Y.    <sup>8</sup> on þe lond X.    <sup>9</sup> on se Z.    <sup>10</sup> glory and Joy Z.

<sup>11</sup> And om. Y.    <sup>12</sup> maner off men Z.    <sup>13</sup> his owne Gouvernaunce Z.

<sup>14</sup> to holy Z.    <sup>15</sup> worshepid halpe and Z.    <sup>16</sup> of reuerence Z.

<sup>17</sup> and meke Z.    <sup>18</sup> to hem XY.    <sup>19</sup> benefytes Z.    <sup>20</sup> and Besy Z.

<sup>21</sup> for Z.    <sup>22</sup> tent om. Z.    <sup>23</sup> leaf 146, back.

maner man had byhold<sup>t</sup> his face, or had dremed of hym, he hoped þat day þat aH pyng shold<sup>t</sup> hap<sup>1</sup> to hym IoyfuH and lykyng. And he gouerned gloriously hys kyngdom into his age. And<sup>2</sup> he was large in yevyng, and wyse in spences. He was fulfilled with<sup>3</sup> aH 4 honeste of good maners, & vertuous; vnder whom to lyve,<sup>4</sup> hit was as for to regne; wherfor his name<sup>5</sup> & his loos sprang so fere þat it came into hethenesse and Barbarye, shewyng and tellyng his worthynesse & manhode in aH londes; And þat in<sup>6</sup> no lond vnder 8 heven had be<sup>7</sup> brought forth so noble a kyng,<sup>8</sup> so gentiH & so blessyd, or myȝt reyse such anoper whan he were dede.

Neuerþelesse,<sup>9</sup> lecchery & mevyng of hys flessH haunted hym in his age; wherfor þe rather, as it was to suppose,<sup>10</sup> for vnmesurable 12 fulfillyng of hys lust, his lyff shorted þe sonner. And herof takeþ good hede, lyke as hys dedys byfore bereth wytnesse; for, as in hys bygynnyng aH pynges were IoyfuH and lykyng to hym & to aH þe<sup>11</sup> peple, And in hys myd age he passed aH men<sup>12</sup> in high 16 Ioye and<sup>13</sup> worschype and blessydnesse, Ryȝt so, whan he drow in-to Age, drawyng downward purgh lechchorye and oper<sup>14</sup> synnes, litiH & litiH aH þe IoyfuH and blyssed<sup>15</sup> pynges, good fortune & prosperite decreesed and myshapped, And Infortunat pynges, & vnprofytable 20 harmes, with many evele, bygan for to spryng, and, þe more harme is, conteyned longe tyme after.

<sup>1</sup> ffall Z.    <sup>2</sup> And om. Z.    <sup>3</sup> of Z.    <sup>4</sup> þe lyffe Z.    <sup>5</sup> fame YZ.

<sup>6</sup> in om. YZ.    <sup>7</sup> be om. XYZ.    <sup>8</sup> knyȝt Z.

<sup>9</sup> Neener the latter Y.    Neuyr þe latter Z.

<sup>10</sup> suppose for XYZ.    <sup>11</sup> þe om. Z.    <sup>12</sup> pepill Z.    <sup>13</sup> and om. YZ.

<sup>14</sup> after Z.    <sup>15</sup> blisfull X.

[C]

[FROM THE CORONATION OF RICHARD II (A.D. 1377)  
TO THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (A.D. 1419).]

[*Cambridge University Library MS. Kk. 1. 12.*]

<sup>1</sup> And aftir King Edwarde the thrid, þat was bore at Wyndesore,  
Regned Richard of Burdeux, that was Prynce Edwardes  
sone of Walis; which Prince Edwarde was þe sone of <sup>2</sup>  
<sup>4</sup> King Edwarde þe iij<sup>de</sup>.<sup>3</sup> Capitulum ccxxxix.

And aftir the gode King, King Edwarde the iij<sup>de</sup>, þat was born  
at Wyndesore, Regned Richard þe ij, þat was þe gode Prince  
Edwardes sone of <sup>4</sup> Walis; which King Richard was born yn þe  
<sup>8</sup> cite of Burdeux yn Gasquoyne, and was crown'd at Westminster yn  
þe xj yere of his age. ¶ And yn ij<sup>5</sup> yere of his regne fil þe<sup>6</sup>  
debate þat was betuene þe Lorde Latimer and Syr Raaff Ferrers,  
kniȝt,<sup>7</sup> þat were ayens Hawle & Schakele, squiers, for the prysoner  
<sup>12</sup> þat was take yn the botayle of Spayngne <sup>8</sup> by þese ij squyers, þe<sup>9</sup>  
which þe sayde<sup>10</sup> Lorde Latimer and Ser Raaff Ferrers wolde haue  
had; þe which prysoner was þe Erle of Deene, þat þay toke yn þe  
batayle of Spayngne.<sup>8</sup> ¶ Wherfore þese ij lordes comyn yn-to  
<sup>16</sup> Westminster church, <sup>11</sup> and founde þis on Squier heryng his<sup>12</sup> messe  
besyde Seint Edwardes schryne; and there þei slow hym þat me  
callyd Hawle; and Schackele was arestid and put yn-to þe Tour of  
London; and þere he was long tyme, for<sup>13</sup> he wolde not delyuer þe  
<sup>20</sup> Erle of Dene, his presoner, vnto þese ij lordes by Ser Aleyn Buxhill,  
Constable of the tour, and be Ser Raaff Ferrers, one of his aduer-  
saries, tyll þe tyme þat<sup>14</sup> þe king grawnted hym grace.

¶ In the iij<sup>de</sup> yere of King Richarde come þe<sup>15</sup> galies of Fraunce<sup>16</sup>  
<sup>24</sup> yn-to Englonde, vnto dyuers portez, and brent, & Robbyd, and  
slow moch pepyll of Englonde, þat is to sey,<sup>17</sup> Wynchilse, Rie,  
Hastyng, <sup>18</sup> Portesmouth, Hampton, Stormore, & <sup>19</sup> Grauyse, and  
dede moche harm, and wente hom ayen.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 110, back.    <sup>2</sup> of þe T.    <sup>3</sup> þe iij<sup>de</sup> om. T.    <sup>4</sup> Prynce of T.

<sup>5</sup> þe seconde R.    <sup>6</sup> regne for TR.    <sup>7</sup> the knyght T.

<sup>8-9</sup> om. T.    <sup>9</sup> and þe R.    <sup>10</sup> sayde om. R.

<sup>11</sup> into the Chirche of Westmynstre TR.    <sup>12</sup> his om. T.    <sup>13</sup> and T

<sup>14</sup> þe tyme þat om. TR.    <sup>15</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>16</sup> yeer off his Regne þe galeys of fraunce come R.    <sup>17</sup> seie at T.

<sup>18</sup> hastyng and T.    <sup>19</sup> and om. T.

[*The Commons' Revolt led by Jack Straw and Wat Tyler.*]

And yn þis same yere was a parlement holden at Westminster; and at þat parlement was ordeyned þat euery man, woman & childe, þat were<sup>1</sup> at þe age of xiiij yere & aboue, þorȝout all þe Reme, pore folke & Rich,<sup>2</sup> schulde pay to þe talage iiij d; wherfore come 4 aftirwarde grete myseluiff & moche deseȝe to alle<sup>3</sup> communialte of þe Reme. ¶ And yn þe iiij yere of þe regne of King Richarde þe comynes loket vp, &<sup>4</sup> arysyn vp<sup>5</sup> yn dyuers parteȝ of þe Reme, and dede moche harm, þe which þei callid<sup>6</sup> "hurlyng tyme." And 8 þei of Kent & of Essex madyn hem ij cheveteynez to rewle & gouerne þe compayne of Kent & of Essex: þat one<sup>7</sup> me<sup>8</sup> callid Jacke Strawe, and þat oþer, Watte Tyler; and þai comen and assembled ham vpon þe Blake-Heth yn Kent. And apon the<sup>9</sup> 12 Corpus Christi day and after, þei comen doune yn-to Southwerk, and brekyn vp þe prison hous, þat is to wite, þe Kingis Bench, and þe<sup>10</sup> Marchalsy, & delyverde out alle þe prisoners. And so þe same day þei comen yn-to London; and þere thay robbyd þe peple, and 16 slowyn alle<sup>11</sup> alyens þat þay myȝt fynde yn þe cyte and aboute þe cite, and despoiled alle her godeȝ, and made havoke. ¶ And on the Fridai<sup>12</sup> next aftir, þat was on þe morowe, thei comyn vn<sup>13</sup>to þe Tour of London; and the king beyng þere-yn, þei sette out of þe 20 Tour þe Archebishop of Caunturbury, Maistir Symond<sup>14</sup> Sudbery, and Ser Robert Haleȝ, Pryour<sup>15</sup> of Saint Johnes,<sup>16</sup> and a Whit Frere þat was confessour vn to King Richarde, and brouȝt ham vnto þe Tour Hill; and þere þay smytyn of her hedys, and comyn ayen to 24 London, & slowyn mo peple of men of lawe, and oþer worthi men yn dyuers parteyeȝ of þe cite. And þanne went þai<sup>17</sup> to the Dukeȝ place of Lancaſtre, beyonde Saint Mary Stronle, þat was callyd Savoy.<sup>18</sup> ¶ And þere þei deuoured & destroyed al þe godeȝ þat þay 28 myȝt fynde,<sup>19</sup> and bare ham away, and brent vp þe place. And þanne aftir þey went to Seint Johnes without Smythffelde, and destroyed þe godes,<sup>20</sup> & brent vp þat hous, and went to Westminster, and so to Sent Martyneȝ þe Graunt, and made hem go<sup>21</sup> out of 32

<sup>1</sup> weren T. were R. om. Kk. <sup>2</sup> and oþer T.

<sup>3</sup> aȝ þe T. al þe R. <sup>4</sup> loket vp & om. TR.

<sup>5</sup> vp om. R. <sup>6</sup> callid þe TR.

<sup>8</sup> þat men T.

<sup>9</sup> Kent on TR.

<sup>10</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>11</sup> alle þe TR.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 111.

<sup>13</sup> vn om. T.

<sup>14</sup> sir Edmund T.

<sup>15</sup> hospitaler prioure and maistir T.

<sup>16</sup> Iohnes house T.

<sup>17</sup> þei wenten T. þey wente R.

<sup>18</sup> þe Savey T.

<sup>19</sup> fynde þere R.

<sup>20</sup> goodis there T.

<sup>21</sup> to go TR.

þe sayntwarye, alle<sup>1</sup> þat were þere<sup>2</sup> ynne for eny maner of<sup>3</sup> gryth.<sup>4</sup>

¶ And þanne come vnto þe Temple, and to alle oþer yunnez of men  
4 of lawe, & dispoyled ham and rebbed ham of<sup>5</sup> her godez, and also  
taare hir bokis of law; and þai<sup>6</sup> come to London, and brake vp the  
pryson of Newgate, & droff out alle þe prisoners, felons, & oþir of<sup>7</sup>  
bothe countres, and alle þe peple þat was with-ynne ham, &  
8-destroyed alle þe bokis of bothe countres; and þus þay contynued  
forth, both Saturday and Sunday,<sup>8</sup> vnto<sup>9</sup> þe Monday next folowyng,  
yn alle hir<sup>10</sup> malice & wickydnese. And þanne,<sup>11</sup> on the Monday,  
King Richard, with his lordez þat were with hym þat tyme, and<sup>12</sup>  
12 with þe Meire of London, William Walworth, þe<sup>13</sup> aldermen & þe  
commynnez of þe cite, come<sup>14</sup> yn<sup>15</sup> to Southwerk<sup>16</sup> to here &<sup>17</sup> know  
þe entencion of þese rebellis and misgouerned pepil.<sup>18</sup> ¶ And þis  
Iak Straw þanne made an oyes in þe felde, þat alle þe pepyl of  
16 accorde schulde come nere, & here his clamour and<sup>19</sup> his crye and  
his will, and þe lordez, and þe Mayre and þe aldermen, with þe  
communalte, hauyng indignacion of his Covetise and Falsnesse,  
and his foule presompceion; and anon William Walworth, þat tyme  
20 beyng Mayre, drew out his knyff, and slow Iack Straw, and anon  
ryzt þere dede smyzt of his hed, and sette it vp apon<sup>20</sup> a spere-  
schafte; and so it was bore prouz London, & set on high vp on  
London Brygge. ¶ And<sup>21</sup> anon alle þe<sup>22</sup> rysers and mysgonernyd  
24 men were voyded and<sup>23</sup> vanyshed, as hit hadde not byn þay.  
¶ And<sup>24</sup> þe king, of his grete godenesse, and by prayer of his lordez,  
made þere vj knyztis of gode & worthi men of þe cite of London,  
þat is,<sup>25</sup> William Walworth—þat tyme was<sup>26</sup> Mayre and slow Iack  
28 Straw,—& ij<sup>de</sup><sup>27</sup> was Nicholas Brembre, þe<sup>28</sup> iij was<sup>29</sup> John Phily-  
pot, the<sup>28</sup> iiij was<sup>30</sup> Nicholas Twyfford, þe<sup>28</sup> fyffþe was<sup>29</sup> Robert  
Lawndeþ, þe<sup>28</sup> vj, Robert Gayton. ¶ And þanne þe king, with his  
lordez and his<sup>31</sup> knyztis, retourned ayen vnto the Tour of London;  
32 and þere he restid hym tyll he his<sup>32</sup> peple were bettir ceeyd, & seet yn

<sup>1</sup> alle *om.* R.    <sup>2</sup> with T.    *þere om.* R.    <sup>3</sup> of *om.* R.    <sup>4</sup> gryth *om.* T.

<sup>5</sup> of TR. or Kk.    <sup>6</sup> þanne þai T.    *þanne þey* R.    <sup>7</sup> and of TR.

<sup>8</sup> vnto þe Sunday T.    <sup>9</sup> and vnto T.    <sup>10</sup> her maner of T.

<sup>11</sup> þanne *om.* T.    <sup>12</sup> and *om.* T.    <sup>13</sup> þat was þat tyme come with þe TR.

<sup>14</sup> and come T.    <sup>15</sup> yn *om.* T.    <sup>16</sup> Smythfelde R.    <sup>17</sup> and to T.

<sup>18</sup> peple þat so reuyd and robbid T.

<sup>19</sup> and here his clamouris and T.    and here his clamour and R.    *om.* Kk.

<sup>20</sup> vpon T.    it vpon R.    <sup>21</sup> And *om.* T.    <sup>22</sup> þese T.    *þize* R.

<sup>23</sup> and clene T.    & clene R.    <sup>24</sup> And thanne T.    and þanne R.

<sup>25</sup> is to saie T.    is to say R.    <sup>26</sup> þat was þat tyme T.    <sup>27</sup> þe ije T.

<sup>28</sup> and þe T.    <sup>29</sup> was *om.* TR.    <sup>30</sup> was *om.* T.    <sup>31</sup> his *om.* R.    <sup>32</sup> this T.

rest and peeze. ¶ And þanne, by processe of tyme, as þay myzt gete and take þeze <sup>1</sup>Rebellis & rysers, they hanged ham vp on <sup>2</sup>the next galous yn euery lordesschippe throuȝ þe <sup>3</sup>Reme of Engelond, <sup>4</sup>be xl & be xxx, be <sup>5</sup>x. & be xij., euer as þay myghte be goton & take <sup>6</sup>4 yn eny parteys.

¶ And yn þe v. yere of King Richardeȝ Regne was þe grete Erthe quake; and þat<sup>7</sup> was do<sup>8</sup> generally ovir<sup>9</sup> alle þe worlde,—the Wedynesday aftir Whitsonday, yn the yere after<sup>10</sup> incarnacion <sup>8</sup>of our Lorde Ihesu crist, m<sup>1</sup> ccc. iiii. xj,<sup>11</sup> where-of alle þe peple were sore agast, and drad<sup>12</sup> long tyme aftir, for þe grete<sup>13</sup> vengauce and grete drede þat our Lorde God schewed and dede.

¶ In <sup>14</sup>þe vj zere of his regne,<sup>15</sup> Ser Henri Spenser, Bischop of 12 Northwych, went with a croyseray ouer þe see yn-to þe contre of Flawndrez; & þere he<sup>16</sup> gate þe towne of Grauenyng, & <sup>17</sup>þe toun of Oldenburgh,<sup>18</sup> Dunkirk, and Newport; and þere þai ladde & fryzt .l.j. schyppez with pelege<sup>19</sup> for to haue come yn to Engelonde 16 with alle þese schippes and goodis,<sup>20</sup> and þe Bischop of Northwich and his counsel lette brenne þese schippeȝ, with al þe pelege, yn þe same havynne, all yn-to hard asches.

¶ And at Dunkirk was don a grete batayle betuene þe Flemyngeȝ <sup>20</sup>and þe Englisch men; and <sup>21</sup>at þat batayle was slayn a gret multitude of þese Flemyngeȝ, and a passyng noubre. ¶ And þanne went þe bischop with his retynu vn-to Ipreȝ, and besegid it a long tyme; but it myzt not be gote, and so he lefte þat sege, and come <sup>24</sup>ayen yn-to Engelond, for our Englischmen were foule destroyed, and mony deied on þe Flyx.

[*Anne of Bohemia comes to wed Richard II.*]

¶ And yn þis same zere come Quene Anne yn-to Engelond, for to be spoused vnto King Richard; and hir fadir was Emperour <sup>28</sup>of Almayne, and King of Beeme. And with hir came þe Duk of Tassy and hir vncle, and mony oþer worthi lordez & knyȝtes<sup>22</sup> of hir cuntre of Beeme, and of oþer Duch tungeȝ, to do hir reuerence

<sup>1</sup> leaf 111, back.    <sup>2</sup> vpon T.    <sup>3</sup> out þe TR.    <sup>4</sup> of Engelond om. T.  
<sup>5</sup> and bi T.    <sup>6</sup> be take and gete T.    <sup>7</sup> hit T.    <sup>8</sup> do om. T.  
<sup>9</sup> ouer T.    <sup>10</sup> after the T.    after þe R.    <sup>11</sup> and xj T.    <sup>12</sup> a dred T.  
<sup>13</sup> girte om. TR.    <sup>14</sup> And in TR.  
<sup>15</sup> of þe reigne of kyng Richard T.    of þe regne of king Richarde R.  
<sup>16</sup> and þei T.    þey R.    <sup>17</sup> & om.    <sup>18</sup> Broburgh T.  
<sup>19</sup> pillage T.    pesage Kk.  
<sup>20</sup> with these shippis and goodis T.    with þeze shippes & godis R.    om. Kk.  
<sup>21</sup> and om. T.    <sup>22</sup> knyȝtis and lordis T.



and worschip. ¶ And Ser Symond Benyrley, a worthi knyȝt of þe Gartyr,<sup>1</sup> & oper knyȝtis and squyers þat were þe Kingis embassetoures, brouȝt hir yn-to Engelond, and so ferthe to London.

4 ¶ And þe pe[p]le of þe cite, þat is to saye, þe Mayre & þe Aldermen and alle þe<sup>2</sup> comyneȝ, rydyn ayens hir to welcome hir; and euery man yn gode aray, and euery craft with his Mynstraleye, yn þe best maner, mette with hir on þe Blak-Heth yn Kent, & so  
8 brouȝt hir to<sup>3</sup> London þrouȝ þe cite, and so forth yn to<sup>4</sup> Westemystre, vn-to þe kinges palice; and þere sche was spoused vnto King Richard, welle and worthily, yn þe Abbey of Westmynstre; and þere sche was crouned Quene of Engelond; and alle hir frendis  
12 þat comyn with hir hadde gret yeftis, and hadde grete chere, and were wel refresched<sup>5</sup> as long tyme as þai abyden here.

¶ And yn þis same yere was a batayle do with-ynne þe kinges Palys at Westmynstre, for certeyne poyntis of treson, betuene Ser  
16 Iohn of Ansley, knyȝt, defendaunt, and Karton, Squyere, þe appellaunt; but þis Ser Iohn of Ansley ouyr-come þis Carton, & made hym<sup>6</sup> to yolde hym withynne þe listis, and anon þis Craton (*sic*) was<sup>7</sup> dispoyled of his harnez and drawe out of þe lystis,  
20 and so forth to<sup>8</sup> Tyborne; and þere he was hangyd for his falsnesse.

¶ And yn<sup>9</sup> the viij yere of his Regne<sup>10</sup> Ser Edmund of Langele, Erle of Cawmebrygge, þe kinges vncl, wente vnto<sup>11</sup> Portingale with a Fayre manye of men of armeȝ and archers, yn helpyng & streyng-  
24 thyng<sup>12</sup> of þe King of Portyngale ayens þe King of Spayngne and his power. and þere þe King of Portyngale hadde þe victory of his Enmyeȝ, þrouȝ help and comfort of our Englysch men. And whanne þat iornay was y<sup>13</sup>do, The Erle of Cawmbrige com hom  
28 ayen with his peple yn-to Engelond yn haste; blessid be Gode and his gracious yeft! Amen!

¶ And þis same yere, Kinge Richarde hylde his Cristismesse yn þe Maner of Estham (*sic*). And þe same tyme, þe King of Ermonye  
32 fledde out of his owne londe, and come yn-to Engelond, for to haue socour and help of our King ayens his enmyeȝ, þat hadde dreve hym of<sup>14</sup> his Reme; and so he was brouȝt vn-to<sup>15</sup> þe King to Eltham, þere as þe King hylde his realle feest of Cristismasse; and

<sup>1</sup> MS. gartyd.    <sup>2</sup> þe *om.* T.    <sup>3</sup> into T.    <sup>4</sup> vnto T.

<sup>5</sup> and weren wele cherid and refresshid T. & well were chered & refresshed R.

<sup>6</sup> *leaf* 112.    <sup>7</sup> was *om.* T.    <sup>8</sup> to þe T.    <sup>9</sup> yn *om.* T.

<sup>10</sup> þe reigne of kyng Richard T.    <sup>11</sup> into T.

<sup>12</sup> in strengthyng and helpyng T.    in strengthinge & helping R.

<sup>13</sup> y *om.* TR.    <sup>14</sup> out of T.    <sup>15</sup> to R.

þere oure King welcomed hym, and dede hym reuerence & worschip, and commaundd alle his<sup>1</sup> lordez to make hym alle þe chere þat þay cowthe. and þanne he besouzt the King<sup>2</sup> of grace and help, and of his comfort yn his nede, and þat he myzt be brozt<sup>4</sup> ayen yn<sup>3</sup> to his owne kingedom and londe, for þe Turkez hadde denoured & destroyed moch parte of his londe; and for drede he fledde, & come hider for socoure and helpe. ¶ And than<sup>4</sup> þe King, hauyng compassion of his gret myschiffe and greuos deseze, <sup>8</sup> anon<sup>5</sup> he toke his Counsel, and axed what was best to do. and þai answered and sayde, ‘yef it likyd hym to yeue hym eny gode, it were welle ydo: and as towchyng his peple, to Trauayle so fer yn-to out-londez, it were a grete ieparde’; and so þe King gaf hym golde<sup>12</sup> and seluyr, and many richez<sup>6</sup> and iewellis, and betauzt hym to God; and so he passed ayen out of Engeland.

¶ And yn þis same yere King Richarde, with a ryall power, went yn-to Scotland for to war ayen<sup>7</sup> þe Scottis, for hir Falsnesse and <sup>16</sup> destroccion þat þay<sup>8</sup> hadde do ayens<sup>9</sup> þe<sup>10</sup> English men yn þe Marchis. And þe<sup>11</sup> Scottis come doun<sup>12</sup> for to trete<sup>13</sup> with hym<sup>14</sup> & with his lordez for tiewes, as for certeyn yeres; and so oure Kyng and his Counsel graunted hem trewes certyn yeres<sup>15</sup> vnto <sup>20</sup> her axyng, and our King turned hym hom ayen yn-to Engelande. ¶ And whanne he was come vnto<sup>16</sup> Yorke, þere he aboode and restyd hym. and<sup>17</sup> þere Ser John Helond, þe Erle of Kentis broþer, slow þe Erlis sone of Staffarde and his heyre with a daggar <sup>24</sup> yn þe cite of Yorke, wherfor the King was sore amoued and grevid, & remeyd fro þennez and come to London; and þe Meire and þe Aldermen and þe commyns, with alle þe solempnite þat þay<sup>18</sup> <sup>28</sup> myghte do,<sup>20</sup> rydyn ayens þe King, and brouzt hym ryally throuz the cite, & so forth vnto Westmynstre vnto his owne Palis.

¶ And yn þe ix yere of his regne<sup>21</sup> he hadde<sup>22</sup> a parlement at Westminster, & þere he made ij dukes, and a Markques & v. erlez:

<sup>1</sup> þe T.      <sup>2</sup> the king om. T.      <sup>3</sup> yn om. TR.      <sup>4</sup> than om. T.

<sup>5</sup> and om. TR.      and anon Kk.      <sup>6</sup> riche yiftis T.      rich ziftis R.

<sup>7</sup> vpon R.      <sup>8</sup> þe Scottis T.      <sup>9</sup> to T.      <sup>10</sup> do vnto R.

<sup>11</sup> þanne þe T.      <sup>12</sup> doun vnto þe kyng T.

<sup>13</sup> entrete T.      <sup>14</sup> with him TR.      hym Kk.

<sup>15</sup> yeris, and so oure kyng and his counceile grauntid hem trewes certeyn yeris T.      yeris and so þe king & his counsel graunted ham trewis certayn yeris R.      om. Kk.

<sup>16</sup> to T.      <sup>17</sup> and om. TR.      <sup>18</sup> þay om.      <sup>19</sup> leaf 112, back.

<sup>20</sup> þat myghte be do R.

<sup>21</sup> of kyng Richardis reigne T.      yeer of king Richardis Regne he held R.

<sup>22</sup> helde T.

- þe first þat was mad Duk, was þe Kinges vncle, *Ser* Edmund<sup>1</sup> of Langeley and<sup>2</sup> Erle of Caumbrigge; and hym he<sup>3</sup> made<sup>4</sup> Duk of Yorke; and his oþer vncle, *Ser* Thomas of Wodestoke, þat was Erle  
 4 of Bokingham, he made Duke of Gloucestre, and *Ser* Lover, þat was Erle of Oxynforde, he<sup>5</sup> made Marques of Denelyn; and Henry of Bolyngbroke, þe Duke; son of Lancastre, he<sup>6</sup> made Erle of Derby; and *Ser* Edward, þe Dukes sone of York, he<sup>6</sup> made Erle of Ruth-  
 8 lond; *Ser* John Holande, þat was þe Erle of Kentis brother, he<sup>6</sup> made Erle of Huntyngham; *Ser* Thomas Mombraye, Erle of Notyng-  
 ham, & Erle Marchall of Engelond; and *Ser*<sup>7</sup> Michell of Pole, knyzt, he<sup>6</sup> made Erle of Suffolke and Chaunceler of Engelond.
- 12 ¶ And the Erle of the<sup>8</sup> March, at þat same<sup>9</sup> parlement holdon at Westemynstre, yu<sup>10</sup> playne parlement among al þe Lorde; and Comyns, was proclaymed Erle of the March, and heyre<sup>11</sup> parant vnto<sup>12</sup> þe crowne of Engelonde aftir King Richarde. ¶ The which  
 16 Erle of the<sup>13</sup> Marche went ouyr<sup>14</sup> see yu-to Ireland vnto his lorde-schippe; and londe; for the Erle of<sup>15</sup> Marche is Erle of Vleestre yn Irelande, and<sup>16</sup> by ryzt lyne and heritage. and at<sup>17</sup> a<sup>18</sup> Castill of his he lay þat tyme; and þere come apon<sup>19</sup> hym a grete multitude yn  
 20 buschmentis of wilde Iryschmen, hym for to take and distroye, and he come out ffersly of his Castell with his peple, and manly ffauzt with ham; and þere he was take, and hew al to pecis, and þere he<sup>20</sup> deied; on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen!
- 24 ¶ And yn the .x. yere of King Richarde; regne, þe Erle of Arundell went to<sup>21</sup> þe see with a grete Nauye of schippe; enarmed with men of arme; and gode archers. And as<sup>22</sup> þai come yn to þe brode see, þei mette with þe hole flytte þat come lade with wyne<sup>23</sup>  
 28 from Rochell; and<sup>24</sup> the wyne; were Enymye; godes; and þeron oure<sup>25</sup> Nauye sette apoin<sup>26</sup> ham, and toke ham alle, and brouzt hym yn to<sup>27</sup> diuers portis; and hauons of<sup>28</sup> Engelond, & sum to London: and þere þe myzte haue hedde a ton of Rochel wyne of þe beste for  
 32 xx.s. of sterlynges; and so we hadde gret chep of wyne þrouz-out þe Reme at þat tyme, þankyð be God Almyzty!

<sup>1</sup> Symonde T.    <sup>2</sup> and om. TR.    <sup>3</sup> he om. R.  
<sup>4</sup> and he was made T.    <sup>5</sup> him T.    <sup>6</sup> him he T.    <sup>7</sup> sir TR. for Kk.  
<sup>8</sup> the om. TR.    <sup>9</sup> same tyme of þe T.    <sup>10</sup> in þe T.    <sup>11</sup> heir of R.  
<sup>12</sup> to TR.    <sup>13</sup> the om. TR.    <sup>14</sup> ouer þe TR.    <sup>15</sup> of the T.  
<sup>16</sup> and om. R.    <sup>17</sup> there at T.    <sup>18</sup> þere at R.    <sup>19</sup> þe R.    <sup>20</sup> vpon TR.  
<sup>21</sup> he om. T.    <sup>22</sup> vnto TR.    <sup>23</sup> And as T.    <sup>24</sup> and Kk.  
<sup>25</sup> comen wyne lade T.    <sup>26</sup> with wyne om. R.    <sup>27</sup> and om. T.  
<sup>28</sup> and þere oure T.    <sup>29</sup> þere our R.    <sup>30</sup> and þeron Kk.    <sup>31</sup> vpon TR.  
<sup>32</sup> vnto R.    <sup>33</sup> into T.

How þe .v. lordez aysen at Ratcot brydge, ye schul here.<sup>1</sup>  
*Capitulum ccxl.*<sup>2</sup>

And yn þe a.xj yere of King Richarde<sup>3</sup> regne,<sup>3</sup> þe .v. lordez reson at Ratecote brygge, yn<sup>4</sup> destroceyon of the<sup>5</sup> Rebellis þat weryn 4 þat tyme yn alle this<sup>6</sup> Reme. ¶ The first of the .v. lordez was Ser Thomas of Wodestoke, þe Kingis vncle, and Duk of Gloucestre; þe<sup>7</sup> ij was Ser Richarde, Erle of Arundell; þe<sup>8</sup> iij was Ser Richard, Erle of Warwic; þe iiij was Ser Harri<sup>9</sup> Bolyngbroke, Erle of Derby, 8 and þe .v. was Ser Thomas Mouubray, Erle of Notygham. ¶ And þe<sup>3e</sup> .v. lordez sawe þe myschif, and mysgouernaunce, and þe Falsnesse of the Kingez counsell; wherfor þai þat were of þe Kingez kounsel chef,<sup>10</sup> fleddyn out of þis londe ouer þe see, þat is to say, 12 Ser Alisaunder Neuyke, Archebischop<sup>11</sup> of York, Ser Robert le Veere, <sup>12</sup>Marquis of Develyn and Erle of Oxynforde; Ser<sup>13</sup> Michel de la Pole, Erle of Suffolke and Chaunceler of Engeland. and þese iij. lordez went ouyr see,<sup>14</sup> and cam nevir ayen, for there þay deied. 16 And þan<sup>15</sup> þe<sup>3e</sup> .v. lordez forsaide<sup>16</sup> maden<sup>17</sup> a parlement at Westminster, and þere thay tokyn Ser Robert Tresilian, þe Iustize, and Ser Nicholl Brembre, knyzt an<sup>18</sup> citezein of London, and Ser Iohn Salesbury, knyzt of the Kingis housholde, & Vske, sergeaunt of 20 armez; and mony moo of oþer peple were take and Iuged vnto<sup>19</sup> deth by þe counsel of þese .v. lordez yn hir parlement at Westminster, for treson þat þai put apon ham, to be draw fro þe<sup>20</sup> Tour of London þrouz þe cite, and so forth to Tyburne; and þere to be 24 hangyd, and þere her þrotis to be kut; and þus þei were serued, and deiden.

And aftir þat, yn þis same parlement, was<sup>21</sup> Ser Symond of<sup>22</sup> Beverlay, þat was a Knyzt of þe Garter, and Ser John Beauchamp, 28 knyzt, þat was Steward of the Kingis housholde, and Ser Iamez Berners, were for-Iuged vn-to<sup>23</sup> deth; and<sup>24</sup> þay wer ladd on fote vn-to<sup>25</sup> þe Toure Hille; and þere were her hedis smytyn of, and mony other mo, be þe<sup>3e</sup> .v. lordez. 32

<sup>1</sup> ye schul here *om.* TR.      <sup>2</sup> CC<sup>o</sup> T. CCxlj R.

<sup>3</sup> in the reigne of kyng Richard þe xje yeer T.    þe Regne of king Richarde þe xj yeer R.      <sup>4</sup> in þe T.      <sup>5</sup> the *om.* TR.      <sup>6</sup> þe TR.

<sup>7</sup> and þe T.      <sup>8</sup> And þe T.      <sup>9</sup> henri of R.

<sup>10</sup> weren that tyme cheef of þe kyngis counceile T.    were þat tyme chief of þe kinges counseil R.      <sup>11</sup> the Erchebisshop T.      <sup>12</sup> *leaf* 113.

<sup>13</sup> and *sir* T.      <sup>14</sup> þe see TR.      <sup>15</sup> þan *om.* T.      <sup>16</sup> forsaide v. lordis T.

<sup>17</sup> aboute seide maden T.      <sup>18</sup> and T. & R.      <sup>19</sup> vnto þe T.

<sup>20</sup> þe T.    þo Kk.      <sup>21</sup> at Westminster was T.      <sup>22</sup> of *om.* T.

<sup>23</sup> vnto the T.      <sup>24</sup> and þanne T. & þanne R.      <sup>25</sup> to TR.

[*Jousts in Smithfield, A.D. 1388.*]

¶ In þis<sup>1</sup> forsaide parlement, and in þe xij yere of King  
 Richardeȝ regne, he let crye and ordeyne<sup>2</sup> generalle Iustize, þat is  
 called a turnement, of lordez, knyȝtis and skquiers. ¶ And þese  
 4 Iustes & turnement were holden at London in Smithfelde, for alle  
 maner of strayngers, of what londe &<sup>3</sup> cunetre þei<sup>4</sup> were, and<sup>5</sup>  
 þidir þei were riȝt welcome; and to hem and to alle oþer was  
 holden opon housholde and grete ffestis; and also grete yftis were  
 8 yeue to alle maner of straungers. And pay<sup>6</sup> of the kinges syde  
 were<sup>7</sup> alle of on<sup>8</sup> sute: her cotis, her armyour, scheldeȝ, & her<sup>9</sup>  
 hors &<sup>10</sup> trapure, alle<sup>11</sup> was white hertis, with crowneȝ about her  
 nekkis, and cheyneȝ of golde hangyng þere vp-on, and þe eroune  
 12 hangyng lowe before þe hertis body; þe which hert was þe kingeȝ  
 lyveray þat he yaf to lordez & ladieȝ, knyȝtis and skquiers, for to  
 know his housholde from oþer peple. ¶ And at þis first comyng to  
 her Iustes, xxiiij ladieȝ ladde þese xxiiij lordez of þe Garther with  
 16 cheynys of gookde, and alle yn þe same sute of hertis as is afore  
 sayde, from þe Tour on hors bak þrouȝ the cite of London yn-to  
 Smythfelde, þere þe Iustes schulde be do.<sup>12</sup> And þis fest and Iustes  
 was holde general, and<sup>13</sup> to alle þo þat wolde come, of what land or  
 20 nacion þat euȝr he<sup>14</sup> were; and þis<sup>15</sup> was holde duryng xxiiij  
 dayeȝ, of þe kingeȝ owne cost; and þese xxiiij lordez to answeȝe  
 to<sup>16</sup> alle maner of<sup>17</sup> pepil þat wolde come þidir. And þedir come þe  
 Erle of seint Poule of Fraunce, and mony oþer worthi knyȝtes with  
 24 hym of diuers parteyȝ, fful welle arayed.<sup>18</sup> And out of Holand &  
 Henaude come þe Lorde Ostrenaunde, þat was þe Dukeȝ sone of  
 Holande, & mony oþer worthi knyȝtes with hym, bothe<sup>19</sup> of Holand  
 & Henaude<sup>20</sup> fulle welle arayed. And whenne þese feste and  
 28 Iustes was do and<sup>21</sup> endid, þe King þanked þese st[r]ayngers and  
 yaf ham mony grete yeftis; and þanne þei token hir leue of þe  
 King & of oþer lordez and ladyeȝ, and went hom ayen yn-to her  
 owne cuntre, with grete loue & moche þanke.

32 ¶ And yn þe xiiij yere<sup>22</sup> of King Richardeȝ regne, þer was a

<sup>1</sup> this same T. þis same R.    <sup>2</sup> ordeyne a T.    <sup>3</sup> or TR.<sup>4</sup> what so euȝr þei T.    <sup>5</sup> of & T.    off and R.    <sup>6</sup> pay om. TR.<sup>7</sup> þey were R.    <sup>8</sup> on om. T.    o R.    <sup>9</sup> & her om. TR.    <sup>10</sup> & om. TR.<sup>11</sup> and alle T. & aȝ R.    <sup>12</sup> holde T.    <sup>13</sup> and om. T.<sup>14</sup> thei T.    þei R.    <sup>15</sup> þis om. T.    <sup>16</sup> to om. TR.    <sup>17</sup> of om. TR.<sup>18</sup> MS. Kk. wrongly inserts here ¶ And þeȝ Fest & Iustes was endid, þe king thankyd þese. And þes ffest & . . . þese om. TR.<sup>19</sup> bothe om. T.    <sup>20</sup> henaude om. T    <sup>21</sup> do and om. TR.<sup>22</sup> leaf 113, back.

batayle y<sup>1</sup>do yn the Kingis palis at Westmynstre, betwene a skquyer of Nauerne þat was *with* þe king, and anoper skquier þat me callid John Walsch, of<sup>2</sup> poyntis of treson þat þis Nauerner put vp-on þis Walsch; but þis Nauerner was ouercome, and yelde hym craunt to 4 his aduersarye, and anon he was dispoyled of his armyowr, and draw out of þe palis vnto Tyburne, and þere he was hangyd for his ffalsnesse.

¶ And þe xiiij yere of þe regne of King Richard, Ser John of 8 Gaunt, Duk of Lancastre, went ouyr se<sup>3</sup> yn-to Spayne,—for to chalenge his ryzt, þat he hadde be his wife; tytill, vnto þe croune of Spayngne,—with a gret ost of pepil, of men of arme; and archers. And he<sup>4</sup> had<sup>5</sup> with hym þe Duchesse, his wyff, and his 12 iij douztres, yn-to<sup>6</sup> Sp[a]yne, and þere<sup>7</sup> þay weryn a grete while. ¶ And at þe<sup>8</sup> last, þe King of Spayne began to trete with þe Duke of Lancastre, and þay were accorded to-gadir prou; hir boþe counsel, yn þis mauer: þat þe King of Spayne schulde wedde þe Duke; 16 douzter of<sup>9</sup> Lancastre, þat was þe<sup>10</sup> ryzt heire to Spayne, and<sup>11</sup> schulde yeue to<sup>12</sup> þe Duk of Lancastre golde and seluyr, þat was cast yn-to grete weggez, and mony oþir iewellis, as mony as viij Charietis myzt carye. ¶ And euery yere aftir, duryng þe lyff of þe 20 Duke of Lancastre and of the<sup>13</sup> Duchesse his wyff, .x. M<sup>t</sup> Marke of golde, þe which golde auenture and<sup>14</sup> charge; þay of Spayne schulde auenture and bryng yerley to<sup>15</sup> Baione to þe Dukes assygnez, be surete made. ¶ Also þe Duk of Lancastre maried anoper of his 24 douztres vnto þe King of Portingale þe same tyme. And whanne he hadde do þis,<sup>16</sup> he come hom ayen yn-to Engelond, and þe gode lady his wyff also; but mony a worthi man yn þat viage deid vpon þe Flix.<sup>17</sup>

28

¶ And yn þe xv yere of King Richarde; regne, he hilde his Cristismasse yn þe Maner of Wodestoke; and there þe Erle of Penbroke, a yong lorde, &<sup>18</sup> tendir of age, wolde lerne to Iuste with a kniȝt me<sup>19</sup> callid Ser Iohn Saint-Iohn, & redyn to gadir yn 32 þe park of Wodestoke; and þere þis worthi Erle of Pembroke was slayn *with* þat oþer knightes spere, as he cast hit fro hym whanne

<sup>1</sup> y om. TR.    <sup>2</sup> for T.    <sup>3</sup> þe see T.    <sup>4</sup> he om. T.    <sup>5</sup> ladde R.

<sup>6</sup> ouer þe see with him into T.

<sup>7</sup> and there T. and þere R. and Kk.    <sup>8</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>9</sup> of TR. om. Kk.    <sup>10</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>11</sup> and þe kyng of Spayne T.

<sup>12</sup> vnto TR.    <sup>13</sup> his T.    <sup>14</sup> and om. T.    <sup>15</sup> vnto R.

<sup>16</sup> þus T.    <sup>17</sup> viage vpon þe flixe died T.    <sup>18</sup> and a T.

<sup>19</sup> þat men T.    þat me R.

he<sup>1</sup> had cowped; and þus þis gode Erle made þere his ende; for whose dethe<sup>2</sup> þe King and the Quene made moche sorow.<sup>3</sup>

¶ And yn þe xvj yere of Kyng Richard his regne,<sup>4</sup> Iohn Hende  
4 beyng þat tyme Maire of London, and Iohn Walworth & Henry  
Vannere beyng scherreffes of London, þat<sup>5</sup> tyme a bakers man bare  
a basket of horsbred yn to Flet-strete, toward an ostrye hous; and  
þere come a yemon of þe Bischoppis of Salysbury, þat was callyd  
8 Romain, and he tok an horsloff out of þe basket of þe baker<sup>6</sup>; and  
he askyd hym 'whi he dede so.' And þis Romain turned ayen, and  
brak þe bakers hedde; and neybourez come out, and wolde haue  
restid þis Romaine; and he brak from ham and fledde yn-to þe  
12 lordez place. and þe counstabilis wolde haue hadde hym out; but þe  
Bischoppez men schitte þe zatis fast,<sup>7</sup> and kept þe place þat no man  
myzte entre. And þanne moch more pepil gadryd þedir, & saide  
þat 'þai wolde haue hym out, or<sup>8</sup> ellis þei wolde brenne vp þe place,  
16 and alle<sup>9</sup> that were with-ynne.' ¶ And þanne come þe Maire and<sup>10</sup>  
Schereffez, with opir myche pepill, and cecid þe malice of þe  
comynenez, and made euery man go<sup>11</sup> hom to his<sup>12</sup> hous, and kepe þe  
peeze. ¶ Thanne<sup>13</sup> þez Romaines lorde, þe Bishop of Salusbery, *Ser*  
20 Iohn Waltam (þat was þat tyme treserer of Engeland) went to *Ser*  
Thomas Arundel,<sup>14</sup> Archebischop of York, and also Chaun[ce]ller of  
Engelonde, and to hym made his complaynt<sup>15</sup> vpon þe peple of þe  
cite of London. ¶ And þanne þeze ij Bischoppez, of grete malice  
24 and vengeaunce, comyn vnto<sup>16</sup> the King to Wyndesore, and made a  
grete complaynte vpon the Maire and the Schereffes; and anon  
aftirward alle þe cite<sup>17</sup> was before þe King and his consel, and þai  
cast vn-to<sup>18</sup> ham a greuous herte, and wondir grete malice. ¶ And  
28 anon sodenly þe King sent for þe Maire of London & for þe ij  
scherreffez; and þai cam to<sup>19</sup> hym to þe Castell of Wyndesore.  
And þe King rebukyd þe Maire and þe scherreffes fulle foule, for þe  
offens þat þai hadde do ayens hym & his officers, yn his chaumbir  
32 of<sup>20</sup> London. ¶ Wherefore he deposid & put out the Mayre of

<sup>1</sup> þei TR.    <sup>2</sup> eende and þerfore T.    <sup>3</sup> sorow for his deeth T.

<sup>4</sup> of kyng Richardis reigne T.    yeer of king Richardis regne R.    his regne Kk.

<sup>5</sup> þe same TR.    <sup>6</sup> þe bakers basket T.

<sup>7</sup> fast om. T.    shette faste þe yatis R.    <sup>8</sup> and R.    <sup>9</sup> *leaf* 114.

<sup>10</sup> and þe TR.    <sup>11</sup> to gone T.    <sup>12</sup> her T.    <sup>13</sup> And thanne T.

<sup>14</sup> of Arundeþ T.

<sup>15</sup> and þere þe bisshop made his compleynt vnto þe chaunceler T.    an pere made his complaynt to him R.

<sup>16</sup> to T.    <sup>17</sup> anon aft þe Citee aftirward T.    <sup>18</sup> to T.

<sup>19</sup> vnto T.    <sup>20</sup> at TR.

London<sup>1</sup> and þe ij<sup>2</sup> Scherrevez; and þis was don xiiij<sup>3</sup> dayez afore þe Fest of saint Iohn the Baptist. ¶ And þanne þe King callyd to hym a knyzt þat me called *Ser* Edward Valyngrygge,<sup>4</sup> and made hym warden and gouernoure of þe cite, & Chaumbyr of 4 London, and ouyr alle his pepil þereynne; and so he kept þat office but iiij wokis, because he was so tendir and gentill vn-to þe cetezens of London; wherfore þe King deposyd hym, and made *Ser* Bawdewyn Radyngton, knyzt, þat was Countroller of þe Kingis Hous- 8 holde, wardeyne and gouernoure of his chaumbyr, and of his<sup>5</sup> peple þerynne; and ehese vnto hym to worthi men of þe cite to be Schereviȝ with hym, for to gouerne & kepe þe kingez lawez yn the cite; & on me called Gylbert Maghfelde, and þat oper, Thomas 12 Newnton, And þeze iiij gode men hadde þe gouernaunce of þe cite vn-to þe tyme of þe Maires eleccion þanne next,<sup>6</sup> þat was called William Stawnden<sup>7</sup>; And þis Gilbert Maghfelde & Thomas Newnton, schereff. ¶ And þanne þe Mayre & þe ij schirrevez, 16 and alle þe aldermen, with alle þe worthi craftis of London, went on fote vn to þe Tour; and þere came out þe Counstable of þe Tour, and yaff þe Maire and þe Scherrevez her othe, and charge,<sup>8</sup> as þay scholde haue take yn the Chequer at<sup>9</sup> Westmynstre yn 20 þe Kingez Court of his Iustizes & Barons of the sayde<sup>10</sup> Cheker; and þanne went thay whom ayenne.

¶ And þanne þe King and his Counsel, for grete malice of þe Cite of London, and<sup>11</sup> despite, remeid alle his Courtez fro<sup>12</sup> West- 24 mynstre vn-to þe cete of Yorke, þat is to say, þe Chauncerie, þe Cheker, þe<sup>13</sup> Kingez Bench, and also þe Comyn Place, and þere þay hilde alle her<sup>14</sup> Courtis of Law fro mydsomer vn-to<sup>15</sup> þe fest of Cristismesse next comyng. ¶ And þanne þe King & his counsel 28 sawe it not so profitable þere, as it was at London; þanne anon he removid hit ayen to<sup>17</sup> London, and so to Westmynstre, for gret ese of his officers and avauntage of<sup>18</sup> þe King and of<sup>19</sup> alle þe comyns of þe Reme. 32

¶ And whenne þe<sup>20</sup> peple of London sawe & knew þat þese

<sup>1</sup> of London *om.* TR.    <sup>2</sup> and boþe TR.    and for the ij Kk.    <sup>3</sup> a xiiij T.

<sup>4</sup> Walyngregge T.    Walingrugge R.    <sup>5</sup> þe TR.    <sup>6</sup> next þanne T.

<sup>7</sup> William Staundon was chosen mayre T.    nexte William Staundon chosen meire R.

<sup>8</sup> hir charge and oth R.    <sup>9</sup> of T.    <sup>10</sup> sayde *om.* TR.    <sup>11</sup> and for R.

<sup>12</sup> from T.    fro R.    for Kk.    <sup>13</sup> and þe T.    <sup>14</sup> þese T.    his R.

<sup>15</sup> midsummer that is to saie þe feste of seynt Iohn þe Baptist vnto T.

<sup>16</sup> leaf 114. back.    <sup>17</sup> vnto TR.    <sup>18</sup> for R.    <sup>19</sup> of *om.* TR.

<sup>20</sup> þe *om.* TR.



courtis were come ayen, and þe King and his peple also,<sup>1</sup> þanne þe Maire and þe Aldermen, with þe Cheff<sup>2</sup> comyns, let gadir a grete summe of goolde of alle þe comyns of the cite, & ordeyned & made  
 4 grete rialte ayens his comyng to London, for<sup>3</sup> to haue his grace and gode<sup>4</sup> lordeschip, and also her liberteis and Fraunchezes graunted vnto ham ayen as þai afore tyme hadde. And þann, by grete instaunce and prair of Quene Anne, and of oþer<sup>5</sup> lordez and  
 8 ladez, þe King graunted hem grace: and þis was do at Schene yn Sothereye. ¶ And þan<sup>6</sup> þe King with-ynne ij<sup>7</sup> dayez aftir, com to London; and þe Maire of London,<sup>8</sup> schereue, aldremen,<sup>9</sup> and alle þe worthi cite aftirward, redyn ayens þe King yn gode araye vnto  
 12 þe heth on þis syde þe maner of Schene, submittyng humyly hem self,<sup>10</sup> and mekely, with<sup>11</sup> almaner of<sup>12</sup> obeysaunce vn-to hym, as þay owed to<sup>13</sup> do. And þus þai brouzt þe King and þe Quene to London. ¶ And whanne þe King come to þe gate of þe Brygge of  
 16 London, þere þay presentid hym with a mylke-white stede, sadelled and brydilled, & trapped with white cloth of golde and red parted togadir, and þe Quene a palfraye alle white, trappid yn þe same aray<sup>14</sup> with white and rede, and þe<sup>15</sup> conditez of London Ronnen  
 20 white<sup>16</sup> wyne and rede, for al maner pepill to drynke of. ¶ And betuene Seint Poulez and the Cros yn Chepe, þere was made a stage, a ryalle, stondyng vpon hygh; a[n]d þerynne were mony angelis, with dyuers melodie; and songe; and an<sup>17</sup> aungell come  
 24 doun<sup>18</sup> fro þe stage on high, by a vice, and sette a crowne of golde & precious stone; & perles apon þe Kinges hed, and anoþer on<sup>19</sup> the Quenes hed; and so the citezenys brought þe King and þe Quene vnto Westmynstre, yn-to his palice at<sup>20</sup> Westmynstre, & presentyd  
 28 hym with ij basyns of syluyr, & ovirgilte, fulle of coyned golde, the summa of xx m<sup>+</sup> li,<sup>21</sup> prayng hym, of his<sup>22</sup> mercy and lordschip and specialle grace,<sup>23</sup> þat þay myzt haue his gode loue, and<sup>24</sup> libertee; & Fraunchezes like as þay hadde before tyme; and by his lettre;

<sup>1</sup> also *om.* T.    <sup>2</sup> cheff *om.* T.    <sup>3</sup> and for T.    <sup>4</sup> his good TR.

<sup>5</sup> of her T. hir R.    <sup>6</sup> þan *om.* T.    <sup>7</sup> a ij T.    <sup>8</sup> london with þe T.

<sup>9</sup> aldremen *om.* T.    <sup>10</sup> hem humbely T. submittinge ham humbely R.

<sup>11</sup> with *om.* T.    <sup>12</sup> of *om.* TR.    <sup>13</sup> for to T.

<sup>14</sup> white and in þe same aray trappid T. and in the same aray trapped R.

<sup>15</sup> also þe T.    <sup>16</sup> with white T. alle þe R.    <sup>17</sup> oon T.

<sup>18</sup> a downe T.    <sup>19</sup> Crowne vpon T. crowne vpon R.

<sup>20</sup> paleys And þanne on þe morne aftir þe mayre and þe sherefis and þe Aldermen of london come vnto þe kyng into his paleys at T. Palis. And þanne on þe morow aftir þe meir and þe sherevis and þe aldremen of london com vnto þe king in his Paleis at R.    <sup>21</sup> xxM<sup>+</sup> pound T.

<sup>22</sup> his hie TR.    <sup>23</sup> of his grace T.    <sup>24</sup> and leve and R.

patentez confermed.<sup>1</sup> ¶ And þe Quene, and oþer worthi lordez & ladiez, fillyn on hir<sup>2</sup> kneys, and besouzt þe King of grace to conferme þis. Thanne þe King toke vp þe Quene, and grauntyd hir alle hir askyng, and þanne þei þanked þe King and þe Quene and 4 went home ayene.

¶ And yn þe xvij<sup>3</sup> yere of his regne,<sup>4</sup> certeyne lordez of Scotlande com yn-to Englonde to gete worschip, as by feet of armez: þese<sup>5</sup> were þe persons: þe Erle of Marre, and<sup>6</sup> chalanged the Erle 8 Marchall of Englonde to Iuste with hym certeyn poynte; on horsbak with scharpe speris. And so þai redyn togadir, as ij worthi knyztis & lordes, certayne cours, but not þe fulle chalange þat þe Scottysche Erle made; for he was cast both hors and man, and ij 12 of his rybbis brokyn with þe<sup>7</sup> ffalle; and so he was born out of Smythfelde, hom yn-to his Inne; and with-ynne a litil while aftirward<sup>8</sup> he was caried homwarde yn a liter; & atte York he<sup>9</sup> deied. ¶ And Ser William Darell, knyzt, and<sup>10</sup> banerrer of Scotland, 16 made anoþer chalange with Sire<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>Piers Courteneye, knyzt; and þe Kinges banerrer of Englonde, of<sup>13</sup> certeyne course; hit on horsbak yn þe same ffelde. ¶ And whanne he hed y<sup>14</sup>rede certeyne cours hit, and saw he myzt not haue<sup>15</sup> þe bettyr, yaf<sup>16</sup> it ouyr, and wolde 20 no more of his chalang, and<sup>17</sup> turned his hors and rode hom vnto his owne in.<sup>18</sup> And one Koeborne, squier, of Scotland, chalanged Sir<sup>19</sup> Nicholl Hawberke, knyzt, of certeyne cours, hit with scharp speris on horsbak; and redyn .v. cours hit togadir; and att euery cours 24 þe Scotte was cast down,<sup>20</sup> both hors and man; and þus our Englisch lordez;<sup>21</sup>—þankyd be God!—had þe fælde.

¶ And yn þe xvij<sup>22</sup> yere of King Richardes regne, deied þe gode gracious Quene Anne, þat was wiff to King Richard, yn þe 28 maner of Schene, yn þe schire of Surreie, vp-on Whitsonday. þanne<sup>23</sup> was sche brozt to London, and so to Westmynstre; and þere was sche y<sup>24</sup>beryed and worthily entered, besyde saint Edwardes schryne; on whose soule Almyti God haue mercy and pite! 32 amen! <sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and patentis And her chartir confermyd T.      <sup>2</sup> hir om. TR.

<sup>3</sup> xvj T.

<sup>4</sup> of kyng Richardis reigne T.    yeer of king Richardis Regne R.

<sup>5</sup> And þese T.      <sup>6</sup> and he T.    & he R.      <sup>7</sup> þat T.

<sup>8</sup> litiH tyme after T.    alitil tyme aftir R.      <sup>9</sup> þere he TR.      <sup>10</sup> þe T.

<sup>11</sup> sir T.    sir R.    sixe Kk.      <sup>12</sup> leaf 115.      <sup>13</sup> of TR.      <sup>14</sup> y om. TR.

<sup>15</sup> not haue TR.    haue Kk.      <sup>16</sup> he yaf TR.      <sup>17</sup> but T.      <sup>18</sup> his Inne T.

<sup>19</sup> sir T.    sir R.    for Kk.      <sup>20</sup> adoun) TR.      <sup>21</sup> men R.      <sup>22</sup> xvij T.

<sup>23</sup> And þanne TR.      <sup>24</sup> y om. TR.      <sup>25</sup> amen om. T.

How King Richarde spoused dame Isabell, þe Kingis douȝtir of  
 Fraunce, yn the towne of Caleys, and brouȝt hir yn-to  
 Engelond, and let croune hir Quene yn þe Abbey of Saint  
 4 Petris of Westmynstre. *Capitulum ccxlj.*<sup>1</sup>

In þe xx<sup>ti</sup> yere of King Richardeȝ regne, he went ouyr se<sup>2</sup> to  
 Caleys, with dukis, Erlis, lordis, and Barons, and mony oþer worthi  
 squyers, yn grete aray, and comyn pepil of þe Reme yn gode aray,  
 8 as longith to such a worþi king and prynee, of his nobley<sup>3</sup> to do  
 hym reverence and obseruaunce, as owed<sup>4</sup> to be do to<sup>5</sup> hir liege  
 lorde, and so myȝty a King and Emperour yn his owne, to abyde and  
 reseceyve there þat worthi & gracious lady þat schulde be his wif, a  
 12 yong creature of ix yere of age, Dame Isabell, þe Kingis douȝtir of  
 Fraunce, and mony<sup>6</sup> worthi lordiȝ of grete name, bothe Barons and  
 knyȝtis, with moche oþer pepil þat comen vn to þe toun of Grauen-  
 yng, and ij Dukis of Fraunce: þat on was þe Duk of Burgoyne,  
 16 and þat oþer, Duk<sup>7</sup> of Barre, þat wolde no firþer lasse þanne þey  
 hadde pleggeȝ for<sup>8</sup> ham. And þanne King Richarde delyuered ij  
 pleggeȝ for ham to goo saaf and come saaf: his ij worthi vneleȝ, þe  
 Duk of Glowcestre and þe Duk of York. And þei ij went ouer þe  
 20 watir of Grauenyng, & abiden þere as for<sup>9</sup> pleggeȝ, vnto þe tyme  
 þat þe Maryage and þe fest were do.<sup>10</sup> ¶ And þanne þeze ij worthi  
 Dukis of Fraunce<sup>11</sup> come ovir þe water at Grauenyng, and so to  
 Caleis, with þe<sup>12</sup> worschepful lady, Dame Isabell, þe<sup>13</sup> Kingis  
 24 douȝtir of Fraunce. And with hir come mony a worthi lorde and  
 lady,<sup>14</sup> knyȝtis and squyers, yn þe best aray þat myȝt be; and þere  
 þai mette with our meyne at Caleys, þe which welcomyd hir and hir  
 meyne with þe grettest<sup>15</sup> honour and reuerence þat myȝt be, and  
 28 so brouȝt hir to<sup>16</sup> Caleys toun. And þere sche was reseceyvid with  
 alle þe solempnite and worschip þat myȝt be do vnto<sup>17</sup> such a lady.  
 And þanne þei brouȝt hir vnto þe King; and þe King toke hir,  
 and welcomed hir and alle hir fayr mayne,<sup>18</sup> and made þere alle þe  
 32 solempnite<sup>19</sup> þat myȝt be do. ¶ And þanne þe King and his  
 counsel axed of the Frensche lordeȝ<sup>20</sup> whethir alle þe conauntes and

<sup>1</sup> cc<sup>o</sup> T. ccxlj R.      <sup>2</sup> went him ouer þe see T. þe See R.

<sup>3</sup> nobley and of his owen persone T. nobleie and of his owen persone R.

<sup>4</sup> owith T.      <sup>5</sup> vnto T.      <sup>6</sup> many oþer TR.      <sup>7</sup> þe Duke R.

<sup>8</sup> of R.      <sup>9</sup> for þe Kk. þe om. TR.      <sup>10</sup> was done T. was do R. were Kk.

<sup>11</sup> of Fraunce om. T.      <sup>12</sup> this T. þis R.      <sup>13</sup> þat is þe T.

<sup>14</sup> and eek lady and T.      <sup>15</sup> beste TR.

<sup>16</sup> brought into T. hir into R.      <sup>17</sup> to R.      <sup>18</sup> maynce T.

<sup>19</sup> leaf 115, back.      <sup>20</sup> men and lordis R.

forwarde<sup>3</sup>, with þe composicion þat were ordeyned and made on bothe parteys, schulde be trewly kept and holde betwene hem; and þai sayde “ye”; & þere þay sworon and token<sup>1</sup> hir charge apou a boke, and toke<sup>2</sup> hir oth welle and trewli it<sup>3</sup> to holde yn alle 4 maner poyntis and couenauntes, without contradiccion or delay yn euery<sup>4</sup> maner wyse. And þanne was sche brouzt to<sup>5</sup> Seint Nicholas chirch yn Calis; and þere sche was worthili weddyd, with þe moste<sup>6</sup> solempnite þat eny king or<sup>7</sup> quene myzt haue, with arche- 8 bischoppes and Bischope<sup>3</sup>, and alle<sup>8</sup> mynystre<sup>3</sup> of holy church. ¶ And þanne were þai<sup>9</sup> brouzt hom vnto<sup>10</sup> þe Castell, and set<sup>11</sup> to mete, and þere<sup>12</sup> were serued with alle maner of delicace<sup>3</sup> of alle<sup>13</sup> riall metis and drynkis plenteuously, to alle maner of strayingoure<sup>3</sup> 12 and al oper. And no creature<sup>14</sup> warned þat Fest, but alle were welcome; for þere were grete halys & tentis sette vp on þe grene without þe castell, for<sup>15</sup> to resceyue alle maner of peple, and euery office redy to serue ham alle; and þus þis worthi mariage was 16 solemli do and ended with alle ryalte.

¶ Thanne<sup>16</sup> þese ij Dukys of Fraunce, with hir peple, tokon hir leue of þe King and<sup>17</sup> Quene, and went ayen to Grauenyng watir; and þere þe Frensch lordez, þat is to say, þe ij Dukis &<sup>18</sup> hir meyne, 20 were comen ouir þe watir of Grauenyng, & þere þay mette, & euerych toke leue of oper; and so þai departed, and our lordez come ayen to Caleys, and þe Frensch lordez went hom ayen<sup>19</sup> yn-to Fraunce. 24

And<sup>20</sup> anon aftir, þe King made hym redy<sup>21</sup> with þe Quene and alle his lordez and<sup>22</sup> oper pepil with ham, & comyn ouyr þe see yn-to Engeland, and so to London, and þe Maire and þe Scherevez, with al þe aldermen and worthi comyne<sup>3</sup>, ryden ayens ham vnto þe 28 Blacke-Heþ yn Kent; & þere þay mettyn with þe King and þe Quene, and welcomyd ham, and þat yn gode aray, and euery man in his cloþing of his crafte, and her<sup>23</sup> mynstrelles to-fore ham; and so þay brouzt ham to Saint George<sup>3</sup> Barre yn Southwerke; and þere 32

<sup>1</sup> and token T. and took R. and Kk.      <sup>2</sup> made TR.      <sup>3</sup> hir T.

<sup>4</sup> any T. eny R.      <sup>5</sup> vnto TR.      <sup>6</sup> with moche T.      <sup>7</sup> and T.

<sup>8</sup> alle om. T.      <sup>9</sup> þai om. TR.      <sup>10</sup> to T.

<sup>11</sup> sett T. set R. for Kk.      <sup>12</sup> þere þei T.      <sup>13</sup> alle om. R.

<sup>14</sup> creature was T.      <sup>15</sup> for om. TR.      <sup>16</sup> and T.      <sup>17</sup> and þe T.

<sup>18</sup> and aft T. and alle R.

<sup>19</sup> wenten ouyr þe watir and so home T. wenten ouer þe watir and so hom in to ffrance ayen. R.

<sup>20</sup> ayen And T.      <sup>21</sup> him redy T. made him redy R. hym Kk.

<sup>22</sup> and ladies and T. & ladies & alle R.      <sup>23</sup> here T.

hy<sup>1</sup> tokyn hir leue, and þe King and þe Quene redyn to Kenyngton; and þanne þe peple of London turned hom ayen. And yn turnyng ayen to London brygge, þere was so moche prees both on fote & on hors,<sup>2</sup> þat þere were ded on þe brygge a<sup>3</sup> xj persone; of men,<sup>4</sup> wymmen & chyldryn: on whose soules God haue mercy! amen! ¶ And þanne aftirward þe Quene was brouzt to the Tour of London, and þere<sup>5</sup> sche was al nyzt. And on þe morowe<sup>6</sup> sche was brouzt þrouz þe Cete of London, and<sup>7</sup> so forth to<sup>8</sup> Westminster, & þere sche was crownded Quene of Engelande. þan<sup>9</sup> was sche brouzt ayen yn-to the Kingis Palis, and þere was<sup>10</sup> holde an opon & a ryall Fest after<sup>11</sup> hir coronacion, for al maner peple<sup>12</sup> þat þedir come: and þus<sup>13</sup> was do þe Sonday afftir þe Fest of seint Clement, in þe xx yere of King Richarde; regne.

And þan, þe xxv day of august next folouyng, be euyl excitacion & ffals counsel, & for grete wrathe<sup>14</sup> and malice þat he had of olde tyme vnto his vncl, þe gode Duke of Gloucester, and to þe Erle of Arundel, & to þe Erle of Warwic, ¶ The King, by is<sup>15</sup> euylle counsell, late yn the Euenyng on þe same day aboue saide, made hym redy with his streynthe, and rode yn-to Essex vnto þe toune of Chelmesforde, and so come to Plassche sodenly, þere Ser Thomas of Wodestoke, þe gode Duk of Gloucestre, lay. And þe gode Duk come anon to welcome þe King<sup>16</sup>; and þe King hym self<sup>17</sup> arestid þe gode<sup>18</sup> Duke<sup>19</sup>; and so he was ladde down to þe water, and anon put yn to a schippe, and<sup>20</sup> had vnto Caleis, and brouzt vnto<sup>21</sup> capteynys warde, to be kept yn holde be þe Kinges commaundement of Engeland: ¶ And þat tyme þe Erle Marchal of Engeland was capten of Caleis. ¶ And anon aftir,<sup>22</sup> be commaundement of þe King and of<sup>23</sup> his fals Counsel, commaunded þe capten to put hym to<sup>24</sup> deth. ¶ And anon certeyn yemen<sup>25</sup> þat had þe gode Duk yn kepyng, tooke her counsel how þei<sup>26</sup> wolde put hym to<sup>27</sup> deth; and þis was her poyntment: þat þai schulde come vpon hym whanne he were yn<sup>28</sup> bedde, and aslepe on a Fetherbed. And anon þei bonde hym honde and<sup>29</sup> foot,<sup>30</sup> & chargid hym to ly

<sup>1</sup> thei T. þey R.<sup>2</sup> on hors and on foote T. boþe on hors and on fote R. <sup>3</sup> a om. TR.<sup>4</sup> men and T. <sup>5</sup> and þere R. and Kk. <sup>6</sup> morne TR.<sup>7</sup> aft ouer and T. <sup>8</sup> vnto T. <sup>9</sup> And þanne TR.<sup>10</sup> was TR. was sche Kk. <sup>11</sup> at TR. <sup>12</sup> of peple T. <sup>13</sup> this T. þis R.<sup>14</sup> leaf 116. <sup>15</sup> his T. <sup>16</sup> duke come to euyl come þe kyng anon T.<sup>17</sup> hym self om. T. <sup>18</sup> goode om. R. <sup>19</sup> duke him silf his owen bodi T.<sup>20</sup> and anon T. <sup>21</sup> into þe TR. <sup>22</sup> after sende a T. <sup>23</sup> bi TR.<sup>24</sup> to þe T. <sup>25</sup> anon þo men T. <sup>26</sup> þat þei TR.<sup>27</sup> to þe T. vnto R. <sup>28</sup> a R. <sup>29</sup> and om. R. <sup>30</sup> foot and hond T.

style; and whanne þai hadde þis<sup>1</sup> do, þe<sup>2</sup> tokyn ij smale tewellys, and made on ham<sup>3</sup> rydyng knottis, and caste þe tewellys aboute þe Dukis nek: and þanne þei token þe fetherbed þat lay vnder hym, and cast hit aboute hym; and þan þei drowen her towellis eche 4 waye; and sum lay vpon þe fethir bed apon hym, vnto þe tyme þat he were ded, because þat he schulde make non noyse. And þus þei strangled þis worthi Duk vn[to] the deth, on whose soule God, for<sup>4</sup> his pite, haue merci! Amen! ¶ And whenne þe King 8 hadde arestid þis worthi Duke, and his owne vncl, and sent hym to Caleis, he come ayen to London yn alle hast, with a wondir grete peple. And as<sup>5</sup> he was come, he sent for the Erle of Arundel and for the gode Erle of Warwic; and anon as þay cam,<sup>6</sup> he arestid 12 ham<sup>7</sup> his owne self. Sir Iohn Cobham<sup>8</sup> & Ser Iohn Cheyny, knyztis, he arestid also yn þe same wyse,<sup>8</sup> til he made his parlement; & anon þei were put ynto holde. But þe Erle of Arundel went at large vnto þe parlement tyme, for he founde sufficient 16 surete to abyde þe lawe, & al maner of answer at þe<sup>9</sup> poynte; þat þe King & his Counsel wolde put vp on hym.

<sup>10</sup> Off þe grete parlement, and of þe deth of þe Erle of Arundell; and how þe Erle of Derby and oþer were exiled, and þe 20 sayde Erle come ayen ynto þis londe; and how King Richarde went ynto Ireland, and how he deide.<sup>10</sup> *Capitulum cexlij.*<sup>11</sup>

And yn the xxj yere of King Richarde's regne, he ordend a<sup>12</sup> par- 24 lement at Westmynstre, þe which was clepid 'þe Grete Parlement'; and this parlement was made for to iugge þese ij worthi lordez; and oþer moo, as ham lust<sup>13</sup> at þat<sup>14</sup> tyme. ¶ And for þat iugement þe king let make in alle hast a long and a large hous of tymbir, 28 The which was called an hale, and couered with tyle; ouyr; and it was opyn al aboute on bothe syde; and at þe endis, þat al maner of men myzt se þrouzout; and þere þe dome was holden<sup>15</sup> vpon þese forsaiide lordez, and iugement yeue at this forsaiide parlement. 32 ¶ And for to come to<sup>16</sup> þis parlement þe King sent his writtis vnto

<sup>1</sup> þus R.      <sup>2</sup> do thus thei T.      þey R.      <sup>3</sup> hem ij T.      ham ij R.

<sup>4</sup> of T.      <sup>5</sup> as sone as T.      <sup>6</sup> þei were come T.

<sup>7</sup> hem bope T.      ham bope R.

<sup>8-8</sup> and he arestid also sir Iohn Cobham and sir Iohn Cheyne knyghtis T.      manere R.

<sup>9</sup> to alle T.

<sup>10-10</sup> Off þe grete parlement . . . deide om. TR.

<sup>11</sup> cexlij R.

<sup>12</sup> him a T.

<sup>13</sup> list TR.

<sup>14</sup> this T.

<sup>15</sup> leaf 116, back.

<sup>16</sup> vnto TR.

euery lorde, Baron, kniȝt and squier, in euery schire þrouȝout  
 Engelond; and þat euery lorde schulde grade and bryng his retynu  
 of peple with hym,<sup>1</sup> yn as schort tyme and the<sup>2</sup> best aray þat þay  
 4 myȝt gete, in maynteynyng and streyngthyng of þe King ayens  
 ham þat were his enymys, and þat þis were do yn alle haste, and  
 þei<sup>3</sup> to come to hym yn peyne of deth. ¶ And þe kyng hym self  
 sent ynto<sup>4</sup> Chestirschire, vnto þe Chefteynes of þat cuntre, and þay  
 8 gaged and brouȝt a grete and an huge multitude of peple, bothe of  
 knyȝtis & of<sup>5</sup> Squyers, & prynspally of yemen of Chestreschire, þe  
 which yemen and archers þe Kyng toke yn-to<sup>6</sup> his owne court, &  
 yaf ham bothe<sup>7</sup> boȝe<sup>8</sup> of court and gode wageȝ, to be kepers of his  
 12 owne body, both be nyȝt and be day, above alle oþer persons, and  
 most ham<sup>9</sup> loued & best trust. ¶ The which sone aftirwarde  
 turned þe King to gret losse, schame, hyndryng, and his vttyrly  
 vndoing and destroccon, as ye schalle here sone aftirward.  
 16 ¶ And þat tyme come *Ser* Henry, Erle of Derby, with a grete  
 meyne of men of armeȝ and archers; and þe Erle of Ruthlande  
 come with a strong pouer of peple, bothe of men of armeȝ and  
 archers; and the Erle of Kent brouȝt with hym<sup>10</sup> a grete power of  
 20 men of armeȝ and archers; The Erle Marchalle come yn þe same  
 wyse;<sup>11</sup> The Lord Spenser yn the same maner; The Erle of North-  
 ombirland and *Ser* Harry Peerey his sone, & *Ser* Thomas Perci, þe  
 Erleȝ broþer; & alle<sup>12</sup> þeze worthi lordiȝ brouȝtyn a fayre mayne  
 24 and a strong power, & ech man yn his best aray; And þe Duk of  
 Lancastre and þe Duk of York comyn yn þe same maner *with men*  
 of armeȝ and archers, folouyng þe King; and *Ser* William Scrop,  
 Tresorer of Engelande, come yn þe same maner. ¶ And þus, yn  
 28 þis aray, comyn alle þe worthi men of þis londe vnto our King;  
 and alle þis peple come to London yn on day, yn so moche þat<sup>13</sup>  
 euery strete & lane yn London & yn þe sowthbarbez weren fulle of  
 ham logged, and .x. or xij myle about London euery way. And  
 32 þis<sup>14</sup> pepil brouȝt þe King to Westmynstre, and went hom ayen  
 vnto hir loggyng, bothe hors & man. ¶ And þan on þe Monday,  
 þe xviij day of Septembre, þe parlement began at Westminster, þe  
 which was clepyd “þe grete parlement”; and on þe Fryday next  
 36 folowyng, þe Erle of Arundel was brouȝt yn-to<sup>15</sup> parlement

<sup>1</sup> retenu *with him* of peple R.<sup>2</sup> in þe T. in the R.<sup>3</sup> þei *om.* T.<sup>4</sup> to T.<sup>5</sup> of *om.* R.<sup>6</sup> vnto T.<sup>7</sup> bothe *om.* TR.<sup>8</sup> bouche T.<sup>9</sup> ham *om.* TR.<sup>10</sup> with hym *om.* TR.<sup>11</sup> manere TR.<sup>12</sup> alle *om.* T. I alle R.<sup>13</sup> in R.<sup>14</sup> þese T.<sup>15</sup> in to þe R.

among alle þe lordez,—and þat was on<sup>1</sup> saint Matheweȝ day þe Apostyll & euaungelist,—&<sup>2</sup> þere was<sup>3</sup> foriuged vnto the deth in þis<sup>4</sup> hale, þat was made yn þe palis at Westmynstre. And þis was his Iugement: he<sup>5</sup> scholde go on fote, with his handeȝ y<sup>6</sup>bounde 4 be-hynde hym, from þe place þat he was foriuged ynne, and so forthe þrouȝ þe cite of London vnto þe Toure hyll, and there his hed to be smetyn of; and so<sup>7</sup> it was do yn dede yn þe same place. ¶ And vj. of þe grete lordez þat sat on his Iugement redyn 8 with hym vnto þe<sup>8</sup> place there he was do vnto<sup>9</sup> deth. And to se þat<sup>10</sup> þe execussion were y<sup>11</sup>do aftir his<sup>12</sup> dome, and by þe Kingis commaundement went with hem<sup>13</sup> on fote men of armeȝ and archers, a grete multitude of Chestirschire men yn streynghthyng of the lordez 12 þat brouȝt þis erle vnto his deth, for þai draddyn þat þe erle schulde haue be rescued and take fro ham, whanne þay come yn-to London. ¶ Thus he passed forth þurgh þe cite vnto his deth; and þere he toke it full paciently; on whose soul God haue mercy! amen! 16 ¶ And þanne come þe frere<sup>14</sup> Austyns, and toke vp the body and þe hed of þis gode Erle, and bare it whome yn-to<sup>15</sup> hir hous, and buried hym yn hir quere. ¶ And yn<sup>16</sup> þe morow<sup>17</sup> aftir, was Ser Richearde, Erle of Warwic, brouȝt yn-to þe parlement, þere as þe 20 Erle of Arundel was foriuged; and þai yaf þe Erle of Warwic þe same Iugement þat þe forsaide erle hadde; but þe lordez had compassion on<sup>18</sup> hym because he was of grete<sup>19</sup> age, and releeyd hym to perpetuall pryson, and put hym yn-to<sup>20</sup> þe Ile of Man. ¶ And 24 þanne the Mondaye next aftir, þe lorde Cobban of Kent, Ser Iohn Cheyne,<sup>21</sup> knyȝt, were broȝt yn-to þe parlement, yn-to<sup>22</sup> þe same hale; and þere þay were Iugid to be hangyd & draw; but, þrouȝ þe prayer and grete Instaunce of alle þe lordez, þat Iugement was 28 foryeue ham, and releeyd to perpetual prison.

¶ And þis same tyme was Richard Whityngton, Meyre of London; and Iohn Wodekoc and William Askam, schereveȝ of London; and þai ordeined, at every yate and yn every warde, 32 strong wacche of men of armeȝ and of archers, and prinspally at every yate of London, duryng þis<sup>23</sup> same parlement.

<sup>1</sup> on TR. of Kk.      <sup>2</sup> & om. T.      <sup>3</sup> he was T.      <sup>4</sup> his T.      <sup>5</sup> þat he T.

<sup>6</sup> y om. TR.      <sup>7</sup> so om. T.      <sup>8</sup> leaf 117.      <sup>9</sup> vnto þe T.

<sup>10</sup> þat om. R.      <sup>11</sup> y om. TR.      <sup>12</sup> hir TR.      <sup>13</sup> with hem wenten T.

<sup>14</sup> freres of T.      <sup>15</sup> home vnto TR.      <sup>16</sup> on R.      <sup>17</sup> on þe morne T.

<sup>18</sup> of TR.      <sup>19</sup> more TR.      <sup>20</sup> to om. TR.

<sup>21</sup> ser Iohn Cheyne . . . turned hem omitted in R to page 358, line 30.

<sup>22</sup> to om. T.      <sup>23</sup> þe T.



¶ The King at þis parlement<sup>1</sup> made .v. Dukis, a Duchasse, & a Markeȝ, & iiij Erleȝ; & þe first of ham was þe Erle of Derby, & he was made Duke of Hereforde; and þe ij was þe Erle of Ruth-  
 4 land, and he was made Duke of Awmarle: þe iij was þe Erle of Kent, & he was made Duke of Surreye; and þe iiij was þe<sup>2</sup> Erle of Hontyngton, and he was made Duke of Excestre; and þe .v.<sup>3</sup> þe Erle of Notyngham, and he was made Duke of Norfolk; and<sup>4</sup>  
 8 þe Erle of Somersete was<sup>5</sup> made þe Markeys of Dorset; & the Lord Spenser was made Erle of Gloucestre, and þe Lorde Neuple of Rabye was made Erle of Westmerland; & Ser Thomas Percy was made Erle of Worscetir, and Ser William Scrope, þat was Treserer of  
 12 Engelonde, he was made<sup>6</sup> Erle of Salysburye. ¶ And whanne þe King had þis<sup>7</sup> do, he helde at<sup>8</sup> þe parlement a<sup>9</sup> rial ffeest vnto all his lordez, and to al maner of pepil þat þidir wolde come.

¶ And yn þe<sup>10</sup> same yere deyed Ser Iohn of Gaunt, þe Kinges  
 16 vncl, & Duke of Lancastre, yn the bischoppeȝ In yn Holborn, and was brout fro þenneȝ to Saint Poulez and þere þe King made & hilde his terement welle & worthily with all his lordez,<sup>11</sup> and þere he was beryed besyde Dame Blauneh his wiff, þat was douȝtur &  
 20 heyre to þe gode Henry, þat was Duke of Lancastre.

[*The Fight between Bolingbroke and Norfolk stopt.*]

¶ And yn the same yere þer fil a discencyon and a debate betuene þe Duk of Herford & þe Duke of Norfolk, yn so moche þat þay waged batayle & cast down her gloues; & þanne þey<sup>12</sup> were  
 24 take vp and<sup>13</sup> seled, and the day & þe place of batayle assygned at Couyntre.<sup>14</sup> and þedir come þe King and<sup>15</sup> alle his lordez at þat<sup>16</sup> day, and was sette yn þe ffeelde; and þan þeze ij worthi lordez comyn yn to þe ffeelde, clene armed and wel arayed with alle her wepon,  
 28 and redy to do her batayle, and were yn the place redy to fȝt at þe vttest. ¶ But þe King bade hem cese, and tok þe quarel yn-to his honde, and forthwith, þere present, exiled<sup>17</sup> þe Duk of Herforde for þe terme of .x. yere, and þe Duke of Northfolk for evyrmore;

<sup>1</sup> kyng did T.      <sup>2</sup> þe om. T.      <sup>3</sup> þe v om. T.

<sup>4</sup> and dame Margrete þe oold ladi of Northfolk and T.      <sup>5</sup> he was T.

<sup>6</sup> Englund made him erle of Wiltshire and sir Iohn Mountagew T.

<sup>7</sup> thus T.      <sup>8</sup> þe T.      <sup>9</sup> and a T.      <sup>10</sup> þis T.

<sup>11</sup> lordes in the chirche of seynt Poules in london T.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 117, back.      <sup>13</sup> and a T.

<sup>14</sup> sealid and þe bataile synyd and þe day y sett and þe place assynyd and whanne þe day schulde be vitirli assynyd to be doon at Couentre T.

<sup>15</sup> with T.      <sup>16</sup> þe T.      <sup>17</sup> he exilid T.

and *Ser* Thomas Arundel, Archebischop of Caunterbury, was exiled þe same tyme for evyr, and deposed of his ssee, for malice of þe King. ¶ And anon þese iij worthi lordez were commaunded and defendid þe Kinges Reme; & anon þay gat hem schippeþ at dyuers 4 hauens, and went ouer þe see ynto dyuers londez, eche his way; & þe Duk of Northfolke went to Veniþe, and þere he deied: on whose soule God haue mercye! amen!

¶ And þanne King Richarde made *Ser* Roger Walden, a clerke 8 of his,<sup>1</sup> Archebischop of Caunterbury.

¶ And yn þe xxij yere of King Richardeþ regne, be fals counsel and ymaginacion of ffals men and couetous<sup>2</sup> þat were aboute hym, were made & ordeyned<sup>3</sup> blank Chartureþ, and made 12 ham to be selid of alle maner of riche men þrouþout þe Reme, in-so-moche þat þai compellid dyuers pepill to sette to<sup>4</sup> her seelez; and<sup>5</sup> þis was so<sup>6</sup> for gret couetize; wherfore alle þe<sup>7</sup> gode hertis of þe Reme clene<sup>8</sup> turned away fro hym<sup>9</sup> eyr eftir, and þat was 16 vturli<sup>10</sup> destroccion & ende of hym<sup>11</sup> þat was so hygh and so excellent a king, þrough couetyse and fals counsel: Alas, for pite, þat such a king myþt not se!

¶ And þanne King Richarde sette his kingdom and his riall 20 londe to fferme of Engeland,<sup>12</sup> vnto iij personeþ, þe which were þese, *Sir* William Scrope,<sup>13</sup> Erle of Wilschire & Treserer of Engeland, *Ser*<sup>14</sup> Iohn Busch, Henry<sup>15</sup> Grene, and *Ser* Iohn Bagot, knyþtes; þe<sup>16</sup> whiche<sup>17</sup> turned hem to moche myschef and deth 24 with-ynne a<sup>18</sup> lytil tyme aftir, as ye schal here<sup>19</sup> wretyn sone aftir.

[*Richard II's Expedition to Ireland.*]

¶ Thanne<sup>20</sup> King Richarde made gret ordynaunce, and went ouyr see<sup>21</sup> Into Ireland, and mony grete lordez with hym, with grete osten, for to streyngthe hir king, as men of arnez, archers,<sup>22</sup> 28 and moche grete stuff & riþt gode ordynaunce, as longith to warre. ¶ And or he passid þe see, he ordeyned and made *Ser* Edmund of Langeley his vncle, Duk<sup>23</sup> of York, his Lieutenaunt of Engeland

<sup>1</sup> a clerke of his *om.* T.      <sup>2</sup> of couetous men T.

<sup>3</sup> ordeyned and maad T.      <sup>4</sup> to *om.* T.      <sup>5</sup> to and T.      <sup>6</sup> do T.

<sup>7</sup> þe *om.* T.      <sup>8</sup> weren clene T.

<sup>9</sup> him þat is þe kyng T.      fro hym þe kyng Kk.

<sup>10</sup> and was vtirly his T.      and þat vturli Kk.

<sup>11</sup> of hym *om.* T.      <sup>12</sup> of Engeland to ferme T.      <sup>13</sup> of Scrope T.

<sup>14</sup> and *sir* T.      <sup>15</sup> and *sir* Harry T.      <sup>16</sup> þe *om.* T.      <sup>17</sup> whiche þat T.

<sup>18</sup> a *om.* T.      <sup>19</sup> here fynde T.      <sup>20</sup> And þanne T.

<sup>21</sup> wente him ouer þe see T.      <sup>22</sup> and archers T.      <sup>23</sup> þe duke T.

yn his absence, be<sup>1</sup> þe gouernaunce &<sup>2</sup> counsel of þese iiij knyȝtis  
þat had take Engelande to ferme of the King. ¶ And þanne he  
passed þe see, and come ynto Irelande, and þere he was welle and  
4 worthily resceyved. And þese rebellis of Ireland biþ<sup>3</sup> callid  
'wilde<sup>4</sup> Irisch men'; and<sup>5</sup> anon her chefteyneȝ & hir<sup>6</sup> gouernoures  
&<sup>7</sup> leeders comyn doun vnto þe King, & yolde ham vnto hym,  
bothe body & godeȝ, alle at his owne wille, & swore to be his lige  
8 men, and þer-to dede to hym<sup>8</sup> homage & feaute, and gode seruize;  
& þus he conquerid<sup>9</sup> þe moste party of Ireland yn a litil tyme.

[*The Return of Bolingbroke.*]

¶ While þat<sup>10</sup> King Richard was þus yn Irelande, Ser Henry of  
Bolingbroke, Erle of Derby, þat þe king hadde made before Duk  
12 of Herforde—þe which Duk, þe King had exiled out of þis lande—  
was come ayen yn-to Engeland, for to chalange þe Duchery<sup>11</sup> of  
Lancastre as for<sup>12</sup> riȝt & trewe heritage. ¶ And he come doun out  
of Fraunce by londe to Calis, and þere mette hym Ser Thomas of  
16 Arundel, þat was Archebischop of Caunturbury, þat was exiled out  
of Engeland; and with hym come þe Erle of Arundell sone, & his  
heire, þe which was yn warde and yn<sup>13</sup> kepyng of Ser Iohn Selly,  
kniȝt, sum tyme with þe Erle of Huntynghon, and with þe Duk of  
20 Excestre, þe which was yn the Castell of Rygate yn Suthsex; and  
þere he stode away from Shelly, & come to Caleys; & þere he was  
kept welle and worthily til þis<sup>14</sup> oper ij lordez were come to Caleys.  
¶ And þan þis worthi Duk, & þe Archebischop of Caunturbury,  
24 Arundel, schippid yn þe hauene of Caleis, and drow his cours  
Norþewarde, and arryued yn Yorkschyre, Rauensporne, fast by  
Brydlyngton; and þere he come, and entrid þe londe, & þese ij  
lordez with hym, and hir meyne. And þanne moche pepil of the  
28 Reme, þat wist of his comyng and<sup>15</sup> where he was, anon drowyn  
to<sup>16</sup> hym, and welcomyd þese lordez, and socurred hym yn alle  
maner þyngis, and passed forth yn<sup>17</sup> the londe, and gadryd myche  
peple.  
32 ¶ And whanne King Richard wist of þis, & herde<sup>18</sup> þat þese ij  
lordez were come ayen yn-to Engelande, and were loded, þanne

<sup>1</sup> be om. T.      <sup>2</sup> and þe T.      <sup>3</sup> ben T.      <sup>4</sup> the wilde T.

<sup>5</sup> and om. T.      <sup>6</sup> hir om. T.      <sup>7</sup> and her T.

<sup>8</sup> there to him didn T.      <sup>9</sup> leaf 118.      <sup>10</sup> þe T.

<sup>11</sup> dukedom T.      <sup>12</sup> for his T.      <sup>13</sup> yn om. T.      <sup>14</sup> these T.

<sup>15</sup> and om. T.      <sup>16</sup> anon þei drewe vnto T.      <sup>17</sup> into T.

<sup>18</sup> Richard herde and wiste T.

þe King left alle his ordynaunce yn Irelande, and come yn-to Engelandewarde yn alle þe hast þat he myȝte, & come yn-to<sup>1</sup> þe Castell of Flynt; and þere he abode for to take his counsell, and what myght<sup>2</sup> best he do; but to hym com non. ¶ And þanne Ser 4 Thomas Perey, Erle of Worcestre, þat was þe Kingis Steward, when he wist<sup>3</sup> and knew þis. anon he com yn-to the halle among alle þe pepil, and þere he brake þe yerd of þe Rial Kingis housholde; and<sup>4</sup> every man went his way, and forsoke his maistir & 8 souereyne lorde, and left hym alone: <sup>5</sup>and þus was King Richard brouȝt adoun and destroyed, and stode alle alone,<sup>5</sup> without counsel, confort & socour<sup>6</sup> of eny man. Allas! for pite of þis ryal King! 12

¶ And anon come tydyugeȝ þat Harry of Bolyngbroke was vp with a<sup>7</sup> strong power of pepill, and þat alle þe Schyreȝ of Engeland reysed vp þe Schires yn streynȝthing of hym ayens King<sup>8</sup> Richard; and þus sone he was come out of þe Northeuntre 16 to Bristow, and þere he mette with Ser William Scrope, Erle of Wilschire and<sup>9</sup> Tresorer of Engeland, and with Ser Iohn Busch and Ser Henry Grene, and Iohn<sup>10</sup> Bagot, but he ascapyd from hym, and went ouer þe see In-to Irelande; & þeȝ oþer ij<sup>11</sup> knyȝteȝ were 20 take, and her hedis smytyn of; & þus þei deied for her fals couetize.

¶ And þanne was King Richard y<sup>12</sup>take, & brouȝt vnto þe Duk; and anon þe Duk put hym y[n] saff<sup>13</sup> warde and strong 24 holde, vnto his comyng to London. ¶ And þanne was þere<sup>14</sup> a Rumore yn London, <sup>15</sup>and a strong noyse, þat King Richarde was come to Westmynstre; and the pepil of London ranne þider, and wolde haue don moche harm and scathe yn hir wodnesse, ne hadde 28 þe Mayre and þe aldermen, and oþer worthi men, cecid ham with faire wordes, and turned hem <sup>16</sup>hom ayen vnto London. ¶ And þere was<sup>17</sup> Ser Iohn Slake, Dene of the Kinges chapel of Westmynstre, take,<sup>18</sup> and brouȝt to London, and put yn<sup>19</sup> Ludgate; and 32 Bagot was take yn Irelande, and brouȝt to London, & put yn prisone yn Newgate, þere to be kept and<sup>20</sup> abide his answe-re.

<sup>1</sup> vnto T.      <sup>2</sup> what myghte T.      what Kk.

<sup>3</sup> Steward whenne he wiste T.      Steward wist Kk.

<sup>4</sup> and tho hit disparbelid and T.      <sup>5-5</sup> om. T.

<sup>6</sup> withoute comfort or socoure or good counceile T.

<sup>7</sup> a wondir T.

<sup>8</sup> þe king T.      <sup>9</sup> and om. T.      <sup>10</sup> sir Iohn T.      <sup>11</sup> iij T.

<sup>12</sup> y om. T.      <sup>13</sup> into faste T.      <sup>14</sup> and there was thanne T.

<sup>15</sup> leaf 118, back.      <sup>16</sup> MS. R begins again.      <sup>17</sup> was take T.

<sup>18</sup> take om. T.      <sup>19</sup> in prison in T.      <sup>20</sup> and to T.

¶ And sone aftir, þe Duk brouzt King Richard pryvely to London, and put hym yn the Tour, vnder sure keypyng as a prisoner. And þanne come þe lordez of the Reme, with alle hir counsel, vnto þe  
 4 Tour to King Richard and saide to hym of his mys gouernaunce and extorcion þat he hadde do, maade, and ordeyned, to oppresse alle þe comyn pepil, & also alle<sup>1</sup> þe Reame; wherfore al þe comyn peple of his Reme wolde haue hym deposed of his kingdom; and  
 8 so he was deposyd at þat tyme in þe Tour of London by alle his<sup>2</sup> lordez counsel, and by<sup>3</sup> the common assent of al þe Reme. ¶ And þan<sup>4</sup> he was put fro þe Tour vnto þe castel of Ledis yn Kent, and þere he was kept a while; and þan was he hadde fro þennez vnto  
 12 þe kastell of Pomfret in þe Northeuntre, to be kept yn pryson; and sone aftirward riȝt þere he made his ende.

¶ Whanne<sup>5</sup> King Richarde was deposed, and hadde resyngned his croune and his kingdom, and hym self kept fast yn holde, þan  
 16 alle þe lordez of þe Reme, with þe comyns assent, and by one<sup>6</sup> accorde, chosyn þis worthi lorde, Ser Henry of Bolyngbroke, Erle of Derby, Duk of Herford and Duke of Lancastre be riȝt lyne and heritage; and for his myȝtful manhode þat þe peple founde yn  
 20 hym, before al oþer þei choson hym, & made hym King of Engelande.<sup>7</sup>

Of Ser Henry of<sup>8</sup> Bolingbroke, Erle of Derby, þat regned aftir King Richarde, þe<sup>9</sup> which was þe fourth Henry after þe  
 24 Conqueste. *Capitulum cexliij.*<sup>10</sup>

And aftir Kinge Richarde þe secunde was deposed and put out of his kingdom, þe lordez & þe comyns, alle with on assent, and alle oþer worthi of þe Reme, chosyn Ser Henry of Bolyngbroke, Erle  
 28 of Derby, sone & heyre of Iohn a Gaunt, Duke<sup>11</sup> of Lancastre, for his worthi manhode þat ofte tyme hadde be founde yn hym, and yn dede previd; vpon Saint Edwardes Day þe Confessoure, he was crouned King of Engeland at Westmynstre, by alle þe Remys  
 32 assent, next aftir<sup>12</sup> deposyng of King Richard. ¶ Thanne he made Henry, his eldist sone & his heire, Prynce of Walis, Duk<sup>13</sup> of Cornewayle, and Erle of Chestre; and he made Ser Thomas of Arundel, Archebischop of Caunturbury ayen, as he was before;

<sup>1</sup> to aft T.    <sup>2</sup> his TR.    hir Kk.    <sup>3</sup> by om. T.

<sup>4</sup> there T.    þere R.    <sup>5</sup> And þanne whenne T.    And whanne R.

<sup>6</sup> one om. R.    <sup>7</sup> Englonde amongis hem. T.    <sup>8</sup> om. T.

<sup>9</sup> Richarde þe om. T.    <sup>10</sup> cc<sup>o</sup> T.    cexliij R.    <sup>11</sup> Iohn þe duke TR.

<sup>12</sup> aftir þe T.    <sup>13</sup> and duke T.

and Ser Roger<sup>1</sup> Walden, that King Richard had made Archebischop of Caunturbury, he made<sup>2</sup> Bischop of London, for þat time it stode voyde; and he<sup>3</sup> made þe Erle; sone of Arondel, <sup>4</sup>that come ouer the see with him from Caleys into Englonde, he made him Erle of 4 Arundell,<sup>4</sup> and put hym yn possession of alle his londe; and þere he made homage and feaute unto his liege lorde þe King, as alle oþer lordez hadde do.

¶ And þanne anon deied King Richard in þe castell of 8 Pountfret yn the Northcuntre, for þere he was enfammed vnto the deth be his keper, for he was kept into<sup>5</sup> iiij or v. dayez fro mete and drynke; and so he made is ende yn þis worlde. Yet moche pepil yn Englonde and yn oþir <sup>6</sup>lande; saide þat he was alyue 12 meny yerez aftir his deth; but wheþer he were alyue or ded, þei<sup>8</sup> hilde hir fals cpynyons and belene þat þay<sup>9</sup> hadde; and moche pepil aftirward comyn to myschif and to foule deth, as ye schulle here aftirwarde. ¶ And whanne King Henry wist and knew 16 warly<sup>10</sup> þat he was ded, he lete sere hym yn þe best maner þat he myzte,<sup>11</sup> and<sup>12</sup> closed hym yn<sup>13</sup> lynnyn cloth, alle saue his visage, and þat was left opou þat men myzt se and know his person from alle oþer men; and so he was brought to London with torchis lyzt 20 brennyng vnto Saynt Poulez, and þere he hadde his masse and his dirige, with moche reverence and solempnite of seruiþe. ¶ And fro Poulez was<sup>14</sup> brouzt ynto þe Abbey of Westmynstre, and þere hadde<sup>15</sup> alle his hole seruiþe ayen; and fro Westmynstre he was 24 ladd<sup>16</sup> ynto<sup>17</sup> Langeley, and þere he was beryed: on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And yn þe first yere of King Henryez regne he hilde his Cristismasse yn þe Castell of Wyndesore; and on þe twelfthe 28 evyn come þe Duke of Awmarle vnto þe King, and tolde hym þat he & þe Duk of Surrey, þe<sup>18</sup> Duk of Excestre, þe<sup>18</sup> Erle of Salusbury, þe<sup>18</sup> Erle of Gloucestre, & oþir moo of her afinite, were accorded to make a mummyng vnto þe King on<sup>19</sup> xij<sup>the</sup> day at 32 nyght; and þere þay cast to sle þe King yn hir revelyng; and þus þat<sup>20</sup> Duke warned þe King. And þanne þe King come þe same<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Roger of T.    <sup>2</sup> made him TR.    <sup>3</sup> he om. R.    <sup>4-4</sup> RT; om. Kk.

<sup>5</sup> in T.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 119.    <sup>7</sup> on T.    <sup>8</sup> forth thei T.

<sup>9</sup> men T.    <sup>10</sup> verily T.    <sup>11</sup> þat he myzte om. TR.

<sup>12</sup> and closid hit in a fayre chest with dyuerse spiceries and bawmes T. and closed him in a fair chiste with diuers spice; and bame; and R.

<sup>13</sup> in a TR.    <sup>14</sup> he was TR.    <sup>15</sup> he hadde T.    <sup>16</sup> ladde T.    hadd Kk.

<sup>17</sup> to T.    vnto R.    <sup>18</sup> and þe T.    <sup>19</sup> on þe T.    <sup>20</sup> þis R.

<sup>21</sup> þe same TR.    same Kk.    þe om. R.

nyzt to London<sup>1</sup> priuili, yn alle þe<sup>2</sup> hast þat he myzte, to gete hym helpe, socoure, comfort<sup>3</sup> & counsel. And<sup>4</sup> anon þeȝe oþer, þat wolde haue do þe King to deth, fleddyn yn alle þe haste þat þei 4 myghte,<sup>5</sup> for þei knewen welle þat her counsel was bewrayed. ¶ And þanne fled þe Duke of Surrey, and þe Erle of Salusberye with<sup>6</sup> alle hir meyne, vnto þe toun of Siseetre; and þere þe pepil of þe toun wolde haue arestid ham; and þey wolde not stonde to 8 her arest, but stod yn at her<sup>7</sup> defence, & fauȝt manly; but at þe<sup>8</sup> laste þey were ouercome and take;<sup>9</sup> and þere þei smote of þe Dukes hed of Surrey, and þe Erlez hed of Salusbury, & mony oþer moo; & þere<sup>10</sup> þay putte þe quarters in sackys, and her hedeȝ on<sup>11</sup> 12 poleȝ born on hy, and so<sup>12</sup> þei were brouȝt þrouȝ þe cite of London vnto London brygge; and þere her hedeȝ were sette vp an<sup>13</sup> hy, & her quarters were sent to oþer gode touneȝ and citeȝ, and set vp þere.

16 ¶ At Oxynde were<sup>14</sup> take Ser Thomas<sup>15</sup> Blount, knyȝt, Benet<sup>16</sup> Sely, knyȝt, and Thomas Wyntirsell, squyer; and þese were behedid & quartered; & the knyȝtes hedis were sette on poleȝ & brouȝt to London, & sette on London brygge, and þe quarters sent 20 forth to oþer placeȝ & touneȝ. ¶ And yn þe same yere at Pritwelle yn<sup>17</sup> Essex, was take Ser Iohn Holond, þe Duk of Excestre,<sup>18</sup> with þe<sup>19</sup> comyneȝ of þe cuntreie; and þay brouȝt hym fro þe mille vnto Plasche; and to þe same place þere King Richard hadde 24 arestid<sup>20</sup> Ser Thomas of Wodstoke, þe Duk of Glowcestre. And riȝt þere, yn þe same place, þei<sup>21</sup> smytyn of þe Duk of Excestreȝ hed, & brouȝt it to London vpon a poole; and it was sette on London Brygge. ¶ And yn þe same yere, at Bristow, was take þe 28 Lorde Spenser, þat King Richard hadde made Erle of Glowcestre; & þe comyneȝ of the toune of Bristow<sup>22</sup> toke hym, and brouȝt hym in to þe Market place of the Toun; & ther thay smyte of his hed and sent hit to London, and hit was sette on London brygge.

32 ¶ And yn þe same yere was Ser Bernarde Brokeys, kniȝt, take and

<sup>1</sup> to London TR. om. Kk.    <sup>2</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>3</sup> and comfort T.

<sup>4</sup> And om. T.

<sup>5</sup> haste þat þei myghte T. haste þat þey myzte R. om. Kk.

<sup>6</sup> and with R.    <sup>7</sup> her om. TR.    <sup>8</sup> þe om. T.    <sup>9</sup> took hem T.

<sup>10</sup> þere om. T.    <sup>11</sup> vpon T.    <sup>12</sup> so om. T.    <sup>13</sup> on TR.

<sup>14</sup> were TR. we Kk.    <sup>15</sup> ser Thomas om. T. Iohn R.

<sup>16</sup> and Benet T.    <sup>17</sup> in a mille in TR.

<sup>18</sup> Essex there sir Iohn holande þe duke of Excestre was take T. Essex þere sir Iohn holande þe Duke of Excestre was take R.

<sup>19</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>20</sup> hadde arestid T. hadde arested R. arestid Kk.

<sup>21</sup> thei T. þey R. þe Kk.    <sup>22</sup> leaf 119, back.

arestid, & put yn-to þe Tour of London; and Ser Iohn Selley, kniȝt, & Ser Iohn Mawdeleyne & Ser William Fereby, persons of King Richardeȝ, were<sup>1</sup> arestid and put yn-to þe Tour of London. and þedir come þe Kingeȝ Iusticeȝ, and saat vpon hem yn the 4 Toure; and þere were<sup>2</sup> dampned alle iiij vnto þe deth.<sup>3</sup> And the dome was yene vnto Ser Bernarde Brokeys, þat he shulde go on fote fro the Tour prouȝ þe toun of<sup>4</sup> London vnto Tyburne, and þere<sup>5</sup> to be hangyd, & aftir his hed to ben<sup>6</sup> smyten of & sett on 8 London Brigge, & Ser Iohn Selley, kniȝt, and Ser Iohn Maudeleyn & Sir William Feriby, persons, weir draw prouȝout London to Tyburne, & þere hanged.<sup>7</sup>

¶ And yn þe<sup>8</sup> same yere King Henry sent Quene Isabell, þat 12 was King Richardeȝ wiff,<sup>9</sup> hom ayen yn-to Fraunce,<sup>10</sup> and yaff hir Golde & siluer and mony oþer Iewelleȝ; and so<sup>11</sup> she was<sup>12</sup> discharged of alle hir dower, & sent out of Engelond.

¶ And yn þe secunde yere of<sup>13</sup> King Henri þe iiij<sup>th</sup>, was Ser 16 Rogger of Claryngdon, kniȝt, & ij of his men, & þe Priour of Launde, & viij frere Menoures, and sum Maistres of diuinite, & oþer, for treson þat þay wrouȝt ayens the King, were drawe & hangyd at<sup>14</sup> Tyborne, alle xij presoners & personeȝ.<sup>15</sup> 20

¶ Than<sup>16</sup> beganne þe<sup>17</sup> discepcion<sup>18</sup> & debate yn þe cuntre of Walis betwene þe Lorde Grey Rithyn<sup>18</sup> & Oweyn of Glyndore, Squier of Walis. And þis Oweyn rerid a nownbyr of Walsehemen, and kept þat<sup>19</sup> cuntrey about ryȝt strong, & dede myche harme, and 24 destroyed þe Kingis touneȝ and lorschippeȝ prouȝout Walis, & robbyd & slowgh þe Kingis pepil, both Englisch and Walseh; and þus he endured xij<sup>20</sup> yere large. And he toke þe Lorde Gray of<sup>21</sup> Rithyn presoner, and kept hym fast yn holde tylle he was 28 raunsonde of prysoners of þe March, and kept hym long tyme yn holde; and at þe<sup>22</sup> last he made hym wedde on of his douȝtris,<sup>23</sup> and kep[t]e hym styлле þere<sup>24</sup> with his wiff, and sone after he deyed.

<sup>1</sup> and þei weren T.    <sup>2</sup> þey weren T.    <sup>3</sup> vnto þe deth alle four R.

<sup>4</sup> þe tour of om. TR.    <sup>5</sup> þere om. T.

<sup>6</sup> aftir his heed T.    aftir his hed R.    his om. Kk.

<sup>7</sup> hangid and her heedis smyten of and sett on london brigge T.    hanged and hir hedis smyten of and set on london Brigge R.    & sett on London Brigge om. Kk.    <sup>8</sup> þis T.    this R.    <sup>9</sup> þat was . . . wiff om. T.

<sup>10</sup> fraunce þe which was kyng Richardis weddid wiff T.    <sup>11</sup> so om. T.

<sup>12</sup> was so T.    <sup>13</sup> of þe reigne of T.    <sup>14</sup> at þe T.

<sup>15</sup> & personeȝ om. TR.    <sup>16</sup> There T.    Ther R.    <sup>17</sup> a T.    þe om. R.

<sup>18</sup>—<sup>18</sup> and a debate bitwene þe lord Grey Reffen in þe cuntree of Walis T.

<sup>19</sup> aȝ þat TR.    <sup>20</sup> a xij T.    <sup>21</sup> of om. T.    <sup>22</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>23</sup> his douȝtris TR.    douȝtris om. Kk.    <sup>24</sup> there styлле T.



¶ And þanne þe<sup>1</sup> King,<sup>2</sup> knowyng þis myschef, destruccion and treson, þat þis Oweyn hade y<sup>3</sup>wrouȝt, þen anon he ordeyned a strong power of men of armeȝ and of archers, & moche oþer stuffe 4 þat longid to warre, for to abate & destroye þe malice of þe<sup>4</sup> fals Walschemen. And þanne þe King come yn-to Walys with his power, for to destroy þis Owen and oþer rebellis, fals Walschmen. And<sup>5</sup> anon þei fledden yn-to þe mountayneȝ; and þere myȝte þe 8 Kinge do hem non harme yn no maner of<sup>6</sup> wyse; but ofte þei toke þe Kingis cariage, and euery day destroyed his peple. But Oweyn and his men, þe moste parte, ascapid harmeleȝ: ffor þe King ne his meyne myȝt not come<sup>7</sup> to hem yn no maner of<sup>8</sup> wise 12 for þe mountayneȝ; and so the King come to<sup>9</sup> Engeland ayen, for lesyng of moo of his peple, and þus he<sup>10</sup> spedde not þere.

¶ In þis same yere was gret scarsite of whete yn Engeland, for a quarter of whete was at xvj s.;<sup>11</sup> and merchaunthes were sent out 16 of Engeland ouyr see<sup>11</sup> ynto Spruce for whete. anon<sup>12</sup> þay hadde lade & freight shippeȝ ynow, & came hoom yn saafte, blessid<sup>13</sup> be God of<sup>14</sup> alle his yeftis!

¶ And yn the iij<sup>de</sup> 15 yere of King Harryȝ regne, ther was a 20 sterre seyne in þe firmament, þat schewed hym-self þrouȝ alle<sup>16</sup> þe worlde, for dyuers tokenns þat schulde befallē sone after; þe which sterre was named & called be clergie<sup>17</sup> 'Stella comata.' And on Seint Marye Magdaleyne day, next aftir,<sup>18</sup> yn þe same 24 yere, was þe Batayle of Schrouysbury; and þedir come Ser Henry Percy, þe Erleȝ sone of Northombirlonde, with a grete multitude of men of armes & archers, and yaf<sup>19</sup> batayle to<sup>20</sup> King Harry þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, þrouȝ fals<sup>21</sup> counsel and wicked reede of Ser Thomas Percy, is vnclē, 28 Erle of Worcestre; and þere was Ser Harry Percy slayn, and þe most parte of his mayne, yn the feelde,<sup>22</sup> and Ser Thomas Percy take, and kept yn holde ij dayeȝ tylle þe King hadde sette rest among his peple on both sydes. And þanne Ser Thomas Percy 32 was Iugid to be ded, þat is to wete, drawe, hangyd, & his hed

<sup>1</sup> þe om. T.    <sup>2</sup> king Harry T.    <sup>3</sup> y om. TR.    <sup>4</sup> þese T.    þis R.

<sup>5</sup> and om. T.    <sup>6</sup> of om. TR.

<sup>7</sup> nought come T.    not come R.    not om. Kk.

<sup>8</sup> of om. TR.    <sup>9</sup> into TR.    <sup>10</sup> he om. R.

<sup>11</sup>—<sup>11</sup> and þanne was marchaundise of Englund sente ouer þe see T.

<sup>12</sup> and anon T.    and anon R.    <sup>13</sup> and comen in haste y blessid T.

<sup>14</sup> in R.    <sup>15</sup> leaf 120.    <sup>16</sup> out al R.

<sup>17</sup> & called be clergie om. T.    <sup>18</sup> folowyng T.    folowyng R.

<sup>19</sup> yaf a T.    <sup>20</sup> to þe T.    <sup>21</sup> the fals T.

<sup>22</sup> Percy slayn in þe felde & þe moste part of his meyne R.

smyte of for his fals treson at Schrowesbery, & his hed brouȝt to London & set on London-is<sup>1</sup> Brygge. And al<sup>2</sup> oþer peple þat<sup>3</sup> were slayne þere,<sup>4</sup> on þe Kinges syde<sup>5</sup> and yn boþe parteys,<sup>6</sup> þe King let bury: and þere was slayn on þe Kinges syde yn the<sup>7</sup> 4 batayle, þe Erle of Staffarde, and Ser Water Blount yn þe Kingys kote armyour, vnder þe Kinges baner, and mony mo worthi men; on<sup>8</sup> whose soule God haue mercy! amen!

¶ And yn þe iiij<sup>the</sup> yere of King Harryes regne, come þe 8 Emp[er]oure of Constantynoble, with mony grete lordez and knyȝtes and moch oþer peple of his cuntre, in to Engelande, to King Harry, with hym to speke<sup>9</sup> and to disporte hym, and see<sup>10</sup> þe gode gouernaunce & þe condicionez of our peple, and know<sup>11</sup> þe 12 commoditez of Engeland. And our King, with alle his worthi lordez, godely and worschepfully hym resceyved, and welcomed hym<sup>12</sup> and alle his mayne þat come with hym, and dede hym alle þe reuerence & worschip þat þay cowthe and myȝte. And anon þe 16 King commawnded al maner officers þat he schulde be serued as worthily & as<sup>13</sup> ryaly as it longith to<sup>14</sup> such a worthi lorde & Emperour, on his owne cost, as long as þe Emperour was<sup>15</sup> yn Engeland, and alle his men þat comyn with hym. 20

¶ And yn þis same yere came dame Iohane,<sup>16</sup> þe Duchasse of Bryttayne, yn-to Engelande, and landed at Falemouth yn Cornewayle; & fro þennez she was brouȝt to þe cite of Wynchestre, and þere sche<sup>17</sup> was weddyd vnto King Harry þe iiij<sup>the</sup> yn the Abbey of 24 Saynt Swythens of Wynchestre, with alle þe solempnite þat myȝt be do and made. ¶ And sone after, sche was brouȝt fro þennez to London; and þe meyre, with<sup>18</sup> þe aldermen and þe comyns of þe cite of London, rydyn ayens hir, and hir welcomed,<sup>19</sup> and brouȝt 28 hir throuȝ þe cite of London vnto Westmynstre; and þere sche was crowned & made<sup>20</sup> Quene of Engeland; and þere þe king made a ryalle and a<sup>21</sup> solempne fest for hir, and for al maner men þat þedir wolde come. 32

¶ And yn þis same yere, Dame Blaunche, þe eldist douȝtir of

<sup>1</sup> is om. TR.    <sup>2</sup> aȝ þe T.    <sup>3</sup> that there T.    þat þer R.

<sup>4</sup> þere om. TR.    <sup>5</sup> side in þat Bataile R.

<sup>6</sup> slayne on boþe parties T.    and yn boþe parteye om. R.

<sup>7</sup> kyngis side in þat T.    þat R.    syde om. Kk.    <sup>8</sup> of T.

<sup>9</sup> to speke with him T.    <sup>10</sup> to see T.    to se R.    <sup>11</sup> to knowe T.

<sup>12</sup> hym om. R.    <sup>13</sup> as om. R.    <sup>14</sup> vnto T.

<sup>15</sup> Emperoure was T.    Emperour was R.    was Kk.    <sup>16</sup> Iane TR.

<sup>17</sup> sche om. T.    <sup>18</sup> and T.    & R.    <sup>19</sup> welcomyd hir T.

<sup>20</sup> & made om. R.    <sup>21</sup> and a TR.    and om. Kk.

King Harry þe *iiij*<sup>th</sup>, was y<sup>1</sup>sent ouyr see<sup>2</sup> with þe Erle of Somersete, hir vncl, and with Maister Richarde Clyfforde, þanne <sup>3</sup>Bisshop of Worcestre, and with mony oþer lordez; and worthi  
4 knyztis, ladiez,<sup>4</sup> and Squyers,<sup>5</sup> as longed to such a worthi lady, and come vnto Coleyne. And þedir come þe Duke; sone of Barrey, with a faire mayne, and reseeyved þis worthi lady, and þere the Bisshop<sup>6</sup> of Worcestre wedded & sacred ham to-gedir, as holy  
8 churche it<sup>7</sup> wolde; & þere was made a ryalle feest and a<sup>8</sup> grete Iustize, yn<sup>9</sup> reverence and worschip of ham, and to alle peple þat þedir come. ¶ And whanne þis maryage and fest was do, þe Erle and þe Bisshop, with alle hir meyne, token her leve of lordez; and  
12 ladiez; and come home ayen yn-to Engeland in saafte, y<sup>10</sup>þankyde be God!

¶ And yn þe .v. yere of King Harryez regne, þe Lorle Thomas, King Harryez sone þe *iiij*<sup>th</sup>, and þe Erle of Kent went ouyr see,<sup>11</sup>  
16 and mony oþer lordez and knyhtes, and men of armys & archers, and went to<sup>12</sup> þe se to chastise þe rebellis þat afore hadde do moch harme to our Englisch<sup>13</sup> Marchaunte; & to mony tounes and portis yn Engeland vpon þe se costis. ¶ And þe Lorle Thomas, þe  
20 Kingis son, cam yn-to Flaundres, toffore a toun þat is callid þe Schuse, among alle þe schippe; of dyuers nacions þat were þere; and after, þai rydyn with her schippe; among ham, and went alonde, & sported ham þere *ij*. daiez, and cam ayen to hir schippe;  
24 & token þe brode se, & þere þay mettyn with *iiij* carrake; of Iene, þat were lade with dyuers Marchaundize, and welle y<sup>14</sup>manned; and þere þay fouztyne to-gadryze longe; but þe Englischmen hadde þe victorie, and brouzt þe Carrake; yn-to þe camere before  
28 Wynchylse; and þere þay cantid þes gode; and on of þeze Carreke; was sodenly þere brent, & þe lordez; and hir peple turned hom ayen, and went no firthir at þat tyme.

¶ And yn that same yere, Serle, yoman of King Richard; 32 Robys, come yn-to Engeland out of Scotland, and saide to diuers peple þat 'King Richard was alyve yn Scotlond'; and so, moch of

<sup>1</sup> y om. TR.    <sup>2</sup> þe see T.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 120, back.    <sup>4</sup> and ladies TR.

<sup>5</sup> and worthi squyers T.    worthi squiers R.

<sup>6</sup> the bisshop T.    þe Bisshop R.    bisshop Kk.

<sup>7</sup> it om. TR.    <sup>8</sup> a om. TR.

<sup>9</sup> in þe T.    <sup>10</sup> y om. TR.

<sup>11</sup> *iiij*<sup>e</sup> wente ouer þe see and þe Erle of kent T.    wente ovir see and þe erl of kent R.

<sup>12</sup> archers a greet meyne wenten to T.    archers a greet meyne went R.

<sup>13</sup> Englysshe men T.    <sup>14</sup> y om. R.

þe peple beleued yn his wordez; wherfore mych of þe peple of þe Reeme were yn gret erreure and gruching ayens þe King, prouȝ fals informacion<sup>1</sup> þat þis Serle hadde made, for moche peple beleuyd & trustid to<sup>2</sup> his seyng; but at þe<sup>3</sup> last he was take yn the North cuntre, and by lawe juged to be draw prouȝ euery cite & gode burgh toun yn Engeland; and so he was *serued*. And at þe<sup>3</sup> last he was brouȝt to London, vnto Gilde<sup>4</sup>-halle before þe justize; and þere he was juged to<sup>5</sup> be brouȝt to þe Tour of London, and þere to<sup>8</sup> be laide vp<sup>6</sup>-on an hirdille, & þan to<sup>7</sup> be drawe prouȝ þe cete of London to Tyborne, &<sup>8</sup> hangyd, & þan quarterde, and his hed smyte of & set on London Brygge, & his quarters to be sent to iiij gode townes of Engeland, & þere set vp: & þus endid he his<sup>9</sup> fals treson & desceit.

¶ And yn þe vj yere of King Henryes regne, þe Erle of Marre, of Scotland, be saaf condit come vnto Engeland for to chalange Ser Edmuzale, þe Erle of Kent, of certeyn cours of warre on hors-bak; 16 & so þis chalange was accept and graunted, and þe place take yn Smythfelde at London. And þis Erle of Marre, þe<sup>10</sup> Scot, com proudly<sup>11</sup> yn-to the felde, as his chalange asked. And anon com yn þe Erle of Kent, and rode vnto þe Scot, and manfully rydyn 20 togadir with scharp<sup>12</sup> speris dyuers cours; but þe Erle of Kent hadde þe Felde, and gate hym moch worschip & þanke of al maner of<sup>13</sup> men for his manful dedis.

¶ And þis yere<sup>14</sup> Ser Richard Scrope, Archebyschop<sup>15</sup> of York, 24 and þe lorde Mounbray, Erle Marchal of Engelande, gadrid vnto hym a strong meyne yn þe North cuntre ayens King Henry. and þan King Henry, heryng<sup>16</sup> þerof, yn alle þe hast þat he myȝte, come with his power northwarde, and mette with ham at York; 28 and þere were þei<sup>17</sup> ij lordez take, and brouȝt to<sup>18</sup> þe King, and anon þe Iugeȝ weryn sette, and pese ij lordez brouȝt forth; and þere þai were dampned vn-to þe<sup>19</sup> deth, þat boþe her hedis schulde be<sup>20</sup> smyte of; and þere þay made her ende: on whose soulez God, for 32 his pete, haue mercy! Amen!

<sup>1</sup> thorough informacion) of lesyngis and falslies T. þoruȝ informacion) of his lieȝ and fals lesyngis R.

<sup>2</sup> peple trustid him and bileueyd in TR. <sup>3</sup> þe om. T. <sup>4</sup> þe Gilde T.

<sup>5</sup> forto T. <sup>6</sup> vp om. TR. <sup>7</sup> to om. R. <sup>8</sup> and þere TR.

<sup>9</sup> for his TR. <sup>10</sup> a T. <sup>11</sup> leaf 121. <sup>12</sup> scharp om. T. <sup>13</sup> of om. R.

<sup>14</sup> And in þe same yeer of kyng Harries reigne þe iiij<sup>th</sup> T. And in þe vi. yeer of kinge henries regne þe iiij<sup>th</sup> R.

<sup>15</sup> þe Erchebisshop T. <sup>16</sup> þanne þe kyng heryng T.

<sup>17</sup> pese T. þeze R. <sup>18</sup> vnto T. <sup>19</sup> þe om. R. <sup>20</sup> heedis were T.

¶ And whanne<sup>1</sup> þis was do, þe King come to London ayen, a[nd]<sup>2</sup> restyd hym. And anon, God, of his grete godenesse, wrouzt and schewyd meny grete myraclis for his worthi Clerke, þe<sup>3</sup> 4 Archebischop of Yorke, þat þus was down to<sup>4</sup> deth.<sup>5</sup>

¶ And yn þe vij yere of King Henryez regne come<sup>6</sup> Dame Luce, þe Dukez sistir<sup>7</sup> of Millane, yn-to<sup>8</sup> Engeland, and so vnto London, and þere was weddid to Ser Edmund Helond, Erle of 8 Kent, yn þe priory of Saint Mary Ouerey yn Southwerke, with moche solempnite and grete worschip: and þere was þe King hym selfe, and yaf hir at þe churche dore. ¶ And whanne<sup>9</sup> pay were weddyd, and masse do,<sup>10</sup> þe King, his owne persone, brouzt and 12 ladde þis worthi lady yn-to þe Bischopis place of Wynchestre; and þere was a wondir grete fest helde, to alle maner of pepil þat come pedir.<sup>11</sup>

¶ In þis<sup>12</sup> same yere, Ser Robert Knollis, kniȝt, þe worthi 16 warriour, deied at his Maner yn Northfolke: and fro þennez he was brouzt to London on<sup>13</sup> an hors beere, with myche torche lyghte; and so was he brouzt to<sup>14</sup> þe Whit-Freris yn Flet-strete; and þere was do and<sup>15</sup> made a ryal &<sup>16</sup> solempne terement for 20 hym, for þem<sup>15</sup> þat þidir wolde come, boþe pore & rich; and þere he lyth beryed<sup>17</sup>; on whose soule God<sup>18</sup> haue mercy! Amen!

¶ And<sup>19</sup> yn the<sup>20</sup> same yere Ser Thomas Ruston,<sup>21</sup> kniȝt, Constab[l]e of þe Tour of London, was dreynt yn<sup>22</sup> Themys<sup>23</sup> at London 24 Brygge, as he com fro Westmynstre towarde þe Tour yn a barge; and al prouȝ lewdenesse. And yn þe same yere Dame Phelyp, þe yongyr douȝtir of King Henry þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, was ladde ouer þe see with Ser Richarde, þe Dukez brothir of Yorke, and Ser Edmund Cour- 28 teneye, bishop of Norwiche, and mony oþer lordiz, kniȝtis and squyers, ladiez and gentil-wymmen, as<sup>24</sup> perteyneth to<sup>25</sup> such a worthi Kingis douȝtir, and come yn-to Denmarke, to a toun<sup>26</sup> þat is callyd Elsyngborgh. And þedir come þe King of Denmarke, wipe 32 his lordis, and resceyvid þis worthi lady for his wiff, and welcomyd

<sup>1</sup> as T.    <sup>2</sup> and there T. and þere R.    <sup>3</sup> þe om. TR.

<sup>4</sup> vnto R.    <sup>5</sup> vnto þe deeth T.    <sup>6</sup> come om. T.    <sup>7</sup> doughtir T.

<sup>8</sup> come into T.    <sup>9</sup> And as sone as T.    <sup>10</sup> and þe masse was don T.

<sup>11</sup> þedir om. T.    <sup>12</sup> þe TR.    <sup>13</sup> vpon TR.    <sup>14</sup> vnto T.

<sup>15-15</sup> maad for him a solempne feste and a roiaht terment for tho T.    þo R.

<sup>16</sup> and a R.

<sup>17</sup> buried bi dame Constance his wiff in mydde of þe bodi of the churche T.    beryed be Dame Constance his wiff in þe myddel of þe body of þe churche R.

<sup>18</sup> god of his pitee T.    god for his pite R.    <sup>19</sup> And þus T.

<sup>20</sup> this R.    <sup>21</sup> Rempston R.    <sup>22</sup> in þe R.    <sup>23</sup> yn Themys om. T.

<sup>24</sup> þat TR.    <sup>25</sup> vnto T.    <sup>26</sup> Toure T.

pese worthi lordez, and dede ham moche reuerence & gret worschip. ¶ And panne þei were brougt to a toun þat is<sup>1</sup> callid London yn Denmark, and þere was this lady weddid and sacryd to þe King of Denmark with moche solempnite; and þere was sche crowned<sup>4</sup> Quene of Denmark, Norway and Swethyn; & þere was made a rialle fest. ¶ And whanne þis Fest and mariag was do & endid, þeze lordez<sup>2</sup> and ladiez tokyn her leve of the<sup>3</sup> King and Quene, and comyn home ayen yn-to Engelonde yn hast, þanked be Ihesu! 8

¶ And yn the viij zere of King Harryez regne, þer was a man þat was elepid 'þe walseh clerke,' and<sup>4</sup> apelyd a knyzt þat me callyd Ser Perciuaile Sowdon, of treson; and þere þey were ioyned to fyt vnto þe deth, within<sup>5</sup> þe liste, & þe day,<sup>6</sup> tyme and place<sup>12</sup> assigned and lymtyd to be do and ende, yn Smythfelde. At þe which day þe ij personez comyn yn to þe felde, and fouztyn soore and myztily togadris; but at þe<sup>7</sup> last þe knyzt ouercame þe clerke, and made hym yelde<sup>8</sup> creaunde of his fals plechement þat he sayde<sup>16</sup> on hym; and þan was he dispoyled of his armeour and drawe out of þe ffelde to Tyburne; & þere was he hangyd, and þe knizt take to grace, and was a gode man.

¶ And yn þis same yere, Ser Henry,<sup>9</sup> erle<sup>10</sup> of Northombirlande, 20 & þe Lorde Bardolf, comyn out of Scotlande, yn preiudice & destruccion of King Harry; wherfore pay of the Northcuntre arysyn vp,<sup>11</sup> and<sup>12</sup> smytyn of her hedis, and<sup>13</sup> sent þe hed of the Erle, and þe<sup>14</sup> quarter of þe lorde Bardolfe, to London; and þere<sup>24</sup> þey were set vp on þe brygge, for fals treson þat pay had purposed ayens þe Kinge.

¶ And yn þe ix yere of King Harrez regne, was Ser Edmu[n]de<sup>15</sup> Holonde,<sup>16</sup> Erle of Kent, made<sup>17</sup> Amerel of Engelonde, for to kepe<sup>28</sup> þe see. And he went to þe see with mony ryalle<sup>18</sup> schippis, þat were full well arayed and<sup>19</sup> enarmyd with mony a gode man of armez & of<sup>20</sup> archers, and of gode defence of<sup>21</sup> warre yn þe Kinges name of Engelonde; and so he londit at þe<sup>22</sup> laste yn þe costes of 32

<sup>1</sup> men T. me R.      <sup>2</sup> leaf 121, back.      <sup>3</sup> the om. T.      <sup>4</sup> and he TR.

<sup>5</sup> in T. with yme R. with Kk.      <sup>6</sup> day and T.      <sup>7</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>8</sup> yelde him TR.      <sup>9</sup> ser henry om. T.      <sup>10</sup> þe Erle T.

<sup>11</sup> vpon hem T. vp on ham R.

<sup>12</sup> and faught with hem and sconeitid hem and took hem and T. and fauzt with ham and scomfited ham & took ham & R.

<sup>13</sup> and quartrid her bodies and T. and quartred hir bodies and R.

<sup>14</sup> a TR.      <sup>15</sup> Edmū Kk.      <sup>16</sup> of holonde T.      <sup>17</sup> was maad T.

<sup>18</sup> a roiaht T.      <sup>19</sup> and apparellid and T. and appareiled & R.

<sup>20</sup> of om. TR.      <sup>21</sup> in T.      <sup>22</sup> þe om. T.

Brittaigne, in þe Ile of Bryak, with alle his peple; and he besegid þe castel and assauted it. and þai with-ynne<sup>1</sup> with-stode hym with grete defence & streinþe, and anon let sette his ordynaunce; & yn 4 þe leyngthe of a gune com a quarel, & smot þe gode Erle yn þe hed, & þere he cauȝt his deth-wownde, but yet þei left not tylle þay hadde gotyn þe Castell and alle þat was þere-ynne; and þere þis gode lord deid: on whose soule God haue mercy.<sup>2</sup> ¶ And þanne 8 his<sup>3</sup> meyne comyn hom ayen in-to Engeland with þe Erleȝ body, and was buried among his auncetryeȝ riȝt worthily. ¶ And yn þe same yere was a gret frost<sup>4</sup> yn Engeland, þat dured xv woķeȝ.

¶ And yn þe<sup>5</sup> x yere of King Harryes regne þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, come þe 12 Senescall of Henaud, with oþer meyne, yn-to Englund, for<sup>6</sup> to seke<sup>7</sup> auntreȝ, and to gete hym<sup>8</sup> worschip yn dedis of armeȝ, bope on horsbak and on foote, of al maner poyntis of<sup>9</sup> dedis of armeȝ and<sup>10</sup> warre. And þe Senescal Challenged þe Erle of Somerset; and 16 þe Erle delyuerde hym manfully yn al his chalangeȝ, and put his aduersari to þe worsse yn alle poyntis, & wanne hym þere grete worschyp and degre<sup>11</sup> of the ffeelde. ¶ And þe next day come yn to þe ffeelde a noþer man of armeȝ of the Seneschallys party; & 20 ayens hym com Ser Richard of Arundell, knyȝt; and þe<sup>12</sup> Henauder hed<sup>13</sup> þe bettyr of hym<sup>14</sup> on fote in on poynt, for he broȝt hym on his kne. ¶ And þe thrid day come yn<sup>15</sup> a noþer man of armeȝ yn to the felde; and ayens hym Ser Iohn Cornewayle, knyȝt; and manly 24 & knyȝtly quyt hym yn alle maner of poynteȝ ayens his aduersary, and had þe bettyr yn the felde. ¶ And<sup>16</sup> þe iiij day come yn<sup>17</sup> a noþer man of armys of Henaude, yn<sup>18</sup> þe felde; and ayens hym com Ser Iohn Cheynees sone,<sup>19</sup> and manly quyt hym ayens his aduersary, 28 for he caste bothe<sup>20</sup> hors & man into þe feelde; and þe King, for his manhode at þat tyme, dubbyd hym knyȝt. ¶ And þe v day þer com a noþer man of armeȝ of<sup>21</sup> Henaudeȝ party yn-to þe ffeel[d]e; and to hym come Iohn<sup>22</sup> Steward, squyer, and manfully quyt hym þere yn 32 al maner of poyntis, and hadde þe bettir. ¶ And þe vj day come a nother Henauder; & to hym come William Porter, squier; and manfully he quitte<sup>23</sup> hym yn þe ffeelde, and hadde þe bettir,<sup>23</sup> and þe

<sup>1</sup> with-ynne *om.* T.      <sup>2</sup> mercy Amen TR.      <sup>3</sup> his TR.      þis Kk.

<sup>4</sup> forst Kk.      <sup>5</sup> þe same T.      <sup>6</sup> for *om.* TR.      <sup>7</sup> seke T.      seihe Kk.

<sup>8</sup> hym *om.* T.      <sup>9</sup> and T. & R.      <sup>10</sup> and of TR.      <sup>11</sup> and þe gree T.

<sup>12</sup> þe he R.      <sup>13</sup> hed *om.* R.      <sup>14</sup> *leaf* 122.      <sup>15</sup> yn *om.* T.

<sup>16</sup> And on TR.      <sup>17</sup> yn *om.* T.      <sup>18</sup> into TR.      <sup>19</sup> his sone T.

<sup>20</sup> bothe *om.* TR.      <sup>21</sup> of þe TR.      <sup>22</sup> sir Iohn T.      to him yn sir Iohn R.

<sup>23-23</sup> quytte him and hadde þe bettir in þe ffeelde and T.      him and hadde þe bettir in þe felde R.

King dubbid hym kniȝt þe same time. ¶ And þe vij day come a noþer Henauder yn-to<sup>1</sup> the felde; & to hym come Iohn Standisch, Squyer, and manly quit<sup>2</sup> hym on his aduersary, and hadde þe bettir yn þe felde; and þere þe King dubbyd hym kniȝt þe same<sup>4</sup> day. ¶ And yn<sup>3</sup> þe same day come a noþer Henauder; and to<sup>4</sup> hym come a squier of Gasquoyne; and<sup>5</sup> proutly & manly he quitte hym on his aduersarye, and þere hadde þe bettir, and anon þe King dubbyd hym kniȝt. 8

¶ And<sup>6</sup> þe viij day com yn-to þe ffelde ij men of armes of Henaude; and to ham come ij soudiers of Calis þat were brepryn, y<sup>7</sup>Clepyd þe Boroughez; and welle and manly quit hem on hir aduersarieȝ, and hadde þe bettir yn þo<sup>8</sup> felde; and þus endid þis<sup>12</sup> Chalanged with moche worschep. And þe King, at þe reuencens of the straungers, made a grete ffeest, and yaff ryche yeftis; and pay tokyn hir lene, and went whom yn-to hir cuntre.

¶ And yn þe xj ȝere of King Hen[r]yȝe regne þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, þere was<sup>16</sup> a gret Batayle yn<sup>9</sup> Smythfelde betwene ij squiers; þat on<sup>10</sup> men callid Glowcestre, and<sup>11</sup> þat was<sup>12</sup> appelaunt, and<sup>13</sup> Arture, þat was<sup>14</sup> defendaunt; and welle and manfully fouȝtyn togadrys longe tyme. And the King, for hir manfulnesse and of his grace, toke<sup>20</sup> hir quarell yn-to his honde, and mad ham go<sup>15</sup> out of þe felde at<sup>16</sup> ones; and<sup>17</sup> so þay were dyvyded of hir bataile; and þe King yaf ham grace.

And yn<sup>18</sup> þe xij ȝere of King Henryȝe regne þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, Rys ap<sup>19</sup> die, a Squier of Walis þat was a rebell & a ryser,<sup>20</sup> and<sup>21</sup> supporter of Owen of Glyndore þat dede moche destruccion to þe pepil yn<sup>22</sup> Walis, was<sup>23</sup> take, & brouȝt to London. And þere he come afore þe Instiȝe, and was dampned for his treson; & þan he was leyde on<sup>24</sup> an hirdyl, and so draw forth to Tyburne prowghe the cite, and þere was hangyd, & lete doune ayen, and his hed smytyn of; and his bodi quarterde and sent to foure towneȝ, and his hedde sette on London Brygge. 32

¶ And the<sup>25</sup> xiiij ȝere of King Henryȝe regne,<sup>26</sup> deyed

<sup>1</sup> to om. T.    <sup>2</sup> he quytte TR.    <sup>3</sup> on TR.    <sup>4</sup> vnto T.

<sup>5</sup> þat T.    <sup>6</sup> And in T.    <sup>7</sup> y om. TR.    <sup>8</sup> þe TR.

<sup>9</sup> doon in T.    do in R.    <sup>10</sup> on om. R.    <sup>11</sup> and om. R.

<sup>12</sup> was þe TR.    <sup>13</sup> and þat oþer T.    <sup>14</sup> was þe TR.    <sup>15</sup> to go T.

<sup>16</sup> boþe at T.    <sup>17</sup> and om. R.    <sup>18</sup> þanne T.    yn om. R.

<sup>19</sup> rose vp oon T.    of R.    <sup>20</sup> & a ryser om. T.    <sup>21</sup> and also T.

<sup>22</sup> of T.    <sup>23</sup> Walis and at laste he was T.    <sup>24</sup> vpon TR.

<sup>25</sup> in þe T.    <sup>26</sup> of King harries T.    of king henrieȝ Regne þe iiij R. of his regne Kk.



Ser Iohn Beauford, Erle<sup>1</sup> of Somerset, þat was <sup>2</sup>Capteyne of Caley, and was beryed at þe Abbey of Tour-hille: on whose soule God haue mercy! Amen! And yn þe same yere þe Lorde Thomas, 4 King Harrye; sone, wedded þe Countesse of Somerset. And þe<sup>3</sup> same yere come þe ambasceturs of Fraunce yn-to Engelonde, from þe Duk of Burgoyne, vnto the prince of Engelonde, King Harrye; sone and his<sup>4</sup> heire, for help & socour of men of arme; and archers 8 ayens the Duk of Orlyans. And he sent forth<sup>5</sup> þe Erle of Arundell, Ser Gylbarde Vmfrauylle,<sup>6</sup> Erle of Kyme, and þe Lorde of Cobham, Ser Iohn Oldecastell, and mony oþer gode knyztis, and worthi squyers and men of arme; and gode archers, ouyr see<sup>7</sup> yn-to 12 Fraunce, and comyn to<sup>8</sup> Parys, to þe Duk of Burgoyne, þere<sup>9</sup> he resceyvyd and welcomyde þese<sup>10</sup> English lordis and alle hir meyne. ¶ And þanne it was do hym to wete þat þe Duk of Orlyance was come to Senclowe, faste by Parys, with a grete noumbre of men of 16 armys & arblasters; and þedir<sup>11</sup> went our English men, and fouztyn with ham, and gotyn þe brygge of Senclowe; & þere þay slow mony<sup>12</sup> of the Frensch men and Armenacke; and þe remenaunt fledde, and<sup>13</sup> wolde no lengir abide. And oure Englysch 20 men comyn ayen to Paris; & þere þay tokyn hir leue of the Duke, and comen hom ayen yn-to Engelonde yn saafte, & he<sup>14</sup> yaf ham gret yeftis. ¶ Anon folowyng, the Duk of Orlyance sent ambascetours yn-to Engelonde, to King Harry þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, besechyng hym of 24 his help & socour ayens his dedely enmye, þe Duke of Burgoyne. And þan þe King made Thomas, his sone, Duke of Clarence, & his oþer sone John<sup>15</sup> Duke of Bedforde, and his oþer sone Vmfray Duk of Gloucestre; & Ser Thomas Beauforde, Erle of Somerset<sup>16</sup>; & þe 28 Duke of Awmarle he<sup>17</sup> made Duk of Yorke. ¶ And þan þe King ordeyned his sone Thomas, and<sup>18</sup> Beauford, Erle of Somerset,<sup>19</sup> and Sir Iohn Cornewayle, and meny oþer lordis, knyztis<sup>20</sup> &<sup>21</sup> squyers, men<sup>22</sup> of arme; and<sup>23</sup> archers, to go ouyr<sup>24</sup> yn-to Fraunce, yn

<sup>1</sup> þe Erle TR. <sup>2</sup> leaf 122, back. <sup>3</sup> þis T. in this R.

<sup>4</sup> his om. T. <sup>5</sup> And thanne ther went ouer þe see T.

<sup>6</sup> vnfrauylle om. T. <sup>7</sup> wente ouer þe see T. þe se R. <sup>8</sup> into T.

<sup>9</sup> and þere TR. <sup>10</sup> welcomyd wele and goodly these T.

<sup>11</sup> tho T. <sup>12</sup> moche peple T.

<sup>13</sup> and wente and T. <sup>14</sup> and þe duke T. Duk R.

<sup>15</sup> sone Iohn TR. John om. Kk. <sup>16</sup> Dorsett T. Dorset R.

<sup>17</sup> þe whicheche T. <sup>18</sup> and om. TR. <sup>19</sup> dorsett T. Dorset R.

<sup>20</sup> lordis and many oþer knyghtis T. and knyztis R.

<sup>21</sup> & om. R. <sup>22</sup> and men TR.

<sup>23</sup> and many oþer T. <sup>24</sup> to gone ouer þe see T. to go over þe se R. to ouyr Kk.

helpyng & streyngthyng of the Duke of Orlyanunce. ¶ And þese worthi lordez, with alle his retynu, schippyd at Hampton, and sayled ouyr yn-to Normandy, and landed at Hoggez. And þere mette with ham þe lorde Hambe, at hir londyng, with vij M<sup>t</sup> men <sup>4</sup> of armes of Frenschmen<sup>1</sup>; and alle were put to flyzt, and takyn of hem vij C men of armes & iiij C hors, *with-out* þo þat were slayn yn the felde. And so þei ryden forth prou3out Fraunce, and token Castell & tounez, & slow3 mych pepil of Frenschmen þat with-stode <sup>8</sup> ham, and tokyn meny prysoners as þay roode; and so þai passyd<sup>2</sup> forth til þay comyn to Burdeux; and þere þay restid ham a while, and sette þe cuntre yn pees & rest tyll þe vyntage were redy to sayle; and panne þe Duk with his mayne com hom yn-to Engeland <sup>12</sup> yn saafte, þankyd be God! ¶ And yn þe same yere was þe Kingis coyne<sup>3</sup> chaynged prou3-out Engeland, by þe King and his counsel, þat is to say, þe noble, half noble, & ferthyng of goolde.

¶ And þe <sup>4</sup>xiiij yere of King Harrye3 regne þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, he lete <sup>16</sup> make galaie3 of warre, for he hadde hopid to haue past þe grete se, and so forth to Ierusalem, and þere to haue endid his lyf. but God vised hym<sup>5</sup> sone aftir with Infirmytee3 and grete sekenesse3, þat he myzt not wel endure no while, so fementli he was y<sup>6</sup>tak. And he <sup>20</sup> was<sup>7</sup> yn Bedde at Westmynstre yn a faire Chaumbre; and as he lay abedde, he axed his Chaumbirleyn what he<sup>8</sup> callyd that Chaumbyr þat he lay-ynne: he answerde and sayde 'Ierusalem.' þanne<sup>9</sup> he sayde, his prophecie sayde 'he<sup>10</sup> schulde make an ende <sup>24</sup> and deye yn Ierusalem.' and þan<sup>11</sup> he made hym redy vnto God, & disposed alle his wille, and sone aftir he deyed, and was caryed be water fro Westmynstre yn a barge to Feueresham, and fro þennes to Caunturburye be londe, with moche torehelyzt brennyng, yn-to <sup>28</sup> þe Priorie<sup>12</sup> of Crichirch, and þere he was worthili entered & beried besyde saint Thomas shryne of Cawnturburye. And þus endid pis<sup>13</sup> worthi King Henry abowte myd Lent Sonday, in þe yere of our Lorde Ihesu Críst, M<sup>t</sup>CCCCxiiij,<sup>14</sup> on whos soule God haue <sup>32</sup> mercy! Amen!

<sup>1</sup> frensshmen þe sergeauntes of armes with him T.      <sup>2</sup> riden R.

<sup>3</sup> yeer þe kinge3 coynd was R.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 123.

<sup>5</sup> him so TR.

<sup>6</sup> y om. TR.

<sup>7</sup> take and brought T. was bronzt R.

<sup>8</sup> thei T. þey R.

<sup>9</sup> and panne T. and thanne R.

<sup>10</sup> þat he T.

<sup>11</sup> þan om. T.

<sup>12</sup> abbey T.

<sup>13</sup> the T. þe R.

<sup>14</sup> and xiiij T.

And aftir þis King Henri, regnyd his sone Henry, þe v<sup>the</sup>  
aftir þe conquest.<sup>1</sup> *Capitulum CC.xliij.*<sup>2</sup>

And aftir þe deeth of King Harry þe iiij<sup>the</sup>, regnid King Harry  
4 his sone, þat was born at Munmoth yn Walis, þat was<sup>3</sup> a worthi  
King, and a gracious man, and a gret conquerour. ¶ And yn þe  
firste yere of his regne, for gret loue & gedenesse, he sent to þe  
ffriseris of Langeley, þere as his Fadir hadde do burye King Richard  
8 þe ij<sup>de</sup>, & let take vp his body ayen out of the erthe, and dede  
bring hym to Westmynstre, yn a ryal chare couert with blak  
veluet, & baners of diuers arme; alle aboute. & al þe horsse  
drawyng þe chare were trappid yn black, & bete with diuers arme;  
12 and mony<sup>4</sup> a torch brennyng, by alle þe wey, til he come to  
Westmystre. And þere he lette make for hym a ryalle & a  
solempne terement, and buried hym be Quene Anne his wiff, as  
his owne desire was, on þe firther syde of Seynt Edwardes schryne,  
16 yn the Abbey of Saint Petris of Westmynstre : on whose soule God  
haue mercy ! Amen !

¶ And yn þis same yere weren<sup>5</sup> certeyne of Lollarde; and fals  
heritikis takine, þat hadde pu[r]sued, prou; fals treson, to haue  
20 slayn þe<sup>6</sup> King, and for to haue destroyed alle þe clergy of þis  
Reme. & þai myȝt haue hadde her fals purpos, but oure Lorde God  
wolde not suffre it; for yn hast þe<sup>7</sup> King hadde warnyng þerof, & of alle  
hir fals ordinaunce & worchyng, and come sodenly with his power  
24 to Saint Johnes-without-Smythfelde; and anon þei tokyn a certeyn  
of þe Lollarde; & fals heritike; and brouȝt hem<sup>8</sup> vnto þe Kingis  
presens, & þere þei<sup>9</sup> tolde all her fals purpos & ordinaunce, how þey  
wolde haue do & wroȝt, & þay myȝt haue regned &<sup>10</sup> hadde her  
28 wylle, and þere þei tolde which were her captens & her<sup>11</sup> gouernours.  
& þan þe King commaunded ham to þe Tour of London; & þanne  
þey took moo of ham, hope within þe cite & without, <sup>12</sup>and sent ham  
to Newgate and to<sup>13</sup> bothe<sup>14</sup> Countieȝ. And þan þere<sup>15</sup> were [þei]  
32 brouȝt yn<sup>16</sup> examynacion before þe clergy and þe Kingis Iusticeȝ;  
& þere þei were conuicte of<sup>17</sup> hir fals heresye, & dampned before þe  
Iusticeȝ for hir fals treson : & þus<sup>18</sup> was her Iugement, þat þay

<sup>1</sup> regnyd Harry his sone T.    <sup>2</sup> CC.xliij om. T. CC.xlv R.

<sup>3</sup> Walis and he was T.    <sup>4</sup> many TR. moy Kk.    <sup>5</sup> weren a TR.

<sup>6</sup> oure TR.    <sup>7</sup> oure T.    <sup>8</sup> þey R.    <sup>9</sup> hem om. T.    <sup>10</sup> þei om. T.

<sup>11</sup> and haue T.    <sup>12</sup> her om. T.    <sup>13</sup> leaf 123, back.    <sup>14</sup> into T.

<sup>15</sup> bothe the T.    <sup>16</sup> thei T.    <sup>17</sup> into T.

<sup>18</sup> thei were committed before þe clergy for T. conuict befor þe clergy for R.

<sup>19</sup> þis T. this R.

schulde be drawe fro þe Tour of London, þrouȝ London, vnto seint Gyleȝ felde; & þere to be hangid & brent on<sup>1</sup> þe galows. ¶ And also was<sup>2</sup> take Ser Roger Acton, kniȝt, boþe for Lollardye & eke for treson ayens þe King and þe Reme. and he come afore þe<sup>4</sup> clergie, and was conuict of<sup>3</sup> his<sup>4</sup> lewed Lollardye, and<sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup>before þe Iustize ydampned to be brent,<sup>6</sup> &<sup>7</sup> to be draw fro þe Tour of Lunden þrouȝ þe cite to Saint Gyleȝ felde, & to<sup>8</sup> be hanged & to be<sup>9</sup> brent.

8

¶ And þe<sup>10</sup> ij yere<sup>11</sup> of King Harryȝ regne<sup>12</sup> þe v<sup>the</sup>, he hilde a counsel of alle þe lordeȝ of the Reme at Westmynstre; and þere he put ham þe<sup>13</sup> demaunde, & prayed<sup>14</sup> hem of hir godenesse and of her gode counsel<sup>15</sup> to schewe hym, as touchynge þe titile &<sup>16</sup> ryȝt þat<sup>12</sup> he hadde to Normandy, Gasquoyne & Guyenne, þe which þe King of Fraunce withhilde hym<sup>17</sup> wrongefully and vnriȝtfully, þe wh[i]che his aunctreȝ before hym hadde holde be trewe titill of conquest, & riȝt heritage. ¶ The which Normandye, Gasquoyne & Guyenne, þe<sup>16</sup> gode King Edward of Wyndesore, and his<sup>18</sup> ansetryȝ before hym, hadde holde alle hir lyveȝ tyme. And his Lordeȝ ȝaf hym counsel to sende ambassetours vnto þe King of Fraunce and his counsel, þat<sup>19</sup> he schulde yelde vp to hym his riȝt heritage, þat is to<sup>20</sup> say, Normandie, <sup>20</sup> Gasqueyne, & Guyenne, þe<sup>21</sup> which his predecessoris had y<sup>22</sup>holde afore hym, or ellis he wolde it wyne with dunt of swyrde yn schort tyme, with help<sup>23</sup> of Ihesu. ¶ And þanne þe Dolfynne of Fraunce answeyrd to our<sup>24</sup> ambassetours, & sayde yn<sup>25</sup> þis manere: <sup>24</sup> þat þe<sup>26</sup> King was ouyr yonge &<sup>27</sup> tendir of age to make eny warre ayens hym, and was not like yette to be no gede (*sic*) warryor to<sup>28</sup> make such a conqueste þere vpon hym; &<sup>29</sup> yn seorne & despite he sent to hym a tonne fulle of teneys-ballis, be-cause he schulde<sup>30</sup> haue sumwhat <sup>28</sup> to<sup>31</sup> play with-alle, for hym & for his<sup>32</sup> lordeȝ; ‘& þat become hym bettir þanne to mantayne eny warre,’ he sayd.<sup>33</sup> ¶ And þanne our<sup>34</sup>

<sup>1</sup> in R.    <sup>2</sup> ther was T.    <sup>3</sup> was committed for T.    for R.

<sup>4</sup> his clergie and TR.    <sup>5</sup> and om. R.

<sup>6-6</sup> to be brent and dampnyd bifore the Iustices T.    Iustice to be brent & dampned R.

<sup>7</sup> and om. T.    <sup>8</sup> þere R.    <sup>9</sup> to be om. TR.    <sup>10</sup> in the R.

<sup>11</sup> And in the yeer T.    <sup>12</sup> regne om. R.    <sup>13</sup> this TR.

<sup>14</sup> praide and bisoughte T.    praide & besouȝte R.

<sup>15</sup> counceile and good wille T.    counseff and goodwill R.    <sup>16</sup> and the T.

<sup>17</sup> hym om. TR.    <sup>18</sup> his TR.    hir Kk.    <sup>19</sup> and þat TR.

<sup>20</sup> is to TR.    is Kk.    <sup>21</sup> Gascoigne and Gyene and Normandie þe T.

<sup>22</sup> y om. TR.    <sup>23</sup> þe helpe T.    þe help R.    <sup>24</sup> oure T.    our R.    om. Kk.

<sup>25</sup> on T.    <sup>26</sup> oure T.    <sup>27</sup> and to T.    <sup>28</sup> to do and to T.    and to R.

<sup>29</sup> And sumwhat T.    <sup>30</sup> wolde R.    <sup>31</sup> forto T.

<sup>32</sup> for his TR.    for Kk.    <sup>33</sup> he sayd om. T.    <sup>34</sup> anon oure T.

lordez, þat were ambassetours, tokyn hir leue & comyn yn-to  
Engelond ayen, & tolde þe Kinge and his Counsel of the vngodely  
answere þat þay hadde of the Dolfyn, and of þe present þat he hadde<sup>1</sup>  
4 sent vnto the Kinge. ¶ And whanne þe King hadde herde here  
wordez, and the answer of the Dolfyne, he was wondir sore  
agreyd, & ryzt evil payed towarde the Frenschmen and towarde þe  
King & þe Dolfyn, and pouzt to venge hym apon hem as sone as  
8 God wolde sende hym grace and myght; and anon lette<sup>2</sup> make  
tenysballis for the Dolfyn in alle þe haste þat þay myzte be maad,<sup>3</sup>  
& þat þei were harde & grete gune-stonys, for þe Dolfyn to play  
with-alle. ¶ And þanne anon þe King sent for alle his lordez, &  
12 hilde a gret<sup>4</sup> Counsel at Westmynstre, and tolde vnto hem þe  
answere þat he<sup>5</sup> hadde of the Dolfyn, and of<sup>6</sup> his worthi present  
to<sup>7</sup> hym and to<sup>8</sup> his lordez, to play with-alle. And þere þe King  
and his lordez were accorded þat þay schulde be redy yn armys with  
16 hir power, yn þe best aray þat myzt be,<sup>9</sup> and gete<sup>10</sup> men of armes  
and archers,<sup>11</sup> and alle oþer stuff þat longed þerto,<sup>12</sup> & to be redy  
with alle hir retynu to mete at Southhampton be Lammesse next  
folouyng, without eny delaye; for the King ordeyned is<sup>13</sup> Naueye  
20 of schippe, with al maner stuff<sup>14</sup> & vitaille þat longid to such a  
warriour, of al maner ordinaunce,<sup>15</sup> yn the hauen of Southhamton,  
in<sup>16</sup> to þe nowmbir of iij<sup>e</sup> xx<sup>ti</sup> sayle. ¶ And þere fil<sup>17</sup> a grete deseje  
& a foul myschif; for þer were iij lordez þat<sup>18</sup> þe King tryst moche  
24 ynne, þat,<sup>19</sup> for fals couetize purposid<sup>20</sup> þe Kingis deth, & pouzt to  
haue slayn hym and alle his breþryn or he hadde take þe see, þe  
which were named þus: Ser Richarde, þe Erle of Caumbrydge,  
broþer to þe Duk of York; þe ij was þe Lord Serope, Treserer of  
28 Engelond; þe iij was Ser Thomas Gray, knyzt, of the Northcuntre.  
And þeze iij lordez afore sayde, for luere of Moneye, had made  
promis to þe Frenschmen to<sup>21</sup> haue slayne oure King and alle his  
worthi brethryn, by a false trayne sodenly, ere þay hadde be war.  
32 But God, of his gret grace, hylde his holy hand ouyr ham, & saued

<sup>1</sup> whiche he hadde T. þe whiche he hadde R. þat hadde Kk.

<sup>2</sup> he lete T. <sup>3</sup> maad TR. padde (sic) Kk. <sup>4</sup> leaf 124. <sup>5</sup> thei T.

<sup>6</sup> of om. R. <sup>7</sup> that he sente to T. þat he sente to R. <sup>8</sup> to om. T.

<sup>9</sup> be done T. be do R. <sup>10</sup> to gete T.

<sup>11</sup> archers þat myghte be geten T. archers þat myzte be goten R.

<sup>12</sup> longid toward it T. to it R. <sup>13</sup> þanne his T. <sup>14</sup> of stuff T.

<sup>15</sup> of ordinauncis T. <sup>16</sup> in om. T.

<sup>17</sup> And thanne felle ther T. And þanne fil þer R. <sup>18</sup> which þat TR.

<sup>19</sup> ynne þat om. T. þat om. R.

<sup>20</sup> couetise þat þei hadde purposid & Iugid T. couetize þat þey hadde  
purposed and iuged R. <sup>21</sup> forto TR.

hem from þis pavelous meyne. ¶ And for to haue do<sup>1</sup> þis, þei reseyued of þe Frenschmen a mylyon of golde, þat<sup>2</sup> was þere oponly previde; and for þer fals treson þey were all iij Iuged vnto deth<sup>3</sup>; and þis was þe Iugement: þat þai schulde be ladde þrouz Hampton, 4 and without þe<sup>4</sup> Northegate, þere to be hedid; & þus þai endide, for her fals couetyse and treson.

¶ Anon as þus<sup>5</sup> was do, þe King and alle his meyne made hem redy, and wenton to schyppe, &<sup>6</sup> sayled forth with xv<sup>c</sup> schippe, 8 and arryued with-ynne Sayne, at Kiteaws, vpon our Ladiez Evyn, þe<sup>7</sup> Assumpeion, yn Normandye, with al his ordynaunce; & so went<sup>8</sup> forth to Hareflyte, & besegid þe toun al aboute, by londe and<sup>9</sup> by watir, and sent to þe capteyne, and bade hym delyuer þe 12 towne: and he saide, ‘non<sup>10</sup> he delyuerd hym, ne non he wolde to hym delyuer,<sup>11</sup> but bade hym do his beste.’ ¶ And þan þe<sup>12</sup> King leyde his ordynaunce vnto þe toun, þat is for to saye, Gunnez, Engyne, 13 Tripgettis, & schet and cast vnto þe wallis & eke yn-to 16 þe toun, & caste down both toures and toun, & layde ham vnto þe grounde: & þere<sup>14</sup> he played at<sup>15</sup> tenys with his harde gune-stone; þat<sup>16</sup> were withynne þe toune. ¶ Whanne þai schulde plai, þai songyn ‘welawaye and allas þat<sup>17</sup> eny suche tenye3-ballis were made,’ 20 and cursed al þo þat warre beganne, & þe tyme þat<sup>18</sup> þei were born. ¶ And on þe morow þe King dede crye at euery gate of þe toun, þat euery man schulde be redye, on þe morowe erlye to make assaute vnto þe toun. ¶ And Gilliam<sup>19</sup> Bocher & Iohn Gaunt,<sup>20</sup> with 24 xij oper worthi burgez, comyn to þe King, and besouzt hym, of his ryall mageste & power, to<sup>21</sup> withdrawe his malice and<sup>22</sup> destrucion þat he dede vnto hem, & besouzt hym of viij dayez respite and trewe, yef eny rescu myzt come vnto hem, and ellis to yelde vp þe 28 toun vnto hym, with alle her godez. ¶ And þan þe king sent forth þe Capteyne, and kept þe Remenaunt stille with hym. And þe lorde Gancort went forth to Rone yn alle hast, vnto þe Dolfyn, for<sup>23</sup> help & socour; but þer was non, ne no maner rescu<sup>24</sup>; for þe 32 Dolfyn wolde not abyde. ¶ And þus þis Capteyne come ageyne to<sup>25</sup>

<sup>1</sup> þo R.      <sup>2</sup> and þat R.      <sup>3</sup> the deth T.      <sup>4</sup> þe om. R.

<sup>5</sup> this T.      þis R.      <sup>6</sup> and token and T.      <sup>7</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>8</sup> wente him T.      <sup>9</sup> and eek T.      <sup>10</sup> that noon T.      <sup>11</sup> yelde TR.

<sup>12</sup> oure T.      <sup>13</sup> Engynes and T.      engyne3 and R.      <sup>14</sup> þere om. T.

<sup>15</sup> at the T.      at þe R.      <sup>16</sup> to hem that T.

<sup>17</sup> that euer T.      þat euer R.      <sup>18</sup> that euer T.      þat euer R.

<sup>19</sup> William T.      And thanne William R.      <sup>20</sup> Grantt R.

<sup>21</sup> leaf 124, back      <sup>22</sup> and his T.      & his R.      <sup>23</sup> forto haue T.

<sup>24</sup> reson R.      <sup>25</sup> vnto TR.

þe King, and yelde vp þe toun, and delyverde hym þe keye3. And þan he callyd his vncle, þe Erle of Dorset, and made hym Capteyne of the toun<sup>1</sup> of Hareflete, & delyuered hym þe keie3, and bade hym  
4 go put out alle þe Frensch peple, both man, womman and chylde, & stuffe þe toun<sup>2</sup> with Englisch men. ¶ And þan þe King sent yn to Engelonde,<sup>3</sup> þat what crafti man wolde come þidir, & ynhabit hym þere ynne þe toune, he scholde have hous and housholde to  
8 hym & to his heyre3 for euermore. And þidir went mony dyuers Marchaunte3 & Crafti men, & inhabited ham þere, to streynth þe toune, & weryn welcome. ¶ And whenne þe King saw þis, þat hit was<sup>4</sup> welle stoffed both of vitaille & of men, þis worthi Prynce  
12 & King toke his leve, & went hym to Caleys warde by londe. ¶ And þe Frensch men herde of his komyng, and<sup>5</sup> pou3t to stoppe his way, þat he scholde not passe þat way; & yn hast broken alle þe brygges þere eny passage was for hors & man, yn-so-moche þere<sup>6</sup>  
16 my3t no man passe ouyr þe see Ryuers, noþer on hors ne on foote, but yef he schulde be drounde. ¶ Wherefore our<sup>7</sup> King, with alle his peple, went & souu3te his way fer vp to<sup>8</sup> Paris warde; & þere was alle þe ryal power of Fraunce redy to yef hym batayle, and to  
20 destroy al his pepyl; but God<sup>9</sup> almy3ti was his gide, and saued hym and alle his peple,<sup>10</sup> and withstode alle<sup>11</sup> his enymys purpos, þankyd be God, þat so sauyl<sup>12</sup> his owne kny3t & King yn his riztfull tytyl! ¶ And<sup>13</sup> our King saw<sup>14</sup> þe multitude & nowmbre of  
24 his enymys to withstonde his way & for to yeue hym bataile, þanne þe King, with a meke hert and a gode spiryt, lyfte vp his hande3 to Almy3ti God,<sup>15</sup> beseehyng hym of<sup>16</sup> help & socour, and þat dai to saue his trew seruaunte3. ¶ And þanne our King gadryd alle his  
28 lorde3 togadir,<sup>17</sup> and oþer pepil aboute hym, and bade hem alle to be of<sup>18</sup> gode chere, for þei schulde haue a<sup>19</sup> fayre daye and a gracious victori, and þe bettir of al hir<sup>20</sup> enymys; and prayed hem alle to make hem redy vnto þe batayle; for he wolde rapere be ded þat

<sup>1</sup> towne that is to seie T.

<sup>2</sup> stuffid this towne of Harflete T.

<sup>3</sup> Englund and dide crie in eueri good towne of Englund T. Engelonde and dede crie in eueri good town of engelonde R.

<sup>4</sup> þat hit was T. saw þat it was R. þat is Kk.

<sup>5</sup> thei T. <sup>6</sup> þat ther T. þat þer R. <sup>7</sup> þe R. <sup>8</sup> ferre vnto T.

<sup>9</sup> god that is T. <sup>10</sup> meynee T. meyne R. <sup>11</sup> alle om. TR.

<sup>12</sup> that sauyl so T. saued so R. <sup>13</sup> And thanne TR.

<sup>14</sup> king biholding and seyng T. beholdinge and seyng R.

<sup>15</sup> god and TR. <sup>16</sup> of his TR. <sup>17</sup> togadir om. TR.

<sup>18</sup> of TR. a Kk. <sup>19</sup> haue a TR. schulde a Kk. <sup>20</sup> his TR.

day, in batayle or yn felde,<sup>1</sup> þan be<sup>2</sup> take of his enymys; for he wolde nevir put þe rem of Engeland to no Rawnson for his persone. ¶ And þe Duk of Yorke fill on his<sup>3</sup> kne, and besauzt þe King of a bone, þat he wolde graunte hym þat day þe vawnt-ward yn his<sup>4</sup> batayle: and þe King graunted hym his asking, and sayde, “gramarcy, Cosyn of Yorke!” and prayed hym to make hym redye. ¶ And þanne he bade euery man to<sup>5</sup> orden hym a stake of tre, and<sup>6</sup> scharp both<sup>7</sup> endis, þat þe stake myzt be pyght yn<sup>8</sup> the<sup>9</sup> erthe a-slop, þat hir enymye<sup>3</sup> schulde not ouyr-ryde hem,—for þat was hir fals purpos,—and arayed hem al<sup>8</sup> þere for<sup>9</sup> to ouyr-ryde our meyne at þe first comyng of ham sodeynly yn þe first bront.

¶ And alle nyzt before þe bataile, þe Frenschmen made mony<sup>12</sup> grete fires, and moche revell with hontynge, and<sup>10</sup> played our King and his lordez at þe dys, and an archer for<sup>11</sup> a blanke of hir moneye; for þei wende hadde<sup>12</sup> be heyre<sup>3</sup>.

[*The Battle of Agincourt.*]

¶ The morow<sup>13</sup> aros, þe day gan spryng, and þe King, be gode<sup>16</sup> avis, lette arme<sup>14</sup> his bataile and<sup>15</sup> wynges, and charged euery man to kepe hym hoole togadir, & prayed hem al to be of gode chere. And whanne þay were redy, he askid what tyme of þe day it was, & þay sayde ‘pryme.’ ¶ “Thanne,” said our King, “nowe is gode<sup>20</sup> tyme, for alle Engeland prayeth for vs; and þefore be of gode chere, & lette vs go to our iorney.” And þanne he sayde with an hygh voyce: ¶ “In þe name of Almyzti God and<sup>16</sup> Saynt George, avaunt banarer! and Saynt George, þis day þyn help!”<sup>24</sup>

¶ And þanne þe Frenschmen come prikkying down as þei wolde haue ouyr-rydyn alle oure meyne; but God and our archers made hem sone to stomble; for our archers schet neuyr arowe amys, but it<sup>17</sup> perished and brouzt to grounde man and hors<sup>18</sup>; for þey<sup>28</sup> schet þat day for a wager; and our stake<sup>3</sup> made hem top ouyr terve, eche on oper, þat þay lay on hepis ij spere lengthe of heighth. And our King, with his meyne and with<sup>19</sup> men of arme<sup>3</sup>, evir

<sup>1</sup> wolde rathir that day be deed in the feld T. þe feeld R.

<sup>2</sup> to be T. <sup>3</sup> his om. T. <sup>4</sup> leaf 125.

<sup>5</sup> of tre and om. T. <sup>6</sup> at bothe R. <sup>7</sup> into TR.

<sup>8</sup> hem aH T. hem alle R. al Kk. <sup>9</sup> for om. T.

<sup>10</sup> and shoutyng and T. and showtinge and R.

<sup>11</sup> ail for T. al for R. <sup>12</sup> all hadde TR. <sup>13</sup> morne T. morn R.

<sup>14</sup> araie TR. <sup>15</sup> and his TR. <sup>16</sup> and of R. <sup>17</sup> that it T.

<sup>18</sup> hors and man T. <sup>19</sup> with om. R.



<sup>1</sup>layde doune; for he most fyt<sup>1</sup> with his owne honde; and our<sup>2</sup> gode archers lackid<sup>3</sup> on<sup>4</sup> arowes, and<sup>5</sup> layde on with stake. ¶ And þus Almy<sup>3</sup>ti God and Saint George brouzt our enymys to ground, and 4 3af vs þat day þe victori; & þere were slayn of Frensch-men þat day yn þe ffeelde of Agyncourt, moo þan a<sup>6</sup> xj M<sup>t</sup>, without prysoners þat were take. & þere were nowmbred þat day of Frenschmen yn the ffeelde, mo þan vj xx M<sup>t</sup>, and of Englyschmen nouzt vij M<sup>t</sup>; but God 8 þat day fau3t for vs.

¶ And aftir come<sup>7</sup> þer tydynge; to þe<sup>8</sup> King, þat þere was a new Batayle of Frenschmen ordeyned, redy to stele on hem, and comyn towarde hym. Thanne<sup>9</sup> anon þe<sup>10</sup> King lette crye þat euery 12 man scholde sle his prysoner þat he hadde take; and anon arrayed his bataile ayen redy for<sup>11</sup> to fyt with þe Frenschmen. ¶ Whanne þay say þat our men killyd down<sup>12</sup> her prysoners, þanne withdrow þay<sup>13</sup> ham, and brak hir batayle and alle hir araye; and þus our 16 King (as a worthi conqueror) hadde þat day þe victory yn the ffeelde of Agyncourt yn Pycardye.

¶ And þanne our King returned ayen þere þe Batayle was, to se what pepil was ded of Englyschmen, and yef eny were hurt þat 20 my3t be holpe; and þere were ded yn þe ffeelde, on þer party<sup>14</sup> þe Duk of Barry, þe Duk of Launson,<sup>15</sup> þe Duk of Braban, the Erle of Nauerne, þe Chief counstable of Fraunce, and viij oper erlez, and þe Archebischoppe of Saumte, and of gode Barons C<sup>16</sup> and moo, 24 and of worthi kni3tis of grete alyaunce of Cote armyours, M<sup>t</sup> C.<sup>17</sup> And of Englyschmen was ded þat day, þe<sup>18</sup> Duk of Yorke and þe Erle of Suffolk; and of alle oper of Englisch<sup>19</sup> Nacyon þere were not ded passyng xxvj bodiez, thanked be God! And pis batayle was 28 on a Friday, þe<sup>20</sup> which was Crispyn & Crispiniane; day, yn the moneth of October. And anon þe King commawnded to bery ham, and the Duke of York to be caried forth with ham, and þe Erle of Suffolke. And þere were tak<sup>21</sup> prisoners, þe Duk of Orlyance, þe 32 Duk of Burbone, þe Erle of Vandom, þe Erle of Ewe, þe Erle of Richmond, and Ser Bursigaunt, Marchal of Fraunce. And mony

<sup>1—1</sup> leide doune for him bife3t to fighte that day T. laide down) for him fil to figte R.

<sup>2</sup> our om. T. <sup>3</sup> þat lackeden T. <sup>4</sup> on om. T. <sup>5</sup> and om. T.

<sup>6</sup> a om. TR. <sup>7</sup> that come T. <sup>8</sup> oure T. our R.

<sup>9</sup> And T. Thanne om. R. <sup>10</sup> oure T. our R. <sup>11</sup> for om. TR.

<sup>12</sup> a doune T. <sup>13</sup> thei withdrew T. <sup>14</sup> on þer party om. TR.

<sup>15</sup> Alaunsonn T. <sup>16</sup> an C T. <sup>17</sup> A M<sup>t</sup> and v C T.

<sup>18</sup> þe good T. þe gode R. <sup>19</sup> lea3t 125, back. <sup>20</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>21</sup> take om. T.

oper worthi lordez were take yn pis batayle of Agyncourt, and brouȝt vnto þe toun of Caley, and so ouyr se<sup>1</sup> with þe King yn-to<sup>2</sup> Engeland, and londid at Douer, yn Kent, with alle his prisoners in saafte,—þankid be Ihesu!—and so cam to<sup>3</sup> Caunturbury, and offred<sup>4</sup> at Saint Thomas Schryne; and so roode forth þrouȝ Kent þe next way to Eltham, & þere he restid hym tyll he wolde come to London. ¶ And þan þe Meire of London and þe Aldermen and<sup>4</sup> þe Schereffeȝ,<sup>5</sup> with alle þe worþi Comeners and craftis, comyn to þe<sup>8</sup> Blake-Heth, welle and worthilye arayed to welcome our Kyng with dyuers melodye, and<sup>6</sup> þanke Allemyȝty god of his gracious victory þat he hadde schewed to<sup>7</sup> hym.

[*Henry V's Reception in London.*]

¶ And so þe King and his prysoners passyd forth by ham, til<sup>12</sup> he com vnto<sup>8</sup> Seint Thomas watryng; and þere mette<sup>9</sup> with hym alle þe Religious with precession, and welcomyd hym; and so<sup>10</sup> þe King come ridyng<sup>11</sup> with his prysoners þrouȝ þe cite of London, where þere<sup>12</sup> was schewyd mony a faire syȝt at alle þe Conditeȝ and<sup>16</sup> at þe Cros yn Chepe, as yn heuynly aray, angelis,<sup>13</sup> archaungelis, Patriarchus, prophetis,<sup>14</sup> and virginis with dyuers melodyȝ, sensyng<sup>15</sup> and syngyng to welcome our King, and alle conditus<sup>16</sup> rennyng wyne. And þe King passyd forthe vnto Saint Pauleȝ; and þere<sup>17</sup> 20 met with hym xiiij Bischopeȝ, reuersed and mitryd, with Censers to welcome þe King, and sungun for his gracious victori *Te deum laudamus*. And þere þe King offred, &<sup>18</sup> roode forth<sup>19</sup> to Westminster; and þe<sup>20</sup> Maire toke leue<sup>21</sup> of þe King, and rode hoom<sup>24</sup> ayen.

¶ And yn þe thrydde yere of King Henryȝ regne þe v<sup>the</sup>, Came þe Emperour of Almayne, King of Rome & of Hungary, yn-to Engelande, and so to þe cite of London. And þe Maire, aldermen,<sup>22</sup> 28 and schereviȝ,<sup>23</sup> with þe<sup>24</sup> worthi craftis of London, be þe Kingiȝ commaundement, met with hym on the Blake-Heth yn þe best aray þat þay cowthe, on hors bak; & þere þay welcomyd hym, and brouȝt hym to London with moche honour and grete reuerence. 32

<sup>1</sup> þe sea T.    <sup>2</sup> king of T.    <sup>3</sup> vnto T.    <sup>4</sup> & R. and om. Kk.

<sup>5</sup> london with the sherefis and þe Aldirmen T.    <sup>6</sup> & to R.

<sup>7</sup> for TR.    <sup>8</sup> to T.    <sup>9</sup> þei mette T.    <sup>10</sup> so om. T.    <sup>11</sup> MS. adyuge.

<sup>12</sup> that ther T.    <sup>13</sup> of Aungels TR.    <sup>14</sup> prophetis om. R.

<sup>15</sup> of sensyng T.    <sup>16</sup> þe Condites T.    þe conditus R.    <sup>17</sup> þanne T.

<sup>18</sup> & took and T.    <sup>19</sup> forth om. T.    <sup>20</sup> thanne the T.    þenne þe R.

<sup>21</sup> his leue T.    <sup>22</sup> and the aldermen T.

<sup>23</sup> with the sherefis T. and sherenes R. shereviz Kk.    <sup>24</sup> and þe T.

And atte Seint Thomas watryng þere mette with hym the King and alle<sup>1</sup> his lordez yn gode aray. And þere was a worthi metyng betwene þe Emperour and þe King; & þere thay kussid togadrez,  
 4 & braced ech othir; and þan<sup>2</sup> þe King toke þe Emperour be þe hande; & so þai come rydyng prouzt þe cite of London vnto Saint Poulez; and þere þay lyzte, and offred; and alle þe<sup>3</sup> Bischopes stode reuersed, with censers yn here hondez, censyng. ¶ Thanne<sup>4</sup>  
 8 þei tokyn hir hors, and ryden to<sup>5</sup> Westmynstre; and þere the King loggyd the Emperoure yn his owne palis, & þere<sup>6</sup> restid hym a grete while, and alle atte þe Kingis cost.

¶ And sone aftir come þe Duk of Holond yn-to Engelond, to<sup>7</sup>  
 12 se þe Emperour, and to speke with hym and with þe King; and he was worthily resceyved and loggyd yn the Bischopis In of Hely, and alle at þe Kinges cost. ¶ And whanne þe Emperoure hadde wel restid hym and sey þe lande yn dyuers partees, and knew þe  
 16 commoditees, þanne, be processe of tyme, he toke his leue of the King; but ere he went<sup>8</sup> he was made Knyzt of the Gartir, & resceyved and weryd þe lyuerey; and þanne he thanked þe King and alle<sup>9</sup> his worthi lordez; and<sup>10</sup> þe King & he went ouer þe see  
 20 to Calys, and abydyn þere longe tyme, to haue an onswere of the Frensch King. And atte þe<sup>11</sup> last hit come, and plesyd hym riȝt nought; and<sup>12</sup> þe Emperour toke his leue of the King, and passyd forth yn Goddis name; and oure King come ouyr ayen yn-to  
 24 Engelond, yn alle þe hast þat he myȝt; and þat was on Saynt Lukes eue þat he come to Lambeth; and on the Monday next ffoluynge he come yn<sup>13</sup> to the parlement atte Westmynstre. And yn þis same yere was a gret derth of Corne yn Engelond, but,<sup>14</sup>—  
 28 thankyd be God!—hit lastid not long.

**How the King went þe secunde tyme yn-to Normandy; & of þe sege of Roone.<sup>15</sup> Capitulum CC xlv.<sup>16</sup>**

And yn þe forth yere of King Harrye; regne<sup>17</sup> þe fifthe, he  
 32 hilde his parlement at Westmynstre yn the begynnynge of<sup>18</sup> moneth of October, and lastid vnto þe purificacion of our Lady þanne next folowyng. And þere was grawnted vnto þe King, to maynetayne

<sup>1</sup> the kyng and alle T. hym alle Kk.    <sup>2</sup> thanne T. þan om. R.

<sup>3</sup> þe om. R.    <sup>4</sup> And þanne T. And þenne R.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 126.

<sup>6</sup> þere he TR.    <sup>7</sup> to come and T.    <sup>8</sup> þede T. yede R.

<sup>9</sup> alle om. T.    <sup>10</sup> And thanne TR.    <sup>11</sup> þe om. T.    <sup>12</sup> And thanne T.

<sup>13</sup> yn om. R.    <sup>14</sup> but om. T.    <sup>15</sup> How the king . . . Roone om. TR.

<sup>16</sup> CC xlvj R.    <sup>17</sup> regne om. T.    <sup>18</sup> of the T. of þe R.

his warres, bothe of<sup>1</sup> spiritualte & temporalte, an hole taxe and a dyme.<sup>2</sup> ¶ And<sup>3</sup> anon þe King prayed al his lordez to make hem redy to streynth hym yn his ryzt; and anon he lette make a new retynnu, and charged alle men to be redye at Hampton yn þe<sup>4</sup> 4 Whitson woke þanne next folowyng, without eny delay. ¶ And<sup>5</sup> þe Kinge made þe Duke of Bedforde Protector & defender of his Reme of Engeland yn his absens, and charged hym to kepe his lawez, &<sup>6</sup> mayntayne boþe<sup>7</sup> spiritualte and<sup>8</sup> temporalte. ¶ And<sup>8</sup> whanne þe King hadde þus do, and sette alle þyng yn kinde, on Saint Marke; day, þat was þat tyme Hocwednesday, he toke his hors atte Westmynstre, and come rydyng to Poulis; & þere he offred, and toke his leue, and<sup>9</sup> rode forth þrow þe cite, taking his<sup>12</sup> leve of alle maner of<sup>10</sup> peple, as welle of<sup>11</sup> pore as of<sup>11</sup> Rich, praynge alle hem<sup>12</sup> yn generall to pray for hym. And so he roode forth to Saint George; and þere he offred, and toke is leve of þe Maire, Chargyng hym to kepe welle his Chaumbre; and so rode forth to<sup>16</sup> Hampton, and þere abode tille his retynnu was redy and come to hym; for þere was alle<sup>13</sup> his Naueye of schippe; with his ordynaunce, gadred and welle stuffyd, as longyd to such a ryalle Kinge, with alle maner of<sup>14</sup> vitayle; for his<sup>15</sup> pepille, as welle for hors as for<sup>20</sup> man, as longyd for such a warriour, þat is to say, armure, Gonnes, tripgettis, Engyne; sowe; Bastille; brygge; of lethir, sealing laddres, mallis, <sup>16</sup>spade; schouylle; Pykys,<sup>17</sup> bowe; and<sup>18</sup> arowe; bowstrynge; scheftis,<sup>19</sup> &<sup>20</sup> pipis fulle of arowe; as nede for such a<sup>24</sup> worthi warriour þat no þing was to sech. &<sup>21</sup> whanne tyme come, þedir come to hym scheppe; lade with<sup>22</sup> gunepowder.

[*Henry V's second Invasion of France.*]

¶ Whanne<sup>23</sup> þis<sup>24</sup> was rede, and his retynnu come, þe King and his lordez, with alle his rial host, went to schippe, & tokyn þe see &<sup>28</sup> sayled yn-to Normandy, and landed at Towk vpon<sup>25</sup> Lammas Day þan next; and þere he made xxviij<sup>26</sup> knightis at his londyng.

<sup>1</sup> of þe T.

<sup>2</sup> dyme in susteynyng of his warres T. dyme in susteynyng of his warres R.

<sup>3</sup> And þanne T. and thenne R. <sup>4</sup> þe om. T.

<sup>5</sup> And there T. and þere R. <sup>6</sup> and to T. <sup>7</sup> boþe the T.

<sup>8</sup> and þe T. <sup>9</sup> and so TR. <sup>10</sup> of om. T. <sup>11</sup> of the T.

<sup>12</sup> hem alle T. han alle R. <sup>13</sup> alle om. T. <sup>14</sup> of om. R.

<sup>15</sup> for such a roiall T. for such a rial R. <sup>16</sup> leaf 126, back.

<sup>17</sup> Pikeyses Pavises T. Pikeys Pavis R. <sup>18</sup> and om. T.

<sup>19</sup> Tonnes Cheftis T. Tonnes Chiftis R. <sup>20</sup> & or T. <sup>21</sup> & om. TR.

<sup>22</sup> with Gønnes and T. <sup>23</sup> And whanne R. A. whenne T.

<sup>24</sup> all this T. <sup>25</sup> vpon þe T. <sup>26</sup> xlvij TR.

¶ And panne þe King, hering of mony enymys vpon þe see, þat is to sey, ix grete Carylis, hulkys,<sup>1</sup> Galeye; & schippi; that were come to<sup>2</sup> destroye his Nauey, anon<sup>3</sup> he commaunded þe Erle of the 4 March to be chyff Capteyne, and mony worthi lor[d]e; with hym, with<sup>4</sup> men of armys and archers, to go to the see, þat non enmyes defouled his Nauey<sup>5</sup> ne entred his londe yn no maner party for to destrowble his viage ne<sup>6</sup> corneye. ¶ And anon þe erle toke his 8 meyne, and went to schyppe, and skimmed the see, and kepte þe see-coste; þat no maner<sup>7</sup> enymys durste rowte<sup>8</sup> vpon þe see. ¶ And anon þe Kinge sent his heroudes vnto þe Capten of Towke, & chargyd hym to delyuer is<sup>9</sup> Castell and his toun, & ellis he 12 schulde leve neyþer<sup>10</sup> man ne child a<sup>11</sup>lyve. And anon þe Captene & iiij oþer burge; brouzt the keye; vnto þe King, and besouzt hym of grace; and þe Kinge delyuerd<sup>12</sup> to Ser Iohn<sup>13</sup> Kighley þe keie; and made hym Capteyn, & commawnded hym to put out<sup>14</sup> alle þe<sup>15</sup> 16 Frenschmen, bothe of þe Castell and of the toun. ¶ And þere besyde was þe Castell of Louers; and þedir þe King sent þe Erle Marchall, with a faire mayne, and sawted þe toun; and anon it was yelded vp vnto<sup>16</sup> þe Erle, & brouzt hym þe keye;<sup>17</sup> & he 20 brouzt þe keye; to þe King; & þe King toke to<sup>18</sup> hym þe keye; and made hym Capteyn of the Castell of Louers & of alle þat longed þerto, and charged him to<sup>19</sup> delyuer oute alle þe F[r]enchmen.

¶ And þan þe King<sup>20</sup> hilde forth his way to Cane, þat was a 24 strong toune and a faire, and a ryalle Castell peryane. And anon he sent his herodde; vnto þe Capteyn, and Chargyd hym to delyuer þe toun and his Castel, or ellis he wolde hit gete with<sup>21</sup> streynth of hond.

28 ¶ And þai answerd and sayd to him, ‘non of hym he toke,<sup>22</sup> ne non þey<sup>23</sup> wolde delyuer vnto hym.’<sup>24</sup> ¶ And panne<sup>25</sup> anon he leyde his sege to þe toun, and layde gunne; on euery syde, and bete adoun both walle; & toure; and slow myche pepil yn hir<sup>26</sup> howse; 32 & eke yn stretes. ¶ And þe gode Duk of Clarens, he<sup>27</sup> layde doun<sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> hulkis and T.      <sup>2</sup> forto T.      <sup>3</sup> And anoon T.      <sup>4</sup> of R.  
<sup>5</sup> his Navie T.      his Naueie R.      Nauey Kk.  
<sup>6</sup> ne his TR.      <sup>7</sup> maner of TR.      <sup>8</sup> come T.      <sup>9</sup> him his TR.  
<sup>10</sup> neyþir leue T.      neyther leue R.      <sup>11</sup> on T.      <sup>12</sup> dide delyuer T.  
<sup>13</sup> Iohn of R.      <sup>14</sup> putte out TR.      put Kk.      <sup>15</sup> þe om. TR.  
<sup>16</sup> yolden to T.      yolde to R.      <sup>17</sup> and þe keies brought to him T.  
<sup>18</sup> to om. TR.      <sup>19</sup> him to T.      to Rkk.      <sup>20</sup> And þe kyng panne T.  
<sup>21</sup> with dynt of swerde and T.      <sup>22</sup> saide he took him noon R.      <sup>23</sup> he R.  
<sup>24</sup> and seide he took hem noon ne noon he wolde delyuer to him T.  
<sup>25</sup> thanne om. T.      <sup>26</sup> hir om. T.      <sup>27</sup> he om. R.      <sup>28</sup> a downe T.

þe wallis on his syde vnto þe grounde; and so with yune a while  
 þe King be his counsel assauted þe toune alle aboute; and anon þe  
 Duk of Clarans had entyrd yn-to the toun, and slow<sup>3</sup> down ryzt til  
 þat he come vnto þe King, and spared neþer man ne childe; and 4  
 euыр þai cryed "a Clarans, a Clarans, Seint George!" & slou<sup>3</sup> down  
 ryzt; and þere was ded on þe wallis,<sup>1</sup> on þe Kingis syde, a worthi  
 man þat me callid Sprengelose, þe which þe King commaunded to  
 be beryed yn þe abbey of Cane, fast by William Conqueroure: on 8  
 whose soule, God haue mercy! amen! <sup>2</sup>And thanne<sup>3</sup> þe King come  
 yn-to þe toun, with his Broþer þe Duk of Clarens, and mony oþer  
 worthi lordez,<sup>4</sup> with moche solempnite and myrthe, and þanne þe  
 King commaunded þe<sup>5</sup> Capteyne to delyuer his<sup>6</sup> Castell; and he 12  
 besouzt þe King þat he wolde yeue<sup>7</sup> hym xiiij dayez of<sup>8</sup> respite,  
 yef eny rescu wolde come; and yf non come, to delyuer hym þe  
 keyez and þe Castelle atte his owne commaundement. ¶ And  
 vndir þis composicion was the toun<sup>9</sup> & þe Castell of Bayons, with 16  
 oþer tounez, fortalicez & villagez, yn-to þe noumbre of xiiij tounes.  
 And<sup>10</sup> vpon þe hylle before the castell of Cane, þe<sup>11</sup> King pyght  
 alle his tentis, þat semyd a toun as moche as Cane. & by þat  
 come tydyngis þat no rescu<sup>12</sup> wolde come þere; and<sup>13</sup> so, at þe xiiij 20  
 dayes ende, þe Capteyne come out, and delyuered þe keyez and þe  
 Castell to our King; And Bayons and þe oþer xiiij tounez weryn  
 delyuerd vnto<sup>14</sup> hym also. and anon þe King delyuerd þe keyes to  
 þe Duk of Clarans, and made hym Capten, both of the toun and of 24  
 þe Castell, & made hym Capteyn of Bayons, & of al þe oþer tounez  
 also, and so<sup>15</sup> entred þe Castell & þe toun<sup>16</sup> also; and þere he hylde  
 his Seint Georgez feste; and þere he made xv Kniztis of the Bath.<sup>17</sup>  
 And þe King commaunded to<sup>18</sup> put out alle þe Frenschmen, boþe 28  
 man & womman; and no man so hardy to defoule no womman, ne  
 take no maner gode away from ham, but late hem passe yn pees,  
 vpon<sup>19</sup> deth; and þere passed out of the toun, yn on day, moo þan  
 xvc wymmen.

32

<sup>1</sup> on þe wallis *om.* T.    <sup>2</sup> *leaf* 127.    <sup>3</sup> thanne T. þanne R. when Kk.<sup>4</sup> and many oþer lordes T.    <sup>5</sup> commandid þe kyng vnto the T.<sup>6</sup> him his TR.    <sup>7</sup> kyng to yeue T. þe kinge to yeue R.    <sup>8</sup> of *om.* R.<sup>9</sup> was the towne T. was þe toun R. the toun *om.* Kk.<sup>10</sup> And *om.* T. ac Kk.    <sup>11</sup> oure T. oure R.<sup>12</sup> rescue T. rescu R.    <sup>13</sup> and TR.    <sup>14</sup> to T.    <sup>15</sup> so *om.*<sup>16</sup> þe toun and þe caste<sup>ll</sup> R.<sup>17</sup> Bath there was *ser* lowes Robserd Salyn Cheyne Mongomerie and many  
 oþer were maad knyghtis T. Bath and þere was sir lowis Robessart Salyn  
 Cheyne Moungomery and meny oþer R.<sup>18</sup> hem forto T. ham forto R.    <sup>19</sup> vpon þe T.

¶ And panne þe<sup>1</sup> King lete stuffe þe Toun and þe Castell with Englisch men, and ordeyned ij Capteyne<sup>3</sup>, on for the toun and a-noþer for the Castell, and chargyd ham, vpon her lyf, to kepe wel 4 the toun and þe Castell. And or he<sup>2</sup> went þenne<sup>3</sup>, he gat valeys Newelyn, & leyde sege<sup>3</sup> to Chierburgh. And þat<sup>4</sup> sege layde þe Duk of Gloucestre with a strong pouer, and be processe of tyme gat it, and made þere a Capteyne. And þe<sup>5</sup> same tyme þe Erle of 8 Warwie layde sege<sup>6</sup> to Dounstount, & gat hit, and put þeryn a capteyne.

¶ And for to speke moore of the Erle of the Marche, þat þe King hadde sette<sup>7</sup> to scom þe see and þe Cooste<sup>3</sup> of Engelonde for 12 enymys, þe wynde aros so vp-on hem, þat þei wende alle for<sup>8</sup> to haue loste her lyve<sup>3</sup>; but prou<sup>3</sup> þe grace of God, and goode gouern- aunce, þey þat were within the Ile of Wight, ryden al þat storme þere.<sup>9</sup> ¶ And þere were lost ij Carreke<sup>3</sup>; & ij balyngers with 16 marchaundis godis, and alle þe pepyl þat were þerynne; & anoþer Caryk droff before Hampton, and drew his Mast ouyr the toun wallis; and þis<sup>10</sup> was on<sup>11</sup> saynt Barthelemewe<sup>3</sup> day. ¶ And whaun alle þis storme was cecid, þis worthi Erle of the Marche 20 tooke his schippe with his meyne, and went ayen<sup>12</sup> to þe see, and londid yn Normandy at Hogge<sup>3</sup>, and so rode forth towarde þe King; and euyr as he cam, þe Frenschmen fledde. ¶ And<sup>13</sup> there com to hym an Antony pygge, and folowed þe ost al þat way tyl 24 thay come tyll<sup>14</sup> a grete wasch; and þere<sup>15</sup> þay drad to haue be ded, for the water closed ham so þat þay myzt noughere goo<sup>16</sup> out. ¶ But atte þe<sup>17</sup> last, þis pygge<sup>18</sup> and God<sup>19</sup> brouzt hem out alle<sup>20</sup> saaf; and þere þay cauzt a gyde that knewe alle the cuntre aboute,<sup>21</sup> 28 and he brouzt ham prou<sup>3</sup> quiesonde, and so yn-tille<sup>22</sup> an Ile; and þere they toke meny prysoners yn her way<sup>23</sup> toward the King yn her iourney<sup>24</sup> towarde<sup>25</sup> Cane.

And þere þe King welcomyd hym, and toke his iourney 32 towarde<sup>26</sup> Argenton, & anon it was yolde vnto þe King, and þai<sup>27</sup>

<sup>1</sup> oure T. our R.    <sup>2</sup> And eer þat oure kyng T. þey R.    <sup>3</sup> a sege T.

<sup>4</sup> at þat T.    <sup>5</sup> þat T.    <sup>6</sup> a sege T.    <sup>7</sup> kyng took T.    <sup>8</sup> for om. T.

<sup>9</sup> þei riden withinne the Ile of wight there in aft þat storme T. þey that were wight ryden al þat storme þere Kk.

<sup>10</sup> þat T.    <sup>11</sup> vpon T.

<sup>12</sup> and wente ayen T. and wente R. went Kk.    <sup>13</sup> And panne T.

<sup>14</sup> to TR.    <sup>15</sup> þere om. T.    <sup>16</sup> gete T.    <sup>17</sup> þe om.

<sup>18</sup> leaf 127, back.    <sup>19</sup> and god om. T.    <sup>20</sup> ham alle out R.

<sup>21</sup> aboute om. T.    <sup>22</sup> to TR.    <sup>23</sup> wey as thei wente T.

<sup>24</sup> yn her iourney om. TR.    <sup>25</sup> vnto T.    <sup>26</sup> to T.    vnto R.

<sup>27</sup> there thei T.

hadde her lyues, & went hir way. ¶ And þanne þe<sup>1</sup> King remeued to a strong toun<sup>2</sup> callyd Cessy, and þere was a fayr Mynstre, and þay yelde it anon vnto<sup>3</sup> þe King. And<sup>4</sup> þe King went anon<sup>5</sup> fro þenne; to Launson,<sup>6</sup> and gat<sup>7</sup> þe toun and<sup>8</sup> brigge. And<sup>9</sup> þe King 4 sent þe Erle of Warwic to a toun me<sup>10</sup> callith Bellham, with a strong power; and anon þay yelde ham,<sup>11</sup> and put ham yn the Kingis grace<sup>12</sup>: and so dede mony mo stronge toune; & castellis þat were in þo partee; ¶ And fro þennes þey went to Vernyl in 8 Perche; and anon it was yolden to<sup>13</sup> þe King, bothe toun & castell, bodye; and godes, at the Kingis grace. And so þe King gat and conquered alle the toune; and Castelles, Pile;<sup>14</sup> Streynthis, and Abbeye;<sup>15</sup> vnto Pountlarge, & fro þenne; vnto the Cite of Roone. 12

[*The Lollard, Sir John Oldecastle.*]

¶ And yn þe .v. yere of King Henrye; reing þe v<sup>the</sup>, Ser Iohn Oldecastell, knight, þat was þe Lorde of<sup>16</sup> Cobbam, was arestyd for Lollardy, and brouzt yn-to<sup>17</sup> the Tour of London. And anon aftir he brak out of þe Tour, and went ynto Walis; and there he 16 kept hym longe tyme. ¶ And at the<sup>18</sup> laste, þe Lorde Powis mette with hym and tooke hym; but he stode at grete defence longe tyme, and was soore wounded or he wolde be take; and so þe Lorde Powys meyne brouzt hym out of Walis to London yn a 20 whirlecole; & so he was brouzt to Westmynstre, & there was<sup>19</sup> examyned of certeyn poynte; þat were put vpon hym. & he sayde not nay; and so he was conuyete be<sup>20</sup> þe clergy of<sup>21</sup> Lollardy, & dampned before þe Iustize vnto<sup>22</sup> deth for treson; and so he was 24 hadde vnto þe Tour ayen, and þere he was laide on a hurdil, and draw prough þe cite to Saint Gyle; Felde, & þere was made a new paire of Galows, and a stronge chayne, and a coler of yron for hym, and þere he was hanged and brent on þe galous, & alle for his 28 lewdeness &<sup>23</sup> fals opynyons.

<sup>1</sup> oure T. our R.      <sup>2</sup> towne þat men T. town þat me R.

<sup>3</sup> to TR.      <sup>4</sup> And þanne TR.      <sup>5</sup> anon om. TR.

<sup>6</sup> Alauunson T.      <sup>7</sup> wanne T.      <sup>8</sup> wan R.      <sup>9</sup> and þe TR.

<sup>10</sup> And om. T.      <sup>11</sup> þat men T.      <sup>12</sup> þat me R.

<sup>13</sup> ham om. T.      <sup>14</sup> hem in his grace and in þe kyngis T.

<sup>15</sup> vnto TR.      <sup>16</sup> Piles and T.

<sup>17</sup> and abbeies T. & Abbeye; R.      <sup>18</sup> abbeye; Kk.      <sup>19</sup> of om. R.

<sup>20</sup> vnto T.      <sup>21</sup> the om. T.      <sup>22</sup> he was T.      <sup>23</sup> of TR.

<sup>24</sup> for TR.      <sup>25</sup> vnto the T.      <sup>26</sup> vnto þe R.      <sup>27</sup> and for his TR.



<sup>1</sup> How the King sent his vnclē Syr Beaufort, Duk of Excestre, before the cite of Roon, and there displayed his Baner.<sup>1</sup>

And<sup>2</sup> yn the vi<sup>the</sup> yere of King Harrie; regne þe v<sup>the</sup>, he sent  
 4 his vnclē, Sir Thomas Beauforde, Duk of Excestre, with a fayre  
 manye of men of arme; and archers, a<sup>3</sup>fore þe cite of Roone, & þere  
 displayed his baner, & sent herode; vnto þe toun, and bade hem  
 yelde it<sup>4</sup> vnto oure King, her lige lorde. ¶ And þai saide he<sup>5</sup>  
 8 toke hem non to kepe, ne non he schulde haue þere, but yf it were  
 ryzt dere bouzt and medid with hir hande; ; for other answer wolde  
 þey non yeue.<sup>6</sup> ¶ And þere þe<sup>7</sup> Duk toke gode<sup>8</sup> avysement of the toun  
 and<sup>9</sup> of the grounde al about; and anon þere yssued out of þe cite  
 12 a grete meny of men of arme;3, bothe on horsbak & eke<sup>10</sup> on fote;  
 & anon our mayne mette with ham, <sup>11</sup>and ovirthrew an hep of  
 hem; and there were slayn and take xxx<sup>ti</sup> persone; of right gode  
 menne; bodie; ; and þe rempnaunt fledde vnto<sup>12</sup> the toun. And þe  
 16 Duk went ayen<sup>13</sup> vnto Pountlarge vnto þe King and tolde hym alle  
 how he hadde sped, and how hym lykyd þe grounde. ¶ And anon  
 as he was go, þey cast adoun al her<sup>14</sup> subbarbe; about þe cite, vnto  
 þe harde grounde, for þe King schulde haue þere<sup>15</sup> non refreschyng  
 20 at his comyng. ¶ And the Fryday before Lammās day þen next,  
 our King with his ost come before Roone, and layde<sup>16</sup> his sege  
 rounde about þe<sup>17</sup> cite, and anon leet leye his owne<sup>18</sup> ordinaunce  
 vnto the toun. ¶ And þe King and his lorde; were logged yn the  
 24 Charterhous, and gret streyngth about hym, and þat was yn þe est  
 partye of þe cetey. And þe Duk of Clarans loggyd hym at þe  
 westende, yn a wast abbeye before þe porte of Caux. ¶ And the  
 Duk of Excestre yn the North syde, before þe Port Denys; and  
 28 betwene þe Duk of Clarens & þe Duk of Excestre was þe Erle  
 Marchal logged, with a strong pouer, before<sup>19</sup> þe castell Gate.  
 ¶ And þan was þe Erle of Ormonde, and þe Lorde Haryngton, and  
 þe lorde Talbot with his<sup>20</sup> retynu, next hym; and þanne Ser Iohn  
 32 Cornewayle, and mony oper noble kniztis of name with hir retynu,  
 lay with þe Duk of Clarens. And from þe Duk of Excestre

<sup>1-1</sup> om. TR.      <sup>2</sup> Of the Sege of Roone. And T.

<sup>3</sup> to R.      <sup>4</sup> þat Citee T. yelde þat Cite R.

<sup>5</sup> þat he T.      <sup>6</sup> yeue but Gannes T.

<sup>7</sup> there the T.      þere þe R.      þere Duk Kk.      <sup>8</sup> gode om. T.

<sup>9</sup> of the toun and om. TR.      <sup>10</sup> eke om. TR.      <sup>11</sup> leaf 128.

<sup>12</sup> ayen into TR.      <sup>13</sup> ayen om. T.      <sup>14</sup> þe T.

<sup>15</sup> there schulde haue T.      <sup>16</sup> and anoon he sette T.      sette R.

<sup>17</sup> that T.      <sup>18</sup> owne om. TR.      <sup>19</sup> with a strower bifore T.

<sup>20</sup> her T.      hir R.

towarde þe King weryn logged þe Lorde Roos, þe Lorde<sup>1</sup> Wylughby, þe Lorde Fitzhugh,<sup>2</sup> and *Ser William Porter*, kniȝt, with hir retynu, before þe Port Seint Hillary. ¶ And þan was þe Erle of Mortayne, with his retynu, logged yn þe Abbey of Saynt<sup>4</sup> Kateryne; and þe Erle of Sawlesbery with is retynu lay on þat on<sup>3</sup> syde of Saynt Katerynes; & *Ser Iohn Gray*, knight, was logged at þe<sup>4</sup> Mount Saint Mychell; and *Ser Philippe Leiche*, knight, þe Kingis tresorer, was logged betwene þe watir of Sayne and þe abbey,<sup>8</sup> and kepte þe warde vndir þe hille. And þe Baron of Carew was loggid<sup>5</sup> on þe watir syde to kepe þe passage, and Iemco þe skquier lay next hym on þe water syde; & pay<sup>6</sup> ij Squiers kept manly þe watir of Sayne, and fauȝt *with* her enymys oft tyme<sup>3</sup>. And on<sup>12</sup> þat oþer<sup>7</sup> syde of Sayne lay þe Erle of Hontyngton and Maistir Nevyle, þe Erle<sup>3</sup> sone of Westmerlonde, and *Ser Gilbert Homfraile*, þe Erle of Kyme, *Ser*<sup>8</sup> Richarde of Arundell, and þe Lorde Ferrers *with* hir retynu, before þe Port de Pount; & eche of these<sup>16</sup> lordez hadde strong ordynaunce. ¶ And þe King dede make at Pountlarge, ouyr þe watir of Sayne, a strong and a myȝty Cheyne<sup>9</sup> of Iren, & put it þrouȝ grete pileȝ ffast pyȝt yn the grounde; & þat went ouyr þe Ryver of Sayne, þat no vessell myȝt passe þat way<sup>20</sup> in no kind. And aboue þat chayne þe King leet make a brygge ouyr þe watir of Sayne, þat man & horse & alle othir<sup>10</sup> Carrage myȝt go to and fro, at<sup>11</sup> alle tymeȝ whanne þat<sup>12</sup> nede were.

¶ And thanne come þe Erle of Warwie, and hadde gote Douns-<sup>24</sup> rount vnto þe King; and anon þe King sent hym<sup>13</sup> to Caudebeek, to besege it. And whenne he com before the toun, he sent hys heroudeȝ vnto þe Capteyne, and bade hym yelde vp þe toun<sup>14</sup> on<sup>15</sup> payn of deth. And anon he layde his sege; & þan þe Capteyne<sup>28</sup> besouȝt þe Erle þat he myȝt come vnto<sup>16</sup> his presens & speke with hym; and so þe gode Erle graunted hym. ¶ Thanne<sup>17</sup> he come out, and iiij oþer burgeȝ with hym, and Entretyd so with þe Erle þat this toun was vndir composicion to do as þe cite of Roone dede;<sup>32</sup> and þe Erle graunted and consentyd þer-to, vpon þis condicion, þat þe Kyngeȝ Nauey, *with* his ordynaunce, myȝt passe vp by ham in

<sup>1</sup> lord of TR.      <sup>2</sup> lord Phelew T.      <sup>3</sup> oþer T.

<sup>4</sup> þe abbey þat is called T.    þe om. R.

<sup>5</sup> was loggid T.    was logged R.    was loggid om. Kk.

<sup>6</sup> and þo T.    & pay om. R.    & pay and þay Kk.      <sup>7</sup> one R.

<sup>8</sup> and sir T.      <sup>9</sup> Brigge R.      <sup>10</sup> leaf 128, buck.

<sup>11</sup> at TR.    and Kk.      <sup>12</sup> þat om. TR.

<sup>13</sup> sent the Erle of Warwik T.    sente þe erle of Warwick R.

<sup>14</sup> þe towne up T.      <sup>15</sup> in T.      <sup>16</sup> to T.      <sup>17</sup> And þanne T.

saafte, without eny lette or dysturbaunce; and to þis composycion  
 þei sette her<sup>1</sup> seelez, and þe Schippe3 passed vp by ham yn saafte,  
 & come before þe cite of Roon, into a C.<sup>2</sup> schippe3, and þere þay  
 4 cast her<sup>3</sup> anchors, and þanne þis citee<sup>4</sup> was besegid bothe be lond  
 & by watir.<sup>5</sup> ¶ And whanne alle þis was do, and þe schippe3  
 come vp, þanne come þe Erle of Warwic ayen vnto þe King, and  
 loggyd hym betwene þe Abbey of Saint Katerynez & þe King, til  
 8 þat þe<sup>6</sup> abbey intret, and was<sup>7</sup> yolde vnto þe King; and þanne he  
 remeved fro þenne3, and loggyd hym before þe Poort Martevile.  
 ¶ And þanne<sup>8</sup> was þe Erle of Salusberye commawnde be þe King  
 to make hym redy for to ryde; but þere come hasti tydynges and  
 12 made hym to abyde; & so he retourned ayen and logged hym  
 besyde3 þe Erle of Hontyngton til þe sege was endyd. ¶ And  
 þann come þe Duk of Gloucestre, þe Kinges broþer, from þe sege of  
 Chierborough þat<sup>9</sup> he hadde wonne & gotoun, & stuffed ayen to<sup>10</sup>  
 16 þe Kinges behoue & pr[o]fit.<sup>11</sup> And whanne he<sup>12</sup> was come to<sup>13</sup>  
 the King before Roon, anon he logged hym with grete ordynaunce  
 before þe Port Saint Hyllarye, more nygh<sup>14</sup> þe toun and his enymys  
 þanne eny oper man<sup>15</sup> be xl rode3 of lengthe, withynne schotte  
 20 of quarell; & with hym lay þe Erle of Suffolk & þe Lorde of  
 Bergeveny with alle hir retynu & strong ordynaunce, & manly &  
 proutly fau3t euery day with hir enymys evere whanne þay issued  
 out of the Cete. ¶ And þanne com þe Pryour of Kylmaynon yn<sup>16</sup>  
 24 Ireland, ouyr the se vnto þe King, with a fayre mayne of men of  
 arme3 of hir owne cuntre gise, vnto<sup>17</sup> the summe of xvc of gode<sup>18</sup>  
 monne3 bodyez. And þe King welcomyd ham, and made ham ry3t  
 grete<sup>19</sup> chere.  
 28 ¶ And þanne come tydynges to<sup>20</sup> the King þat þe King of  
 Fraunce, and þe Dolfyn and þe Duke of Burgoyne, <sup>21</sup>wolde come  
 doun<sup>22</sup> to rescu þe cite of Rone with a strong power of alle maner<sup>23</sup>  
 nacionez, and <sup>24</sup>breke þe sege; and he cast hym to entre on þe  
 32 North syde of the oste, because þat þere was þe beste entre, and

<sup>1</sup> to her T.    <sup>2</sup> ij C T.    <sup>3</sup> per T.    <sup>4</sup> Citee T.    cite R.    sege Kk.

<sup>5</sup> boþe bi watir and bi londe. T.    <sup>6</sup> þe om. T.    <sup>7</sup> and was T.    was Kk.

<sup>8</sup> And þanne T.    And thanne R.    And Kk.

<sup>9</sup> þe whiche TR.    <sup>10</sup> vnto TR.

<sup>11</sup> and profit vnto þe crowne of Englonde and T.    profit to þe Croune of engelonde R.

<sup>12</sup> whanne he om. T.    <sup>13</sup> vnto T.    <sup>14</sup> nere T.    nerrer R.

<sup>15</sup> lay RT.    <sup>16</sup> of T.    <sup>17</sup> vnto om. R.

<sup>18</sup> gise þe nombre of xv C goode T.    <sup>19</sup> good TR.

<sup>20</sup> vnto T.    <sup>21</sup> leaf 129.    <sup>22</sup> a downe T.    <sup>23</sup> of dyuerise T.

<sup>24</sup> and forto T.

most playne groun[d]e. And perfore þe King assygned þe Priour of Kilmaynon with is power, and logged hym on þe northe syde of the oste, to stoppe hir passage, and was be þe forest of Lions; and of his<sup>1</sup> ordinaunce þei were fulle gladde. And þai<sup>2</sup> went forthe 4 yn haste, and kept the<sup>3</sup> ground, and þe place þat þe King & his counsel hadde assygned vnto ham; and þai quitte ham as gode warrioures vnto þe<sup>4</sup> King.

¶ Now wyl y telle you which were þe Chyff Capteyne; & 8 gouvernowres of þis cete of Roone: Mounser Guy Botelere was chyff capteyne, bothe of the cite & of the castell; and Mounser Turmegan, he was capten of þe<sup>5</sup> Port de Caux; Mounser le Roch was<sup>6</sup> capteyn de Syne; Mounser Antony, he was lieutenaunt to Mounser 12 Guy<sup>7</sup> Botelere; Henry Chaunfewe, he was capteyne of the<sup>8</sup> Port de Pount, Iohn Matribas, he was capteyne of the Port de la Chastell; Mounser de Peneux, he was capteyne of þe Port<sup>9</sup> Saint Hillary; þe Bastarde of Tyne, he was capteyn of the Port 16 Martivile; and graunt Iake; a worthi warryour, he was capteyn of alle<sup>10</sup> warryoures, and<sup>11</sup> gouernoure outwarde, bothe on horsbak & on foote, of alle men of arme; whenne þei issued out of the cite, of alle þe portis, he hem arayed as þey schulde countre with 20 our meyne. ¶ And ech of these capteyne; hadde<sup>12</sup> v M<sup>t</sup> men of arme; & some mo. And at<sup>13</sup> þe first comyng of<sup>14</sup> oure King, þere were noubred be heroudes ynto an CCC M<sup>t</sup> of men,<sup>15</sup> wymmen, & childryn, what yong & olde. And among alle þese was many a 24 manful man of his hand; and so þay prevyd ham whanne þei issued out of þe cite, bothe on horsbak & on foote, for þay come neuer out at on gate alone, but at iij or iiij; and at euery gate .ij. or iiij. M<sup>t</sup> of gode men of arme; and<sup>16</sup> manfully counted with our Englisch- 28 men, & moche pople slayne dyuers tyme; with Gune; quarell, & oper<sup>17</sup> ordynaunce. And þis sege endured xx<sup>ti</sup> woke; and euer þai of the toun hopyd<sup>18</sup> for to haue be rescued; but þer come non. ¶ So at þe<sup>19</sup> laste, þei kept so longe þe toun þat þere deied mony 32 thowsande; withynne þe toun for defaute of mete, of<sup>20</sup> men, wymmen and chylidryn; for þay had ete al her hors, doggis and

<sup>1</sup> þis T.      <sup>2</sup> so þei TR.      <sup>3</sup> kepte þe TR. kept Kk.      <sup>4</sup> her T. hir R.

<sup>5</sup> þe om. T.      <sup>6</sup> he was TR.      <sup>7</sup> Guy de TR.      <sup>8</sup> de T.

<sup>9</sup> Port de T.      port of R.      <sup>10</sup> alle the T.      alle þe R.

<sup>11</sup> and he was TR.      <sup>12</sup> ladde T.      <sup>13</sup> And whenne a<sup>t</sup> T.

<sup>14</sup> was of T.      <sup>15</sup> men and T.

<sup>16</sup> goode menues bodies y armyd and T.      gode menne; bodiez yarmed and R.      <sup>17</sup> oper om. R.

<sup>18</sup> hopid T.      hoped R.      hopyp Kk.      <sup>19</sup> þe om. T.      <sup>20</sup> boþe of T.

cattez, þat were yn the toun. And ofte tyme; þe men of armes  
droff out þe pore pepyl at the gatis of the toune; for spendyng of  
vitayle; and anon our Englischmen droff ham yn-to þe toun agayne.  
4 So at þe<sup>1</sup> last, þe capteyne; of the toun, seying þe myschif þat þay  
were nouȝt rescued, and also þe scarcite of vitayle, & þat þe peple  
so deied for defaute of mete, euery daye mony thowsandez, and  
also saue yonge childryn lye & sowke her modir pappis þat weryn  
8 ded, þan anon þey sent vnto<sup>2</sup> þe<sup>3</sup> King, besechinge him<sup>4</sup> of his grete  
mercy & grace,<sup>5</sup> and brouȝt þe keyes of<sup>5</sup> þe toun vnto the Kinge,  
and delyuered the toun to<sup>6</sup> hym; and alle<sup>7</sup> soudere; voyded the  
toun, with hir hors & harnez; and þe comune; of the toun for<sup>8</sup> to  
12 abyde and dwelle stille yn the toun, yerely to pay hym<sup>9</sup> and to his  
successours, for al maner custome; see<sup>10</sup> seruie; & quateryme;  
[*blank*] *Marc.* ¶ And þanne þe King entred yn-to þe toun, &  
restyd hym yn the Castell tylle þe toun were sette yn rewle and  
16 gouernawnce.

<sup>1</sup> þe *om.* T.      <sup>2</sup> to TR.

<sup>3-3</sup> king bisekyng him of grace and mercy T. king besechinge him of  
his grace and mercy R. besechinge him *om.* Kk.

<sup>4</sup> *leaf 129, back.*      <sup>5</sup> of TR. to Kk.      <sup>6</sup> vnto T.      <sup>7</sup> alle þe TR

<sup>8</sup> for *om.* T.      <sup>9</sup> to him TR.      <sup>10</sup> and fee T. and see R.

## APPENDIX C.

FULLER VERSION OF THE TIME FROM 1399-1401.

Compare p. 361, l. 16 ff.

[MS. *Rawlinson, B.* 173.]

<sup>1</sup>And at Oxonford were take Sir Thomas Blounte, knyzt, and Benet Cely, knyht, & Thomas Wyntershiht, Squier. ¶ And these were be-hedyd and quarterd; And the knyhtes hedes were set on poles, and brought to Londoñ, and set on Londoñ Brygge; And 4 the quarters sent forth to other places and townes. And in the same yere, at Priteweht, in a Mille in Essex, there was Sir Iohn Holand, the Duke of Excestre, take with the commons of the Contre. ¶ And they brought him from that Mille vnto Plassh, 8 And to the same place pere as King Richard Arested Sir Thomas of Wodestocke, Duke of Gloucestre. ¶ And right there, in the same place, they smote of the Duke of Excestres hede,<sup>2</sup> and brought hit to Londoñ vpon a pole, And hit was sett on Londoñ Brigge. 12 And in the same yere, at Bristowe, was take the Lorde Spencer þat King Richard hadde made Erle of Gloucestre. ¶ And the commons of the towne of Bristowe toke and brought him into the Market-place of the towne; And there þey smote of his hede, and sent hit 16 to Londoñ, & hit was set on Londoñ Brigge. ¶ And in the same yere was Sir Barnard Brokeys, knyht, take and Arested, & putte into the Toure of Londoñ, And Sir Iohn Shelley, <sup>3</sup>knyht, and Sir Iohn Magdaleyn, And William Ferby, persons of King Richard; 20 And þey were arested and put into the Toure of Londoñ. And there come the Kinges Iustices, and satte vpon them in the Toure; And þere they were dampned aȝ iiiij vnto deȝh. And þ<sup>e</sup> dome yeue to Sir Barnard Brokeis, that he shulde come on fote from the 24 Toure, þrouȝ Londoñ, vnto Tyborne, And there to be hanged, and his hede smetyn of. And Sir Iohn Shelley, knyht, Sir Iohn Magdaleyn & Sir William Ferby, persons, were drawe þrouȝ-out London to Tyborne, And there honged, and her hedes smetyȝ of, 28 & set on Londoñ Brige.

And in the same yere King Henry sent Quene Isabeht

<sup>1</sup> leaf 213.<sup>2</sup> 16 Jan. 1400.<sup>3</sup> leaf 213, back.

home ayene into Fraunce, the which was King Richardes wedid wiffe, And yaff her golde and siluer And many other Iuellys; And so she was discharged of aH her doure in Englonde. And in 4 the ij yere of King Henry the iiij<sup>th</sup>, was *Sir Roger* of Claryndon, kniȝt, and ij of his meñ, and the Prioure of Launde, and vij freris Minours, and somme maistres of Diuinite, and other, for treson þat þey wrought a-yenst þe King, were drawe and hanged at 8 Tyborne, aH xij persones to-gedyr. And þus was here ende there for her treson.

And in the same yere bigañ a discencioñ and a debate in the Contre of Walys, bitwene þ<sup>e</sup> Lorde Grey Riffyñ and Oweñ Glen- 12 dore, <sup>1</sup>Squier of Wales. And this Owen arered a nombre of Walshe-men, And kept aH the Contre Aboute right strong, and did moche harme, & distroyed the Kinges townes and lordshjppis proughoute Wales, and robbed and slewe the Kingys peple, both 16 Englissh-men and Walshe-meñ: And thus he endured xij yere large. ¶ And he toke þ<sup>e</sup> Lorde Grey Ryffyñ prisoner, And kept him ffast in holde tyH he was Raunsomed. ¶ And in the iij yere of King Henry, Oweñ brent a towne of the Erles of March in 20 Walys, þat hight Kinghton. ¶ And on the morowe after Seint Albones day, was the batayle bitwene *Sir Edmond Mortymere* and Oweñ; And þis bataile was on the blacke hyH beside Pymareñ.<sup>4</sup> And þer Oweñ toke *Sir Edmond Mortymer*, þ<sup>e</sup> Erles brother of the 24 Marche, prisoner, and kepte him long tyme in holde; And at the laste he made him wedde one of his doughters, and kept him there styH with his wiffe; and sone after he died. And þañ the King, hering And knowyng that myscheffe, distruxioñ & treson that þis 28 Oweñ wrought, ¶ Thañ anone he ordeyned him a strong power of meñ of Armes & Archers, And moche other stuffe þat longeth to werre, for-to abate and destroye þ<sup>e</sup> malice of these false Walsħmeñ. And whañ <sup>2</sup>the King come into Wales for-to destroye thys Oweñ 32 and other rebelles, false Walsħmen, Anone they fleddeñ into the Mounteyns; And there might no mañ do hem harme In no maner wise; but often-tymes they toke the Kinges Cariage, and euery day destroyed his peple; but Owen and his meñ for the most party 36 scaped harmeles, For the King ne his meyne might not come by him in no maner wise, for the Mounteynes. And so the King come into Englonde a-yene, for lesing of mo of his peple; and þus he sped not there.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 214.<sup>2</sup> leaf 214, back.

## [D]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT CONTAINING JOHN PAGE'S  
POEM ON THE SIEGE OF ROUEN.

FROM THE SIEGE OF ROUEN [1418] TO A.D. 1430.

[*Galba E. VIII.*]

<sup>1</sup>How kynge henry the v. leide sege to the Cite of Rone,  
and how he gate the Cite with strengthe and manhode  
well and worthily.

And in the vi. yere of Kynge Henryis Regne<sup>2</sup> the v; the 4  
Kynge sent his vncle Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exeter, with  
othir lordis and knyghtis, men of armys and archeris,<sup>3</sup> to the Cite  
of Rone, and there displayid her baneris opynly byfore the cite of  
Rone, and sent herodis to hem that were withynne the Cite, and 8  
bade hem yolde vp the cite in alle haste,<sup>4</sup> that was the kyngis  
righte, or ellis thei shuld deie an harde and sharpe dethe, and  
withoute eny mercy or grace.

And there he be-hild the g[r]ounde aboute<sup>5</sup> the Cite, how thei 12  
myght beste sette her sege to gete that Cite.

¶ And ansuere wold thei none yeue, but meuyd with her  
hondis ouyr the wallis, as who seyth 'voydith the grounte and the  
place that ye ben on'; and shotte tho many gunnys to hem. And 16  
thanne<sup>6</sup> there Issewid out of the Cite many men of armys, of  
Frensshe men on hors bakke, and countrid with oure Engelisshe  
men, and flaughten manlyche. And there were sleyne and take of  
the Frensshe men a grete hepe; and the remanent fledden ayen 20  
into the Cite.

¶ And thanne the Duke of Exetir turnyd ayen with his pepuH,  
and come to Pountlarge; and there he met with the Kynge,<sup>7</sup> and  
told hym alle how he had spede and don in his message. 24

¶ And now for to telle how thei that weren withynne the cite  
of Rone, had deuowrid and distroyid alle the subarbis rounde aboute  
the Cite, into the bare grounde, for the Kynge shuld no refute  
haue,<sup>8</sup> ne non refressynge haue there at his comynge; and how thei 28  
had strongly newe dichid, with many othir dispiteffuH and crueH  
ordynauncis that thei coude deuyse and ordeyne, with alle the<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *lay* 137.      <sup>2</sup> Regne A.    Regnyd G.      <sup>3</sup> archeris come A.

<sup>4</sup> in haste A.      <sup>5</sup> rovnd aboute A.      <sup>6</sup> þus A.

<sup>7</sup> he fonde þe kyng A.      <sup>8</sup> haue *om.* A.      <sup>9</sup> the *om.* A.



ymaginacionys, congettis and sleythis, rounde aboute the cite, ayens the Kyngis hoste, yn-so-moche thei bite and keste adoun the perisshe-chirchis, abbeyis, and alle maner<sup>1</sup> of housyngis more and  
4 lesse, in-so-moche that thei hewe adoune alle maner of treis that weren stondynge, in Gardeynys or yn eny othir placis, neighe the cite, and hewe a doune alle the<sup>2</sup> Busshis that weren stondynge, and made<sup>3</sup> aH playne vnto the harde erthe.

8 And thanne oure Kynge remouyd him from Pountlerge with alle his pepuH, and come before the cite of Rone the Friday beforn Lammesse day. And he made ordynaunce, and leide and set a sege rounde aboute the cite, with moche strengthe and grete ordynauncis,  
12 so that the Frensshe-men myght no where in no parties ascape away but if thei weren dede and take. And furste the Kynge loggid hym-self in a Geste howse that is callid an hous of charite, with many lordis and strengthe<sup>4</sup> of pepuH aboute hym; and that  
16 was in the Este partye of that cite. And thanne the Duke of Clarence, his brothir, loggid hym wyth his pepuH at an abbey withoute the cite, in the weste ende by the port Kaux. And thanne was the Duke of Exetur loggid with alle his pepuH at Port  
20 Denyse in the northe syde of that cite. ¶ And thanne, betwix the Duke of Clarence and the Duke of Exetur, was the Erle MarchaH loggid, with alle his retenewe and strengthe, bi the casteH gate. And thanne was the Erle of Vrmonde and the Lord Aring-  
24 don and the Lord Talbot, with alle her retenewe and ordynauncis, next hym. ¶ And thanne Sir John Cornewale, and many othir - knyghtis of name, with alle her retenewe and ordynauncis, lay with the Duke of Clarence in his strengthe. And ffrom the Duke of  
28 Exetur toward the Kynge, weren loggid the Lord Roos, the Lord Wilby, and the Lorde Fytz-Hugh and Sir William Portere, knyght, with alle her retenewe, and loggid hem before the Porte Saint Hillari. And thanne was the Erle of Mortayne loggid, with alle his  
32 retenewe and ordynauncis, in the abbey of Seint Katerynys. ¶ And thanne the Erle of Salusbury, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid on that othir syde of this abbey. ¶ And thanne Sir John Gray, knyght, with aH his retenewe and  
36 ordynauncis, was loggid at the abbey that is callid Mount Seint MycheH. And thanne Sir Philip Leche, knyghte, the Kyngis tresorer, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid

<sup>1</sup> all maner A. maner om. G.

<sup>3</sup> & made A. made and G.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 137, back.

<sup>4</sup> & oþer grete strength A.

betwene the watir of Sayne and the abbey, &<sup>1</sup> kepte that ward vndir the hille. ¶ And thanne the Baron of Carewe, with alle his retenewe and ordynauncis, was loggid with his compeny alone by the watir-side, to kepe the passage there. And Ienycō the Squyere<sup>4</sup> lay there nexte hym, with his retenewe and ordynauncis, and helpe to kepe the watir syde of Sayne: and manly and worthili he werid and faught with his enemyes at alle tymes. ¶ And on that othir side of the watir of Sayne, lay the Erle of Huntynghdon, and<sup>8</sup> the Lorde Neyle (the Erlis sone of Westmerland), Sir Gilbert Omfreuyle, Sir Richard of ArundeH, and the lord Ferreris, with alle hir retenewe and ordynauncis, at Port de Pount.

¶ And thanne the Kynge lete ordeyne and make at the Pount-<sup>12</sup> large, ouyr the watir of Sayne, a stronge and a myghti cheyne of Iron, and put it thorough piles<sup>2</sup> faste pite in the grounde, ouyr the ryuer of Sayne, that no vesseH myght rowe that wei in no kynde. And thanne, aboue that chayne, the Kynge lete make a brygge<sup>16</sup> ouyr the watir, that man and hors and aH othir cariage myght passe to and fro at alle tyme whanne nede were.

¶ And tho come the Erle of Warwike, and had goten Domfferaunete,<sup>3</sup> and come down there the Kynge lay at the sege of<sup>20</sup> Rone; and the Kynge comaundid hym with his pepuH to gon to Cawde-becke<sup>4</sup> and besege hit. ¶ And whanne he come before the toune, the gouernouris of the toune come oute, and tretid with the Erle of Warwike, and seid that thei wolde don and be<sup>24</sup> gouernyd aftur the Cite of Rone; and so thei grauntid in composicion, and asselid it vp, in fuH condicion that thei shuld suffre and lette passe alle oure flete of Shippis by hem, with-out e ny lette or disturburaunce. And so oure Shippis passid alle yn,<sup>28</sup> and come be hem, and comen before the Cite of Rone, and there keste ankre as thikke as thei myght stonde; and so they segid the Cite of Rone bothe be watir<sup>5</sup> and by londe.

¶ And whanne the Erle of Warwike had thus endid and don<sup>32</sup> with the toune of Cawdebecke, and alle the Engelysshe shippis were come vp in the watir of Sayne, and set before the cite of Rone, ¶ Thanne the Erle of Warwike turnyd hym ayen with alle his pepuH, and come to the Kynge, and loggid hym with alle his<sup>36</sup> pepuH betwyxt Seint Katerynys and the Kynge, tille that an abbey

<sup>1</sup> & A. of G.      <sup>2</sup> porugh grete piles A.

<sup>3</sup> Domfferaunete A [*i. c.* Domfront]. do in ffrancee G.

<sup>4</sup> Caudebeck A.      <sup>5</sup> leaf 138.

that was in trete there, was yolden to the Kynge; and thanne anon  
aftur he went thens and loggid hym, with alle his pepuH and  
ordynauncis at Porte Morteuyle, to kepe that porte of the Cite.

4 ¶ And thanne was the Erle of Salusbury comaundid by the  
Kynge to make hym redy to ryde. And tho hasty tithyngis come,  
and returnyng<sup>1</sup> hym ayen, and did hym byde; and there he bode  
be sidis the Erle of Huntynghdon, tille that the sege was endid, and  
8 wonne vp in-to the Kyngis hondis.

¶ And thanne come Sir Vmfrey, Duke<sup>2</sup> of Gloucestre, the  
Kyngis brothir, from the sege of Cherborugh, wiche he had wonne  
and gotyn he sawte and good fete of werre, and aftur lete hit stuffe  
12 with Engelisshe pepuH, and with vitaile, and with othir stronge  
ordynauncis, as longid to werre and to worship<sup>3</sup> and prophite to the  
Kynge of Engeland. ¶ And whanne he was come doune to fore  
the Cite of Rone, he loggid hym with his pepuH and ordynauncis  
16 at the Porte Seint Hillare, more nere his enemyes to the toun  
thanne eny othir man by xl. rodys of lengthe, with-ynne shotte of  
Gounne and quareH. And with hym lay the Erle of Suffolke  
and the<sup>4</sup> Lord Begeyne, with alle<sup>5</sup> her retenewe and alle her<sup>6</sup>  
20 ordynauncis; and manfully euery day they<sup>7</sup> flaughten with her  
enemyes whanne they issewed oute of the Cite.

¶ And thanne come<sup>8</sup> the Pryore of Kylmayne, oute of Irlond,  
ouyr the see, with a feyre compeny of men of armys on her Guyse,<sup>9</sup>  
24 the summe of xv. c., good bodyes and manfuH men to werre, and  
come with-ynne<sup>10</sup> Sayne Mouth, and aryuyd and landid at Hareflete,  
and spede hem in alle haste to the Kynge, and come vnto the sege  
of Rone: and the Kynge tho welcomyd the pryore of Kylmayne  
28 and alle his pepuH.

¶ And thanne come tydyngis to the Kynge<sup>11</sup> that the Frensshe  
kynge, with an huge powere of pepuH of dyuerse nacionys, and the  
Duke of Burgoyne with hym, with an huge compeny of Burgoyneys,  
32 of Flemmyngis, and of othir Duche tungis, wold come doun to  
breke the sege, and keste hem to entre on the northe syde of  
oure hoste, because that there was lefte entre and moste pleyne  
grounde.

36 ¶ And thanne the Kynge assyngnyd the Pryoure of Kylmayne,

<sup>1</sup> tidyngis returnyd A.    <sup>2</sup> vmffray be duke A.    <sup>3</sup> unto worship A.

<sup>4</sup> the om. A.    <sup>5</sup> alle om. A.    <sup>6</sup> alle her om. A.    <sup>7</sup> they om. A.

<sup>8</sup> panne come A.    panne G.    <sup>9</sup> on her contre guyse A.

<sup>10</sup> with ynne A.    with G.    <sup>11</sup> kyng of Engeland A.

with alle his pepuH, to logge hem on the northe side, for to stoppe and kepe the weyis and passagis by the foreste of Lyonys, that none enemyes might come doune that weyis to the sege, with-out that thei countrid with hem in fight: and of that ordynaunce thei 4 weren fayn and glad; and thei yeden forthe in haste, and kepten the grounde and the<sup>1</sup> place that the Kyng and his counseile had asingnyd hem to; and as good warriouris and as prowde men of armys they shewid hem at alle tymes vpon her enemyes, wherefore 8 the Kyng had hem in heighe cherite for her grete manhode.

¶ Now wolle y telle you who weren the cheeff capteynys and gournouris of the cite Rone.<sup>2</sup> Furste, Moune-seighnour Guy de Botelere, cheef Capteyne, bothe of the<sup>1</sup> cite and of the<sup>1</sup> CasteH; 12 Moune-seighnoure Ternagon, and he was Capteyne of the Porte Cauxs; Moune-seighnoure le Roche was capteyne of Porte Denysine; Moune-seighnoure Antony, he was leue-tenaunte to Moune-seighnoure Sir Guy the Botelere, Henry Chamfewe was capteyne 16 of Porte de Pount; Iohn Matreuas was captayne of Port de la CasteH; Moune-seighnoure Peneuxe was tho captayne of Port Seint Hillari; the Bastard of Teyne was tho captayne of Port Marteuyte. ¶ And Graunde Iakis, a worthi warrioure, was 20 capteyne of alle the ordynauncis of<sup>3</sup> oute-warde on hors backe, and on ffote of men of armis, and<sup>4</sup> Issewid oute of the Cite at alle the portis, to don there ffetes yn the poyntis of werre ayens her enemyes; and euyry<sup>5</sup> of these Captaynys led v. M<sup>h</sup>. men of armys 24 and moo.

¶ And whanne alle the comenmalte weren with-ynn the Cite, men myght sen many a M<sup>h</sup>; for the heraudis nombrid hem that weren with-ynne the Cite at the byggunynge of the sege, of men, 28 women and childeren, iij C. M<sup>h</sup>. and x. M<sup>h</sup>. bodyes, yonge and olde. And amonge hem weren many manfuH pepuH and hardy, for<sup>6</sup> often tymes they Issewid oute of the Cite, pepuH welle yarmyd, on hors backe and eke on ffote, oute of<sup>7</sup> euyry yate an ij or iij M<sup>h</sup>. men of 32 armys, welle arayed, and manfully countrid and foughten with oure Engelisshe pepuH yn dyuerse parties of the sege. And tho that myght ascape, turnyd into the cite home ayen; and thus thei endurid longe tyme; and moche werre come fro the Cite wallis, as 36 shott of Gounnys and quareH, for thei shot euyry day from the wallis<sup>8</sup> and touris of the cite, with-ynne the space of an houre, an

<sup>1</sup> the om. A.    <sup>2</sup> of pis Cite of Rone A.    <sup>3</sup> of om. A.    <sup>4</sup> pat A.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 138, back.    <sup>6</sup> for A. for hai G.    <sup>7</sup> at A.    <sup>8</sup> wall A.

C of Gonne-stonys and moo, and quarellis with-oute nombre; and so thei sloughe and hurte moche Engelisshe pepuH.

¶ And oure Kynge lete make an<sup>1</sup> dicke aH withoute, Rounde  
4 a-boute the cite, and strongly stakid it, and heggid it, for these  
prykeris oute on hors backe, and comaundid Syr Robert Babthorp,  
knyght and Countroller, to ouyr-se that this werke were don; and  
he did it make in alle haste. ¶ And thanne they issewid oute  
8 on flote, and fought manly<sup>2</sup> as good werriouris; and tho myche  
pepuH weren slayn on<sup>3</sup> bothe sidis. And they at the wallis and at  
the touris of the Cite shotten euer<sup>4</sup> Gounnys, quarellis, Trepgettis,  
Spryngollis<sup>5</sup>; and alwey on<sup>6</sup> the Duke of Gloucestreis side thei  
12 diden moche<sup>7</sup> harme, for thei weren loggid nexte of alle pepuH to  
the Cite. And euyr ther come tydyngis newe that the Burgoyns  
wold come and reskewe the Cite; and for ioye thereof they ronge  
alle the bellis in the Cite; and fro the ffirste tyme of shittynge of  
16 the yatis of the cite they ronge neuyr bellis but for tho tydyngis  
tille the cite was goten and yolden to the Kynge of Engeland.

¶ And tho the Kynge wende the Frensshe hoste had byn come,  
and with good wordis comfortid his pepuH, and bad hem ben of  
20 good chere. And anon tydyngis<sup>8</sup> come ayen that thei were turnyd  
to Paris-ward ayen. ¶ And thanne with-ynne ffewe dayes thei  
were come to Pounteyse, the nombre of iiij. M<sup>ii</sup><sup>9</sup> good ffightynge  
men, and welle arayed. ¶ And thanne the Kynge made a kry,  
24 and comaundid that euyry mane shuld ligge yn his herneys, and  
byn at alle tymes redy whanne her enemyes come. And tho the  
Kynge lete make a large duche, alle withoute his hoste, and pight  
it fuH of stakes ymade sharpe, that wold perisshe, and with turne-  
28 pykes, and leid there-by Gounnys redy bent in euyry partye rounde  
aboute this dicke. And the kynge tho comaundid his countroller  
Sir Robert Babthorp, knyght, to spede in alle haste this were don  
by his ouyr sight; and so anon this werke was endid.

32 ¶ And anon come tydynges to the Kynge, there as he lay at  
seege; and this was on the<sup>10</sup> Thorisday, that the ffrensshe hoste  
lay but xx. myle from hym, and wold byn there on the morough  
on the Fryday; and the same tydyng<sup>11</sup> come to hem that were  
36 with-ynne the Cite. ¶ Of these tydynges oure Kynge made  
moche<sup>12</sup> ioye and myrthe, and artely<sup>13</sup> thankyd God. And so on

<sup>1</sup> a A.    <sup>2</sup> manfully A.    <sup>3</sup> in A.    <sup>4</sup> euer A. eu G.

<sup>5</sup> & engynys A.    <sup>6</sup> vpon A.    <sup>7</sup> most A.    <sup>8</sup> tidyng A.

<sup>9</sup> iiij M<sup>ii</sup> A.    <sup>10</sup> a A.    <sup>11</sup> tydyngis A.    <sup>12</sup> grete A.    <sup>13</sup> hertily A.

the Fryday oure Kyng rode to the Erle of Huntynghdon, and told to hym a wile and a good ffete of werre, and made hym ordeyne ij. Bateillis of men of armys. ¶ And the ffirste bataiH thei and he redenn, and her backes<sup>1</sup> toward the Cite; and that othir bataiH 4 come oute of the wode, with standerdis and baneris of the Duke of Burgoyne armys. And these ij hostis metten, as thei had countrid, and foughten to-gederis; but non did othir harme. And this was ordeynyd and don by the kyngis deuyse and conseile, for 8 thei that weren with-ynne the Cite shuld haue vtterly hopid and trustid that reskewis had ben come,<sup>2</sup> and that thei that weren with-ynne the Cite of men of armys shuld boldely haue issewid oute, and ffoughten vtterly with the pepuH of the sege; but thei dorste 12 not come oute of that<sup>3</sup> Cite at that tyme, for thei doutid and drad, and supposid to hem but trayne, and wold not issewe oute for drede of dethe, as for that<sup>4</sup> tyme, but abodyn and lokid aftur helpe, socoure, and reskewis of these Burgoyne, but ther come no com- 16 forte to hem. but yet tho afturward the men of armys issewid oute ayen of the Cite as thei did befor, and ffoughten manfully with oure Engelisshe-men, and myche pepuH weren slayne on bothe sydis at dyuerse tymes. 20

¶ And tho it drewe nere Cristemesse; and by that tyme her vitailis scarsid sore with-ynne the Cite, for they<sup>5</sup> hade nothir bred, ale, nor wyne, but watir and vynegur, that was her drynke. And flesshe nor fisse they had non, but eten hors,<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup> doggis, Mis, Rattis 24 and Cattis; for an quarter of an horse, were he lene or<sup>8</sup> fatte, was tho sold<sup>9</sup> in the Cite amonge the pepuH for an C. s. good payment, and an hors hede<sup>10</sup> for xx. s., and a<sup>10</sup> Ratte for xl. d.; <sup>11</sup>and for xiiij. s. iiij. d. thei sold a Catte,<sup>11</sup> and a mows for xx. d.; and these 28 wormys weren bought and eten so faste that vnnethe thei fonde eny for<sup>12</sup> to selle<sup>13</sup> for no money. ¶ And tho<sup>14</sup> was<sup>15</sup> a ferthyunge lof boght in the Cite<sup>16</sup> for a ffranke. And thanne hem failid bothe whete, and mele, and alle othir graynys that thei myght make of 32 eny brede<sup>17</sup>; but<sup>18</sup> branne and broken wo[r]tis, and nepe-rotis, and lekis, was to hem mete of grete valewe; for a leke was sold for

<sup>1</sup> redenn & her bakkis A. redenn & her om. G. <sup>2</sup> to hem A.

<sup>3</sup> be A. <sup>4</sup> leaf 139. <sup>5</sup> pay A. the G. <sup>6</sup> hors flessch A.

<sup>7</sup> From here to page 402, line 21, to word "trayne," missing in A.

<sup>8</sup> or were he B. <sup>9</sup> sold po B. <sup>10</sup> a dogge for B.

<sup>11-11</sup> and . . . Catte om. B. <sup>12</sup> for om. B.

<sup>13</sup> to selle B. to slee selle G. <sup>14</sup> tho om. B. <sup>15</sup> pas a B.

<sup>16</sup> in the Cite om. B. <sup>17</sup> make eny brede of B. <sup>18</sup> but of B.

xij. d., and an<sup>1</sup> Egge for ix. d., and an appuH for x. d.: siche merchaundyse was there with-ynne the Cite a gret while; and ther was many a carefulle creature, for her<sup>2</sup> vitailis were alle wastid and 4 spent, and pey<sup>3</sup> myght come to no new by<sup>4</sup> no maner wey; for the sege that<sup>5</sup> lay withoute, rounde aboute the Cite, wold<sup>6</sup> suffre no vitaile come in, to hem, neythir by watir neythir<sup>7</sup> be londe.

¶ And thanne be-ganne the pepuH with-ynne the Cite to deie 8 faste, bothe smale and grete, for the passynge hungur and enfamen that was amonge hem, by<sup>8</sup> C.C. personys and moo day by day; and there as was firste ioy and pryde, and grete boste, tho was there amonge hem weylunge, sorow and<sup>9</sup> care, and wepynge, and wryng- 12 ynge with<sup>10</sup> hondis. ¶ And though a child shuld deie, the modir wold yeue it no brede ne nought ellis of<sup>11</sup> othir fode, ne wold not departe no morselle though she myght saue the lif of her<sup>12</sup> child of<sup>13</sup> hir body borne, but wold saue her selfe while she myght; for loue 16 and hertly kyndenesse was tho from hem passid. Nor the child wold not profir the modir; for eche of hem caste hymself to leue; for alle kyndenesse and loue tho was<sup>14</sup> sette beside<sup>15</sup>; for euyr the childe wold hide his mete<sup>16</sup> and his drynke<sup>17</sup> fro his modir and from 20 alle his othir ffryndis, for his mete thei shuld not see, for thei ete hit alle in pryuate. ¶ And we may preue by that pepuH there, that houngir passithe kyndenesse and eke loue, that made her<sup>18</sup> vnrightwesnesse and her cursid leuyng and pryde that regnyd 24 amongis hem in tho dayes, wherefore God sent hem a yerd of chastisement. But yet thei that kept the wallis and<sup>19</sup> touris of the Cite rounde aboute, be-cause the pepuH withoute shuld not knowe nor wete of her grete nede and myschef that thei weren ynne, euyr 28 to<sup>20</sup> hold her courte and<sup>21</sup> contynauce of opyn werre, bothe with shot of Gounny and quarellis.<sup>22</sup>

¶ But amonge ther issewid summe pepuH of the Cite oute; and they come forthe, and weren take of the wacchemen withoute 32 at the<sup>23</sup> sege Cite. ¶ And they affraynyd hem how it stode with the<sup>24</sup> pepuH that weren lefte with-ynne the Cite. ¶ And they ansuerid and told to the Engelisshe pepuH of the grete nede,

<sup>1</sup> and an B. and G. <sup>2</sup> theyr B. <sup>3</sup> and pey B. and G.

<sup>4</sup> in B. <sup>5</sup> bat per B. <sup>6</sup> wold not B. <sup>7</sup> nor B. <sup>8</sup> by om. B.

<sup>9</sup> and om. B. <sup>10</sup> of B. <sup>11</sup> nought ellis of om. B.

<sup>12</sup> her owne B. <sup>13</sup> of of G. <sup>14</sup> was po B. <sup>15</sup> a syde B.

<sup>16</sup> hys mete wolde hyde B. <sup>17</sup> and his drynke om. B.

<sup>18</sup> her grete B. <sup>19</sup> and the B. <sup>20</sup> to B. to and to G.

<sup>21</sup> and cursid B. <sup>22</sup> querell and gounnes B. <sup>23</sup> the om. B. <sup>24</sup> hys B.

scarste, hungir and<sup>1</sup> dethe, that was euery day<sup>2</sup> amongis hem.  
<sup>3</sup> But our folke wold not beleue nor truste hem,<sup>3</sup> be cause that the  
 pepuH with-ynne hilde<sup>4</sup> alle tymes contynauce like in werre, day  
 be day,<sup>5</sup> as thei did beforne vpon the sege withoute; wherefore thei<sup>4</sup>  
 had<sup>6</sup> hem in<sup>7</sup> no truste in no degre.

And thanne with-ynne a lituH<sup>8</sup> while aftur, the worthi men  
 that weren with-ynne the Cite, gederid alle the pore pepuH that tho  
 weren with-ynne the Cite, man, woman, and child, and brought<sup>8</sup>  
 hem to the yatis, and put hem oute at euery porte by an C  
 personys on<sup>9</sup> a rowte, and bad hem helpe hem-self in her beste  
 maner that thei myght, for there thei shold no lenger abyde yn no  
 wyse with hem. ¶ And thanne thei come forth toward<sup>10</sup> the<sup>12</sup>  
 Engelisshe seege, knelynge on her kneis, and wepynge sore, bothe  
 man, and woman with yonge sowkyng children<sup>11</sup> in her armys, and  
 olde febuH men knelynge besyde hem, makynge there a dilfuH  
 crye; for alle they cryed there atonys "haue mercy on vs, ye good<sup>16</sup>  
 and<sup>12</sup> Cristen and worthy men."<sup>13</sup> ¶ And thanne oure Kyng  
 had<sup>14</sup> rewthe on hem and pite,<sup>15</sup> and yaf hem brede and drynke,  
 and made hem turne ayen to the Cite; and there thei kepte hem  
 in the dicke, that thei shold not knowe nor here the ordynauce<sup>20</sup>  
 nor counseile of the seege, ne of her wacche in no wyse, for trayne  
 and treson that myght falle.

¶ And whanne these pore pepuH shuld turne<sup>16</sup> ayen, thei made  
 high sorough and grete murmuracion amonge hem-self, and seyden<sup>24</sup>  
 they had leuyr byn sleyn there thanne go ayen into the Cite,  
 and dilfully, with high voycis<sup>17</sup> bannyng and cursyng her<sup>18</sup> owne  
 nacion, for thei that weren with-ynne the Cite wold not suffre hem  
 come in ayen; wherefore y trowe thei diden grete synne and mys-<sup>28</sup>  
 chieff to hem-self; for meny of him deiden there for colde, that,  
 and thei had byn with-ynne, her lifis<sup>19</sup> might haue byn sauyd and  
 kepte.

¶ And tho was come the tyme of Cristmesse, in whiche oure<sup>32</sup>  
 Kyng did tho grete mercy and relief to his enemyes, at the reuer-  
 ence of that Glorious feste of the byrthe of oure Lorde Ihesu  
 Criste and of his blessid modir, oure Lady Seynt Marye, that

<sup>1</sup> and *om.* B.     <sup>2</sup> day new B.     <sup>3-3</sup> But . . . hem *om.* B.

<sup>4</sup> hilde at B.     <sup>5</sup> day by day in werre B.     <sup>6</sup> had of B.     <sup>7</sup> in *om.* B.

<sup>8</sup> litull *om.* B.     <sup>9</sup> in B.     <sup>10</sup> wolking to B.     <sup>11</sup> leaf 139, back.

<sup>12</sup> and *om.* B.     <sup>13</sup> englyssh man B.     <sup>14</sup> had grete B.

<sup>15</sup> & pytee on hem B.     <sup>16</sup> shuld algetis turne A.     <sup>17</sup> voice A.

<sup>18</sup> her A.     he G.     <sup>19</sup> lyuys A.



gracious and mercifuH virgyne. For, of high pite, mercy and<sup>1</sup>  
 grace, and at the reuerence of<sup>2</sup> that tyme of the holy feste, the  
 Kynge, of high compascion that he had in hert, and of his worthi  
 4 and excellent manhode, sent oute his heraudis in good araye, bothe  
 to hem that weren wyth-ynne the Cite as welle as with-out the  
 Cite, on the Cristemesse day self, to hem<sup>3</sup> that lackid vitaille, that  
 thei shold come and haue mete and drynke ynow, in worship of the  
 8 Feste, and sauf-condite to come and to goo. And thei seiden  
 alle 'gramersis' lightly, as thei had no nede there-to, and set no  
 pryce by his sonde. And vnnethe thei wold graunte space vnto  
 the<sup>4</sup> pepuH of her owne nacion to ben releuyd that layn in the diche  
 12 vndir the Cite wallis, that thei had drouen and put oute of grete  
 myschieff. But two preestis and iiij seruauntis for<sup>5</sup> to brynge hem  
 vitailles, mete and drynke; and if ther come eny moo personys,  
 thei wold shete to hem and sle hem to dethe. ¶ And thanne  
 16 weren alle these pore pepuH set arowe; and these two preestis with  
 her iiij. seruauntis brougthen hem plente of mete and drynke, of  
 the Kyngis gracious almys; and so thei weren at<sup>6</sup> that tyme made  
 welle at eese; and replete of mete and drynke. And as thei sete  
 20 her mete to fonge, this talkynge thei had amongis hem. ¶ "A,  
 almyghty God," thanne thei seide, "the<sup>7</sup> Engelisshe-men by<sup>8</sup> of  
 good and treue<sup>9</sup> herte! Lo, how here this excellent Prynce and  
 Kynge that we thought neuyr to<sup>10</sup> obey vnto, ne neuyr profre ne  
 24 don hym homage, now hathe he on vs more pite and compassion by  
 a M<sup>11</sup> thanne hathe oure owne nacion; therefore, oure Lord God,  
 that art fuH of myght, graunte hym grace to wynne and gete his  
 trewe right!" Thus the pore pepuH for the Kynge prayde; that  
 28 Gôd kepe and mayntene hym in alle his nedis. ¶ Whanne thei  
 had thus seruyd alle the pore pepuH with mete and drynke, and  
 were welle reffresshid, oure folke turnyd ayen to<sup>12</sup> the Kynge, for  
 the trewse lastid no lengur but that same day.  
 32 ¶ And whanne the nyght be-ganne to apere and shewe, thanne  
 thei on the wallis beganne newe werre ayen vpon the seege, and  
 wacchidden a ward that<sup>13</sup> fuH streyte bothe day and nyght with  
 hungir smerte, for that tyme her vitaiH weren alle wastid and  
 36 spente. And meny a worthy body for defaute of lyuelod of mete

<sup>1</sup> and A. an G.      <sup>2</sup> of om. A.      <sup>3</sup> peym A.      <sup>4</sup> the pore A.

<sup>5</sup> for om. A.      <sup>6</sup> at om. A.      <sup>7</sup> þese A.      <sup>8</sup> ben A.

<sup>9</sup> treue A. treue of G.      <sup>10</sup> to om. A.      <sup>11</sup> M<sup>11</sup> parte A.      <sup>12</sup> vnto A.

<sup>13</sup> þat was A.

and drynke was<sup>1</sup> spent and ded, for euyr grete hounagir brekithe herd stonen waH yn hir grete nede; for euyr the lif is dere and suete.

¶ Thanne alle the Capteynys of that Cite, bothe Baillis, Bur- 4  
geses and comunnalte, toke her counseilH with-ynne hem self to trete with the Kynge; and with the pepuH the cause pryncipalH for the high myschieff that tho was amongis hem<sup>2</sup> of enfamenynge for hungir; for thei knewe welle thei myght note longe endure so; 8  
and for the sodeyne and <sup>3</sup>multitude dethe that was euyry day amonges hem for lakke of ffode, vpon the New Yeris Euyr at nyght, the pepuH with-ynne come to the wallis at euyry porte to the seege, and clepedyn a knyght to speke with hem; and there 12  
was non man that tyme that hem herd till thei come to the Porte de Pounte of Sayne. ¶ And that was on that side<sup>4</sup> as the Erle of Huntyngdon kepte the ward. And there thei weren herd, and answerid tho ayen, and askid what thei wold: and thei ansuerid 16  
and seid, and prayed at the <sup>5</sup>reuerence of alHmyghty God,<sup>6</sup> if ther were eny gentilH knyght that wold here her complaynte, and bere her erende vnto the Kynge. ¶ And thanne oon ansuerid and seid, he was a knyght; and thei preyd hym to telle hys name. And 20  
he seid, “my name ys Vmfreuyle;” and thei thankid God and oure Lady that thei had mette with hym, for he was of the old blode of that contre of Normandye; “and we praye you to helpe vs haue an ende betwene youre Kyng and vs.” And he seid, “what is youre 24  
wille?” and thei seid at fewe wordis: “we haue byn at euyry porte of the<sup>7</sup> City there these Pryncis loggyn before, and haue callid aftur speche of hem; but we coude haue non ansuere: ffirste at the Duke of Clarence, the excellent prynce; and from thens to 28  
the Duke of Gloucestre, his worthi brothir; and ofte we clepid, and longe there stode; and so we come doune to the Duke of Exeture, and there we gate non ansuere.

The starving  
Roueners  
can't get Lord  
Warwick or  
the Earl  
Marshal to  
listen to  
them.

“And at Warwike, that Erle so fre, 32  
We callid ofte: it wold not be;  
And at the Erle MarchaH we were.  
ther was no wight that wold us ansuere.  
And we haue clepid at alH these so moche, 36  
But non ansuere we coude gete truliche;

<sup>1</sup> was pere A.

<sup>2</sup> hem A. om. G.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 140.

<sup>4</sup> side pere A.

<sup>5</sup> the heigh A.

<sup>6</sup> god almyghty A.

<sup>7</sup> bis A.

therefore we pray these princis, for Mari sake, And for that Lordis loue that did vs make, As thei ben dukis of high dyngnyte, And cheeftaynys of cheualrye,		The Roueners want English nobles to beg Henry V to
Vnto the Kynge to prey for vs, And we may fynde hym so gracious ; And we wolle gon with you also Vnto the Kynge, and speke hym to,	4	be gracious to them,
And beseche hym, for loue of that Kynge That made heuen, erthe, and alle thynges, With his witte and his good auyse,— Above alle pryncis he is pryse,—	8	
And for his owne high pryncchode, and also for his owne worthy manhode, And as he is kynge moste excellent, and to God, but to non othir, obedyent,	12	for his man- hood's sake,
That regnythe here in erthe by ryght, <sup>1</sup> But only to oure <sup>2</sup> Ihesu full of myght, And with-ynne hym selff Emperoure, and also <sup>3</sup> Almyghti kynge and conqueroure,	16	
That he hym-self wold graunte vs space, and sauf-condite, and alle his grace, Nought-withstondynge oure offence, That we myght come to his presence,	20	and grant them safe- conduct for
xij. men of vs by on assent, That lordly Kynge to telle fully oure entent. May we come hym onys to se, With the myght of God so fre,	24	12 of em to come to him.
We shuH hym shewe, withoute distaunce, that shaH hym turne to grete plesaunce.” Quod <sup>4</sup> Vmfray : “ this y [as]sent ; ” and <sup>5</sup> toke his leue, and forth he went, And come to the Duke of Clarence there, and told hym <sup>6</sup> this mater aH in ffeere. he thankid God and his modir eke, that oure enemyes were be-come so meke, and <sup>7</sup> that he wold, with good wille, Speke for hem oure Kynge vntille.	28	
	32	Umfraville actes, and asks the Duke of Clarence
	36	to speak to Henry V.

<sup>1</sup> right A. nyght Kk.

<sup>4</sup> Ox A.

<sup>5</sup> he A.

<sup>2</sup> oure lord A.

<sup>6</sup> hym om. A.

<sup>3</sup> also a A.

<sup>7</sup> & seide A.

	lo, so sone this good lord hem vndirtoke, and her mekenesse he nought forsoke. he is a prynce forto <sup>1</sup> comende ; but aH to fewe of siehe ben founde ; he is manfuH, whanne werre dothe laste, and mercifuH whanne hit is paste ; Manhode, mekenesse, witte and grace, Is conteynyd with hym in a lituH space ; he wantith nothyng a prynce shold haue ; Almyghti God mote hym saue !	4 8
Umfraville goes to the Duke of Exeter and to Gloster,	Thanne Vmfrey <sup>2</sup> toke his leue, and his message he went to mene. To Gloucestre thanne did he goo, To Exetur the Duke also, and told hem the tydyngis how it was. thei thonkyd God of his high grace, that her enemyes, ayens her wille, ffor nede of socoure wold yold him tille ; and seid thei wold, for Goddis sake, helpe for hem a good ende to make. loo these pryncis of high mekenesse,— God kepe hem yn hele and from sikenesse !— [lf. 140, bk.] Though thei haue suffrid peynys smerte, yet haue thei mercy and pite in herte.	12 16 20 24
Then he goes  to other nobles,	Thanne Vmfreyule, his leue he tace, and passid forthe in his space To erlis and to lordis be <sup>3</sup> name ; and thei hym seid aH the same. Lo ! these cheefenteynys of cheualrie, how thei weren come in cherite ! therefore God, of his grete grace, yef hem good spede in enyry place.	28 32
and then to Henry V.	thanne on <sup>4</sup> Newe Yeris Day in the mornyn[n]g, Sir Gilbert Vmfreyule come to the Kyng, and aH this mater to hym he <sup>5</sup> seid : And there of the cite mekelly hym prayed. oure Kynge seid thanne, be good auyse, and also at his owne deuyse,	36

<sup>1</sup> to A.      <sup>2</sup> vmfrevile A.      <sup>3</sup> by A.      <sup>4</sup> a A.  
<sup>5</sup> he om. A.

to graunte that cite aH her wille :		
“ let xij of hem come me tille.”		Henry V will see the 12 Rouenens.
of aH his lordis euyry-chone.		
ayens it was neuyr oone.	4	
lo ! that high <sup>1</sup> prynce and kynge so felle, <sup>2</sup>		
of aH erthely creaturis he is welle ;		
lo ! how he hathe prouyd hym self manfuH,		How manful and merciful he is.
and as <sup>3</sup> a prynce right mercifuH ;	8	
thei that had hym so ofte <sup>4</sup> meuyd,		
and also hym had gretely greuyd,		
and also <sup>5</sup> put hym yn grete coste,		
and of his pepuH fuH meny loste,	12	
And <sup>6</sup> withstonde hym of his right,—		
And now thei byn falle in his myght,		when he has em in his power !
and at his wille hem to greue,		
yf he wol put hem to myscheue ;	16	
and thanne hym-self to light so lowe,		
of her wille to wete and knowe,		
and also to graunte hem to trete :		
that was heigh mercy and cherite.	20	
Sithe that thei had hym so <sup>7</sup> agilde,		
and lithe in hym to don hem ben spilte ;		
he grauntid hem <sup>8</sup> grace and merciful mekenes :		
ffor-sothe, a child of God, y wot <sup>9</sup> he is ; <sup>10</sup>	24	He is truly a Child of God.
of goodnesse and uertu he wantith no thyng ;		
that his <sup>11</sup> preisyng for a kynge.		
therefore Criste, for his passion,		
kepe hym in <sup>12</sup> right compassion !	28	
whanne the kynge had grauntid, as y haue told,		
to Vmfreuyle, the knyght so bolde		
The Kynge seid, “ sir, whanne shalle this be ?		
If thei wille to-morrowe, let see.”	32	
Thanne <sup>13</sup> Vmfreuyle of the Kynge leue hent. <sup>14</sup>		Umfraville goes back to Rouen.
And to that <sup>15</sup> cite anon he went.		
and whanne he come at that <sup>16</sup> gate,		

<sup>1</sup> he A.    <sup>2</sup> principaH B.    <sup>3</sup> is B.    <sup>4</sup> so oft had B.

<sup>5</sup> also had B.    <sup>6</sup> and had B.    <sup>7</sup> so greuously B.

<sup>8</sup> hem of hys B.    <sup>9</sup> wot wele B.

<sup>10</sup> is pat doth good ayenst mysse B.    <sup>11</sup> is B.

<sup>12</sup> in hys B.    <sup>13</sup> tho B.    <sup>14</sup> toke leue B.    <sup>15</sup> pe B.

<sup>16</sup> that om. B.

	the statis of the cite he fonde the[r]ate.	
Umfraville says Henry V will see the	he seid : " y haue be with oure Kyng <sup>1</sup> , and he hathe grauntid youre askynge. to-morowe, be-tymes loke ye be yare,	4
12 Roueners to-morrow.	ffor xij of yow shuH to hym fare : and syn ye shuH gon hym to, My counseiH y rede that ye do. to-morow y wote that ye shulle se	8
	The rialliste prynce of Cristiante ; To <sup>2</sup> syche a prynce neuer ye spake, ne so loue a worde can take.	
They must take care their tongues are not too long, but speak few words.	Theynke with hert byforn youre tonge, leste youre tongis <sup>3</sup> byn to longe : speke but fewe, and welle hem sette To that prynce whanne ye byn mette ; ffor a word wronge oute of ward	12 16
	Might make you to <sup>4</sup> fare fnH herd, Therefore, of wordis loke ye ben wise, and sei no thyng withoute good advise."	
	thanne thanked thei hym fuH curtesly, and of his god lore seid, " gramercy ; that ye wold vs so moche good teche, or that we come to that worthi princis speche."	20
	he seid " adieu ! " and went his wey, the seturday aftur neweyeris day.	24
Next day at prime he meets the	and at <sup>5</sup> that houre of day be <sup>6</sup> pryme, Sir Gilbert Vmfreyuyle come that <sup>7</sup> tyme ; of the Kyngis squyeris weren sent, that tyme wyth <sup>8</sup> hym verayment, <sup>9</sup> <sup>10</sup> and yomen of the crowne also, with hym assyngny were to goo, <sup>10</sup> thei went to Sein Hillariis Gate :	28 32
12 Roueners :	anon the xij men come oute there-ate : iiij knyghtis and <sup>11</sup> iiij clerkes, and <sup>11</sup> iiij burgeys, wise <sup>12</sup> of werkes : alle <sup>13</sup> thei were clothid in <sup>14</sup> blacke,	36

<sup>1</sup> kyng<sup>e</sup> om. B.    <sup>2</sup> with B.    <sup>3</sup> wordes B.<sup>4</sup> to om. B.    <sup>5</sup> and on B.    <sup>6</sup> at B.    <sup>7</sup> by B.<sup>8</sup> with B.    wyth be G.    <sup>9</sup> hym assigned were to go B.<sup>10-10</sup> and yomen . . . goo om. B.    <sup>11</sup> and om. B.<sup>12</sup> wise B.    with wise G.    <sup>13</sup> & B.    <sup>14</sup> aH in B.

comly of chere, and feire thei spake.

whanne thei were come to the<sup>1</sup> hous of charite,

thenne oure Kynge, at messe was he ;

with-ynne the chirche thei did lend

the[r]till that the messe was at the<sup>2</sup> end.

tho<sup>3</sup> come forth the Kynge withoute let,

there as he had knelid in his closet,

with chere so cheuetayneliche,

with<sup>4</sup> so lith light<sup>5</sup> a loke, and lordliche,<sup>6</sup>

and so right solent senblaunt, and sad :

<sup>7</sup> to se that lord men mygh[t] be glad.<sup>7</sup>

as sone as the Frensshe-men hym did<sup>8</sup> see,

To-forn hym thei fille on kne.

he blenchid on hem with stately chere ;

he<sup>9</sup> ne wiste what thei were :

thei enclinyd hem with meke speche,

And a bille to hym thei did reche.

he taught a lord to take her bille,

and sumwhat he turnyd hem till :

what it ment, y hard say ;

tretise thei wold, be eny way ;

Thei be-soght hym, for Goddis sake,—

that heuen and erthe and alle did make,

Bothe este, weste, northe and southe,—

‘that ye wold here oure speche be<sup>10</sup> mouthe.’

the Kynge bad hem speke and sey her wille ;

and thei were fayn, and knelid stille.

Thé seid, “we you beseche<sup>11</sup> and prey,

ffor His loue that deid on good Friday,

And for his Modiris loue so fre,

considre now on<sup>12</sup> vs now, for charite !

the pore pepuH that byn withoute,

In our dichis rounde aboute,

Thei lien there for faute of breed ;

and for defaute many byn dede.

haue ye pite hem vppon,

Henry V is  
at Mass.

He comes  
out.

The Rouenens  
kneel to him,

hand him a  
Petition,

and pray him  
to hear them.

They beg him

to pity them.

Their poor  
are starvynz.

Many are  
dead.

<sup>1</sup> to be B. to G. <sup>2</sup> the om. B. <sup>3</sup> to B. <sup>4</sup> And with B.

<sup>5</sup> hygh B. <sup>6</sup> lordshyppe B. <sup>7-7</sup> to . . . glad om. B.

<sup>8</sup> did om. B. <sup>9</sup> As he B. <sup>10</sup> by B.

<sup>11</sup> byseche yow B. <sup>12</sup> consider & tender B.

	and yeue hem leue <sup>1</sup> thens to gon."	
Henry V tells the 12 Roueners	ffuH still the Kynge stode aH <sup>2</sup> that while, and nouthir did <sup>3</sup> laugh nor smyle ; but with a countynaunce so clere, and also with a cheuetaynly chere, nothir <sup>4</sup> to myld nothir <sup>5</sup> to straunge, But ay in oon withoute chaunge, his countenaunce did not abate, but alwey stode in oon astate.	4      8
that he didn't put their poor folk in the city ditch.	And tho hym luste to yeue ansuere, he seide : "y put hem not there, into the diche of that cite ; I put hem not there ; and that wote ye. Thei were not put there at myn ordynaunce, ne non shuH passe at my suffraunce ; Thei abode there while thei mought ;"— and so he seide to hem fuH ryght ; <sup>6</sup> — "and as to you, ye knoue welle this : ye haue offendid me with mys, and from me kepte my cite, the whiche that is <sup>7</sup> heritage fre, and <sup>8</sup> shuld be my liege men."	12       16  20
They have offended him, and kept his city from him.	They ansuerid and seid thanne : "Off this cite that we here kepte, we haue a charge, and that a depe. hit vs bitak <sup>9</sup> oure souyrayn liege. <sup>10</sup> For to deffend hit from saught or <sup>11</sup> sege ; and we ben his liege men born, and also holesy to hym we ben sworn. and also of the Duke of Burgoyne so fre, A grete charge of hym had we ; but wold ye now, of youre highe grace, Graunte vs alle lif and space, that summe of vs myght to hem goo, and warne hem botho of oure woo, and of oure ferthe vs to excuse ;	24     28    32  36
They plead		
that they are the lieges of their king,		
and ask leave to warn him and the Duke of Burgundy of their state.		

<sup>1</sup> hem leue B. heue G. <sup>2</sup> stode all B. all G.<sup>3</sup> noþer did B. nouthir G. <sup>4</sup> not B. <sup>5</sup> nor B.<sup>6</sup> ryght B. sothe G. <sup>7</sup> is myn B. <sup>8</sup> and ye B.<sup>9</sup> hit was bytake B. hit vs bite G. <sup>10</sup> liege B. kynge G.<sup>11</sup> & A.



ffor many of vs woH hem refuse,  
and to you yelden oure<sup>1</sup> cite,  
and alle youre owne liege men be."

The Roueners  
will yield  
Rouen to  
Henry V.

The Kynge seid, "y do you oute of doute,  
My cite y wolle not gon withoute.

4

He says he  
will not go  
without  
his city.

and as touchynge to<sup>2</sup> youre Frensshe liege,  
ye<sup>3</sup> wote welle that y hold this sege ;

Their French  
King and the  
Duke have  
known of  
the siege.

and the Duke of Burgoyne also,

8

alle thei wete welle, bothe two ;  
ffor alle the<sup>4</sup> while that y here haue byn,  
Messageris haue go betwene ;

and yf thei like to neigh me nere,

12

thei weten welle to ffynde me here ;  
ffor y wolle not hens goo  
withoute my right, for frynde nor ffoo,

sith thei so longe befor it knewe.

16

and nowe to sende hem message newe,  
it were to<sup>5</sup> hem no newelte,  
and to us<sup>6</sup> but superfluite.

It's no use  
to send em  
a message.

Siche message wol y non sende ;

20

and by God  
he'll not  
send one.

it is no nede, so God me amende !"

And whanne the Kynge had yeue that ansuere,  
of the<sup>7</sup> mater spake thei no more ;

pay<sup>8</sup> seiden, "feire it is to wynne

24

Rone, with the men that<sup>9</sup> ben ther-ynne."

The Kynge seid : "it is myn owne londe ;  
I woH it wynne, though ye it with-stonde,

28

He'll win  
Rouen ;  
and if they  
oppose him,  
they'll suffer.

and ye mowe there-ynne so deserue,  
ye shuH be reward aftur<sup>10</sup> as ye serue !"

with that word thei weren aflagid.

thanne spake a clerke, and thus he seid :  
"souyrayne lord, if<sup>11</sup> ye woH take hede

32

A clerk tells  
him a story :

In stori that ye may rede,  
how ij sheuetaynys a day had set,

and with ther<sup>12</sup> hostis thei weren met,  
bothe arayid in a felde,

36

2 hosts met  
to fight.

<sup>1</sup> youre A.    <sup>2</sup> to om. A.    <sup>3</sup> he A.    <sup>4</sup> pay A.

<sup>5</sup> to A.    to no G.    <sup>6</sup> us now A.    <sup>7</sup> pat A.

<sup>8</sup> pay A.    then G.    <sup>9</sup> that A.    that that G.

<sup>10</sup> after om. A.    <sup>11</sup> y A.    <sup>12</sup> her A.

	and weren redi batalle to yelde :	
The weaker brought the stronger bread and wine, to make them merciful.	The weyker party of the men thanne brought the bigger parti brede and wyn, In tokenyng that thei shold be Grace, mercy, and eke pite :	4
	[leaf 141, back]	
We Roneners bring you the same, and Rouen.	and nowe we brynge you bred and wyn, and Rone that cite feire and fyne.” “Rone,” he seid, “is my herytage, I wille haue it withoute fage. And fro this tyme y rede ye do, that mercy and grace may come you to. And at the reuerence of god almyght and of Mary his modir, that maiden so <sup>1</sup> bright, Of treti <sup>2</sup> y graunte you space ; And if ye wille ye may haue grace.” thanne seid thei, “sir, pur charite, how wille ye to youre pore pepuH be, <sup>3</sup> that in diches suffryn pyne, and for detaute deie as suyne ?” The Kynge ansuerid hem with wit fuH wise : “Thereof woH y take myn a-vise, as God put hert, mynde, <sup>4</sup> and wille, So wiH y do that pepuH vntille : as he me redithe, y wille hem rewe.” with that he went and seid “adieue !” The <sup>5</sup> ffrensse men, that same while, fforthe thei went with Vmfrenyle ; And toward the cite as thei yode, thei spoken of oure Kynge so goode : Thei seiden, “he is, to oure advise, of alle erthely kyngis moste vise, takyng reward to his chere and to his contynauce in fere, To his person and propurte, to his ffeturis and <sup>6</sup> beaute, And to his depe discrecion that is in his possession, and to his passyng pryncchode,	8
Henry grants them time,		12
		16
and will consider how he'll treat the starving outsiders.		20
		24
The Roneners go home wards,		28
and praise Henry V.		32
		36

<sup>1</sup> so om. A.      <sup>2</sup> tretise A.      <sup>3</sup> see A.      <sup>4</sup> mynde herte A.<sup>5</sup> These A.      <sup>6</sup> & his A.

and to his discrete and worpy <sup>1</sup> manhode ;		The Rouen delegates praise Henry
ffor he is mercyfuH in sight,		
and askithe nothyng but his right :		
These vertuis byn a passynge thyng,	4	
That byn with-ynne siche a kynge.		
how shuld he do <sup>2</sup> but wyne honour ?		
how shuld he be but a conquerour ?		
welle he dothe <sup>3</sup> withoute dene ;	8	
God hym loue, and that is sene."		
Thus the Frensshe men, of the Kynge talkithe,		
Toward the cite as thei walkithe.		
her leue at Vmfreuyle <sup>4</sup> thei toke,	12	
Into the Cite, and hym forsoke.		and enter Rouen.
On that othir day nexte, erliche,		
the Kynge made two tentis to picche,—		
On for the <sup>5</sup> Englysshe, and on <sup>6</sup> for the <sup>5</sup> Frensshe ;	16	Henry V has 2 tents pitcht for the English and French to treat in.
And bothe thei stode in Gloucestre <sup>7</sup> trenche,—		
Though the stormys were neuyr so grete,		
drie-hedid that thei myght trete.		
whanne bothe paylownys weren pight,	20	
thei went to trete with aH her myght.		
Warwike, that erle so wise,—		Our men are Lords Warwick.
ffor in our partye he bare the pryce ;—		
Salusburi, that erle so treue,	24	Satisbury.
and also the Lord Fithe-hughe,		Fitzhugh, and
and the Kyngis steward, Hungurford,		Hungerford.
By name y can no moo record ;		
and from that cite come hym to mete,	28	They meet 12 Roueners.
xii. of the Frensshe that weren discrete.		
hit was a sight of solempnite		It is a solemn sight.
ffor to behold bothe partë ;		
To see the riche in her araye ;	32	
and on the wallis the pepuH that laye ;		
and on oure pepuH that weren withoute,		
how thike that thei walkid aboute ;		
and the herowdis, semely to sene,	36	
how that thei went ay betwene ;		

<sup>1</sup> & worpy A. and G.    <sup>2</sup> be A.    <sup>3</sup> with A.  
<sup>4</sup> vmfreuyleuyle G.    <sup>5</sup> the om. A.    <sup>6</sup> & an oper A.  
<sup>7</sup> Gloucestre G.

The Herald	the Kyngis horoudis and pursinauntis In cotis of armys amyunauntis ; The Englysshe a beste, the Frensshe a floure, of Portyngale bothe caste and toure,	4
were drest like lords, adorn'd with gold.	and othir cotis of dyuersite, as lordis beren in her degre. Good-liche with gold thei were be-gon, Right as the sonne on hem shon.	8
The poor French had hardly a clout.	this sight was to hem a sory chere ; of sorow and pyne thei weren full nere ; of that pore pepuH that weren put oute ; thei had[den] <sup>1</sup> vnnethe a cloute ; The clothis that weren on her backe, kept hem there from reine and racke ; The wethur was to hem a peyne, ffor alle that tyme it stode be <sup>2</sup> neyne.	12 16
A child of 2 begd bread,	There men myght se a <sup>3</sup> grete pite, a child of two yere or thre Goo aboute and begge his brede, ffor ffadir and modir bothe lay dede.	20
its parents lay dead.	and vndir hem the watir stode ; and yet thei lay cryynge aftur foode. Summe storuen to pe <sup>4</sup> dethe, and summe stoppid bothe yen and brethe ; And summe crokid in the kneys, and as lene as eny treis ;	24
Some had starvd to death.	and women holdynge in her arme a dede child, and nothyng warme ; And childeren soukyng on the pappe Withynne a dede womanys lappe ;	28
Mothers held dead children up.	There men myght ffynde ffuH ryue, x. or xij. deie, ayens on alyue. and thei knewe not of dethe, So preuely thei yolden vpe the brethe, withoute noyse or eny cry ; as thei had slept, so did thei dey.	32 36
10 or 12 dead to 1 living.	These were sightis of differaunce, that on of ioie, that othir of penaunce,	
They died noiselessly, as if they slept.		

<sup>1</sup> had hem A. <sup>2</sup> by A. <sup>3</sup> see a A. se G. <sup>4</sup> to pe A. to G.

as heuen and erthe had partid on twoo, that on to wele, that othir to woo. ther was neuyr <sup>1</sup> kynge so straunge, To see that sight, but his hert wold chaunge, and wold considre to that syght, he shuld be pensiff, and moche light.	4	The sad sight would change any king's heart.
there men myght lerne in her lif, what it is, ayens right to strif; ffor while it lay in her lotte, thei were ffuH crueH (God it wotte), and mercy they wold non haue tille nede come that thei moste craue; and yet, for alle her wikkid wille, Mercy thei were take vntiH. Now of that pepuH let we be, and of oure tretis speke we.	8     12   16	Yet the Roueniers had    no mercy on us till their need came.
we hem chalengithe and accusithe, and thei ansuerithe and excusithe. we askid mykiH, and thei proferid smaH, that is yuyH to accord with aH; tho thei tretid an xiiij nyght, and yet accordid thei ne myght.	20	We discuss with em   for a fort- night in vain,
thanne the tretise thei broken in haste, and bethe tentis adoun were caste. thanne the Frensshe men hem be-thought, her owne bale that thei had wrought. whanne thei shuld her leue take, thei preyed oure lordis, and this thei spake: "For the loue of God Almyght, contenew this tretise to mydnyght; And yf we clepyn, that ye wille speke with-ynn that tyme, we you be-seke. that we mowe <sup>2</sup> haue eudyence fforto here oure euydence."	24     28   32	and break off treating.    They pray for delay till midnight.
Quod <sup>3</sup> the Englisshe lordis, "that, we assent." thei toke her leue, and forthe thei <sup>4</sup> went. to the Kyng our lordis passid, and tolde hym aH these materis faste,	36	Our lords agree,  and report to Henry V.

<sup>1</sup> neuyr þe A.    <sup>2</sup> may A.    <sup>3</sup> Ox A.    <sup>4</sup> þay A.    the G.

	how thei lefte, and in what issewis, and how <sup>1</sup> thei contynuyd the trewis.	
Henry V approves his lords' action.	yet the Kynge was mercyfuH in mode : That thei had grauntid, he not withstode. Thei passid forth with simpufH chere, Into that cite alle in fere.	4
In Rouen,	Sone in the toun it was yspoke that the trewis was tho broke.	8
the poor abuse the rich, call em 'murderers.'	the pore pepuH alle aboute, on the riche thei made a showte, and seiden, "ye fals cherlis ! and also ye murthereris and manquelleris ! will ye take no reward to vs tha[t] suffren here so herd, and deiden here euyry day ? welle we thanne telle may ; and also rennyth vpon oure coste, and in youre defaute we ben loste.	12
and appeal to God against them.	we pray to God that ye <sup>2</sup> mote ansuere, be-fore that iuged that suffrid sore on Caluery, vpon the rode, and bought vs with His blessid blode, that ye ben gilty in this case. we you apele byfore His face ! wold <sup>3</sup> ye obeye you to youre liege, thanne wold he come <sup>4</sup> lere his <sup>5</sup> sege ; but for youre goodis ye abide, and for youre pompe and for youre pryde	20
If they won't yield to Henry V	ye nyH enclyne to oure Kynge, but rathur lese vs for hungerynge. but ye accord with oure wille,	24
the poor 'll kill em.	right here anon we shuH you kyH ; and he shaH come into his right. and yf <sup>6</sup> ye it withstonde, we shaH fight, leuyr thanne thus to lye here, and be enfamenyd alle in ffere."	28
	they seide they dede it for a skylle. alle that we do ys for a wile,	32
		36

<sup>1</sup> how þat A.      <sup>2</sup> þat ye A.    that G.      <sup>3</sup> wold G.  
<sup>4</sup> sone A.      <sup>5</sup> þis A.      <sup>6</sup> yf om. A.

to excuse vs to that fode,

<sup>1</sup> that we pay hym but lituH goode.<sup>2</sup>

thei semblid thanne aH that cite ;

and euyry man seid in his degre :

“no nede is to counseilH goo ;

ther is no moo but of two :

ffor to dellyuyre vp this clos,

or to be dede here : this is to <sup>3</sup> chos.”

to the Porte of Seynt Hillary thei went,

and clepid oute by on assent.

tho ansuerid hem <sup>4</sup> a knyght anon,

that was clepid Robesard, Sir Iohn :

“sirrys,” he seid, “what is youre wille ?”

thei ansuerid and seid hym tille :

“we you be-seche, pur charite,

And for the honoure of cheualrye, [leaf 142, back] 16

that ye for vs woH speke youre speche

to the Duke of Gloucestre, and hym besече

So for us to <sup>5</sup> the Kynge to prayne,

That we nought mowe <sup>6</sup> trete ayayne. 20

we wolte submitt <sup>7</sup> to his wille,

and alle that longith hym vntille,

oure prosonys and oure possessionys,

alle to dispose at his discrecionys.” 24

whanne that <sup>8</sup> Robesard the Duke had told,

ffor hem to speke in haste he wold :

he meuyd hit vnto oure Kynge,

and he hym grauntid newe trefyng 28

Of Caunturbury the Erchebisshop fre :

at Seynt Katerynys thanne lay he.

whanne he was knowynge of that care,

at his herte he toke it sare ; 32

to the kynge sone he wente,

and hym be-sought with good entente,

that he myght wende <sup>9</sup> to that cite,

and speke with her spryrytuate,

and to be meue of that trete ; 36

The Roueners  
say they must  
either give up  
their city

or die.

They ask Sir  
John Robsart

to get the  
Duke of  
Gloster to tell  
Henry V

that they'll  
submit  
to him.

The Duke  
tells the  
King.

The Arch-  
bishop of  
Canterbury

has leave to  
speak to the

Religious  
of Rouen.

<sup>1</sup> & pat A. <sup>2</sup> litil goode A. lituH G. <sup>3</sup> þe A.

<sup>4</sup> hem answerid A. <sup>5</sup> to om. A. <sup>6</sup> now A.

<sup>7</sup> submytte vs A. submittis G. <sup>8</sup> þat A. the G.

<sup>9</sup> myght wende A. myght G.

	and help a fynah pees to be.	
	the Kynge hym grauntid anon right.	
Tents are pitch.	two paulyonys anon were pight, <sup>1</sup>	
	with-ynne the trenche that thei had ben.	4
	the erchebisshop pight his owne betwene ;	
	So was that state of <sup>2</sup> spiritualte	
	there for to make an vnity.	
Negotiations go on for 4 days,	They tretid day, they tretid nyght,	8
	with candiH and torehis bryght ;	
	thei tretid iiij dayes in that place,	
and then end.	and tho made an ende, thorough Godis grace.	
	whanne they knewe a clousion,	12
The Roueners	the Frensshe men made a peticion ;	
	her worship for to saue,	
ask for 8 days,	But viij dayes forto haue,	
to send to the French king at Burgundy.	That thei myght send to tho <sup>3</sup> Frensshe Kynge	16
	and to the Burgoyneys, this tydyng,	
	In what degre they stode, and howe,	
	willynge hem to haue reskow.	
	it was a poynte of cheualre ;	20
Henry V grants them.	The kynge hem grauntid with hert fre,	
	that thei myght bothe knowe and kenne	
	how that it shuld be, and whanne.	
	Now to my tale wiH ye tende,	24
The Agree- ment is, that if no rescue comes in 5 days,	and y shaH you teH her poyntemente :	
	In viij dayes, as y you tolde,	
	yf no reskowis come to that hold,	
	They shuld dellyuere that cite,	28
Rouen is to be given up to Henry V,	And alle the burgaysis, Englysshe to be,	
	and to oure Kynge, of money sounde,	
with £50,000,	to pay oure Kynge .l. M <sup>li</sup> . ii. ;	
and they are to build Henry a castle	and more, they shuld vndirtake,	32
	a casteH for oure Kynge to make,	
	withynne in half yeris, withoute let ;	
on the Seine,	and vpon Sayne it shuld be set.	
	and thei to haue her ffraunchisis fre,	36
	as it was wonte in olde tyme to be.	
	And no man withynne her cite selle,	

<sup>1</sup> prght G.      <sup>2</sup> state of A.    state G.      <sup>3</sup> þe A.



But citezenys that ther-ynne duelle, And he that was a Normaunt borne, And an Englysshe man sworne ; prysoner and <sup>1</sup> othir, as hit was skille,	4	
oure Kynge to raunson at his wille ; and alle the sowdyouris that there were, her goodis to lese, <sup>2</sup> and goo bare In her dowbelettis oute of the toune ;	8	The French soldiers in Ronen are to go home bare.
and yet oure Kynge yaf euyry man a gounne. This was the compasicion, and made be <sup>3</sup> good discrecion.		Henry V gives each a gun.
thanne Graunde Iakis anon present, aftur reskewe he was sent ; and of that message he was fuH fayne. to Rone he come nought ageyne ;	12	The Ronen deputy to the French King
but a messagere thedur he did sende, and bad hym haue do, and make an ende, and did hem to wete (y telle you trewe,) Ther was no reskewe that he knewe.	16	sends a message that they'll not be rescued.
the viij day (the trowthe to telle), in the feste of Seint Wolston, that day befelH, and this was vpon a Thorysday. oure Kynge thanne, in good aray, ffuH rialliche in his astate,	20	So on the 8th day of the truce
as a conquerowe, there he sate, with-ynne a <sup>4</sup> hous of cherite, to resseyue the keyis of that cite.	24	Henry V
mow sir Guy the botelere, and burgeis of that cite in fere, to the Kynge the keyis they brought, and of legaunce hym besought.	28	receives the keys of Rouen
to Exeter, oure Kynge souerayne, comaund the keyis, and to be capteyne ; and the Duke tho charchid he to resseyue that cite,	32	and hands them to the Duke of Exeter,
and entre in his name that nyght, and assygnyd to hym many a knyght. thanne the Duk of Exeter, withoute bode,	36	and bids him enter the city that nyght.

<sup>1</sup> or A.      <sup>2</sup> goodis to lese A.      goodis G.  
<sup>3</sup> by A.      <sup>4</sup> an A.

The Duke of Exeter rides into Rouen	toke his hors and forthe he rode to Benysyn that porte so stronge, That he had lay before so longe.	[leaf 143]	
	To that yate sone he cam,		4
with a brilliant suite.	and with hym many a worthi man ; There was neyinge of many a stede, And shynynge of many a gay wede ; There was many a geton gay, with mychiH and grete aray.		8
	and whanne the yate was opynnyd there, thei <sup>1</sup> weren redy, in to fare :		
He is welcomd by music,	Trompis blewe her bemys of bras, pipis and clarionys, for-sothe ther was ; and as thei entrid, thei yaf a showte with her voyce : thei were <sup>2</sup> full stowte.		12
and shouts	“Seint Gregori ! Seint Gregori !” thei cride on hight, and seide “welcome oure kyngis right !” the Frensshe pepuH of that cite		15
from thousands of the French.	were gederid be <sup>3</sup> thousandis hem to se : thei criden alle “welcome” in fere ; “in sicke tyme mote ye entre here, plesynge to God that it may be, and to vs, pees and vnyte.”		20
	and of that pepuH, to telH the trewthe,		24
But it is sad to see the	yt was a sight of ffuH grete rewthe : mykiH of that folke ther-ynne,		
skin-and-bone folk,	thei weren but very bonys and skyn, with ey-on holow, and nose sharpe, vunethe thei myght brethe or carpe ;		28
pale as lead, some dying,	ffor her colour was wan as lede, not like to lyf, but sone byn dede ; disfigurid patrouys and quantite, and as a dede Kynge thei weren paynte.		32
	there men myght se an exampleyre how foode makithe the pepuH feyre :		
	In euyry strete, summe lay dede, and hundris cryinge aftur brede ; and aftur longe, meny a day,		36
and hundreds crying for bread.			

<sup>1</sup> & pay A.    <sup>2</sup> þat was A.    <sup>3</sup> by A.

thei died as faste as thei myght be laid away.

In-to that wey, God hem wisse,  
that thei may come to his blisse ! Amen !

Now wille y more telle<sup>1</sup> spelle, 4  
and of the Duke of Excestre to telle.

The Duke o  
Exeter rides  
thru Rouen,

to that casteH firste he rode,  
and sithen the cite alle abrode,  
lengthe and brede he it mette, 8

and riche baneris he upsette,  
vppon the Porte Seint Hillary,  
a banere of the Trynyte ; and sets  
English  
banners on  
its gates,

and at the Porte Baux<sup>2</sup> he set euy<sup>n</sup> 12

a banere of the Quene of Heuen ;

and at Porte Martuyle he vp pight

Of Seint George a baner bright.

he set vpon the casteH to stonde, 16

on its castle  
the arms of  
France and  
England.

The armys of Fraunce and of Engelonde.

And on the Fryday, in the mornynge,

Into that cite come oure Kynge,

And alle the bisshopis in her<sup>3</sup> aray, 20

Next day,  
Henry V  
comes,

and vij abbotis with crucchis gay :

and is met  
by bishops,  
abbots, etc.,

xliij crossis there were of religion,

and seculer ; and alle thei went in<sup>4</sup> prosession

ayens that Prynce withe-oute the toune ; 24

and euyry cros, as thei stode,

he blessid hem with mylde mode ;

and holy watir, with her honde,

They yaf the Prynce of oure lande. 28

and sprinkled  
with holy  
water.

and at the Porte Cauke<sup>5</sup> so wide,

he passid yn<sup>6</sup> withoute pryde ;

He rides  
in quietly,

withoute pype or bomys blaste ;

oure Kynge, worthili he<sup>7</sup> paste, 32

like a  
Conqueror,

and as a conqueoure yn<sup>8</sup> his right,

thankynge euyr God Almyght.

and alle the pepuH in that cite,

“ welcome oure lord ! ” thei seid so fre, 36

and all the  
folk cry  
‘ Welcome ! ’

“ welcome into thyn owne right,

<sup>1</sup> telle om. A.    <sup>2</sup> kanyer A.    <sup>3</sup> her A. he G.

<sup>4</sup> a A.    <sup>5</sup> kaux A. tauke G.    <sup>6</sup> in passid A.

<sup>7</sup> he in A.    <sup>8</sup> in A. lyn G.

	as it is the wille of God Almyght ! ”	
The Rouen folk cheer	with that, thei cryed alle ‘ nowelle ’	
Hen. V on his brown steed.	as high as thei myght yelle.	
	he rode vpon a browne stede ;	4
	of blake damaske was his wede ;	
	a peitreH of <sup>1</sup> gold fuH bright	
	aboute his necke hynde doun right.	
	and a pendaunt be-hynde hym did honge	8
	vnto the erthe, it was so longe.	
He alights at the Minster,	and thei that neuyr byforn hym <sup>2</sup> did se,	
	thei knewe by chere whiche was he.	
	To the mynstur did he fare,	12
	and of his hors he light thare.	
	his chapeH mette hym at the dore there,	
	and went before hym alle in fere,	
	and songe a responce fuH glorious,	16
	‘ Quis est magnus dominus.’	
hears Mass,	Messe he hard, and offryd poo, <sup>3</sup>	
and goes to the Castle,	and thanne to the casteH did he goo,	
	that is a place of rialte,	20
	and a paleis of grete beaute.	
and lodges in the city,	there he hym loggid in the toune	
	with riaH and grete renoune.	
	and the cite faste did <sup>4</sup> encrese,	24
which is soon plentifully fed.	of bredde and wyn, fisse and flesshe ;	
	and thus oure gracious liege	
So the siege is ended.	Made an ende of his sege.	
	and alle that haue herd this redyng, [leaf 143, back]	28
	To his blisse, Criste you brynge,	
	That for vs deied vpon a tree !	
	Amen ! sey we alle pur charite.	

And in this yere was quene Iohna, that was Kynge Henryis 32  
wiff <sup>5</sup> the iiij<sup>e</sup>, arestid be <sup>6</sup> John, Duke of Bedfford, thanne Lew-  
tenaunt of Engeland, and sent to the casteH of Ledis in kent, to  
abide the wille and grace of the Kynge.

¶ And in the same tyme maystur Randolf, the gray ffrere, was 36  
taken in the yle of Gernesey, and was brought to the casteH of

<sup>1</sup> *gf* G.    <sup>2</sup> *hym* A.    *hym hym* G.    <sup>3</sup> *offryd poo* A.    *offryd* G.  
<sup>4</sup> *dide faste* A.    <sup>5</sup> *henreis wiff* A.    *Henryis* G.    <sup>6</sup> *by* A.

Chirbourne in Normandye, for treson that she<sup>1</sup> wrought ayens the Kyng.

¶ And at Wittesontyde the Kyng lay at Maunt with alle his  
4 lordis ; and there he hild his rialte and feste at that tyme amonge  
alle his pepuH. and tho was maystir Randulf the Grey ffrere, and  
his beaupere, brought fro the casteH of Cherborough to Maunte there  
the kyng lay ; and from thens the<sup>2</sup> ffrere Randulf was brought  
8 to London, and put in-to the Toure in prison, by comaundement of  
the Kyng. And so by processe longe aftur the persone of the  
Toure and this ffrere Randulf fillen in debate and stryffe with-  
ynne the Toure ward ; and there this persone smote this ffrere  
12 Randulf, and sloue hym ; and thus he made his ende of the world.

¶ And at this same feste of Wittesontide, the Kyng made two  
newe lordis<sup>3</sup> in Normandye : that on was the Capdowe of Burdeux,  
and he was made Erle of Langle ;<sup>4</sup> and Sir John Grey, Erle of  
16 Tankyrule.

¶ And in the same tyme come the Embassitours of Fraunce  
into Maunte, there the Kyng of Engeland lay, to haue a day of trete  
to the whiche trete the Kyng of Fraunce shuld come hym self  
20 and hys Quene, and Dame Katerene his doughtir, and the Duke  
of Burgoyne, with the othir counseile of Fraunce. And there the  
day and place was assignyd and take for bothe pertyes besyde this  
toun of Melange. And there was the feld rially apparaylid of  
24 tentis and payulownys on bothe sidis, bothe for Engelisshe and  
Frensshe ; and this fild was listid and palid alle rounde aboute in  
bothe sidis. ¶ And in the Frensshe side stode a pale dichid, for  
mistruste that they had of the Engelisshe pepuH,<sup>5</sup> and on bothe  
28 sidis serteyne men of armys weren assyngnyd for to kepe the fild,  
and in the myddis of this felde stode a payulowne rialle, with a  
large EguH gilte, for Kyng Henry of Engeland. ¶ And a tente  
stode aforn ayens it, for the Frensshe kyng. And in this  
32 payulown and tente, by ordynaunce made, shuld no pepuH come  
but tho that werne sworn on bothe sidis to the Counseile, vp  
peyne of dethe.

¶ And on the Engelisshe partye was ffriste, Henry the King of  
36 Engeland, and Thomas his brothir, the Duke of Clarence, and Sir  
Vmfray, his othir brothir, Duke of Gloucestre, and Sir Thomas  
Beauford, Duke of Exetir, and the nobuH Erle of the Marche, and

<sup>1</sup> he A.

<sup>2</sup> pis A.

<sup>3</sup> Erlis A.

<sup>4</sup> langvile A.

<sup>5</sup> And þe Englissh side was not but barrid A.

the Bisshop of Wynchestir, Sir Henry Beauford, the Kynges vncle, and othir Bisshoppis, and erlis, barony and lordis, and othir clergy,<sup>1</sup> knyghtis and squyeris, that weren assyngnyd to the nombre of this trete.

4

¶ And on the Frensshe partye ther shuld be the Frensshe Kyng; but he come not, for his infirmyte was come on hym, that he myght not come there at that tyme. ¶ But the Quene come, and Dame Kateryne hir doughtir, and the Duke of Burgoyne, and 8 xxvj ladyes in good aray, with othir lordis of the counseil of Fraunce. And vij dayes they tretid and they myght not accorde; and tho weren the<sup>2</sup> paunylons and the tentis taken vp and born away, and the ffield broken vp, and euery man went his wey.

12

¶ And tho the Kyng of Engeland, with alle<sup>3</sup> his lordis and all his pepu, turnyd ayen and come to Maunte. ¶ And thanne this Erle of Gascoigne toke his retenewe with othir Engelisshe men, and come be<sup>4</sup> nyght, and stale the toune of Pounteyse of the 16 Frensshe men, and drof hem oute; and so thei fled; and so the toune was wonne; and there-ynne was myche rychesse. ¶ And whanne the Kyng<sup>5</sup> herd this, he sent his brothir Thomas, the Duke of Clarence, with his pepu thidur to Pountese, and made 20 hym captayne there-of. And thanne he toke his pepu and issewid oute, and come to fore the Cite of paris with x. M<sup>h</sup>. men of armis;<sup>6</sup> and there they lay two dayes and two nyghtis, and no pepu proferid oute to hem; and tho they turnyd and went ayen to 24 Pounteyse.

¶ And thanne<sup>7</sup> the Duke of Burgoyne, seynge<sup>8</sup> that they myght not accorde with the Engelisshe party; tho the duke of Burgoyne and his counseile come to the Dolfyn, there he lay, to 28 trete with hym, to se and knowe how they myght beste voyde<sup>9</sup> the Kyng of Engeland with alle his pepu oute of the Rewme of Fraunce by theyre good counseil. ¶ And thanne the Dolfyn and his counseil tho answerid and seide, "like as he had brought,<sup>10</sup> he 32 shuld brynge hem oute:" and so they fille in altercacion and strif with-ynne hem self; and there they sloue the Duke of Burgoyne and othir lordis that come with hym, in her counseil chambre.

¶ And whanne tydynges come to the Frensshe kyng and to 36 his counseil, and to alle the Burgeysis of Paris, that the Duke of

<sup>1</sup> clergie & A.    <sup>2</sup> the A.    the the G.    <sup>3</sup> alle om. A.    <sup>4</sup> by A.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 144.    <sup>6</sup> of armis om. A.    <sup>7</sup> po A.    <sup>8</sup> seying pis A.

<sup>9</sup> beste voyde A.    beste G.    <sup>10</sup> brought hem in A.

Burgoyne was thus slayne and dede, and his othir ffellowship, thanne were they sory and yveH payde, and weren tho redles, and wiste not what to don. ¶ And thanne the Frensshe kyngis counseilH, 4 and the grete and worthiest Burgeysis of Parys token her counseilH with aH the countre aboute Parys, and come and tretid with the Kynge of Englonde and his lordis and grauntid hem her askynge, that Henry the Kynge of Engeland shuld haue dame Kateryne the 8 Frensshe Kynges doughtir to wif, with aH his othir askyngis, and the Kynge of Engeland toke his lordis and othir of his men, and made grete puryaunce and ordynaunce that he wold haue for his maryage.

¶ And so the Kynge wente into<sup>1</sup> Troys in<sup>2</sup> Champeyne there 12 they shold byn weddid; and thedur was Dame Kateryne brought with grete rialte; and there they were worthiliche welcomed and resseyued of aH the pepuH there. ¶ And there the Erchebisshop of Caunturburi, Sir Henry Chichele, and othir Engelisshe Bisshoppis 16 and Frensshe Bisshoppis diden this solempne seruyce there, and weddid hem togederis there by ordynaunce of God and holy chirche, with honoure and grete ioye. And there he made a rialle and a passynge worthi solempne feste to alle the pepuH that come, 20 the Monday nexte aftur the Trynyte day in the yere of his regne the vij<sup>e</sup>.

¶ And aftur this rialle and solempne weddlynge, the Kynge and the Quene, with her pepuH, come doune to Rone, and there they 24 dullid a longe tyme, and in the contre aboute Roone, tilH he sawe his tyme to come in-to Engeland with Dame Kateryne the Quene, his wif; and ordeynyd, or he come oute of Normandy, Thomas his brother, the Duke of Clarence, to be his leef-tenaunte of Nor- 28 mandye, and of alle othir londis that he had in that contre of Fraunce, and lefte hym pepuH and stuffe ynow to maynteyne and kepe his right that he had goten, vnto his ayencomynge, and byraught hym to God.

¶ And tho aftur the Kynge and the Quene come to Caleys, and so ouyr the see into Engeland, and Dame Katerine his Quene with hym. And they landid at Douyre in Kente; and there come a grete multitude of men of the contre aboute, and in goode aray on hors- 36 backe, and welcomyd hem with alle honoure and reuerence that thei myght, and so brought hem to the cite of Caunturbury; and there were thei<sup>3</sup> worthily welcomyd of alle the pepuH of alle the contre of Kent, and yoven vnto hir grete yeftis, and so come

<sup>1</sup> to A.

<sup>2</sup> in A. and G.

<sup>3</sup> þay weren A.

ridynge with hem thorough Kente, and brought the Kynge and the Quene to his maner of Eltham, and there restid hem awhile tyll they wold come to London.

¶ And the meyre and aldremen, with alle the commnalte of the Cite of London, lete ordeyne and make many<sup>1</sup> diuerse shewyngis and sightis thorough the high stretis in the Cite, with many othir presentis and yeftis, bothe<sup>2</sup> to Kynge and Quene at the comynge into the Cite. ¶ And that day that the Kynge and the Quene<sup>3</sup> remeuyd from the maner of Eltham, the Meyre and aldremen, and the communis of London, in good araye of white garmentis and rede hodyis or rede kappis,—and euery crafte, a dyuersite on her garnement to knowe euery crafte be<sup>4</sup> hym-self,—and aH on hors<sup>5</sup> 12 backe, with clarionys and aH maner of<sup>6</sup> lowde mynstrelsie, in honoure and comforte of the Kynge and of the Quene, and to the glorious and riaH sight of straungeris that come with hem ouyr from the see, and for the grete worship of the worthi Cite of<sup>7</sup> 16 London, the Meyre and his aldremen, with the worthi pepuH of the cite, the nombre of xxx M<sup>ti</sup>. men and moo, abyden and hound on her hors on the Blake-Hethe in Kente, abydyng the Kynge and the Quenys comynge. ¶ And tho, whanne they were come, they<sup>8</sup> 20 weren reseyuyd reuerently and worthyli, with alle humylite and obeysaunce of alle pepuH and men,<sup>9</sup> with<sup>10</sup> alle the melodye that they had, and so brought hem into the cite, and so to the Toure of London; and there the Kynge and the Quene restid hem. 24

And on the morow, aftur Quene Kateryne come fro the Toure to her coronacion to Westminster, and tho the Meyre and the<sup>11</sup> aldremen and alle the Commes of the cite,<sup>12</sup> that is for to seye, euery crafte in her beste clothyng, with alle her melodye and<sup>13</sup> 28 mynstralsie, went alle on ffote tho, and brought the Quene thorough the Cite. And there was don and shewid to hir alle the rialte of sightis that myght be don to her comforte and plesaunce, and euery strete hongid rychely<sup>14</sup> with riche clothis of gold and silke,<sup>15</sup> 32 and of velewettis and clothis of araas, the beste that myght be gotyn; and so the pepuH brought hir thorough the cite to Westminster, to the Kyngis paleys.

¶ And thanne the nexte day sewyng the Sondag aftur the<sup>16</sup> 36 feeste of Seynt Mathy apostiH in lente, Dame Kateryne the Quene

<sup>1</sup> many riall A.      <sup>2</sup> leaf 144, back.      <sup>3</sup> by A.

<sup>4</sup> of oper A.      <sup>5</sup> and men om. A.      <sup>6</sup> & A.      <sup>7</sup> and the om. A.

<sup>8</sup> of the cite om. A.      <sup>9</sup> richely hongid A.



was crounyd in the Abbey of Westeminster, with alle the grete and  
worthi Bisshoppis of this londe, with alle the solenpnite and rialte  
that myght be don and ordeynyd; and the ffeste holden in the  
4 paleis opyn to alle pepuH, straungeris and othir that wold come, of  
alle maner rialteis of metis and drynkys.

¶ And on the efter-euyne nexte sewynge, Thomas, the Duke of  
Clarence, tho issewid oute from the place there he lay, with a  
8 lytuH meyne, to knowe and se the place and grounde where the  
Dolfynnys pepuH, Armynackis and Scottis, had ordeynyd to mete  
and to fight with the Engelisshe men, and to yeue bataiH. ¶ And  
as the Duke of Clarence come with his folke by the watir of Leyre  
12 vpon this eftur euyne aforn seide, the Erle of Armynacke with  
the dolfynys meyne and his and a grete nombre of<sup>1</sup> Scottis  
mette with the Duke of Clarence and his meyne by this watir of  
Leyre; and there they foughten to-gederis; and at the laste there  
16 was the Duke of Clarence slayne, and othir moo with hym; and  
there was take prisoner the Erle of Huntynghdon and the Erle of  
Somersette and his brothir, and the Fytz-Watir, and othir moo.

¶ And aftur, the Bastard of Clarence come and gate his ffaderis  
20 body, and did so brynge it into Engeland, and so to the abbey of  
Criste-chirche of Caunturbury, and was there enterid and buryed  
besides Kynge [Henry] the iiij<sup>e</sup> his ffadir, on whos soule oure  
Lord God haue mercy! Amen!

24 ¶ And also in the same yere, betwene Cristemesse and Candil-  
masse, the toune of Milon was yolden to the Kynge; and all the  
cheueteynys, with the soudiourys, were taken, and led to the Cite  
of Paris in the croke of the mone, theymyght sey; for of hem ther  
28 scapid thens but a fewe on lyue. And sone aftur, Kynge Henry  
the vj. was born in the castell of Wyndesore, the day of seynt Ni-  
cholas the Bisshop, the yere of oure Lord Ihesu Criste .M<sup>ti</sup>. cccc. xxj.,  
whos godfaderis and godmodris at the fontstone weren these: sir  
32 Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestir, and Iohn, Duke of Bed-  
ford; and the Duchesse of Holond was his godmodir; and at<sup>2</sup> his  
-confirmacion the Erchebisshop of Caunterbury was his god ffadir.//

**How whanne Kynge Henry herd of his brotheris dethe, Thomas,  
36 the Duke <sup>3</sup>of Clarence, ordeynyd a newe retenewe, and  
wente ouyr the see in grete haste, & leid sege to Mewis in  
Bry, with his pepuH.//**

<sup>1</sup> of meyne G. of A.      <sup>2</sup> and G. and at A.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 145.

And in the vij. yere of Kynge Henryes regne the v<sup>th</sup>, come  
tydyngis in-to Engeland how that Thomas his brothir, the Duke  
of Clarence, was sleyne by the watir of Leyre, wherefore the Kynge  
was heuy and wrothe; and in aH the haste that he myght, he 4  
ordeynyd hym a newe retenewe of men of armys and archeris, with  
alle maner of othir stuffis that bylongid therto at aH maner nedis,  
and went ouyr the se with his pepuH, and come into Fraunce,  
and bysegid Mewis in Bry, a grete toune and a stronge, with a 8  
Castelle. And that Towne and the Castelle weren welle vitailid  
and eke mannyd; and grete strengthe they had with-ynne hem,  
and manly they deffendid hem, and kep[t]e Towne and CasteH  
longe tyme.<sup>1</sup>

12

¶ And in this tyme, while the Kynge hild his sege of Mewis yn  
Bry, ther come goode tydyngis oute of Engeland to the Kynge, how  
that Dame Kateryne his wif, the Quene, was dellyuyryd of a feyre  
sone, a lord and prynee, to<sup>2</sup> the Rewme ese, profite and worship, 16  
and gladnesse in hert, whiche with high<sup>3</sup> and grete worthynesse<sup>4</sup>  
was brought forthe, and cristenyd in his colage withynne his  
Castelle of Wyndesore. And of this worthi tydyngis the Kynge  
was glad, and thankyd God, and so diden alle his pepuH whaune 20  
they herd there-of: and that day of this worthi pryneis birthe  
was on Seynt Nycholas day in the yere of oure Lord God<sup>5</sup>  
.M<sup>th</sup>. CCCC. xxj. and the Regne of the Kynge the ix<sup>e</sup>. ¶ And aftur  
these good tydyngis, the Kynge, with alle his pepuH, busied sore 24  
to gete this towne and CasteH, bothe by watir and by londe and  
leid therto his grete Gounnys, Trepgettis and Engenys, and bete  
adowne the wallis in dyuers placis; and so at the laste they  
entrid yn with strengthe, and gate the Towne; and there was 28  
moche pepuH slayne and dede; and tho was the toune wonne and  
the casteH eke.// ¶ And there the Kynge toke many riche men  
prysoneris, and sent hem afturward into Engeland.

¶ And thanne the Kynge sent aftur the Quene, and aftur IoHn 32  
his brothir, the Duke of Bedford, and that they shuld brynge with  
hem more stuffe of pepuH in all haste. And anon as these<sup>6</sup> tydyngis  
come to, the Quene Kateryne went to Hampton, and the Duke of  
Bedford also, with a feyre meyne, and wente to Shippe, and come 36  
ouyr the se, and landid at Harefleete in Normandye the vij. day of

<sup>1</sup> tyme for all her enemyes A.<sup>2</sup> to all A.<sup>3</sup> hert whiche and with high G. hert with high A.<sup>4</sup> worthynesse & solempnyte A.<sup>5</sup> God om. A.<sup>6</sup> these om. A.

May in saufte, and alle her pepuH,—thankyd be God!—and in alle  
haste reden forthe vp in the londe tille thei come there as the  
Kynge was.// ¶ And sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, his othir  
4 brothir, was tho made the Kyngis Lefetenaunte of Engeland in his  
absence, to kepe and gouerne the Rewme in alle degreis, in sauf-  
ynge of the pepuH and of the lond, that God maynten and kepe  
in good pees and reste, with good loue and charite to endure!  
8 Amen! //

¶ And in the lettur ende of the monythe of AprieH, in the .x.  
yere of Kynge Henry the V. is regne, was the toune and casteH of  
Mewis in Biri gotyn and wonne by<sup>1</sup> grete strengthe, by the Kynge  
12 and his pepuH, oute of the Frensshe mennys hondis. ¶ And in the  
firste day of IuyH the same yere, the Kynge sent ouyr the see his  
prisoneris that he had take at Mewis in Bry, the ffuH nombre of  
xxviiij. personys; and they weren brought in-to Engeland, and  
16 londid at Hampton; and aH his prisoneris weren caryed in cartis  
to London, and so brought into the Toure of London, to kepe hem  
there-ynne saufly.//

¶ And tho anon the Kynge remouyd from Mewis in Bry, and  
20 come ayen to Parys. And with ynne awhile aftur, the Kynge  
beganne to waxe sore sike, and tho remouyd hym to<sup>2</sup> haue the betir  
Eyre and hele of body; and his sykenesse come to hym so sore pat<sup>3</sup>  
he myght not welle endure it. ¶ And so he sent aftur his lordis  
24 that weren there, and his counsaill, and deuysid his wille, and  
made his testament fuH, and sette his executoris, and deuysid his  
tresoure and his Iewellis to ben solde, and to pay<sup>4</sup> his dettis, as  
weH to his sowdyouris as to othir dettouris.//<sup>5</sup> ¶ And he ordeynyd  
28 Iohn, the Duke of Beedford, his brothir, to byn there Regent  
Gouernoure of Fraunce and of Normandie, vnto good gouernaunce  
and profite vnto Henry his<sup>6</sup> sone, and good kepynge in reste and  
pees of his pepuH there, vnto the tyme the good Counseill of Enge-  
32 lond myght dresse it and amende it, to set it in pessabuH poynte  
and reste.// ¶ And he comyttid thanne<sup>7</sup> the kepynge of Henry,  
his yonge sone, to Syr Henry Beauford his vnle, the Bisshop of  
Wynchestire, and to Sir Thomas Beauford, his othir vnle, Duke  
36 of Exetre, and<sup>8</sup> charged hem bothe to his good gouernaunce and

<sup>1</sup> with A.    <sup>2</sup> forto A.    <sup>3</sup> hym sore G.    him so sore pat A.

<sup>4</sup> to ben and to pay G.    to ben solde to pais A.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 145, back.

<sup>6</sup> his yong A.    <sup>7</sup> And þane he comyttid A.

<sup>8</sup> & charged hem bothe to hie gouernaunce and kepyng A.

kepyng in his tendir age, for alle the louys that euyr were  
betwene hem, that no preindise nor wronge were do to hym  
thorough noo fals couetous counseil nor nede.// ¶ And tho the  
Kynge disposid hym to Godwardis, and toke aH his rightis of holy 4  
chirche, and toke his leue of aH his ffre[n]dis, and comendid his  
soule to God, and deid, the xxix<sup>1</sup> of Auguste in the x. yere of his  
regne: on whos soule God haue mercy! amen! //

¶ And thanne was his body enbawmyd and dight with riche 8  
Spicerie and oynementis, and closid in shire clothe, and closid faste  
in a cheste; and he was cariid doune to Rone, and there he had his  
dirige and his messes don for hym, with aH the moste solempnite  
that myght byn ordeynyd and doon in holy chirche; and from 12  
thens he was brought doune by londe to Caleis. And with the  
Erchebisshop of Caunturbury<sup>2</sup> come the Quene of Engeland his  
wif, Dame Kateryne, and many othir grete lordis, and knyghtis  
and Squyeris, and brought the body ouyr the see into Engeland, 16  
and come vp at Douir, and so to Caunturbury, and so thorough  
Kente to London.//

¶ And thanne<sup>3</sup> the Meyre and aldremen, with aH the Craftis of  
London, weren clothid in blacke, abydyng the body of the kynge 20  
on the Blaque-Hethe in Kente; and so come down to seint Thomas  
Waterynge, withoute<sup>4</sup> Songthwarke, and there met aH the religious  
pepuH with pe<sup>5</sup> body, prystis and othir, and brought the cors to  
London, and so thorough the Cite to Seint Poulis. And there was 24  
Dirige don ouyr euyn, and messe of Requyem on the morowe, and  
whanne the seruyce was down at aftur mete, bothe the lordis and  
knyghtis and othir, with aH the Communes of the Cite of London,  
brought hym from Seint Poulis to Westminster, and there was his 28  
Dirige don ouyr euyn, and messe on the moroughe of Requyem,<sup>6</sup>  
with aH the Bisshoppis; and there was he burye[d] by Seint  
Edwardis Shryne, the .vij<sup>c</sup> day of the monythe of Nouembre, in  
the yere of oure Lorde Ihesu eriste, M<sup>li</sup>. CCCC. xxij.// 32

¶ And yn that same yere it byfeH so that thoroughoute aH  
Engeland was a grete yere of ffrute. And in that same yere deiden  
the moste partye of alle the lory treis thorough aH Engeland.//

<sup>1</sup> xxix day A.      <sup>2</sup> with his herce A.      <sup>3</sup> thanne *om.* A.

<sup>4</sup> withoute *withoute* A.      <sup>5</sup> the pe G.

<sup>6</sup> messe of Requiem on pe morowe A.

How aftur the dethe of Kynge Henry the v<sup>e</sup>, Regnyd his sone  
Kynge Henry the vj<sup>e</sup>, and was borne at the CasteH of  
Wyndesore.//

4 **A**Nd aftur the dethe of Kynge Henry the v ÷, Regnyd Henry  
his sone, that was<sup>1</sup> borne in Wyndesore, that men callid  
Kynge Henry the vj<sup>e</sup>. And for his tendir and yonge age, Henry  
his ffadir comyttid hym to the kepyng of Sir Henry Beauford,  
8 Bisshop of Wynchestre, and to Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of  
Exetre, bothe his bele vnclys; and the kepyng of Fraunce and  
Normandie to Iohn the Duke of Bedford, to ben regent and  
gouvernoure of bothe there, till that Henry, his yonge sone, by  
12 his good counseile wold set it in bettur gouvernaunce.// ¶ And  
the kepyng of Engeland to sir Vmfray, the Duke of Gloucestre,  
to ben Proptectour and deffendour of the Rewme till that Henry  
his yonge sone, by alle the good counseile of Engeland, wold set  
16 and put it<sup>2</sup> into bettur gouvernaunce, and to moste profite of<sup>3</sup> the  
Kynge and of the Rewme.

¶ And in the seconde yere of Kynge Henry the vj ÷ Sir  
Iohn Mortymere, knyght, brake pryson oute of the Toure of  
20 London, and was take ayen vpon the Toure-wharf; and there he  
was foule woundid and bete, and brought on the morow to  
Westeminster byforn the Kyngis Iusticis; and there for his treson  
Iuggid<sup>4</sup> to byn brought ayen to the Toure of London, and there  
24 leide vpon an<sup>5</sup> hurduH, and so drawe thoroughe the Cite to  
Tibourne, and there<sup>6</sup> hongid, and his hed smeton of, and sette  
on London Brigge; and thus endid he his lif: on whos soule  
God haue merci! //

28 ¶ And in the iij<sup>e</sup> yere of Kynge Henryis Regne, Sir Edmonde  
Mortymere, Erle of the Marche, wente oute of Engeland into  
Wallis, and so ouyr into Irlond, to se his londis and lordshippis  
there, And anon withynne a lituH processe of tyme there, he deid  
32 in Irlond.

And also in the same yere Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre,  
the Kyngis vncle, and the Duches of Holond, his wif, went ouer  
the see oute of Engeland into Henaud, for to take there possession  
36 of his wifis heritage of lordshippis and londis. ¶ Wherefore<sup>7</sup>  
thei were worshipfully welcomyd and resseyuyd for chief lorde

<sup>1</sup> that was *om.* A.    <sup>2</sup> put G.    put it A.    <sup>3</sup> to G.    of A.  
<sup>4</sup> Iuggid to be deth A.    <sup>5</sup> and G.    <sup>6</sup> leaf 146.    <sup>7</sup> where A.

and lady of the lond. But not longe aftur, hit happid so that he was fayne to retourne ayen into Engeland, and lefte his lady byhynd hym, with aH the tresoure that he<sup>1</sup> brought oute of Engeland with hym, in a toune that me callid Mouns in Henland, 4 the whiche was sworn to hym to be goode and trewe, and to kepe this lady in sauf ward till he come ayen to here. But at the laste thei weren fals, for thei delynyryd the lady to the Duke of Burgoyne; and he sent hir<sup>2</sup> to the cite of Gaunte yn Flaunderis, 8 to be kepte there.// ¶ But, as God wold, in a shorte tyme aftur she ascaped thens in mannys clothynge, and come to a toune of her owne in Selande, that is callid Seryse, and fro thens she went to a toune of her owne in Holand, that is callid Tragowe, where, 12 with help of her ffryndis that there were, she withstode the Duke of Burgoyne and alle his malice.//

¶ And in the iiij<sup>e</sup> yere of Kynge Henryis regne the vj<sup>e</sup>, there aros a grete debate<sup>3</sup> betwene Sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, 16 and Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestir; and this Henry<sup>4</sup> bare the heuy herte ayens the pepuH of the Cite of <sup>5</sup>London; And pis debate bygan on þe day of þe Meyris tidynge of London,<sup>5</sup> whanne thei come to Westminster paleis; and the Meyre of London 20 that tyme me callid Iohn Couentre, mercer. And on the nexte morow folowyng, the Bisshop of Wynchestre hadde gaderyd a grete pepull in Soughthewerke, of men of armys and archeris; and they of the Cite kept tho strongly London Brygge-gate with men of 24 armys [&] archeris, that no man myght<sup>6</sup> in, nothir oute, for to kepe the pees in bothe partyes. ¶ And anon, vpon viij. of the klokke in the mornynge, alle the Cite was vp with-her wepyn, and shette in her howsis, and drewe hem downward to Temyse- 28 side, and wold haue apassid ouyr the watir, forto haue taken the Bisshop. ¶ But the Erchebisshop of Caunturbury, Sir Henry Chichele, and the Bisshop of Bathe, Sir Iohn of Stafford, and the Prynce of Portyngale—that in the same tyme were in the Cite of 32 London—went betwene hem and the Cite, that aH was cessid and set in reste by none; <sup>7</sup> blessid be <sup>8</sup> God! //

¶ And in the same yere, the .x. day next aftur that Iohn the Duke of Bedford, and his lady, his wiff, that was the Dukis 36

<sup>1</sup> he þo A.    <sup>2</sup> hir þo A.    <sup>3</sup> debate & dissencion A.

<sup>4</sup> this sir henry A.

<sup>5-5</sup> London And pis debate bygan on the day of þe Meyris tidynge of London A. om. G.

<sup>6</sup> myght nor A.    <sup>7</sup> noone y A.    <sup>8</sup> by G. be A.

sustur of Burgoyne, come out of Fraunce ouyr the see into Engeland, to here and to<sup>1</sup> se the welfare of oure Kynge, and to se also the gouernaunce of this Rewme. and whanne he come nygh London, the Meyre and Aldremen, and many crafty men of the Cite, riden ayens the Duke and the Duchesse, and welcomyd hem, and brought hem into the Cite. ¶ And at the Bisshoppis place of Dereham, there thei were herborowid; and with hem tho come the Bisshop of Wynchestre ridynge thorough London, to right grete greuance of the pepuH, saue for the displeaunce and presence of the Duke.

¶ And in the .v. yere of Kynge Henry the vj<sup>e</sup>, anon aftur the Feste of Seint Hillary, the Kynge held his parlement at the toune of Leycestre. And at that parlement Sir Vmfray, the Duke of Gloucestre, and Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestre, weren<sup>2</sup> made at on, and accordid, by the Kynge and the Duke of Bedford, and othir lordis that weren there presente.// ¶ And in that same parlement the kynge made two Dukis: my Lord Sir Richardis<sup>3</sup> sone of Caumbrigge, Duke of Yorke, and Sir Iohn<sup>4</sup> of Mombray, Erle MarchaH, Duke of Northeffolke, and there the kynge made also many knyghtis of the Bathe.

¶ And in this same yere deid Sir Thomas Beauford, Duke of Exetur, the kyngis beH vncler, in a place there he lay in the toune of Grenewiche, iiij. myle oute of London; and thanne he was brought into London to Seint Poulis, and there he had Dirige and messe; and from thens thei caried hym to Seint Edmondisbury; and there he was worthili enterid and buryid in Cristemesse woke in the yere of oure Lord Ihesu criste, M<sup>th</sup>. CCCC. xxvj: on whos soule God haue mercy! amen! //

¶ And in the same yere, aboute Shroftide, Iohn, the Duke of Bedford, and his lady the Duchesse, passid ouyr the [see] to Caleis. And a lituH byforne [they] passid ouyr the see to Caleis, Henry the Bisshop of Winchestre, and vpon oure lady day<sup>5</sup> the Anunciacion, the yere of Grace M<sup>th</sup>. CCCC. xxvij, the Bisshop of Wynchestre was made CardynaH in Seint Marye Chirche in Caleis fuH solempnely; where weren the same tyme the Duke of Bedford, Regent of Fraunce, and his duchesse.// ¶ And byforne the messe was bygonne, whiche the Bisshop of Wynchestre shold do, tho the Popis cosyn brought the Cardynallis hatte, and with

<sup>1</sup> to om. A.    <sup>2</sup> wer pen A.    <sup>3</sup> Richard pe Erlis A.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 146, back.    <sup>5</sup> lady G. lady day A.

grete reuerence he set it vpon the high auter, and there it stode  
 aH the messe tyme.// ¶ And whanne the Bisshop had don his<sup>1</sup>  
 messe and wa[s] onreuersid, thanne was don on the Bisshop an  
 abbite in maner of a ffreris Cope of fyne Scarlet furrid with purid 4  
 werke; and whanne he was thus arayid, he knelid there vpon his  
 kneys beform the high auter; and there the Popis bullis weren  
 radde to hym.// ¶ And the firste buH was his charge of his  
 dyngnyte of Cardynalship; and the seconde buH was that he 8  
 shuld haue the reioysynge of alle the Benefisis SpīrituaH and  
 TemperaH that he hathe in Engelond. And whanne this was don,  
 the Duke of Bedford, Regent of Fraunce, went vp to the high  
 auter, and toke the high Cardinallis hatte, and set it vpon the 12  
 Bisshoppis hed of Wynchestre; and he bowid and obeyid the  
 Bisshop, and toke hym byfore hym.

¶ And in the vj. yere of Kynge Henryis Regne the vj.<sup>e</sup>, went  
 the Erle of Salusbury, with a grete retenewe of men of armys and 16  
 archeris, by comaundement of the Kynge and of alle the Counseile  
 of Engelond, & made hym the Leftenaunt or alle the partyes of  
 Fraunce and of Normandy, forto distroye the Kynges enemyes,  
 and to chastice the rebellis in the<sup>2</sup> partyes by his strengthe, myght 20  
 and power.// ¶ And so he depertid, and toke his leue oute of  
 London, with aH his pepuH and ordynauncis, the morow aftur  
 Mydsomyr Day, in the yere aboue seid, and come ouyr the see  
 with alle his pepuH in sanfte; thankid be God in aH his yeftis! 24  
 and anon as he was come into Fraunce, he set sore on the Frensshe  
 men that weren the kyngis Enemyes, and slowe and destroyid  
 many of hem, and toke vilagis, Tounys and castelles, and made  
 hem be suoren to the Kynge of Engelond. And afturward he 28  
 leid sege to the toun of Orlyauunce; and that sege endurid longe  
 tyme, for the toun of Orliaunce was so stronge, and well ymannyd  
 and vitailid, that it myght not be goten for no crafte of werre that  
 was don therto; where[of] he was wond[er] heuy and wroth, for 32  
 he myght note spede of his purpos.// ¶ And tho at the<sup>3</sup> laste, as  
 he was busi to sete and loke vpon his ordynauncis, forto gete it  
 yf he myght, a fals thef, a traitour withynne the toun, shotte a  
 Gonne, and the stone smot this good Erle of Salusbury, that he was 36  
 dede thorough the stroke; wherefore was made grete doole<sup>4</sup> and  
 sorow for his dethe longe tyme afturward, for the grete doughtynesse

<sup>1</sup> pe A.<sup>2</sup> po A.<sup>3</sup> the om. A.<sup>4</sup> grete G. grete doole A.



and manhode that was founde in hym, and in his gouernaunce at aH tymes. And thanne was his body<sup>1</sup> brought ouyr the see into Engeland, and his body was caryid and leid amonge his 4 aunseteris there as thei byn buryid of holde tyme: on whos soule oure God<sup>2</sup> haue merey! Amen!

¶ And also in this same yere fro the begynnynge of the monythe of AppryeH into the feste of AH-Haloue, was so grete 8 haboundance of Reyne, where-thorough not only heigh was destroyed, but also aH maner of cornys, for it reynyd almoste euery othir day, mo<sup>3</sup>re or lesse, durynge the tyme aforeseid.

¶ And forthirmore, durynge the sege of Orliaunce, at the 12 begynnynge of Lenton nexte ffolowyng, vij. M<sup>th</sup>. of Frensshe men and moo, with many othir Scottis, fiH vpon oure men as they went toward the Toune with vitaiH that is callid 'yamuyge,' where Sir John Steward of Scotlond and his brothir, with moo thanne 16 vij. c. Scottis and they weren gouernouris they lighten on ffoote, and they weren, euery modir sone, slayne by Sir John Folstalff and Sir Thomas Rampston, and othir Capitaynys of oure side, the whiche had not passynge .v. c. of flightynge men with hem at aH, 20 with Carteris and aH othir.// ¶ But Charlis of Burgoyne and the Bastard of Orliaunce, with aH the Frensshe men sittynge on hors baeke and seyng this Gouernaunce, trussid hir paeke and went her wey. Also a lituH beforne Witsontide nexte folowyng, was 24 the foreseide sege of Orliaunce broken vp by the Duke of Launsom and his power; and alle othir lordis and Capitaynys of the same sege weren disparkelid, that is so seye, the Erle of Suffolke and his brothir, and the Lord Talbot and the Lord Skalis, with many 28 moo of Engelisshe pepuH, the whiche sone afture weren taken euerychone, at grete myschief, prysoneres.

¶ And in the vij. yere of Kynge Henry the vj<sup>e</sup> the viij day of Nouembre, the Duke of Norfolke, with many gentiH men of 32 knyghtis and Squyeris and yemen, token a barge at Seint Mari Ouereyis Brygge, bitwene iiij. and .v. of the klokke ayens nyght; and they purposid tho to passe thorough London Brigge, where the foreseide barge, thorough mysgouernaunce of sterage, fiH vpon 36 the pilis thorough mysgouernaunce, and ouyrwelfid, the whiche was cause of distruccion of moche pepuH thereynne, that was the more rowthe.// ¶ But as God wold, the Duke hym-self, and .ij.

<sup>1</sup> body y A.<sup>2</sup> oure lord A.<sup>3</sup> leaf 147.

or .iij. othir gentiH men, tho seyyng that myschief, lept vpon the pilis, and so thei weren sau'd thorough help of hem that weren aboute the brygge, wyth castyng doune of ropis, blessid be God!

¶ And in this same yere, the firste day of the monith of 4 Septembre, Sir Henry Beauford, Bisshop of Wynchestre and beH-vnele to the Kyng, come to London fro the Pope of Rome. CardynaHes, and alle the prestis and religious of<sup>1</sup> London, and ney3 London, went ayens hym yn prosession withoute the Cite, 8 and there they met with hym, and did hym aH the<sup>2</sup> honour and reuerence as longith for<sup>3</sup> sicke estate to ben don.// ¶ And the Meyre and Aldremen, with many worthi craftis of London, met with hym on the Blake-Hethe in Kent; and there thei welcomyd 12 hym, and did hym reuerence and worship, and brought hym porugh pe Cite,<sup>4</sup> and so to Charinge Crosse and there the Meyre and the men of London toke her leue of hym, and he rode forthe to the casteH of Wyndesore to the Kyng. 16

¶ And in the same yere, at the ffeste of Mydsomyr, Sir Henry Beauford, CardynaH, and Bisshop of Wynchestir, went<sup>5</sup> ouyr the see into Fraunce for the Kyngis nedis; and Sir John Radelif, knyght, went ouyr the se that same tyme, with a grete compeny of 20 men of armis and archeris, to helpe and to strengthe John, the Duke of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce and of Normandie, and the Engelisshe pepuH that weren lefte there in the right of the Kyng of Engeland. 24

¶ And in the<sup>6</sup> same yere was Henry Barton, Meyre of London. And tho was, thoroughoute Engeland, grete scarste of corne and of othir vitaiH, for oxen and shipe, deiden stronglyche, and a bussheH whete was at xx d<sup>o</sup>. longe tyme: blessid be God in 28 alle his yeftis of amendement!

¶ And in the viij yere of Kyng Henryis regne the vj<sup>e</sup>; was hold a grete parlement at Westem<sup>in</sup>ster; and that beganne the morow aftur Michelmesse-Day, and it endurid tille Shroftid. And 32 on Seint Lethenardis day byforn Cristemesse, and that was on the Sonday (and Sonday went by lettur A. that yere,) the Kyng was crownyd at Westem<sup>in</sup>ster, with honoure, of Henry Chichele, Erchebisshop of Caunturbury, and with moo othir Bisshoppis, with 36 alle the solempnite that myght be made and doon. ¶ And in<sup>7</sup> the

<sup>1</sup> in A.      <sup>2</sup> the om. A.      <sup>3</sup> to A.

<sup>4</sup> hym G.      hym porugh pe Cite A.      <sup>5</sup> om. G.      went A.

<sup>6</sup> þis A.      <sup>7</sup> in om. A.

same day, come fro byyonde the see to his coronacion and feste,  
 Sir Henry Beauford, CardynaH, and Bisshop of Winchesterre, <sup>1</sup>and  
 the Prynce of Portyngale with a feyre meyne of pepuH, in reuerence  
 4 and worship of the Kyng; and byforne that weren come and  
 abedyn at London a bisshop of Fraunce, and serteyn knyghtis and  
 squyeris with her meyne, to se that rialte, and the Coronacions  
 of the kyng. <sup>2</sup>And the even bifore þe coronacion, þe kyng<sup>2</sup> lete  
 8 make xxxvj. Knyghtis of the Bathe, withynne the Toure of  
 London. ¶ And in the same [time] in<sup>3</sup> Cristemesse wike, bi  
 ordynaunce and comaundement of the Kyng and of his CounseH,  
 the Bastard of Clarence and Sir Iohn Kyzelei, knyght, and moo  
 12 oþer knyghtis and squyeris pat were made peti capteynes, with  
 men of armes ande archeris, the nombre of a M<sup>ti</sup> personys and moo,  
 shippiden at dyuerse portes in Kente and in Southesex, and seilid  
 ouyr into Normandie forto helpe and strengthe the Duke of  
 16 Bedford, Regent of Fraunce and of Normandie, and in releuyng  
 and comfortyng of aH the Kynges pepull that haue eny keypyng  
 of Ceteis, townys, Castelles, or eny holdis tha[t] bilongen to the  
 Kyng in the parties of Fraunce and of <sup>4</sup> Normandie: the whiche,  
 20 Criste maynteyne and kepe, for his high mercy!

¶ And in this same yere was a<sup>5</sup> bataiH doon in Smythfield, at  
 London, the Tewisday the xxiiij. day of Januare, betwene two men  
 of the toune of Feuyrisham in Kente: that on me callid maistir  
 24 John Vpton, notarye, that was the appellaunte; and that othir,  
 John of Downe, JentiHman, the deflandaunte. And thei two  
 ffloughten togederis, armyd at aH poyntis, to the vtterist; but the  
 Kyng, of his riaH power and grete grace, kryd 'pees,' and toke it  
 28 vp in his hand, and yaf hem bothe fre grace: and this was the  
 cause of her bataiH, for this Maistur John Vpton put-of<sup>6</sup> on John  
 of<sup>7</sup> Downe, that he and othir moo of his compeny ymagenid and  
 purposid the Kyngis dethe at the day and tyme of his coronacion:  
 32 whom God kept and saue from aH mysauenturis. Amen!

¶ And in the same yere, the xxvij. day of Januare, Sir Henry  
 Beauford, CardinaH, and Bisshop of Wynchestre, went ouyr the  
 see to Caleis, and so to Bryggis in Flaundris, in embassitrie for  
 36 Henry, Kyng of Engeland and of Fraunce, vnto the Duke of  
 Burgoyne, and also to se the mariage betwene the Duke of

<sup>1</sup> leaf 147, back.

<sup>2-2</sup> And the even bifore þe coronacion þe kyng A. om. G. <sup>3</sup> in þe A.

<sup>4</sup> for G. of A. <sup>5</sup> a ki G. a A. <sup>6</sup> of om. A. <sup>7</sup> o A.

Burgoyne and the Kyng of Portyngalis doughtir, that is cosyn to the Kyng of Engeland.

¶ And in the same yere and day, Thomas of Borough, and Gray, two esquieris, by ordynaunce and comaundement of the Kyng and of his Counseil, had a grete retenewe of pepul, of men of armys and archeris, that weren sent ouyr the see into Fraunce, to the Duke of Bedford, Regent and Gouvernoure of the parties of Fraunce and Normundie, in releuyng and helpynge and strength-  
ing of the Kyngis pepul in oure liege lordis right, Kyng<sup>1</sup> of<sup>2</sup> Engeland and of Fraunce.

¶ How that Kyng Henry the vj<sup>e</sup> went ouyr the see into Fraunce, the viij yere of his regne; and of the whiche  
[of] Fraunce that was callid the 'Pushe': how she was take prysonere.

And in the viij. yere of Kyng<sup>3</sup> [Henry the sixt] his Regne, on Seint Mathi day the Apostul, and that was on the Fryday, the 16 xxiiij. day of Feuyrere in the yere abone seid, Kyng Henry the vj<sup>e</sup>, aftur his coronacion at Westem<sup>in</sup>ster, and ende of his parlement holden the same tyme at Westem<sup>in</sup>ster, that the Kyng, by counseil and ordynaunce of al the lordis and commu[n]es of Engeland, that  
the Kyng shuld wende ouyr the see into Fraunce, to resseyue<sup>4</sup> his heritage, and bere the Crowne as rightfu<sup>l</sup> lord and kyng of the londe.// ¶ And the Kyng, by his good and wise counseil, ordeynyd and made his vncle Sir Vmfrey, the Duke of Gloucestre, 24 Leftenaunte of Engeland aftur his passage ouyr the see, for to gouerne and kepe the londe ayen his enemyes of al partyis, and to se that right and lawe be mayntenyd in alle degreis, in sauacion of his pepul and good kepyng of his Rewme. 28

¶ And on Seint Mathi day the<sup>5</sup> Appostil, as is aforne seide, the Kyng come fro Westem<sup>in</sup>ster to London, with his lordis and his pepul, and come to Seint Poulis, and there of<sup>6</sup>frid, and toke his hors, and rode thorough the Cite, and toke his leue of al the  
Commualte of London; and so he rode to his maner of Eltham in Kente, and there he duellid alle the Lenton ti<sup>l</sup> it was ayens Palme Sonday, and thanne he rode to Caunturbury, and abode there till estur was passid, ti<sup>l</sup> his retenewe was made and ordeynyd, that  
shuld gon and passe ouyr the see with hym into Fraunce. 36

<sup>1</sup> kyng om. A.      <sup>2</sup> & A.      <sup>3</sup> kyng om. A.      <sup>4</sup> resseyue & A.

<sup>5</sup> the om. A.      <sup>6</sup> leaf 148.

¶ And thann the Kyng come to Douyre, and on Seint Georges  
eun, withynne nyght, the wethur and wynde was feyre and  
menabuH, and the Kyng was brought to ship withoute Douyre in  
4 the roode.// ¶ And whanne tyde of passage come, thei toke the  
see, and passid ouyr, and come to Caleis, and landid there in the  
mornyng at vij. of the clocke in Seint Georgis Day; and that was  
on the Sunday; and the domynyeaH lettur went<sup>1</sup> by . A.// ¶ And  
8 whanne he was landid, the Kyng went to the Castell of Caleis;  
and there he abode till aH his retenewe and ordynaunce were come  
ouyr the see. And withynn iij. wikis aftur Estur aforne seid, aH  
his pepuH, with alle his<sup>2</sup> ordynauncis, weren come ouyr to the  
12 Kyng.// ¶ And the Kyng anon aftur, bi his CounseiH, sent  
dynerse lordis,<sup>3</sup> knyghtis and capitainys, with her men of armys  
and archeris and ordynauncis, to dyuers tounys, CasteHes and  
Garnysonys of his in Fraunce and in Normandie, for kepyng and  
16 strengthyng of his liege pepuH, and kepyng of his tituH and  
right.

¶ And in the same yere, the xv. day of May, ther was made a  
Journey in Fraunce bisidis the toune of Compyne; and at that  
20 Journey were slayn of the Frensshe men, Armynakkis and Scottis  
the nombre of .vij. c. of good mennys bodyes; and there were take  
also of the<sup>4</sup> Frensshe<sup>5</sup> and of her compeny, many Cote armuris.  
And at that same Journey was take the wicche of Fraunce that was  
24 callid th[e] ‘PussheH’; and she was take alle armyd as a man of  
armys; and by her<sup>6</sup> crafte of sorserie alle the Frensshe men and  
her compeny trystid for to haue ouyrcome alle the Engelisshe  
pepuH. But God was lord and maistir of that victorie and  
28 scomfiture, and so she was take, and brought and kept in hold bi  
the Kyng and his counseiH aH tymes at his comaundement and  
wille.

¶ And at that Journey, of Englysshe men weren Capitaynys, Sir  
32 John Monuntegomere and Sir John Steward, knyghtis of the  
Kyngis houshold, with her retenewe. ¶ And there was Sir John  
Mountegomere smyte his arme vn two; and Sir John Steward was  
shotte unto the thye with a quareH, and yet God sent hem good  
36 hele and welfare, and Scomfiture of aH her enemyes: blessid be  
God!

<sup>1</sup> wente þat tyme A.

<sup>2</sup> þe A.

<sup>3</sup> dynerse G. diuerse lordis A.

<sup>4</sup> þese A.

<sup>5</sup> ffrensshe men A.

<sup>6</sup> her & by hire A.

## APPENDIX D.

ADDITIONAL MATTER FOR THE PERIOD 1420-28.

[*MS. Hh. 6. 9, University Library, Cambridge.*]

And pis was doon þe Monday next aftir the Trinity Sondag, In the yere of *grace* M<sup>i</sup> IIII<sup>e</sup> XX<sup>ti</sup>. And anone aftir this mariage was done, the Kyng hym-self [Henry V], with his English lordes and Retenue, And þe Duke of Burgoigne with many grete lordes 4 of Fraunce, with his strength and gouernance of people, leyde sege to dyuers Citees townes & castelles which wer' holden of the Dolphynne, with strength of his meyney, And of the Armenakkis and Scottis. And the Kyng with his people gat theme, and had the 8 victorie of his enemyes.

And in this same yere, And in þe yere of *grace* a M<sup>i</sup> IIII<sup>e</sup> XX<sup>ti</sup>, by-twene Cristemesse and Candilmasse, the Towne of Milloyne was yolden vp to the Kynge; And all þe Chiftains, with þe Souleours, 12 were take and ledde to þe Cite of Parys, 'in þe Croke of þe mone' þei may say for theme; ffor þer escapede fro thens of þeme but a fewe on lyue, for þei of Paris did theme to dethe.

Willelmus Cambrigge,	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Johannes Wellis,} \\ \text{Johannes Botiller,} \end{array} \right\}$	vic' VIII <sup>o</sup> [A.D. 1420-21].	16
M[ayor]			

And in pis same yere [1 Hen. VI] þe Wednysday, þe XXI day of Octobre, in þe first yere of Kyng Henry þe VI, at þe houre 20 betwene VI & VII in þe mornyng, died Charles, þe French Kynge, In his Inne of saint Paules with-Inne þe Cite of Paris, And is buried in þe chirehe of Saint Denyse withoute þe cite of Paris: On whos soule, God haue mercie! Amen! 24

And in pis same yere, in þe moneth of Februarie, James Stewarde, Kyng of Scottes, spoused Dame Joan, the Duchesse Doughter of Clarence, of hir first housbond, Erl of Somersette, in þe church of Saint Marie Overey in Suthwerk. 28

And in pis same yere, Maister William Tailour, clerk of Oxenforde, was a-fore the clergie at Saint Paules in London, And þer

he was convicte in heresie; and aftir, by Temporall lawe he was brought into Smythfelde, & there was he brent for his heresie.

And in pis same yere, þe XVII day of Auguste, was done the  
 4 bataill of Vernoun in Perche, betwene the Duk of Bedforde, þan  
 Regent of Fraunce, & þe Armenakkis *with* Scottes; but, thanked  
 be God! the victorie fell to þe Englishmen, for *per* were slain of our  
 aduersaries the Erle of Bougham, þe Erle Douglas, þe Erle of Morre,  
 8 þe Erle of Tonnare, þe Erle of Vendoun, the Vicounte of Narbone  
 (þat traiterously slough the Duke of Burgoine knelyng be-fore the  
 Dolphyn of Fraunce at þe towne of Monstrall,) & mony moo, þe  
 nombre of X M<sup>i</sup> moo. But þe moste vengeance fell vpon þe  
 12 proude Scottes, for thei went to Dog-wash the same day, mo than  
 XVII<sup>e</sup> of cote Armoures of these proude Scottes; So that they  
 may say wele "In the croke of þe mone went thei thidre warde,  
 And in the wilde wanyende come þei homewarde."

16 William Crownes, M[ayor] Nicholas James A<sup>o</sup> II. [A.D.  
 Thomas Wandefford 1423-4.]

And in this same tyme the Kynge [Hen. VI], of two Erles  
 made two Dukes: þe Erle of Cambridge he made the Duke of  
 20 Yorke, & þe Erle Marshall Henaud, þe Duke of Northefolke.

And in pis same yere was Shedeswik draw and hangede &  
 quartered at Tiborne, & his hede smyten of & sett vpon London  
 Brigge, & his quartires vnto dyuers yatis of London, for his treason.

24 And whilles þe Duke of Bedforde was here in Englande, þe Erle  
 of Warrewik was made Lientenant of Fraunce & Normandy, for  
 to kepe & garde both in werre and peace vn-to þe comyng of þe  
 Duke of Bedforde again oute of England in-to Fraunce.

28 Johannes Reynowell, Robertus Arnold A<sup>o</sup> V<sup>to</sup>. [A.D.  
 M[ayor] Johannes Hyngham. 1426-7.]

And þe Duke of Bedforde & þe Duchesse his wife went vp to  
 Paris, And so to other dyuers partees of Fraunce *per* as hym list  
 32 best to abide; And þan þe Erle of Warrewik come In-to Englande  
 again.

**Off the takyng off Will Wawe; And how he was done to  
 dethe.**

36 And in this same yere was WiH Wawe take for an [a]rannt  
 peef, and was brought to London to þe Kynges Bench, & so  
 brought to Westmynster a-fore þe kynges Justices, & *per* Juge to

pe dethe. And so he was brought again from Westmynster to Suthwerk, & *þen* he was put in a carte, stanndyng, & faste bounde; & so he was cariede thourgh pe Cite to Tiborne, that all men myght see hym & knowe hym, And so he was caried the thirde day of 4 Juyll, And there hangede for his trespass.

Johannes Gedney M[ayor] Robertus Oteley vic' A° VI.  
Henricus Frowik [A.D. 1427-8.]

**How that there fill grete habundaunce off Rayn; And how 8  
dyuers sowdiourz went ouer the see.**

And in this same yere, & in pe yere of *grace* M<sup>i</sup> IIII<sup>c</sup> XXVII, from pe begynnyng of pe moneth of Aprile vnto the feste of All Halowen, was so abundaunce of Rayn that, not only hay was 12 distroied, but Also all maner of Comes; for it Raynede all-moste euery day, more or lesse, duryng this terme a-for-said.

And anone aftir, as pe Erle of Warrewik, *ser* Thomas Beauchampe, was sendd oute of Fraunce from pe Duke of Bedforde 16 by all the worthy & discrete counsaill of Englande, he was made maister & gouernoure vn-to the Kynge duryng his non-age, & hym to goueren, teche & norish, as oweth to be done to such a worthy prince, to his lernyng of all maner worthynesse to good gouernance, 20 discretion and reason.

And in pis same yere, an old man, a girdeler of Norwiche, which counterfetede the Kynges grete seale, And escaled charters & protections *with* *pat* counterfeit seall, in disseit & *preiudice* of pe 24 Kynge & of his liege peple, was iugede to pe deth, to be drawe thourgh the Citee of London vnto Tiborne, and *per* hangede; & *þus* he died for his treason.

**How that A Breton had mordrede a widdow without Algat. 28  
Ca II<sup>c</sup> LXII.**

And in pe same yere, a fals Breton, betwen Ester and Witson-tyde, mordrede a good wedowe in hir bedde, the which hadde found hym, for Almesse, *without* Algate, In the suburbes of 32 London; & he bar a-way all that sche hadde, And after toke girth of holy churche at Saint Georges in Suthwerk; but at pe last he toke the Crosse, & for-suore pe Kyng land. And as he went his way, it



happid hym to come by the same place wher he did that cursede dede; And women of þe same parish come oute to hym with stones & *with* canell dong & *pere* made an ende of hym in þe high streit, so  
 4 þat he went no *ferpere*, not-*with*-standyng þe Constablis & *oper* men also, which had hym in gouernaunce, to convey hym forth in his way; for *pere* was a grete companye of them; & on hym thei had neither mercie nor pite; & thus this fals thefe endede his life in þis  
 8 worlde, for his falsnesse.

**How that An Erityk was take And conuicte; And how Kyng Henry ordeynyd to go in to Fraunce, to resceyue þe crown.**  
**Ca. II<sup>e</sup> LXIII<sup>o</sup>.**

12 And in þis same yer, & in þe yer of *grace* a-foresaid, Richerde Woll-pakker, of Marc Lane, *pat* was conuicte a-for þe clergie, & dampned of heresie, was led to þe Tour-Hill of London; & ther he was brent for his fals & cursed opynions *pat* he helde & mayntened  
 16 in presence of þe Duke of Gloucestre, & of þe Duke of Northfolk, & þe Erl of Warrewik, & þe Erle of Stafforde, & *oper* lordes & Jentilles, & afore all þe comuners *pat* were there present of þe roialme a grete multitude.

20 And in this same yere, þe Satirday, þe XXI Day of Februarie, one Fenables, a Jentilman of Chestre, & Thomas Clement a Draper of London was dampnede atte Westmynster for treason & for þift  
 24 *pat* thei had done to þe Kynge & to his liege peple, to be drawe fro þe Toure of London thorough þe Citee to Tiborne, & *pere* hangede & quartrede, And there hedes sett vpon London Brugge.

And in þis same day & yere, Embassitoures of Spayne, *pat* is to say, a Bishoppe, with other grete & worthy clerkis, And an Erl  
 28 *with* knyghtes & squyers,—& these people come to þe Kynge in to Westmynstre Hall the day aboue-saide.

And in þis same yere, on Saint Mathie day, Apostill, which was on a Friday, Kyng Henry the Sexte after his coronation & ende of  
 32 his *parlement* holden at Westminster, by the advise of all the lordes & comons of England, was ordeyned in þis *parlement* a-foresaid *pat* þe Kyng shulde wende ouer the see in to Fraunce for to resceyue the Crowne *pere*.

## [E]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT FROM THE CAPTURE OF  
ROUEN (1419) TO 1430.

[MS. Egerton 650.]

<sup>1</sup>In þat same yere þe Kyng lay at þe sege of Roon; and þe xvij day of Ianuere it was yoldyn to oure Kyng. on Chyldermesse Day come tythyng to London þat the vj day of Feuaryere the Duke of Bedford, Leutenaut of Englonð, and the Chauncelere, and many 4  
oper bysshoppis, and þe Maire and hys aldermen, with all þe Cetizins, made a generaH procession from Paules to Westmynstre, ponkyng God of the good and gracios spede þat he had gyff to oure Kyng. 8

And in þat yere was Ludgate for-do, And aH the prisoners remeved from Newgate. And þer died lx and x with-in xv days. And þis was done for one Olyuer and iij false harlottes, And þer 12  
pai died.

And in þat same yere Quene Iahan was a-rested And broght to Retherhyde; And a gray frere was a-rested in Gernesie and lad to Chyrburgh, And sone aftre was broght before oure Kyng; and oure Kyng commaundit hym to the Toure of London, And þer he was 16  
do in prisone.

Richard Whyttington Maior.	<table border="0"> <tr> <td>{ Wylliam Boteler ·</td> <td rowspan="2">} Anno Ottauo</td> </tr> <tr> <td>{ Robertus Whytting- ham</td> <td>H. Vti. [A.D. 1419-20.] 20</td> </tr> </table>	{ Wylliam Boteler ·	} Anno Ottauo	{ Robertus Whytting- ham	H. Vti. [A.D. 1419-20.] 20
{ Wylliam Boteler ·	} Anno Ottauo				
{ Robertus Whytting- ham		H. Vti. [A.D. 1419-20.] 20			

In þat yere come þe Duke of Gloucestre in-to Englonð, and forth so to London; And þer was resceayved and made Leutenaut of Englonð.

And þe Duke of Bedforth, with a fayr meyne, went to Hampton, 24  
And þer he shyyppit and sayled ouer in-to Normandy.

And in þat yere our Kyng weddit Dame Kateryne, þe kynges Doghter of Fraunce, vppon þe Monday next afore þe Trinite Sondag.

And in þat yere was Pount Melayne wone, and oper fortises 28  
many moo: þonked be God!

Williamus Cambryge	Iohannes Welles	} Anno nono H. quin-
Maior.	Iohannes Boteller.	

In þat yere was a womman brent at CotehyH for sleying of hyr husband.

And in þat yere oure Kyng and Dame Kateryne hys wyfe come 4 from Parise in-to Englonð, and so forth to London; And þer were þai ressaued wurshypfully with þe Maire & þe Aldermen, and all þe Citezens of London.

And vppon þe xij day of Feueryere, þat feH vppon a Sonday in- 8 Lente, Dame Kateryne was crouned Quene at Westmynstre. And whene þe Solempnite was done in þe chyrche, sho was broght fuH solelymly þrogh þe Paleis in-to the grete haH, where þe fest was holdyn Off þe Coronacion of Quene Katerine.

**12 Off þe statis at þe Coronacion of Kateryne, þe Quene of Englonð,  
And of þe seruyce þat was done in þe same fest.**

Fyrst, þe Quene Sate in hyr estate;

The Archbyssshop of Cannetbury, The <sup>1</sup> Byssshop of Wynchestre, 16 vppon þe ryght syde of the Quene; And þai were serued next þe Quene, couerd at euery course;

The Kyng of Scotland in hys estate, vppon the left syde of þe Quene, wech at euery course was serued next aftre þat þe Quene 20 and the byssshoppes were serued.

The Duchesse of York, The Countesse of Hunttyngdon, The Duke of Gloucestre, vppon the same syde;

The Erle of Marche knelyng vppon þe desse on þe ryght syde 24 þe Quene, And held up a septr of the Quenes;

The Erle of Stafford, knelyng vppon þe left syde of the Quene vppon þe desse, and held a-noþer Septr of the Quenes;

The Countesse of Kent was syttyng at the ryght fote vndur the 28 table;

Syr Ritchard Nevyle, keruere before þe Quene;

-The Erles broþer of Southfolk, Copp-berrer;

Syr Iohn Steward, sewerer to the Quene;

32 The lord Clyfford, Panter, in the stede of Werwyke;

The Lord Wylloughby botelere, in þe stede of þe Erle of ArundaH, The Lord Grey Ryffyn, Napperer;

The Lord Audeley, Aumerer, In the stede of þe Erle of Caum- 36 bryge;

The Erle of Warwyke, Steward of Englonð, in þe stede of þe Duke of Clarence;

The Erle of Worcestre, MarchaH of Englonð, in þe stede of þe Erle MarchaH.

**The nounbre and sitting in þe haH fyrst at þe tables :**

The Barons of the .v. Portes begone þe table in þe haH on þe 4 ryght hand Of the Quene ; And be-neyth þaim, at þe same table, setten þe Bonchers of þe Chauncery ;

The Maire of London And hys Aldermen begone þe table in þe haH on þe left syde of þe Quene, with oþer commynners of 8 the cete ;

And beneth þaim at the same table, in þe myddyst of the haH, next þe table of þe .v. portys, vppon the ryght hand of the Quene, The Bysshop of London satt withyn þe table, The Bysshopp of 12 Bath, The Bysshop of Excester before hym, The Bysshop of Norwyche, The Bysshopp of Salesbury, The Bysshopp of Saynt David, The Bysshopp of Bangore before hym.

The bysshop of Lyncolne, The Abbot of Waltham, The 16 bysshop of Carlyle before þaim.

And þen next þaim, at the same table syttyng, þe Iustices ; And afftre þe Iustices at þe same table Satt WurshyppfuH knyght and Sqwyers ; 20

And þe ladys beyone þe tables in þe myddys of þe haH, ffor agayns þe Maire and þe Aldermen of Londone, The Countesse of Stafforde, Doghtter of Sere Thomas, som tyme Duke of Gloucestre ; The Countesse of Marche, hyre doghtter ; The Countesse of Arun- 24 deH, <sup>1</sup>The Countesse of Westmerland, The Countesse of Northumberland, hyr doghtter ; The Countesse of Oxenford ; The lady NeveH, some tyme þe Lordys wyfe NeveH, doghtter of the Erle of Somersette ; Dame Margarete, þe Dukes doghter of 28 Northfolk ; The Lady Clyfford, Suster of the Erle of Northumberlande ; The lady Burgeyne ; The lady Talbot ; The lady Wylloghby ; The lady Manley ; The wyfe of Syr Richard Nevyle, doghtter of the Erle of Salesbury, and no mo ladys of estate. And 32 þat table was ocupied with ladis and damesels, and a quarter of the bysshoppis table also.

There lordys sewying were assigne to do þe ryaH seruyce to the Quene : 36

The Erle of Northumberland	The Erle of Westmerland.
The Lord Felughe .....	The Lord FurnevaH.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 112, back.

The Lord Feris of Groby .....	The Lord Gray of Wyltton.
The Lord Poynynges .....	The Lord Haryngton.
The Lord Darcy .....	The Lord Dacrys.

4 The Lord Delaware.

The seruyce of þe ffyrst course.

Brawne wyth mustarð .....	Dedelys in Burueux.
ffirment <i>with</i> Baleyne .....	Pyke.

8 Lamprey Powdered..... Troute.

Codlyng ..... Plays.

Merlyng ffryed ..... Grete Crabys.

Leych lumbard ..... A bake mete in past.

12 Tartis ..... A Sotelte.

The seruyce of the secund course.

Gele ..... Blaundesore.

Breme..... Cunge.

16 Soles ..... Millet.

Chevan ..... BarbeH.

Roche ..... ffreche Samon.

Halybut ..... Gurnard rosted.

20 Roget broyled..... Smelt ffryed.

Lopsters ..... Leyche Damask.

Laumpray in past ..... flampaun ryah.

A Sotelte.

24 <sup>1</sup>A Panter and a damesseH before The seruyce of þe þryde course.

Dates in Composte..... Grene motteley.

Carpe dere ..... Turbutt.

Tenche ..... Perche.

28 Gogenos [Gudgeons] ..... Sturgeon frech and powderd.

Welkys ..... Porpas rosted.

Munse fryde ..... Crevis douse.

Grete Scrympmys ..... Elys and lampryns rosted.

32 A leyche called 'whyte leyche' A bake mete in past, with iiij  
Angels.

A Sotelte : a tyger, and Saynt George ledyng it.

And in þe Ester weke foloyng, þe Duke of Clarence was slayne  
36 in Fraunce, fast by the water of Leyre, wyth Scottes, Frenche men,  
Armynakkys, be-cause he wold not be gouerned, and haue take hys-

ost with hym. And *per* was take þe Erle of Hunttyngton, The Erle of Somersette and hys broþer. And *per* was lost þat day in-to a <sup>xx</sup>iiij good knyghttes: on whos soules God haue mercy! Amen!

And in þe same yere our Kyng, vppon the thred Day of Iune, 4 Schyppit at Douere, And londit at Caleis, and rode forth in-to Fraunce.

And in þat yere was grete queraunce in London for vsures; And some of *paim* left money, Iohn Sadeler, Water Chyrchey, and 8 many oþer; And in þat tyme money was skarse.

Robert Chycheley, maior. *Wilhelmus* Weston. Anno decimo h. v<sup>ti</sup>  
Ricardus Crosby. [A.D. 1421-2.]

In þat tyme, vppone saynt Nicholas evyn, come tythynges from 12 Wyndyssore to þe Maire, þat oure Quene, Dame Kateryne, had borne a pryncce, a fayre sone. And a-none aH þe belles in London were re[n]gon; 'Te Deum' was songone at Paules; And *per* was the Chauncelere and many bysshoppys, And þe Maire and hys 16 Aldermen, And aH þe craftes of the Cite.

And in þat tyme þe gold of þe realme went by weght; And euery man had a payr ballaunce And weghttes in hys sleve for þe gold. 20

And in þat yere Qwhenne Kateryne went to Hampton, And *per* made hyr redy to go ouer the see vn-to þe Kyng. And with hyr went þe Duke of Bedforthe with a fayre meyne; And þe viij day of Maij sho landit at Hereflete, And so went forth vn-to oure 24 Kyng.

And in þat same tyme Mewes Embry was gotten in þe last ende of ApryH. And fyrst day of Inle oure kyng sent to the Toure of Londone xvij Cartes chargit with Frenche men þat were hys 28 *presoners*, þat he toke in Mewes <sup>xx</sup>1 Embry: the nombre of *paim* into viij.

And in þat yere *per* come a<sup>2</sup> wrytte from þe Kyng vn-to the Maire of London, for to a-rest certayne *persones* þe whech were 32 found defectyfe in certayne poyntes of Erysy and Lollardy, And þeis bene *paire* names: Eston, Mercer, and oþer moo.

And þat yere died Kyng Henry the fyft in Fraunce, vppon þe evyn of þe decollacion of Saynt Iohn Baptyst; And þen was hys 36 sone Henri made Kyng.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 113, back.

<sup>2</sup> MS. and a

And in þat yere þe Shryves of London went by barche to Westmynstre, And dyuerse craftes of London with þaim; And in þis maner þai come home agayne, all in blak. And þis was done be-  
4 cause of our Kynges deth: on whos soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And on þe Monday before Saynt Symond Day and Iude, The Bysshop of London, Mayster Iohn Kempt, was stalled at Paules.

Thes ben þe names of Maire and Shrevis of London in þe tyme  
- 8 of Kyng Henri þe vj, in þe age of hym not xij monethys fulli:

Wylelmus Walderne,	Iohannes TedershaH.	} Anno primo Henrici viti [A.D. 1422-3.]
Maior.	Thomas Estfelde.	

In þat yere þe Maire and þe Aldermen and aH þe craftes went  
12 to Westmynstre by barge, aH in blak, þe v. day of Nouember; And  
þer he toke hys oth in þe eschekere, as þe maner is. And whene  
he had done, he toke hys barge with aH þe craftis, And come home  
agayne.

16 þe vj day of Nouember, The cors of Kyng Henri the .v. was  
brought to London; And a-none the Maire and þe Aldermen & aH  
þe Citezins resceyved hym, aH in blak, and brought hym to Paules;  
And þer he had hys dyryge and masses, and was entered, as it feH  
20 for a kyng. And þis was done vpon þe Fryday. And afre mete  
he was brought to Westminster; And vpon þe Setterday he was  
beryd before Saynt Edwardys shryne: on whose soule Almyghtti  
God haue mercy! Amen!

24 And in þat yere, come Frenche bysshoppys oute of Fraunce;  
And oper Frenche lordys and worthy knyghttes of Fraunce come  
to þe Kyng to do homage to hym, as for heyre of Englund and  
Fraunce: And þis was afre Crystynmasse foloyng.

28 And þat same yere, þe secund day of Marche, þer was brent in  
Northfolk a prest þat was dysgated of hys clergy for hys mys-byleue  
and hys heresy. And hys name was Master Wylliam Tayloure.

Also Richard Whyttyngton, mercer, died þe xiiij day of Marche:  
32 on whos saule Almyghtti God haue merey! Amen!

Wylelmus Crowmere,	Thomas Wandeford,	} Anno ij <sup>do</sup> H. sexti. [A.D. 1423-4.]
Maire.	Nicholas Iames.	

<sup>1</sup>at xxli þe parysshesens shuld pay xls; And yf it were of  
36 more valewe, þen pay more.

And in þe same yere, on Saynt Gylis day, come þe CardinaH,  
þe Bysshop of Wynchestre, to London; And þe maire and þe

Shryves and þe Alderdirmen, *with* aH the craftes of the cite, ryddyn agaynst hym, and wurshypfully ressaued hym And Welecommmed hym, and breght hym to Paules, And from Paules to Westmynstre ; And *per* he a-bode aH þat nyght. And on þe morow he toke hys 4 hors and rode to Wyndysore vn-to our Kyng.

Henricus Barton maior. Iohannes Abbot. Anno vij<sup>thio</sup> henrici vj<sup>ti</sup>  
Thomas Duffons. [A.D. 1428-9.]

In þis yere was þe good Erle of Salesbury, *Sere* Thomas Moun- 8 tague, slayn at the sege of Orlyaunce *with* a gonne, wheche was a noble lord and a worthy werreor emong aH Crystyn men : On whose saule, God, for hys pete, haue mercy ! Amen ! And he ys bered at Brysshham. 12

And in þis same yere, at Mydsomertyde, Henry Beauford, Cardinale, And also bysshop of Wynchestre, went ouer þe see in-to Fraunce *with* a fayre meyne of Archers and men of Armes ; And þe Lord Wylloghby was made Capten of hys werris. The wheche 16 Cardynale was ordined and purpast for to haue gone in-to Prage, to haue dystroyed and gyf batayle vn-to the fals herytykes and Lollordys. And whene he was rydy, tydynges come þat þe sege of Orlyaunce was brokyn, And þe Lord Talbot takyn, and oper worthy 20 lordys. And a-none, in aH þe hast, þe CardinaH *with* hys meyne, And *Ser* Iohn Ratelyff *with* hys meyne, þat was purposed for to haue gone in-to Gyene, went ouer in-to Fraunce to help and strenghe þe Regente, The Duke of Bedford, in þe Kynges rygt of Englund. 24

And in þe same yere fell sodanly a derth of whete, þat a BussheH of whete was at xx<sup>d</sup> ; And xxiiij Days, brede was ryght skantt in London, in-so-moch þat vnneth Any myght be gete ; bot in short tyme,—ponked be Almyghtti God !—hit was a-mendit ; 28 And befe and motun, and Al maner of fleshe, þat same tyme was ryght dere and scarce vn-to Lammasse ; And þen some aftre,—ponked be Ihesu, of hys ȝeftis !<sup>1</sup>—it was a-mendit.

Wilhelmus Est- { Wilhelmus Rous, } Anno Octano h. 32  
feld, Maior. { Radulphus Holand, schereffyes. } vj<sup>ti</sup>. [A.D. 1429  
-30.]

<sup>2</sup>The ff[f] day of Nonember, þe Kyng, wyth hys lordys, ryally rode frome Kyngstone ouer London Bryge, And so forth Fenchyrehe strete, evyn vn-to the Toure, to hys mete. And þe 36 Maire and þe Aklermen, aH in Scarlete hodys, rode to mete the

<sup>1</sup> MS. þeftis.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 114, back.



Kyng, And so rode forth with hym to þe Toure The Seterday  
next aftre; wher-of were þe Erle of Denshyre, þe Lord Spencer  
sone, the Erle of Warwyk, þe Lord Beamounde. And aftre none,  
4 þe Kyng, in a riaH araye, with aH hys lordys Ryally a-rayed in  
cloth of gold for þe most part, with the said xxiiij newe knyghtes  
aH in blew, the prestes rode a-fore þe Kyng ij and ij, from þe  
Toure to Westmynstre. And þe Maire and þe Aldermen, aH in  
8 Scarlet, rode also, and broght þe Kyng to Westmynstre. And at  
London Bryge was made a toure full of Angels And þe grete Con-  
dyte and þe lytiH Condite in þe Chepe, rially arayed, rynnynge  
bothe rede wyne and whyte. And at the Crosse in þe Chepe was  
12 made a riaH casteH, And þerin was grete Wurshyp shewed to þe  
Kyng.

On þe morne, þe Sunday, þe vj day of Nouember, þe Kyng was  
crowned at Westmynstre full rially. And aH Bysshoppys and  
16 Abbotes Copitt and mytred ryally; And aH temperaH lordys rode  
in paire estate; And aH oper knyghtes (for most perty) aH in cloth  
of gold rially. And Henri of Wynchestre, Cardinale, as a Carde-  
naH sate in a sete by þe ryght hand of the Kyng. And þer was  
20 Quene Kateryne, moder of the Kyng, And a grete noumbre of ladis  
and gentiH-wemmen rially arayed. And also þer come sodanly to  
þe coronacion one of þe kinges sones of Porttyngale, And he was  
Wurshypfully resceyved. And þat day was a fare day and a clere,  
24 blessed be God!

Also þat yere þe perlement was enioured tiH aftre Crystyn-  
masse. Also þe Fryday, þe xx day of Ianuere, Richard Hunden,  
wolpaker, was brent at þe Toure-hyH for hys Lollardy and herysye.  
28 The Tuysday next aftre, Iohn Vpton, þe appellaunte, and Iohn  
Downe of Feueressham, defendaunt, Armed, faght with-yn lystis in  
Smythfelde nyghe an oure. And þen þe Kyng toke it in-to hys  
awne hand; And þe Seterday aftre, at Kenyngton, þe Kyng made  
32 an<sup>1</sup> ende be-twene þaim bothe; And so þai rode at large.

The perlement began agayn þe Monday aftre, þe xij day. And  
in þe meyne tyme The CardinaH went ouer þe see on þe Kynges  
message.

36 And also þe same yere, in Estre Weke, þe Kyng went to Caleis,  
And so to Roon, with the substance of aH þe lordes and gentyls of  
Englond, And left þer þe Duke of Gloucestre, Leuetenante.

Nicholas Watton maior.

(M. cccc. xxxi.)

<sup>1</sup> MS. and

## APPENDIX E.

ANOTHER VERSION OF THE TIME FROM 1422-31.

[*MS. Rawlinson, B. 173. Bodleian Library.*]

<sup>1</sup>And in that yere [Nov. 1422] come Frenssh Bisshoppes oute of Fraunce, & þis was Cristmas folowyng.

¶ William Crowmere, Maire

¶ Thomas Sandeford<sup>2</sup> } ¶ Shreues, anno ij°. 4

¶ Nicholas Iames } [1 *Sept.* 1423 to 31 *Aug.* 1424.]

¶ And in that yere the King was brought fro Windesore in a chare to Londoñ, and his modre the Quene sitting in the same chare, and he in her armes, and so he was brought to Westminster. 8 and on the morue bigañ the parliament. And in that same yere, on the Wednesday bfore Seint Mathewes day, Syr Ioñn Mortymere, knight, brake prisoñ, and went oute off the Toure of Londoñ; but sone he was take vpon p<sup>e</sup> Toure-wharfe, bitwene the 12 Toure & the Temysse, & there he was euyH wounded. And forth-with-aH he was brought forth bfore the Duke of Gloucestre; And vpon the Saturday he was brought to hys answe, and there he was dampned to be drawe & honged, And his hede smetyn of at 16 Tyborne. And thañ his hede was take and sett vpon Londoñ Brygge, and his body was beried at Iones, bicause he <sup>3</sup>was a knight of the Sepulcre; And hys hede was take downe, & beried with the body: & þat licence gate freier Winchilsey. 20

¶ Ioñn MicheH, Maire.

¶ Ioñn Bithewater } ¶ Shreues, anno iij°.

¶ Symkyñ Semañ } [1 *Sept.* 1424 to 31 *Aug.* 1425.]

¶ And in that yere was a generall proccessioñ, And a pardoner 24 Ridyn vpon an horse, and his face to the horse taile, and his billes hanging a-bought hys necke by-hynde and bfore. And whañ he

<sup>1</sup> leaf 225.<sup>2</sup> i.e. Wandesford.<sup>3</sup> leaf 225, back.

come to þ<sup>e</sup> South dore of Poules, there was Made a grete fire, and  
aH his billes were brent.

¶ Iohn Couentre, Maire.

4 ¶ William Mildrede } ¶ Shreues, Anno iiij<sup>to</sup>.

¶ Iohn Brockele } [1 *Sept.* 1425 to 31 *Aug.* 1426.]

¶ And in that yere was a grete discencion bitwene the Duke  
of Gloucestre and the Bisshop of Wynchestre; And this was on  
8 the same day that þ<sup>e</sup> Maire rode. And on the Tuesday was mekle  
of the bisshoppes retenewe gadered in Southwerke, *with* bowes and  
arowes and other herneys. And thañ the Brige gate was kept  
*with* strength of meñ of armes. And sone after, vppoñ viij of the  
12 clocke, aH the Cite was vp, and drewe hem to the water-side, and  
wolde haue passed ouyr Thamyse. But the Prince of Portingale,  
the Bisshop of Caunterbury, the Bisshop of Bath, entreted, ponked  
be God, aH was cesed, or none. And the x day of Ianyvere next,  
16 þ<sup>e</sup> Duke <sup>1</sup>of Bedford and his wiffe the Duchesse come to Londoñ;  
and the Maire and aH the Aldermen, & the craftes, ridde a-yenst  
him, and welcomed him vnto the Cite, And the Bisshope of Win-  
chestre come with him. And in this same yere was the parliament  
20 at Leicestre.

¶ Iohn Reynewe,<sup>2</sup> Maire.

¶ Robert Arnolde } ¶ Shreues, Anno quinto.

¶ Iohn Higiam } [1 *Sept.* 1426 to 31 *Aug.* 1427.]

24 And in the same yere, in the lattere ende of December, died the  
goode Duke of Excestre. and in the same yere were founde many  
false vessels of Romeney, the whiche were made by gadered  
Galgenet, into the nombre of vj buttes, the which the hedes were  
28 smyt oute of in diuerse places of the Cite: the falsest gode that  
euyr any mañ see.

¶ Iohn ReyneweH,<sup>3</sup> Maire.

¶ Robert Otele } ¶ Shreues, anno vj<sup>to</sup>.

32 ¶ Henry Frowyke } [1 *Sept.* 1427 to 31 *Aug.* 1428.]

¶ In his tyme there was a lone of iij þousand marke; And it  
was for the Erle of Salesbury for-to meyntene the Kinges werres  
in Fraunce; And therto payed diuerse peple, asweH þ<sup>e</sup> mene as the-  
36 riche; som more, som lasse; but the leste was x s. ¶ And after  
that, was graunted bi the parliament, þat aH the chirches of the  
ralme shulde be stent at a somme; and the Chirche were at xx ti,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 226.

<sup>2</sup> *i. e.* Raynwell.

<sup>3</sup> *i. e.* John Gedney.

the paressshens shulde paye xls.: and iff it were of more valewe, thañ<sup>1</sup> to paye more.

<sup>2</sup>¶ Henry Bartoñ, Maire.

¶ Iohn Abbot } ¶ Shreues, Anno vij<sup>o</sup>.

4

¶ Thomas Duffons } [1 Sept. 1428 to 31 Aug. 1429.]

¶ And in this yere was the gode Erle of Salesbury, Sir Thomas Mountague, slayne at the sege of Orliaunce with a Gonne; the whiche was a noble lorde, and a worthi werrioure amonge aH Cristeñ 8 meñ: On whos soule God for his pite haue mercy! amen! And he was beried at Brisham. In this same yere, at Midsomertide, Henry Benford, CardinaH, and also Bisshop of Winchester, went ouyr the see into Fraunce with a faire meyne of Archers and meñ 12 of armes; ¶ And the Lorde Welouby was made Capteñ of his werres; the whiche CardinaH was purposed and ordeyned for-to haue go into Prage, to haue distroyed and yene bataile vnto the false heretikes and lollars. And whañ he was redy, tidinges come 16 that the sege of Orliaunce was broken, and the Lorde Talbot take, and other worthi lordes. And anone in aH haste, the CardinaH with his meyne, and Sir Iohn Radelyff with his meyne, pat was purposed to haue go into Gienné, went ouer into Fraunce to helpe 20 and strength p<sup>e</sup> Regent, the Duke off Bedford, in the Kingis right of England.

¶ William Estfelde, Maire.

¶ William Rouse } ¶ Shreues, anno viij<sup>o</sup>.

24

¶ Richard Holand } [1 Sept. 1429 to 31 Aug. 1430.]

¶ The Friday, the iij<sup>de</sup> day of Nouember, the King with <sup>3</sup>his lordes, Rialli rode fro Kingeston ouer London Brige, And so forth Fanchirch strete, even to the Toure, to his mete. And the Maire 28 and the Aldermeñ, aH in scarlet hodes, Rode to mete the King, and rode forth with him to the Toure. the Saturday next after, the King made xxxiij knightes of the Bath, in the Toure of London; wherof were the Erle of Deuenyssh-shire, the Lorde Spencers sonne, 32 the Erle of Warrewike, the Lorde Beaumont. and after none, the King, in riaH aray, with aH his lordes rialli arayed in clothes of golde for the moste partie, with the saide xxxiij knightes aH in blewe like prestes, rode a-fore the King ij and ij fro the Toure to Westminster. 36 And the Maire & p<sup>e</sup> Aldermeñ aH in scarlet, rode also, and brought the King to Westminster. And on the Morue, the Sondag, the vj

<sup>1</sup> MS. has pañ thañ with the first pañ underlined for crasure.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 226, back.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 227.

day of Nouembre, the King was crown'd at Westminster rialli;  
 and Henry of Winchester, CardinaH, as a CardinaH sate in a sete  
 by, on the right honde of the King. And there was Quene Katerin,  
 4 moder of the King, And a grete nombre of ladies and gentilwemen  
 rialli arayed. And ther come sodenly at þe Coronacion, one of the  
 Kinges sonnes of Portingale; and he was worshipfully reseeyued.  
 And that daye was a fayre day, & a clere, blessid be God!

8 ¶ Nicholas Wotton, Maire.

¶ Water Chirtesey } ¶ Shreues, anno ix<sup>o</sup>.

¶ Robert Large } [1 Sept. 1430 to 31 Aug. 1431.]

12 ¶ In that yere come the CardinaH oute of Normandy from  
 Roan; And there was the King, and helde Cristmasse. ¶ and  
 after Cristmas, after Seint Hillaries day, bigan the parliament at  
 Westmynstre. and in that yere come to Londoñ the Ambassiatours  
 of Spayne, to trete of pees.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 227, back.

## [F]

CONTINUATION OF THE BRUT FROM 1430-1446.

[MS. O 9. 1. *Trinity College, Cambridge.*]

<sup>1</sup> Nicholas Wotton, Maier.	Walterus Chertsey Robertus Large	{	Vicecomites.
			anno ix <sup>o</sup> .
			[A.D. 1430-1.]

And in this yere, and in the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup> cccc xxx<sup>ti</sup>, John <sup>4</sup> Ostillere, at the Crowne in Fanchirchestrete of <sup>2</sup> London, debadet with the ambassitours of Spayne, and rered blode of oon of theym<sup>3</sup> þat was a gentleman; wherfor the hosteler was arested and brought to the Countoure, and his wife bothe, for she beganne the debate; <sup>8</sup> and then the Kyng and his consayle remeved hym from the Countoure,<sup>4</sup> and brought hym in <sup>5</sup> the Flete prison. And on the Monday next after, the Maire and bothe the Shirreffes of London, by the comaundment of the Kyng <sup>6</sup> and his consayle, brought hym <sup>12</sup> fro the Flete, fetered, colered, and manacled with yron strongly, thurgh the Cite till <sup>7</sup> they come to Leden-hall, for he shuld haue goon to the Toure to<sup>8</sup> abyde his Iugement for the grete offence þat he had doon, brekyng of the Kynges sauf-condite, ayenst his peas <sup>16</sup> and comaundment. And there these ambassiatours of Spayne mette with the Maire and his company in Greschirchstrete, as they were goyng toward<sup>9</sup> the Toure, and prayed the Maire of grace for the man; and so he was brought ageyne þat same nyght <sup>10</sup> to <sup>20</sup> Flete prison.

And in this same yere, on Seint Gregoryes day, a preste of Essex was brought to London afore<sup>11</sup> the elergye at Seint Paules, and there he was conniete in heresy and false Lollardy, þat he <sup>24</sup> mayntened and helde ayenst holy chirche; and so he was brent in Smythfeld for his heresy.

And in this same yere, on the Tuesday next after Palme Sonday, all the prisoners þat were in Ludgate were brought into <sup>28</sup> Newgate prison by Waltere Chirtesey & Roberte Large, shirreffes of

<sup>1</sup> leaf 207.      <sup>2</sup> in U.      <sup>3</sup> ye Embassitours, gentilmen U.<sup>4</sup> toure of London U.      <sup>5</sup> in to U.      <sup>6</sup> kynges counsaill U.<sup>7</sup> to the come U.      <sup>8</sup> for to haue abiden U.      <sup>9</sup> to the Toure warde U.<sup>10</sup> leaf 207, back.      <sup>11</sup> to fore U.

London; and the Friday, the xiiij<sup>th</sup> day of Aprell then<sup>1</sup> next folowing, the same shirreffes fette oute of Newgate, by the false suggestion and compleynt of oon<sup>2</sup> Iohn Kyngescote, Gaolere of 4 Neugate, .xviij. presoners of fremen. And the<sup>3</sup> oon half of these xvij. presoners were ledde to the<sup>4</sup> oon Counter, and þat oþer half to<sup>5</sup> þat other Compter, by<sup>6</sup> malice and compleynt of þe seid Iohn Kyngescote. And these<sup>7</sup> were ledde to the Compters, braced as 8 though<sup>8</sup> they had be<sup>9</sup> felons and theves, openly in euery mannys sight.

And in this same yere, vpon þe Whitsonday, a man of the towne of Abyngdon þat is in Oxenfordshire, þat called hym-self 12 Iak Sharp, was take, *with oþer* mo of his company, for risers and distourbours of þe Kynges peple, and for his false ymaginacion and treson þat he<sup>10</sup> began to make and werk in that Cuntre aboute; and þerfore he was drawe, and hanged and quartered at Abyngdon, 16 and his hede smyten of, and set vpon London Brigge, by the<sup>11</sup> comaundment of the Duke of Gloucestre, Lieutenant of England, an[d]<sup>12</sup> by alle the good and worthy lordes of the Kinges Consayle beinge that<sup>13</sup> tyme in the Reame.

20 And in this same yere, the xvj. day<sup>14</sup> of Iune, the preson of Ludgate was made, and opened ageyn<sup>15</sup> for fremen þat be presoners for dette. And the<sup>16</sup> same day they entred in first<sup>17</sup> ageyn by ordynauce and comaundment of the Maire, alder<sup>18</sup>men and 24 comyners. And Herry Dene, Tayloure, was<sup>19</sup> made keper of Ludgate prison, by the Maire and all the *communialte* in the Gayldhall.

And in þis same yere, the .xiiij. day of Iuyll, John Russell, 28 wollepakkere, was dampned at Westmynstre, and brought to the Kynges Benche, and leyde on a<sup>20</sup> hirdell, and drawn thurgh the Cite to Tybourne, and quartered; and his quarters set vpon dyuers gates of London, and his hede<sup>21</sup> set vpon London Brigge.

32 John Welles, Maior. Stephanus Broun } *vicecomites anno x<sup>o</sup>. [1 Sept.*  
John Athirley } *1431 to 31 Aug. 1432.]*

And þen Kyng Henry was brought from Caley's, þurgh

<sup>1</sup> then *om.* U.      <sup>2</sup> y<sup>e</sup> said U.      <sup>3</sup> y<sup>t</sup> one U.      <sup>4</sup> y<sup>t</sup> U.

<sup>5</sup> vnto U.      <sup>6</sup> by y<sup>e</sup> malice U.      <sup>7</sup> þese prisoners U.

<sup>8</sup> though *om.* U.      <sup>9</sup> bene for felonie & thefte U.      <sup>10</sup> he he U.

<sup>11</sup> the *om.* U.      <sup>12</sup> and U.      <sup>13</sup> beyng in the roialme at y<sup>t</sup> tyme U.

<sup>14</sup> day *om.* U.      <sup>15</sup> and ageyn Tr.      and opened again U.      <sup>16</sup> y<sup>t</sup> U.

<sup>17</sup> first *om.* U.      <sup>18</sup> *huf* 208.      <sup>19</sup> was *om.* U.      <sup>20</sup> an U.

<sup>21</sup> hede smytt of and set U.

Normandy, to þe Cite of Roan, with strenght of his lordes, and with men of armes and archers; and there the kyng abode, and rested hym in the Castell and <sup>1</sup> the Cite of Roan, from Seint Iames tyde the Apostell, <sup>2</sup> vnto the secund day of Decembre.<sup>2</sup> And when <sup>4</sup> he come first into Rone, he was receyued and welcomed for their liege lord and Kyng, with all reuerence, solempnite, gladnesse and worship, þat myght be ordeyned and made; and also they presented hym with ryche and roiall giftes, and thanked God of his comyng. <sup>8</sup> And in the tyme of his abidyng in þe Cite of Roan, there were many iourneyes done in dyuers partyes of Fraunce and Normandy, which be not tited in this boke; for y haue not full conusauunce of theym, how, ne in what place nor where they were doon.<sup>3</sup> 12

**<sup>4</sup> Here is the begynnyng of Kyng Herries comyng the Sext, from Roan to Parys; and how worthely they of Parys receyued the Kyng in his first comyng thider.<sup>4</sup>**

And when Kyng Henry the Sext was goon from the Cite of 16 Roan toward þe Cite of Parys, and first to Seint Denys the .ij. day of Decembre; and þere he was worthely receyued as euer was any kyng to any Cite; and þe village cleped 'Chapell,' betwene Seint Denys and <sup>5</sup> Parys, there mette with the Kyng and his lordes, the <sup>20</sup> Provost of Parys, with the Marchauntez, and .iiij. other estates with hem,<sup>6</sup> clothed in oon sute, in rede fyne saten crymsyn <sup>7</sup> furred with Martrons, and with blewe hodes, to a grete<sup>8</sup> notable nombre. And whan the Kyng was passed the village, þere mette with hym the <sup>24</sup> Provost of Parys aforeseid,<sup>9</sup> in a blewe gowne of velwet, and <sup>10</sup> the .iiij. Maisters of the chastlet with theym, alle clothed in blewe with blak hodes; and next after theym <sup>11</sup> come <sup>12</sup> the ix worthy Emperoures, with Kynges and Quenes, and iche of <sup>13</sup> them armed, <sup>28</sup> sauf the Quenes, and their horses <sup>14</sup> trapped with their armes, <sup>15</sup> and the quenes hors trapped with their armes; <sup>15</sup> and then come the Maister of the Chamber, with the aecomptes all clothed in violet, ermayn,<sup>16</sup> scarlet hodes, a notable number; and after come the <sup>32</sup> President, with alle the maysters of þe parlement, all clothed in

<sup>1</sup> and in ye U.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. U.

<sup>3</sup> deon. And ys for I leue theme vn writynne. U.      <sup>4-4</sup> om. U.

<sup>5</sup> trayf 208, back.      <sup>6</sup> hym all clothede U.      <sup>7</sup> and crymsyn U.

<sup>8</sup> grete om. U.      <sup>9</sup> aforeseid om. U.      <sup>10</sup> and all the U.

<sup>11</sup> hym U.      <sup>12</sup> come ridynge U.      <sup>13</sup> of Tr. of theme U.

<sup>14</sup> horses U.      <sup>15-15</sup> om. U.      <sup>16</sup> violet Tr. with crymsyn. U.



scarlet, *with* furred hodes, and round standynge cappes of Trype; and these were the iij estates *with* alle the ix worthies.

And at comyng to þe gate of Seint Denys of Parys, there was  
4 afore<sup>1</sup> the fronte of the gate þe armes of the towne in gowles, a  
chieff of asure, *with* the flourellice of gold in asure; and also þer  
was a verrey shippe, *with* alle the appurtenaunce<sup>2</sup> þerto belongyng,  
couered with siluer foyle, and certeyne persones standing þerin.  
8 And at the Kynges comyng to the gate, they henge ouer the shippe  
borde iij. bloody hertys like vnto mennys hertys, bot þey were  
gretter. And as the Kyng come to the gate, these thre hertes  
opened; and oute of hem<sup>3</sup> flewe white dovyys and oper briddes, and  
12 certeyn scriptures made, shewyng vnto the Kyng þat they<sup>4</sup> receyued  
hym *with* alle hertys, and for theire souereyn Lorde and Kyng.  
And at the comyng in of<sup>5</sup> the gate was ordeyned a clothe of gold,  
and vj men beryng it<sup>6</sup> vpon vj. spere-shaftes, and eche of the men  
16 bare heded; and on theire hodes,<sup>7</sup> garlaundes of gode<sup>8</sup> foyle, and  
they clothed in blewe. And in the<sup>9</sup> same strete was a condit, and  
iij. meremaydes swymmyng aboue on<sup>10</sup> the water; <sup>11</sup>and oute of  
the condite come rennyng <sup>12</sup>dyu[er]s wyne; oon ypocras; the  
20 second rede wyne, the thridde, *with* mylke.<sup>12</sup> And euery Englishsh  
man þat wold drynk ypocras, had ynough; and alwey men redy to  
serue theym *with* cuppes and pecis. And iij wodewoses playing  
vpon the toppe<sup>13</sup> of þe condyte; and other wodewoses benethe,<sup>14</sup>  
24 playing to kepe this<sup>15</sup> condite.

And then in the same strete was made a scaffold; and þerupon  
men disgysed after the weddyng of oure Lady, and of the birthe of  
oure Lorde Ihesu Crist, fro the begynnyng to the ende. And þere  
28 was neyder man nor childe þat any wight myght perceyue, þat  
euer chaunged any chere or countenaunce alle the tyme duryng;  
bot held theire contaunce, as they had been ymages peynted; so  
þat all peple þat sawe hem, seyd þat they sawe neuer in þeire lyves  
32 suche a noder sight.

And after that, comyng in at<sup>16</sup> þe Inner gate of Seint Denys  
wh[e]re þat he was in Chater, there was made the life of Seint  
Denys, and of many other dyuers persons in grete estate aboue hym,

<sup>1</sup> afore at U.    <sup>2</sup> appurtenaunce U.    <sup>3</sup> theme U.    <sup>4</sup> the U.

<sup>5</sup> at U.    <sup>6</sup> it vp vpon U.    <sup>7</sup> hedes U.    <sup>8</sup> golde U.    <sup>9</sup> this U.

<sup>10</sup> vpon U.    <sup>11</sup> leaf 209.

<sup>12-12</sup> iij stremes one of ypocraers an oper *with* rede wyne and ye thrid  
*with* mylk.

<sup>13</sup> Cupp U.    <sup>14</sup> playing bynethe U.    <sup>15</sup> the U.    <sup>16</sup> of U.

bothe spirituall and temporall, after<sup>1</sup> Cristen men and hethen, as they were in theyre tyme þat is passed. And so comyng to the founteyn of Seint Innocentz, there was made a hegge of grene holme-busshes; and þerout stert an hert, and houndes rennyng 4 after hym, couered in þe armes of England and<sup>2</sup> Fraunce. And at þe Chastelet, þere was made a stately ordynance of scaffoldes, hanged with clothes of golde and with arras, with the Kinges armes of England and of Fraunce; and a man lykened to þe Kyng 8 sittynge in a sete, kepyng a state in scarled<sup>3</sup> with a furred hode and with .ij. buylhons made with the armes of England and of Fraunce; and vpon the right hande, knelyng, my Lord of Bedford,<sup>4</sup> my<sup>5</sup> Lord of Gloucestre, my Lord Cardynall,<sup>6</sup> and many oþer lordes 12<sup>7</sup> of England, iche man<sup>8</sup> after his degre, armed with his cote of armes vpon hym;<sup>9</sup> and then the Duke of Burgoyne, knelyng<sup>10</sup> on the lifte hande, offeryng vp the armes of Fraunce, and alle the other lordes of Fraunce in theire degre, knelyng, and offeryng<sup>11</sup> vp 16 their armes; and dyuers scriptures made, þat all they requyre the Kyng of rightwisesse. And after was presented to þe Kyng a wyld hert, trapped with the armes of the towne.

And so þe Kyng rode forth to oure Lady Chirche, and made 20 his offryng. Alle<sup>12</sup> the stretes from Seint Denys Gate were hanged with clopes of arras and with clothes of tapisserie werk; and for þe most party all the stretes were couered with lymmen clothes.

And so from thens the Kyng that same tyme<sup>13</sup> went to Tournay, 24 and<sup>14</sup> because it was ill<sup>15</sup> ridyng, for the grete froste þat was that tyme in the towne, and the stretes were strawed thurghout for slidyng of theire horses vnto þey come to Tournay; and there the<sup>16</sup> Kyng souped with my Lorde of Bedford, and lay there all nyght, 28 and dynd there on the morowe ere [he] passed any ferther.

And so vpon the morowe the Kyng went to<sup>17</sup> speke with his grandmoder, þe Quene of Fraunce. And there she made hym<sup>18</sup> chere, and welcomed hym with all the dalyaunce, countenaunce, 32 and chere þat she coude or<sup>19</sup> myght; and seid þat 'she was neuer so gladd as she was then, sith she sawe þe Kyng of Fraunce in

<sup>1</sup> and aftir U.      <sup>2</sup> and of U.      <sup>3</sup> in a sete of Estate in Scarlet U.

<sup>4</sup> my Lord of Bedford knelyng U.      <sup>5</sup> and my U.      <sup>6</sup> the Cardinall U.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 209, back.      <sup>8</sup> man om. U.      <sup>9</sup> theme U.      <sup>10</sup> sittynge U.

<sup>11</sup> Fraunce kneling in ther degre and offeryng U.      <sup>12</sup> and all U.

<sup>13</sup> yt same tyme þe Kyng U.      <sup>14</sup> and for U.      <sup>15</sup> parillous U.

<sup>16</sup> there Tr.      þere the U.      <sup>17</sup> and spak.      <sup>18</sup> hym grete U.

<sup>19</sup> and U.

good plyte.' And so from the Quene he rode streight to Boys in Vyncent; and there he rested hym<sup>1</sup> vnto þe tyme of hys Coronacion, þe which shuld be holden and <sup>2</sup>doon on þe Sunday, the .viii<sup>th</sup> day  
4 afore Cristmasse, by the grace of God.

And þen the Saterdag, the xv. day of Decembre, the Kyng come on the after-none from Boys in Vyncent vnto þe palays of Parys; and he rested hym there all þat nyght. And þe next  
8 morowe, the Sunday, was he brought worthely from the palyce to the Chirche of oure Lady in Parys; and there he was crowned Kyng of Fraunce by the Cardynall, þe Bisshop <sup>3</sup> of Winchestre and  
oper Englissh Bisshoppes, and by .vj. of þe worthiest Bisshoppes  
12 of Fraunce. And this coronacion was worthely doon, with all the solempnite þat myght be doon and ordeyned.

And when the Kyng was crowned, and the seruice doon, then the Kyng was brought ageyn to his palyse, and there set to mete  
16 with all delicacye of metes and drynkes þat myght be ordeyned, and open fest to all men þat wold com, bothe pore and riche. And after his coronacion at Parys, the Kyng come down to þe Cite of Roan. And so, by candelmasse next, the Kyng came to Caley. s.  
20 And the Marchauntes of the Staple, with the peple of the towne, welcomed hym with all reuerence and honoure, and presented hym with giftes.

And within .xiiij. dayes after, the Kyng come ouer the see  
24 into England, and landed at the towne of Dover in Kent; and there were redy the Burgeys of the .v. Portes, and bare the Kyng on lande. And then come moche peple of Kent and Sussex, of good gentelmen and yomen on horsbak and in good aray, and they  
28 welcomed the Kyng, and brought hym to Caunterbury; and þere þe Kyng rested hym a day. And then the peple of all the Cuntre aboute come on horsbak and good aray to þe Kyng, and welcomed the Kyng with all theire hertys, and brought the King fro<sup>4</sup>  
32 Caunterbury vnto his Maner of Eltham þat is .v. myle oute of London. And there the Kyng rested hym .v. or .vj. dayes, vnto his comyng to the Cite of London.

And in this same yere the xxj<sup>th</sup> day of Februaire, Kyng Henry  
36 the .vj. come from his Maner of Eltham toward the Cite of London; and the Maire and aldermen, with the comynalte of

<sup>1</sup> hym all nyght U.

<sup>2</sup> There is a break in U here from *doon* on p. 461 to *foloyng* on p. 462, l. 8.

<sup>3</sup> *leaf* 219. <sup>4</sup> for Tr.

London, roode ayenst the Kyng on horsbak, in the best aray *pat* they myght, in the reuerence of the Kyng and in worship and gladnesse of the worthy name of the Cite of London, thurghout the world in worthynesse commended and *praysed*. For the Maire 4 hym-self was clothed in rede Crymsyn velwett, and a grete velwet hatte furred royally, and a girdell of gold aboute his mydell, and a bawdrik of gold aboute his neck, trillyng down behynde hym; and his .iij. hensmen on <sup>1</sup>.iij. grete Coursoures <sup>2</sup>foloyng hym, in oon 8 sute of a good aray, in rede,<sup>3</sup> all spangled in siluer; and then all the Aldermen in gownes of scarlet,<sup>4</sup> *with* sangwyn cappes. And all the *communialte* of the Cite were <sup>5</sup>clothed in white; bot every craft *with* dyuers devices enbrowded<sup>6</sup> vpon the white gownes, *pat* 12 every craft myght be knowen, oon from a-nother, *with* scarlet hodes or cappes. And all they hoked still on horsbak on <sup>7</sup>the Blak-Heth in Kent, on both sides, as a strete, vnto the Kynges comyng.

And when they sawe the Kyng come, the Maire *with* the 16 aldermen rode to the Kyng, and welcomed hym *with* all reuerence, honour and obeysaunce.<sup>8</sup> And the Kyng thanked hem, and <sup>9</sup>he come ridyng thurgh all the peple; and they obeyed, and seid, “Welcom oure liege<sup>10</sup> and Kyng! welcom!<sup>11</sup> and thanked be God 20 in all his giftes, *pat* we se you in good quart!” and so the Kyng rode streight the high way to London.

And when the Kyng had riden thurgh Suthwerk, and come to the stulpes *without*<sup>12</sup> London Brigge. *pere* stode a gyaunt in<sup>13</sup> a 24 toure, *with* his swerd drawe in his hande, shewed *with* countenaunce, doth manace all foreyn enemys to the death *without* mercy, *pat* seith or doth<sup>14</sup> ayenst the<sup>15</sup> Kynges right. “And y, the Kynges Champyon, in full myght and power.” 28

And then the Kyng come to London Brigge; and there was made a roiall hevenly toure; and therin was shewed .iij. ladyes as Emperice, worthely apparaylled in their aray, which were called by name ‘Nature, Grace, and Fortune.’ And their girdelles were 32 blewe, shynyng like to sapheres, which shewed to the Kyng, in his comyng, all goodnesse and gladnesse in<sup>16</sup> vertuous lyyving; and *with* oper .xj.<sup>17</sup> virgynes celestial, in tresses of gold, and *with*

<sup>1</sup> *leaf* 210, *back*.<sup>2</sup> U *begins again*.<sup>3</sup> in rede *om.* U.<sup>4</sup> scarlet gownes U.<sup>5</sup> all U.<sup>6</sup> enbrandrede U.<sup>7</sup> vpon U.<sup>8</sup> honour, reuerence and obeysaunce U.<sup>9</sup> and so U.<sup>10</sup> liege lorde U.<sup>11</sup> welcom *om.* U.<sup>12</sup> porugh U.<sup>13</sup> *with* Inne U.<sup>14</sup> doth or saith U.<sup>15</sup> his U.<sup>16</sup> and U.<sup>17</sup> vij. U.

coronalles on their hedes, all clothed in white, as virgines, with  
sonnys<sup>1</sup> of golde on their garmentes, shewyng as heavenly creatures,  
mekely salewyng the Kyng, and gaf hym .vij. giftes, þat were  
4 toknes of oure Lord God of heven, þat were<sup>2</sup> white dowves,  
betokenyng the giftes of the Holy Gost, a spirite of intelligence, a  
spirite of sapience, and a spirite of strenght and of connyng, and of  
consayle, pite, drede, and lowlynesse. And on the lifte side of  
8 these .iiij. Emperesses, were .vij. oper virgyns, clothed<sup>3</sup> all in white,  
with sterres of gold on<sup>4</sup> their garmentes, with coronalles on their  
hedes, which presented the Kyng with<sup>5</sup> royall giftes: first, they  
endewed the Kyng with the crowne of glorie, and with the septr  
12 of mekenesse<sup>6</sup> and of pite; a swerd of myght and victorie, a  
mantell of prudence, a shelde of feith, a helme of helth, a girdell of  
love and of parfite peas. And all these ladyes and virgines  
welcomed the Kyng with all honoure and reuerence.<sup>7</sup>  
16 And then the Kyng procedyng forth to the Condyte in  
Cornhill; and pere was made in serkelwyse a Trone; and in the  
myddes sittyng, a yonge child arayed as a kyng, whom to gouerne  
were .iiij. ladyes, Mercy, Trouthe and the Lady<sup>8</sup> Clemesse; and  
20 .ij. Iuges of lawe, and .viij. sergeauntes, to shewe the kyngdom  
lawe and right. And then the Kyng rode forth, and entred into  
Chepe, and come to the grete Conduit, þat ranne plente of good  
wyne, bothe white and rede, to all peple þat wold drynk. And  
24 aboue, ouer the Condite, was a royall toure likned to Paradyse,  
with many dyuers trees<sup>9</sup> beryng eueryche dyuers frutes. And in  
this same gardeyn was dyuers welles of dyuers wyne, with  
bokettes; and .iiij. glorious virgines wounde vp the wyne, pro-  
28 feryng the Kyng there full habundaunce, fulsomnesse, and high  
plente. And the names of these virgines been ‘Mercy, Grace, and  
Pite.’ And in the ende of this gardeyn pere appered to the Kyng  
.ij. olde men,—þat oon, Enok; and þat oper, Ely,—þat shewed the  
32 Kyng chere and grete preysing<sup>10</sup> ministryng his gouernance.

And<sup>11</sup> the Kyng passed forth, and come to the Crosse in Chepe;

<sup>1</sup> sonnys U.    <sup>2</sup> were vij U.    <sup>3</sup> all clothede U.    <sup>4</sup> vpon U.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 211.    <sup>6</sup> clennesses U.

<sup>7</sup> with alle melodie & roalte of songe. And than ye Kyng rode forth,  
comes to redenhall in Cornhill, & per was made a roiall thyng like vnto a  
tabernakle & pere in satt þat lady dame sapience with the vij sciences euery in  
pere degre shewyng pere craftis werkis & konnynges & made grete Ioie melodie  
& songe vnto ye Kyng & welcomed hym with all honoure & reuerence U.

<sup>8</sup> lady of U.    <sup>9</sup> dyuers thynges and trees U.    <sup>10</sup> praisyng and U.

<sup>11</sup> and þan U.

and there was made a castell roiall ; and on the Est syde stode .ij. grene tree3, which bare the armes of England and of Fraunce, the libardes and the flouredelice, which been the Kinges right and trewe armes be lyne. And vpon this castell, toward Seint Paules, 4 there was the tree of Iesse, *with* all the braunches, shewyng the kynrede of oure Lorde Ihesu<sup>1</sup> and of our Lady,<sup>2</sup> Seint Marye, to the comfort of the Kyng, and for the grete solempnite of pe worthy cite of London. 8

And then they<sup>3</sup> passed forth from pe<sup>4</sup> Castell and come toward Seint Paules at the Litell Conduit ; and pere was made an heven indivisible of the Trinite ; and a trone compassed his roiall See *with* a grete multitude of angellys hym aboute, *with* dyuers 12 melodyes and songe, to hertly ioye and <sup>5</sup>comfortyng of the Kyng and all his peple. And whan he was come to Seint Paules, there<sup>6</sup> he alight doun of his hors ; and pere come pe Archebisshop of Caunterbury, and the Archebisshop of York,<sup>7</sup> and pe Bisshop<sup>8</sup> of 16 Lincoln, and the Bisshop[es] of Bathe, Salesbury, Norwich, Ely, and Rochestre, and the Dene of Paules *with* his couent, in procession, in theire best araye of holy Chirche, and met *with* hym, and did hym obseruaunce as bylongeth<sup>9</sup> to hym, and censed hym at his 20 comyng in ; and so brought the kyng to the high autere, *with* roiall songe. And there the kyng offred ; and then he come oute ageyn, and toke his hors, and come to Westminster ; and thider brought hym the Maire, Aldermen, and all the *communialte* of the 24 Cite of London.

And when the kyng was come to Westminster *with* all his peple, the Abbot and all the Couent come oute, coped roially, in procession, *with* high solempnite and gladnesse. And the Abbot 28 brought to the Kyng, Seint Edwardes sepre ; and so he come into the Abbay *with* all solempnite, ioye and songe, and offred to Seint Edward ; and then come oute ageyne, and went to his palace. And then the Maire and Aldermen, *with* all the *communialte* of London, 32 toke theire leve of the Kyng and of the lordes, and thanked God highly of his welfare and comyng.

And on the Seturday next suyng, the Maire and pe Aldermen come ageyn to Westminster to the palays, *with* a riche hanaper of 36 gold, and presented it to the Kyng, and a M<sup>t</sup>. li. of gold therin, to

<sup>1</sup> Ihesu Criste U.    <sup>2</sup> of his moder U.    <sup>3</sup> the Kynge U.    <sup>4</sup> that U.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 211, back.    <sup>6</sup> there out. U.    <sup>7</sup> yorke his chaunceler U.

<sup>8</sup> byshoppis of lyncolne Bathe U.    <sup>9</sup> bylongede to theme U.

his bien venewe and welcom hoom; and prayed hym of his high myghty grace, lordship and love to his Chambré.

And þen anon after Ester next folowyng,<sup>1</sup> the Kyng held his  
4 parlement at Westminster; and it lasted till seint Jametyde þe  
Appostell. and at þe begynnyng of the parlement, the Cardynall,  
the Bisshop of Wynchestre, come ouer the see into England, and so  
to London to þe Kyng, to excuse hym of the offence; and blames  
8 þat were put vpon hym for thinges<sup>2</sup> doon in Fraunce, by the com-  
pleynt of certeyn lordes; wherof he hath worthely excused hym to  
the Kyng and to his consayle; and so he was<sup>3</sup> fully excused, and  
the parties at oon.

12 And also to this parlement come Frenssh lordes, bothe spirituall  
and temporell and ambassatours of Spayne, and oper diuers lordes  
of dyuers<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>landes, to trete for peas and other certeyn maters. And  
the xxvj. day of Juny come the Dukes son of Bretayn ouer the  
16 see into England, and so to London<sup>6</sup> to the Kyng; and with hym  
come a Bisshop of that lande, and certeyn knyghtes and Squyers  
and theire meny.

20 Johannes Parneys, Maior. Johannes Olney } vicecomites  
Johannes Paddesley } anno xj<sup>o</sup>  
[A.D. 1432-3.]

And this<sup>7</sup> same yere, the Lord Camoys,<sup>8</sup> Sir Waltere Hunger-  
ford son, went ouer the see into Normandy, with knyghtes,  
24 squyers, men of arme; and archers, to the Nombre of xv<sup>c</sup>. peple  
and mo, by ordynaunce of the Kyng and his Consayle of<sup>9</sup> the  
Reame, in strengthing and helpyng of the Duke of Bedford,  
Regent in tho parties, and of all the Kynges liege peple, and for  
28 keping of the Kynges title and right.

And in þis same yere the Kynges sonne of Naverne, with oper  
dyuers peple with hym, come in ambassiatry to the Kyng and to<sup>10</sup>  
his Consayle.

32 And in þis same yere the Kyng let intere the Duchesse<sup>11</sup> of  
Bedford, which deyed in Fraunce, <sup>12</sup>at Seint Paules in London,  
with moche royalte and solempnite as myght be doon in holy Chirche.

And in this same yere, anon after Cristmasse, þe Bisshop of  
36 Acres in the land of Naverne, come to the Kyng in ambassiatry.

<sup>1</sup> next folowyng *om.* U.    <sup>2</sup> thinges Tr. for thinges U.    <sup>3</sup> is U.

<sup>4</sup> and of other dyuers U.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 212.

<sup>6</sup> into þis lande ouer the see and so to london U.    <sup>7</sup> in this U.

<sup>8</sup> Cannys and U.    <sup>9</sup> and of U.    <sup>10</sup> to *om.* U.

<sup>11</sup> entre at saint paules in london the duchesse U.    <sup>12-12</sup> *om.* U.

And in þis same yere on Seint Wolstans day, Sir Robert Fitzhugh was stalled Bisshop of London in the see<sup>1</sup> of Seint Paules.

And in this same yere, anon after Cristmasse, the grete conuocation and consayle of all the landes <sup>2</sup>in Cristendom, and also of all <sup>4</sup>oper seculer lordes, and Clerkes,—þat is to say, Bisshoppes and other<sup>3</sup> consayle began in the Cite of Basyle in Duchelande, for to make vnite and peas emong all Cristen peple, and for to destroye heretikes and erresye þat then reigned emong the peple.<sup>2</sup> 8

And in this same yere, anon after Ester,<sup>4</sup> þe Archebisshop of Caunterbury and oper<sup>5</sup> Bisshoppes with othere clergy, and the Duke of Gloucestre with oper lordes<sup>3</sup>, knyghtes and squyers, went ouer the see to Caley, for treti, and made pere a consayle <sup>6</sup>betwene<sup>7</sup> þe <sup>12</sup>Frenssh and þe Englissh. And pider come out of Fraunce þe Duke of Bedford, Regent, with many other Frenssh<sup>8</sup> lordes, bothe spirituall and temporall; and also pider come þe Cardynall, þe Bisshop of Wynchestre. 16

And in this same yere, the xxij<sup>th</sup> day of Aprell, the Erle of Huntynghon, with other dyuers lordes, knyghtes and<sup>9</sup> squyers, with<sup>10</sup> men of armes and archers, shipped at Hampton, and went ouer the see into<sup>11</sup> Normandy and so<sup>12</sup> to Fraunce, for to mayntene, <sup>20</sup>kepe and gouerne the right of oure Kyng and þe parties of Fraunce and Normandy.

And in this same yere, Herry Beauford, Cardynall, Bisshop of Wynchestre, come<sup>13</sup> ouer the see into England, and so to London, <sup>24</sup>the x<sup>th</sup> day of Iuyn, to his Maner of Seint Mary Ouerey in Suthwerk.

And<sup>14</sup> in this same yere was the Clipse in þe after-None, þat Asshewell þe white frere, and oper clerkes, spake of longe tyme <sup>28</sup>before; which all peple dowted and were sore aferd of, thurgh the speche of þe seid frere.<sup>15</sup> And this clipse was the xvij.<sup>16</sup> day of Iuyn.

And in this same yere come Iohn, Duke of Bedford, with his <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> church U.

<sup>2-2</sup> of Cristiance of all ye spiritualte & temporalte and of all seculer lordes and clerks þat is to say Bisshoppis & other was holden & begonne in ye Cite of basile in Ducheland for to make peace & vnite betwix all cristen peple & for to destroye heretikes & heresie þat now reigneth amonge the peple U.

<sup>3</sup> other which Tr. <sup>4</sup> Ester om. U. <sup>5</sup> oper om. U. <sup>6</sup> leaf 212, back.

<sup>7</sup> to trete of peace and made a counsaill at Caleis betwene U.

<sup>8</sup> grete U. <sup>9</sup> and om. U. <sup>10</sup> with om. U.

<sup>11</sup> to Caleis and so into U. <sup>12</sup> so om. U. <sup>13</sup> come frome.

<sup>14</sup> In U the next few lines down to *xx of June* are transposed.

<sup>15</sup> þer of þorough the freres speche. <sup>16</sup> xix U.





And in this same yere, anon after these lordes comyng out of Fraunce from this trefy of peas, Iohn, Duk of Bedford, was seke, and deyed in the Roan in Normandy; and there he is buryed: vpon whos soule, God haue mercy! amen! 4

Henricus Frowyk, Maior. Robertus Clopton } *vicecomites anno*  
Thomas Catworth } *xiiiij<sup>o</sup> [A.D. 1435-6.]*

And in this same yere, and in the yere of *grace* M<sup>t</sup> ccccxxvj<sup>ti</sup>, Kyng Henre þe vj<sup>th</sup> held his *parlement* at Westmynster. And in 8 þis *parlement* was graunted a <sup>1</sup>disme for holy chirche, and a xv<sup>th</sup> thurghout the Reame, to mayntene þe Kynges werres and to deffende oure Enemyes. And also they graunted to þe Kyng in this *parlement*, of all peple, pore and riche, both of *spirituell* and 12 *temporell*, to pay of theire landes and rentes, and of all freheld þat they haue *with*in this Reame of England, vj.d. of þe pound; and þis treuly to fecche and geddre, to help in þe Kynges nedes as at this tyme. 16

And anon, in the begynnyng of Lent next folowyng, þe King, *with* his conseyle, borowed a *somme* of gold purghout þe Reame, of temporall peple, þat amounted a c. M<sup>t</sup> marc of money, to sende his peple ouer the see; to kepe, mayntene, and *gouerne* his landes 20 byyonde the See: of which *somme*, the peple of London lent x M<sup>t</sup> marc in olde and in newe, þat is to sey, .iiij. M<sup>t</sup> v<sup>c</sup> marc of olde, and .iiij. M<sup>t</sup> v<sup>c</sup> marc of newe prest. So these ij. *sommes* drawn x M<sup>t</sup> marc and more, ouer the good peple of þe Cite of London, þat 24 is to sey, certeyn craftes found both men of armes and archers to Caley, forto kepe the towne in saufgarde from oure enemys, þat is to say, the Duke of Burgoyne and his strenght. And also the Cite of London sent stuff to Caley, as Gonnes, Gonnepouder, *with* 28 other *commoditees* for the werre, to kepe þat place sauf, to þe worship of oure Kyng and of þe Reame, and to þe welfare and profite of all England.

And this same yere, deyed .iiij. bisshoppes in England, þat is to 32 say, the Bisshop of Ely, the Bisshop of London, the Bisshop of Lincoln, and the Bisshop of Bangore, and *oper* mo *prelatz* of worthynesse and state, in dyuers partyes of the Reame of England.

And in this same yere, the Erle of Morteyner went ouer þe see 36 to Caley *with* a grete peple of men of armes and archers, in þe Passioun Weke, in the defence of oure Kyng, and to destroye oure enemys.

And in this same yere, the iij<sup>th</sup> day of Maye, the Erle of Salesbury, and his broder the Lord Faukonberge, went ouer the see into Normandy *with* a fayre company of knyghtes and squyers,  
4 *with* men of armes and archers, in defence of þe Kyng and of þe Reame of England, for to destroye oure enemys.

And in this same yere, in þe Moneth of Maye, the Duke of York and perle of Suffolk, *with* oþer lordes, <sup>1</sup>knyghtes and squyers, 8 men of armes and archers, and all oþer stuff and necessaryes þat perteyneth to werre, went ouer the see into Normandy and Fraunce, as lieftenaunt vnder the Kyng of England, forto gouerne and kepe þe landes of Fraunce and Normandy ageyns the Kynge  
12 enemys, and in saluacion of the Kynge's peple.

And in this same yere aboute Midsomer, the Duke of Burgoyne, *with* all his pusanee of peple, bothe of Fraunce and of Flaundres, and of oþer dyuers contreys, come and bysegged þe towne of Caley's,  
16 and þe garrysons þat belongen *perto*. And *pere* they destroyed both Mark and Oye, and of þe Kynge's peple many oon. And þey come thider *with* so grete strenght and ordynauce of werre, þat it was impossible any creatures to conquere theym, sauf þe grace of  
20 God oonly; wherfore þat the Kyng of England, with his consayle, let ordeyn and send ouer þe see to Caley's, for þe Rescues therof, and for his peple lying *pere*, and for his right, his vncle þe Duke of Gloucestre, the Duke of Norffolk, þe Erle of Warwyk, and þe Erle  
24 of Stafford, and þe Erle of Ewe, his broder, and þe Erle of Hunt-yngdon, and þe lord Fawnehope, Sir John Cornwayle knyght, and many oþer lordes, knyghtes and Squyers, and many oþer men of armes and archers, to þe nombre of Lx. M<sup>t</sup> peple, *with* many  
28 dyuers wepenys þat belongeth to batayle. And then come the Navy of Spayne, *with* oþer dyuers shippes, which were grete vessels, and stronge and well-manned, and bysegged þe towne of Caley's by water. Then come þe Erle of Devenshire *with* his  
32 Navye out of the west costes, and *with* oþer dyuers shippes of England well-manned; and they herd of his commyng, and they voided, and went their way thens, and wold no lenger abide. And then the Erle of Morteyner and þe Lorde Camoys, *with* a certeyn  
36 of their peple, issued oute of Caley's, and brake the sege þat the Duke of Burgoyne had ordeyned ayenst the towne of Caley's, and come to þe Bastyle of strength, and slewe þe most party þat were *perin*, and destroyed moche peple, and toke his ordynauce, and

the remenaunt fledde away. And this was doon ere the Duke of Gloucestre come ouer þe see to Caley<sup>s</sup> <sup>1</sup>with his Navye and people.

And after this, aboute our Lady Day þe assumpcion, the Duke of Gloucestre, the Duke of Norffolk, *with* Erles and lordes, *with* all <sup>4</sup>theire *oper* people and ordynaunces, come vnto Caley<sup>s</sup> forto rescue it, and forto destroye the sege; bot it was doon and ended ere they come, thanked be God of his *grace*! And þen þe Duke of Gloucestre, *with* all his peple, abode in Caley<sup>s</sup> till he had take his <sup>8</sup>consayle what was best to doon. And þen he toke all his peple and went into Flaundres, and slowe and brent all *pat* they myht, and toke .ij. townes, Poperyng and Bell. And anon whan this was doon, he comanded all his peple to *turne* ageyn to Caley<sup>s</sup>, vpon <sup>12</sup>peyn of deth, in all haste. And so þey taryed not longe there, bot come ageyn in all hast into England.

And in pis same yere, whils all this doying was at Caley<sup>s</sup> and in Flaundres, the Kyng of Scottes come *with* an huge powere of peple <sup>16</sup>and ordynaunce, and biseged þe towne of Berwik, and after, the Castell of Rokesburgh, and did moche harme *pere* as he come. And þen come þe Erle of Northumberland and þe Erle of Westmerland, *with* lordes and peple of the Cuntrees, and distroyed and <sup>20</sup>brake his seges; and he fledde *with* his peple, and turned ageyn into Scotland.

Johannes Mychell, Maior.	Thomas Mustum	{ Vicecomites Anno xv <sup>o</sup> [A.D. 1436-7.]	24
	Willelmus Gregory		

And in this same yere, and the yere of *grace* M<sup>t</sup> CCCC. xxxv<sup>ti</sup> the grete, hard, bityng frost bygan the vij. day of Decembre, and endured vnto þe xxij. day of Feuerere next, which greved þe peple <sup>28</sup>wonder sore; and moche pepel deyed in *pat* tyme, for colde and for skarcite of wode and cole. And tender herbes were slayne *with* pis frost, *pat* is to say, Rosemary, sauge, tyme, and many *oper* <sup>32</sup>herbes.

And in pis same yere deyed good Quene Kateryn, *pat* was moder to Kyng Henre the Sext, and wife to Kyng Henre the .v<sup>th</sup>, the þursday þe .iiij. day of <sup>2</sup>Ianuarye, in þe Abbey of Bermondesey without Suthwerk, in þe counte of Surre. And the Friday, the 36 viij. day of Feuerere next after, the body of the Quene was brought to Seint Kateryns beside the Toure, and so thurgh London to Seint Paules, *with* lordes and ludyes, and *with* the Maire and Aldermen,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 214, back.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 215.

and the Craftes in London and *with* all the religious peple, as chanons, prestys and freres; and there was a solempne dirige and masse on the morowe. And from thens she was brought to West-  
4 mynstre, and pere was hir terement holden and doon rially; and pere buryed in the Chapell of oure Lady, on whos soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And in this same yere, duryng the hard frost, pe Monday the  
8 xxiiij. of Ianuare, the gate of pe Cite at London Brigge ouer-threwe and fell down into Tamys to pe hard ground, and drewe the houses after hym, bothe *within* and *without*, to grete harm to pe Cite and to pe brigge.

12 And in this same yere, the walles of chirches, howses, and of Selers, *pat* were made of chalke, broke in many places, and fell in smale pecys to the grounde as dust.

And in this yere pe Kyng held his *parlement* at Westmynstre;  
16 and it byganne at pe Fest of Seint Hillary, and ended at Ester next folowyng. And in pe begynnyng of Lent, tydynges come to pe Kyng and to the Reame, how *pat* pe Kyng of Scottes, Sir Iames Steward, was slayn at Seint Johnes Towne *with* treson, by a Squyer  
20 of Scotland. And to this *parlement* come many dyuers straungers, somme of Aragon in Spayne, somme of Spruce, somme of Beam, and somme of Fraunce and Normandy. And pe Bissshop of Tyrwyn, *with* dyuers knyghtes and Squyers, come to this same  
24 *parlement*.

And in this same yere, the ix<sup>th</sup> day of Inyll, deyed Quene Iohan in the Maner of Haueryng-at-Bour in Essex, which was wife to Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>th</sup>; and from thens she was brought to  
28 Caunterbury, and there is she buryed: on whose soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And in this yere, anon after Midsomer, the Lord Willoughby, and other lordes *with* hym, knyghtes and squyers, men of armes  
32 and archers, were sent ouer the see into Fraunce, forto strenght, mayntene, and kepe the Kynges title and right *pat* he hadde in Fraunce and Normandy.

And in this same yere, at pe Natiuite of oure Lady Seint Mary,  
36 pe Erle of Warwik was ordeyned <sup>1</sup>and comaunded ouer the see into Fraunce and Norma[n]dy, forto be lieftenant and gouernour in the Kynges name, *with* strenght of all pe partyes and landes *pat* the King hath byyonde the see, as in Fraunce, Normandy, and

<sup>1</sup> leaf 215, back.

Gascoyne. And then the Duke of York come hoom ageyn, pat longe tyme had been there; and so the same tyme he toke his iourney *with* lordes, knyghtes and squyers, men of armes and archers, a royall and a worthy company, and toke *with* hym pe lady his wife, and the yonge Lord Spencer, his sonne and his heire, and shipped in Goddes name, and toke the see. And when they were forth in the see, there arose grete tempestes, stormes and wyndes; and then they stode in perill of deth; and so, as God wold, he was dryven ageyn into England costes, and were saved; and so, at Allhalowentyde next, the good Erle of Warwyk toke his shippyng ageyn, and passed *ouer* the see, and come *with* his peple to Roan in saufte, thanked be God!

12

Willelmus Estfeld, Maior.

Willelmus Hales

Willelmus Chapman

{vicecomites  
anno xvj<sup>o</sup>  
[A.D. 1437-8.]

And in this same yere, and in the yere of grace M<sup>r</sup> CCCC 16 xxxvij, a woman of Highgate, pat was a tayllours wife, lete sle hir husbond; and *perfore* she was Iuged to be brent at the Toure hill, pe Monday pe xxvij<sup>th</sup> day of Ianuare.

And in this same yere, on Esterday, a gardyner pat wonned at 20 Seint Mary at Nax in London, receued pe glorious sacrament oure Lordes body, and toke it oute of his mouth, and hidde it in a clowte, and wold haue brent it. And the parson took the sacrament, and receyued it reuerently, and brought it to pe high auter ageyn, and 24 sent pe gardyner to prison. And pe Bisshop of London and oper Bisshoppes and clergie sate vpon hym, and Iuged hym, for lollardry and erresye, to be brent in Smythfeld.

And in this same yere, the xiiij. day of Iuyn, .v. men of the 28 Cuntre of Tynderden in Kent, were founden and taken for heresyas and destroyers of the Kinges peple; and so they were brought to <sup>1</sup> Maidston in Kent, and there Iuged to deth, to be drawe, hanged, quartered, and theire hedes smytyn of.

32

And in this same yere, the Erle of Morteyn went *ouer* the see into Fraunce by the Kynges comaundment and consayle, forto strenght and kepe in the Kinges name certeyn partyes in Fraunce and Normandy, *with* knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers. 36

And all this yere duryng, was grete scarcite of corn; for a busshell whete was at xx d. and ijs., and in the last ende of the yere at xxvj d. pe busshell; and a busshell of rye was at xvj d. and

xviij d., and barly at x d. and xij d.; and then was right feble brede made for þe comon peple; and a galon of rede wyne at x d., and all oper swete wyne at xvj d., as Romney, Malvesyne, Clarry, Tyre; 4 and flesh and fyssh was longe tyme at an high price, which was grete charge to all the comons purghout þe Reame. And in all þe North Cuntre a bussel of whete was at x d. the most part of þe yere. And moche worthy peple deyed in the yere of pestilence, 8 and of oper *commune* peple of men, women and childern, thurghout þe Ream, and principally at York and in the North Cuntre; on whos soules God haue mercy! amen!

And in that same yere, in the Moneth of Iuyll, were made .vij. 12 Sergeante; of Lawe; and they held theire generall fest the day of the Translacion of Seint Thomas, in the Bisshoppes Inne of Ely in Holbourne.

16	Stephen Broun, Maior.	Hugo Dyke	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{vicecomites} \\ \text{anno xvij}^o \\ [\text{A.D. 1438-9}]. \end{array} \right.$
		Nicholaus Yoo	

And in this same yere, and the yere of *grace* M<sup>t</sup> CCCC xxxix<sup>ti</sup>, on Seint Clementes day, betwene .iij. and .iiij. after None, per 20 fell such wedring of wynde and rayne, thondyr and lightnynges; and a grete smoke of the lightnyng, þat all peple were sore agast perof, for þe hydous noyse þat was herd in the Reame. And perwith an ertlquake, þat shoke all the grounde.

24 And in this yere on Seint Georges Even,<sup>1</sup> the holy Martir, from .ij. after mydnyght vnto .v. of the klok in þe mornyng, per was so huge and so grevous wedryng of thundir and lightnyng, hale, wynde and Rayne, þat the peple were hugely agast and dred of it; 28 bot oure Lord God and his blessed Moder, oure Lady Seint Marye, saved and kept all his hande-werk at all tymes,—blessed myght He and she be! amen!

And in this same yere, on the Monday next after Trinite 32 Sonday, the Erle of Huntingdon, with oper lordes, knyghtes and Squyers, men of armes and archers, went out of London toward the see for to gouerne and kepe the Cite of Burdeux, and also the Cuntreyes of Gascoyne and Guyan, to the profite of oure liege Lorde 36 the Kyng, and to the welfare of the Reame of England.

And in this same yere deyed Sir Richard Beauchamp, Erle of Warwyk, in Normandy; and his bonys were brought into England,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 216, back.

and buryed at the towne of Warwik: on whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in this same yere, the .v. day of Iuyn, the Erle of Stafford, *with* lordes, knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers, 4 in good aray, went ouer the see to Caleys, for tretice betwene England and Fraunce. And *within* .ij. dayes after, went ouer the see to Caleys, the Archebisshop of York, pe Bisshop of Norwiche, and the Bisshop of Seint Daui, *with* a grete meyne of clerkes, and 8 moche *oper* peple *with* theym, in good arraye, to Caleis, to this same tretice. And the Friday next after that, went the Cardinall, the Bisshop of Wynchestre, *with* a grete multitude of peple, ouer the see to Caleys, to the same tretice. And the Seturday next, 12 went out of the Cite of London toward Caleis, to that same tretice, the Duke of Norffolk, *with* *oper* grete lordes, knyghtes and squyers, and moche *oper* peple *with* hym, in good arraye; And Sir Richard Wodevyle, knyght, and Sir Roger Chamberlayn, knyght; and 16 many *oper* worthy states of knyghtes and Squyers, *with* men of armes and archers, went ouer the see into Normandy, to kepe the Kynges title and right. And pere pe Cardynall and these Bisshoppes, and the Duke of Norffolk, abode pere, and treted *with* 20 the Frenssh party vnto pe terme of Michelmasse <sup>1</sup> next folowyng.

And in all this yere, all greynes of corne were at an high price; for whete was at xxxij d., barly at xvj d., and rye at .ij. s., vnto the terme of Michelmasse next; and then was whete at xvij d., barly 24 at x d., and Rye at xiiij d.

Robertus Large, Maior.	Robertus Marchall	{	vicecomites	28
	Philippus Malpas		anno xvij <sup>o</sup>	
			[A.D. 1439-40].	

And in this same yere, and in the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup> CCCC xl., a seruau<sup>t</sup> pat was with a man of Hakney, .ij. myle from London, come *with* his mayster to London, and bought vitayle and must for deyn<sup>t</sup>e, forto sende hoom to his wife, for she was grete *with* childe. 32 And the fals creature, when he come hoom, slewe pe wife and the child *within* her, and an *oper* damysell and a noper yong felawe pat was *within* his hous, and robbed theym of all theire Iewels and tresoure pat they hadde within theym. And so he fledde, and wold 36 haue goon his weye; but God wold not so; for murdour woll com oute; and so he was take and brought to London, and so to Westminster; and pere he had his dome, to be brought to pe Toure of

<sup>1</sup> leaf 217.



London, and pere leide on a hirdell, and drawn thurgh the Cite to Tyburn, and pere hanged for his falshede.

And anon after in this same yere, pe Cardynall and oper  
4 Bishoppes, and the Duke of Norffolk, with all oper lordes, bothe spirituall and temporall, had ended theire trete, and made a trewes betwene England and Fraunce and Flaundes for iij. yere; and thus was this matere ended.

8 And in this same yere, Pope Eugeny, of the high grace and gifte of God, and of his grete avise and gouernance, conuerted and brought all the land of Grece, and oper provynces and kyngdoms, into Cristen lawe and feith, and to hold the lawe and feith of Rome  
-12 and of the Pope, as we doon at all tymes.

And in this same yere, on the morne after Seint Martyns Day, Kyng Henry the Sext held his parlement at Westminster,<sup>1</sup> and it endured there vnto Cristmasse next, and myght not acorde. And  
16 the morowe after xij. day, the Kyng and his lordes removed it to pe towne of Redyng; and pere the parlement was holden and ended, to the welfare of the King and of the Reame, as we trust and hope in oure Lord God, in tyme comyng.

20 And in this same yere, aboute Cristmasse, went the Erle of Somersett ouer the see into Fraunce and Normandy, with a roiall peple of lordes, knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers, forto gouerne there pe Kynges peple and landes, and to strenght the  
24 lordes and theire peple pat hadde been pere long tyme, savyng and mayntenyng the Kynges right and title.

And in pis same yere, the Duchesse of Clarence deyed in the Abbey of Bermondesey without Suthwerk in Surre. And sho was  
28 caried to Caunterbury, and buried beside the Lord Thomas hir husbond, which was Duke of Clarence, on whos soule, God haue mercy! amen!

And in this same yer deyed the Countesse of Warwik, and is  
32 buried beside hir lord, Sir Richard Beauchamp, Erle of Warwik: on whos soules, God haue mercy! amen!

And this same yere, in the tyme of Lent, come .vj. persones with theire shippes from byyonde the see, with dyuers fyssh forto  
36 vitayle the Cite of London. And when they were delyuerd, and goyng homward, per come a company of fals men, and pursued theym in a barge, and come vpon theym in the nyght, as pey were aslepe in theire vesseles and rode by anker in Tamys, and slewe all

<sup>1</sup> leaf 217, back.

pat were there in the shippes, and cutte peir throtes and cast theym in the water, and after drowned their shippes,—and the shippes sank in the water,—for no man shuld espye their falsnesse. And so, *with*in a while after, two of these theves were take and dampned, for their trespassse, pat they brake the Kynges trewes and peas, to be ledde to Seint Katerins byyonde the Toure of London, and pere a payre of Galowes to be sett vp, and hanged *with* cheynes and colers of Iron, till they be wasted and spent. 8 And this was doon on a Friday, in the mornynge, pe xix<sup>th</sup> day of Aprell.

And in pis same yere, <sup>1</sup>a fuller of Shordiche apeched of treson many worthy men of Kent, bothe Squiers, and oper worthy men of 12 gentelmen; wherof he was atteint, and proved fals of his fals apechement; And so he was brought afore the lawe, and dampned to be drawe and hanged, and his hede smytyn of, and sett on London Brigge, and his quarters set on .iiij. gates of London: and 16 this was doon the iiij<sup>th</sup> day of Maye.

And in this same yere, Sir Richard Wyche, vicar of Hermondesworth in *Middlesex*, pat somtyme was vicar of Depford in Kent; and oon Roger Norman, of Normandy born, was take and brought 20 before the Bisshop of London, and tofore the clergie, in the Chapitre hous of Seint Paules; and there they bothe were conuicte in heresye. And then there come a writte from the Chaunceller to the Maire and Shirrefs of London, to do execucion on theym; and 24 so they were brought to the Towre Hill on Seint Botulphes Day, and pere brent, bothe in oon tonne; and thus they ended their lives in this world. And pe peple pat sawe theym dye, had grete compassion on theym, for the confession and ende pat they made 28 in their good byleve, and thanked God of his sonde.

And in this same yere, the xij. day of August, per fell such wederyng of rayn, thunder and lightnyng in pe after None, pat it was hydous, and wonder to se; wherof the peple were sore agast; 32 for the lightnyng fell in Bredstrete, on pe Inne pat is called the Sterre; and there it did moche harme, for it fell in a hey hous where per was .L. cartfull of heye, and more; and it was all lost and destroyed, and was caried into Chepe; and had not been the 36 high merey and grace of God, and the grete Rayn, the peple dred it shuld haue brent moche of the Cite and destroyed moche good in that partye.

Johannes Paddlesle, Maior.	Willelmus Whetenhale	{ viccomites anno xix <sup>o</sup> [A.D. 1440-1.]
	Johannes Sutton	

4 And in this yere, and the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup>CCCC xli, the iiij<sup>th</sup>  
day of Nouembre, the Duke of Orlianne went out of the Reame of  
England to Caleys, and so forth into Fraunce, and was receyued at  
Saint Omers of pe Duke <sup>1</sup>of Burgoyne and of the Duchesse his  
8 wife, and of many oper lordes, knyghtes and squyers, and of oper  
comons of Fraunce; and so he come into his owne lordship.

And in this yere, the xxvj. day of Nouembre, a knyght of  
Spayne chalenged Sir Richard Wodvyle, knyght, in certeyn poyntes  
12 and courses of werre, on foote, within listes, with polaxe, swerd and  
dagger. And thys feet was doon in Smythfeld betwene these two  
knyghtes well and worthely, and bothe good men and worthy in  
their dedys of armes. And so the Kyng, of his roiall mageste,  
16 cryed 'hoo,' and toke their quarell into his gracious handes.

And in this same yere, the xvj<sup>th</sup> day of Maye, the Duke of  
York, the Erle of Oxenford, the Erle of Ewe, Sir Richard Wodvyle,  
knyght, with oper Barons, lordes, knyghtes and squyers, men of  
20 armes and archers, went ouer the See with all good aray, as armoure  
and all oper stuff pat belongeth to werre, to gouerne and kepe the  
Kynges right in Fraunce and Normandy, and in all Cuntrees in  
those partyes, to the worship and profite of the Kyng and of the  
24 Reame of England. And with theym went ouer the see the  
Duchesse of York, the Duchesse of Bedford, the Countesse of Oxen-  
ford, the Countesse of Ewe, and many oper mo ladyes with their  
lordes, and other gentelwomen and damysels pat bilonged to theym :  
28 Almyghty God gouerne theym all, and kepe in his saufigard !  
Amen !

And in this same yere, the xv<sup>th</sup> day of Iuyll, Kyng Henry the  
vj<sup>th</sup> come oute of Essex to London, in at the port called Algate,  
32 and went ouer London Brigge, and so thurgh Suthwerk to his  
Maner of Kenyngton. And at his comyng in at Algate, the Maire,  
Aldermen and Comons, in their best aray, welcomed the Kyng  
into the Cite; and made grete Ioye of his comyng. And godely  
36 the Kyng thanked the Maire and his brethern and all the Comons.  
And the Kyng was not so sone passed the Cite, bot pat it hayled,  
rayned and eke lightned, pat well was hym pat was within house;  
and so ayenst even it fared in the same Maner, wherof the peple

<sup>1</sup> leaf 218, back.

were sore agast, and aferd of the grete tempest. And so it was spoken emonges the peple, *pat per* were som wikked fendes and spiritis arered out of helle by coniuracion, forto noy *pe* peple in the Reame, and to put theym to trouble, discencion <sup>1</sup> and vnrest. An 4  
*pen* was it knowen *pat* certeyn clerkes, and women *pat* ar called 'wicches,' had made theire operacion and theire craft to destroy men and women, or whom they list, vnto deth by theire fals craft and worching. Wherof Dame Alianore Cobham, which was *pe* 8  
 Duchesse of Gloucestre, was named principally of these actes and fals dedes forto destroy the Kyng, whom God saue and kepe! Bot as God wold saue his hande-werk and *seruaunt*, made it be knowen openly, all theire fals werkys and treseun *pat* they ymagyned and 12  
 wroght, which was openly shewed afore all peple *pat* wold com to Seint Pauls Crosse on the Sondag, the xxij. day of Iuyll, by Roger *pat* was hir Clerk, a Nigromancier, by the deuels crafte and ymaginacion in his worching, which was shewed openly in *pe* 16  
*sermon-tyme*, the day aboueseyd, to all peple *pat* wold come to se it, of here scriptures, ymages of siluer, of wexe, and of *oper* metalles, and swerdys, with many *oper* dyuers instrumentes of this fals craft of Nigromancy and the deuels powere. And pere Roger, this 20  
 Clerk, stode vpon an high stage, with all his Instrumentes about hym, spoyling of his garment; and did vpon hym a surplyce, with a crowne of papir vpon his hede, forto forsake all his fals craft of the devell, and for to relapse all *pat* he had doon and wrought by 24  
 the devyll and his powere, in presence of the Archebisshop of Canterbury, the Cardynall, *pe* Bisshop of Wynchestre, *pe* Bisshop of London, the Bisshop of Salesbury, and many *oper* grete clerkys beyng there present; and of *oper* lordes temporalles, therle of 28  
 Huntingdon, therle of Northumberland, and therle of Stafford, and moo *oper* lordes of the Kynges Consayl, and the Maire and Aldermen, with *pe* Comons of the Cite of London, and many moo people of dyuers partyes, and straungers of the Reame, and aliens 32  
 of *oper* straunge landes beyond the see, beyng in *pe* <sup>2</sup> Cite of London *pat* tyme.

And on *pe* Tewesday, which was Seint James Day *pe* Apostell, Dame Alianore Cobham come out of the seintwary at Westminster 36  
 into the Kinges Chapell which is within the Kinges paleys, to the high autere of the same Chapell, which is of Seint Stephen, before the principall clergie of the Reame which were pere present, *pat* is

<sup>1</sup> leaf 219.<sup>1</sup> leaf 219, back.

to sey, the Archebisshop of Caunterbury, *primate* of all England,  
the Cardynal of Wynchestre, the Cardynal of York, the Bisshops  
of London, Bathe, and Salesbury, and of other many *principall*  
4 Clerkes of the Reame which were there *present*, and examyned  
Dame Alianore Cobham of xxviij. *dyuers* poyntes, bothe of felony  
and of treson, which pey opened and shewed there to hir. And  
she ansuered to the Clergye, and sayde ‘not gilty’; and so they let  
8 hir go sauf ageyn to the Seintwary vnto the morowe, pat was Seint  
Anne day. And thider she come ageyn as she was charged of the  
Bisshops; and there was Roger hir Clerk, present, and vouched all  
these poyntes vpon hir pat were shewed the day aboueseyd to hir,  
12 wherof she knowleched *somme* poyntes at that tyme, the nombre of  
.v.,—and so she went ageyn into Westmynstre for a certeyn tyme  
tyll pat the Kyng, with his Consayll, wold do correccion and  
remedy of all this fals actys and dedys, thus ymagyned and doon  
16 to his *persone*, and his lordes and lieges.

And on pe same day the Kyng sent to London to the Maire  
and Aldermen and Comons of the Cite, and also to therle of  
Huntingdon, pe Erle of Stafford, therle of Northumberland, the  
20 Tresorer of England, Sir Rauf Cromwell, the Lord Fawnehop, Sir  
Iohn Cornwayle, Sir Walter Hungerford, and *oper* knyghtes and  
Squyers, to fele and see what was to be doon to amende and destroy  
this fals dede and cursed ymagynacion to the Kyng and to pe  
24 Reame. And they, of their good discrecion and wysedom, as  
trewe liege peple ordeyned .iiij. enquestes *within* the Cite, of  
substantiall peple; to brynge and shewe trewe inquisicion of all  
crymes and trespasses pat she was accused of. And they found hir  
28 gilty bothe <sup>1</sup> of treson and of felony; and so, thurghout Middelsex,  
the questes were charged at Westminster of knyghtes and Squyers,  
to brynge in their *verdite*; and they indited her in the same  
poyntes, bothe of felony and of treson. And so, the .xj. day of  
32 August, Dame Alianore was take into the handes and ward of Sir  
Iohn Steward and Sir William Wolff, knyghtes, and to *oper*  
persones as the Kyng and his consayle ordeyned and devised to  
her, and to *oper* of hir consayle and affinite, as they haue deserued,  
36 after his tyme and leyser; and she to be kept in holde strongly in  
the Castell of Ledes in Kent, vnto pe wille of the Kyng and of his  
Consayle, and all pe *oper* persones, bothe men, women wicches, and  
*oper*, to be kept in the Toure of London to his likyng, leyser, and

<sup>1</sup> leaf 220.

tym to do to theym as they haue deserved. And so, the .xix. day of Octobre next, by the Kynges comaundment, and his Consayl, Sir Iohn Steward, knyght, *with strenght of peple*, brought Dame Alianore Cobham from the Castell of Ledes to Westminster, into 4 the Kynges paleys; and there she was put and kept in warde of pe Constable vnto hir answeere and examynacion. And the Friday next she was brought into Seint Stephens Chapell, called 'the Kynges chapell,' and 'the Kynges college,' afore the Clergye; and 8 *pere* was examyned of hir sorcery, and wiccheecraft and treson. And so all the poyntes were opened and shewed there to hir by certeyn Bisshops and clerkys, *pat* is to sey: the Bisshop of London, pe Bisshop of Lincoln, the Bisshop of Salesbury, and the Bisshop 12 of Norwiche, *with moo oper doctours* and maysters of diuinite, beyng *pere* present. And then she *withneyed* and *withseyd* all the poyntes *pat* were put and shewed to hir *pat* tyme. And than she had respite and day of ansuere till the Monday next. And *pere* 16 she come ageyn to the same chapell, tofore all the Clergye and Bisshops and doctours, and maystres of diuinite. And then come Roger, hir Clerk, *with* all his Instrumentes *pat* were shewed at Seint Paules Crosse aforetyme, and they were shewed to Dame 20 Alianore Cobham; and she *withneyed*, and seyde 'it was not so; bot *pat* she did it forto haue borne a child<sup>1</sup> by hir lord, the Duke of Gloucestre,' and *pere* was Maister Thomas Suthwell, parson of Seint Stephens in Walbroke, and Chanon of pe Kynges Chapell, 24 *pat* was of hir craft and consayle ayenst hir; and the wicche of Eye, beside Westminster, ayenst Dame Alianore Cobham; and seide *pat* she was causer and doer of all this werk and dede; And so they were all put vp ageyn as for that tyme. And the xxvj<sup>th</sup> day 28 of Octobre next suyng, deyed the seide Mayster Thomas Suthwell, in the Toure of London. And the Friday next, the wicche of Eye was brought from the Towre of London into Smythfeld, and there brent for hir fals beleve and wiccheecraft *pat* she had vsed of longe 32 tyme.

Robertus Clopton, Maior.	Wilhelmus Combes	} vicecomites anno xx <sup>o</sup> [A.D. 1441-42.] 36
	Ricardus Riche	

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup>CCCC xlii., the .vj. day of Novembre, the Archbisshop of Canterbury and the .ij. Cardynalles of Wynchestre and of York, and pe Bisshops of

<sup>1</sup> leaf 220, back.

London, Lincoln, Salesbury and Norwiche, with dyuers doctors  
and maistres of diuinite, deuorsed and departed the Duke of  
Gloucestre and Dame Alianore Cobham, as for matrymony made  
4 before betwene theym two. And so Dam Alianore Cobham, by  
ordynauunce and charge of the Archebisshop of Canterbury and his  
brethern, was Joyned to hir penauunce for pe grete offence and  
trespasse pat she had doon ayenst God and holy Chirche, and for  
8 the fals sorcery and wiccheecraft pat she vsed and longe tyme had  
wrought, pat she shuld go from Westminster to London .iij.  
market dayes in the weke, Monday, Wednesday, and Friday, with  
a taper brennyng in her hande: oon to Seint Paules, an other to  
12 Cristechirch, and pe thridde to Seint Michelles in Cornhill. And  
the Monday, the xiiij<sup>th</sup> day of Nouembre, Dame Alianore Cobham  
come by water from Westminster to the Temple brigge, forto do hir  
charge of penance, on fote thurgh Fletestrete <sup>1</sup> to Seint Paules;  
16 and pere she offred hir first taper. And the Wednesday next she  
come from Westminster by Water to the Swanne in Tamystrete,  
and come on fote with a taper in hir hande, and come vp Tamystrete  
to Seint Magnus corner, and vp Briggestrete, and Eschepe and  
20 Graschirch, and so to the Corner of Leden-Hall, and so to Crist-  
chirch; and there offred the secund taper. And the Friday next,  
she come from Westminster by water to the Quene-Hithe, and so  
vp purgh Bredstrete into Chepe; and thurgh Chepe into Cornhill,  
24 to Seint Michelles chirch, and pere offred a taper of a pound waxe;  
And then was she brought ageyn to Westminster, into the Constable  
ward.

And the Seturday next, pe <sup>xv.</sup>xviij. day of Nouembre, Roger  
28 Bultyngbrok, Dame Alianore Cobhams Clerk of Nigromancy and  
sorcery, was brought to the Guyldhall of London, and pere dampned  
for his fals treson, and for his fals tresoun, and sorcery and  
Nigromancy ayenst all holy Chirch; wherthurgh he was dampned  
32 to deth by landes lawe. And he was ledde to the Toure of London,  
and leyd vpon a hirdell, and drawen thurgh the Cite to Tybourne  
galowes, and pere hanged, and let downe ageyne all quyk, and his  
bowelles cutte out of his body, and brent afore hym. And then was  
36 his hede smytyn of, and his body quartered; and oon sent to  
Oxenford, the secund sent to Cambrigge, the thridde to Bristowe,  
and the fourth to [ ]<sup>2</sup>; and his hede was set vpon London  
Brigge: and pus he ended his life in pis world.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 221.

<sup>2</sup> Blank space left in MS.

And Dame Alianore Cobham yet kept in warde in þe Constableri of Westminster, vnto the Wednesday, the xxiiij. day of Ianuare; and then she was brought thens to þe Maner of Neyte, which is the Abbotes of Westminster; and þere she was kept 4 Wednesday, Thursday, and Friday till noon. And when she was brought first out of Westminster, þere was such wedryng of thonder, lightnyng, hayll and rayne, þat the peple were sore adredde and agast of the grete noyse and hydous of þe weder, <sup>1</sup> þat sodenly was 8 doon and shewed þere at theire passage at þat tyme. And on the Friday at after-None, she was had at the Kynges comaundment and wille, forth to the Cite of Chestre, in an hors-bere, with strenght of peple; and fro Chestre into þe Ile of Man, to be kept þere in sauf 12 garl, etc.

And in this same yere was a batell doon, the xxx<sup>th</sup> of Ianuare, in Smythfeld, betwene .ij. worthy men, and bold in armes and fight: þat oon men called Sir Philipe Beef, a knyght of Cateloyne; 16 and on þat oþer party, a Squyere of þe Kynges of England, þat men called Iohn Astley. And at þe comyng to þe feld, cyper of theym toke theire tent; and then was þe knyghtes son of Cateloyne brought to the Kyng, and the Kyng made hym knyght; and then he was 20 brought ageyn to his faders tent. And then, *within* a while after, the heraudes of armes called theym bothe oute, to do their fight; and so pey come in bothe armed *with* all theire wepen about theym; bot the knyght come *with* his swerd drawe, and the Squyere *with* 24 his spere. And the Squyer cast his spere to þe knyght; and the knyght avoyded it *with* the swerd, and cast it to the ground; and the Squyer hent his axe, and went to the knyght at onys, and smote many strokes hard and sore vpon his Basenet and on his 28 hande, and made hym lese his axe. And it fell from hym to þe grounde, and brast vp his vmbrere .iiij. tymes, and kaught his daggere, and wold haue smyten hym in the face forto haue slayne hym in the feld. And then the Kyng cryed ‘hoo!’ and so they 32 were departed; and cyper of theym went hoome ageyn to his tent. And then the Kyng sent for his squyere Iohn Astley, and made hym to be dubbed knyght, for his worthy and good Iourney þat he did and wrought at þat tyme on his enemy in his noble presence, 36 etc.

And in this same yere, the xviiij<sup>th</sup> day of Maye, began a huge storme of sodeyn wederyng, anon after .iiij. of þe elok at after-None,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 221, back.



vnto .vj. of the clok, of hayle, rayne, thundre and lightnyng, *pat* the peple wondred *per*vpon. And *pe* hayle bete down all the blossomes of trees, *pat* the frute was all goon for this yere, at  
4 London and aboute London, for *pe* multitude of watere <sup>1</sup>*pat* come of *pe* hayle and rayne.

And in this yere, the xxv day of Maye, the Lord Talbot toke his iourney fro London toward Normandy and Fraunce, for to help  
8 to gouerne and kepe vnder the Duke of York, the parties byyond the see, *with* knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers, and all maner stuff *pat* longed to werre : which, Almyghty God gouerne, save, and kepe, and all *pe* Kynges trewe peple, bothe in that party  
12 and in oures ! And er he toke his iourney out of this lande, *pe* Kyng made the Lord Talbot, Erle of Shrovesbury, and his son and heire Lord Talbot.

16	Johannes Atherley, Maior.	Thomas Beaumont	{	vicecomites
		Ricardus Nordon		anno xxj <sup>o</sup>
				[A.D. 1442-43.]

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup> CCCC xliij.,  
*pe* Tewesday the xiiij. day of Maye, oon Botiler Steynour, and a  
20 Baker, and two o<sup>per</sup> men and a preest, which were strong, errant theves, robberyng and quellyng the Kynges peple, were dampned at Westminster to be ledde in a Cart standyng vp<sup>r</sup>ight from the Kynges Benche in Suthwerk, and so thurgh the Cite of London,  
24 tyll they come to Tyburn, and there to be hanged. And so they deyed, all .v. persones ; and at the comyng of *pem* into the Cart, *pere* fell suche wedryng from the skye, *pat* folke were sore adredde and agast, it was so horrible and grete, what of rayne, thondere and  
28 lightnyng and hayll, in their passage to *pe* deth. And on the Tewesday next suyng, two strong theves, and a woman thefe, were hanged at Tyborn for their fals offences and trespassez, and murtheryng of the Kynges peple.

32 And in this same yere, *pe* Monday next folowyng, the woman of Kent *pat* met *with* the Kyng at *pe* Blak-Heth in Kent, and spake to hym boldly, and reviled hym vngoodly and vnwisely for Dame Alianore Cobham, *pat* he shuld haue hir hoom ageyn to hir  
36 husbond, the Duke of Gloucestre. And *with* these wordes the Kyng waxe wroth, and toke it to hert ; and <sup>2</sup>she was arested and brought into prison by the lawe, and so broght to Westminster afore the Iusticez of the Kynges Benche. And *pere* she was repreveld

<sup>1</sup> leaf 222.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 222, back.

for hir vngoodly langage, and fole-hardynesse to speke so to hir liege lorde, the Kyng. And she ansuered not, bot asked the Kynges grace. And fro pat day she was put vp ageyn in the Kynges Benche till Wednesday next, and then was brought ageyn 4 to Westminster afore the Iustices. And when she was examyned, she wold not speke ne ansuere; and perfore pe Iustices gafe hir dome, pat she shuld stand in a cart vpright, from the Kynges Benche, and so thurgh London, pat all peple myght se hir, with a 8 paupire about hir hede, of hir proude and lewed langage pat she had spoke and shewed to pe Kyng. And so she was caryed ageyn purgh London and Suthwerk, in pe same Cart, tyll she come to pe Blak-Heth pere as she seide these wordes vnto pe King; and then 12 was caryed ageyn to Suthwerk, and delyuerd ageyn to pe keepers of pe Kynges Benche, for to haue hir Iugement as pe Iuge had ordeyned it for her offence, forto lay as moche yron vpon hir body till she be deed: and thus she ended in this world, for hir proude 16 langage to hir Kyng and souerayn lord.

And in this yere the Kyng made the Erle of Somerset, Markes-Dorsett, and ordeyned hym with a grete Navy of peple, of lordes, knyghtes, Squyers, men of armes and archers; with all maner stuff 20 of werre, forto gouerne, kepe and mayntene his landes in Fraunce, Normandy, and Guyan. And he abode longe tyme after in England, vpon the coostes, to abide for shipping and peple pat were not come to hym. And so, the xxj. day of Iuyll, he toke his 24 shipping ouer the see into Fraunce and Normandy, with his Retenew in good aray and in good spede, purgh the grace of God and his Moder, oure Lady Seint Mary, and by the comfort of Seint George. And in this yere, the vj. day of August, Gyles, the Dukes 28 broder of Bretayn, come to London, and so to pe Kyng, as for his souerayn lord and best beloned frende, forto play and sporte hym here in this lande, for a tyme, <sup>1</sup>and bysought pe Kyng of his grace and good lordship at all tymes. And so he and his were loeged at 32 the Crowne in Fanchirch Strete, for the tyme of his abidyng here, and of the Kynges grace and gode wille.

Thomas Catworth, Maior.	Nicholaus Wyfold { <i>vicecomites</i> Johanues Norman { <i>auno xxij<sup>do</sup></i> [A.D. 1443-44.]	36
-------------------------	---	----

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup>CCCC xliij<sup>ti</sup>, anon after Ester, the Duke of Somerset come out of Fraunce and

<sup>1</sup> leaf 223.

Normandy into England, and deyed at a Maner of his owne in the west cuntre : vpon whos soule, God haue mercy ! amen !

And in pis same yere, on the Wednesday in the Whitson weke,  
 4 þe Kyng made the Erle of Huntyngdon, Duke of Excestre, in the  
 Castell of Wyndesore ; and in the fest of the Exaltacion of the  
 Holy Crosse next folowyng, the Kyng made the Erle of Stafford,  
 Duke of Bokyngham, and the Erle of Suffolk, Markeys of Suffolk  
 8 and of Norfolk.

And in this same yere, the ambassiatours come out of Fraunce,  
 and *oper parties* byyonde the see, vnto the Kyng, for a mariage  
 for hym, which was a worthy Kynges doughter, *pat* is called  
 12 Kyng of Cisile and of Ierusalem. And then the Kyng sent his  
 ambassiatours ouer the see, which was þe Markes of Suffolk, with  
*oper* lordes, Clerkys, knyghtes and Squiers, out of England, to  
 knowe of this worthy mariage, and forto make a finall peas betwene  
 16 the Reames of England and Fraunce.

And in this yere, the xxij<sup>th</sup> day of August, Iohn Kerver of  
 Redyng, gentleman, vntreuly and vngoodly, and ayenst feith and  
 lawe, depraned the Kyng ; wherfore he was take and brought  
 20 before þe Kynges Consayle, and *pere* examyned of his vngodely  
 speche and wordes. And he ansuered, and knowleched hym guilty :  
 wherfore the Kynges Consayle Jugged hym to deth as a traytour.  
 And this was his full dome : *pat* he shuld be ledde ageyn to the  
 24 towne of Redyng, and drawen and hanged, and let downe ageyn all  
 quyk, and then brought ageyn to þe Cite of London, to þe Toure,  
 and from <sup>1</sup>thens drawen to Tyborn galowes, and hanged, and let  
 down ayen all quyk, and then bowayled and *quartered*, and his  
 28 bowayls brent, and pen his hede smyt of, and set on London  
 Brigge ; and oon *quartere* to be set vp at Redyng, and the *oper* in  
 dyuers townes in þe Reame. And then the Kyng, of his grete  
*grace* and mercy, sent in all haste his Charter of pardon of his  
 32 offence and trespasse *pat* he had doon ayenst his persone, and so  
 delyuerd hym quyte, and sent hym to Redyng in sauf garde.

And then the xxv. day of Maye next suyng, þe Kyng of Cisyll  
 and of Ierusalem, with the Quene his wife, brought with theym  
 36 Dame Margaret their doughter, to þe Cite of Toures in Turyn, in  
 Fraunce, and *pere* met the Kyng of Fraunce and the Quene his  
 wife. And the Kyng of Fraunce toke the Kyng of Cisill and of  
 Ierusalem by the hande ; and so they yede forth togeder ; and the

<sup>1</sup> leaf 223, back.

Quene of Fraunce toke the Quene of Cisill and of Ierusalem by the hande, and so they yede forth togeder thurgh the Cite till they come to the chief Chirch of pe Cite of Tours in Tureyn. And then come this Dame *Margarete* as for Quene of England, and ledde 4 betwene the Dolphyn of Fraunce and an-*oper* grete Prince of Fraunce; and they ledde Dame *Margaret* to pe chief Chirche, which is of Seynt Martyn, *with* .vij. dukes and .xiiij. Erles, *with* *oper* grete lordes and ladyes folowing theym, into the same Chirche. 8 And pen come pe Markeys of *Suffolk*, and all pe *oper* ambassatours of England. And pere Dame *Margaret* made suraunce to pe Markeis of *Suffolk*, and principally to the Kyng of England, and to all these ambassatours; and she was made pere Quene of England. 12 And pe Markeis of *Suffolk* and pe *oper* ambassatours made surance to Dame *Margaret*, in presence of pe kynges and quenes, dukes, Erles, lordes and ladyes, and also in presence of a legate of Rome there beyng at *pat* tyme. And then the Dolphyn and the *oper* 16 prince[s] ledde Dame *Margarete*, as Quene of England, to pe place *pat* was ordeyned for hyr worship at that tyme, and these kynges, and pese .ij. quenes folowyng theym, *with* all the dukes, Erles, lordes and ladyes, *with* pe ambassatours of England. And pere 20 Quene *Margarete* was set in pe <sup>1</sup>myddes of the halle, as principall of this fest, and ryally by hir oone, as Quene of England. And these .ij. *oper* quenes were at a table togedir vpon the right side of Quene *Margarete*. And lordes and ladyes were worthely served 24 thurgh all the Court; and all pe peple of comons *pat* folowed theym had grete chere of mete and drynke; and they made ioye and myrth, and song (all with high voyce) Nowell! Nowell! Nowell! and peas, peas, peas be to vs! Amen!

28

Henricus Frowyk, Maior.

Stephanus Forster	{	vicecomites
Hugo Wyche.		anno xxiiij <sup>mo</sup>
		[A.D. 1444-45.]

And in this same yere, and the yere of grace M<sup>t</sup>.CCCC. xlv., 32 pe vj<sup>th</sup> day of Nouembre, whan all maner stuff of ordynaunce was made and doon for the Quenes comyng into England, *pat* is to sey, mete, hors, harnesse, chares, *with* all stuff *pat* belonged to theym,— and pen pe Markeis of *Suffolk* and pe lady his wife, *with* *oper* 36 ladyes and gentelwomen, lordes, knyghtes and squyers, and all *oper* *seruitours* *pat* bylonged to theym, and to pe ordynaunce, for oure Kynges honure and worship went out of London to pe see-costes,

forto shippe theym and all theire ordynaunces, forto mete with  
Quene Margaret and with hir company, beyng in Fraunce, and  
condite hir into England in sauf gard to hir lord, Kyng Henry of  
4 England and Fraunce, by the gift and grace of oure Lord Ihesu  
Crist. Amen!

And in this yere, the first day of Februar, was grete wedryng  
of wynde, hayle, snowe, rayne, thunder and lightnyng, at the after-  
8 None; and it endured .iiij. oures; and it did grete harme to þe Cite  
of London, for it brent Seint Pauls grete steple, bothe on þe west  
syde and on þe south syde. And þe peple espied þe fyre, and come  
to Seint Pauls forto quenche the fyre in þe steple. And goodly  
12 they laboured, and quenched þe fyre as ferre as they kouth serche  
and fynde. And it was quenched with vyneger. And so the  
Maire herd of this grete hurte, and come with grete peple to Seint  
Pauls, to here and se how it stode there, and to help þem, if nele  
16 had been. And þen þe peple withdrowe theym, and went hoom  
ageyn, and trusted to God it had been in rest and peas.

And then anon after, betwene viij. and ix. of þe klok, þe fyre  
brast<sup>1</sup> oute ageyn of the steple, more feruent þen it did before, and  
20 did moche harme to the lede and tymber of the steple. And anon  
come þe Mayre and moche peple, and with vynyger, and staunched  
þe fyre þat was right fervent,—blessed be God of all his giftes!  
Amen! And þen after, at the Ledenhall in Cornhill of London, a  
24 standard of tre was set in myddys of the pavement fast in the  
grounde, nayled with holme and Ive, for disport of Cristmasse to þe  
peple of the Cite. And it was þat tyme torne vp and cast downe  
with þe malign spirite, and the stones of the pavement all about  
28 cast in þe strete to dyuers houses, so þat the peple were sore agast  
of the grete fervent tempestes þat shewed that tyme.

And in this yere, the xvij<sup>th</sup> day of Feuerere, þere was a bataylle  
ordeyned in Smythfeld, and set to fight within lystes for life and  
32 deth, betwene Thomas Fitz-Thomas, Pryoure of Kylmayn in  
Ireland, which appeled Sir Iames Botillere, Erle of Ormond, of  
treson þat he did in þe Cuntre of Ireland ayenst hym. And this  
Prioure withdrowe hym, and come not to batayle, where thurgh, as  
36 leude, he was convict. And the Erle of Ormond was redy in his  
tent to ansuere hym; bot the Prioure come not.

And in this yere, the .xxij. day of Feuerere, the Kyng held  
his parlement at Westminster, to Archbisshops, bisshops, abbotes

<sup>1</sup> leaf 224, back.

and Priours, and to dukes, Erles, lordes and Barons, knyghtes, squyers, and to Citezens, Burgeises, and comons. And this parlement endured vnto Palme-Sunday; and then it was adiourned by þe King, and his Consayle of his lordes of the parlement, vnto the 4 fest of Seint George was passed. And then, the .xxix<sup>th</sup> day of Aprell, þe parlement bygan ageyn at Westminster with archbisshops and oper lordes, as is beforeseid.

And in this same yere, about Midlent, they brought Quene 8 Margaret out of high, donce Fraunce, into the partyes of Normandy by hir frendes; and the Frenssh partye was there as well as þe Englissh lordes, and abode hir with theire peple, with all worship and reuerence þat myght be doon in worship and reuerence of oure 12 Kyng. And so þey brought hir into the Cite of Roan in sauf garde; and þere she abode vnto þe fest of Estere and lenger, by .xiiij. dayes, with these lordes and ladys of England, þat is to say, the Duke of York, the Duchesse his wife, þe Markes of Suffolk, the 16 lady his wife, the Erle of Shrovesbury, þe Countesse his wife, with oper lordes and ladyes þat abode in Fraunce and Normandy, with knyghtes, squyers, men of armes and archers, þat abode þere to kepe<sup>1</sup> the Kynges right in all landes of the partyes in Fraunce and 20 Normandy.

And then, after hir restyng þere in þe Cite, she was conueyed to þe towne of Houndflete by lande, þere to haue shipping to com into England to hir lord þe Kyng, hir husband; and with hir come 24 the Markeys of Suffolk, with lordes and ladys, knyghtes, squyers, and gentelwomen, men of armes and archers, and oper peple, and brought Margarete sauf into the Reame of England. And she landed at þe towne of Hampton; and þere she was worthely 28 receyued of þe peple of Hampton and of þe peple of the Cuntre aboute, with all reuerence and worship þat they couthe do. And after, oure Kyng come, and met with Dame Margarete, the Quene, and brought hir to an abbey in þe newe Forest, þat men calle þe 32 abbey of [ ]<sup>2</sup>; and there þe Kyng was wedded to Dame Margarete the Quene, with the Bisshop of Salesbury þat men called Maister William Ascu. And then the Kyng and his lordes departed from hir, and then met þe Cardinall of Wynchestre with 36 the Quene, and conueyed hir with all reuerence and honoure þat he kouth do, to a Maner of his; and there she abode all nyght with all hir peple. And there was doon grete chere, with chargeable

<sup>1</sup> leaf 225.<sup>2</sup> Blank space left in MS.

costes, to hir and to all the peple *pat* come with hir *pat* tyme, in reuerence and worship of *pe* Kyng. And so Quene Margaret was conveyed in the Cuntreys of Sussexe and Surre till she come to *pe* Archbishop of Canterburyes Maner in Croydon, in Surre; and there she rested hir all nyght with grete worship and reuerence, and with all the chere *pat* myght be doon to hir persone as for *pat* tyme. And on *pe* morowe after, she went to *pe* Maner of Eltham; and *pere* she restid her after hir grete iournay and travayle .viij. dayes, till she wold com to se the Cite of London.

And *pe* Friday, *pe* <sup>xxxv</sup>xxvj<sup>th</sup> day of Maye, the Mayre of London, with the aldermen and Shirrefs and comons of the Cite rode to *pe* Blake-Heth in Kent; and *pere* they abode and hoked on horsbak vnto the Quenes comyng. And so they come with hir to London; and she was brought to *pe* Toure of London; and *pere* she rested hir all nyght. And *pere* the Kyng, at the reuerence of *pe* Quene, and the first comyng, made .xlvi. Knyghtes of the Bath. And *pen* on *pe* morowen at after None, the Quene come from the Toure in a hors-bere, with .ij. stedes trapped all in white damask poudred with gold; and so was the vesture *pat* she had on; and *pe* pylowes and all *pe* bere in oon sute; and hir here combed downe about hir shudders, with a coronall of gold, riche perles and precious stones, with all lordes on horsbak, and ladyes in chares, *pat* is to sey, xix. chares of ladyes and theire <sup>1</sup>gentelwomen, and all the craftes of the Cite of London goynge on fote in theire best aray vnto Seint Paules. And by *pe* wey, as she come purgh *pe* Cite, there were shewed and made many devises and storyes, with angeles and oper heavenly thinges, with songe and melody in dyuers places; and *pe* condites ran wyne, bothe white and rede, for all peple *pat* wold drynk. And then she was had oute of *pe* bere, and went on fote vp to *pe* high auter of Seint Paules; and *pere* she offred, and come oute ageyn to the bere at the west dore of Seint Paules; and so she passed forth till she come to Westminster, with lordes and ladyes, and with the Maire and Aldermen and Comons of *pe* Cite of London. And there they toke theire leve, and went hoom ageyn.

And on *pe* morowe, *pat* was Sondag, *pe* .xxx. day of Maye, was *pe* Coronacion and fest rially and worthely holden at Westminster in *pe* Kynges palays; and .iiij. dayes after, hold open Iustes and revell within *pe* seintwary, of lordes, knyghtes, and oper *pat* wold com at *pe* reuerence of this fest royal.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 225, back.

And in this yere, þe .xvij. day of Iuyli, come þe ambassatours of Fraunce to London, forto trete for peas betwene England and Fraunce, þat is to say, the Archbisshop of Reynes, þe Erle of Gudoam,<sup>1</sup> with oþer lordes, knyghtes, squyers and clerkes of Fraunce, by the grace of God for a fynal peas.

Simon Eyre, Maior.	Johannes Derby	{ <i>viccomites</i>	8
	Galfrid Feldyng	{ anno xxiii <sup>to</sup>	
		{ [A.D. 1445-46.]	

<sup>1</sup> ! MS. Gudoam, Eudoam, Endoam.



[G]

FROM THE CAPTURE OF ROUEN (1419) TO THE ACCESSION  
OF EDWARD IV (1461).

[*Addit. MS., Brit. Mus. 10,099, leaf 181.*]

How þe king of Englonð, Henry þe v<sup>te</sup>,<sup>1</sup> was made heritier  
& Regent of Fraunce, & how he weddid Quene Katherine.  
ca. ccxlv.<sup>2</sup>

4 Anone<sup>3</sup> after þat Rone was goten, Depe, & many other townes  
in baas Normandie yafe þeme ouer with-out stroke or siege, when  
þei vnderstode þat þe Kyng had goten Rone. Also þis same yere  
had bene A pees made & sworn bi twen þe Duke of Burgoyne &  
8 þe Dolphyn, which wer sworne vpon<sup>4</sup> our Lordes body þat þei<sup>5</sup>  
shold love & Assist eche other ayenst þer enemyse. "And after þis,  
contrary to þis othe, þe Duke Iohn of Burgoyne was slayn &  
pitously murthred in<sup>7</sup> presence of þe Dolphyn; wherfor þe Frensh  
12 men wer gretly devided, & of veray necessite labored to haue A  
traitie with þe King of Englonð, for þe King of Englonð wold  
dayly of þame, townes, casteles & fortresses. Also þis same yere  
was Quene Iane Arested & brought to þe Castel of Ledys in Kent,  
16 and one, frere Randolf, A doctour of Divinitie, hir confessor, which  
afterward was slayn by þe person of þe Tour falling at wardes &  
debate. And after Quene Iane was delyuered, In<sup>8</sup> þe vij<sup>te</sup> yeer,  
bothe þe<sup>9</sup> kinges of Englonð & of Fraunce<sup>10</sup> wer Accorded; &  
20 Kyng Henry was made Heir & Regent of France, & wedded  
dame Kateryn, þe Kyng of Fraunce Doughter,<sup>11</sup> at Troyes in  
Champayn, on Trinite Sondag. And þis was made bi þe meane  
of Philipp, newly made Duke of Burgoyne, which was sworn to  
24 King Henry for tavenge his fadre deth, & was become Englissh.  
And þan þe King, with his new wife, went to Paris, wher he was  
rially receyved. And fro thens he, with his lordes & þe Duke of  
Burgoyne, & many other lordes of Fraunce, laid seige to diuerse

<sup>1</sup> Henry þe v<sup>te</sup> om. HC.      <sup>2</sup> ca. ccxlv. om. H.

<sup>3</sup> And A non H. and anone C.      <sup>4</sup> of H.      <sup>5</sup> þe H.

<sup>6</sup> leaf 181, back.      <sup>7</sup> in þe H. in the C.      <sup>8</sup> Also H.      <sup>9</sup> þe om. C.

<sup>10</sup> kynges of fraunce & of Englonð C.

<sup>11</sup> þe kinges Doughter of fraunce H. the kynges doughter of fraunce C.

townes & Castels pat held of pe Dolphynd's part, & wand pam; bot pe town<sup>1</sup> of Melun held long, for per-in was gode defenders.

In pe viij yere of his regn,<sup>2</sup> pe King & Quene came ouer pe<sup>3</sup> see, & landel on Candelmasse day in pe morow, at Dover; and [the] 4 xiiij<sup>4</sup> day of Feuryere, pe King com to London; & pe xxi day of pe same moneth pe Quene come thider<sup>5</sup>; And pe<sup>6</sup> xxiiij day of the same,<sup>7</sup> she was crowned at Westmynster. Also pe same yeer<sup>8</sup>, Anon after Ester, pe King held a parlement at Westmynster, 8 at which<sup>8</sup> it was ordeyned pat pe gold in Englyssh coygne shuld be weyed, & none receyved but by weght. And Anone after Wittsontyde, pe King sayled to<sup>9</sup> Caley's, & so forth passed<sup>10</sup> in-to Fraunce. And in Marche, pe xxij day, before pe King come ouer, 12 pe Duke of Clarence was slayn in Fraunce, diuerse<sup>11</sup> other lordes take prisoners, as perl of Huntyngdon, perle of Somersett, with diuerse other: & al was because pei wold not take Archers with pam,<sup>12</sup> bot thought to haue do<sup>13</sup> with pe Frenshmen per<sup>14</sup> self, 16 without<sup>15</sup> thame. And<sup>16</sup> yett, when he was slayn, pe Archiers come & rescued pe body of pe Duke, which pei wold have caried with pame: God haue mercy of<sup>17</sup> his soul; for<sup>18</sup> he was A valiant man! And<sup>19</sup> pe same yeer, bitwene Criste'mas & Candelmas, 20 pe town of Melun was yholden to pe Kynge.

In<sup>20</sup> pe ix yere of his regn,<sup>21</sup> vpon<sup>22</sup> saynt Nicholas Day in December, was borne Henry, pe Kynges first begoten son<sup>23</sup> at Windesore, whose god-fadres at fount-stone was Henry, Bisshop 24 of Wynchestre, & Iohn, Duke of Bedford; & pe Duches of Holande was<sup>24</sup> god-moder; And Henry Chicheley,<sup>25</sup> Erchebisshop of Canterbury, was<sup>26</sup> god-fader at confirmyng. And in pe x yere of his regn,<sup>21</sup> pe Cite of Mewes, in Brie,<sup>27</sup> was goten, which hadd 28 bene longe besegied. And pis same yeer pe Queen shipped at Hampton, and sayled ouer to pe King in Fraunce, wher she was worsshypfully receyved of pe King, & also of pe Kynge of Fraunce, hir fadir, & of hir modir. And thus Kinge Henry wan 32

<sup>1</sup> tour H.    <sup>2</sup> of his regn om. HC.    <sup>3</sup> pe om. HC.

<sup>4</sup> xiiij Ad. the xiiij C.    <sup>5</sup> thider om. HC.    <sup>6</sup> pe om. H.

<sup>7</sup> same moneth H.    <sup>8</sup> which parlement H. which perlement C.

<sup>9</sup> sayld in to H.    <sup>10</sup> & passed so forth HC.

<sup>11</sup> & many H. and diuerse C.

<sup>12</sup> take with pame Archers H. take with hem Archers C.    <sup>13</sup> do om. H.

<sup>14</sup> them HC.    <sup>15</sup> Iraf 182.    <sup>16</sup> Bot H.    <sup>17</sup> on C.    <sup>18</sup> for om. HC.

<sup>19</sup> in An And H.    <sup>20</sup> And in H.    <sup>21</sup> of his regn om. HC.

<sup>22</sup> on HC.    <sup>23</sup> henry the kinges fyrst begoten son was born H.

<sup>24</sup> hys H.    <sup>25</sup> Chicheley the H.    <sup>26</sup> was hys H.

<sup>27</sup> in Brie om. H.

fast in Fraunce, & held gret Astate, & satte at Dynere at A gret feste in Parys, crowned, & pe Queen also, which had nat ben seen to<sup>1</sup> fore; And al<sup>2</sup> peple resorted vnto his court. But as 4 for<sup>3</sup> pe Kyng of Fraunce, he held none Astate ne reule, but was left almoste Allone.

Also pis yeer pe weder-cokk was sett vpon Poules staple at London.<sup>4</sup> And pis yeer, in<sup>5</sup> pe moneth of Auguste, pe Kyng 8 wex sike at Boys de Vincent. And when he saw he shold dye, he made his testament, and ordeyned many thinges nobley for his soul, And Devoutly receyved al pe rightes of holy church, in so fer-forth, pat<sup>6</sup> whan he<sup>7</sup> was enoynted, he said pe service with 12 pe preste; And at pe verse of pe psalme 'Miserere mei deus' pat was "Benigne fac dunc in bona voluntate tua, Syon, ut edificentur muri Ierusalem," he bad tarie per, and said *pus*: "O good Lorde, pou knowest pat<sup>8</sup> myne entent hath bene, & yet is,<sup>9</sup> if I might 16 lyve, to reedify pe walles of Ierusalem." & pen pe preest proceded forth, & made An end; & Anone aftre, pis moste noble prince & victoriouse kyng, flour in his tyme of Cristen chivalrie, whom al pe<sup>10</sup> world dovynted, gaf his soul in-to pe handes of God, & died, 20 & made An end of his naturel lif, at pe said Bois de Vincent beside<sup>11</sup> Parys, pe xxxvj yere of his Age: on whose soul, God haue mercy!<sup>12</sup> þan was pe body enbawmed & cered, & laid in A rial chare, & an ymage like unto him was leyd vpon pe corps, 24 open, with diuerse baners & horse couered rychely with<sup>13</sup> Armes<sup>14</sup> of Englonde & Fraunce,<sup>15</sup> and also<sup>16</sup> tholde Armes of seynt Edwardes, seynt Edmond, & oper, And with gret multitude of torches; with whome went pe Kyng<sup>17</sup> of Scotland, & many oper lordes,<sup>18</sup> which 28 accompayned pe body til it come to<sup>19</sup> Westmynster, bi London, in Englonde. And in euery town by pe way he had solempny his Dirige on pe evyn, & masse on pe morne<sup>20</sup>; & moche Almesse was giffen to<sup>21</sup> pe<sup>22</sup> pore peple bi pe way. And pe vij<sup>te</sup> day of Nouembre after, 32 pe corps was brought to<sup>23</sup> London with<sup>24</sup> gret reuerence & solempnity,<sup>25</sup> & had<sup>26</sup> to Westmynster, wher he<sup>27</sup> now lieth: it was

<sup>1</sup> A H.      <sup>2</sup> aH the H.      <sup>3</sup> to C.

<sup>4</sup> was sett up a poulys steple at london the wethercock H.

<sup>5</sup> in om. H.      <sup>6</sup> þai Ad.      that C.      <sup>7</sup> þat whan he om. H.      <sup>8</sup> wel H.

<sup>9</sup> is yett H.      <sup>10</sup> this H.      <sup>11</sup> leaf 182, back.

<sup>12</sup> mercy Amen HC.      <sup>13</sup> with the H.      <sup>14</sup> tharmes C.

<sup>15</sup> & Fraunce om. H.      <sup>16</sup> also om. H.

<sup>17</sup> kyng HC.      ñyng Ad. (scribe's blunder).      <sup>18</sup> lordes the H.

<sup>19</sup> vu to C.      <sup>20</sup> morow H.      <sup>21</sup> vnto H.      <sup>22</sup> þe om. C.

<sup>23</sup> thurgh H.      through C.      <sup>24</sup> was H.      <sup>25</sup> for solempnity?

<sup>26</sup> & had om. HC.      <sup>27</sup> he om. H.

worshipfully<sup>1</sup> buried; & after, was<sup>2</sup> leyd on his tumbe A rial ymage like to him-self, of siluer & gylt, which was made at pe<sup>3</sup> cost of Quene Katerine. And thus ended, & was<sup>4</sup> enteiored & buried, pe noble King Henry pe Fyft: on whose soul,<sup>5</sup> God have 4 mercy!<sup>6</sup>

**Of pe lawds of King Henry pe Fyft, & what he ordeyned for Kyng Richard & for him self after his deth. Capitulum CC xlvj.<sup>7</sup>**

8

HERE is to be noted *pat* pis King Henry pe Fyft, was A noble prince after he was King & crowned. how-be-it, tofore<sup>8</sup> in his youth he had bene wilde &<sup>9</sup> recheles, & spared nothing of his lustes &<sup>10</sup> desires, but Accomplished *pan* after his lykyngs; but as sone as he<sup>12</sup> was crowned, enoynted & sacred,<sup>11</sup> Anon sodenly he was chaunged into A new man, & sett al his entent to lyve vertuously, in mayntenynge of holy church, destroyng of heretikes, keping Iustice, & defending of his Reame and<sup>12</sup> *subgeetes*. And for-as-muche as his<sup>16</sup> fader had deposed by his labour<sup>13</sup> pe<sup>14</sup> gode King Richard, & pitously made him to dye, & for pe offense done to hym Ayens his legeance, he had sent to Rome to be Assoiled *per*-of, for which offense, our holy fader [the] Pope<sup>15</sup> enioned hym to<sup>20</sup> make him be prayed-for perpetuelly, & like as he gert<sup>16</sup> be taken from him his<sup>17</sup> naturel lyfe, *per*for he shold do fynd iiij tapers to bren perpetuelly Aboute his body, *pat*, for pe extincceion of his bodely life, his soul may<sup>18</sup> be remembred and lyve in heven<sup>24</sup> in spiriuel lufe; & also *pat* he<sup>19</sup> sholde, euery weke, on pe day as it cometh About of his deth, have A solempn masse of Requiem on pe Eveyn, to-fore A dirige with ix lessons, and A dole to poure peple<sup>20</sup> al-wey on *pat* day, of<sup>21</sup> xj<sup>s</sup> viij<sup>d</sup>, to be delyd penny 28 me. At<sup>22</sup> ones in pe yere, at his Anniuersarie, his entierment to be holden in pe moste honest wise; & to be delyd *pat* day<sup>23</sup> xx<sup>ti</sup><sup>24</sup> in pens to poure peple; And to<sup>25</sup> euery monk to haue xxs.: which al this thinges performed<sup>26</sup> pis noble Kynge, for his 32

<sup>1</sup> Rially H.    <sup>2</sup> ward H.    <sup>3</sup> *pe om.* C.    <sup>4</sup> & was *om.* H.

<sup>5</sup> soule And al cristen soules HC.    <sup>6</sup> mercy Amen HC.

<sup>7</sup> CC xlvj *om.* H.    <sup>8</sup> Afore H.    <sup>9</sup> & *om.* HC.    <sup>10</sup> ne HC.

<sup>11</sup> sacred and anoynted H.    <sup>12</sup> A H.

<sup>13</sup> by hys labour has deposyd H.    <sup>14</sup> *pe om.* H.

<sup>15</sup> the pope our holy fadyr H.    the pope our holy fadre C.

<sup>16</sup> had don to H.    had done to C.    <sup>17</sup> his his Ad.    <sup>18</sup> may euer HC.

<sup>19</sup> *leaf* 183.    <sup>20</sup> poure Ad.    pore peple H.    poure peple C.

<sup>21</sup> of *om.* H.    <sup>22</sup> And HC.    <sup>23</sup> *pat* day *om.* H.    <sup>24</sup> xx pounce C.

<sup>25</sup> toke Ad.    to HC.    <sup>26</sup> with all *per*formyd thes thinges H.

fader<sup>1</sup> King Henry þe Fowrt, seth he<sup>2</sup> performed it<sup>3</sup> nat during his life, whom, as it is seyde, God towched, & was A lepre er he died.

4 Also þen þis noble prince lete do caH al þabbottes & poures of Seynt Benett ordre in Englonde, & had þame in þe chapter house of<sup>4</sup> Westmynster, for þe reformation of þe ordre, wherin he had communicacion; And also with bisshoppes & men of þe spiritualtie, 8 in so fer<sup>5</sup> forth þat þei doubted sore þat<sup>6</sup> he wold haue had þe Temperalties out of þe handes; wherfor, by þauis, labour, & procuring of þe spiritualtie, [þei] Encoragied þe King to chalenge Normandy & his right in Fraunce, to pend to sett hym A werk þer, þat he 12 shold nat seke occasion to entre in-to<sup>7</sup> such matere; And þerfor<sup>8</sup> al his life<sup>9</sup> after, he labored in þe Werres,<sup>9</sup> in conquering gret part of þe Reame of Fraunce, þat bi þe<sup>10</sup> Agrement of þe<sup>10</sup> King Charles had all<sup>11</sup> þe gouernaunce of þe Reame of Fraunce, And was proclaimed 16 Regent & heir of Fraunce. And so, nat-with-standing al þis gret Werre þat he had, yett he remembred his soul, & also þat he was mortal, & must dye; for<sup>12</sup> which he ordeyned by his life, þe place of his sepulture, wher he is now buried; & euery day iij 20 masses perpetuelly to be songen in A fair chapel ouer his sepulture, of<sup>13</sup> which þe middel masse,<sup>14</sup> þe fyrst & þe last,<sup>15</sup> shall be as is Assigned by him. As it Appereth by þise verse<sup>16</sup> folowyng:—

	Henrei misse quinti sunt hic tabulate,
	Que successiue sunt per monachos celebrate.
24	Die dominica. <sup>17</sup> Prima sit <sup>18</sup> Assumpte de festo Virginis alme;
	Poscit Christus postremam <sup>19</sup> de morte resurgens.
	Feria ija. <sup>20</sup> Prima salutata in <sup>21</sup> festo Virginis extat;
28	Nunciat Angelicis laudem postrema choris,
	<sup>22</sup> Feria iija. <sup>23</sup> Esse Deum natum de Virgine, prima facetur,
	Commemorat natam, sic vltima missa Mariam.
	Feria iiija. <sup>24</sup> Prima celebretur ad honorem neupnatis Almi;
32	Vltima conceptam denunciat esse Mariam;
	Feria vta. <sup>25</sup> Semper prima coli debet de corpore Christi.
	Vltima sit facta de Virgine purificata;

<sup>1</sup> fader for H. fadre for C. <sup>2</sup> hys fader H. his fadre C.

<sup>3</sup> it om. H. <sup>4</sup> at H. <sup>5</sup> lest H. þat om. C. <sup>6</sup> to om. H.

<sup>7</sup> þerfor om. HC. <sup>8</sup> life om. H. <sup>9</sup> in þe Warres om. H.

<sup>10</sup> þe om. H. <sup>11</sup> at Ad. aH HC. <sup>12</sup> for the H. <sup>13</sup> of the H.

<sup>14</sup> masse & HC. <sup>15</sup> last messe HC. <sup>16</sup> these verses H.

<sup>17</sup> Die dominica om. H. <sup>18</sup> sit affinite H. <sup>19</sup> xpc' postremā Ad.

<sup>20</sup> fferia ija om. H. <sup>21</sup> in om. C. <sup>22</sup> leaf 183, back.

<sup>23</sup> fferia iija om. H. <sup>24</sup> fferia iiija om. H. <sup>25</sup> fferia vta om. H.

Feria vij<sup>ta</sup>.<sup>1</sup> Condecet ut prima celebretur de cruce sancta,  
 Atque salutata fiet postrema Marie.  
 Omnes alii sanctos est prima colenda supernos :  
 Sabbato<sup>2</sup> Vltima de Requie pro defunctis petit esse ; 4  
 Semper erit media de proprietate diei.

And yet þe Noble King Henry þe Fyft founded ij houses of Religion : one called Syon, beside Braynford<sup>3</sup> of þe ordre of Seynt Brigitt, both of men &<sup>4</sup> women ; And on þat<sup>5</sup> oþer side of þe ryver of Tamyse, an house of monkes of<sup>6</sup> Chartrehouse : In which ij places he is continually prayed for, night & day ; for euer, when they of Syon rest,<sup>7</sup> þei of þe Chartrehouse done þe<sup>8</sup> service ; And in<sup>9</sup> like wise, whan þei of þe Chartrehouse rest, þe oþer gon to. 12  
 And bi þe ryngyng of þe<sup>10</sup> belles of eyther place,<sup>11</sup> ayther<sup>12</sup> knoweth when þai<sup>13</sup> haue ended þe service, which be nobly endowed, & done dayly þe great Almesse dedes ; As in þe Charetrehouse certeyn childre be found to<sup>14</sup> scole ; & at Sion, certeyn Almesse 16 gyuen dayly.

And yet beside al this, he had founded A recluse, which shal be alway A preste, to pray for him, by þe said<sup>15</sup> Chartrehouse, which<sup>16</sup> preste is wel & sufficiently endowed for him & A seruauit. 20  
 Loo ! here may al princes take ensample bi þis noble prince þat regned so lytel tyme, nat fully x yere, þat<sup>17</sup> did so many noble Actes, as wel for his soul to be perpetuelly remembred & prayd fore, as in hys worldly conquestes. And he, beyng in his moste 24 lusty Age, despised & eschewed synn, & was vertuose, & A gret Iustyser, in so mych þat al þe princes of Cristendome, & also of hethenes, dradd him,<sup>18</sup> & had<sup>19</sup> determyned in þe<sup>20</sup> self—if God wold haue spared him—þat he wold haue werred Aynst þe 28 Sarazenes. And for to know þe Ayed of other princes, & al þe passage in þat Iorney, he sent a knight<sup>21</sup> of Henaude, named Ser Hugh Delanoy, vnto Ierusalem ; but er he returned, he died at Boys du Vincent, in þe xxxvj<sup>te</sup> yere of his Age, vn<sup>22</sup> whose soul, 32 God haue mercy ! Amen !<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> feria vij<sup>ta</sup> om. H.    <sup>2</sup> Sabbato om. H.    <sup>3</sup> Brayford Ad. Braynford C.

<sup>4</sup> & of H.    <sup>5</sup> the H.    <sup>6</sup> of the H.    <sup>7</sup> rest then H.

<sup>8</sup> their C.    <sup>9</sup> in om. H.    <sup>10</sup> there H.    <sup>11</sup> of eyther place om. H.

<sup>12</sup> ech H.    eche C.    <sup>13</sup> oþer H.    <sup>14</sup> to the H.

<sup>15</sup> syde the H.    <sup>16</sup> the which H.    <sup>17</sup> þat om. HC.

<sup>18</sup> Cristendome drad hym An also of heythenes H. Cristendome dradde him & also of hethenes C.

<sup>19</sup> had om. H.    <sup>20</sup> hym HC.    <sup>21</sup> knyght H.    <sup>22</sup> of H. on C.

<sup>23</sup> Amen om. HC.

<sup>1</sup> <sup>2</sup> How King Henry þe Sixt regned, beyng A childe, nat  
one yere of age; And of þe batail of Vernoyl in Perche.  
*Capitulum* CC xlvij.<sup>3</sup>

4 After King Henry þe Fyft, regned Henry þe Sixt<sup>4</sup> his son,<sup>5</sup>  
A childe, & nat fully A yere olde; whose regn began þe first  
day of Septembre, the yere<sup>6</sup> of our Lord God<sup>7</sup> M<sup>i</sup> iiij<sup>c</sup> xxij.<sup>8</sup>  
This King, beyng in his<sup>9</sup> Cradel, was moche doubted & dradd,  
8 bicause of þe gret conquest of his fadre, & also of<sup>10</sup> þe wisdom  
& guyding of his vncles, þe Duke of Bedford & þe Duke of  
Gloucestre. This yere, þe xxj day of Octobre, died Charles,<sup>11</sup> King  
of Fraunce, and was<sup>12</sup> buried at seynt Dionise<sup>13</sup>; And þan was  
12 þe Duke of Bedford made Regent of Fraunce, & þe Duke of  
Gloucestre was made *protectour* & defendour of Englonde. And  
the first day of Marche after,<sup>14</sup> was Ser William Taillour, *preste*,  
degraded of his *prestede*; and on þe morne after he was brent  
16 in Smythfeld for heresie. þis yere Sir James Styward, King of  
Scottes, maried Dame Iane þe Duches, Doughter of Clarence,  
of hir first housbond, þerle of Somersett, at seynt Mary Ouerays.  
Also þis yere, þe xvij day of August, was þe batail of VernaiH in  
20 Perche, bitwene þe Duke of Bedford, Regent of Fraunce & the  
Duke of Alanson; which was A gret bataiH. þe Duke of Bedford  
had on his side with him þerle of Salesbury, Montagn, & þe  
Lorde Talbot, & al þe power þat þei couthe make in Normandie—  
24 þe garnisons kept,—And also many Capitaynes, with moche peple  
of þe Duke of Burgoyns. And on þat other side was þe Duke of  
Alaunson, þe Duke of Touron, þat was þerle Douglas, þerle of  
Boughan, with many lordes of Fraunce, & gret company of Scottes  
28 & Arminakes. And þan þerle Douglas<sup>15</sup> called þe Duke of  
Bedford “Ioñn with þe<sup>16</sup> leden swerd.” And he sent hym worde  
Ageyn þat he shuld fynd þat day þat hys swerd shold be<sup>17</sup> off  
steel; And so þe batail Ioyned on both sides, & þei<sup>18</sup> fought long,  
32 so<sup>19</sup> þat þer wist no man who shold haue þe better A gret while;  
but at þe last, as God wold, þe victorie fil vnto þenglish partie,  
for þer was slayn þerle Douglas, which A litel before<sup>20</sup> was made<sup>21</sup>

<sup>1</sup> leaf 184. <sup>2</sup> Cap. iiij. H. <sup>3</sup> Ca. cexlvij om. H.

<sup>4</sup> þe sixt om. HC. <sup>5</sup> son but H. sone but C.

<sup>6</sup> yere Ad. the yere H. the yere C. <sup>7</sup> A H. God om. C.

<sup>8</sup> Ml cccc And xxij H. <sup>9</sup> in to Ad. in his HC. <sup>10</sup> of om. C.

<sup>11</sup> Charles the H. <sup>12</sup> lyeth H. lieth C.

<sup>13</sup> Denys in fraunce H. denys C. <sup>14</sup> after om. H.

<sup>15</sup> Douglas om. H. <sup>16</sup> þe om. H. <sup>17</sup> swerd was H.

<sup>18</sup> þei om. HC.

<sup>19</sup> so om. HC. <sup>20</sup> leaf 184, back. <sup>21</sup> made the H.

Duke of Tounar, perle of Bewghare, perle of Almarre, perle of Tounar, perle of Vaundore, & þe Vycount of Nerbornne,—which was one of þame þat slew Duke Iohn of Burgoyñ, knelyng tofore<sup>1</sup> þe Dolphyn,—& many moo,<sup>2</sup> to<sup>3</sup> þe nombre of xM<sup>t</sup> & mo.<sup>4</sup> And þer was taken prisoner þe Duke of Alaunson, & many oper lordes & gentiles of Fraunce; but Scottes þat day wer slayñ down right the<sup>4</sup> s[u]bstaunce of þame all.

In þe iij yere of King Henry þe vj<sup>te</sup>, þe Duke of Gloucestre<sup>8</sup> married þe Duches of Holand, & went ouer þe<sup>5</sup> See *with* hir to<sup>6</sup> Henaude, for to take possession of his wife enherytaunce; wher he was honorably taken & receyved<sup>7</sup> for<sup>8</sup> lorde of þat<sup>9</sup> land. But sone after, he was fayñ to retorne home Ageyn, & left his wife,<sup>12</sup> & his tresour þat he brought, *with*<sup>10</sup> in a town þat<sup>11</sup> is called Mounse in Henaude, which promised for<sup>12</sup> to be<sup>13</sup> trew to him; nat-*with*-standing, þei deliuered þe lady to þe Duke of Burgoyñ, which sent hir to Gaunt; And fro þens she Aseaped in A mannes<sup>16</sup> Aray, & come in to Zeland, to A town of his<sup>14</sup> Awun called Zierixce. And fro þens she went to A town in Holand called þe Ghowde, & þer she was strong enough, & *with*stode þe said Duke of Burgoyñ. And sone after, þe Duke of Gloucestre sent ouer<sup>20</sup> vnto<sup>15</sup> Zeland þe lorde Fitz-Water, *with certeyñ* men of Werre & Archiers, for to help & socour þe fore-said Duchesse of Holand, which loded at a place in Seland called<sup>16</sup> Brewers-haven, wher þe<sup>17</sup> lordes of þe contre come down & fought *with* him; & in<sup>24</sup> conclusion, he was fayñ to *with*draw him & his meyney to þe see Ageyn. But yett he slew and hurt diuerse lordes & moche peple of þat same contre, And so returned home Ageyn *with* his meyne, & preualed nothing. 28

Also þis same yere perl of Salisbury, perle of Suthfolk, the Lorde<sup>18</sup> Willeby & Lorde<sup>19</sup> Scalys, *with per* retenn, leid seige to þe Cite of Mauns, which<sup>20</sup> Cite was yholden to þem in short tyn, *with* many oper strong townes & castels, to þe nombre of xxxvj. Thys<sup>32</sup> tyme al Normandy & A gret part of Fraunce vnto Orliaunce, was vnder thobeiansce of the King<sup>21</sup> of Englon<sup>d</sup>; And al þe remanent of Fraunce was in gret<sup>22</sup> tribulacion & mischief.

<sup>1</sup> A fore H.    <sup>2</sup> & many moo *om.* H.    <sup>3</sup> vnto C.

<sup>4</sup> right Ad. rygt the H. right the C.    <sup>5</sup> þe *om.* C.    <sup>6</sup> in to C.

<sup>7</sup> receyued and takyn H. honourably receyued and taken C.    <sup>8</sup> of for H.

<sup>9</sup> the HC.    <sup>10</sup> *with* hym H. with hym C.    <sup>11</sup> þat *om.* CH.    <sup>12</sup> for *om.* H.

<sup>13</sup> to haue ben H.    <sup>14</sup> hir C.    <sup>15</sup> into C.    <sup>16</sup> called the H.

<sup>17</sup> fore H.    <sup>18</sup> Lorde Ad. the lorde H. the lord C.    <sup>19</sup> the lord HC.

<sup>20</sup> the which HC.    <sup>21</sup> king Ad. the kyng C.    <sup>22</sup> gret *om.* H.



<sup>1</sup> How þer was A gret Affray like to haue bene<sup>2</sup> bituene the  
Cardinal & þe Duke of Gloucestre; And of þe Coronacion  
of King Henry þe vi<sup>te</sup>, both in England & in Fraunce.  
4 Capitulum CCxlvij.<sup>3</sup>

IN þe iiij<sup>te</sup> yere, þe same night þat þe Mair of London,<sup>4</sup> Iohn  
Coventre, had taken his charge, was A gret watche in London for  
Affray þat was<sup>5</sup> bituene þe Bisshop of Wynchestre & þe Duke of  
8 Gloucestre, Protectour &c'. ffor þe Mair, with þe peple of þe Cite,  
wold Abide by þe Duke of Gloucestre as Protector of þe Reame,  
but bi<sup>6</sup> labour of lordes þat went bitwen, & in especial bi þe labour  
of þe Prince of Portyngale, þer was Apoyntment taken so þat þer<sup>7</sup>  
12 was no harme done. And after þe batail of Verneil in Perche, þe  
Duke of Bedford come ouer into Englonl; & on Witsonday þe<sup>8</sup>  
same yere, at Leycestre, he dubbed King Henry knight; And forth-  
with þe said King Henry dubbed al thise<sup>9</sup> knightes whose names  
16 folowes, þat is to say<sup>10</sup>: Richard, Duke of York, Also þe sone &  
heir of þe Duke of Northfolk, þerle of Oxenforth, þerle of West-  
merland, þe sone and heir of þerle of Northumbreland, þe sone &  
heir of þerle Wormond,<sup>11</sup> þe lorde Rose, Sir Iames Botler, þe Lord  
20 Natrauas,<sup>12</sup> Sir Henry Gray of Tankerville, Sir William Nevile,  
Lorde Fawconbrigge, Sir George Nevyl, Lorde Latimer, Lord<sup>13</sup>  
Welles, Lord<sup>13</sup> Berkley, þe sone & heir of Lord<sup>13</sup> Talbot, Sir Rauf  
Grey of Werk, Sir Robert Ver, Sir Richard Gray, Sir Edmond  
24 Hungerforde, Sir Robert Wynkford, Sir Iohn Botler, Sir Reynold  
Cobham, Sir Iohn Passheley, Sir Thomas Tunstal, Sir Iohn  
Chydiok, Sir Rauf Langeford, Sir William Drury, Sir William Ap-  
Thomas, Sir Richard Carbonel, Sir Richard WydeniH, Sir Iohn  
28 Shirdelowe, Sir Nichol Blonket, Sir Rauf Ratclyff, Sir Edmond  
Trafford, Sir William Cheyne, Sir William Babyngton, Sir Iohn  
Iune, &<sup>14</sup> Sir Gillebert Beauchampe. þan in þe v<sup>te</sup><sup>15</sup> yere þe Duke  
of Bedford, with þe Duchesse his wife, went ouer þe<sup>16</sup> see to Caley, s,  
32 & A litel tofore went<sup>17</sup> ouer Henry,<sup>18</sup> Bisshop of Wynchestre. &  
on our Lady day Annunciacion, in our Lady churche at Caley, þe  
Bisshop of Winchestre, when<sup>19</sup> he had songen masse, <sup>20</sup>was made

<sup>1</sup> leaf 182. <sup>2</sup> bene A grete Affraye H. <sup>3</sup> Cap. iiij. H.

<sup>4</sup> þe mair of London om. H. <sup>5</sup> þat was om. H. <sup>6</sup> bi the H.

<sup>7</sup> þat Ad. þat þer H. that ther C. <sup>8</sup> this C. <sup>9</sup> þes H.

<sup>10</sup> þat is to say om. H. Wite C. <sup>11</sup> Ormond C.

<sup>12</sup> matrauas C. <sup>13</sup> the lord HC. <sup>14</sup> & om. HC.

<sup>15</sup> Item my v<sup>th</sup> H. <sup>16</sup> þe om. C. <sup>17</sup> where H. <sup>18</sup> henry the H.

<sup>19</sup> quen H. <sup>20</sup> leaf 185, back.

Cardinal; &, he knelyng tofore<sup>1</sup> þe high Altare, þe Duke of Bedford sett þe hatt on his hede; & þer wer his bulles red, as wele of his charge As þe reioysing of his benefices spiritueH & tempereH.

And þis same yere was gret habondance of Rayn, pat þe substance of hey & of<sup>2</sup> corne was destroyed, for it rayned almoste euery other day. þis same yere þe gode Erle of Salesbury, Sir Thomas Mountagu, leyd Seiege vnto<sup>3</sup> Orlyauunce; at which siegie he was slayn with A gvn pat<sup>4</sup> come out [of] þe town.<sup>5</sup> And<sup>6</sup> sith<sup>7</sup> forth pat<sup>7</sup> he was slayn, English men neuer gat ne preuailed in Fraunce, bot ener after<sup>8</sup> began to lefe, bi<sup>9</sup> litel and lytel, til al was lost. <sup>10</sup>Also þis same yere A Breton murthered A gode wedow<sup>11</sup> without Al-gate, which wedow fond him for almesse; & he bare away <sup>12</sup>al pat she had; And after þis he toke grith of holy church at Seynt Georges in Suthwerk, & þer toke þe crosse, & forswore þis land. And as he went, it happend pat he came bi þe place where he did þis cursed dede in þe subbarbis of London; & þe women of þe same <sup>16</sup>parissH come out with stones and<sup>12</sup> CaneH dunge, & slew & made an ende of him, nat-withstanding þe constable & many other men beyng present to kepe him; for þer wer many women, & had no pite.<sup>10</sup> Also [t]his same yere þe Duke of Northfolk, with many <sup>20</sup>gentil men & yomen, toke his barge, þe viij day of Nouembre, at Seynt Mary Oueryes, for to haue go thurgh London Brigg; & thurgh misguydyng of þe barge, it ouer-threw on þe Pyles, & many men drowned; but þe Duke him-self, with ij or iij, lepe vpon the piles, <sup>24</sup>and so wer saued with<sup>13</sup> help of men pat wer Aboue þe brigge, which cast down Roopes, by<sup>14</sup> which þei saved þam-self.

This same yere, on Seynt Leonarde day, King Henre, beyng vij yere old<sup>15</sup> of Age, was crowned at Westmynster: at whose cora- <sup>28</sup>nacion wer made xxxvj knightes. þis yere, on Seynt George day, he passed ouer þe see to<sup>16</sup> Caleys, toward Fraunce. Aboute þis tyme & Afore, þe Reame beyng in gret <sup>17</sup>misery & tribulacion, þe Dolphin, with his partie, began to make Werr, & gett certeyn <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Afore H.    <sup>2</sup> of om. H.    <sup>3</sup> to H.    <sup>4</sup> which HC.

<sup>5</sup> town on whos saule god haue mercy H.    oute of the toun, on whos soule god haue mercy C.

<sup>6</sup> flor H.    <sup>7</sup> pat om. H.    sith that C.

<sup>8</sup> after om. H.    <sup>9</sup> bi om. HC.

<sup>10-10</sup> Also þis same yere breton murthered . . . many women & had no pite om. H.

<sup>11</sup> Wedowe in her bedde C.    <sup>12</sup> stones Ad.    stones and C.

<sup>13</sup> through H.    <sup>14</sup> by the H.    <sup>15</sup> old om. HC.    <sup>16</sup> in to H.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 186.

places, & make destres vpon Englissh men by þe mean of his Capytayns, *pat* is to wete, La Heer and Potonde, Sayntralles, and especial A maid, which<sup>1</sup> they named “*la PuceHe<sup>2</sup> de Dieu.*” This  
 4 maid rode like A man, & was A valyant Capitayn Among þame, & take vpon hir many gret<sup>3</sup> enterpryses, in so myche *pat* þei had A<sup>4</sup> byleve to haue recouered al *per* losses by hir; nat-with-standing, at þe last, after many gret feates, by þe help & prowesse of Sir Iohn  
 8 Luxemburgh, which was A noble capitayn of þe Dukes of Burgoyne, & many English men, Pykerdes and Burgones, which wer of our partie, before þe town of Compyne, þe xxij day of May, þe forsaide PuceH was taken in þe felde, Armed like A man, & many *oper*  
 12 Capitaynes with hir, & wer al brought to Roan; & *per* she was put in prison, & *per* she was Iuged by þe law to be brent. And þen she said *pat* she was with childe, wherby she was respited A while; but in conclusion it was found *pat* she was not with child,  
 16 & þen she was brent in Roane, & þe other Capitaynes wer put to raunson, & entreted as men of werre bene Acustomed &c’.

This same yere, About Candelmesse,<sup>5</sup> Richard Hunder, A wollepacker,<sup>6</sup> was dampned for an heritike, & brent at Tour-HiH. And  
 20 About midlente, Sir Thomas Baggely, preest, & vicar of Mauen in Est-sexe, beside Walden, was disgraded & dampned for an herytike, & brent in Smythfeld. Also<sup>7</sup> pis<sup>8</sup> same yere, whiles þe King was in Fraunce, *per* wer many heretikes & lollardes, *pat* had pur-  
 24 posed to haue made A rying; & þei<sup>9</sup> casten billes in many place; but,—blessed be God almighty!—*per* Capitayn<sup>10</sup> was takyn, which was called<sup>11</sup> William Maundeuil, A wever of Abyndon, & also<sup>12</sup> bayly of þe same town, which named him-self ‘Iack Sharp of  
 28 Wigmoresland in Walis’; & after-ward<sup>13</sup> he was beheded at Abendon in þe Wittsone weke, on þe Twesday.

This same yere, þe vj<sup>te</sup> day of Decembre, <sup>14</sup> Kyng Henry þe Sext was crowned King of Fraunce at Paris, in þe chirch of our  
 32 Lady, with gret solempnite, *per* beyng present þe Cardinal of Englund, þe Duke of Bedford & many *oper* lordes of Englund & of Fraunce.<sup>15</sup> And after pis coronacion, a<sup>16</sup> gret fest holden at Paris,

<sup>1</sup> the which H.      <sup>2</sup> Puce Ad.      pucelle H.      pucelle C.

<sup>3</sup> gret *om.* H.      <sup>4</sup> had a *om.* H.      <sup>5</sup> About Candelmess *om.* H.

<sup>6</sup> packer about candelmasse H.      <sup>7</sup> And also HC.      <sup>8</sup> in this C.

<sup>9</sup> þei *om.* HC.      <sup>10</sup> þe Capteyn of theme H.      the Capitayn of hem C.

<sup>11</sup> whos name was H.      whos name was C.      <sup>12</sup> also *om.* HC.

<sup>13</sup> ward *om.* H.      <sup>14</sup> leaf 186, back.

<sup>15</sup> of fraunce and of England H.      of fraunce & of englund C.

<sup>16</sup> & C.

the King returned from thens to Roan, & so toward Caleys. And<sup>1</sup> þe ix day of Feurer, he<sup>2</sup> landed at Dover, whom al þe comones of Kent met at Beramdon, bitwen Canterbury & Dover, al in rede hoodes; & so come forth til he come to þe Blak-Hethe, wher he<sup>4</sup> was mett with þe Mayre of London,<sup>3</sup> Iohn Wellis, with al þe craftes of London clad al in white; & so þei brought him to London þe xxj day of þe same moneth. This same yere<sup>4</sup> was A restreynt of þe wolles of Caleys made by þe soudiours, by cause þei were nat<sup>8</sup> payed of *per* waagies; wherfor þe Duke of Bedforth, Regent of Fraunce, beyng þan Capytain, come to<sup>5</sup> Caleys þe Twesday in þe Ester weke; And on þe morne after, many<sup>6</sup> sowdioures of þe town wer Arested & put in warde. And in<sup>7</sup> þe same weke he rode to<sup>12</sup> Terewyne; & bi þe mean<sup>of</sup><sup>8</sup> Bisshop of Terewyn, he wedded perles doughter of Seynt Poul, & came ageyn to Caleys. And þe x<sup>9</sup> day of Iune, on Seynt Barnabe day, *per* wer four<sup>10</sup> soudiours of Caleys, þat wer chief Causers of þe restreynt, beheded, þat is to<sup>16</sup> say: Iohn Maddesley, Iohn Lunday, Thomas Palmer, & Thomas Talbot, & C & x<sup>11</sup> bannissed þe town þat same<sup>12</sup> tyme: & before wer bannissed C xx<sup>13</sup> soudiours. And on<sup>14</sup> Mydsommer evyn after,<sup>15</sup> come þe Lorde Regent & his wife to London. 20

<sup>16</sup> Of þe heresie of Praghe, & of [þe] Counsel of Aras. &c.<sup>16</sup>  
*Capitulum CC xlix.*<sup>17</sup>

Aboute pis tyme Pope Martyn died; & After him, Eugeny þe Fourt was Pope, þat<sup>18</sup> was pesably chosen in Rome by þe Cardinales, 24 and was very & vndoubted Pope; but shortly after, he was put out<sup>19</sup> & expulsed fro<sup>20</sup> Rome,<sup>21</sup> in suche wise þat he was fayn to flee naked. In þis same tyme was þe Counsel of Basile, to which Counsel he was cited<sup>22</sup> to come; And because he come nat, they<sup>28</sup> deposd hyn; but he forsed<sup>23</sup> nat, ner sett<sup>24</sup> *per*by, but<sup>25</sup> gat þe Cite of Rome, & Abode Pope stil<sup>26</sup> xvij yere.

This yere, About Witsontide,<sup>27</sup> þe heretikes of Praghe wer destroyed; for at two Iourneys wer destroyed of þame mo þan<sup>28</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> And *per* H.    <sup>2</sup> he *om.* HC.    <sup>3</sup> of London *om.* HC.

<sup>4</sup> yere *per* H.    <sup>5</sup> into H.    <sup>6</sup> many of the H.    <sup>7</sup> in *om.* H.

<sup>8</sup> of the HC.    <sup>9</sup> xi HC.    <sup>10</sup> four principall H.

<sup>11</sup> Talbot and other H.    Talbot And an Cx C.    <sup>12</sup> same *om.* H.

<sup>13</sup> An C & xx H.    and xx C.    <sup>14</sup> of H.    <sup>15</sup> after *om.* H.

<sup>16-16</sup> *om.* HC.    <sup>17</sup> Cap ij H.    <sup>18</sup> þis H.    This C.    <sup>19</sup> out *om.* C.

<sup>20</sup> out of C.    <sup>21</sup> he was expulsed out of Rome H.    <sup>22</sup> leaf 187.

<sup>23</sup> rought HC.    <sup>24</sup> sett nought H.    sette not C.    <sup>25</sup> but he H.

<sup>26</sup> styll pope H.    still Pope C.    <sup>27</sup> about Witsontide *om.* H.

<sup>28</sup> mo þan *om.* H.

xxij M<sup>t</sup>, with *per*<sup>1</sup> Capitayns, *pat* is to say,<sup>2</sup> Procapius, Saplico, & Lupus *presbiter*. Also *per* was taken on<sup>3</sup> lyve, maister Piers, clerk, — an Englyssman &<sup>4</sup> heretike. Also *pis* same yere was A gret  
4 frost & A strong, during xj wekes; for it began on<sup>5</sup> seynt Katerines evyn, & lasted vnto<sup>6</sup> Seynt Scolastica Day in Februare: In which tyme *pe* vyntage *pat* come fro Burdeux come over Shotters HiH.

This yere was *pe* counsel of Aras, & A gret treaty bitwen *pe*  
8 King of Englonð & *pe* King of Fraunce, wher was<sup>7</sup> Assembled many gret lordes of bothe parties: At which counsel was offred to *pe* Kyng of Englonð, many gret thinges by *pe* meane of A legate *pat* come fro Rome, which was Cardinal of Seynt Crosse, which  
12 offres wer refused by *pe* Cardinal of Englonð, & other lordes *pat* wer *per* for *pe* Kinge. Wherefore *pe* Duke of Burgoyñ, which had bene long Englysh sworne, forsoke oure partie, & retourned Frensh, by meane of *pe* said<sup>8</sup> legate, & made A pees with *pe* Frensh kyng,  
16 receyving of *pe* King, for recompense of his fader deth, the counte<sup>9</sup> Pontien, *pe* lordeshipp of Macon, with mych other *pat* was<sup>10</sup> specified in *pe* said<sup>8</sup> treety; And so our Embassatoures come home Ayen in wers case *pan*<sup>11</sup> *pei*<sup>12</sup> went forth,<sup>13</sup> ffor *pei* lost *per*<sup>14</sup> *pe*  
20 Duke of Burgoyñ, which had bene, with his Burgoyñons & Pycardes, A singler help in al *pe* Conquest of Normandy & of Fraunce.

This same yere was A gret batail on *pe* See, bitwen *pe*  
24 Ienewensez & *pe* King of Aragon; of which batail *pe* Ianeuenses had *pe* victori, for *pei* toke *pe* Kinge of Aragon, *pe* King of Naverne, & *pe* gret Maister of Seynt Iames in Galise, with iij<sup>c</sup> knightes & squyers & moche other peple: & this was of<sup>15</sup> seynt  
28 Dominices day.

This same<sup>16</sup> yeer wer seen thre<sup>17</sup> <sup>soles</sup> Sounes at ones, & Anone folowed *pe* threfolde gouernance<sup>18</sup> in *pe* chirch, *pat* is to wete, of Eugeny *pe* Pope,<sup>19</sup> of the Counsel, & of *pe* nevtralitye. Also *pis* same  
32 yere M<sup>t</sup> iij<sup>c</sup> xxxiiij, was A passing gret wynd, by<sup>20</sup> which steples, houses &<sup>21</sup> trees wer ouerthrowen. About *pis* tyme was an holy maid in Holand, called Lydwith, which lyued onely bi miracle, not etynge any mete. This yere *pe* Duke of Burgoyñ began his

<sup>1</sup> hir C.    <sup>2</sup> wete C.    <sup>3</sup> of H.    a C.    <sup>4</sup> And an H.

<sup>5</sup> of H.    <sup>6</sup> tyH H.    <sup>7</sup> was om. H.    <sup>8</sup> same H.    <sup>9</sup> counte of H.

<sup>10</sup> as is HC.    <sup>11</sup> pan om. H.    <sup>12</sup> the H.    <sup>13</sup> forth om. HC.

<sup>14</sup> ffor *per* *pei* lost H.    <sup>15</sup> In HC.    <sup>16</sup> same om. H.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 187, back.    <sup>18</sup> rule and gouernance H.

<sup>19</sup> *pe* Pope om. HC.    <sup>20</sup> by the H.    <sup>21</sup> & om. H.

ordre at Lyle of 'pe golden Flyes' & ordeyned certeyn knightes of  
 pe ordre, & made statutes & ordinances moche Acordinge vnto<sup>1</sup>  
 pe ordre of pe Garter. Also pis same yere pe Frenshe men had  
 enterprised to have stolen Caleys in pe fysshing tyme, for many 4  
 botes of Fraunce held<sup>2</sup> saufe conduyt to come to Caleys for to take  
 hering; And pe Sowdioures of pe town had A custome to come to<sup>3</sup>  
 chirch, & leve per staves standing at pe<sup>4</sup> chirch dore, which staves<sup>5</sup>  
 pe Frenshemen, which wer Araied like fissheres, had purposed to<sup>6</sup> 8  
 haue taken so<sup>7</sup> pere wepon, & wynne pe town. But one of pame  
 lay with A comon woman<sup>8</sup> pe night to<sup>9</sup>-fore, & he<sup>10</sup> tolde to  
 hir pere counsel; And she on pe morne told pe lieutenante,  
 which forth<sup>11</sup>-with commaunded pat every man shold kepe his 12  
 wepen in his<sup>12</sup> hand, sacryng tyme and other. And when pei Aper-  
 ceived pis, pat<sup>13</sup> pei wer myspointed, they sayled streght to<sup>14</sup>  
 Depe, & stole & toke pat town. And on<sup>15</sup> Newyeres even after,  
 pei toke Harflete; And thus Englishe men began to losse A litel 16  
 and<sup>16</sup> liteH in Normandy.

**<sup>17</sup>How Caleys and Guyhenes wer beseged by pe duke of Ber-  
 goyn, & how pei wer rescued by pe duke of Gloucester.<sup>17</sup>**  
*Capitulum CCL<sup>mo</sup>.<sup>18</sup>*

20

This yere was A gret noyse thurgh aH Englonde, how pe Duke  
 of Burgoyne wolde come & besegie Caleys. Wherefore perle of  
 Mortayne, with his Army pat he had for to haue gone with<sup>19</sup> in-to  
 Fraunce, was contermaunded, & charged pat he shold go to Caleys, 24  
 which was at pat tyme wel vitailed & manned; ffor Sir Iohn<sup>20</sup>  
 Ratcliff was lieutenaunt of pe King in pat town, And pe Baron of  
 Dudlay, lieutenant of pe Castel. And pe ix day of IuyH, pe Duke  
 of Burgoyne, <sup>21</sup>with al pe power of Flaundres & moche other peple, 28  
 come before Caleys, & sett his<sup>22</sup> siege About pe town; & every town  
 of Flaundres had per tenttes bi pame self. And pis Siege endured  
 thre wekes. In pe mean while pe Duke of Gloucestre, beyng  
 Protector of England, toke pe moste parte of pe lordes of Englonde, 32  
 & went ouer pe See to Caleys, for to rescu pe town, or for<sup>23</sup> to feght

<sup>1</sup> on to H.    <sup>2</sup> had HC.    <sup>3</sup> to the H.    <sup>4</sup> pe om. C.

<sup>5</sup> which staves H. which stauis C. om. Ad.

<sup>6</sup> so to H.    <sup>7</sup> so om. H.    <sup>8</sup> woman om. H.    <sup>9</sup> be H.

<sup>10</sup> he om. HC.    <sup>11</sup> for H.    <sup>12</sup> his om. H.    <sup>13</sup> pat om. H.

<sup>14</sup> forth H.    <sup>15</sup> of H.    <sup>16</sup> and a C.    <sup>17-18</sup> om. H.

<sup>19</sup> Cap. iij vice iij H.    <sup>20</sup> on H.    <sup>21</sup> Iohn of H.    <sup>22</sup> leaf 188.

<sup>23</sup> sette his C.    <sup>24</sup> for om. HC.

with þe Duke & his hoste, if they wold haue bidden. This tyme, London & euery gode towun of Englon<sup>d</sup> sent ouer þe<sup>1</sup> See to þis rescuse certeyn peple wel Arayed, of þe best & chose men for þe  
 4 Werre. And þe ij day of August, the said Duke of Gloucestre Arriued at Caleys with al his Army & v<sup>c</sup> shippes & moo. And þe Duke of Burgoy<sup>n</sup><sup>2</sup> & al his ooste þat lay in þe<sup>3</sup> Siegie, As sone as þei espyed þe Sayles in þe See, before þei<sup>4</sup> Approched Caleys  
 8 haven, sodenly in A moru<sup>ng</sup> departed fro þe Siege, leuyng behind þame moche stuffe & vitailles, & fled in-to Flaundres & Pycardy. And in likewise did þe Siege þat lay tofore Guynes, wher-as they of Guynes toke þe gret gonnes of brasse<sup>5</sup> called Gedcon,<sup>6</sup> & many  
 12 other gret gonnes & serpentines. And þen when þe Duke of Gloucestre was Arryved with aH his oost, he went into Flaundres, & was perin xi dayes, & did but litel harme; except þat<sup>7</sup> he brent ij fair villagies, Popering & Belle, & oper houses þat<sup>8</sup> wer of no<sup>9</sup>  
 16 strenght, & so he<sup>10</sup> returned home Ageyn. Also þis same yere þe King of Scotland beseged Rokesburgh<sup>11</sup> with myche peple; but Sir Rauf Gray departed fro þe CasteH, & ordeyned for rescouse; but as sone as þe Kyng vnderstode his departyng, he sodenly brak his  
 20 siege & went his way,<sup>12</sup> leuyng moche ordynnance<sup>13</sup> behinde him; wher he gat no worsshipe.

This same yeer, þe ij Day of Ianiuer, Quene Katerine, þat<sup>14</sup> was þe Kinges moder, & wife to Kyng Henry þe Fyft, dyed, & departed  
 24 out of þis world, & was brought rially thurgh London to<sup>15</sup> Westmynster; & þer she lyeth worsshippfully buryed<sup>16</sup> in oure Lady Chapel. Also<sup>17</sup> þis same yere, þe xiiij day of Ianiver, fih down þe yate with þe<sup>18</sup> towr on it,<sup>19</sup> on London Brigg<sup>20</sup> towarde Southwerk,  
 28 with two Arches, & al þat stode peron. This same<sup>21</sup> yere was A gret treaty holden bitweene Grauenyng & Caleys, bitwen þe King<sup>22</sup> & Duke of Burgoy<sup>n</sup>, In which was þe Cardinal of Englon<sup>d</sup> & þe Duke of Northfolk, for þe King, with<sup>23</sup> many othir lordes. And  
 32 for þe Duke, was<sup>24</sup> þe Duchesse, having ful power of hir lorde as

<sup>1</sup> þe om. HC.    <sup>2</sup> of Burgoy<sup>n</sup> om. HC.    <sup>3</sup> þat H.    <sup>4</sup> the H.

<sup>5</sup> brasse which was H.    <sup>6</sup> Dygeon H. digeon C. digeo (*in margin*) Ad.

<sup>7</sup> þat om. C.    <sup>8</sup> which HC.    <sup>9</sup> of Add. of no HC.    <sup>10</sup> he om. H.

<sup>11</sup> Rokesbrught H. burgh Ad.    <sup>12</sup> way and C.

<sup>13</sup> stoff H.    <sup>14</sup> which HC.    <sup>15</sup> And so to HC.

<sup>16</sup> And þer lieth buryed worshippfully H.    <sup>17</sup> And H. And also C.

<sup>18</sup> A H.    <sup>19</sup> on it om. H.    <sup>20</sup> leaf 188, back.    <sup>21</sup> same om. H.

<sup>22-23</sup> And the Duke of Burgoy<sup>n</sup> where for the king was displeyd And sent for þe Cardinatt of Englon<sup>d</sup> þe Duke of Norfolk And H. Bourgoyne where for the king was the Cardinatt of englon<sup>d</sup> the duke of norfolk and C.

<sup>23</sup> was duble H.

Regent & lady of his landis, wher<sup>1</sup> was taken, by trewes<sup>2</sup> of both parties, An Abstinence of Werre for A certeyn tyme in þe name of þe Duchesse, & nat of þe Duke, because he had gone from his othe & legeance pat he had made to King Henry; þerfor King Henre 4 neuer wold<sup>3</sup> write, ne Apoynt, ne<sup>4</sup> haue to do with him after, but al in þe Duchesse name.

Also þis same<sup>5</sup> yere, Quene Iane died, þe ij day of Iuyl, which had ben King Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup> wife; & was caried fro Carmondsey 8 vnto Caunterbury, wher she lieth buried by<sup>6</sup> King Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup>, hir houseband. This same<sup>5</sup> yere died al þe lions in þe Toure of London, which<sup>7</sup> had nat ben seen many<sup>8</sup> yeeris before out of mynde.

12

**9 How Owayne, a squyer of Wales pat had wedded Quene Kateryne, was Arested; And of þe Scisme bitwene Eugeny & Felix.<sup>9</sup> Capitulum cclj.<sup>10</sup>**

IN þe xvj yere of King Henry, died Sigismond, pemperoure of 16 Almaign, & Knight of þe Garter; whos entierment þe Kyng kept at Seynt<sup>11</sup> Poules in London ryally, wher was made a ryall hercie; and<sup>12</sup> þe King in his Astate, clad in blew, was at even at dirige. & on<sup>13</sup> þe morne at masse, &c'.<sup>14</sup> And after hym was elect &<sup>15</sup> chosen 20 Albert,<sup>16</sup> Duke of Ostrych, which had wedded Sigismondes doughter, forto be Emperour; &<sup>17</sup> also was Albert<sup>18</sup> taken & receyved to be Kinge of Beme & of<sup>19</sup> Hungarie bi reson<sup>20</sup> of his wyfe; for he left<sup>21</sup> after him none other heir. þis Albert was Emperour bot 24 one yere, for he was poysond, <sup>22</sup>& died perof.<sup>22</sup> Some say he dyed of A flixx: but he was A vertuose man & A<sup>23</sup> pitiful, so moche pat al þe peple pat knew him<sup>24</sup> said þat<sup>25</sup> þe world<sup>26</sup> was nat worthy to haue his presence.<sup>27</sup>

28

<sup>1</sup> which H.      <sup>2</sup> sadenes H.

<sup>3</sup> the kyng neuer wold C.      the king wold neuer H.

<sup>4</sup> with hym bot ne H.      <sup>5</sup> same om. H.      <sup>6</sup> with H.

<sup>7</sup> the wich H.      the which C.      <sup>8</sup> in many H.

<sup>9-9</sup> How Owayn . . . Eugeny & Felix om. H.      <sup>10</sup> Cap iij 21 H.

<sup>11</sup> Seynt om. H.      <sup>12</sup> in Ad.      <sup>13</sup> in H.      <sup>14</sup> &c'. om. H.      <sup>15</sup> An H.

<sup>16</sup> Albert om. H.      <sup>17</sup> & om. C.      & also om. H.

<sup>18</sup> also was Ad.      Albert was H.      This was C.

<sup>19</sup> of om. HC.      <sup>20</sup> because H.      because C.

<sup>21</sup> his wyfe pat was Sygysmonds doughter which lefte H.      his wife that was Sigismundis doughter whiche lefte C.

<sup>22-22</sup> and so he died HC.      <sup>23</sup> A om. HC.

<sup>24</sup> him om. H.      <sup>25</sup> þat om. H.      <sup>26</sup> worde H.

<sup>27</sup> hys presence. In þis yere was þe Kyng of Scottes murthered in his chamber by night pytously which king had ben prissond xv yere in Englund And thei pat slew hym were takyn afterward and hade cruel Iustice H.



This same<sup>1</sup> yere, one Owayn, A squyer of Waleȝ, A man of low byrth, which had many A day<sup>2</sup> to-fore secretly wedded Quene Katerine, & had by hir iij sonnes & a doughter, was taken & 4 commaunded to Newgate, to prison, bi pe<sup>3</sup> lorle of Glowcestre, Protectour of pe Reame. And pe same yere<sup>4</sup> he brake prison by pe mean of A preest pat was his Chapelayn. And after, he was<sup>5</sup> taken ageyn bi pe<sup>3</sup> Lorle Bemond, & brought Ageyn to Newgate, 8 which afterward was delyuered at large; & one of his sonnes afterward was made Erle<sup>6</sup> of Richemount, Another,<sup>7</sup> Erle of Penbroke, & pe third, A monk of Westmynster, which monk died sone after. This same<sup>1</sup> yere also, on New-yere day, at Baynard CasteH, fift 12 down A stakk of wod sodenly at afternone, & slew iij men<sup>8</sup> mesciensously, & foul hurt othir. Also at Bedford, on Ash-tuesday,<sup>9</sup> wer iij men<sup>10</sup> murthred without strok, by falling doun of a steir, as pei come out of per<sup>11</sup> comon haH, & many foul hurt. In 16 pe xvij yere, Sir Richard Beauchamp, pe gode Erle of Warwick, died at Rone, he beyng pat tyme lieutenaunt<sup>12</sup> of pe King in Normandie; and fro pens his body was brought to Warthewick, where he lieth worsshipfully in a new chapel on pe South side of 20 pe Queer. Also pis<sup>13</sup> yere was A gret derth of Corne in al<sup>14</sup> Englonȝ; for I<sup>15</sup> busshel of whet was worth iij<sup>s</sup> iiij<sup>d</sup> in many places of Englonȝ,<sup>16</sup> & yet men might nat haue ynoghe<sup>17</sup>; wherfore Stephen Brown, pat tyme Mair of London, sent vnto<sup>18</sup> Pruse, & 24 brought to<sup>19</sup> London certeyn shippes laden with Rye, which eased, & did myche gode to pe peple; for korne was so skaree in Englonȝ pat in some placez<sup>20</sup> pore peple made pame brede of  
braken  
ferne<sup>21</sup> rotes.

28 This yere pe general Counsel of Basile deposed Pope Eugeny; & pei chese Felix, which was Duke of Sauoy; & pan began pe Seisme which<sup>22</sup> endured vnto pe yere of oure Lord Ihesu Crist<sup>23</sup> M<sup>i</sup> iij<sup>c</sup> xlvij.<sup>24</sup> This Felix was A devout prince, & saw pe sonnes of his 32 sonnes, & after, lyued An holy &<sup>25</sup> deuoute lyfe, & was chosen Pope

<sup>1</sup> same *om.* H.    <sup>2</sup> A day *om.* H.    <sup>3</sup> my HC.    <sup>4</sup> And *pis* yere H.    And this yere C.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 189.    <sup>6</sup> the Erle H.  
<sup>7</sup> And on oþer the H.    & anoþir C.    <sup>8</sup> m<sup>i</sup> Ad. men HC.  
<sup>9</sup> schyrday H.    a shireday C.    <sup>10</sup> m<sup>i</sup> Ad. xvij men HC.  
<sup>11</sup> the H.    <sup>12</sup> leutenannt pat tyme H.    <sup>13</sup> *pis* same H.  
<sup>14</sup> al *om.* H.    <sup>15</sup> a C.    <sup>16</sup> for 1 busshel . . . of Englonȝ *om.* H.  
<sup>17</sup> thought H.    <sup>18</sup> in to C.    <sup>19</sup> in H.  
<sup>20</sup> pat in some placez *om.* H.    places of Englonȝ C.  
<sup>21</sup> braken *om.* HC.    *interlined as a gloss* Ad.    <sup>22</sup> the which H.  
<sup>23</sup> Ihu crist *om.* H.    <sup>24</sup> M<sup>i</sup> CCCC & xlvij H.  
<sup>25</sup> holy & *om.* H.

by<sup>1</sup> þe Counsel of Basile. Eugeny [was] deposed; & so þe Seisme was long tyme. And þis Felix had no<sup>2</sup> moche<sup>3</sup> obedience, bi-cause of þe Nevtralite for þe moste parte; & wel nygh al Cristendome obeid & repute Eugeny for verey Pope:—God knoweth who was<sup>4</sup> þe<sup>4</sup> verey Poper of þame both; for both occupied, during þe lyfe of Eugeny. This same<sup>5</sup> yere, Sir Richard, which was<sup>6</sup> vicare of Hermesworth, was degraded of his prestehode at Poules, & brent at Tour<sup>7</sup> Hill, as for an heretike, vpon<sup>8</sup> Seynt Botulphe day; 8 how-be-it,<sup>9</sup> at his deth he died A gode Cristen man; wherfor, after his deth moche peple come to þe place wher he was<sup>10</sup> brent, & offred, & made an hepe of stones, & sett vp A crosse of tree, & held him for A Seynt, til þe Mair &<sup>11</sup> shereves, by þe commaundment of þe<sup>12</sup> Kyng & of<sup>12</sup> bisshopes, destroyed it, & made þer A dong-hiH. Also þis same yere þe shyreves of London sett out of Seynt Martyns þe Grannt, þe sanctuarey, fyve persones, which afterward wer restored Ageyn to þe<sup>4</sup> same<sup>13</sup> sanctuarey by þe Kinges Iusticez. After<sup>16</sup> Albert þe iij, Frederike was chosen Emperoure. This Frederike, Duke of Osterike, was long Emperoure, & differred for to be crowned at Rome because of þe<sup>4</sup> Seisme; but after þat vnion was had, he was crowned with Emperial Diademe, with gret<sup>14</sup> glorie & 20 triumphe, of Pope Nicholas þe Fourt: this was A man peseble, &<sup>15</sup> of singular pacience, nat hatyng þe chireh: he wedded þe King of Portyngale doughter &c'.

<sup>16</sup> **How þe Duchesse of Gloucestre was Arested for treson, & 24 committed to perpetuel prison in þe Ile of Mann; And of þe deth of Maister Roger Bolingbroke.<sup>16</sup> Ca. celiij.<sup>17</sup>**

IN this yere,<sup>18</sup> Elianour Cobham, Duches of Gloucestre, was Arested for certeyn poyntes of treyson leyd Ageynst hir, wher-vpon<sup>28</sup> she was examyned in Seynt Stephens Chapel at Westmynster, before perchebisshop of Caunterbury; & þer she was enioyned to open penaunce, forto go thugh Chepe, bering a tapere in hir hand, & aftir in<sup>19</sup> perpetuel prison in<sup>20</sup> þe Ile of Man, vnder þe keping<sup>32</sup> of Sir Thomas Stanley. Also þat same tyme wer Arested Maister Thomas SouthweH, A chanon of Westmynster, Maister Iohn Hune.

<sup>1</sup> at H.      <sup>2</sup> not C.      <sup>3</sup> grete H.      <sup>4</sup> þe om. H.

<sup>5</sup> same om. H.      <sup>6</sup> was om. C.      <sup>7</sup> leaf 189, back.

<sup>9</sup> how weH HC.      <sup>10</sup> had been H.      he had be C.      <sup>11</sup> & om. H.

<sup>12</sup> of om. H.      <sup>13</sup> same om. HC.      <sup>14</sup> gret om. H.

<sup>15</sup> peschly quite and HC.      <sup>16-16</sup> om. H.

<sup>17</sup> Capitulum 22 H.      <sup>18</sup> yere dame H.      <sup>19</sup> to HC.      <sup>20</sup> into H.

<sup>1</sup> A chappeleyn of pe said ladys,<sup>1</sup> Maister Roger Bolynbroke, A clerk vsyng Nygromancie, & one Mariery Iurdeman, called 'pe wyche of Eye' beside Westmynster. Thise wer Arested as for beyng of  
<sup>4</sup> counsel with pe sayd <sup>2</sup> Duchesse of Gloucestre. And as for Maister Thomas Southwel, he died in pe Towr pe night before he <sup>3</sup> shold have benne regned on pe morow<sup>4</sup>; for so he said him self *pat* he shold die in his bedd, & nat bi Iustice. And in pe <sup>5</sup> xx yere,<sup>6</sup>  
<sup>8</sup> Maister Iohn Hune & Maister Roger Bolyngbroke wer brought to <sup>7</sup> pe Guyldhalle in London, & *per*, before pe Mayr, pe lordes & <sup>8</sup> chief Iustice of Englon<sup>l</sup>, wer *pei*<sup>9</sup> rayned, & dampned both<sup>10</sup> to be drawen, hanged & quartred; but Maister Iohn Hune had his  
<sup>12</sup> chartre, & was pardoned by pe King; but Maister Roger was drawen to Tiborne, wher he confessed *pat* he died gyltes, & neuer had trespassed in *pat* *pat* he died fore; nat-withstanding he was hanged,<sup>11</sup> heded, & quartred;<sup>12</sup> And Margery Iurdemain was brent in Smyth-  
<sup>16</sup> felde. Also pis yere<sup>13</sup> was A gret Affray in Flet Strete by night tyme, bitwen men of court & men of London, & diuerse men slayn, & many<sup>14</sup> hurt: & one Herbotel was chief<sup>15</sup> cause of pe misgouernance & Affray. Also pis yere, at chesing of pe Mair of London, pe  
<sup>20</sup> commones named Robert Chapton, & Raulyne Holand, taylor. & pe Aldermenn toke Robbert Clapton, & brought him at pe<sup>16</sup> right hond of pe Mair, as pe custome is. And pan certeyn talyoures & other<sup>17</sup> hand-crafty men cried "nay! nat *pat*<sup>18</sup> man, but<sup>19</sup> Raulyn  
<sup>24</sup> Holand!" Wherfor pe Mair, *pat* was Padesly,<sup>20</sup> sent *po* *pat* cried so<sup>21</sup> to Newgate, where they Abode a gret while, & wer wel<sup>22</sup> ponysshed.

In this same<sup>23</sup> yere wer diuerse Embassatoures sent in to Guyan  
<sup>28</sup> for A mariage for pe King for perles doughter of Arminak, which was concluded; but, by pe mean of <sup>24</sup> perle of Suthfolk, it was lett & put Aparte. And after pis, pe said Erle of Southfolk went ouer pe<sup>25</sup> See vnto<sup>26</sup> Frannee, & *per* he treted pe mariage bitwen pe King

<sup>1-1</sup> *om.* H.    <sup>2</sup> *leaf* 190.    <sup>3</sup> *pat* he H.    <sup>4</sup> *morne* HC.    <sup>5</sup> *pis* H.

<sup>6</sup> *yere* pe xx H.    the *yere* xx C.    <sup>7</sup> *into* H.    <sup>8</sup> *and the* H.

<sup>9</sup> *pei* *om.* HC.    <sup>10</sup> *both* *om.* H.    <sup>11</sup> *hanged* *om.* H.

<sup>12</sup> *quartered, on whos saule God haue mercy H.*    *quartered, on whos soule God haue mercy C.*

<sup>13</sup> *yere the lord talbott leyde feire to Deype, But pe Dolphyn rescowed it And wan pe Bastell pat Englishman hade made. Also pis yere H.*

<sup>14</sup> *som* H.    *somme* C.    <sup>15</sup> *chief* *om.* H.    <sup>16</sup> *pe* *om.* C.

<sup>17</sup> *other* *om.* H.    <sup>18</sup> *this* HC.    <sup>19</sup> *no* H.

<sup>20</sup> *pat was padesly* H.    *that was padysly* C.    *om.* Ad.    <sup>21</sup> *so* *cried* HC.

<sup>22</sup> *wel* *om.* H.    <sup>23</sup> *same* *om.* H.    <sup>24</sup> *pe mean of* *om.* H.

<sup>25</sup> *pe* *om.* H.    <sup>26</sup> *into* HC.

of Englon<sup>d</sup> & <sup>1</sup> þe Kinges doughter of Cecil & of Ierusalem. & þe next yere it was conclud<sup>e</sup>d fully, þis<sup>2</sup> mariage; by which<sup>3</sup> mariage þe<sup>4</sup> Kyng shold delyuer to hir fader þe Duchie of Angeo & perldome of Mayn<sup>5</sup>, which was þe key of Normandy. Then departed þe <sup>4</sup> Duke of Suthfolk, with his wife & diuerse lordes & knightes, in þe moste rial astate <sup>5</sup> þat might be, out of Englon<sup>d</sup>, with new charez & palfreys, which went thugh Chepe, & so went ouer þe See, & receyved hir, & sith brought hir in Lent<sup>6</sup> after to Hampton, wher <sup>8</sup> she landed, & was ryally receyved. And on Candelmes evyn before, bi A gret tempest of thondre & lightenyng at afternone, Poules steple was sett A fire on þe middes of the<sup>7</sup> shafte in þe tymbre, which was qwenched bi force<sup>8</sup> of<sup>9</sup> labour, <sup>10</sup> & specially bi <sup>12</sup> þe labour<sup>10</sup> of þe morow masse preste of þe Bow in Chepe, which was thought impossible, saufe only bi<sup>11</sup> þe grace of God.

This yere was þerle of Stafford made & create Duke of Bokynham; þerle of Warewik, Duke of Warwike; þerle of Dorsett, <sup>16</sup> Marques<sup>12</sup> of Dorsett; & þerle of Suthfolk was<sup>13</sup> made<sup>14</sup> Marquys of Southfolk.

<sup>15</sup> **How King Henry þe Sext<sup>16</sup> wedded Quene Margaret; And of hir Coronacion.**<sup>15</sup> *Capitulum CCl[i]ij.*<sup>17</sup> 20

IN this yere Kyng Henry maried at Southwyke Quene Margaret; & she come to London [þe] xvij day of May; And bi þe way al þe lordes of Englon<sup>d</sup> receyved<sup>18</sup> hir worsshipfully in diuerse places, & in especial þe Duke of Gloucestre. And on þe<sup>18</sup> <sup>24</sup> Blakhethe, þe Mair of London<sup>19</sup>, Aldermen, & al þe crafte-men<sup>20</sup> in blew gownnes browdred with þe denyse of his craft, þat þei might be biknowen, mett with hir, with rede hoodes, & brought hir to London<sup>21</sup>, where were diuerse pagentis & conntinance of <sup>28</sup> diuerse histories shewed in diuerse placez of þe Cite Rially, & castelles. And þe xxx day of May þe forsaid Quene was crowned at Westmynster; and þer was Iustes iij dayes during, with-in þe sayntuarie tofore pabbey. This yere þe Prior of Kilmain Appelled <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> And Marget H.    <sup>2</sup> þat H.    that C.    <sup>3</sup> the which H.

<sup>4</sup> by the which the H.    <sup>5</sup> leaf 190, back.    <sup>6</sup> the lent H.    the lente C.

<sup>7</sup> of Ad. of the C.    <sup>8</sup> bi force om. H.    <sup>9</sup> by H.

<sup>10-10</sup> and . . . labour om. H.    <sup>11</sup> bi om. HC.    <sup>12</sup> þe marques H.

<sup>13</sup> was om. H.    <sup>14</sup> þe H.    <sup>15-15</sup> How . . . Coronacion om. H.

<sup>16</sup> þe sext om. C.    <sup>17</sup> Capitulum 23 H.

<sup>18</sup> þe om. H.    <sup>19</sup> of London om. C.

<sup>20</sup> men om. HC.

perle of Vrmond of treson, which had A day Assigned to þame forto  
 feght in Smythfeld. And þe listes wer made, & þe feeld dressed;  
 but when it came to poynt, þe King commaunded þat þei shold nat  
 4 fight, but toke þe quarel in-to his own hond. & þis was<sup>1</sup> done at  
 þe Instance & laboure<sup>2</sup> of certeyn prechours & doctoures of London,  
 as Maister Gilbert Worthington, parson<sup>3</sup> of <sup>4</sup>Seynt Andrews in  
 Holborn, & other. Also þis same yere come A gret Enbassate into  
 8 Englonde out of Fraunce, forto haue concluded A perpetual pees;  
 but in conclusion it turned vnto<sup>5</sup> A trewes of A yere. About þis  
 tyme dyed Seynt Bernardyne, A gray frere<sup>6</sup> which began þe new  
 reformation of þat ordre in many places, In so myche þat þei þat  
 12 wer reformed bene called '*Observantes*,' which *Observantes* bene  
 enerecid gretly in Italie & in Almaine. This Bernardin was  
 canonized bi Pope Nicholas þe fyft In þe yere M<sup>1</sup> CCCCI.<sup>7</sup> Iohannes  
 de Capestrauo was his disciple, whiche profited moche<sup>8</sup> to þe  
 16 reformation of þat ordre; for whome God shewed many a fair<sup>9</sup>  
 miracle. Also here is to be noted, þat fro þis tyme forward, King  
 Henry neuer profited<sup>10</sup> ne Went forward; but Fortune began to turn  
 fro him on al sides, als<sup>10</sup> wel in Fraunce, Normandy, Guyan, as in  
 20 Englonde. Some men hold opinion þat King Henry gaf commission  
 plenerly<sup>11</sup> to Sir Edward Hulle, Sir Robert Roos, Dean<sup>12</sup> of Seynt  
 Seuerynes, & oper, to conclude A mariage for him with þe perle of  
 Arminakes suster, which was promysed (as it was seid) & concluded;  
 24 but afterward<sup>13</sup> it was broken, & he wedded Quene Margarete, as  
 A-fore is seid; which was A dere mariage for þe reame of Englonde;<sup>14</sup>  
<sup>15</sup>ffor it is knowen verely þat, for to haue hir, was delyuered þe  
 Duchie of Angeo & þe Erldome of Maign, which was þe key of  
 28 Normandie, for þe Frensh men tentre. And Aboute þis, þe<sup>15</sup> said<sup>16</sup>  
 Marquys of Southfolk axed in playn parlement A fyftenth & an  
 half for to feeche hir out of Fraunce. Se now<sup>17</sup> what A mariage was  
 þis, as to þe comparison of þat oper mariage of Armynke! for þe  
 32 shold haue ben delyuered so many castels & townes in Gwyhen;  
 And so moche gode shold haue bene yiffen with hir, þat al Englonde  
 shold haue bene enryched þe-by,<sup>18</sup> but contrary-wise feli. Wherfor

<sup>1</sup> was *om.* H.      <sup>2</sup> & laboure *om.* H.      <sup>3</sup> the person H.      <sup>4</sup> leaf 191.

<sup>5</sup> to H.      <sup>6</sup> ? MS. frerer.      <sup>7</sup> yere of our lord M<sup>1</sup> CCCC and fyty H.

<sup>8</sup> moche *om.* H.      <sup>9</sup> a fair *om.* H.      <sup>10-10</sup> *om.* H.      als = as C.

<sup>11</sup> plenerly *om.* H.      <sup>12</sup> þe Dean H.

<sup>13</sup> afterward it was broken for by the mene of þe marquys of sullfolke H.

<sup>14</sup> englonde as it schewed before H.      <sup>15-15</sup> *om.* H.

<sup>16</sup> & for H.      <sup>17</sup> lo HC.

<sup>18</sup> ben þe by encreased H.      þe by *om.* C.

euery gret <sup>1</sup> prince ought to kepe his promisses; <sup>2</sup> for, bicause of breking of pis promisse,<sup>2</sup> & for mariage of Quene Margaret, what losse hath pe reame of *Englond* had,<sup>3</sup> bi losyng of Normandy and Guyan, bi diuision of <sup>4</sup> pe reame, pe rebelling of commines Ageynst <sup>4</sup> *per* princes & lordes; what diuision Aye <sup>5</sup> pe lordes, what murdre & sleying of pame! what felde foughten & made! in *conclusion*, so many,<sup>6</sup> that many a <sup>7</sup> man hath lost his life; And in conclusion, pe King deposed, & <sup>8</sup> pe Quene *with* hir son<sup>8</sup> fayn to flee into <sup>8</sup> Scotland, & fro pens to <sup>9</sup> Fraunce, & so to Lorayn, pe place wher <sup>10</sup> she come first <sup>11</sup> fro! Many men deme pat pe breking of <sup>12</sup> pe Kinges promise to pe suster of perles of Armynak, was cause of this gret losse & Aduersite.

12

**How pe gode Duke of Gloucestre, Humfrey, pe Kinges vnclē,  
was Arested at pe parlement of Bury; And <sup>13</sup> of his death;  
And how Anges in May<sup>14</sup> was deliuered.**

In <sup>14</sup> pe xxv<sup>te</sup> yere <sup>15</sup> of King Henry pe VI<sup>te</sup>,<sup>16</sup> was A parlement <sup>16</sup> at Bury called seynt Edmundes Bury; About which was commaunded all pe communes of pe cont[r]e to be *per* in *per* most defensable Aray, to <sup>17</sup> A-wayt vpon pe King, to which <sup>18</sup> parlement come pe Duke of Gloucestre, Humfrey, pe Kinges vnclē, which had <sup>20</sup> bene pe <sup>19</sup> protector of *Englond* al pe non-Age of pe King. And Anone after pat <sup>20</sup> he was come to <sup>21</sup> his logyng, he was Arested bi pe Viscount Bemond, pe Constable of *Englond*, acompanyed <sup>22</sup> with <sup>23</sup> pe Duke of Bokyngham & many *oper* lordes, and forth <sup>24</sup> with al <sup>24</sup> his <sup>25</sup> seruantes wer commaunded for to depart fro him; And xxxij of <sup>26</sup> pe chief of them<sup>27</sup> wer arested also,<sup>27</sup> & sent to diuerse prisonēs. And anone, after pe <sup>28</sup> said Arest,<sup>29</sup> pe said Duke was on pe morn<sup>30</sup> found <sup>30</sup> dede: on whos soul, God haue merey, Amen! <sup>31</sup> But how <sup>28</sup> he died, & in what maner, pe certentie is nat knowen to me.<sup>32</sup> Some said he died for sorow; some said he was murthred bitwene ij

<sup>1</sup> leaf 191, back.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. H.      <sup>3</sup> had om. HC.      <sup>4</sup> in HC.

<sup>5</sup> among H. amonge C.      <sup>6</sup> so many om. H.      <sup>7</sup> a om. H.

<sup>8</sup> and om. H.      <sup>9</sup> into H.      that C.      <sup>10</sup> pat H.

<sup>11</sup> first om. H.      <sup>12</sup> of om. H.      <sup>13</sup> of om. C.      <sup>14</sup> Also in H.

<sup>15</sup> yere xxv C.      <sup>16</sup> pe v<sup>te</sup> om. HC.      <sup>17</sup> for to HC.      <sup>18</sup> to the which H.

<sup>19</sup> pe om. C.      <sup>20</sup> pat om. C.      <sup>21</sup> come in H.      was in C.

<sup>22</sup> whome acompanyed H.      whom accompanied C.

<sup>23</sup> with om. HC.      <sup>24</sup> for H.      <sup>25</sup> his om. H.

<sup>26</sup> also of H.      <sup>27</sup> also om. H.      were also arested C.      <sup>28</sup> this C.

<sup>29</sup> And v or vj days after pis seid arest H.

<sup>30</sup> was . . . found om. H.      found om. C.      <sup>31</sup> Amen om. H.

<sup>32</sup> to me om. H.      to me knowen C.

federbeddes; other said *pat* an hote spytt was put in his foundement; & so,<sup>1</sup> how<sup>2</sup> he died, God knoweth, to whome is no thing<sup>3</sup> hidd. And when<sup>4</sup> he was thus<sup>5</sup> dede, he was leid open, *pat* al  
4 men might se him, And so both lordes & knightes of *pe* shires, with  
burgessers, come & saw him<sup>6</sup> ded; but *pai* could nat *perceif* wound  
ne token<sup>7</sup> how he died. here may men mark what *pis* world<sup>8</sup> is!  
this Duke was A noble man & A gret clerk, & had worsshippfully  
8 rewled *pis* reame to *pe* Kinges behove, & neuer coude be found  
faute in<sup>9</sup> him,<sup>10</sup> but envy of *pame* *pat* wer *gouvernours*, & had  
promised<sup>11</sup> *pe* Duchis of Angas & perldome of Maign, caused<sup>12</sup> *pe*  
destruccion of *pis* noble man; for thei drad him, *pat* he wold haue  
12 enpesshed *pat* deliuerance. And after, *pei* sent his body to seynt  
Albones<sup>13</sup> with *certeyn* lightes for to be buried; And so *Sir* Geruase  
of Clifton had *pan*<sup>14</sup> *pe* charge to convey *pe* corps<sup>14</sup>; & so it was  
buried at Seynt Albons in *pe* Abbey; & v *persones* of his houshold  
16 wer sent to London, & *per* wer reyned & juged to be drawen, honged  
& quartred; Of wome *pe* names wer *Sir* Roger Chammbrelayn,  
knight, one<sup>15</sup> Midelton, A<sup>16</sup> *squyere*, Herbard, A *squyer*, Arthur,<sup>17</sup>  
A *squyer*, & *Richard* Nedham: which v *persons* wer drawen fro *pe*  
20 Toure of London thugh Chepe to<sup>18</sup> Tiburn, & *per* honged, & lat  
down quyeck, & *pen* striped for to have bene heded & quartred.  
And *pan* *pe* Marquys of Southfolk shewed *per* for *pame* *pe* Kinges  
*pardon* vnder his gret Seale; & so *pei* wer pardoned of *pe* rem-  
24 anent of thexecucion, & had *per* lyues, & after<sup>19</sup> war brought  
agen yn to London, &<sup>20</sup> frely deliuered. this began *pe* trouble in  
*pe* reame of<sup>21</sup> *Englond* for *pe* deth of *pis* noble Duke of Gloucestre;  
& <sup>22</sup> al *pe* communes of *pe* reame began forto murmur<sup>23</sup> for it,<sup>24</sup> &  
28 were nat contente.

After *pat*<sup>25</sup> Pope Eugeny was dede,<sup>26</sup> Nicholas *pe* Fyft was elect  
Pope. This Nycholas was chosen for Eugeny, yet honggyng *pe*

<sup>1</sup> but H. so om. C. <sup>2</sup> leaf 192. <sup>3</sup> nothing is H.

<sup>4</sup> *pen* when H. *thenne* whan C. <sup>5</sup> so HC.

<sup>6</sup> him lye H. hym lye C.

<sup>7</sup> but woud ne token colde the not *perceyue* H. but wounde ne token  
coude they *perceyue* C.

<sup>8</sup> worde H. <sup>9</sup> to C. <sup>10</sup> found be hym Any faute H.

<sup>11</sup> promised to deliuer H. <sup>12</sup> for thei caused H.

<sup>13</sup> om. H. <sup>14</sup> in the charge of the corpus to convoy H.

<sup>15</sup> And H. <sup>16</sup> A om. H. <sup>17</sup> or Archure H.

<sup>18</sup> vnto H. <sup>19</sup> and so *pei* H. And so they C.

<sup>20</sup> And after H. and after C. <sup>21</sup> *pe* reame of om. H.

<sup>22</sup> of Gloucestre & om. H. & om. C. <sup>23</sup> to mourne H.

<sup>24</sup> for it om. H. <sup>25</sup> *pat* om. HC. <sup>26</sup> was dede om. H.

Scisme. natwithstandyng he gat pe obedience of al Cristen Reames ; for after *pat*<sup>1</sup> he was electe & sacred <sup>2</sup> Pope, *certayn* lordes of Fraunce & of England wer sent vnto<sup>3</sup> Sauoy, to Pope Felix, for to entrete him to cese of pe<sup>4</sup> Pepecy. And bi pe special<sup>5</sup> labour 4 of pe<sup>6</sup> Bisshop of Norwich & pe lorde of Seynt Iohnes, he cessed pe ij<sup>de</sup> yere after *pat* Pope Nicholas was sacred. And pe seid Felix was made Legate of Fraunce & Cardinal of Sauoye, & resigned pe hole papacy to<sup>7</sup> Nicholas ; after,<sup>8</sup> lyved an holy lyfe, & died 8 an holy man ; And as it is said, Almighty<sup>9</sup> God shewed miracles for him. This was pe xxij Scisme bitwen Eugeny & Felix, & dured xvi yere. pe cause was pis : The<sup>10</sup> general Counsel of Basil deposed Eugeny, which was only Pope & vndoubted, for- 12 as-mych as he obserued nat & kept<sup>11</sup> pe decrees & statutes of pe Councyl of Constance, as it is A-fore<sup>12</sup> said ; nethir<sup>13</sup> he rought not to gyve obedience to *pat* general Counseil in no maner wise :<sup>14</sup> wher-of Arose A gret Altercacion emong Writeres of pis 16 mateer, *pro* & *contra*, which kan nat Accorde vnto<sup>15</sup> pis day. one partie seith *pat*<sup>16</sup> ‘pe Counsel is Aboue pe Pope,’ *pat* *oper* partie seith “nay, but pe Pope is Aboue pe Counsel.” Godd, blessed Aboue aH thinges, gif & graunt<sup>17</sup> his pees in<sup>18</sup> holy chirche, 20 spouse of Criste, Amen ! This Nicholas was commen of Iene,<sup>19</sup> of low burth ; A doctour of dyvynite, an Actif man, he reedlyfied many places *pat* wer broken & ruynouse, & did do<sup>20</sup> make A gret warr About pe Palays, & made pe<sup>21</sup> wall new About Rome, 24 for drede of pe Turkes. And pe peple wondred of pe eresing<sup>22</sup> &<sup>23</sup> resignyng of Felix to<sup>24</sup> him, considering *pat* he was A man of so humble<sup>25</sup> burth ; And *pat* othir was of Affinite to al pe moste parte of Cristen princes ; wherof *per* was A verse publisshed in 28 Rome, *pus* :<sup>26</sup> hic fulsit mundo ; cessit Felix Nicholas.

**<sup>27</sup> How Sir Fraunceys Aragonoys toke Fogiers in Normandy : & of pe losse of Constantinoble by the Turks.<sup>27</sup> Ca. ccliiij.<sup>28</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> *pat om. H.*      <sup>2</sup> *leaf 192, back.*      <sup>3</sup> *in to H. into C.*  
<sup>4</sup> *pe om. H.*      <sup>5</sup> *special om. H.*      <sup>6</sup> *pe om. H.*  
<sup>7</sup> *vnto H.*      <sup>8</sup> *afterward H.*      <sup>9</sup> *Almighty om. H.*  
<sup>10</sup> *pat the H.*      <sup>11</sup> *And kept not H.*  
<sup>12</sup> *A-fore om. H.*      <sup>13</sup> *Neuer H.*      <sup>14</sup> *in no maner wise om. H.*  
<sup>15</sup> *on to H.*      <sup>16</sup> *pat om. H.*      <sup>17</sup> *send H.*      <sup>18</sup> *among H.*  
<sup>19</sup> *was young of Iene comyn H ; was of Iene comen of C.*      <sup>20</sup> *to H.*  
<sup>21</sup> *A H.*      <sup>22</sup> *ceysyng H. ceesing C.*      <sup>23</sup> *and of the H.*  
<sup>24</sup> *vn to H.*      <sup>25</sup> *lowe H.*      <sup>26</sup> *in his maner H. in this maner C.*  
<sup>27—27</sup> *om. H.*      <sup>28</sup> *Capitulum 25 H.*



In þe xxvij yere of King Henry þe vj<sup>te</sup>,<sup>1</sup> beyng trewes bitwen  
 England & Fraunce,<sup>2</sup> A knight of þe Engliſſh partie named *Sir*  
*Fraunceys Aragonys*, toke A town of Normandy, called<sup>3</sup> *Fogiere*,  
 4 Ayens þe trewes; of which takyng began moche sorow & losse, for  
 þis was þe occasion bi which<sup>4</sup> þe Frenshmen gat al Normandy &c.<sup>5</sup>  
<sup>6</sup>About þis tyme þe Cite of Constantinoble, which was Imperia<sup>l</sup>  
<sup>7</sup>Cite in al Grece, was taken bi þe Turkes infideles, which was  
 8 betrayed (as some hold Opinion), & pemp[er]or taken & slayn, & *pat*  
*ryal chireh of Sancta Sophia* robbed & despoyled, & þe reliques &  
 ymages & þe Rode drawn Aboute þe strete; which was done in  
 despite of *Cristen* feith. And sone after, al *Cristen* feith in Grece  
 12 perissshed & cessed. Ther wer many *Cristen* men slayn, & in-  
 numerable solde & put in Captinite. by þe takyng of þis towne, þe  
 Turkey gretly<sup>8</sup> enhaunzed in pride; & it is A gret losse vnto al  
*Cristendome*.<sup>6</sup>

16 <sup>9</sup>In þe xxviij yere<sup>10</sup> was A parlement holden at Westmynster,  
 & fro þens Aliourned to þe Blakfreres of<sup>11</sup> London, And after  
*Cristenmasse*, to<sup>12</sup> Westmynster Ageyn. And þis same yere, Robert  
 of<sup>13</sup> Cane, A man of þe West contre, with A few shippes, toke A  
 20 gret<sup>14</sup> flote of shippes comyng out of þe baye, laden with salt,—  
 which shippes wer of Prays, Flaundres, Holand & Zeland,—&  
 brought pame to Hampton. Wherfor þe merchantes of England  
 beyng in Flaundres, wer Arested in Bruges, Ippre, & oper places,  
 24 & might nat be deliuered, ner þer dettes dischargied, til þei hadd  
 made A poyntment for to pay for thamendes & hurtes of tho  
 shippes; which was payed bi þe merchandes of þe staple, euery  
 penny. And in like wise, þe merchauntez & godez beyng in  
 28 Danske wer also Arested, & made gret<sup>15</sup> Amendes.

This same yere the<sup>16</sup> Frenshmen in A mornyng toke, bi A  
 trayn,<sup>17</sup> þe town of Ponteralargee, & þer-in þe Lorde Fancounbrigge  
 was taken prisoner. And after þat,<sup>18</sup> in Decembre, Roan was  
 32 taken & lost, beyng þer-in þe Duke of Somersett, Edmund, þerle<sup>19</sup>  
 of Shrewsbury, whiche bi A-poyntment left Pleges, & left al<sup>20</sup>

<sup>1</sup> tho in the yere of kyng harry xxvij H. In the yere of kyng henry  
 xxvij C.

<sup>2</sup> fraunce and England C. <sup>3</sup> named HC. <sup>4</sup> bi the which H.

<sup>5</sup> &c om. H. <sup>6-6</sup> om. H. <sup>7</sup> leaf 193. <sup>8</sup> is gretly C.

<sup>9</sup> This yere A squiere of Englund named Chalons duer armes with A knyzt  
 of fraunce named *Sir leuys de buyett* to fore þe french kyng And ranne þe  
 french knyght through wyth A spere And slew him in þe feld H.

<sup>10</sup> yere xxviij C. <sup>11</sup> at HC. <sup>12</sup> on to H. <sup>13</sup> of om. H.

<sup>14</sup> an hole H. <sup>15</sup> Agrete H. <sup>16</sup> the om. H. <sup>17</sup> by A trayn toke H.

<sup>18</sup> þat om. H. <sup>19</sup> Erle H. <sup>20</sup> lost H. loste C.

Normandy, &<sup>1</sup> come home. And during þe said<sup>2</sup> parlement þe Duke of Suthfolke was Arested & sent to<sup>3</sup> þe Towre; & þer he<sup>4</sup> was A moneth. And after, þe King did do feche him out, for which<sup>5</sup> cause all þe communes of England wer in A gret rumor, what for<sup>6</sup> 4 deliuerance of Angas & Maign, & after,<sup>7</sup> losing of al Normandie, And in especial for þe deth of þe gode Duke of Gloucestre; In so myche þat, in some place, men gadred togedre, & made pame capitaynes—as Blew-Berde & oþer, which wer resisted, taken, & 8 had Iustice, & died. And þen<sup>8</sup> þe said Parlement was adiourned to Leycestre; and thidder þe King brought with him þe Duke of Southfolk. & when<sup>9</sup> þe Comon house vnderstode þat he was oute of þe Toure, & come thider, þei desired to haue execucion on<sup>10</sup> þem 12 þat wer cause of þe deliuerance of Normandy, & had bene cause of þe deth of þe<sup>11</sup> Duke of Gloucestre, & had sold Gascoygn & Guyhan, of which þei named to-be gylty, þe Duke of Southfolk as chief, þe Lord Say, þe Bisshop of Salesbury, Danyel, & many moo. And 16 for to Apease þe comons, þe Duke of Southfolk was exiled out of Englonð v yere; & so, during þe Parlement, he went in to Northfolk, & þer toke shipping forto go out of þe Reame of Englonð<sup>12</sup> vnto<sup>13</sup> Fraunce. And þis yere,<sup>14</sup> as he sayled on þe See, A shipp of 20 Werre called<sup>15</sup> Nicholas of þe<sup>16</sup> Tour mett with þis<sup>17</sup> shippe, & founde him þer-in; whome þei toke out, & brought hym into þere shipp tofore þe Maister & Capitayns; & þer he was examined, & at last Iuged to þe<sup>18</sup> deth. And so þei put him in A Cabone, & his 24 chapeleyn for to shryve him; And þat done, þei brought him in to Dover Rood, & þer sett him in-to þe boot, & þere smote of his hede, & brought þe body Alonde, vpon þe sondes, & sett þe hede þer-by. And þis was done þe fyft day of Maye. loo! whatt 28 Availed him now, al his<sup>19</sup> deliuerance of Normandy &c.<sup>20</sup> And here yhe may leer<sup>21</sup> how he was rewarded for þe deth of þe Duke of Gloucestre. This began sorow vpon sorow, & deth for deth.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>23</sup> **How this yere was thensurrexiõ in Kent of þe communes, 32  
of whome Iake Cade, On Irishman, was Capitayn.<sup>23</sup>  
Ca. cclv.<sup>24</sup>**

<sup>1</sup> A H.    <sup>2</sup> same H.    <sup>3</sup> in to HC.    <sup>4</sup> he om. H.  
<sup>5</sup> for which of Ad.    of which HC.    <sup>6</sup> for the HC.    <sup>7</sup> after for H.  
<sup>8</sup> þen om. H.    <sup>9</sup> leaf 193, back.    <sup>10</sup> of H.    <sup>11</sup> þe om. H.  
<sup>12</sup> of Englonð om. H.    <sup>13</sup> into HC.    <sup>14</sup> yere om. H.  
<sup>15</sup> called the HC.    <sup>16</sup> þe om. HC.    <sup>17</sup> hys H.    his C.    <sup>18</sup> þe om. H.  
<sup>19</sup> þis H.    <sup>20</sup> &c om. H.    <sup>21</sup> se H.    here C.    <sup>22</sup> deth &c. C.  
<sup>23</sup>—<sup>23</sup> om. H.    <sup>24</sup> Capitulum 26 H.

This yere of our Lorde M<sup>t</sup> cccc l, was þe gret grace of þe Iubilee at Rome; wher was gret pardon, in-so-mych þat, frome<sup>1</sup> al place; in<sup>2</sup> Cristendome, gret multitude of peple resorted thider.

4 þis yeere<sup>3</sup> was A gret Assemblée &<sup>4</sup> gadering togedre of þe<sup>5</sup> comons of Kent in gret nombre, & made an Insurrexiõ, & rebelled Ageynst þe Kyng & his lawes, & ordeynd þame<sup>6</sup> A capitayn called Iohn Cayd, An Irish man, which named him self Mortymer, Cosyn  
8 to þe Duke of Yorke. And þis Capitayn held thise men togedre, & made ordinance; Among þame, & brought þame to Blak-Heth, where he made A biß of peticiõnes to þe King & his Counsel, & shewed what iniuries & oppressions þe Poer comons suffred; & al  
12 vnder colour forto come<sup>7</sup> to his Abone; & he had A gret multitude of peple. And þe xvij<sup>8</sup> day of Iuyn, þe King,<sup>9</sup> many lordes,  
10 Capitaynes & men of Werre, went toward him to þe Blakk-heeth. And when þe Capitayne of Kent vnderstode þe commyng of þe  
16 King with so gret<sup>11</sup> puyssaunce, he<sup>12</sup> with-drew him with his peple to Seuenoke, A litel village. And þe<sup>13</sup> xxviii<sup>14</sup> day of Iun, he<sup>15</sup> beyng with-drawn & gone, þe King come, with his Armee sett in ordre & enbatailed, to þe Blak-Heth, And, by Aduise of his Counsel,  
20 sent Sir Vmfrey Stafford, knight, & William Stafford, squyer, two valiaunt Captanes, with certeyn peple, to feght with þe Capytane, & to take<sup>16</sup> & bryng him & his Accessories to þe King, which went to Seuenoke; & per þe Capytane with his felisshepe mett  
24 with hem, & fought Ayenst þame,<sup>17</sup> & in conclusion slew þame bothe, & as many as Abode & wold nat yheld þame ner flee. Duryng þis sharmysh fiH<sup>18</sup> A grete variaunce Amonges þe<sup>19</sup> lordes men, & þe<sup>20</sup> comon peple beyng on Blak-Heth Ayens þe<sup>21</sup> lordes & Capitayns,  
28 sayng playnly þat þei wold go to þe Capitayn of Kent, to Assist and help him,<sup>22</sup> but if þei might haue execucion of þe traytours beyng<sup>23</sup> About þe King, to which<sup>24</sup> þe King said nay; And þei said playnly þat<sup>25</sup> þe Lorde Say, Tresourer of England, the Bisshope of  
32 Salesbury, <sup>26</sup>þe Baron of Dudley,<sup>26</sup> pabbot of Gloucestre, Danyel, & Trevillian, & many mo, wer traytours, & worthy to be dede.

<sup>1</sup> in H.      <sup>2</sup> of H.

<sup>3</sup> yere was sir Thomas Oryell onerthrownd At Fermigny And many English men slayn and takyn prisoners This same yere H.

<sup>4</sup> A H.      <sup>5</sup> þe om. H.      <sup>6</sup> hym C.      <sup>7</sup> haue come H.      <sup>8</sup> vij H.

<sup>9</sup> King with H.      <sup>10</sup> leaf 194.      <sup>11</sup> grete A H.      <sup>12</sup> he om. Ad.

<sup>13</sup> þe om. H.      <sup>14</sup> xxviii H.      <sup>15</sup> he om. H.      <sup>16</sup> take hym HC.

<sup>17</sup> them Ayenst H.      <sup>18</sup> per fell H.      <sup>19</sup> þe om. H.      <sup>20</sup> þe om. H.

<sup>21</sup> per H. their C.      <sup>22</sup> him om. H.      <sup>23</sup> beyng om. H.

<sup>24</sup> to where H. wher to C.      <sup>25</sup> þat om. H.      <sup>26</sup>—<sup>26</sup> om. H.

herfore, forto<sup>1</sup> please þe lordes menys & also some of þe Kinges house, þe Lorde Say was Arested & sent to þe Toure of London. And þan þe King, hering tydynges of þe deth & ouerthrowing of þe Staffordes, *with*-drew him to London, & fro thens<sup>2</sup> to Kylling-4 worth; ffor þe King ne þe lordes durst nat trust þer own household meny &c.<sup>3</sup> Then, after þat þe Capytan had þis victory vpon þise<sup>4</sup> Staffordes, Anone he toke Sir Humfrey Salett, & his brigantines smytten ful of gylted nayles, & also his gilted sporres, & 8 Araied him like A lorde & a Capi<sup>5</sup>tain, & resorted *with* al his meyney, & also mo þan he had tofore, to þe Blak-Heth. Ageyn to whome come perchebisshope of Caunterbury & þe Duke of Bokyngham to þe Blak-Heth, and spake *with* him; &, as it was said, þei 12 found him <sup>6</sup>witty in his talkynge & <sup>7</sup>request; & so they departed.<sup>6</sup> And þe third day of Iuyl he come & entred into London *with* al his peple, &<sup>8</sup> did make A <sup>9</sup>cry þer<sup>10</sup> in þe Kinges name & in his name,<sup>11</sup> þat no man shold robb ne take no mannes gode bot if he 16 payd for it; & come ridyng thugh þe Cite in gret pride, & smote his swerde vpon London stone in Canwykstrete. And he, beyng in þe Cite, sent to þe Towre forto haue þe Lord Saye; & so þei sett him & brought him to þe Guyld-Hall before þe Mayre & þe 20 Aldremen, wher he was examined. And þe lorde<sup>12</sup> sayd þat<sup>13</sup> he wolde & ought to bene Inged by his peres. And þe communes of Kent toke him by force fro þe Mair &<sup>14</sup> officers þat kept him, & toke him to A prest to shryve him. & er he might be half 24 -shryven, þei brought him to þe Standard in Chepe, & þer smote of his hede: <sup>15</sup>& thus died þe Lorde Say, Tresourer of Englonde. After þis, þei sett his hede on<sup>16</sup> A spere, & bare it Aboute in þe Citee. And þe same day, Aboute<sup>17</sup> þe<sup>18</sup> Mylle-Ende, Crowmer was beheaded. 28 And þe<sup>19</sup> day before, at afternone, þe Capytan, *with certeyn* of his meyney, went to Philipp Malpas house, & robbed him, & toke Away moche gode. And fro thense he went to Seynt Margret Patyns, to one Cherstis hous, & robbed him, <sup>20</sup>& toke A way moche 32 gode.<sup>20</sup> Also, At which robberyng diuerse men of London of þer neghburse wer at it, & toke part *with* him.<sup>21</sup> For þis robberyng þe

<sup>1</sup> to H.    <sup>2</sup> thens vn to A.    <sup>3</sup> &c. om. H.    <sup>4</sup> the HC.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 194, back.    <sup>6-6</sup> om. H.    <sup>7</sup> and his C.

<sup>8</sup> And þer H. and there C.    <sup>9</sup> A om. HC.    <sup>10</sup> þer om. HC.

<sup>11</sup> name om. H.    <sup>12</sup> And he HC.    <sup>13</sup> þat om. HC.    <sup>14</sup> And the H.

<sup>15</sup> hede on whos saul god haue mercy Amen H. hede on whos soule Almyghty god haue pite and mercy Amen. C.

<sup>16</sup> vp on H.    <sup>17</sup> Aboute om. H.    <sup>18</sup> at H.    <sup>19</sup> þe same H.

<sup>20-20</sup> om. H.    <sup>21</sup> them H.

peples hertes fiH fro him, & euery thryfty man was A-forde<sup>1</sup> forto<sup>2</sup>  
 be serued in like wise. for per was many A man, in London þat  
 Abbayted and wold fayn<sup>3</sup> haue seen A comon robbery, which  
 4 Almighty<sup>4</sup> God for-bidd! for it is to suppose þat,<sup>5</sup> if he had nat  
 robbed, he might haue gone ferre er he had be with-stonde; ffor þe  
 King & al the <sup>6</sup>lordes of þe Reame of Englonð wer departed,  
 except the Lorde Scale; þat kept þe Toure of London.<sup>7</sup> And þe  
 8 fyft day of Iuyl he gert<sup>8</sup> smyte of A mannes hede in Southwerk.  
 And þe night after, þe Mair of London, þe Aldermen & þe<sup>9</sup> com-  
 munes of þe Cite, concluded to dryve Away þe Capytane & his  
 hoste, and sent to þe Lorde Scales in<sup>10</sup> þe Toure, & to Mathew  
 12 Gogh, A Capitayn of Normandie, þat þei wold þat night Assail þe  
 Capitayn with þem of Kent. & so þey did, & come to London  
 Brigge, in to Southwerk, er þe Capitan had any knowleage per-of; &  
 þer<sup>11</sup> þei fought with þem þat kept<sup>12</sup> þe brigge. & þe Kentissh men  
 16 went to harnois, & come to þe brigge, & shott & fought with þame,  
 & gát þe brigge, & made þame of Londone to flee, & slew many of  
 þame, & þis endured al þe night, to & fro, til ix of þe<sup>9</sup> clokk on þe  
 morne. & at<sup>13</sup> last þei brent þe drawbrigge, wher many of þame of  
 20 London wer drowned. In which night, Sutton, an Alderman, was  
 slayn; Roger Hesant, & Mathew Gogh, & many oþer. And, after  
 this, þe Chaunceler of Englonð sent to þe Capytane A general par-  
 done<sup>14</sup> for him, & Another for all his meyney. And þan þei  
 24 departed fro Southwerk, euery man home to his hous. And when  
 þei wer al departed & gone, þer wer proclamacions made in Kent,  
 Southsea, & in<sup>15</sup> oþer places, þat what man coude take þe Capytane,  
 quyk or ded, shold haue A m<sup>t</sup> mark. And after þis, one Alexander —  
 28 Iden, A squyer of Kent, toke him in A gardyn in Southsex; & in  
 þe takyng þe Capytane, Iohn Cade was slayn, & after beheded, &  
 his hede sett on London Brigge. And þan Anone after,<sup>16</sup> þe King  
 come in-to Kent, & did his Iustices sitt at Canterbury, & enquire  
 32 who wer Accessories & chief cause of þis Insurreccion. And þer  
 wer viij men Iuged to dethe in one day, & in othir places, mo.  
 And fro þens þe King went vnto<sup>17</sup> Successex, & so<sup>18</sup> in-to þe West

<sup>1</sup> Arested H.      <sup>2</sup> to H.      <sup>3</sup> fayn om. H.      <sup>4</sup> almighty om. H.

<sup>5</sup> þat om. HC.      <sup>6</sup> leaf 195.      <sup>7</sup> of London om. H.

<sup>8</sup> he did do H.      he dide done C.

<sup>9</sup> þe om. H.      <sup>10</sup> to HC.      <sup>11</sup> þer om. H.      <sup>12</sup> And H.

<sup>13</sup> at the H.      <sup>14</sup> pardon generall H.      pardon general C.

<sup>15</sup> in om. H.      <sup>16</sup> And Anon after then H.      And anone after thenne C.

<sup>17</sup> in to H.      <sup>18</sup> so om. HC.

- contre, where A litel before was slayn þe Bisshop of Salisbury. And þis<sup>1</sup> yere so many wer<sup>2</sup> Iuged to deth, þat xxij hedes stode<sup>3</sup> vpon<sup>4</sup> London Brigge at ones.

<sup>5</sup> Of þe felde þat þe<sup>6</sup> Duke of York toke at Brenthethe in Kent; 4  
And of þe birth of Prince Edward; And of þe first batail  
of<sup>7</sup> Seynt Albones, wher þe Duke of Somersett was slayn.<sup>5</sup>  
Ca. cclvi.<sup>8</sup>

In þe xxx yere of King Henry þe vi<sup>te</sup>, þe<sup>9</sup> Duke of York came 8  
out of þe Marche of Walys, with þerle of Devonshire &<sup>10</sup> Lorde  
Cobham, &<sup>11</sup> gret puyssanee, for reformation of certayn Iniuries &  
wronges, & also<sup>12</sup> to haue Iustice of<sup>13</sup> certeyn lordes beyng<sup>14</sup> About  
þe King; and toke A<sup>15</sup> felde at Brentheth beside Derthford in Kent, 12  
which was A strong feld. For which cause þe King, with al þe lordes  
of the land, went vnto<sup>16</sup> Blakheth with A gret & A strong<sup>17</sup> multitude  
of peple, armed & ordeyned for þe werr in þe best wise. And when  
þei had mustered on þe Blakheth, certeyn lordes wer sent to him 16  
for to trete & make A-пойntment with him, which wer, þe Bisshope  
of Ely &<sup>18</sup> þe Bisshop of Wynchestre, & þe Erles of Salesbury & of  
Warrewick. And þei concluded þat þe Duke of Somersett shold  
be had to warde, & to Aunswer to such Articles as þe Duke of 20  
York sholde put on<sup>19</sup> him; and þan þe Duke of York shold brek  
his felde, & come to þe King, which was<sup>20</sup> promised bi þe Kyng.  
And so þe King commaunded þat þe Duke of Somersett shold be  
had in warde; & þen þe Duke of York breke vp his felde, & come 24  
to þe King. And when he was comen, contrary to þe promisses  
tofore<sup>21</sup> made, þe Duke of Somersett was present in þe felde,  
Awayting & chief about þe King, & made þe Duke of York ride  
tofore as A prisoner thugh London; & after þei wold haue put 28  
him in holde. But A noyse Aroose þat perl of Marche, his son),  
was commyng with<sup>22</sup> x m<sup>t</sup> men to London-ward, wher-of þe Kyng  
& his counsel fered. And þan they concluded þat þe Duke of  
York sholde departe at his wiþ.

32

<sup>1</sup> þis same H. this same C.

<sup>2</sup> were so many H. were soo many C. <sup>3</sup> leaf 195, back.

<sup>4</sup> on H. at C. <sup>5-5</sup> om. H. <sup>6</sup> þat Ad. that the C. <sup>7</sup> at C.

<sup>8</sup> Capitulum 27 H. <sup>9</sup> In the yere xxx the HC.

<sup>10</sup> & þe H. and the C. <sup>11</sup> with H.

<sup>12</sup> also om. H. <sup>13</sup> on HC. <sup>14</sup> beyng om. H.

<sup>15</sup> An H. <sup>16</sup> vn to the H. vnto the C. <sup>17</sup> & A strong om. H.

<sup>18</sup> and om. H. <sup>19</sup> to H. <sup>20</sup> was at H. was al C. <sup>21</sup> Afore HC.

<sup>22</sup> Here H breaks off imperfect.

About þis tyme began gret diuision in Sprinsse bitwene þe gret Maister & þe knyghtes of þe Duche ordre, which wer lordes of þat Contre; ffor þe communes & townes rebelled <sup>1</sup> Ageynst þe lordes, & made so gret werre þat, at þe last, þei called þe King of Pole to be þer lorde; which <sup>2</sup> King come, & was worsshipfully receyved, & laid siege to þe castel of Marienburgh (which was þe chief Castel & strenght of al þe land), & wan it, & drove out þe Maister of 8 Dansk & al othir places of þat land. And so þei þat had bene lordes many yeres, lost al þere seignorie & possessions in þo landes.

And in <sup>3</sup> þe yere of þencarnacion of our Lord M<sup>t</sup> iiij<sup>e</sup> liij, vpon <sup>4</sup> Seynt Edwardes day, Quene <sup>5</sup> Margaret was deluyered of 12 A fair prince, which was named Edwarde. þat same day Iohn Norman was chosen for to be Mair of London, And on <sup>6</sup> þe day þat he shold take his othe at Westmynstre, he went thider by water with al þe craftes, wher Afore-tyme þe Mair, Aldremen, & al þe 16 craftes rode on <sup>7</sup> horse back: which was neuer vsed afore, <sup>8</sup> but seth <sup>9</sup> þat tyme þei haue gone euer bi water, in barges.

Yhe haue wel vnderstond before, <sup>10</sup> how þat, contrary to the promise of þe King, & also þe conclusions taken bitween þe King & 20 þe Duke of York at Brenttheth, þe Duke of Somersett went nat to warde, but Abode about þe King, & had gret rewl. And Anone aftir, he was made Capytayn of Caleys, & rewled þe King & his reame as he wold. Wherfor þe gret lordes of þe Reame, & also þe 24 communes, wer nat pleased, for which cause þe Duke of Yorke, þerles of Warrewick & of Salesbury, with many knyghtes & squyers & moche peple, come for to remeve þe said Duke of Somersett & othir fro þe Kyng. And þe King, hering of þe 28 commyng, thought by his counsel forto haue gone Westward, & nat for to mete with þame: and he <sup>11</sup> had with him þe Duke of Somersett, þe Duke of Bokyngham, þerle of Stafford, þerle of Northumbreland, Lorde <sup>12</sup> Clifford, & many oþer. And what tyme 32 þat þe Duke of York & his felisship vnderstode þat þe King was departed with þise said lordes fro London, Anone he chaunged þe <sup>13</sup> way, & costed þe Contre, & come to Seynt Albons <sup>14</sup> þe xxij — day of May, & <sup>15</sup> mett with þe Kyng, to whome the Kyng sent 36 certayn lordes, & desired him to kepe þe peax, & departed, but in

<sup>1</sup> leaf 196.

<sup>2</sup> the which C.

<sup>3</sup> in om. C.

<sup>4</sup> on C.

<sup>5</sup> the quene C.

<sup>6</sup> on om. C.

<sup>7</sup> a C.

<sup>8</sup> after C.

<sup>9</sup> syn C.

<sup>10</sup> tofore C.

<sup>11</sup> he om. C.

<sup>12</sup> the lord C.

<sup>13</sup> his C.

<sup>14</sup> leaf 196, back.

<sup>15</sup> & there C.

conclusion), whiles þei treted on þat one side, þerle of Warwik, with þe Marchemen & with othir, entred þe town on þat other side, & fought Ayenst þe King & his partie: & so began þe batail & feghtyng, which endured A gode while, but in conclusion þe Duke 4 of York apteyned & had þe victorie of þat Iorney; In which was slayn þe Duke of Somersett, þerle of Northumbreland & þe Lorde Clifford, with<sup>1</sup> many knightez & squyers, & many<sup>2</sup> hurt. And on þe morne after þei brought þe Kinge in gret Astate to London, and 8 he was<sup>3</sup> looged in þe Bisshop paleys of London. And sone<sup>4</sup> After was A gret parlement; In which parlement þe Duke of York was made Protector of Englonð, & þerl of Warwick Capytane of Caley, & þerle of Salesbury Chaunceler of Englonð. And al suche 12 persones as had the rewl tofore About þe King, wer sett Aparte, & might nat reul as þei did Afore.<sup>5</sup>

In this same yeer died Pope Nicholas þe Fyft; & after him was Calixt þe Third. This Calist was A Catalane, & an olde man 16 when he was chosen, & continually seek; wherfore he might nat performe his zeles & desire þat he had conceyved Agenst þe Turke.<sup>6</sup> & þe cause of lettyng þirow was his Age & sekeness. This Calixte instituted & ordeyned þe Feste of þe<sup>7</sup> Transfiguracion of our Lorde 20 to be halowed on Seynt Sixt day in August, bicause of þe gret victory þat þei of Hungary had Ayenst þe Turkes þat same day he was chosen Pope, in þe yeer of our Lord Ml iij<sup>c</sup> lv, and died þe yere M<sup>t</sup> iij<sup>c</sup> lvij, þat same day þat he ordeyned þe Fest of þe<sup>7</sup> 24 Transfiguracion to be halowed.

In þis same yere fiH A gret Affray in London Ayenst þe Lumbardes. The cause began for<sup>8</sup> A yong man toke A dagger fro A Lumbard, & brake it; wherfor þe yong man on þe morne was 28 sent fore to come tofore þe Mair & Aldermen, & þer, for þe offense, he was commytted to warde. And<sup>9</sup> then þe Mair departed fro þe GuyldhaH for to go home to his dyner, but in þe Chepe þe yong men of þe mercerie, for þe moste parte Apprentises, held þe Mair 32 & Shyreves stil in Chepe, & wold nat suffre him to departe vnto þe tyme þat þare felow, which was commytted to warde, wer delynered; & so by force þei rescued þer felowe fro prisone, & þat done, þe Mair & Shyreves departed, & the prisoner was<sup>10</sup> delynered, 36 which, if he had be put to prisone, had be in Iubardie of his lyfe.

<sup>1</sup> And C.      <sup>2</sup> many mo C.      <sup>3</sup> which was C.      <sup>4</sup> anone C.

<sup>5</sup> tofore C.      <sup>6</sup> he had agenst the turke conceyved C.

<sup>7</sup> of Ad. of the C.      <sup>8</sup> bycause C.      <sup>9</sup> leaf 197.      <sup>10</sup> was om C.



And pan<sup>1</sup> began A Rumor in þe Cite Ayenst þe Lumbardes, And  
 þe same evenyng þe handcrafty peple of þe town Arose, & come<sup>2</sup> to  
 the Lumbardes houses, & dispoyled & robbed<sup>3</sup> diuerse of þame;  
 4 wherfore þe Mair & Aldremen come with þe honest peple of þe  
 town, & drofe þame thens, & sent some of thame þat had stollen, to  
 Newgate. And þe yong man þat was rescued bi his felowes saw  
 þis gret Rumor, Affray & robbery, folowed<sup>4</sup> of his first mevyng to  
 8 þe Lumbard; he<sup>5</sup> departed & went to Westmynster to sanctuary,  
 or els it had cost him his lyfe, ffor Anone After come down An  
 oþer determyne for to do Iustice on al þame þat so rebelled in þe  
 Cite Ayens þe Lumbardes, vpon<sup>6</sup> which satt with þe Mayr þat  
 12 tyme William Marow, þe Duke of Bokyngham, & many oþer  
 lordes, for to se execucion done, bot þe comons of þe Cite secretly  
 made þame redy, & did Arme þame in þer houses, & wer in purpose  
 forto haue rongen þe comon beH which is named Bow BeH; but þei  
 16 wer lett bi sad men, which come to þe knowlege of þe Duke of  
 Bokyngham & othir lordes. & forthwith<sup>7</sup> þei Arose, for þei durst  
 ne lenger Abide, for þei doubted þat þe hole Cite shold haue risen  
 Ayenst þeme, but yett neuer-þe-lesse, ij or iij of þe Cite were Iuged  
 20 to deth for þis robbery, & wer honged at Tiburn.

Anone After, þe King, þe<sup>8</sup> Quene, & othir lordes, rode to  
 Covente, & with-drew þame fro London for this cause And a liteH  
 9 to-fore, þe Duke of Yorke was sent fore to Grenewiche, & þer<sup>1</sup>  
 24 was dischargied of þe protectorshipp, & þerle of<sup>10</sup> Salesbury of þe<sup>11</sup>  
 Chauncelershippe. And after þis þei wer sent for by priuey seal  
 forto come to Covente, where þei wer almoste deceyved, & þerle of  
 Warwick also, And shold haue bene destroyed if þei had nat seen  
 28 wele too.

**How Lord<sup>12</sup> Egremond was take by þerle of Salesbury  
 sonnes. And of þe robbery of Sandwyche. ca<sup>m</sup>. cclvij.**

This yere wer taken iij gret fisshes bitwen Greth & London:  
 32 one<sup>13</sup> was called 'mors marine,' þe secund, A 'swerd fyssh,' & þe  
 other tweyn wer whalles. In þis same yere for certeyn, þer was  
 An<sup>14</sup> Affray in<sup>15</sup> þe North contre bitwene Lorde<sup>16</sup> Egremond &  
 þerle of Salesbury sonnes; & when thay had taken him, was had to

<sup>1</sup> pan om. C.    <sup>2</sup> ran C.    <sup>3</sup> & robbed & despoyled C.

<sup>4</sup> ensyewed C.    <sup>5</sup> he om. C.    <sup>6</sup> on C.    <sup>7</sup> incontynent C.

<sup>8</sup> þe om. C.    <sup>9</sup> leaf 197, back.    <sup>10</sup> And my lord of C.    <sup>11</sup> his C.

<sup>12</sup> the lord C.    <sup>13</sup> that one C.    <sup>14</sup> was An om. C.    <sup>15</sup> done in C.

<sup>16</sup> the lord C.

London), & per<sup>1</sup> condempned in a gret somme of money to þe said Erle of Salesbury, & þerfor committed to prison in Newgate, in London, wher, whan he had be A certayn space, he brak þe prison, & iij prisoners with him, & ascaped & went his way. 4

Also þis yere þerle of Warrewikk & his wife went to Caleys with A fayr ffelaushipp, & toke possession of his office. About þis tyme was A gret reformacion of many monasteris of Religion, in diuerse parties of þe worlde, which wer reformed after þe first 8 Institucion), & continued in many Places. Also About þis tyme þe craft of enprynteng was fyrst found in Magvnce in Almaign, which craft is multiplied thugh þe world in many places, & bokes ben had gret chepe & in gret nommbre, bicause of þe same 12 craft.

This same yere was A gret batail in þe marches bitwen Hungary & Turkey, at A place called Septedrade, where innumerable Turkes wer slayn, more by miracle þan bi mannes hond, ffor onely 16 þe hondes of God smote þeme. Seynt Iohn of Capestrane was þer present, & prouoked þe Cristen peple, beyng þen Aferde after to pursew þe Turkes, wher ane Infinite multitude wer slayn & destroyed. þe Turkes said þat A gret nombre of Armed men 20 folowed þame, þat þei wer Aferde to turn Ageyn: <sup>2</sup>they wer holy Aungels.

This same yere þe prisoners of Newgate in London brake per prison, & <sup>3</sup>kept þe gate A long while; but at þe <sup>4</sup>last þe town gett 24 þe prison one them), & þen þei wer put in feteris & Irons, & were sore punisshed, in example of other. In this yere also was A gret erthquake in Naples, in-so-moche þat per perisshed xl M<sup>t</sup> peple þat sanke þer into þerth. Item, in þe yeer xxxvj, Seynt Osmunde, 28 somtyme Bisshope of Salesbury, was Canonized at Rome bi Pope Calixt; & þe xvj day of Iuil he was translated at Salesbury bi þerchebisshope of Caunterbury & many other bisshopes. And in August after, Sir Piers <sup>5</sup>de Breisey seneschal of Normandy, with 32 þe Capytane of Depe & many oper Capitaynes & men of Werre, went to þe See with A gret Navy, & come to Downes by night; & on þe morne erly, before day, þei loded & come to Sandwyche, both bi land & water, & toke the town), & ryfled & dyspoyled it, & 36.

<sup>1</sup> sones, the sayd lord Egremond whome they had taken was C.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 198.

<sup>3</sup> prison, & wente vpon the leedes / & fought agenst them of the eyte / & C.

<sup>4</sup> þe om. C.

<sup>5</sup> There is a gap in C from here to p. 527, line 1.

toke many prisoners, & left þe town al naked,—which was A rich town & mych gode per-in,—& had *with* þame many ryche prisoners. In this same yere, in many places of Fraunce, Almaign, 4 Flaundres, Holand & Ze[land, men, women &] children gadred þame by *gret* Companyes forto go on pilgremage to Seynt Micheles Mount in Normandy, which come fro fer contrees; wherof þe peple *mervailed*; & many supposed þat some wicked spirite meved þame 8 so to doo; but it endured nat long, by cause of þe long way, & also for lak of vitail as þei went.

In this yere Reynold Pecok, Bisshop of Chichester, was founden an heretike, & þe iij day of Decembre was Abiured at Lambeth, in 12 þe presence of perchebisshop of Caunterbury & many bisshoppes & doctoures & lordes *temperel*; & his bokes brent at Paules crosse.

Yhe haue herd tofore how *certain* lordes wer slayn at Seynt Alboyns, wherfor was euermore A grutche & wrath had, by þe 16 <sup>1</sup> heires of þame þat wer so slayn; Aynst þe Duke of Yorke, þerles of Warwick & of Salesbury. Wherfor þe Kyng, by þavise of his Councel, sent for thame to London: to which place þe Duke of York came, þe xxvj day of Ianyuer, *with* iiij<sup>e</sup> men, & logied at 20 Bernardes Castel in his own place, And þe xv day of Ianuer come þerle of Salesbury *with* v<sup>e</sup> men, & was logged in therber, his own place. And þen come þe Duke of Excetre & of Somersett, *with* viij<sup>e</sup> men, & lay *without* Temple Barr. & þerl of Northumbreland, 24 Lord Clifford & Lord Egremond, *with* xv<sup>e</sup> men, & loged *without* þe town. And þe Mayr þat tyme, Ieffray Boleyn, kept *gret* watche, *with* þe comons of þe Cite, & rode About þe Cite by Holborn & Flete Strete *with* a v M<sup>t</sup> men wel Armed & Araied for to kepe þe 28 pees, And þe xiiij day of Feuerer, þerle of Warwick come to London fro Caleys, wel beseen & worsshypfully, *with* vj<sup>e</sup> men in rede Iaquettes, browdred *with* A ragged staff behynd & Afore; & he was logged at þe Gray Freres, And þe xvij day of Marche þe 32 King come to London & þe Quene; & þer was A concorde & pees made Among those lordes, & þei wer sett in pees. And vpon our Lady Day, þe xv day of Marche þer<sup>2</sup> of our Lorde M<sup>t</sup> iiij<sup>e</sup> lvij, þe King, Quene, & al þise lordes went in *procession* at Poules in 36 London. And Anone after, þe King & þe lordes departed. In þis yere was A *gret* Affray in Flet Strete bitwen men of Court & men of þe same stret: In which Affray þe Quenes Attorney was slayn.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 198, back.

<sup>2</sup> þer = the year.

**How þe Kinges howshold mad Affray Ayenst þerle of Warrewikk; & of þe Iourney at Blorheth. Ca<sup>m</sup>. cclviij.**

Also þis same yeer, als þerle of Warwyk was at A CounciH in Westmynster, al þe Kinges houshold meyney gadred þame to-gedre 4 for to have slayn þe said Erle; bot, bi help of God & of his frendes, he recovered his barge, & escaped þare evyl enterprise, how wel þe Coques come renyng out with spyttes & pestelles Ayenst him. And þe same Day he rode to-ward Warrewik; And sone After he 8 gate him A commission, & went ouer þe see to Caley. Sone after þis, þerle of Salesbury commyng to London, was encountred at Blorheth <sup>1</sup> with Lorde Awdeley, and moche oþer peple ordeyned forto haue destressed him; bot he, having knowlege þat he shold 12 be mett, was Accompanied with his ij sonnes, Sir Thomas & Sir Iohn NeviH, & A gret felawshipp of gode men. & so þei mett & fought to-gedre; wher þerle of Salesbury wand þe feld; And þe Lorde Awdley was slayn, & many gentilmen of Chesshire, & moche 16 peple hurt; And therles ij sonnes wer hurt; & goyng homeward afterward, þei wer taken, & had to Chestre bi þe Quenes meyney.

After, Calixt Pius was Pope, & was chosen þis yere M<sup>t</sup> iiij<sup>e</sup> lvii./ And he was called before, 'Eneas'; An Eloquent man & A 20 poete laureat; he was embassatoure of þemperor Afore tyme, & he wrote in þe Councel of Basile A noble tretise for þe Auctorite of þe same; Also he Canonized Seynt Katerine of Senys. This Pope ordeyned gret Indulgences & pardon to þem þat wold go Werre 24 Ayenst þe Turke, & wrote An Epistle to þe gret Turke, exorting him to be-come Cristen. & in þe ende he ordeynd A passage Ayenst þe Turks at Ancone, to which moche peple drew, out of al parties of Cristendome; of which peple he sent many home Ayene, 28 be-cause þei suffised nat. And Anone after, he dyed at þe said Ankone, yere of our Lord M<sup>t</sup> iiij<sup>e</sup> lxiiij, xiiij day of Auguste.

**How Andrew Trollop & þe Soudioure of Caley forsoke þe Duke of Yorke, & þer Maister þerl of Warrewik, in 32 the West contre. Cap. cclix.**

The Duke of York, þerles of Warwik & of Salesbury, saw þat þe gouernance of þe Reame stode moste by þe Quene & hir Councel, & how þe gret princes of þe lond wer nat called to 36 Councel bot sett A-parte; & nat onely so, but þat it was seid

<sup>1</sup> leaf 199.

through þe reame þat the <sup>1</sup> said lordes shold be destroyed vtterly, as  
it <sup>2</sup> openly was shewed att Bloreheth bi þame þat wold haue slayn  
þerl of Salesbury, þan þei, for saluacion of þer lyves, & also for  
4 þe comon wele of þe reame, thought forto remedie thise thinges,  
Assembled þame to-gedre *with* moche peple, & toke A feld <sup>3</sup> in þe  
West contre; to which þerle of Warwik come fro Caleys, *with*  
many of þe olde soudiours, as Andrew Trollop & other. In whose  
8 wisdom, as for þe werre, he mych trusted. And when þei wer  
thus Assembled, & made þer feld, þe King sent out his commissions  
& priuey seales vnto al þe lordes of his realme, to come & Awayt  
on him in þer moste defensable wise. And so euery man come, in  
12 suche wise þat þe King was stronger, & had moche more peple þan  
þe Duke of York & þerles of Warrewik & of <sup>4</sup> Salesbury. For it  
is here to be noted þat euery lord in Englonde at þis tyme durst nat  
disobey þe Quene, for she rewled pesibly al þat was done About þe  
16 Kyng, which was A gode, simple, & Innocent man, And þan when  
þe King was comen to þe place wher al <sup>5</sup> þei were; þe Duke of  
York & his felasship had made þer felde in þe stronggest wise, &  
had proposed verely to abyden & have foughten; bot in þe night  
20 Andrew Trollop & al tholde soudiours of Caleys, *with* A gret  
felasship, sodenly departed out of þe Dukes oost <sup>6</sup> & went strait  
vnto þe Kinges feld, wher þei wer receyved joyously, for þei knew  
þe entent of þe othir lordes, & Also þe maner of þer felde. And  
24 þen þe Duke of York, *with* þe oper lordes, seyng þame so desceyvd,  
toke A councel shortly þat <sup>7</sup> same night, & departed fro þe felde,  
levyng behynde þame þe moste parte of þer peple to kepe þe feld til  
on þe morne. Then þe Duke of York, *with* his second son,  
28 departed through Walez toward Ireland, levyng his eldest son þerl  
of <sup>8</sup> Marche, *with* þerles of Warwyck & of <sup>9</sup> Salisbury, which  
to-gedre *with* iij or iiij persones, rode strait vnto Devenshyre, &  
þar, bi help & Ayd of one Denham, A squyer, which gat for them  
32 A shipp which cost xxxc<sup>10</sup> nobles, & *with* þe same shipp sayled fro  
þens in to Garnesey, & þer refresshed þame, & fro þens sayled to  
Caleys, wher þei wer receyved in-to þe Castel bi þe postern, er þei  
of þe town knew of it; & þe Duke of York toke ship in Wales, &  
36 sayled ouer in-to Ireland, wher he was wel receyved.

<sup>1</sup> tho C.      <sup>2</sup> it om. C.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 199, back.      <sup>4</sup> of om. C

<sup>5</sup> as C.      <sup>6</sup> hooste C.      <sup>7</sup> in that C.      <sup>8</sup> of the C.

<sup>9</sup> of om. C.      <sup>10</sup> cc xx C.

<sup>1</sup> How therles of Marche, Warrewik & Salesbury, entred into Caleys; & how<sup>2</sup> perle of Warwik went in to Ireland. ca. cclix.<sup>3</sup>

Then King Henry, beyng *with* his oost in þe felde, nat knowing<sup>4</sup> of þis soleyyn departing, on þe morne fond none in þe felde of þe said lordes, sent forth in al haste men to folow & persue after, to tak þame; but þei mett nat *with* hem, as God wolde. Then<sup>4</sup> þe King went to Ludlow, & despoiled the Castel & þe town, & sent þe Duches of York, *with* hir childer, to þe<sup>5</sup> Lady of Bokingham, hir suster, where she was kepte long aftir. & forthwith þe King ordeynd þe Duke of Somersett Capitayn of Caleys; & thise othir lordes so departed as Afore is said, wer proclamyd rebelles & gret<sup>12</sup> traytours. Then the Duke of Somerset toke to him al þe sowdioures þat departed fro þe felde, & made him redy in al haste to go to Caleys, & take possession of his office. And when he come, he founde þerl of Warwick þer-in as Captayn, & þerles of Marche &<sup>16</sup> Salisbury also; & þan he loded by Scales, & went to Guysnes, & þer he was receyved. And it fortunyd þat some of þe shippes þat come ouer *with* him come in-to Caleys haven bi þer fre wiH, for þe shipmen ought more favour to þerl of Warwick þan to þe Duke of<sup>20</sup> Somerset. In which shippes wer taken diuerse men, as Ieunyn FynkhiH, Iohn Felaw, Kaylles & Parser, which wer beheded sone after in Caleys. And after þis, dayly come men ouer þe<sup>6</sup> See to pise lordes to Caleys, & began to wex strenger,<sup>7</sup> And þei borrowed<sup>24</sup> moche gode of þe Staple. And on þat othir side þe Duke of Somerset, beyng in Guysnes, gat peple to him, which come out & scarmussed *with* þame of Caleys, & þei<sup>8</sup> *with* þame; which endured many dayes; and<sup>9</sup> moche peple dayly come ouer þe see<sup>28</sup> to<sup>10</sup> these lordes. Then on A tyme, by thavyse of conueel, þe lordes at Caleis sent ouer Maister Denham, *with* A gret felawship, to Sandwyche, &<sup>11</sup> toke þe town, & þer-in þe Lorde Ryvers, & þe Lorde Seales his son, & toke many shippes in þe haven, & broglit þam al<sup>32</sup> to Caleys; *with* which shippes,<sup>12</sup> many mariners of þer fre wiH come to Caleys to serue þerle of Warrewik.

And after þis, þerle of Warwik, bi þavise of þe lordes, toke al

<sup>1</sup> leaf 200.    <sup>2</sup> as Ad.    how C.    <sup>3</sup> cclix C.    <sup>4</sup> And thenne C.

<sup>5</sup> my C.    <sup>6</sup> þe om. C.    <sup>7</sup> stronger & stronger C.

<sup>8</sup> they of Caleys C.

<sup>9</sup> many dayes / During thus this same scarmuchyng / C.

<sup>10</sup> come over vnto C.    <sup>11</sup> which C.

<sup>12</sup> leaf 200, back.

his shippes, & manned þam wel, & sayled his<sup>1</sup>-self into Ireland fro  
to speke *with* þe Duke of York, & to take his Advice how þei shold  
entre in-to England ageyn. And when he had ben *per*; & done his  
4 erandes, he returned toward<sup>2</sup> Caleys, & brought with him his  
moder, þe Countesse of Salesbury. Tho was<sup>3</sup> commyng in þe west  
contre, vpon þe See, þe Duke of Excestre, Admiral of Englon<sup>d</sup>, beyng  
in þe Grace of Dieu, Accompanied *with* many shippes of werre;  
8 which<sup>4</sup> mett *with* þe flete of þerl of Warwik<sup>5</sup>; but þei fought nat,  
for þe substance of þe peple beyng *with* þe Duke of Excestre ought  
better wiH & more fauor to þerle<sup>6</sup> þan to him; & þei departed &  
come to Caleys in sauhte, blissed be God! Then þe Kinges counceel,  
12 seyng þat these lordes had goten these shippes fro Sandwiche, &  
taken Lorde<sup>7</sup> Ryvers & his son, ordeyned A Garnyson at Sand-  
wich, to Abide & kepe þe town, & made one Mountforte, Capytan  
of þe town, & warned<sup>8</sup> þat no man, ne vitail, ne merchant þat  
16 shold go vnto<sup>9</sup> Flaundres, shold nat go vnto<sup>10</sup> Caleys. Then þei of  
Caleys seyng þis, made out Maister Denhame & many oper, to go to  
Sandwich. & so þei did, & Assayled þe town by water & by lond,  
& gat it, & brought Mountforte *per* Capitayn ouer þe See to  
20 Risebanke, & *per* smote of his hede; & yet dayly men come ouer  
to þame fro<sup>11</sup> al parties of Englon<sup>d</sup>.

**How þerles of Marche, of Warwik & of Salesbury entred in  
to England. And of Northampton felde<sup>12</sup> wher diuerse  
24 lordes wer slayn. Cap<sup>m</sup>. cclxj.**

After<sup>13</sup> þis, þe said Erles of Marche, of<sup>14</sup> Warwik & of Salisbury  
come ouer to Dover *with* moche peple, & landed *per*<sup>15</sup>; to whome  
al þe contrey drew, & come to London Armed; & for to lat þe  
28 lordes of þe Kinges Counceil know *per* entent & thought, þei<sup>16</sup>  
assembled þame, & told þame þat þei entended no harme vnto the  
Kinges person, sauf þat þei wold put fro him such persones as wer  
About him, & so departed fro London *with* A gret puysaunce  
32 toward Northampton, wher þe King was, Accompayned *with* many  
lordes, & had made A strong felde *with*-out þe town. & <sup>17</sup>there  
bothe parties mett, & was foughten A gret batail, In which wer<sup>18</sup>

<sup>1</sup> hym C.      <sup>2</sup> ayenetoward C.      <sup>3</sup> And C.      <sup>4</sup> which *om.* C.

<sup>5</sup> met with therle of Warwyck & his flote C.

<sup>6</sup> therle of Warrewyk C.      <sup>7</sup> the lord C.      <sup>8</sup> warned *om.* C.

<sup>9</sup> in to C.      <sup>10</sup> in to C.      <sup>11</sup> out of C.

<sup>12</sup> And of the felde of Northampton C.      <sup>13</sup> And after C.      <sup>14</sup> of *om.* C.

<sup>15</sup> ther lounded C.      <sup>16</sup> knowe theyr trouth and also theyr entent C.

<sup>17</sup> leaf 201.      <sup>18</sup> batayll were C.

slayn þe Duke of Bokynham, þerl of Shrewesbury, Vicount<sup>1</sup> Beamont, Lorde<sup>2</sup> Egremond, & many knyghtes & squyers, & other Also; And þe King his<sup>3</sup> self taken in þe feld, & afterward brought to London. And Anone After<sup>4</sup> was A parlement at Westmynster, 4 During which parlement þe Duke of York come out of Ireland, with þerle of Rutland rydyng with A gret ffelasship in-to þe paleys at Westmynster, & toke þe Kinges paleys, & come in-to þe parlement chamber, & per toke þe Kinges place, & clamed þe 8 Crown as his propre enheritance & right, & kast forth in writing his title, & also how he was rightful heyr; wherfor was moche to doo; but in conclusion it was Apoynted & coneluded þat Kyng Henry shold regne & be King during his Naturel lyfe, for-as-myeche 12 as he had be so long King, & was possessed; & after his deth þe Duke of York shold be King, & his heires after him; & forthwith he shold be proclaimed heyr Apparent, & shold also be Protectour of<sup>5</sup> Englonð during þe Kinges lyfe, with many oþer things 16 ordeyned in þe same parlement. And if King Henry during his life went fro þis Apoyntment, or any Article coneluded in þe said parlement, he shold be deposed, & þe Duke shold take þe Crown & be Kyng: Al thise<sup>6</sup> thinges wer enacted bi þe Auctorite of þe said 20 parlement. At<sup>7</sup> which parlement þe communes of þe reame being Assembled in þe common house, comonyng & tretim vpon þe title of þe said Duke of York, sodenly fiH down þe crown which hang þan in<sup>8</sup> myddes of þe said hous, which is the ffraytor of þe Abbey 24 of Westmynster, which was take for A prodige or token þat þe reign of King Henry was ended. And also þe Crown which stode on þe highest toure of þe steple in þe Castel of Dover, fil down þis same yere.

28

**How þe Duke of York was slayn; And of Wakefelde felde,<sup>9</sup>  
& of þe ij<sup>te</sup> journey at Seynt Albones bi þe Quene &  
Prince. ca. cclxij.**

Then, for-as-moche as þe Quene with þe prince was in þe North, 32 & Absented hir fro the King, & wold nat obey such thinges as was coneluded in<sup>10</sup> þe parlement, Itt was ordeyned þat þe Duke of York, as Protector, shold go Northward for to bring in þe Quene, & subdew such as wold nat obey; with whome went þerl of 36

<sup>1</sup> the Vysecounte C.    <sup>2</sup> the lord C.    <sup>3</sup> hym C.    <sup>4</sup> afterward C.

<sup>5</sup> & regent of C.    <sup>6</sup> whiche C.    <sup>7</sup> at the C.    <sup>8</sup> in the C.

<sup>9</sup> and of the feld of Wakefeld C.    <sup>10</sup> leaf 201, back.



Salesbury, Sir Thomas Nevile his son), with myche peple. And at Wakefeld, in Cristmasse weke, þei wer al ouerthrowen & slayn bi þe lordes of þe Quene partye, þat is to say,<sup>1</sup> þe Duke of York was  
4 slayn, þerl of Rutland, Sir Thomas Nevil, & many mo. þerl of Salesbury was / taken<sup>2</sup> Alyve, & other, as Iohn Harow of London, Capitayn of þe foot-men, & Hanson of Huß, which wer brought to Pountfret, & after þer beheded, & þer hedes sent to York, & þer  
8 sett vpon þe gates, &c.

And þis tyme, þerl of Marche beyng in Shrewesbury, hering þe deth of his fadre, desired Assistance & Ayd of þe town for tavenge his fadres deth; & fro þense went to Walys, wher, at Candelmasse  
12 after, he had A batail at Mortimess Crosse Ayenst þerles of Penbrok & of Wilshire, where þerl of March had victorie. Than þe Quene, with lordes of þe north, After þei had destressed & slayn þe Duke of York & his felowship, come southward with A gret multitude  
16 of peple & A gret puissance of peple, for to come to þe King, to defect such conclusions as had bene taken before bi þe parlement. Ageynst whos commyng, þe Duke of Northfolk, þerle of Warewick, with moche peple & ordinaunce, went vnto Seynt Albones, & lad  
20 King Henry with þame; & þer encountred to-gedre in suche wise, & fought, þat þe Duke of Northfolk & þerl of Warewick, with other of þat partie, fiedd & lost þat felde; wher King Henry was takyn, & went with þe Quene, & Prince his son, which tho had  
24 gotten þat felde. Than þe Quene & hir partie, beyng at þer Above, sent Anone to London, which was on Asshwoodenesday, þe fyft day of Lent, for vitail, which þe Mayr ordeynd, bi chanes of þe Aldremen, þat certayn cartes laden with vitail shold be sent to  
28 Seynt Albones to þame. And when þo Cartes come to Crepilgate, þe communes of þe Cite þat kept þat gate,<sup>3</sup> toke þe vitailles fro þe Carters, & wold not suffre it to passe. Then wer þer certeyn Aldermen & comoners Apoynted to go to Barnett forto speke with  
32 þe Quenes Counsel for treatie, þat þe Northeryn men shold be sent home vnto þer contre Ageyn; ffor þe Cite of London dred fore to be robbed & dispoyled if þei shold come. And thus, during þis tretye, tydinges come þat þerle of Warrewick mett with þerle of  
36 Marche on Cotteswold, comyng fro Walys with a gret meyney of Walesshmen, & þat þei both wer commyng to London ward.

<sup>1</sup> wete C.

<sup>2</sup> Here is a gap in C from *taken* to *men þat wer þer* (page 533, line 5).

<sup>3</sup> leaf 202.

Anone as thise tydinges wer knowen, þe treaty was broken; for þe King, Quene, Prince, & al þe othir lordes þat wer with þame, departed fro Seynt Albones northward, with al þer peple yet or þei departed fro þens. þei beheded þe Lorde Bonevil & Sir Thomas 4 Kyriel, which wer taken in þe Iourney done on Shroft-Tuesday. Then þe Duches of York beyng at London, & hering of þe losse of þe felde at Seynt Albones, sent ouer þe See hir ij yong sonnes, George & Richard, which went to Vtrecht; & Philip Malpas, a 8 riche merchant of London, Thomas Vaghan, Squyer, & William Hatteclif, & many oþer, fering of þe commyng of þe Quene to London, toke a-shipp of Andwarpe for to haue gone in-to Zeland; And on þat other coste wer taken of one colompne of Frenshmen, 12 A shipp of Werre; & he toke þame prisoners, & brought þame in-to France, wher þei payd gret godes for þer raunson; & þer was myche gode & rychesse in þat shippe.

**Of þe deposicion of Kyng Henry þe vij<sup>te</sup>; And how King 16 Edward þe Fourt toke possession; And of þe batail of Palme Sondag; and how he was crowned. Cap. cclxiiij.**

Than when þerle of Marche & þerl of Warwick had mett togedre on Cotteswold, In-continent they concluded to go to 20 London, & sent worde Anone <sup>1</sup>to þe Mair & to þe Cite þat þei shold come. Anone þe Cite was glad of þer commyng, hoping to be releued bi thame. And when þei wer commyn to London, & had spoken with þe lordes & Astates þat wer ther, þei concluded, 24 for-as-mych as King Henry was gone with þame Northward, þat he had forfeited his Crown, & ought forto be deposed, According to þe Actes made and passed in þe last parlement. And so, by thavice of þe lordes spirituel & temperel þen beyng At London, 28 þerle of Marche, Edward, bi þe grace of God þe oldest son of Richard, Duke of Yorke, As rightful heir & next enheritour to his fadre, þe iiij<sup>te</sup> day of Marche, þe yere of oure Lorde God M<sup>i</sup> cccclix, toke possession of þe Reame of England at Westmynster in þe gret 32 haH, & after, in þabbey church; & offred as King, bering þe Sceptre ryal, to whome al þe lordes, both spirituel & temperel, did homage & obeisaunce, to þer souereyn liege & lawful lord & Kyng; & forthwith it was proclaimed thugh þe Cite, Kinge Edward, þe 36 Fourt of þat name. And Anone after, þe King rode in his royall Astate Northward, with al his lordes, to subdue his subgettes þat

<sup>1</sup> leaf 202, back.

tyme beyng in þe North, & tavenge his fadre deth, And vpon  
Palme Sondag after, he had A gret batail in þe north contre at A  
place called Towton, nat ferre fro Yorke, where, bi þe help of  
4 God, he gat þe felde & had þe victorie; & þer wer slayn of his  
Aduersaries xxx<sup>m</sup> men & moo, As it was said by men þat wer þer.  
In which batail was slayn þerle of Northumbreland, þe Lorde  
Clifford, Sir Iohn Nevil, þerle of Westmerlandes broþer, Andrew  
8 Trowlopp, & many oþer knightes & squyers.

Then King Henry, þat had be King, beyng with þe Qvene &  
Prynce at York, hering þe losse of þat felde, & so moch peple slayn  
& ouerthrowen, Anone forthwith departed al thre, with þe Duke  
12 of Somerset, þe lorde Roos & other, toward Scotland. And þe  
next day King Edward, with al his Army, entred into York, &  
was þer proclamed King, & obeyed as he ought to be; And þe  
Mair & þe<sup>1</sup> Aldremen come in, &<sup>2</sup> swore to be his liege men. And  
16 whan he had taried A while in þe Northe, & þat al þat contre  
was<sup>4</sup> turned to him, he retorned Southwarde, levyng þerle of  
Warrewyck in þoo parties, for to kepe & gouerne þat contre. And  
About Midsommer after, þe yere of our Lord God<sup>5</sup> M<sup>t</sup> iiij<sup>e</sup> lx, &  
20 þe first yere of his regne, he was crowned at Westmynster, &  
ennoynted King of Englonð, having þe hole possession of al þe  
hole reame; whome I besече<sup>6</sup> God to preserue,<sup>7</sup> & send him þe  
Accomplissment of þe remanent of his rightful enheritance beyonde  
24 þe see, so<sup>8</sup> þat he may regn in þame to þe pleyasor of Almighty  
God, helth<sup>9</sup> of his soul, honor & worsship in þis present life, &  
wel & profet of al his subgettes, And þat þer may be A verry final  
pees in al Cristen reames, þat þe Infidelis & miscreantes may be  
28 withstanden & destroyed, & our feith enhaunced, which in thise  
dayes is sore mynnshed by þe puissaunce of þe Turkes & hethen  
men; And þat after þis present & short life we may come to þe  
euer-lastyng life.<sup>10</sup> Amen!

32

Explicit.<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> & þe om. C.      <sup>2</sup> & aldermen & comyns C.      <sup>3</sup> leaf 203.

<sup>4</sup> & that al the countre ther had C.      <sup>5</sup> God om. C.      <sup>6</sup> pray C.

<sup>7</sup> god saue & kepe C.      <sup>8</sup> & C.      <sup>9</sup> hath Ad. helthe C.

<sup>10</sup> lyfe in the blysse of heuen / C.      <sup>11</sup> Explicit om. C.

## [H]

## EXTRACTS FROM HARLEIAN MS. 53.

## I.

[*The Foundation of Battle Abbey by William the Conqueror.*]

<sup>1</sup> When William Bastard had<sup>2</sup> conquest aH Englonð, and was crownet kyng, and had receyvet his homages and stablisshet his pees, he passet ouer see ageyn in-to Normaundy. And att Ester next folowyng he come ageyn in-to Englonð, and landit at Dover, 4 and brought with hym Maude his wif, and many faire ladies and gentiHwemen with hir, and from thens so to London, with gret nobley. and on the Wittesonday after folowyng<sup>3</sup>, she was crownet be the Archbisshope of Euerwik at Westemynster, with gret 8 solempnyte and wurshipe. And þe<sup>3</sup> Kyng<sup>4</sup> William, by counsail of his baronry, ordeynt how his Reame shuld be gouernet for the wele of the land. And he bethought hym howe he had causet gret shedyng of bloode wrongfully; wherfore he foundet an Abbay in 12 the same place where-as the batail was, & made for to clepe it þe Abbay of Bataile; and he gave there-to gret lordshipes, londes and rentes, for to pay for al the sawles that were slayn ther for his love.

¶ And after the discomfiture of the batail, ich wurthy knyght 16 of Normaundy that was there, laft a scochon of his armes, with his name peyntet, in a place of the batail clepit Southope, which was clepit 'the peyntit chamber,' in remembraunce of their<sup>4</sup> honour and wurshipe<sup>5</sup> <sup>6</sup>for euer; and there thei stode so long, tiH þei feH 20 doune to the erth, and many of hem were lost.<sup>6</sup> And In that same tyme there was one Thomas Sayntlegerd, squyer, dwellyng with the Abbot of Batail, and sawe þe gret myschef and perih that myght aftirward fall of disherytyng of hem of whome the Armes 24 were lost.<sup>7</sup> And of aH the scochons and names that were lafte clere, and not lost, he made for to make a faire boke, and peyntet hem therin, for cause they shuld be there founden in remembraunce for euer,<sup>8</sup> that al men myght fynde there their armes if thei hem not 28 knewe. And that same boke was kept in the Abbay of Bataile vnto the tyme that Kyng<sup>4</sup> Henry the .V<sup>te</sup>. shuld passe in-to Normaundy,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 76.      <sup>2</sup> duke of Normandy had L.      <sup>3</sup> there L.

<sup>4</sup> the L.      <sup>5</sup> wurship & honour that they had there L.

<sup>6-7</sup> om. L.      <sup>7</sup> were falle doune & lost L.

<sup>8</sup> be fonden therein euremore in remembrance L.

to conquere his right, and toke with hym al the gentiH-men which had forgeton their armes; wherfore þe said Kyng sent vnto the Abbot of Bataile for to sende hym that boke of Armes; And the 4 Abbot sent to hyme the boke at his comaundement, the which boke was neuer brought ageyn; and the chambre where þe armes were was not repeiret, nor none hede taken to hem; wherfore a gret part of the Armes feH doune, and was lost and forgeten; 8 but then aH the names and armes that were founden clere were writton <sup>1</sup> in a table which is of recorde in the Abbay of Batail, the which names ben rehersit in this table next folowyng in ordre. that is to say : \*

12	[-ard]	PurceH	BaywaH <sup>8</sup>	Hanet
	Bastard	ChameH	MeyniH	Lynet
	Baynard <sup>2</sup>	RideH	DariH	Hachet
	Brassard	RusseH	RocheH	Haket
16	Maignard <sup>3</sup>	BloundeH	—	Truret
	Berard	MaunceH	[-et, -ol]	Burdet
	Maureward	TorchappeH	Toret	Bret
	Beynard <sup>4</sup>	CharneH	Tanet	Trevet
20	Hansard	TireH	Tupet <sup>9</sup>	Bigot
	Hasard	ToreH	Bratet	Bagot
	Ayelard	OreH <sup>7</sup>	Boynet	Tallebot
	Achard	SaintbrenceH	Malet	Tibot
24	Swyward <sup>5</sup>	TrameH	Bluet	Tabot
	Saylard	ClareH	Brachet	Lincot
	Bereward	FreseH	Belet	Lonetot
	Wishard	WadeH	Ledet	Pigot
28	Musard	TrusseH	Pilet <sup>10</sup>	Tiptot <sup>11</sup>
	Lyard	CoudreH	Palet	—
	Giffard	BurneH	Tuehet	[-aunt, -ent, -ount]
	Picard	BusseH	Basset	Gaunt
32	Pipard	PevereH	Buket	Passaunaunt [col. 3]
	Gerard	AueneH	Duket	Niuelent
	Fossard	VeeH	Piket	Duredent
	—	SpigurneH [col. 2]	Mulet	Richemount
36	[-aH, -eH, -iH]	LoveH	Baret	Nepount <sup>12</sup>
	MoreH	CrieH	Mounfichet	Neyrout <sup>12</sup>
	MarteH	FurnyvaH	Pouchet	—
	PameH	DrutaH	Pachet	[-aet]
40	PineH	SurdevaH	Corbet	Pountfract
	DucereH <sup>6</sup>	OrivaH	Birset	

<sup>1</sup> leaf 76, back.    <sup>2</sup> Barnard L (Lambeth MS. 6).    <sup>3</sup> Maynard L.

<sup>4</sup> Boigmard L.    <sup>5</sup> Swyand L.    <sup>6</sup> L. adds Putnell.

<sup>7</sup> Torell L.    <sup>8</sup> om. L.    <sup>9</sup> Tapet L.    <sup>10</sup> Pelet L.

<sup>11</sup> Tiptot comes 4th in the next list.

<sup>12</sup> These two come at the end of the -court list.

\* The same names are given in alphabetical order on pp. 605-607.

[-court]	Mansey	Audeville	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Piers	
Harecourt	Candrey	Danster <sup>5</sup> ville	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Symond	
Bricourt	Sancey [col. 4]	Maundevile	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Vise	
Phanecourt	Curecy	Souppit <sup>5</sup> or Sou-	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Hu	4
Deynecourt	Anney	peit <sup>5</sup>	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Brian	
—	Bussey	—	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Garin	
[-y]	Lescey	[-ampe]	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Herbert	
Lucy	Moubray	Longchampe	—	8
Lacy	Gurnay	Nunchampe	[-ace, -ars, -as,	
Luncy	—	Feschampe	-aus; -eis, -ers,	
Darcy	[-ile, -it <sup>5</sup> ]	Beauchamp	-es, -eus, -euse;	
Sunely	Morville	—	-oris, -os, -urs,	12
Mounteny	Secheville	[-er, -ere, -our]	-uce; -is, -oise,	
Barry	Berneville	Passamere [col. 5]	-ose; -euges,	
Berry	Graynville	Mortymmer	-euse, -us, -ur]	
Curty	Bontville	Poer	Curteis	16
Tracy	Frivile	Renger	Santemareis	
Bracy	Longevile	Roter	Beaumeis	
Aubeny	Fresvile	Belor	Bleis	
Perly	Folville	Boner	Greis	20
Cunly	Bereville	Butteler	Wasteneis (or	
Curly	Canneville	Dispenser	-eils) <sup>6</sup>	
Crecy	Careville	Budler	Curteneis <sup>7</sup>	
Arcy	Cardevile	Saucer	Mareis	24
Percy	Asprevile	Chaucer [*]	Seygnes	
Vesey	Colville	Ferrer	Raynes	
Verly	Toreville	Gorger	Keynes [If. 71, col. 1]	
Soldeny	Bareville	Miler	Freyneis	28
Mountanasy	Scuteville	Saunzauer	Roos	
Meisy <sup>1</sup>	Buteville	Gower	Curthose <sup>8</sup>	
Gaugy	Vmframville	Leverer	Trauers <sup>4</sup>	
Herey	Nevile	Sainteler	Matroners	32
Mongomery	Greneville	Saintomer	Vilers	
Semery	Turbeville	Ascher <sup>4</sup>	Prers <sup>4</sup>	
Akeny	Arville	Malynoler	Ferrers	
Pleisy	Sandervile	Hurfer	Morens <sup>9</sup>	36
Panely	Amondevile	Veer	Valeus <sup>10</sup>	
Audeny	Spyneville	Saintleger	Chalurs	
Quincy	Widville	Gunter	Saintelus	
Tuny	Wivile	Gamager	Saintmoris <sup>11</sup>	40
Massy	Ofvile	Gauter	Pus	
Welby	Gorunville <sup>3</sup>	Banaster	Bruce	
—	Abville	Venour	Chalenges	
[-ay, -ey]	Somervile	Vauesour	Auerenges	44
Hay	Soneville	—	Parles	
Say	Baskerville	[Fit:-]	Huscharles	
Aubray <sup>2</sup>	Hanville	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Gelfray	Setvaus <sup>12</sup>	
Morley	Hauteville	Fitz <sup>5</sup> Water	Taillois	48

<sup>1</sup> Mersy L.    <sup>2</sup> Ambray L.    <sup>3</sup> Gounrvile L.    <sup>4</sup> om. L.    <sup>5</sup> Filz L.<sup>6</sup> Wasteneis L.    <sup>7</sup> Cartenais L.    <sup>8</sup> See 537, 1, 3.    <sup>9</sup> Morens ? L.<sup>10</sup> Valens ? L.    <sup>11</sup> Saintmorioris L.    <sup>12</sup> Setvans ? L.

	Canois	[-an]	Veisyn	Plevien
	La Heuse	Brian	Mamelbarin <sup>2</sup>	Saintmore
	Courtheuse <sup>1</sup>	Baucan	Comyn	_____
4	Breuse	Truan	Warrenne	Wildbef [col. 5]
	Chaundos [col. 2]	_____	Dulapenne [col. 4]	Pantulf
	Sainterois	[-oun]	_____	Bardulf
	Taillepas	Britoun [col. 3]	Meyne	Sanctelou
8	Marcimas	Frisoun	Cheyne §	Gantlou
	Ferebrace	Grauntsoun <sup>2</sup>	Penire [or Pemre]	Mountegu
	Fetepace	Vernoun	Tenere	_____
	Bars	Piroun <sup>2</sup>	Lysle	Rosynis <sup>2</sup>
12	Quatremars	Heiroun	Burle	Heris
	Fyneux	Peisoun <sup>3</sup>	Rusak	Brok
	Punegis	Leoun	Murdak	_____
	Eurons	Motoun <sup>2</sup>	Gorge	Hubert
16	Manus (or	_____	Saintgorge <sup>2</sup>	Lambert
	Manns)	[-yn]	_____	Foliambe <sup>2</sup>
	Grace	Cosyn	Dalamare	_____
	_____	Rosyn	Mire	Escot
20	[-ayn, -eyn]	Sainthelyn	Saunzire	Kirlecot
	Morteyn	Costentyne	Lunar	Trusbut
	Butvileyn	Formentyne	Orrewar	Ynogle
	Malemayn	Manyne <sup>2</sup>	Clare	Saintnoyre
24	Foleyn	Iardyn	Savage	_____
	Chambreleyn	Taryn	Neomarch	Zoochh [? MS.] <sup>2</sup>
	Chastelleyn	Saintquintyn <sup>2</sup>	SaintIohn	Cornor
		Hamelyn	Chene § <sup>2</sup>	

[The Lambeth MS., leaves 111-112, leaves out a few names, spells others with slight differences, and puts in 'Putrell.']

<sup>1</sup> See 536, IV, 30.

<sup>2</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>3</sup> Tyson L.

## II.

[*The battle of Crecy and the Siege of Calais, A.D. 1346.*]

- 28 ¶ And in the xix yere of his regne he went in-to Britayne, and  
into Gascoyne & Gian,<sup>5</sup> & with hym the Erle of Hunt-  
yngtoun, þe Erle of Warrewik, þe Erle of Suffolk<sup>6</sup> and  
þe Erle of ArundeH, and with many opire lordes, with CC  
32 and .xl<sup>ti</sup>. shippes, onon after Mydsomer, to avenge hym on the  
wronges and harmes þat was done be Philippe Valoys,<sup>7</sup> Kyng  
of Fraunce, agaynes þe truyce beforesaid made; which  
truys he falsly and vntrewly brake by cauelacioun. And he  
36 come ageyne in-to Englonde with-in the same yere.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 138. The words in large type are underlined in red in the MS. In other pages of the text, no difference of type is made.

<sup>5</sup> & Gian *om.* L.

<sup>6</sup> leaf 138, back.

<sup>7</sup> de Valoys L.

¶ Of the bataile of Cressy, and of the seege of Caleys; and of the bataile of Durham where-as the Kyng of Scottes was taken; and alle in one yere. [*This heading is underlined in red in the MS.*]

**I**N the yere of oure Lord. M<sup>t</sup>. CCC. xlvj<sup>ti</sup>. and in the xx<sup>ti</sup> yere 4 of the regne of Kyng Edward of Wyndesore, he held a parlement at Westmynster, where-as were al the lordes of the reame, spiritue<sup>ll</sup> and tempera<sup>ll</sup>.<sup>1</sup> At which parlement were proclame þe gret iniuries and wronges pat was done be the Kyng of 8 Fraunce and Frenshmen in the parties of be-yonde the see, and on þe see-costes in Kent, and specially be theym of Caleis. Wherefore þe Kyng, be the counseil of his lordes spiritua<sup>ll</sup> and tempera<sup>ll</sup>, and of al his reame, ordeynt hym to passe ouer see 12 ageyne, to chastise the rebelles of Fraunce, and to lay seege to Caleis, which did gret harme about al þe see-cost; wherfore it was pat tyme kept with saudiours, to gret cost to þe King and the reame. And þerfore þe Kyng sent to al his frendes be-yonde the 16 see, þat were to hym assuret, as before is said, to mete with hym in Fraunce with al þeire power and Alliaunce. And the whiles he purveid hys navye, and made his retenewe in Englonde, in al þe hast he myght; of which þe namez of the chef lordes and 20 capteyns, with their retenewe and the noubre, folowith heraftir in this table, that is for to say :

- ¶ Prynce Edward with xj banerettes, C. ij. knyghtes, CC lxiiij. men of armes, CCC <sup>xx</sup>iiij Archers on horsebak, <sup>xx</sup>ij ix. Archers 24 on foote, vj<sup>c</sup> Walshmen, wherof on was a chapeleyn, & anoþer a leche, and anoþer a crier. And in his retenewe was xxv<sup>ti</sup>2 vynteners, & <sup>c</sup>iiij & <sup>xx</sup>iiij footmen, & v standart berers.
- ¶ Henre, Erle of Lancastre, with an Erle, xj banerettes, C. 28 <sup>xx</sup>iiij knyghtes, v<sup>c</sup> xiiij. men of Armes, and vj<sup>c</sup> xij. Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ William Bohome, Erle of Northampton, with ij banerettes and xlvj<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes, C and xij. men of Armes, And 32 C. lxj of Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ Thomas Beauchampe, Erle of Warrewik, with ij banerettes, and lxiiij knyghtes, and C and xxx<sup>ti</sup> men of Armes, and C. xlvj<sup>ti</sup> Archers<sup>3</sup> on horsebak. 36

<sup>1</sup> lordes spirituall & temporal of þe reame. spiritua<sup>ll</sup> and tempera<sup>ll</sup> om. L.

<sup>2</sup> xxvj L. <sup>3</sup> men of armes L.



- 1 ¶ Richard, Erle of ArundeH, with iij banerettes, and xlj<sup>ti</sup>.  
knyghtes, and C and .vj. men of Armes, and C liij<sup>ti</sup>. Archers  
on horsebak.<sup>1</sup>
- 4 ¶ Robert Dufford, Erle of Suffolk, with on baneret, and  
xxvj<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes, and lvij<sup>ti</sup> men of Armes, and lxij Archers  
on horsebak.
- ¶ William Clynton, Erle of Huntingtoun, with ij.  
8 banerettes, and xxx<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes, and iij<sup>xx</sup> and xij. men of  
Armes, and iij<sup>xx</sup>. viij. Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ John Veer, Erle of Oxenford, with on baneret and xxij  
knyghtes, and xliij<sup>ti</sup> men of Armes, and lxiiij Archers on  
12 horsebak.
- ¶ Laurence Hastynges, Erle of Penbrok, with on baneret,  
and xxxvj<sup>ti2</sup> knyghtes, and iij<sup>xx</sup> vj men of Armes, And C  
xxij<sup>ti4</sup> Archers on horsebak.
- 16 ¶ The Erle of Kildare, with on baneret, and on knyght, and  
xxiiij<sup>ti5</sup> men of Armes, and xxvij<sup>ti</sup> hobilers.
- ¶ Maistre Thomas Hattefeld, bisshope of Dureham,  
with iij banerettes, and xlvij<sup>ti</sup>. knyghtes, C lxiiij men of  
20 Armes, and iij<sup>xx</sup> and xv Archers on horsebak.
- ¶ Hughe Spenser as an Erle, with .ij. banerettes, and xl<sup>ti</sup>  
knyghtes, and iij<sup>xx</sup> and xvj<sup>6</sup> men of Armes, and iij<sup>xx</sup> and xv  
Archers on horsebak.
- 24 ¶ 7 Rauf, Baron of Stafford, with ij banerettes, and xx<sup>ti</sup>  
knyghtes, & iij<sup>xx</sup> and xij men of Armes, and iij<sup>xx</sup> and xv  
Archers on horsebakke.
- ¶ Richard Talbot,<sup>8</sup> Baroun, Stuard of þe Kynges house, with  
28 xiiij knyghtes, and lx of men of Armes, and lx Archers on  
horsebakke.
- ¶ Iohn Darox<sup>9</sup> the fadir, Baroñ, with xj knyghtes, and  
xlvij<sup>ti</sup> of men of Armes, and lx Archers on horsebakke, and  
32 xx<sup>ti</sup> Archers on foote.
- ¶ Berthelemew Burewassh, Baneret, the Kynges Chamber-  
leyn, with one baneret, and xxvj<sup>ti10</sup> knyghtes, lxxxj of men of  
Armes, & lvij<sup>ti</sup> Archers on horsebak, & xix on foote.
- 36 ¶ Waulter Manny, with oper xxvj<sup>ti11</sup> banerettes, with theyre

<sup>1-1</sup> om. L.

<sup>2</sup> xxvj<sup>ti</sup> L.

<sup>3</sup> C & L.

<sup>4</sup> CC L.

<sup>5</sup> xl<sup>ti</sup> L.

<sup>6</sup> xv L.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 139.

<sup>8</sup> Talbot om. L.

<sup>9</sup> Barox L.

<sup>10</sup> & vj & xx<sup>ti</sup> L.

<sup>11</sup> xxxvj<sup>ti</sup> L.

- retenets, that is to say, with C xxiiij<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes, D<sup>1</sup> <sup>xx</sup>iiij xij of<sup>2</sup> men of Armes, and D <sup>xx</sup>iiij xij archers on horsebakke, and of hobillers and Pavysers, and C xix Archers on foote.
- ¶ Sir William Wareyne, knyghte, with opir <sup>xx</sup>iiij and xv 4 knyghtes, CCC <sup>xx</sup>iiij xiiij<sup>3</sup> pavisers and hobelers on horsbakke, and xvj archers on foote.
- ¶ Sir Waulter Wetewang, the Kynges wardroper, with ij knyghtes, and xxv<sup>ti</sup> of men of Armes, and xxxvj<sup>ti</sup> Archers on 8 horsbakke.
- ¶ Maistre Symond Islepe, Privey Seal, with xvij<sup>4</sup> men of Armes, and xij Archers on horsebakke, and iiij Archers on foote. 12
- ¶ Philip Westoñ, Clerk, with ij knyghtes, and xxvij<sup>ti</sup> of men of Armes, and xxx<sup>ti</sup> Archers on horsebakke.
- ¶ William Keldesby, Clerk, with ij knyghtes, and lxxij of<sup>5</sup> men of Armes, and lxxij Archers on horsbakke, and xij 16 Archers on foote.
- ¶ Sir William Daltoñ, Countroller of þe Kynges house, with oper xix Clerkes of dyuers officers, with an C xiiij vndir-Clerkes and squyers, and C xxv<sup>ti</sup> Archers on horsebakke, and 20 ij Archers<sup>6</sup> on foote.
- ¶ William at Wode, the Kynges banerer, with oper iiij banerers, and C xxxij<sup>ti</sup> of *Sergiauntes* to meñ of Armes, Scutifers of þe Kynges house, *sergeauntes* of diuerse office, 24 and mynstrelles, CCLxviiij Archers, hobelers, banerers, messagers and yemen of þe Kynges Chambre, and of diuerse offices in þe Kynges house.
- ¶ Sir Thomas Haukestoñ, knyght, with an C lxj of men of 28 Armes, and CCC xij Archers on horsbakke, and CC xlj<sup>ti</sup> Archers on foote.
- ¶ Maistre Siluestre Benet, and oper CCC xiiij Masons, Carpenters, Smythes, pavylers, mynours, Armerers, Gunners, 32 and Artillers.
- ¶ Sir Iohn Ward, knyght, with x Centenaries and l<sup>ti</sup> men of Armes, and D<sup>7</sup>CC <sup>xx</sup>iiij, and viij vyntenaries, and CC <sup>xx</sup>iiij xvij<sup>8</sup> Archers on horsbakke, and D hobilers, and xv<sup>9</sup> M<sup>†</sup> iiij 36 Archers on foote.

<sup>1</sup> and L (D = 500, misread as &).      <sup>2</sup> of *om.* L.      <sup>3</sup> & xv L.

<sup>4</sup> xxvj L.      <sup>5</sup> of *om.* L.      <sup>xx</sup> <sup>6</sup> on horsebakke and ij Archers *om.* L.

<sup>7</sup> D (500) *om.* L.      <sup>8</sup> viii viij L.      <sup>9</sup> xvj L.

- ¶ Sir Howeñ Griffith, knyghte, with <sup>xx</sup>oper ij knyghtes, and iiij men of Armes of Walshemen of Northwales and Southwales, and ij C and iiij vintenares, and iiij M<sup>t</sup> CC Walshmen.
- 4 ¶ Maisters of Shippes, and Constables, maryners, and pages, þe nombre of DCC: þe nombre of maryners, bargers, and balyngers and vitailers, xvj M<sup>t</sup>.
- ¶ And thes ben þe names of the Aliens which were þe  
8 Kynges frendes, and in his Sande that same tyme, and halp hym in his werres in Fraunce. *scilicet* :—
- 1¶ Lodewik, the Emperoure of Rome, with a certeyn men of Armes.
- 12 ¶ Reynold, Duke of Gildre, with a certeyn-men of Armes.  
¶ Iohn, Duke of Braban, with a certeyne men of Armes.  
¶ William, Erle of Henawde, with a certeyne men of Armes.  
¶ Tederik, lord Faukemand, with a certeyne men of Armes.
- 16 ¶ Corald of Marke, with a certeyne men of Armes.  
¶ Bertold, Erle of Baiespath, Maurchion de Brandesburghe, and othir knyghtes and squyers, straungers, witholden with þe Kyng.
- 20 ¶ Baudewyñ, Archbisshope of Treeue, with a certeyn men.  
¶ Archbisshope<sup>2</sup> of Magunenser with a certeyn men.  
¶ Guilmyñ, Marchion Iuliacen, with a certeyn men.  
¶ The Erle of Helsteyn, with <sup>xx</sup>oper xxiiij<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes alieyns,
- 24 clepit 'Nethirbandes,' and C iiij viij of men of Armes, and C lxxj pavisers.
- ¶ The Erle of Freyburghe, with <sup>xx</sup>oper xl<sup>ti</sup> knyghtes alieyns, clepit 'Euerbandes,' &<sup>3</sup> CC xxxiiij<sup>ti</sup> of men of Armes and C
- 28 <sup>xx</sup>iiij ix<sup>4</sup> pavisers.
- ¶ The nombre of þe retenue, without Alieyns, that is to say, of erles, barons, banerettes, knyghtes, men of armes, Constables, Centeners, capteyns, vynteners, Archers on horsbak, hobelers,  
32 Archers of<sup>5</sup> foote, and Walshmen, as þe rolles of þe retenu make mencion, is xxv<sup>xx</sup>. CC iiij. ¶ The nombre of Masone, carpenters, smythes, paviloners, Armerers, Gunners and artillers, is CCC xiiij.
- ¶ The nombre of þe maisteres of shippes, Constables, maryners  
36 and pages of shippis, bargers, balyngers, and vitteilers is xvj. M<sup>t</sup>.
- ¶ When Kyng Edward had made his retenu and his Arme

<sup>1</sup> leaf 139, back.

<sup>2</sup> The erchbisshop L.

<sup>3</sup> & om. L.

<sup>4</sup> clxvi L. <sup>5</sup> on L.

in þis wise as before is said, and his navey was redy, he shippit the xij<sup>te</sup> day of Iule, the yere of our Lord M.<sup>t</sup> CCC xlvj<sup>ti</sup>, and saylet toward Normaundy, and londit at Hogges, and restet hym ther vj daies, and vnshippit his pepiH; and þen went he 4 toward Cane, brennyng & distrying euer as he went by þe way. And þe xxviii<sup>ti</sup> day of Iule, at þe brigge of Cane, that was strenghet be Normaundes, he had there a gret bataile, and longe duryng, thurgh gret multitude of pepil þat was þer slayn; and þer 8 was take þe Erle of Elbe,<sup>1</sup> the Lord Tankerville, and an C knyghtes and men of Armes, and vj<sup>c</sup> footemen; and al þe subbarbes to þe hard walles was born and cariet away, al þat couth be cariet. And so þe Kyng passet forth in þe cuntrey, and wastet 12 and distryet xx<sup>ti</sup> myle in brede.

¶ Philip of Valois, Kyng of Fraunce, was fast by *with* a gret host, and hard *per*of, and wold not come ouer þe water of Seyne, but brake al the brigges beyonde þe water, from Roan to Parise, 16 and fled *with* his host to Parise. ¶ When Kyng Edward come to þe water of Seyne, he fand al þe brigges broken; but within ij daies he made a brige ageyne. and on þe morowe aftir oure Lady day Assumpcion, he passet ouer þe Water of Seyne, and 20 went toward Cressy, & distryet by þe way, townes, and þe pepiH in hem. And in þe Fest of Saynt Berthelemewe, he passet the water of Summe vnhurt, *with* al his host, where-as neuer was no passage before þat tyme; And yet *per* ware ij M.<sup>t</sup> Frenshmen to 24 haue lette his passage. And þen, þe xxvj<sup>ti</sup><sup>2</sup> day of August, Edward faught beside Cressy, in a feld, havyng iij batayles of Englishmen, & Philippe of Valois iiij batailes: þe lest batail passet þe number of Englishmen. And when þe ij hostes mette to-gedre, 28 ther <sup>3</sup>fell in-with the host of Fraunce, the Kyng of<sup>4</sup> Beame, þe Duk of Loryn, And *oper* Erles, as of Flaundres, Dalison, Blois, Harecourt, Aunard, and<sup>5</sup> Navers, and many *oper* lordes and barons, knyghtes and men of Armes, the nombre of j 32 M.<sup>t</sup> CCCCC and xliij<sup>ti</sup>, without footemen. And yette for al this, Phelip the Kyng<sup>6</sup> withdrowe hym with the residew of aH his pepiH; wherfore it was said among his oune mewe “Nostre beal retreit,” that is to say, ‘Oure faire withdraweth hym.’<sup>7</sup> 36 ¶ And thus Kyng Edward had þe Victory; and there he and his pepiH hem restet, and thanket God. and on þe morow after, þe

<sup>1</sup> þe Erle of Elbe *om.* L.    <sup>2</sup> vj L.    <sup>3</sup> *leaf* 140.    <sup>4</sup> kyng Ha. king of L.

<sup>5</sup> Aunard and *om.* L.    <sup>6</sup> þe king Phelipe L.    <sup>7</sup> hym *om.* L.

Frenshe men come ageyne with a gret host to gyve Kyng Edward bataile; but the Erle of Warrewik mette with hem, and þe Erle of Norhamptoun, and þe Erle of Suffolke, *with* theire meyny, and  
4 slowe of hem ij M<sup>t</sup>, and toke many of the gentils prisoners; and al þe remenaunt fled iiij lekes thens. And thrid day after, the<sup>1</sup> Kyng Edwerd went toward Caleis, distrying al þe cuntrey as he rode, and laide<sup>2</sup> seege to Caleis<sup>3</sup> þe iiij<sup>de</sup> day of Septembre, with  
8 the Castelh, and contynuet þe sege stiH<sup>4</sup> from that day vnto þe iiij<sup>de</sup> day of Aust the next yere folowyng.

¶ Whiles Kyng Edward lay at Seege of<sup>5</sup> Caleyis, a gret power of Scottes come in-to Englonde, to Nevileros, about Saint  
12 Luyk day, menyng to haue founden al þe land destitute and voide of men, because the Kyng was beyonde þe see with a gret host; <sup>6</sup>þei wend þer had be non lasse at home, but prestes, men of religion, plowmen and laborers; <sup>6</sup> but, thanket be God! they fand<sup>7</sup> enow to  
16 wiststonde hem: they robbit and made gret distruccion; And so ther was a day of Batail sette betwene hem and certeyn lordes and meñ of holy chireh that were in that cuntrey, and þe comyn pepiH; at which batail, throw Goddes myghte, [the Scottes] were<sup>8</sup>  
20 discomfit, notwithstanding they were iiij meñ ageyne one of Englysshe meñ.<sup>9</sup> And pere were slayne the chiualry of Scotte-  
lond; and there was David, the Kyng of Scottes, taken fleyng, smytte thurgh þe nose with an Arowe, be a yoman that was  
24 callet Copeland; and there was take, the Erle of Moriss, Sir William Douglas, and many oþer gret meñ. And this batail was done beside Dereham, the xvij day of Octobre, the yere of oure Lord aboue-said. And when þe bataile was done, þe Englysshe  
28 men hem restet a fewe dayes, and ordeynt kepers of the north cuntrey, and after came to London, and brozt *with* hem þe Kyng of Scottes, and oþer lordes that were take prisoners, and led hem to þe Toure, where-as they abode of þe comyng of Kyng Edward  
32 out of Fraunce; and aftir that was raunsont at C M<sup>t</sup> marcs, to be payde in x yere, ich yere x M<sup>t</sup> marcs.

<sup>1</sup> the *om.* L.      <sup>2</sup> laide perto L.      <sup>3</sup> to Caleis *om.* L.

<sup>4</sup> Septembre which seege continued still L.      <sup>5</sup> att L.

<sup>6-6</sup> *om.* L.      <sup>7</sup> fand men E.      <sup>8</sup> were þe scottes L.      were Ha.

<sup>9</sup> of englysshe meñ *om.* L.

¶ Of the Conquest of Caleis by Kyng Edward of Wyndisore;  
and of the tresoun that was ordeynt for Caleis by one Sir  
Geffrey Charney. [*Big writing underlined in red in the MS.*]

**E**Dward, Kyng of Englonde contynuet at þe seege stið aȝ the 4  
wynter, and Philip Valois, Kyng of Fraunce, purpaset  
hym *with* some fraude to putte hym fro þe seege, and come the  
xxvij<sup>th</sup> day of Iuyle, þe yere of oure Lord M<sup>th</sup> CCC xlvij<sup>th</sup> to  
Calkeweȝ, a myle and an half from Caleis, with a gret host; 8  
and sent to Kyng Edward, and askit hym whedir he durst feight  
*with* hyme the iij<sup>de</sup> day, about euensonge tyme, and leue þe seege.  
And Kyng Edward onon, *with*-out eny counsaile or avisement,  
acceptet gladly the day; and yette much of his pepiȝ wer seke and 12  
ded on þe flux. ¶ When þe Kyng of Fraunce wist verely that  
he wold feight, *with*-out eny avisement or long taryng he sette his  
loggynge on fyre, and went cowardly his way.

## III.

[*From Bolingbroke's return, A.D. 1399, to A.D. 1405.*]

<sup>1</sup>¶ When Kyng Richard had tithynges in Irlond, that Henry 16  
of Boleynbroke, Duyke of Herford, was comyn into Englonde, he  
laſte al his ordynaunce in Irlond, and hastet hym into Englonde, in  
al that he myghte, and come vnto the caſteȝ of <sup>2</sup>Flynt in Wales,  
and there he abode, to take his counsaile what was best for to 20  
done; but ther come no counsaile to hyme. And in the menewhile,  
Henry Boleynbrok <sup>3</sup>come [to] Herford, and [þe] Erle of Derby<sup>3</sup>  
come to Cheſtre, and loggit in the Caſteȝ, <sup>3</sup>with-in the Inner ward  
perof, which caſteȝ Kyng Richard had riolly repeiret, and made 24  
*with* hertes of freſtone betwene ich lope, with crownes and cheynes  
about theire nekkes, for he lovit wele that place<sup>3</sup> // And then was  
there ſent vnto the caſteȝ of Flynt, Maister Thomas Arundeȝ,  
Archbiſſhope of Caunterbury, and Sir Henry Percy, Erle of 28  
Northumbrelond, and othir lordes, both ſpirituall and temperall;  
and there was much thyng ſpoken of betwene þe Kyng and hem,  
by gret othis and ſuyrtees made, that he ſhuld come vnto Cheſtre  
ſavely, and<sup>4</sup> ſpek with the Duyk, and be delyuert ſavely ageyn to 32  
the ſaid caſteȝ: which othis and ſuyrtees were not al parfowremet.

<sup>1</sup> leaf 152, at foot. The red underlines are not now markt by difference of type.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 152, back.

<sup>3-3</sup> om. L.

<sup>4</sup> to L.

And so come the Kyng ridyng vnto Chestre <sup>1</sup>and yong Henry with hyme, that was þe eldest sone of the said Duyk of Herford<sup>1</sup> // and was loggit in the vtterward of the casteH of Chestre.<sup>2</sup> Then  
4 Kyng Richard vndirstood and knewe wele that it was not wele on<sup>3</sup> heire<sup>4</sup> syde. And the same nyght, after that<sup>5</sup> Kyng Richard was gone to Chestir, Sir Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre and stuard of the Kynges howsold, come into the haH amonges the pepiH, and  
8 there he brak the rodde of his office, and bade enery mañ do his best; And so went ich man his way.

¶ Then þe Kyng and<sup>6</sup> the Duyk mette and spake to-gedirs in þe haH of þe said CasteH, <sup>1</sup>that was in the vtterward,<sup>1</sup> a longe  
12 while, and aftir departet; and in<sup>7</sup> the departyng, Henry, the sonne and heire of the said Duyk, come to his fadir, and knelit down before hym, and welcomet hym, as hym aught to do; And there forthwith his fadir hym charget the next day to come from the  
16 Kyng, and waite vppon hym. ¶ Then this yong knyght Henry brought þe Kyng to his chambre with a sorowfuH hert, for cause he shuld depart from his godfadir and his Souerayne Lord, for he louet hyme enterely. And when he come into the Kynges  
20 chambre, he tolde the Kyng how he most, the next day aftir, wayte vppon his fadir, be streyt and hard comaundement. And then þe kyng said to hym the[s]e wordes: ¶ “Good sonne Henry, I gyve thè good<sup>8</sup> leue to do thy fadirs comaundement; but I knowe  
24 wele there is on Henry shal do me much harne; and I suppose it is not thowe. Wherefore I pray thè be my frende, for I wot now howe it wil go.” And so on the next day aftir, Henry toke his leue of þe Kyng his godfadir with an hevy hert, and went to his  
28 fadir, Duyk of Herford. And after that, was the Kyng arestet in the same CasteH by the said Duyk, and al his meyny that were about hym put away; and such men were put about hym as the Duyk wold. Then from thens he was broughte to London, and, by  
32 assent of al þe lordes, putte in þe Toure. <sup>1</sup>And on Saint Laurence even, þe hed of Perkyñ of Lee was smyt of vnder the Iubet<sup>9</sup> of Chestre.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> *om.* L.    <sup>2</sup> of Chestre *om.* L.    <sup>3</sup> in L.    <sup>4</sup> his L.

<sup>5</sup> that *om.* L.    <sup>6</sup> þe kyng and *om.* L.    <sup>7</sup> at L.

<sup>8</sup> good *om.* L.    <sup>9</sup> gibbet L.

<sup>1</sup> ¶ Of the deth of Kyng Richard, and of othir dyuers Dukes,  
Erles, and barons moo. [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]

**I**N the first yere of the regne<sup>2</sup> of Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>te</sup>, Kyng Richard, which þat was put doune of<sup>3</sup> his Rialte, was in þe 4 CasteH of Pountfret vndir þe ward of Sir Robert<sup>4</sup> of Watirton, knyght<sup>5</sup>; and þere he was ich day seruet [as] a<sup>6</sup> Kyng aught to he, that he myght se it; but he myght come to non þerof; wherefore sone aftir he deyed for hunger in prison in þe same CasteH<sup>7</sup>; and so 8 he made his ende. ¶ And when Kyng Henry wist verely that he was ded, because much pepiH said he was on lyve many a day after, he made to sere hym, and clope hym in<sup>8</sup> lymmen Cloth, al saave onely the visage; and that was lafte open, that men myght se and 12 knowe his persone from al oper; and so was he brought with torch-light vnto Paulis at London, and had þere his masse and dirige, and þe same wise at Westemynster; and þen from Paules he was broughte to Langeley, and þere he was enteret. 16

¶ That same yere Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>te</sup> held his Cristemas in þe CasteH of Wynnessore: and on the xij<sup>te</sup> even come to hym the Duke of Awmarle, and told hym how þat he and þe Duke of Surry, þe Duk of Excestre, and þe Erle of Salesbury and þe Erle 20 of Gloucestre,<sup>9</sup> and oper moo of theyre Affynyte, were accordit to make a mummyng vnto þe said Kyng Henry on xij<sup>te</sup> day at nyght, in<sup>10</sup> which mummyng þei purpaset to sle hym. ¶ When<sup>11</sup> Kyng Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup> was thus warnet, he rode in hast þat same 24 nyght pryvely to London, to gete hym socoure and counsaile. But assone as þe forsaid lordes wist and knewe that their counsaile were discouert openly, they fled, euery man his way; And aftirward thei were taken in certeyn places of Englund be þe comyns, and hedit, 28 and peire hedis sette on London Brigge,<sup>12</sup> and their bodyes quartert, and sett vp in dyuers townes of Englund.<sup>12</sup> Whos names folowen here aftir<sup>13</sup> in pis table, and the places where þei wer taken, and hedit: 32

Att Circestre were	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{The Duke of Surry and Erle} \\ \text{of Kent}^{14} \\ \text{The Erle of Salesbery} \\ \text{The Erle of Oxenford} \end{array} \right\}$	$\left. \begin{array}{l} \text{quarteret}^{15} \\ \text{and hedit.} \end{array} \right\}$	36
taken with hem of þe			
toune . . . . .			

<sup>1</sup> leaf 153.    <sup>2</sup> of the regne *om.* L.    <sup>3</sup> from L.    <sup>4</sup> Henry L.  
<sup>5</sup> knyght *om.* L.    <sup>6</sup> a Ha. as a L.    <sup>7</sup> in þe same CasteH *om.* L.  
<sup>8</sup> on L.    <sup>9</sup> and þe Erle of Gloucestre *om.* L.    <sup>10</sup> on L.  
<sup>11</sup> And when L.    <sup>12—12</sup> *om.* L.    <sup>13</sup> aftir *om.* L.  
<sup>14</sup> and Erle of Kent *om.* L.    <sup>15</sup> And þes thre were quartered L



At Oxenford were take { Sir Thomas Blount }  
 with hem of þe toune . { Sir Rauf Luzzay } knyghtes } quateret  
 4 { Sir Benet Sely } and  
 { Thomas<sup>1</sup> Wyntersshiſſ squyer } hedit.

At Pritweſh in a mylne { Sir Iohn Holand } And quateret,<sup>2</sup> and  
 was take by th[e] { Sir Iohn Holand } hedit at Plasshe in  
 Comyns . . . . . { Duyk of Excestre } Essex.

8 At Bristow was take { The Erle of Gloucestre } quateret and  
 by hem of þe toune . . { and Lord Spencer. } hedit.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>4</sup> And afftirward in that<sup>5</sup> same yere, was Sir Bernard<sup>6</sup> Brocas,  
 knyght, <sup>7</sup> and Sir Iohn Shelley, knyghte, And Sir Iohn Mawde-  
 12 leyne and Ferby, parsones of Kyng Richard Chapeſſ, take, and  
 put in þe Toure of Londone; and there they were inſet to the  
 deth<sup>8</sup>, <sup>7</sup> theire hedes to be smytton of, and sette on London Brigge:  
 and so they were. ¶ That same yere, Queene Isabeſſ, that was the  
 16 wiff of Kyng Richard the Secunde, was dischargit of hir dowery,  
 and sent home in-to Fraunce ageyne with many rich gyftes.<sup>7</sup>

¶ Of the werre of Wales betwene the Lord Gray of Rithen  
 and Oweyn of Glyndore of Wales, and of the bataile of  
 20 Shrewisbury. [*Big writing, underlined with red.*]

IN the secunde yere of the regne of Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>th</sup>, was  
 Sire Roger of Claryntoun, knyght, and the Pryoure of Launde,  
 and viij Freres Mynoures,—<sup>7</sup> wherof somme were maisters of  
 24 dyvinite<sup>7</sup>—and oper moo, were, for tresone, drawe and hanget at  
 Tiburne.<sup>9</sup> ¶ That same yere ther began a gret disceneiōn and a  
 debate in Wales betwene þe Lord Gray of þe Rithyn and Oweyne  
 of Glyndore, Squyer of Wales, for bying of an hare in the market. !  
 28 This Oweyne Arerit a gret nombre of Wa[l]sshe-men, and distroyet  
 þe lordeshipes of the Lord Gray, and of þe Kynges also, and did  
 much harme through-out Wales, and robbet and slowe the Kynges  
 pepiſſ, both Engliſſh and Walsh. and the Lord Gray distroyet, on  
 32 his party, al pat held with þe said Oweyne; And this werre endurit  
 xij yere. ¶ And at last this Oweyne toke the Lord Grey, Prisoner,  
 and were raunsont for V<sup>c</sup><sup>10</sup> prisoners of Walsh-men of the March<sup>11</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> And Thomas L. <sup>2</sup> And quateret om. L.

<sup>3</sup> quateret and hedit om. L. <sup>4</sup> leaf 153, back. <sup>5</sup> þe L.

<sup>6</sup> Thomas L. <sup>7-7</sup> om. L. <sup>8</sup> Iuged & put to deth L.

<sup>9</sup> at Tiburne om. L. <sup>10</sup> vj C L. <sup>11</sup> of the March om. L.

and þe Lord Gray at last to wedde his doughter, and kept hym there with his wiff; and sone after he dyet. ¶ Then went the Kyng in-to Wales with a gret power, to distry this Oweyne and þe rebelles of Wales; but þe Walssh men fled vp on hye mounteynes, 4 where-as þe Kyng couth in no wise come to hem; and so þe Kyng sped not þere; wherfore he retournet home ageyne. <sup>1</sup>And þat same yere was a gret drouzth and a scariste of whete, so that a quarter was wurth xvj<sup>s</sup>. 8

¶ That same yere Sir William Sawtre, preest, was brent in Smythfeld, for cresy; and that yere Sir Roger Waldeyne and Sir Richard Clidrowe qvytte<sup>2</sup> by a quest of men of London. and that same [yere] was a bataile on Halydoun Hylle betwene 12 Englissh-men and Scottes, where-as was taken þe Erle Douglas, and his one ey smytte out, and þe Erle of Moriss, and many othir lordes, knyghtes and squyers; and so, as God wold, thenglissh men had þe felþ and þe victory.<sup>1</sup> 16

¶ In the iij<sup>de</sup> yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>te</sup>,<sup>3</sup> Apperit a sterre in þe firmament <sup>1</sup>in the west, in þe monyth of Fevryere,<sup>1</sup> which wes clepit the ‘blasynge sterre,’ <sup>1</sup>and of clerkes it was clepit ‘stella Comata.’<sup>1</sup> Anon after, felþ a debate betwene þe Kyng and 20 Sir Henry Percy, that was callet amonge þe Scottes ‘Henry Hate-spurre.’ This Syre Henry come vnto þe Kyng, and asket of hym certeyn wages that he was behynde, for þe kepyng and wardeynshipe of þe Marches, and þe kyng hym gave but a light Answare. 24 And Sir Henry Percy said ‘he quyt hym not to hym as he shold do, for,’ he said, ‘ne had he ben, he had neuer be Kyng of Englund.’ The Kyng then, with that word was sore mevyt, and with his fist stroke Sir<sup>4</sup> Henry Percy on þe cheke. And þen Sir Henry, sore 28 aggrevid, said the[s]e wordes vnto the Kyng: “In faith, this shal be the derrest-boght buffet that euer was in Englund”; and with þat word <sup>1</sup>turnet the bakke, and <sup>1</sup>toke his hors, and rode his way with his meyny <sup>1</sup>that come with hym.<sup>1</sup> When þe Kyng had smytten 32 Sir Henry thus, as before is said, yet he was sory þerof, and hym repentet, and sent for Sire Henry ageyne; but he wold come to þe Kyng in no wise, but rode forth, and rayset a gre[te] pepiH of diuers shires, and specialy of Chestre-shire; and on Saynt Mary 36 Mawdeleyne eueñ next folowyng, the yere of owre<sup>5</sup> Lord I .M<sup>t</sup>. CCCC. iij.,<sup>6</sup> was a gret bataile besydes Shrewesbery, betwene Kyng

<sup>1-1</sup> *om.* L.<sup>2</sup> qvytte = were acquitted.<sup>3</sup> the iiij<sup>te</sup> *om.* L.<sup>1</sup> Sir *om.* L.<sup>5</sup> *om.* Ha. owre L.<sup>6</sup> & iij L.

Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup><sup>1</sup> and þe said Sir Henry Percy, by false counsaile and  
wikket steryng of Sir Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre, and vnclē  
vnto the said Henry Percy. in which bataile was slayne, first, Sir  
4 Henry Percy hym self,<sup>2</sup> and þe moost party of his pep<sup>er</sup>H; and Sir  
Thomas Percy, Erle of Wircestre<sup>3</sup> was taken, <sup>4</sup>and was kept ij  
dayes, and after was drawe<sup>4</sup> and<sup>5</sup> hanget, <sup>4</sup>and his hed smytton  
of, and sette on London Brigge. And in that same batayle,<sup>4</sup> on<sup>6</sup>  
8 þe Kynges party, was slayne The Erle of Stafford, and Sir Waltere  
Blount in þe Kynges cote Armure <sup>4</sup>vnder þe Kynges baner,<sup>4</sup> &  
7 many othir wurthy knyghtes and Squyers and good yemen.<sup>8</sup> And  
in that same bataile þe Prynce was smytte thurgh þe hed with an  
12 Arowe; and yet God fortunet that he lyvit. <sup>4</sup>And Sir Iohn of  
Stanley, knyght, was smytte in the throte with an Arowe; and  
when þe bataile was done, the Kyng sent to hym, and to wete of  
hym what he shuld do with Chestirshire, for-as-much [as] they  
16 were ageynes hym. And he Answard þe messenger, so as he myght  
speke rattelyng in þe throte, and said, “Brenne and sle! Brenne  
and sle!” And þe Kyng asket what he said; and he þat was sent  
to hym said to þe Kyng that he shuld take hem to grace; and so  
20 the Kyng þen hem toke to grace; and al þat wold ask grace þat  
were taken, had grace and forgyvenes; but aftir þe bataile the  
Kynges meyny come into Chestirshire, and dispoylet þe cuntre in  
euery part, and bare away the goodes that couth be caryet.<sup>4</sup>  
24 ¶ This bataile was þe heviest, and vnkyndest and sorest batail þat  
euer was before that tyme in Englonð; for ther was þe sonne  
-ageynes þe fadir, and the brothir ageynes brothir,<sup>9</sup> and kynne  
-ageynes kynne; <sup>4</sup>and þer was beriet in on pitte xj<sup>o</sup> men; in which  
28 place is nowē a ChapeH of oure Lady, & prestes syngyng for the  
sawles. And thys bataile was the yere of oure Lord aboue-sayd,  
wherof a versifier makith mencion, And sayth on thys wyse :

Anno Milleno quadracenteno-que trino,

32 Bellum Salopie fuerat in Mag[ne] Mari[e] nocte.

**How Dame Iahne, Duchess of Britayne, come into Englonð, and  
weddit vnto Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>te</sup>. And of the comyng of  
þe Emperoure in-to Englonð.<sup>4</sup> [Big writing, underlined with red.]**

<sup>1</sup> MS. þerte. <sup>2</sup> and hym self Ha. hym self *om.* L.

<sup>3</sup> Erle of Wircestre *om.* L. <sup>4-4</sup> *om.* L. <sup>5</sup> And aftirward L.

<sup>6</sup> And on L. <sup>7</sup> leaf 154. <sup>8</sup> and good yemen *om.* L.

<sup>9</sup> the broþer L.

**I**N the iiij<sup>te</sup> yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry the iiij<sup>te</sup> [the] Emperoure of Constaigyn<sup>n</sup>ople come in-to Englonð, to se þe gouernaunce and þe conveyaunce of þe land, and þe comoditees, on þe Kynges cost; and when he had seyne al þat he wolde, he went 4 ageyne. And þat same yere, Dame Iahne, Duches of Britayne, come into Englonð, and landet at Falmouth<sup>e</sup> in Cornewaile, and was weddit vn-to Kyng Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup> at Wynchester, in the Abbay of Saynt Swithyn, and sone affirward was crownet at 8 Westemynster. ¶ And þat same yere, Dame Blaunche, the eldest daughter of Kyng Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup>,<sup>1</sup> was sent *with* Sire Iohn Beaufort, Erle of Somerzed, hir vncl, and with Maistre Richard Clifford, that tyme Bysshope of Londone, and oper notable persones, vnto 12 Coleyne; and þer was she weddit vnto þe sone of þe Duke of Barry; and after þe ffest of þe mariage was done, þe saide Erle and Bisshope come into Englonde ageyne.

**Of the bataile of Mark.** [*Big letters, red underlines.*] 16

¶ In þe v<sup>te</sup> yere of þe regne of Kyng Henry þe iiij<sup>te</sup>, þe Lord Thomas, þe sonne of Kyng Henry, and þe Erle of Kent, with many oper wurthy men, went to þe see; and they landit at Seluys, and made þere a gret assaut, and brent <sup>2</sup>in þe Ile of Cagant, and token<sup>2</sup> 20 iiij karikk<sup>e</sup>s of Geene, lade<sup>3</sup> *with* diuerse<sup>4</sup> Marchaundise, and hem brougt into þe Cambre<sup>5</sup> before Winchilsey; <sup>2</sup>and þere þe goodes were cantet, and one of þe karikk<sup>e</sup>s was sodanly brent; and so þe said lordes went no ferther at þat tyme.<sup>2</sup> 24

¶ And that yere, in þe xxiiij<sup>th</sup>. day of Iunij, the Erle of Saynt Paule laide seege to þe CasteH of Mark, iiij myle out of Caleys, *with* iiij M<sup>t</sup> men, and diket hem stronge with-in þe toune of Mark,<sup>6</sup> Iohn<sup>7</sup> Beaufort, Erle of Somerzed, that tyme beyng Capteyn of Caleis, <sup>2</sup>and 28 Sir Richard of Asshton, knyghte, his leotenaunt; which Richard,<sup>2</sup> *with* the garison of Caleis, allonely<sup>8</sup> went to Mark, and faught with þe Frensshmen long, and entirt in on hem at þe Northgappe, <sup>2</sup>and at þe west gappe,<sup>2</sup> and slow and toke al that wolde abide. And þe 32 Erle of Saynt Paule hym-self fled his way, <sup>9</sup>þe þe marreys; and or þe bateH wes done, Sir Iohn Beaufort, Erle of Somerzed and Capteyne of Caleys, come out of Englonð, and landit at Caleys,

<sup>1</sup> þe eldest doughtir of king henry dame Blanch L.

<sup>2-2</sup> *om.* L. <sup>3</sup> *with* lade Ha. <sup>4</sup> diuerse *om.* L.

<sup>5</sup> into þe Cambre *om.* L. <sup>6</sup> of Mark *om.* L. <sup>7</sup> But Iohn L.

<sup>8</sup> of Caleis allonely *om.* L. <sup>9</sup> *om.* L. to line 2, next page.

and went to Mark, and come to þe ende of þe discunfiture of þe  
Frenssh-meñ<sup>9</sup>: And þer was taken the Lord Hanget and<sup>1</sup> many  
wurthy prisoners of<sup>2</sup> knyghtes, squyers, <sup>3</sup>and meñ of Armes. and  
4 þis bataile was done þe yere of oure Lorde aboue [said, M<sup>t</sup>] CCCC v,  
and on saynt Crispyne and Crispianes day, as a versifier makes  
þerof mencion, and saith<sup>3</sup>: [*No verses follow in the MS.*]

#### IV.

[*From the first year of Henry V, 1413, to the third year, 1415.*]

<sup>4</sup>And in þat same yere, on Twelft Night, certeyne lollardes were  
8 arested at the signe of þe Ax, without Cripilgate, at London, which  
had purpeset, thurgh þeire false treson, to haue made a mummyng  
at Eltham, where þe Kyng was; and vnder þe coloure of the  
mummyng, they wold haue distryet þe Kyng, and þe lordes spirit-  
12 uaß and temperaß, and all þe clergy of þe Reame. And þey had  
cast to haue taken þe felß be-side Saint Giles; but, as God woldß,  
þe Kyng þerof had warnyng, and come to London, and with hym  
þe Bisshope<sup>5</sup> of Caunterbery, and toke þe felß beside Saint Iones  
16 and Clerkyn)-weße, and made to kepe al þe hye wayes to London;  
and so were thei taken ay as they come thidirward. And in  
London was tak Sire Roger<sup>6</sup> Acton, knyghte, and was drawe &  
hanget be-side Saint Giles, where þe Kyng lete do make iiij paires  
20 of gallous, þat were callet 'þe lollers galowes.' And þer wes take,  
Syre Iohn Beuerlay, a prest, and Iohn Broune, a squyere, and  
many oþer moo, þe nombre of xxxviij persons and moo, and were  
draw, hanget and brent. ¶ And Sir Iohn Oldcasteß, þe Lord  
24 Cobbam, was arest at Wyndesore for heresy, and was sent to þe  
Toure of London; and sone after, he was examynt at þe<sup>6</sup> frere  
prechours, before al the<sup>7</sup> clergy of þe wurthiest of religion, and  
bisshoppes, and doctours of dyvinite; and þer were temperal lordes  
28 to here hys opynions. and after, he was sent vnto þe Toure ageyn;  
but sone after he brake out of þe Toure, and went in-to Walis.  
¶ And þat same yere Iohn Sere, a squyer, slowe Tibey,<sup>8</sup> a prest in  
<sup>9</sup>London, beside Aldrichgate,<sup>10</sup> and þen toke the chirch of Saint

<sup>1</sup> the Lord Hanget and *om.* L.

<sup>2</sup> prisoners of *om.* L.

<sup>3-3</sup> *om.* L. <sup>4</sup> leaf 155, back.

<sup>5</sup> erchbisshop L.

<sup>6</sup> þe *om.* L. <sup>7</sup> al Ha. al the L.

<sup>8</sup> Tibey *om.* L. <sup>9</sup> leaf 156.

<sup>10</sup> beside Aldrichgate *om.* L.

Anne; wherefore þe Kyng made þe Cite to wach hym *per*, day and nyght, duryng iij wokes; and þen was he muret vp in the chireh: þen he and iij of his mene forswore þe londe, and went in-to Fraunce, and there he dyet. 4

¶ And in þe seconde yere of his regne, he helde a gret counsaile at Westmyn[s]ter, with al þe lordes of his Reame, spirituaH and temperaH: where it was tretit and spoken of his title pat he had to Normaundy, Gascoyne and Gyan, which was his enheritaunce of 8 righte. and after, he held a gret parlement at Leicestre, where, be thavice of al his lordes of his Counsaile, and of þe comyns of his land, he sent in-to Fraunce his enbassatours, to þe Kyng there and to his Counsaile, requiryng hem to yelde vp to him his said 12 enheritaunce, or elles he lete hem wete he wold it gete with þe sword, by þe helpe of Ihesu Crist. ¶ Then þe Dolfyn of Fraunce, Charles, ansuare to þe Kynges enbassatours, and said: "youre Kyng of Englonde is ouer<sup>1</sup> yong and tendre of age to be a good 16 werrioure, and not like to make such a conquest on Fraunce."

¶ Then þe Kynges enbassatours, heryng this scornfuH ansuare, retournet in-to Englonde ageyne, and told þe Kyng and his Counsaile the ansuare and þe entent of þe Dolfyn and of þe Counsaile of 20 Fraunce. ¶ The Kyng then was þerwith sore amevide; and onon in al hast made redy his ordinaunce necessary for þe werre, and lete make .iij. gret shippes—one of xv<sup>c</sup> tonne pat was clepit þe 'Gracedieu,' and þe 'gost' and þe 'trynite,' smaller shippes. and 24 he lete ordeyne and make gret gunnes, and al oþer ordynaunces, and made his retenewe, And comaundet his lordys, dukes, erles and<sup>2</sup> barons, knyghtes, squyers,<sup>3</sup> and al oþer comyners, masons, carpenters, and al<sup>4</sup> artificers, to make hem redy to go with hym 28 into Fraunce, to help hym wyne his heritage and his righte, and to mete with hym on Lammas Day at Southampton, where he ordeynt his navey to be *per*, redy to abide his comyng: <sup>5</sup>whidir come many shippes out of Holynd.<sup>5</sup> And when þe kyng was redy, 32 he come to Southampton on Lammas day,<sup>6</sup> where-as mette hym al his pepill; and *per* was he redy<sup>7</sup> to take his viage <sup>5</sup>in-to . Normandy.

At which day<sup>5</sup> it was puplisshit, and openly knowen, pat iij 36 lordes, pat is to say, Richard, Erle of Cambrigge, broþer to Edward,

<sup>1</sup> ou Ha. ouer L.      <sup>2</sup> and om. L.

<sup>3</sup> & squyers L.      <sup>4</sup> al oþir L.      <sup>5-5</sup> om. L.

<sup>6</sup> on Lammas day om. L.      <sup>7</sup> And as he was redy L.

Duyk of York, and pe Lord Scrope, Tresourer of Englonk, and Sir Thomas Gray, knyght, had receyuet a gret somme of money, pat is to say, a M<sup>t</sup> ponde of gold,<sup>1</sup> and had sold pe Kyng vnto pe  
4 Frensshmen and his brether.<sup>2</sup> Wherefore they were onon taken and Iugit, their hedis to be smytton of; and so they were,<sup>3</sup> without pe Southgates at Southampton.<sup>3</sup> And when that was done, pe Kyng shippit with his host, and so saylet in-to Normaundy<sup>4</sup> with  
8 xv<sup>c</sup> shippes, gret and smaH, And arryvet at Kittance one oure Lady even, pe Assumpeion. And from thens he went streight to Harflewe, and besegit pe toune be londe and be watir.

How kyng Henry the V<sup>te</sup> wanne Harflewe; and of the bataile  
12 of Agincourt, and how the Emperoure come into Englonk.

**W**Hen Harflewe was besegit be londe and be water, per were in pe toune viij<sup>c</sup> men of werre, with-out lordes and states. And thes were pe names of pe lordes: Sir Iakes de Harecourt, capteyn,  
16 pe Lord Gawcourt, the Lord of Hakvyse, the Lord of Florry, the Lord of Bleynvile, the Lord of Tiptot, the Lord of Combrevyle, the Lord of Beushvyle, and opir moo which shal be reherset hereafter ¶ The Kyng pen sent to Sir Iakes de Harecourt, Capteyn of Har-  
20 flewe, and hym comaundit to delyuer pe toune. And Sire Iakes ansuard and said, 'he toke hym none to kepe; nor none he shuld hane pere.' And when this ansuare was brought vnto pe Kyng, he made to lay 'goodgrace,' his gret gunne, and al his oper gunnes, on  
24 ich a side, and comaundit his gunners to bete doune pe walles. and so thei shotte on ich side, and brak doune pe walles, and pe houses with-in the toune. ¶ When thay of pe toune pat saw, they sent to Kyng Henry, besechyng hym of viij dayes of respite, if eny maner  
28 rescouse myght come to hem in pe menewhile. and if so were there come none rescouse to hem with-in pe viij<sup>te</sup> dayes, they wold deliuer to hym the keyes and pe toune: and per-vppon pai wold deliuer hym xxiiij lordes in hostage, and of the wurthyest men of  
32 pe toune.

¶ The Kyng then grauntet wele perto; and so <sup>5</sup>they delyuert xxiiij<sup>ti</sup> hostages, whos names ben writton in this table <sup>3</sup>next folowyng, pat is to say: <sup>3</sup>—

<sup>1</sup> receyued the somme of M<sup>l</sup> li of gold L.

<sup>2</sup> and his brether *om.* L. <sup>3-3</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>4</sup> shipped & sailed toward Normandy L. <sup>5</sup> leaf 156, back.

The Lord Tutteville,	Thomas de Asses,	
The Lord of Clere,	Iohn Malherbe,	
The Lord of Chasteleyn, } De Beauvise, <sup>1</sup>	Iohn Harrard,	
The Lord Blowset,	Stephan Heuband,	4
The Lord Burnet, } of Langehampe, <sup>2</sup>	Guilliam Buchier,	
	Laurence Robyn,	
The Lord Iohn <sup>3</sup> of Malevile,	Iohn Buchier	
The Lord Charles <sup>4</sup> de Saint Claleyn,	Aleyn Ligne,	8
The Lord Caradouse <sup>5</sup> Deske- sewis,	Iohn Graunt,	
	Robyn Walkyle,	
The Lord Iakes <sup>6</sup> de Bankvyle,	Iohn le Mare,	
Guilliam de Pount,	Iany <sup>n</sup> le Duyk,	12
	Guilmot Guillias.	
	Colyn <sup>7</sup> Langloys,	

¶ And when thies xxiiij<sup>te</sup> hostages were sent out of pe toune to pe Kyng, al thoo viij dayes after they of pe toune loket after 16 rescouse; but *per* come none. Wherefore Sir Iakes de Harecourt, <sup>s</sup>pat was Capteyn of pe toune of Harflew,<sup>8</sup> *with* lordes and states of pe toune, brough[t] pe<sup>9</sup> Kyng pe keys at the viij<sup>te</sup> dayes ende, and deliuert hym pe toune. ¶ Then pe Kyng made pe Erle of 20 Dorset, Beaufort his vnkill, capteyn of pe toune, and hym com-  
aundit to put out al the Frensshe pepi<sup>h</sup> pat were *within*, man  
woman and child, and stuff pe toune *with* Englisshemen, and so  
he did. ¶ Then pe Kyng remevit from pens with his pepi<sup>h</sup>, and 24  
come down to Caleis-ward be land, to pe noubre of viij M<sup>t</sup>.; but  
pe Frensshe-men had breken alle the brigges where he shuld haue  
passit *ouer*. Wherefore he sought his way in *oper* places, and  
come downward to a place clepit Aginecourt; where-as al pe power 28  
of Fraunce wer gedirt, and redy to stoppe hym pe way, and to  
gyve hym bataile. ¶ And when pe Kyng this sawe, he praid God  
be his helpe; and with pe pepi<sup>h</sup> pa[t] he had, which was but scarse  
viij M<sup>t</sup>, made hym redy, and hym enbatailt. ¶ The Kyng pat 32  
tyme had a mys-trust in Edward, Duyk of York; and pat the  
Duyke wele *perceyuet*, and come to pe Kyng, and hym besoughte  
that he myght haue pe vaward pat day. and pe Kyng hym

<sup>1</sup> De Beauvise *om.* L.      <sup>2</sup> of Langehampe *om.* L.<sup>3</sup> Iohn *om.* L.      <sup>4</sup> Charles *om.* L.<sup>5</sup> Caradouse *om.* L.      <sup>6</sup> Iakes *om.* L.      <sup>7</sup> And Colyn L.<sup>8-9</sup> *om.* L.      <sup>9</sup> to pe L.



graunted. Then pe Duyk went forth, and comaundit and charget  
 euery man to ordeyne hym a stake of tre, sharpet at both endys,  
 and pight an ende asslope in pe ground before hem, that pe  
 4 Frenshemen shuld not ouer<sup>xx</sup>ride hem; for thair purpose was to  
 haue ouer<sup>xx</sup>riden hem; for they were nombret vj M<sup>t</sup> and moo. And  
 pe Frenshmen, al pe nyghte before or pat the bataile was, made  
 muche reveH, and cryeng and shoutyng,<sup>1</sup> al pe nyghte, and plaiet  
 8 Englisshemen at pe<sup>2</sup> dyce, euery archer for a blank. ¶ And on pe  
 morowe about pryme, pe Kyng comaundit euery man to make hym  
 redy to bataile, and said thes wordes: "Sirres! thenkes this day  
 to quyte youe as men, and feightes for pe righte of Englonde! and,  
 12 in the name of Almyghty God, avaunt baner! and Saynt George,  
 this day thyn helpe!" Then oure men knelit doune al attones,  
 and made a cros on pe grounde, and kissit it, and put hem in pe  
 mercy of God.

16 ¶ The Frenshmen pen come with<sup>3</sup> gret pride ferisly, and oure  
 archers shotte frely; and att last, both pe battailes Ioynet and  
 mette, and sore foughton togedirs. And pe Frenshe men presit so  
 fast and so thikke on oure pepiH, pat they feH on pe stakes pat  
 20 were pighte in the ground, horse and man, so thikke, ich ouer<sup>4</sup>  
 othir, pat gret pepiH of hem were slayne with-out eny stroke. And  
 pe Kyng pat day fuH manfully faughte<sup>5</sup> that same day, his oune  
 handys<sup>6</sup>; so that 1 pece of his croune was broken, which afterward  
 24 was founden and<sup>6</sup> broughte to hyn. and so at last, Almyghty God  
 gaue grace that he had pe victory of hys ennays, for al theire pride,  
 and slowe xij M<sup>t</sup>; of the which, pe lordes and pe states of name,  
 theire names folowen in pis table hereafter:

28	The Bisshope of Sayntis,	The Erle of Brene,
	The Duyke of Brabane,	The Erle of Sannes,
	The Duyk of Barry,	The Erle of Grauntpre,
	The Duyke of Launson,	The Erle of Fallyngberge,
32	The Erle of Douers,	The Lord Dalabret,
	The Erle of Marle,	The Lord Heyle,
	The Erle of Russe,	The Constable of Fraunce,
	The Erle of Almatyne,	The Lord of Dampiere,
36	The Erle of Vandemound,	The Lord of Beaufremound,

<sup>1</sup> and shoutyng *om.* L.

<sup>4</sup> on L. <sup>5-5</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>2</sup> pe *om.* L. <sup>3</sup> in L.

<sup>6</sup> founden and *om.* L.

The Lord of Danssy, <sup>1</sup>	The Lord Colard of Fessenis,	
The Lord Damnery, <sup>2</sup>	The Lord Cheyny,	
The Lord Robert <sup>3</sup> Frere,	The Lord of Beauford,	
The Lord of Ranavile,	The Lord of Branen,	4
The Lord Waryn,	The Lord Raulond of Grotuse,	
The Lord of Kemeram,	The Lord Philipe of Lens,	
The Lord of Bakevyle,	The Lord William Eriche,	
The Lord Senal of Henawe,	The Lord of Saint Clos,	8
The Lord of Mongangies,	<sup>8</sup> The Lord Iohn of Poys, <sup>8</sup>	
<sup>4</sup> The Lord Coursy,	The Lord Iakes of Coriamble,	
The Lord Oudard of Rant,	The Lord of Caunkesy,	
The Lord of Hemes,	<sup>8</sup> The Lord Colard Somanyng, <sup>8</sup>	12
The Lord Symond of FragneH,	The Lord Colard of Frenys, <sup>[col. 2]</sup>	
The Lord of Cramys,	The Lord Gaumot of Burnvile,	
The Lord Robert <sup>5</sup> Monerigny,	The Lord Ronale of Flaundres,	
The Lord of Quemes,	The Lord Bidamue of Lannoys,	16
The Lord Daunchy,	The Lord Iohn of Garonns,	
The Lord Gerard of Herbanes,	The Lord Dacoy,	
The Lord Iohn of Gres,	The Lord Colenchet,	
The Lord of Soile,	The Lord Doo,	20
The Lord Dauphyan,	The Lord Iohn of Beaumont,	
The Lord Mounteney,	The Lord Iohn of Drouy,	
The Lord Burey and his sonne,	<sup>8</sup> The Lord Charles, <sup>8</sup>	
The Lord Reynold Dagincourt,	The Lord Philipe Lynberk <sup>10</sup>	24
The Lord Mayhewe <sup>6</sup> of Humes,	and his sonne,	
The Lord Philipe of Fosseins,	The Lord Iohn of Calkeville,	
The Lord Burian <sup>7</sup> of Rubenpre,	The Lord of Bryoile,	
The Lord of Poys,	The Lord William of Granevile,	28
The Lord Launcelet of Clarre,	The Lord Humers,	
The Lord of Hemede,	The Lord Iohn of Monteney,	
The Lord of Coresques,	The Lord of Harlyn and his	
The Lord of Marquet,	broper,	32
The Lord Robert of Poys,	The Lord Malare of Gurnay,	
<sup>8</sup> The Lord of Noel, <sup>8</sup>	The Lord of Cankers,	
The Lord Robert of Waryn,	<sup>8</sup> The Lord of Houneious of	
The Lord Haucon <sup>9</sup> of Croan,	Poys, <sup>8</sup>	36
The Lord of Eroun and hissonne,	The Lord of Long,	

<sup>1</sup> Anvy L.      <sup>2</sup> Amery L.      <sup>3</sup> lord of L.      <sup>4</sup> leaf 157.<sup>5</sup> lord of L.      <sup>6</sup> Mayhewe *om.* L.      <sup>7</sup> Burian *om.* L.      <sup>8-8</sup> *om.* L.<sup>9</sup> Haucon *om.* L.      <sup>10</sup> Lynberk *om.* L.

	The Lord of Tenys and his	Fort-escu.
	sonne,	Robert of <sup>1</sup> Savage,
	The Castelyn of Lens,	Brian of Geromes,
4	The Baron of Mary,	Iohn of <sup>1</sup> Gardyn,
	The Stuard of Henawde,	Dorn dez Pres,
	The Baily of Dauneus,	Iohn of Sempy,
	Iohn Guryñ,	Pier Bonenfaunt,
8	Damset Dannay,	<sup>2</sup> Burgu of Rony, <sup>2</sup>
	Iohn of Lesele,	Pers of Fossenis.

And many othir moo, as before is saide. And thes were pe names of pe Frenssh lordes pat were take prisoners in pat batail :—  
 12 The Duyk of Orlyauñce, The Duyk of Burboyn, <sup>2</sup>The Erle of Eawe,<sup>2</sup> The Erle of Richemond, The Erle of Vandome, Sir Iohn of Bare, pe <sup>2</sup>Dukes broper of Bare, Sir Bursigaunt,<sup>2</sup> stuard of Fraunce, <sup>2</sup>Sir Iohn de Roche,<sup>2</sup> And many oper<sup>3</sup> moo, to pe nombre  
 16 of viij<sup>c</sup>.

And pes were pe names of pe lordes pat were slayn on oure party :—The good and noble Edward, Duyk of York, in pe raward, The Erle of Suffolk, and oper moo yemen to pe nombre of xxviij<sup>ti</sup>.  
 20 and pis bataile was done pe xxv<sup>ti</sup> day of Octobre, on Saint Crispyn and Crispians day, the yere of oure Lord, M<sup>t</sup> CCCC xv. <sup>2</sup>¶ Of which a versifier makes meneion, and saith “Crispini multos strauit gens anglica Francos.” ¶ Then come tithynges to pe Kyng  
 24 pat a newe bataile of Frenshmen were redy to feight with hym ageyn. Then pe Kyng onon chargit and comaundet euery man sle his prisoner. And when the Frensh men pat sawe, they withdrowe hem, and went their way.<sup>2</sup>

28 ¶ Then come pe Kyng to Caleys with his prisoners, and thankit God of pat gloriose victory, <sup>4</sup>and Saint George, which halpe hym to fighte, and was seyne abouen in pe eyre, pat day they fauzt. And when pe Kynge come to Caleys, he restet hym pere awhile,  
 32 and after shippit, and come into Englonde, and landet at Dovor, and passit so forth to Berehamdoune, where-as mette with hym pe v portes, with x M<sup>t</sup> men clenly harnesshit and arrayet. And pen said pe Duyk of Orlyauñce : “¶ what ! shal we now go ageyne to  
 36 bataile ?” And pe Kyng hym ansuard, and said : “Nay : thes ben childer of my cuntre come to welcome me home.” And there<sup>5</sup> pe

<sup>1</sup> of om. L.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. L.      <sup>3</sup> oper om. L.  
<sup>4</sup> leaf 157, back.      <sup>5</sup> their Ha. there L.

v portes presentit þe Kyng with a shippe, & gold therin. And so rode he forth to Caunterbery, where-as þe procession hym mette with-out þe toun, and hym broght to Cristischirche; and the Kyng offert at Saint Thomas shryne. And from thens he rode to Eltham. 4  
<sup>1</sup>And fro thens he toke his way to London; <sup>1</sup> and on Blakke-Heth mette with hym þe Meyre and the Aldermen, with al the craftes of þe Cite clothet al in rede, to þe nombre of xx<sup>ti</sup> M<sup>t</sup>; and þer they welcomet hym home, and þe Kyng hem thanket. And so rode he 8  
 forth to London <sup>1</sup>on Saint Clement day,<sup>1</sup> where-as he was riolly receyuet with precession, And song “Aue Anglorum flos, mundi miles Christi!” And when he come to London Brigge, where-as were ij turrets on þe draw-brige, and a gret Geaunt, and on þe 12  
 turrets stondyng a lyon and a Antlope, with many anges syngyng “Benedictus qui venit in nomine Domini!” And so rode he forth in-to London; and þe stretes were rially hanget with rich clothes; <sup>1</sup>And in CornhyH was made a rioH toure, full of patri- 16  
 arches syngyng “Cantate Domino canticum nouum! laus laus eius, in ecclesia sanctorum!” and kest down quyk briddes, which flawe thikke about þe Kyng.<sup>1</sup> And when he come into Chepe, þe Condites ranne wyne. And on þe gret condit were xij Apposteles, 20  
 syngyng “Benedic, Anima mea, Domino!” and xij kynges knelyng, castyng doune oblays, and welcomet hym home. And þe eros in Chepe was riolly arrayet like a CasteH, with toures pight full of baners, and per-in Angeles syngyng ‘NoweH, noweH!’ gyvyng 24  
 besandes of gold to þe Kyng. And so rode he forth to Paules, where-as mette hym xiiij<sup>2</sup> bisshopes; and al þe belles ronge agaynes hym; and pere he alight and went to þe hye awter. And there þei song “Te Deum laudamus.” And from thens he rode 28  
 forth to his palice at Westmynster; And after, he rode about in the land on pilgremage, and ordeynt þe holy Chirch pat Saint George day shuld be kept hye and holy: and so was it neuer before pat day. 32

¶ In þe iij<sup>de</sup> yere of þe reyne of Kyng Henry þe v<sup>te</sup>, Segewyn, þe Emperoure of Almayn, come in-to Englonð, and was right wurshiply receyuet at London <sup>1</sup>with þe Meyre, alderme[n] and craftes,<sup>1</sup> and broughte to þe Kynges paleys at Westmynster, where-as 36  
 was þe gret haH assignet to hym, which was ryolly hanget with clopes of gold and of Arras. And euery AngeH in þe haH-rof

<sup>1-1</sup> om. L.<sup>2</sup> xij L.

holdyng a torche in his honde; <sup>1</sup>and iiij anges at pe hye deece.  
 ich holdyng iiij torches.<sup>1</sup> And pe Kyng gave pe Emperoure pe  
 Gartour. And sone aftir, pe Duyke of Holand come in-to Englonð,  
 4 and was loggit in Holborn, and abode a long tyme in pe lond, on  
 pe Kynges cost; and after, they went home. And pe Kyng went  
 with the Emperoure to Caley, where-as was a Counseyle; at  
 which Counseyle was both pe Kyng and pe Emperoure, and *per*  
 8 taried to haue ansuare of pe Frenssh party. And thider come the  
 Duyk of Burgoyne; but he wold not come *per* til Humfrey, Duyk  
 of Gloucestre, lay plegge for hym. And after, the Emperoure  
 went home in-to his cuntre, <sup>1</sup>and many Englishsh men with hym  
 12 made officers, for he trustid hem better pen his oune nacion.<sup>1</sup>  
 ¶ And when pe Kyng had his ansuare of pe Frenssh party, pat  
 liket hym not, he come in-to Englonð ageyn, and ordeynt a gret  
 army.

V.

[*From the Capture of Rouen, 19 Jan. 1419, to the Defeat of the Ghent  
 men at Calais, and the Death of Watkin RUSKIN, A.D. 1436.*]

16 <sup>2</sup>And then pe Kyng entret in-to pe toune of Roane, and hym  
 restit in pe Casteil till pe toune was sette in ruyie and in gouern-  
 aunce; and after pat, was Candebek, and *oper* garisons *per*megh,  
 yolden to pe Kyng <sup>1</sup>vnder the same appoyntement.<sup>1</sup>

20 ¶ Of the treti of pees pat was betwene Kyng Henry of  
 Englonð and Kyng Charles of Fraunce; and of pe mariage  
 of Kyng Henry pe V<sup>te</sup> and Dame Kateryn, pe Kynges  
 doughter of Fraunce; and so pe pees was made<sup>3</sup> and  
 24 fynysshit. [*Big writing, with red underlines.*]

WHEN Kyng Henry of Englonð had goton Roane, as before is  
 said, the Dolfyns enbassatores, as it was accordit before—  
 with full power to do al thynges, as he were pere hymself present,—  
 28 comen to pe Kyng to pe said Cite of Roane; and after many tretise  
 had, thus it was appoyntet: pat a certeyn day sette, pe Dolfyn shuld  
 come to pe toune of<sup>4</sup> Dreux, and Kyng Henry to Aueraunchis, and

<sup>1-1</sup> *om.* L.      <sup>2</sup> *leaf* 158, *back.*      <sup>3</sup> *made* Ha. *was made* L.

<sup>4</sup> *toun* Ha. *toun* of L.

pere chese a mene place betwene both assent, where they myghte pensibly tret of þe pees. Which appoyntement truly to be kept, þe Kyng and the said Ambassatoures sette-to paire scales. at which day þe Kyng come; but þe Dolfyn com not: wherfore þe pees was 4 broke as for that tyme.

¶ In this mene while, Iohn, Duyk of Burgoyne, which had þe ruyle of þe Kyng of Fraunce because of his sekenes, be letteres and ambassatouris sought Kyng Henry grace; and þe Kyng sent 3 Ambassatoures ageyn to Charles, Kyng<sup>1</sup> of Fraunce, and to þe said Duyk, to Province, of which ambassatours þe Erle of Warrewik was chef;<sup>2</sup> and in þe way as he shuld go, lay a gret busschement of Frenshe men, to take hym, and let hym þe way and his purpose; 12 but he slogh and toke the moost party of hem, and come to Province, and purposet his ambassiat. And so was it pere appoyntet and accordit, that Henry of Englonde and Charles of Fraunce, with þe Quene his wif, and þe Duyk of Burgoyne, shuld 16 come to a mene place, & trete of þe pees. And to do þis message, þe Erle of Saint Paule, and þe sonne and heire of þe Duyk of Burgoyne, come to þe Kyng as Ambassatours. ¶ Then Kyng Henry of Englonde, of þe mater be relacion of Ambassatoures of 20 both partyes, appoyntet *with* his ennys that, at a certeyn day, he shulde come to Maunt, and Charles, Kyng of Fraunce, and Iohn, Duyk of Burgoyne, shuld come to Pounteys; and þe mene place of this treti should be Melan sus Sayn; to þe which, *noper* party 24 shuld come with moo þen M<sup>t</sup> v<sup>c</sup> men; and in þe mene tyme truyce shulde be on both parties: which mene place was aftirward arayet betwene ij villages, and lymytit and market betwene ij gret diches, where-in no man shuld come, but onely such as shuld trete. 28 And *per* þe Kynge tentes were riolly pighte and arrerit, and þe Kynge's tentes of Fraunce. And Kyng Henry lete arere ij tentes betwene .ij. diches, where-in both þe Kynge's myght trete apart with theire secret Counsaile,<sup>3</sup> and þe astate of bope Kynge's observet and 32 kept.<sup>3</sup> and a stake was pighte in þe myddes of a faire playn, to þe which, and no ferther, eythir Kyng shuld come to *oper*. And þe day appoyntet,<sup>4</sup> Kyng Henry come to Maunt, And Kyng Charles, because of his acustumet sekenes, came not; but þe Quene his wif, 36 and þe Duke of Burgoyne, with *oper* notable prynces of theire

<sup>1</sup> Ambassatours to the king L.

<sup>2</sup> the king made chef the erle of Warrewik L.

<sup>4</sup> assigned L.

<sup>3-3</sup> om. L.

alliaunce, and with <sup>1</sup> M<sup>t</sup> v<sup>c</sup> men, comen to Pounteys, and aftir, to pe mene place. And Kyng Henry first kisset pe Quene, and pen Dame Kateryn, hir doughter, <sup>2</sup>for at pat tyme pe Kyng sawe hir  
4 first.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Then Kyng Henry, pe Quene and hir doughter, and pe Duyk of Burgoyñ, with oper, went into a tent to trete of pees, where they were almost iij dayes; but it toke non ende <sup>3</sup>at that tyme.

In the menewhile, the Dolfyn, with letters and messagers, 8 sterid the Duyk of Burgoyñ that he, nor non of his, shuld assent to pe pees. And at pe v<sup>te</sup> nonas of August, in pe which pe said Kynges shuld haue semblet, pe Kyng of Fraunce, pe Quene, pe Duyk of Burgoyñ, nor non of hem, come. Wherfor it was  
12 openly knawe that pe Frensh party was cause<sup>4</sup> pat the pees was not endit at that tyme.

Then Kyng Henry went vnto Pounteys, and gat it. And sent Thomas his broper, Duyk of Clarence, with a notable power, to  
16 Parise, and gate it, And retournet ageyn to pe Kyng. And pen pe Kyng went to Bokenh-villers and <sup>5</sup>Gysours, and gate hem.<sup>6</sup> And whiles this was in doying, pe Duyk of Burgeyn, pat first sought pe Kynges grace, went to pe Dolfyn to Motreux, vnder  
20 sav-condit of comyng and goyng, and pere, by pe said Dolfyn, was traytosely and vnnanly slayne, As he knelit before hym, and after, put in-to a pitte, botit and spurret. ¶ And when Philip, his sonze and his heire, perof had knowlege, he sought Kyng Henry grace,  
24 and become his man. ¶ The same tyme, certeyn ambassatours of Kyng Charles and of pe Duyk of Burgoyñ, & of Citizyns of Parise, come to Kyng Henry vnto Maunt, to trete of pees; but because the Kyng was so besily occupiet in his werres, and also he supposet  
28 pat the Frenshmen were not fully enclynet to pe pees as than, pis trety toke non ende at pat tyme,<sup>7</sup> but aftirward at Roan it was fully fynesshit.

¶ Aftirward, whiles Kyng Henry held his Cristenmas in<sup>8</sup>  
32 Roan, the Ambassatours of Kyng Charles and of pe Dukes of Burgoyñ come pidir to hym; to whom Kyng Henry<sup>9</sup> sent ageyn Richard, Erle of Warrewik, with oper wise men, and a notable power of men of armes,<sup>10</sup> wip full power to concluyde the pees;  
36 and aftir many wise tretise had, pees was on both sides concludit, by pe affinite and wedlok of Kyng Henry and Dame Kateryn,

<sup>1</sup> with a L. (Ha has 'M<sup>t</sup>. M<sup>t</sup>.' for 1000.)    <sup>2-2</sup> om. L.    <sup>3</sup> leaf 159.

<sup>4</sup> cause om. L.    <sup>5</sup> Bokenh-villers and om. L.

<sup>6</sup> it L.    <sup>7</sup> at pat tyme om. L.    <sup>8</sup> att L.    <sup>9</sup> pe king L.

<sup>10</sup> of men of armes om. L.

Kyng Charles doughter. But be-cause certeyn thynges were necessary, for þe which þe presence of both þe Kynges most nedis be had, what for setting-to of their seales, what for the mariage sewyng, And also Charles was so feblet for age, and oft tymes was vexit with his sekenes. ¶ Thus it was betwene hem appoyntet, þat Kyng Henry shuld come at a day lymyt, vnder tryce, with suche puysshauce as hym liket, to Nogent vpon Sayn, to perfourn fynally al thyng that to þe pees was nedful; and if he come not, al thyng shuld be had as for noughte. Aftir this appoyntement þus made, þe Erle retournet to þe Kyng, notifying vnto hym in writyng al þe affecte of his enbassiat. ¶ Then þe Kyng from thens went to Nogent; and þer mette with hym 12 Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, with a gret company of men of Armes. Then, after many and diuerse tretise, þe xij<sup>te</sup> kalendes of Iune, þe xli<sup>ti</sup> yere of þe regne of Kyng Charles, in þe CathedraH chirch þer, Kyng Henry, with Thomas, Duyk of Clarence, his broþer, and oper 16 princes and nobles, and IsabeH, Quene of Fraunce, with þe Duyk of Burgoyn beyng þer for Kyng Charles laboryng þen in his forsaid affirmite; and in þeir oune names, and þe iij states of Fraunce, pees betwene þe ij remes of Englonð and of Fraunce was made, 20 and with certeyn condicions approit. And Kyng Charles charget al his legemen, on payn of fforfeture of paire legeaunce, to kepe þe said pees; And þerto pai mad their gret oth, and plight þeir trouthis in þe handes of Kyng Henry. And onon, Quene IsabeH 24 of Fraunce, & Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyn, in þe name of Kyng Charles, swore vppon þe Euangelistes to kepe this pees, þus concludit, for theym, for their heires, & their<sup>1</sup> successours, withouten fraude or male engyne, for euermore. And this same othe 28 made Quene IsabeH, and the Duyk of Burgoyn, and þe iij states of Fraunce, to Kyng Henry, his heires and his successours. And at the ix<sup>te</sup> kalendes of Iune, before Quene IsabeH and Kyng Charles Counsaile in þe parlement, and þe iij states of Fraunce, and oper 32 Englysshe prynces and lordes, contracte of Matermony be present wordes, betwene Kyng Henry and Dame Kateryn, Kyng Charles doughter, there was solemnpnet and made. And as sone as this was enditet in writyng, as it was accordit, Kyng Henry, Kyng Charles, 36 and þe ij Quenes, <sup>2</sup>IsabeH and Kateryn, and þe Duyk of Burgeyn, went to Saynluys and gate it; and fro thens vnto Melon, and beseget þe toune. and þe seege enduret from þe first Idus of Iuyle vnto

<sup>1</sup> their Ha. & for þeyre L.<sup>2</sup> leaf 159, back.



Nouembre aftir. and at that seege, lay with Kyng Henry, James, Kyng of Scottes, as *presoner*. And þei within þe toune suffert gret duresse; but at last, for diffault of vitaille, thei yolde  
4 vp the toune. ¶ Then þe Kynges and þe Quenes, and Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, with theire hostes, went to Parise; and the Citizyns of þe Citee mette with hem in<sup>1</sup> full noble array, and riolly hem receyued. ¶ And at þe viij<sup>te</sup> Idus of Ianuare, Kyng Henry  
8 and Dame Kateryn comen in-to Englonde, and left at Parise Thomas Beaufort, Duyk of Excestre, his vncle, and Thomas, Duyk of Clarence, his brother, Regent of Normaundy. And þe xiiij day of Feueyere, <sup>2</sup>pat feH on þe Sonday,<sup>2</sup> Dame Kateryn was crownet at  
12 Westemynster with gret solempnyte.

¶ And in this while Thomas, Duyk<sup>3</sup> of Clarence, with oper certeyn lordes, made a iournay, and lefte at home þe yomanry, but toke with hym gentels and speris; at which iournay he was  
16 slayn with þe Scottes, and al *pat* come with hym; and þe Erle of Huntynghton was *per* take, and oper moo, <sup>2</sup>and *pat* was gret routh.<sup>2</sup>  
¶ And when tithinges *per*of come to Kyng Henry, he was sorowfull and hevy, and made hym redy to go ouer see; and at  
20 Mydsomer next aftir the coronacion,<sup>4</sup> he went ouer<sup>5</sup> into Fraunce ageyn, <sup>2</sup>and left the Quene in Englonde,<sup>2</sup> and gat certeyn garisons *pat* were rebeH, and besegit þe toune of Meux; at which seege tithynges come to þe Kyng *pat* þe Quene was deliuert of a sonne  
24 at Wyndesore *pat* was clepit Henry. ¶ And whene þe Quene<sup>6</sup> was purifiet, she went ouer into Fraunce to þe Kyng. And after *pat* Meux was yoldon, Kyng Henry went to Parise, making ordynaunce to be-seege þe toune of Cane. And þen a sore and a fervent malady  
28 hym toke, and fro day to day hym vexit til he deyed in þe CasteH of Bois de Vincent, the last day of August, when *pat* he had regnet ix yere, v monithis, iiij. weekes and iiij days; and aftirward he was brought in-to Englonde Riolly, and enterid at Westemynster.

[*The Accession of Henry VI.*]

32 **A**fter the noble<sup>7</sup> victoriose prynce, Kyng Henry the v<sup>th</sup>, regnet his sonne, Henry the vj<sup>te</sup>, <sup>2</sup>that was bore at Wyndesore in the fest of Saint Nycolace the Confessoure,<sup>2</sup> and began to regne in þe age of ix monithes and xv dayes. And to Richard, Erle of

<sup>1</sup> with L.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. L.

<sup>4</sup> the coronacion om. L.

<sup>7</sup> noble & L.

<sup>3</sup> Duyk Ha.      duyk of L.

<sup>5</sup> ouer om. L.

<sup>6</sup> quene Ha.      þe queene L.

Warrewik, was commyttit pe kepyng of hym, for-as-much he was countet and hold pe best-nurtured man of Englonð; and pe Bisshope<sup>1</sup> of Caunterbery and the Bisshope of Wynechester were his godfaders; and pe Duches of Holand was his godmoder; <sup>2</sup>and <sup>4</sup>so forth-with-al he was sette to howsolt. and pat same yere pe Duches of Holand was weddit to Humfrey, Duyk of Gloucestre.<sup>2</sup> and the first yere of his regne, dyet Charles, pe Kyng of Fraunce, <sup>2</sup>att Bois de Vyncent, and was entered at Parise,<sup>2</sup> and pe Quene <sup>8</sup>his wif with<sup>3</sup> <sup>2</sup>hym. And pat same yere was one Sir William Tailoure, prest, brent in Smythfeld for heresy.

¶ And pe second yere of his regne, Sir Roger Mortymer, knyght, brak out of pe Toure of London, be counsaile of certeyn persones <sup>12</sup>of pe same Toure, and was tak ageyn on pe Toure-wharf, and after brought to Westmynster: and pere was he iuged to pe deth, and was draw and hanget at Tiburn, and quartert, and his hed set on London Brigge; and his hert and his bowelles were beryet in <sup>16</sup>pe Grey Freris in London, on the north side of pe church.<sup>2</sup>

¶ **Of the Bataile of VernuH in Perche be Iohn, Duyk of Bedford, and Regent of Fraunce.** [*Big letters, red underlines.*]

In the second yere of pe reyne of Kyng Henry the vj<sup>te</sup> aboue- <sup>20</sup>said, Iohn, Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce, & <sup>4</sup>the Erle of Salisbery; Mountegu,<sup>5</sup> the Erle of ArundeH, the Lord Scales, the Lord Poynynges,<sup>6</sup> with pe nombre of xij M<sup>t</sup> of Englissh men, laid seege to Ivory in Normaundy. And whiles they lay att that <sup>24</sup>seege, the Duyk of Launson gadert a gret host of Frensshmen, and Scottes and lumbardes, pe nombre of liij M<sup>t</sup>, to rescowe Ivory, and to give bataile to pe said Duyke of Bedford. But when they herd that pe Duyk of Bedforde had with hym xij M<sup>t</sup> men, thay <sup>28</sup>lafe Ivory, and come to VernuH in Perche, which was pat tyme in pe handes of Englissh-men, <sup>2</sup>And the Lord Scales therof beyng capteyn, and was att pe said seege of Ivory.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Then pe Frenssh men chargit pe Englissh men to delyuer pe town of VernuH vp to <sup>32</sup>hem, And <sup>7</sup>the said Duyke of Bedford and all his power were overthrawe and slayn before Ivory. And they of the town of VernuH wend it had ben trewe, And gave vp pe toune to pe Frenshmen. And pus<sup>8</sup> by this trayn, VernuH was lost, vnknowyng of <sup>36</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Archbysshop L. <sup>2-2</sup> om. L. <sup>3</sup> also L.

<sup>4</sup> & om. L. <sup>5</sup> Mountegu om. L. <sup>6</sup> the Lord Poynyng om. L.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 160. <sup>8</sup> pus om. L.

the Duyke of Bedford and pe lordes which lay att pe said seege of Ivory<sup>1</sup>; neuerpeles at last it was yolden vp to hem. ¶ Then iij M<sup>t</sup>. men toke theire leve of the Duyk of Bedford and Regent of 4 Fraunce,<sup>2</sup> and departet from thens<sup>3</sup> hom to their garisons. And they were not passet thens xij lekes, but tithynges come to pe Duyk how pe Frensshe had geten VernyH, and were therin. Wherefore he onon, with pe Erle of Salesbery, Mountegu, pe Erle 8 of ArundeH, pe Lord Scalys, and pe Lord Poynynges, with<sup>4</sup> ix M<sup>t</sup> Englisshe men, retournet<sup>5</sup> to VernyH, and toke thair feld a myle from the toune, to gyve the Frensshe men bataile; but pe Frensshe men nor pe Scottes<sup>6</sup> wold not beleve pat the English men 12 wold<sup>7</sup> feight with hem, for they had redy knowlege pat iij M<sup>t</sup> men were gon hom to their garisons, and pey were<sup>8</sup> but ix M<sup>t</sup> men, and they were lij M<sup>t</sup>: notwithstondyng, a day of batail was sett. ¶ Then oure Englisshe men pichet theire stakes; 16 and on pe day of batail when pai shuld feight, they knelit doune and kissit the ground; and þen the Duyke of Bedford bade ‘aunant baner!’ And so they Ioynet to-gedris and faughte; and the Duyk of Bedford faughte pat day manfully with his oune 20 hondis. And whilis they were besy feightyng, the Lumbardes of pe Frensshe host comen behynde the batail of pe Englisshe men, and slowe theire pages, and went away with thaire horses. And on Yong, an Englisshe Capteyn, fledde away with v<sup>c</sup> men in his 24 felissh[ip]e, and told how Englisshe men had lost the feld; which was aftir taken, and was hanget, drawe and quartert, as he was wele wurthy; for God fortunet so, that pe Duyke of Bedford had the vi[c]tory and the felde<sup>9</sup> of his enmyse, and put pe Frensshe 28 men to the flight, and chasit hem to pe toune dikes of VernyH, where-as many of hem were drownet. <sup>10</sup>And when pey retournet agayn to the bataile, thay fand pe Scottes feightyng stiH with pe Erle of Salisbery whiles þei were folowyng pe chase of the Frensshe 32 men. And so then onon pe Scottes were aH discomfit and slayne, pe Englisshe men cryyng “A Clarens, A clarans!” for cause pe Scottes before that tyme [ferede] pe Duyk of Clarans. ¶ And the[s] were pe names of pe lordes, kny3tes and swyers, and men of 36 name of pe Scottes pat were slayne in pat batail: that is to say,

<sup>1</sup> Bedford pat lay before Ivory L.    <sup>2</sup> and Regent of Fraunce *om.* L.  
<sup>3</sup> Ivory L.    <sup>4</sup> Salesbury the lord of Arundel & pe lord Scalys with L.  
<sup>5</sup> went L.    <sup>6</sup> nor pe Scottes *om.* L.    <sup>7</sup> durst L.  
<sup>8</sup> were Ha.    pey were L.    <sup>9</sup> and the felde *om.* L.  
<sup>10</sup> There is a gap in L from here to *batail* on p. 567, l. 15.

The Erle Douglas, þat was att þe bataile of Shrewisbery new made  
Dyke of Turreyn,

The Erle of Bugham,	Sir Gauter Lynnesey,	
James Douglas,	Alexander Hume,	4
The Lord Sauyton,	Adam Dalgleis,	
The Lord Dondas,	Alexandre Stuard,	
Sir William of Seton,	James Lunieston,	[col. 3]
Sir Thomas of Murray,	Robert Serand,	8
Sir Gye Ferard,	Andrewe Murray,	
Sir Iohn Saintelere, [col. 2]	Thomas Grenston,	
Sir Archbald Goumerston	Huchon Candy,	
Sir Gauter Berton,	David Murray.	12

¶ And many oþer Scottes moo of gentilmen, and þe men were  
there slayne that ben not namet here.

¶ And þes ben þe names of þe lordes and men of name of þe  
Frensshe men that were slayne in þat same bataiH before the town 16  
of VemyH in Perche : that is for to say :

The Erle of DaumaH, [col. 1]	Sir Lowis de Trye,	
The Erle Bendtadom,	Sir Charles de Guesines,	
The Erle Romier, [col. 2]	Sir Iohn de Murrak,	20
The Erle DaubinaH,	Sir Gyles Deschavile,	
The Lord Mammy, [col. 3]	Sir Iohn Bonnestable,	
The Lord Gravile,	Sir Giles de Camege,	[col. 2]
The Lord Flenogin,	Sir Boit de Turnbur,	24
<sup>1</sup> The Lord Mountenay,	Sir Tristrem Coiseron,	
The Lord Camelhart,	Sir Charles DesneuaH,	
The Lorde Chageron,	Sir Robert de Layre,	
The Lord Mesilate,	Sir Charles de Bruyne,	28
The Lord Dauterne,	Sir Iohn Poyngaunt,	
The Lord de la Frait,	Sir Peris de Bellay,	
The Lorde de Cathemage,	Sir Peris BottereH	
The Lord de le Forge,	And his brother,	32
The Lord de Bellay,	Sir Fraunceis de Gryngoux,	
The Lord de le Champayn,	Sir Emery de la GrissiH,	
The Lord Gamage,	Sir Prunele Fraunceis,	
The Lord Dassail Raboule,	MarshaH de la Fait,	36
The Vicont of Nerborn,	Peris de Guyssay,	

<sup>1</sup> leaf 160, back.

	Peris de Trussellez,	Heton de Guesmez,
	Robynet de Cleremount,	Geffrey Paillam,
	Lewis de Osternard,	Regnaulton Grenault,
4	Colvile le Vieont, [col. 3]	Godffray de Soubres,
	Druet Desson,	Hewe de Beaussault,
	Geffray de la Gressih,	Le Camus de Frisendy,
	Andrewe Poyngaunt,	Guylliam Remon de la Maiser,
8	Iohn de Tonevile,	Lewis de Bagard,
	Moriard de la Mote,	Peron de Luppe,
	Iohn Frere,	Ion de Puche.
	Iohn de la Famruner,	

12 Thes were þe names of lordes, knyghtes, squiers, and gentilmen  
of name þat were slayn in þe said bataile, of Frensshmen, and  
many oþer moo þat ar not here namet. And the nombre of al þe  
Frensshemen and Scottes that were slayn in þat batail, be<sup>1</sup>  
16 herawdes accompted, xij M<sup>t</sup> v<sup>c</sup> xxx, with<sup>2</sup> hem þat were drounet  
in þe dikes of VernyH. ¶ And thes were the names of hem þat  
were taken prisoners:<sup>3</sup> The Duyke of Launson, Iohn Boutevile,  
Sir Peris Henson, Vidain Lannoye.<sup>4</sup> ¶ And when þis bataile was  
20 don<sup>5</sup> and þe Englissh men had þe victory, they lovid<sup>6</sup> and<sup>7</sup> thanket  
God gretely of his grace, And forthwith went to þe toun of  
VernyH, which was anon<sup>7</sup> deliuerd vpe<sup>8</sup> to hem, and had<sup>9</sup> all þe  
stuff that þe Frensshmen ther-in hade.<sup>9</sup> And þen went þe Duyke  
24 of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce peasably to Roon, thankyng  
God of þat victoriose battaile.

¶ In the iij<sup>de</sup> yere of þe Regne of Kyng Henry þe vj<sup>te</sup>, the  
Prince of Portyngale come in-to Englonð; which was of þe Kyng  
28 and þe<sup>10</sup> lordes wurshiply receyuet. And aftirward, at Saynt  
George Fest att Wyndesore,<sup>11</sup> the said Prince was made<sup>12</sup> Knyght of  
þe Garture. ¶ In the iiij<sup>te</sup> yere of his regne þer fiH a gret discord  
betwene Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucester, and Henry, Bisshope of  
32 Wynchester; wherfore the Comyns of London aros with þe said  
Duyke, which lay þat tyme at his oun place<sup>9</sup> at Baynardes CasteH,  
ageynes þe saide bisshope, which lay þat tyme in his place<sup>9</sup> besides  
saynt Mary-ouerheis in Suthwerk. but the Prince of Portyngale,  
36 beyng that tyme<sup>13</sup> in Englonð, labourt so betwene hem, as God

<sup>1</sup> And in this taile were slayn be L.      <sup>2</sup> with out L.

<sup>3</sup> And there was taken L.      <sup>4</sup> Lannson and many moo gret lordes L.

<sup>5</sup> don Ha. was don L.      <sup>6</sup> lovid and om. L.      <sup>7</sup> anon up L.

<sup>8</sup> vpe om. L.      <sup>9-9</sup> om. L.      <sup>10</sup> of þe L.      <sup>11</sup> att Wyndesore om. L.

<sup>12</sup> made att Wyndesore L.      <sup>13</sup> same tyme L.

wold, to kepe þe pees; wherthurghe þere was non harme done,—thanket be God!—<sup>1</sup> And so were the comyns of London pesite.<sup>1</sup> And þat same yere come Iohn, Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce, in-to Englonð, with þe Duches his wif, <sup>1</sup>þat was the suster 4 of Philipe, Duyke of Burgoyñ; and was fuH rially receuet of þe Maire and of þe Citizins of London.<sup>1</sup>

¶ In the v<sup>te</sup> yere of his regne a parlement was holden att Leycestre; att which parlement the Duyke of Bedford made <sup>2</sup>yong 8 Kyng Henry the Sixt, knyghte; and xxiiij knyghtes were made with hym. And when þe Kyng wes made knyght, he made *with* his oune handes other xxiiij knyghtes. And att þat parlement were made many statutes and ordynaunces, and many newe officers. 12 <sup>1</sup>And in þat same yere there was one William Wawe, an Outlawe, taken out of þe sayntuary of the Abbey of Bewley, and broughte to London to the Kynges-benche, and after, to Westemynster, and was pere dampnet, and had into Southwert, and sette in a cart, and 16 was broughte so thrughe-out London, and so forth to Tyburn, and þer was hanget; And after, his hed smytten of and sette on London Brigge.<sup>1</sup>

¶ In the vj<sup>te</sup> yere of his regne, Herry, Bisshope of Winchester, 20 went ouer see to Caleys, and so forth to Rome, where-as þe Pope hym made CardynaH, and gave to hym þe cros, to be born before hym alway where he went; but it was afterward taken away and laide doun by commaundement of þe Pope, for cause he shulde 24 haue comyn into Praage *with* a certeyn number of men of werre, whiche cunte was out of beleue of Christen faith. but he failet his promyse, and come not there, but changet his purpos for þe wele and þe worshiþe of al the Reame of Englonð, and went into 28 Normaundy *with* a notable meyny of Archers, the best þat couth be geton in eury place of Englonð <sup>1</sup>for ix<sup>d</sup> on þe day, euery archer ij or iij bawes in a eace.<sup>1</sup> And so, by his comyng theder, was sauid aH that lande; and elles þat tyme it shuld haue ben lost. ¶ Then 32 afterward, he come ageyn into Englonð, and was there wurshiply receyvide <sup>1</sup>with the Meire, Aldermen, and craftes of London, and brought so forthe to Westemynster, and lay þer in the Abbottes place within the Abbay.<sup>1</sup> ¶ In the vij<sup>te</sup> yere of his regne þer was 36 a great derth of corne. for a bussheft of whete was at iijs<sup>s</sup> sterling; and aH oper cornes were dere þat yere.

How Kyng Henry the VI<sup>te</sup> was crownet att Westemynster;  
And after, be counseil of his lordis of Engelond, was  
crownet Kyng of Fraunce att Paryse.<sup>1</sup> [*Underlined with red.*]

4 **I**N the viij<sup>te</sup> yere of the regn of the said<sup>2</sup> Kyng Henry the  
vj<sup>te</sup>, he was crownet at Westemynster in Nouembre, on Saynt  
Lethenardes day; and on pe nyghte before, he made xxiiij<sup>ti</sup>  
Knyghtes of the Bath in pe Toure of London, which rode before  
8 hym on the morowe, al in blewe, toward his coronacion, to his  
paleis att Westemynster. Att which coronacion was gret rialte  
seynd; for al pe condites in Chepe ranne both of rede wyn and  
white; and the condite Also in pe palice of Westemynster rann  
12 with rede wyn; take therof, who-so wolde. And pat same yere,  
sone after, he went ouer see into Fraunce with a faire feleshippe of  
dukes, erlis and barons, <sup>3</sup>in the monyth of May, and with the  
nombre of iiij M<sup>t</sup> men,<sup>3</sup> and landet att Caleis, and went so forth be  
16 londe thurgh Pikardy to Roane, where-as he was righte Rially  
recevid and welcomet. ¶ In the ix<sup>te</sup> yere of his regne, the Erle of  
Perch, the Erle of Morteyn, the Lorde Fitz-Hewe, and pe Lork of  
Audelay, shippit att Sandewiche with iiij M<sup>t</sup> men, and landet att  
20 Caleis, and went so forth thurgh Picardy <sup>4</sup>to Roane. And onon  
after, Henry, CardinaH, Bisshope of Wynchester, the Lord Clynton<sup>5</sup>  
and Sir Thomas Donstable, shippit then att Portesmouthe, and  
saillet so to Kittecaux, Harflewe, and to Roane. ¶ And in pe x  
24 yere of his regne he was crownet att Paris, Kyng of Fraunce, <sup>3</sup>on  
oure Lady day pe Conception, in Decembre; where-as was hold as  
riaH a fest as euer was had of eny kyng.<sup>3</sup> And in pat same yere  
was Louers geton, & the <sup>6</sup>walles beton down, and made an open  
28 village, for all maner of pepiH, both Englisshe and Frensshe.

And pat same yere the Kyng come to Caleys out of Fraunce,  
and shippit there, and londet att Dovor, and was wurshiply  
receyuet with the barons of the v portes. And <sup>7</sup>so was he  
32 brought forth vnto London, and receyuet by pe Meire and Alder-  
men, the first day of Marche; and so broughte to Eltham: And  
ich crafte of Londen had his liuerey braudert, that euery crafte  
myght be knowen from othir.<sup>3</sup> ¶ In the xj yere of his regne, the  
36 Duches of Bedford, pat was that tyme clepit Madame Regent, and

<sup>1</sup> kyng of England and after in Parise kyng of Fraunce L.

<sup>2</sup> the said om. L. <sup>3-3</sup> om. L. <sup>4</sup> thurgh Picardy om. L.

<sup>5</sup> the Lord Clynton om. L. <sup>6</sup> leaf 161, back.

<sup>7</sup> And fro thens he com to London L.

suster to the Duyk of Burgoyñ, dyet att Roan; whos deth turnett Englissh men aftirward to much trouble; for al pe whiles *pat* she was on lyue, hir brothir, Duyk of Burgoyñ, was euer holdyng vppon the Englissh party; but sone after *pat* she was ded, his 4 hert was cast elene away from Englissh men, and turnet to pe Freysshe party, and become enmy to Engeland, as ye shaH here aftirward. ¶ In the xij<sup>te</sup> yere of his regne, the Duyk of Bedford and Regent of Fraunce weddit the doughter of the Erle of Saynt 8 Paule, a faire lady.<sup>1</sup> And *pat* same yere fiH a gret discord betwene Sir William OldhaH, Knyghte, Leotenaunt of Caleys vnder pe said Duyke, and sawdiers of Caleys, for askyng of paire wages; where pe said sawdiours were to-gedirs sworn, and kept hym out 12 of the toune, and wold not suffere hym to come with-in, <sup>2</sup> notwithstanding his wiff beyng within the toun.<sup>2</sup> And so went he then to Roan, and compleynet hym to pe Duyk of Bedford, and capteyn of pe said toun,<sup>3</sup> Caleis, and made hym hevy lord toward <sup>4</sup> pe said 16 sawdiours<sup>5</sup>; in so much *pat* he come down out of Normaundy, with his lady pe Duches, the Erle of Saint Pauls doughter, and pe Bisshope of Tirrewyn her vncle, and Sir William OldhaH his leotenaunt, to pe CasteH<sup>6</sup> of Balyngham, a myle from pe toune of 20 Arde. And there he lay vnto<sup>7</sup> Richard Bukkeland, Tresourer of Caleis, and Capteyn of the said CasteH of Balyngham, had entretid pe saudiors of Caleis, and aggreyt with hem, and gyven hem obligacions of customs. And when he had made agrement with 24 hem, the Duyke and Capteyn come in Peasably to Caleis, with his lady the Duches, her vncle, and Sir William OldhaH his leotenaunt, and was<sup>8</sup> rjzt wurchiply recevid of pe burgeis, marchaundes, and sawdiours, <sup>2</sup>and brought to pe CasteH with al the Sawdiours of 28 pe toune.<sup>2</sup>

¶ On pe next morawe after, he sent for pe porters, and for pe keys of al pe gates of the toune, into pe CasteH. And after sent forth sergeauntes, and arestit dyuers Constables and vinteners, and 32 putte some in prison in the CasteH, and some in the MarshaH prison; and made onon also to Arest all the obligacions of Custome that coult be founden in eny Saudiors handes, and toke hem fro hem. ¶ And after, made Richard Veere, *pat* tyme beyng Meire, to 36

<sup>1</sup> a faire lady *om.* L.      <sup>2—2</sup> *om.* L.      <sup>3</sup> toune of L.

<sup>4</sup> to L.      <sup>5</sup> sawdiours of Caleys L.

<sup>6</sup> Normandy with pe said Oldhall to pe CasteH L.

<sup>7</sup> vnto pe [<sup>1</sup> time that] Ha.      vnto L.

<sup>8</sup> with pe said leotenaunt and was L.



gyue Iugement on<sup>1</sup> iiij Soudeoures to be hedyt vnder þe pillery ;  
for the which was made gret mone amonges the pepiH. And after,  
he come to the toune haH hym self, and sate there with þe Maire,  
4 and þe Kynges swerH beyng *per present*, and hade al the saudioures  
of þe tound before hym. And al þat were billet, stode before hym  
vngirH; at which<sup>xx</sup> tyme iiij were banshit, and al their wages  
forfette. And they stode on þe lifte syde ; and al þat abode within  
8 the tound stode on þe right syde ; but a gret part<sup>2</sup> of hem were  
putte out of wages, <sup>3</sup>and lost al that hem was owyng.<sup>3</sup> And when  
al this was done, he went to Roand ageyn with his lady the  
Duches,<sup>4</sup> and had neuer after bodily hele till he dyet.

12 ¶ Of the treti of Arras, and howe the Duyke of Burgoynd  
turnet to the Frenssh party ; and howe he laide Seege  
to Caleis, <sup>3</sup>And howe he withdroughe hym in-to Flaundres  
or þat Ony rescous come, in the nyghte.<sup>3</sup>

16 **I**N the xiiij<sup>the</sup> yere of the regne of Kyng Henry the vj<sup>te</sup>, was the  
grettest froste that was in many a day before ; for it began  
vppon Saynt Kateryn even, and lastit to þe iiij<sup>te</sup> day of Marche, the  
space of xvj wekes. And Temmes þat tyme was so sore frozen,  
20 that the viutage of Burdeux went ouer Shoters HiH : for þe shippis  
with wyne myght come no nerre then Sandewiche. <sup>3</sup>and þat froste  
þat tyme distroyet oisters, and muskelles, and fresshe-water fissh,  
through þe moost party of Englonð.<sup>3</sup> ¶ In þat same yere was þe  
24 treti of Arras betwene the Kyng of Englonð, Henry the vj<sup>te</sup>, And  
Philippe, Duyke of Burgoynd ; and Charles de Valoice, Dolfyn of  
Fraunce, that tyme beyng there in enbasshat for þe Kyng of Englonð,  
Henry, CardynaH of Englonð, Bisshope of Wynchester, Iohn  
28 Kempe, Erchbisshope of York, Iohn, Erle of Huntynghton ; Pole,<sup>5</sup>  
Erle of Suffolk, <sup>3</sup>Prevey Seale, Sir Waulter Hongerford, Sir Iohn  
Poppahm,<sup>3</sup> with a faire feleshipe with hem, to þe number of viij<sup>c</sup>  
men. att which treti, pai wolH the Kyng of Englonð shulH have  
32 putte out þe floure de lice out of his Armes ; and many oþer thynges  
was spoken of ; but to say shortly, þei couth not accord ; wherefore  
they departit thens, and come home ageyn into Englonde. but  
thay of þe tound of Popperyng in Flaundres demenet hem  
36 vngentilly, and entretid hym vnmanerly as he<sup>6</sup> come rydyng

<sup>1</sup> to L. <sup>2</sup> leaf 162.

<sup>3-3</sup> om. L. *Heading in big letters, underlined with red.*

<sup>4</sup> with his lady the Duches om. L. <sup>5</sup> & Paule L. <sup>6</sup> þey L.

thrughe the toun<sup>1</sup> from the saide trefy of Arras<sup>1</sup>; wherfore he<sup>2</sup> was sore amovid and grevid with hem, for they made his men<sup>3</sup> to bere out of tounne peyr horses dong, mawegre their tetter; neuerpeles he<sup>4</sup> suffrit it, and rode on his<sup>5</sup> way; but he<sup>2</sup> quytte hem that foule<sup>4</sup> and gret dispite, as ye shaH here afterwarde.

¶ Then, as sone as thenbassetoures were departet from Arras, and home,<sup>6</sup> the Dolfyn and the Duyke of Burgoyne were accordet, and made att one<sup>7</sup> for deth of the Duyk of Burgoyne's fader, pat was slayn att Muttereux by pe same Dolfyn; and perwith endit aH that trefy.<sup>7</sup> And then onon after, pe Duyk tok in-to his handes Abvyale and Amyas, and oper tounes and Castelles; and after, by a kyng of heroudes, he sent the Kynges lyneray to Caleis, [and, by]<sup>8</sup> the<sup>12</sup> counsail of his lordes and hem of Flaundres, he made<sup>9</sup> redy his ordynaunce and his pepiH,<sup>10</sup> to come and lay seege to Caleis. And pe Flemmynges were pen so proude and hawteyn pat they sette by none Englysshe men, but hem had in gret despite, thrughe-out aH<sup>16</sup> Flaundres. And grete noice pere was of comyng of pe seege; neuerpeles Marchaundes yette went al this while into Flaundres to and fro, but thai had eviH chere in al plases. And they of Brigges made payntet clothes, howe<sup>11</sup> pe Flemmynges were att seege att<sup>20</sup> Caleis, and howe pai wanne pe tounne; and hanget out Englysshe men by the helis out at lopes: and weH was hym pat myght by of pes clothes! And pai made entirledes and plaies in Brigges, of pe CardynaH of Wynchester And of the Dolfyn, of thaire purposyng<sup>24</sup> and Ansuaryng att the trefy of Arras, And aH in dispite and hoker<sup>12</sup> of Englysshe men; thei were so glad and fayn pat they shuld lay seege to Caleis, and wyne the wulles of pe staple of Caleis,<sup>13</sup> and to departe it amonges hem; And bostet and said pat<sup>28</sup> pe steewan Caleis was but a<sup>14</sup> male tyde, pat is to say, A mele tyde; And mony othir scornfulH wordes thai had that tyme Amonges hem. And that same yere, in pe heryng tyme, pere come iij C botes out of Normandy to Caleis on fisshyng fare, as they were wont ich<sup>32</sup> yere; and every bote had in xvj<sup>15</sup> men. and they come as fisshers, and in fisshers clothyng; but a gret part of hem were men of werre, and had east to haue geton pe tounne. but att last, as God wolde, the[y] were aspriet by their fyne smale shirtes and by<sup>36</sup>

<sup>1</sup> of Arras *om.* L.      <sup>2</sup> pey L.      <sup>3</sup> made an englysshe yemen L.

<sup>4</sup> they L.      <sup>5</sup> peir L.      <sup>6</sup> and hom *om.* L.      <sup>7-7</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>8</sup> Sir so Ha.      <sup>9</sup> and made L.      <sup>10</sup> and his pepiH *om.* L.      <sup>11</sup> who L.

<sup>12</sup> and hoker *om.* L.      <sup>13</sup> of Caleis *om.* L.      <sup>14</sup> *leaf* 162, *back*.

<sup>15</sup> xv L.

their poyntes; wherfore Richard Woodvile, Squyer, leotenaunt of  
 pe said toun of Caleis vnder the Duyke of Bedford,<sup>1</sup> charget euery  
 souldioure to bere his staff in his hand, as wele in pe cherche and  
 4 att sacryng tyme as in pe market, and not to leue stonldyng att pe  
 chirch durre, as they were wont to do; and so thaie bare thaire  
 stavis in peire handes in pe chirch, and ouer al. Then the Frensshe  
 men vnderstood wele pat they were aspriet, and sawe wele pey<sup>2</sup>  
 8 couth not brynge theire entent<sup>3</sup> nor purpos about: And wenth  
 their way out of Caleis lauen in a tide, and went streight to pe  
 toune of Deepe, and come in pere as flisschers, and so gate pe toun.  
 And in pat same yere dyet the Duyke of Bedford in Roan,<sup>4</sup> on  
 12 Holy-Rode even in May, which had layn longe seeke; for whos  
 deth was made muche mone amonges Englysshe men that were pat  
 tyme in Normauudy; for as long as he leuit, he was doutet and  
 drek amonges the Frenssh men.

16 ¶ In the xiiij yere of the<sup>5</sup> regn of pe said Henry the vj<sup>te</sup>, Hum-  
 frey, Duyke of Gloucester, Protectour and Deffendour of Englonk,  
 was made Capteyn of Caleis; and he was Capteyn of Guysnes before  
 that tyme; and so he was both Capteyn of Caleis and of Guysnes.<sup>4</sup>  
 20 And he made Sir Iohn Radcliffe his Leotenaunt of Caleis,<sup>6</sup> and  
 sent hym thedir<sup>7</sup>; which was a wurshipful knyzt, and was wel-  
 belouet amonges pe sawdiours there: for he kept and helde A gud  
 and open housok to who pat wolde come, and welcome.<sup>4</sup> ¶ Then  
 24 come tithynges ich day more and more of pe seege comyng to Caleis.  
 Then Sir Iohn Radecliff, pe Leotenaunt of pe toune, Robert  
 Clidrowe pe Meyre, and Thomas Thirland, Leotenaunt of pe staple  
 of Caleis,<sup>6</sup> with pe sawdioures, marchaundes, and burgeses and  
 28 comyners, kest vp a faire brode dike on pe south side of the toune,  
 and made iij stronge bulwerkes of erthe and cley, one att pe  
 corner of pe CasteH with-out pe toun, anoper att Bulleyn gate, and  
 anoper att pe postern be pe Princes Inne; And att Mylke gate was  
 32 a faire bulwerk made of breke, pat Richard Woodvile had do make  
 or he was discharget of his leotenauntshippe. And pai fortifiet pe  
 walles, toures, and dikes on ich a side of the toune, with-in and with-  
 out, And dresset theire lopes and theire gunnes to shote both hye  
 36 and lawe. And the vj CasteH in the Marche; pere pat Englysshe  
 men were in hem, fortifiet as strongly as they couthe, that is to say,

<sup>1</sup> vnder the Duyke of Bedford *om.* L. <sup>2</sup> pou Ha. pat pey L.

<sup>3</sup> not brynge theire entent *om.* L. <sup>4</sup> *om.* L. <sup>5</sup> of Ha. of pe L.

<sup>6</sup> of Caleis *om.* L. <sup>7</sup> to Caleis L.

the CasteH of Guysnes, the CasteH of Balyngham, the CasteH of Hammes, the CasteH of Sandgat, the CasteH of Marke, and the CasteH of Oye. And Sir Iohn Radcliff, Leotenant, warnet and charget al pe cuntre pat was of pe Englysshe pale, [pat pey] shuld<sup>4</sup> come and bring a[1] thaire goodes, and breke downe their houses; and so, many of hem did, and many of hem stale away, some into Picardy and some into Flaundres. And pere<sup>1</sup> was a cry made in pe market-place<sup>2</sup> of Caleis, pat al maner of men beyng in Caleis, or<sup>8</sup> lyvyn vnder biH vnsword, pat they shuld come to pe toune-haH, and<sup>3</sup> there to be sworn the Kynges trewe leege men; And pai that wold not be sworn, to take peire goodes and go their way where pay wold. And so pere come many, and were there sworn; and many<sup>12</sup> went their way into Flaundres, and wold not be sworn. ¶ And on Saynt George day, Sir Iohn Radcliff sent word prevely to pe Daywach of pe toune in pe nonetyme to ryng<sup>4</sup> out the laron beH, vnwetyng to the sawdioures of pe<sup>5</sup> toune. And so per was a grete<sup>16</sup> Alaron, and saudioures were onow in thaire harneys, and comyners with hem, And wende pat enmys hade comen to haue fechet the bestys pat were pasteryng about the toun; but pere was now; for Sir Iohn Radclif did it for a sport, because it was Saint George<sup>20</sup> day; And for pat he wolde se howe saudioures wold bokkeH and dresse hem to peire harneys.

¶ And sone afterward, Edmond, Erle of Morteyn, and the Lord Camys, Sir William of Asshton, knyghte,<sup>6</sup> And Sir Geffrey<sup>24</sup> Werburton, knyghte,<sup>6</sup> shuld haue shippit att Wynchilsey to haue gon into Fraunce with the nomber of iij M<sup>t</sup> men of speres and Archers; but because there was so gret a noys of pe seege comynge to Caleis, pei<sup>7</sup> were confirmandit be pe Kyng<sup>6</sup> and pe Duyke of<sup>28</sup> Gloucestre<sup>6</sup> to go thider, and strenghe pe toun til rescous myght be had. And so went pe Erle with his Armee to Caleis. ¶ Then Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucestre, Protectoure and Deffendoure of Englonde, and Capteyn<sup>6</sup> of Caleis and of Guysnes,<sup>6</sup> send for al pe<sup>32</sup> lordes of the Reame, both spiri<sup>t</sup>ueH and tempereH, and for al his feeble men, and desired of hem an eyde for pe rescowe of pe saide toune of Caleis. And pe lordes temperaH hym graunted to go with hym hem-self in *propur* person, and fynde a certeyn meyny with<sup>36</sup> hem vppon peire owne cost; And bisshoppis, Abottes and priours also graunted to fynde a certeyn meyny to go with hym; And al

<sup>1</sup> And sone aftir there L.    <sup>2</sup> place *om.* L.    <sup>3</sup> and *om.* L.

<sup>4</sup> leaf 163.    <sup>5</sup> of Ha. of pe L.    <sup>6-6</sup> *om.* L.    <sup>7</sup> that pei Ha. pei L.

his feede men) hym) graunted eke to go with hym) ; And he thonket  
aH. And then was it criet in al pe port tounes and haven) tounes  
in Englonde, pat al maner shippis pat were able to saile be pe see<sup>1</sup>  
4 shuld come into<sup>2</sup> Sandewich haven) be a certeyn day ; and so thei  
were pe number of ij<sup>c</sup><sup>3</sup> sailes and moo. ¶ Philipe, Duyke of  
Burgoyne, made hym) redy, and the Flemmynges, al this while, and  
toke dyuerse marchaundes prisoners, as they come homward) out of  
8 Flaundres to Caleis, and specially they of Dunkirke.<sup>4</sup> And when  
pe Erle of Morteyn was comyn) with his Armees to Caleis, as before  
is saide, he made a iourney of Bulleyn), xx<sup>ti</sup> myle from) Caleis, and  
brent the subbarbes of pe toune, and come to Caleis ageyn) on pe  
12 next day after, vnfoghten) with, and broughte with hem) paire pray .  
of bestes and theire pillage. And onow) after, he made anothir  
iourney in-to West Flaundres, to a place clepit pe Lawe. And  
whiles they ryfelt and spoilet that cuntre, and praiet in cateH, al  
16 pat cuntre gedert, and come doune to Gravenyng, to mete with hym  
there. And when) pe Erle and his meyny come dryvyn) theire  
pray of bestes before hem), on pe sandes betwene pe toune of  
Gravenyng and pe see, thay issuet out of pe toune prudly, and  
20 faught with hym) ; but pai were sone discomfit, & slayn) of hem) iiij<sup>c</sup>  
and moo : then thai flede in-to pe toun), and pe Englyshe men) hem)  
feloet, and toke many prisoners. <sup>4</sup> And per was an Englysshe man),  
a gentiH man), and a spere on) horsebake, folowet pe chase of hem)  
24 right to pe hard) gates of pe toun), so nere that his hors bare hym)  
into pe toun) of Gravenyng, wheder he wold) or no ; which after  
ward was delyuert be raunson).<sup>4</sup> ¶ The Erle pen, with his pepiH,  
drove oner pe havon) of Gravenyng thaire pray of bestes, att lowe  
28 water, in spite of al pe Flemmynges, and brought hem) with al  
thaire prisoners to Caleis, and lost neuer a man ; thonket be God !  
and <sup>4</sup> pai brought so gret plente of Cowes with hem), pat a man  
myght hane pe best melche ewe pat was, for xij<sup>d</sup> sterlyng.<sup>4</sup> ¶ And  
32 when pe Kyng and pe lordes had) tithynges of pis iourney of  
Gravenyng, the Kyng sent to pe saide Erle of Morteyn) to Caleis,  
the Gartur. And onow) afftirward, the Lord Camys, Sire William  
Asshton), And Sir Geffrey Weckton), with pe garnyson) of Caleis and  
36 of Guysnes, made pe iij<sup>de</sup> iournay, both of horsemen) and <sup>5</sup>footemen,  
and rode before the toune of Arde, and ryfelt aH the cuntre about  
pe said toun). And in the mene while, Sire Robert Savoys, Capteyn)

<sup>1</sup> be pe see *om.* L.

<sup>2</sup> and in Ha. into L.

<sup>3</sup> ij<sup>c</sup> L.

<sup>4-4</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>5</sup> leaf 163, back.

of Fynes, had gedirt of Pykardes to pe nombre of iiij M<sup>t</sup> speris on horsbake, And laide hem pryvely in Campe Grove besides the CasteH of Balyngham. And when pe Lord Camoys with his peple was comyng homward in the feldes be-syde the said grove, 4 the[i] stert iij hares. and perwith pay gave a gret showte; And so both horsemen and footemen, with hantying of hem, were stragelt abrode ouer aH pe feldys, and were al out of array, and wist nothyng of pe Pikardes pat lay in pe grove besides hem, but ever 8 stiH showtet and huntet after pe hares, which were att last slayn amonges hem. ¶ And as pay were so stragelt and out of Array, the Pikardes sodeynly brake out of pe Grove, and rode thughe oure meyny, in and out agayn, and smote down many fotemen. 12 and pen, many of oure horsemen, seying this, fledde to pe CasteH of Balyngham; but the Lord Camoys and pes ij knyghtes kept pe feld; And as God wold, the fote-mene relevid ageyn to pe standart, And, pe horse-men also, And sett frely on pe Pikardes, and hem 16 discomfyt, and slowe many of hem, and drof hem to the gates of Arde, <sup>1</sup> where-as one Lucas, a squyer, folowet hens within theire barreers, and was slayn; for whome was made much mone.<sup>1</sup> And pus,—thonket be God!—pe Lord Camoys had pe victory of his 20 ennys, <sup>1</sup> pe Pikardes, in a feld callet pe Golden Dale, beside pe CasteH of Balyngham,<sup>1</sup> And come to Caleys, with peir pray.

¶ Onon after, the Duke of Burgoyne, Phelipe, was redy, and come doune to Gravenyng with his ordynauce, and Flemmynges, 24 pe nombre of an CL M<sup>t</sup>. and xij M<sup>t</sup> cartes; and <sup>1</sup> ich cart had his cokke to crawe amonges the host.<sup>1</sup> ¶ Then pai made a brigge ouer pe water of Gravenyng, <sup>1</sup> into a place callet pe Hoke, pat was partenyng to pe saide Duyke.<sup>1</sup> And so come pey ouer, and shewet 28 hem before pe CasteH of Oye, and sent to Nicolas Horton, squier, and Capteyn of pe same CasteH, an heraude, charyng hym to delyuer vp pe CasteH. And he sent hym worde agayn, and said he toke hym non to kepe; nor non he wold delyuer: Neuerpeles, 32 afterward, by a fals trefy, pai had hym out of pe CasteH to come speke with pe Duyk. And in pe mene while pe CasteH was wouned by a grate of Iron, pat was lafte open in pe buttry, where-as a gune lay whiles pe sauldiers were in pe haH aboven, 36 trefyng of a poyntement with an heraud of pe said Duykes; And sodeynly pe Flemmynges come in, and toke hem in pe haH, and

hanget lvi on þe gallows vnder þe CasteH,<sup>1</sup> without eny pite, And  
 slowe al þe remenant, except Nicolas Horton, Capiteyn of þe said  
 CasteH, and one William Bullion,<sup>2</sup> Constable, And William  
 4 Bullion, his cosyn<sup>2</sup>: thes iij<sup>3</sup> were prisoners, but<sup>2</sup> Nicolas Horton  
 þe Capteyn was long afterward<sup>4</sup> raunsonet, and come home in-to  
 Englonde; And þe Constable dyet in prison for sorowe; And his  
 cosyn William<sup>2</sup> Bullyon<sup>5</sup> was so beknowe and welebelouet with þe  
 8 Pikardes, þat thay gave hym his raunson, and lete hym go where  
 he wold, so þat he shuld go to Caleys, and espy when þe Duyk of  
 Gloucester shuld come ouer with his Navey from Sandewich, And  
 sende hem worde. ¶ When this William Bullyon come to Caleis,  
 12 þe pepiH had gret mervaille þat he was letton go without paying of  
 eny rownson; wherfore Edmond, Erle of Morteyn, made to arest  
 hym, and put hym in prison, and bare hym on hond þat he was a  
 spy. And þer<sup>6</sup> he knowlegit þat he promyset hem to give hem  
 16 warnyng of þe comyng of þe Duyk of Gloucester, because of his  
 deliuerance, but he sware he thoughte neuer to haue warnet hem;  
 neuertheles, for þat he was broughte vnder þe pillery in þe market  
 of Caleis, and there his heft was gird of: for whome muche mone  
 20 was made, for he was a gud Archer.

¶ When þe Flemmynges had þus wonnen þe CasteH of Oye be  
 a trayne, as before is said, <sup>2</sup> which was on Saynt Petirs even in  
 Iuyn, <sup>2</sup> thai brake vp al þe lede of the halle and of þe toures, and  
 24 brent vp euery stykke; And after, vndermynet þe walles and <sup>7</sup> þe  
 toures, and sette shores vndermeth, And after, sette þe same shores  
 on fyre, and brent hem, and so lete þe walles and toures<sup>8</sup> faH  
 doune<sup>9</sup> into þe dikes. ¶ Then, þe second day of Iuyle, the  
 28 Flemmynges laide seege to þe CasteH of Mark, þat was next þe  
 CasteH of Oye; but þe Erle of Morteyn had sent thider before,  
 Christofer of Barton, squyer, with a certeyn felesshipe with hym,  
 to helpe<sup>10</sup> to strenghe þe CasteH. ¶ The Flemmynges laid peire  
 32 gommes to þe walles, <sup>2</sup> & beete down þe vawmures and þe walles,<sup>2</sup>  
 and gave þe Englysshe men with-in many stronge assawtes; and  
 they manfully hem diffendit, and beet hem of, and fortifiet þe  
 walles ageyn with tymbre and donge, & with such thyng as they  
 36 had within hem, And kept it be strenghe vj dais. And when pay  
 sawe þai couth haue no rescowe, thay gave it ouer, and yolde hem-

<sup>1</sup> vnder þe CasteH *om.* L.      <sup>2-2</sup> *om.* L.      <sup>3</sup> ij L.

<sup>4</sup> afterward was Ha.      <sup>5</sup> þis Bullion L.      <sup>6</sup> þei Ha.      *per* L.

<sup>7</sup> leaf 164.      <sup>8</sup> toures & walles L.      <sup>9</sup> doune *om.* L.

<sup>10</sup> to helpe *om.* L.

self prisoners. ¶ Then þe Flemmynges spoilet þe CasteH, and brake of al þe lede, and brent it, and vndermynet þe walles and toures<sup>1</sup>, <sup>2</sup>and sette shores þer-vnder; and after brent hem, and lete þe walles and toures faH into þe dike, as þai hade done þe CasteH 4 of Oye.<sup>2</sup> ¶ Then, þe ix<sup>te</sup> day of Inyle, In þe yere of oure Lord-Ihesu Crist M<sup>t</sup> iiiij<sup>c</sup> xxxvj, Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, with þe Flemmynges, come to Caleis, and laid seege þerto be land, and pight his tentis<sup>3</sup> before þe toune, on þe playne of Saint Peters, a 8 myle nere out of þe toune. And þe Duyk hym-self lay a litiH from Newname brigge, And þai of Gaunt beside hym, And þey of Brugges, with þe comyntee of Flaundres, lay besides Saynt Peters Chirche. but the Duyke lay not þere but ij days, but þat he 12 remeveH from thens, and al þe Gaunteners with hym, to þe Est ende of þe toune, And þere he pichet his tentes; for he wold ly no lenger att þe west ende of þe toune, for cause a gune shotte through his tent. And then þei of Gaunt onon made a strong bulwerk on an 16 high hiH of þe downe, of pipis & tymber, betweene paire loggynges and þe toune, and shott gunnes in-to þe toune; and many tymes þai shot al ouer þe toune; but al þeire gunshot did neuer harm, thanket be God <sup>2</sup>and þe Holy Virgyn Saint Barbara!<sup>2</sup> ¶ In þe mene 20 whiles, whil þe Duyke lay att seege at Caleis, with þe Flemmynges,<sup>4</sup> Sir Robert Savoie, knyght,<sup>5</sup> with iiiij M<sup>t</sup> Picardes, come before þe CasteH of Balyngham. And one Richard Sellyng, beyng þerof leotenaunt vnder Richard Bokelond, Squier, and Capteyn of þe 24 same CasteH; which Richard Sellyng gave ouer þat<sup>6</sup> CasteH shamefully, without eny stroke, vppon apoyntement to go to þe Castell of Guysnes in thaire doublettes; and so thai did; and lasse al theire goodes, and þe stuff of þe CasteH behynde hem, which was 28 þe<sup>7</sup> best-stuffet place in al þoo marches.

And when Richard Sellyng come þus to Guysnes with his feleshippe, William Picton, Leotenaunt of Guysnes <sup>2</sup>vnder Humfrey, Duyke of Gloucester,<sup>2</sup> putte hym in prison in þe said CasteH 32 of Guysnes. And when þe Picardes had þis CasteH, þe[i] spoilet it, and brake of þe lede, and brant al þe place, and vndermynet þe walles<sup>8</sup> and toures, and lete hem faH in þe dike, as the Flemmynges hade done with þe Castelles of Oye and Mark. ¶ Then þe Picardes 36 come before þe CasteH of Guysnes, and laide seege þerto, and

<sup>1</sup> toures so þat al þe Castel fell to þe grounde L.      <sup>2-2</sup> om. L.

<sup>3</sup> tentis L. om. Ha.      <sup>4</sup> with þe Flemmynges om. L.      <sup>5</sup> knyght om. L.

<sup>6</sup> þe same L.      <sup>7</sup> þe be Ha.      þe L.      <sup>8</sup> places L.



broughte with hem a gret brasen gune of Dogeon),<sup>1</sup> with iij chambers, and ij othir grete gunnes of Iron callet bumbardes; and paye laide þe brasen gune in A seller of þe toune of Guysnes, on þe  
4 dikeside of þe CasteH, and shotte att a warl next a toure callet þe Faanetoure, and brake it doune in-to þe dike. but William Picton, Leotenaunt of þe CasteH, with his felesshipe with-in, fuH manfully and discretely hym gidet, and it fortifiet ageyn with tymber and  
8 dong. ¶ And in this while, anoper meyny of Picardes come before þe CasteH of Sandgate, and bade hem deliuer vp þe CasteH; for pai said aH oper Castelles were gyven ouer. Wherefore Sir Thomas Knevet, [that] was sent thidir with A crewe, and made perof  
12 leotenaunt be þe Kyng,<sup>2</sup> Wist not what for to do; And so,<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>by<sup>4</sup> þe counsaile of one Sir Thomas Heneley, Preest, A traitour, he gave vp þe CasteH of Sandgate, shamefully and cowardly, with-oute eny stroke, and hyn self and all pat were with-in þe CasteH, prisoners,  
16 except þe fals preest, which was letton go where he wold; but<sup>5</sup> he went vp into Fraunce, and neuer man wist after where pat he become. ¶ And when pai had þe CasteH, pai brake doun þe lede, and sette fyre on al þe place, and vndermynet þe walles; but þe  
20 Dongeon was so strong, pay couth not vndermyne it, but brake it a litiH abouen; and so pey lefte it, and lete it stande.

¶ Philipe, Duyk of Burgoyne, lay stiH all this while, with his host of Flemmynges, before Caleis; and þei of þe toune had letten  
24 in þe see, and drownet al þe cuntre about hem. And ich day pai of þe toune and þe Flemmynges skarmysshed to-gedirs. And when pai had leyne per xiiij daies, þe Duyke lete ordeyne .xx. shippis out of Flaundres, wherof vj old shippes were lade with hard ston,  
28 chalke, and brekes masont in hem with morter, to droune hem in þe haven of Caleis, pat no shippis shuld come per-in. And when it was fuH see, about noone, þey bulgit hem, some in þe haven-mouthe, and some be-sides the haven, to no purpos; for þei durst  
32 not tary, nor þei had no gret leysere to droun hem, for fere of gun-shotte; And so þei went peire way ageyn; and on þe next day after, at lawe water, wel was hyn of þe toun pat myght bring an Ax to breke þe shippis; and so pai did, al to peces, and broughte  
36 hem in-to toune, and refresshið wele þe pouer pepil; and al þe brekstones were gyven to Saynt Mary Chirch; <sup>2</sup>and so were pai al cariet in-to toun.<sup>2</sup> And whilis þis was in doying .I. thowsand

<sup>1</sup> of Dogeon) *om.* L.

<sup>2-2</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 154, *back.*

<sup>4</sup> but be L.

<sup>5</sup> and L.

Flemmynges stoden on þe downes and beheld it, and were full sory in þeire hertes, and were full gretely þerwith<sup>1</sup> abasshit; for þai had wend þer shuld no shippis haue comen in þe haven afterward. ¶ Sone after þat, it fel þat they of Brugges that lay at Saint 4 Petirs, come from þeire tentes down to Bulleyngate ward, some with pavis, and some with crossebawes, a grete meyny stragelynge. And þei of þe toune ordeynt speres on horsebakke prevely in Bulleyngat bulwerk, so þat they were not seyn; and sent out 8 certeyn fotemen to scarmysshe with hem, til þey sawe theyre tyme to breke out on hem. And when þe horsemen sawe þaire tyme, þei sodenly prikket to hem; and þen þe Flemmynges fledde to þe tentes; but or þai couth come there, þai were ouerthrawn, and 12 brought in-to þe toune, xxxvj<sup>ti</sup> of hem prisoners; and þe host with-in þe tentes fled out at þe est side,<sup>2</sup> and wend al þe worlde had comyn on hem: And þis was on a Thursday; wherfore þe Flemmynges it clepit the 'Quade Thursdagh.' ¶ When þis Iourney 16 wes done vppon hem þat were of Brugges,<sup>3</sup> and of þe comynthe of Flaundes,<sup>3</sup> the Gaunteners þat lay with þe Duyke at þe est ende of þe toune, loghe hem to scorn; for þe which fiH<sup>4</sup> a gret debate amonges hem, and faught with-in hem-self, so þat noþer party 20 come to othir after þat tyme. ¶ And on þe Setirday sevenmyght, & ij daies afterward, they of þe toune of Caleis, with certeyn horsemen & fotemen, Issuyt out sodenly on þe afternoone, and went streight to theire bullewerk on the hye hiH in þe downes, and man- 24 fully it wanne and toke, and slowe al þat ever were in hit, and brake doune þe bullewerk, and went hanward with þeir prisoners; but þe Erle of Morteyn mette hem without þe toune, and made to sle al þe prisoners, for cause of one Watkyn Ruskyn, a gentiH man 28 and a gud spere, was slayn at þe wynnyng of þe same bullewerk. And when þis bullewerk was þus wonne vppon hem of Gaunt, they of Brugges were glad, and logh hem of Gaunt to scorn.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> þerwith full gretly L.    <sup>2</sup> ende L.    <sup>3-3</sup> om. L.    <sup>4</sup> fell L.

<sup>5</sup> Gaunt Ha (*last word of the incomplete MS.*).    Gaunt to scorn L.

[I]

[*Lambeth MS. 6, col. 2.*]

[*The Siege of Calais abandoned. The Englishmen's Mocking  
Song against the Flemings.*]

<sup>1</sup>And þis Seturday at night, the Lord Welles was sent ouer to  
Caleis by the Duyk of Gloucestre with a certeyn meyny, to  
strength the toun till he come with his nauey; And he landed  
4 behynd þe toure of Ryesbank. And his peple made so gret noice  
in þe londyng, that þe Duk of Burgoyne & they of Gaunt, which  
lay at þe Est ende of the town, wend the Duk of Gloucester had  
londid with his nauey þat sam nyght; wherfore þe Duk & they of  
8 Gaunt brake vp þeire tentes sodeynly & priuely, & went ouer  
Grauenyng watir þat same nyght, and lasse behynd hem much of  
þeire vitaille & of þeir ordynaunce; and gunnes were founden  
beried vnder þe erthe. And thay of Brugges, þat lay at Saynt  
12 Petirs with þe comynte of Flaundres, knewe no-þyng of their  
goyng til þe Sondag in the mornyng aftir; on which Sondag, at  
the releuyng, iiij. Englissh trumpettes blewe vp on hye vpon  
Milkgate toure, as <sup>2</sup>they were wont to do euery day at þe relenyng  
16 of the wach duryng the seege. And then they aspyed þat aH þe  
Gaunteners were gon; but þey at Saynt Petirs lay stiH. but as  
sone as they sawe þat the Duyk, þeire lord, & they of Gaunt, were  
gon, þey brake doune þeire tentes, & sette þeire loggynges on fyre,  
20 and fled þeir way in aH that euer þey myght, and last behynd hem  
much of þeir vitailles for hast. And they of the towne wold haue  
folowed aftir; but þe Lord Welles had brought a priuey seal from  
þe King, charyng, on payn of their lyues, the[y] shuld not passe  
24 gunneshotte without toun til þe Duyk of Gloucestre come with his  
power; And ne had þat ben, there had ben gret good geton þat  
tyme.

¶ AH þis while þe Pycardes lay at seege at Guysnes, and had  
28 smytte doune þe ward next þe Faane toure, with þe gret brasen  
gunne, as before is said. And when they of the CasteH sawe þe

<sup>1</sup> leaf 255, back.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 256.

Flemmynges sette þeire loggynges on fyre, thay made to ryng the  
 larome beH in al that þey myȝt. Wherefore the Pycardes were sore  
 abasshid, and wend the Duke of Gloucestre had ben landed *with*  
 his power, & wes comyng to rescowe the Castel, And anon <sup>1</sup>brake 4  
 þe seege, and carted þeire ordynaunce, & fled in al that euer þey  
 myȝt. And they of þe Castel yssued out, both on horsebak & on  
 foote, aftir hem, and ouertoke the gret brasen gunne carted, & two  
 opir gret bombardes of yron; but the iij. chambres of þe brasen 8  
 gunne were scaped from hem with þe hoost. Then they of Guysnes  
 hewed in sonder the cartwheles, and aftir, *with* strenght of men &  
 horses, they wer brought into þe said Castel of Guysnes; & aftir  
 they were brought in-to the toune of Caleis. ¶ And on this wise, 12  
 Phelip, Duk of Burgoyne, & the Flemmynges, departid from Caleis,  
 and þe Pycardes from þe Castel of Guysnes, *with* gret shame & gret  
 diswurship, & *with* gret losse. Wherefore amonges Englisshmen  
 were made many rymes of þe Flemmynges; among the which, one 16  
 is here sette for a remembraunce, that saith on this wise:—

**W**Hen þe Flemmyng wer fressh, florisshid in your flouris,  
 And had we[l]th at your will, ye wolde be conquerouris  
 Of Caleis, þat litill toune: as it come in your mynde; 20  
 But ye, to conquere Caleis, it comeþ you not of kynde.

<sup>2</sup>Remembres on þat wurship ye wann the first day,  
 When the Erle of Mortein come passing with his pray  
 Before youre toune of Grauenyng, wher ye, as men bold, 24  
 Come rennyng on hym fersli, as lyons of Cotteswold,  
 With habirgeons & hounsculles, & rusti kettiH hattes,  
 With long pykes, goden daghes for to stikke the rattes,  
 With messis & meskins, & eke *with* side lakes, 28  
 Doune vnto mydde þe leg, of kanuas lyke to sakes;  
 Stoppid al *with* hempen tawe, and þat in straunge wise,  
 Stiehed like a matrace, al of þe newe gyse,  
 Ye laid vpon þenglisshmen so myghtily *with* your handes, 32  
 Til of you iij. hundrid lay strechid on the sandes.  
 Ye fled þen in-to Grauenyng, and wold no lenger bide,  
 And gaue þe Erle leue to passe ouer that same tyde  
 In saafte with his prisoners, & lost neuer a man: 36  
 This was þe first wurship, of Caleys that ye wan.

<sup>1</sup> col. 2, leaf 256, Lambeth MS. 64.<sup>2</sup> leaf 256, back.

Remembres how ye laide seege, with gret pryde & bost,  
<sup>1</sup>To Caleis, *pat* littil tounē : the noumbre of youre host  
Was a hundrid thousand & fifty, to reken by *þe* pollis,  
4 As it was *þat* same tyme founden by youre rollis ;  
And yette, for al youre gret host, erly nothir late,  
Caleis was so ferd of you, *þey* shütte neuer a gate.

Remembres how ye drowned att full see for *þe* nones,  
8 With shippes, Caleis hauen, massoned *with* stones,  
And how that *þe* Calisers hem brake the next day,  
When it was lawe watir, and bare lxiij clene away,  
Euery stikke & stone, & lafte not ther one log.

12 Remembres eke on Goby, the watir-bailiffes dog,  
How he scarmysshed *with* you twyes vpon the day,  
And among you, on *þe* sandes, made many a fray.

Remembres ye of Brugges ; how ye first wan youre shone,  
16 How ye come forth to scarmyssh vpon an aftirnone  
With payuses & crossebowes, on Saynt Petirs playne,  
And how sone the Calisers made you to turne agayne,  
<sup>2</sup>And ouerthrewe you sodeynly, or euer that ye wist,  
20 And brought you in-to Caleis, tyed fast by the fist.

Remembres ye of Gaunt eke : for al youre pride & bost,  
Wonneñ was youre bulwerk, beside your gret host,  
And slayne all that was therin : & ye, that same night,  
24 Fled ouer Grauenyng watir ; but go *þat* go myght,  
And youre lord *with* you, for dreed and for fere  
Of the Duyk of Gloucester ; & yette was he not *per*.  
Wel was hym might go before *with* pisone & *with* pounce,  
28 And laft behind you, for hast, al youre ordynaunce.

Remembres, ye Picardes, at seege eke as ye lay  
Of Guysnes, that strong Castel, how ye fled away  
For ryngyng of the larume beñ, shamfulli in a morowe,  
32 As ferd as *þe* Flemmynges, *with* hertes full of sorowe.  
Ye lost there your ordynaunce, of guunes that was cheff :  
To you & to al Pycardis, shame and gret repreff.

Remembres now, ye Flemmynges, vpon youre owne shame ;  
36 <sup>3</sup>When ye laide seege to Caleis, ye wer right still to blame ;

<sup>1</sup> col. 2, leaf 256.

<sup>2</sup> leaf 257.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2, leaf 257.

For more of reputacioun, ben Engliſshmeñ þen ye,  
 And comen of more gentiſh blode, of olde antiquite ;  
 For Flemmynges come of Flemmed men ye ſhal wel vnderſtand,  
 For flemmed men & banſhid men enhabit firſt youre land. 4

Thus proue I þat Flemmynges is but a flemmed man,  
 And Flaunders, of Flemmynges, the name firſt began.  
 And þerfore, ye Flemmynges, þat Flemmynges ben named,  
 To compare with Engliſshmen, ye aught to be aſhamed ! 8  
 Ye be nothing elles worth, but gret wordes to camp ;  
 Sette ye ſtiſh, & bith in pees : God gyue you quadenramp !

¶ Such & many opir rymes were made amonge Engliſshmeñ,  
 aftir the Flemmynges were thus ſhamfully fled frome Caleis, & þe 12  
 Picardis from Guisnes fledd, & gon þeire way, for drede & fere of  
 þe comyng of the Duyk of Glouceſtre, whiche by þat tyme was redy  
 at London with his power & armee to come to þe reſcows of Caleis,  
 & to ſhippe at Sandwich, wher-as lay redy in þe hauen iij<sup>c</sup> ſailes 16  
 to abyde his comyng.

[*End of the MS.*]

[K]

[*Extracts from the unique Lambeth MS. 84.*]

I.

[*How Havelok's son, Curan, became King of Denmark and England.*]

**<sup>1</sup>How Kyng Edelf married Argentyl to a knave of his Kechyn.**

**A**Nd Kyng Edelf, þat was vncle to þe damoyseñ Argentil, bethought him how he myght with some tresoun have þe laude fro hire þat was his Nece, for euermore; and, false forsworne ayenst his othe, thouht how he myght disceyue þe damoyseñ; And so he married here to a knaue of his kechyn þat men callyd Curan. And this Curan becam þe worthiest man of body þat ony 8 man wist in ony lande; for he was þe lengest man & highest of añ þe Kynges householde, or in ony oþer place þat men knew þat tyme. And Kyng Edelfe supposed to haue maryed hire shamfully & vnworthily, for enchesoun þat he thought to haue alle here 12 lande, as he had & heelde before þat tyme, but he was disceyued; ffor this Curan was Hauelokes sone, þat was Kyng of Kirkeland in Denmark, as ye shul here. ¶ Hauelok,<sup>2</sup> þat was Kyng of Kirkelonde in Denmark, spousyd þe Kyngis doughtir of þis londe, 16 whiche was ryght eyre of þis lande, þat men callyd Gildeburghe, & he begat on hire this forseide Curan, whiche was his eyre. And whan Hauelok vnderstode þat he shulde deye, he betoke his sone Curan to a lorde of his londe to kepe, þat he louyd & trustid 20 moche vnto; and þat this lorde shulde mary his sone Curan to some worthi gentylwoman, whan he were come to age, & to make kym Kyng of his landis. This lorde grauntyd hym þat he wolde so do, & toke þe childe with hym, & kepte hym. ¶ But afterward, 24 this lorde bethouhte hym how he myght put this childe Curan from his enerytaunce, and þat alle the lordis of Denmark dred hym, & many of them had hym in gret fauour; and therupon, he leete crowne hym-selfe Kyng of añ Denmark, and toke homage &

<sup>1</sup> leaf 48.

<sup>2</sup> Marginal rubric: How Curan, þat was Hauelokis sone, kyng of Denmark, weddid þe Kyngis douhetir of Ingelond.

feaute of aH þe lordis & peple of Denmark. And anon he betoke  
 Curan, þat was riht eneritour to þe crowne of Denmark, vnto a  
 fissher, prevely, þat no man vndirstode, & gaue þe fissher gret good,  
 & also chargyd hym, on payne of deethe, þat he shulde take þe 4  
 childe Curan *with* hym, & priuely drowne hym in þe see, so þat  
 he may neuer se nor here more of hym. The fissher seyde it  
 shulde be doon, & toke þe childe *priuely with* hym. And whan he  
 was in þe brode see, & purposid to doon this deede, he had gret pite 8  
 & compassioun vpon this young childe, and thouht it were gret pite  
 to drowne so faire a childe; & so he *withdrew* his euil purpose, &  
 saued þe childis lyfe, & toke þe younge childe *with* hym,<sup>1</sup> and  
 forsoke þe lande, & dwellyd in another countre *with* þe childe, for 12  
 drede off þe Kyng þat vsurped þe lande. And this man kept tys<sup>2</sup>  
 childe tyl he was vox moche, and of a resonable age; and alwey  
 þe childe callyd hym 'fadyr,' wenyng to hym þat he had so be;  
 tyl vpon a tyme, tis<sup>2</sup> fissher callid þe childe vnto hym, and tolde 16  
 hym how he was nat his fadyr, but seide þat Hauelok, whiche was  
 Kyng of Denmark, was his fadyr; & whan he shulde dye, he  
 prayde a lorde of his londe to kepe his sone Curan; " & whan ye  
 were come to natural age, to make yow Kyng of þe lande, as 20  
 rightful enerytour. And he toke yow to me, & gaue me gret good,  
 & also charged me, vp payne of deede, þat I shulde drowne yow in  
 þe see. and I fulfillyd nad his *commaundment*, but sparid youre  
 lyf, & kept yow hidyr-to *with* tho goodis þat he gaue me; & *perfor* 24  
 I durste not abide in þat londe, but fledde *with* yow in-to this  
 countre; for he regneth nòw for kyng of Denmarke, & vsurpeth þe  
 crowne. And *perfor* I counseile yow to drawe to som pryncis  
 courte, þat ye may haue eyde & helpe to enerite youre londe ayen." 28  
 ¶ Than this young Ientylman thankid this fissher of his gret  
 charite, & toke his leue, & cam to þe Kyngis courte of Ingelond,  
 and was a sqwiler in þe kechyn: þe whiche kyng þat regnyd tho  
 in Ingelonde was Edelþ, whiche vsurpyd þe lande wrongfully, from 32  
 his owne cosyn, whiche was kyng Adelbrightis doughtir, & riht  
 eneritur, þat men callyd ArgentyH. ¶ And þis Kyng Edelþ  
 thouhte to mary her shamfully & vnworthely, for enchesoun to  
 haue her londe from her; & so he maryed her to Curan, þat was 36  
 sqwiler of his kechyn. ¶ And than Curan toke his wife ArgentiH,  
 & went in-to Denmarke, and as God wolde, whiche helpith aH  
 good men in ther right, conueyed Curan & his wife to þe howse of

<sup>1</sup> leaf 48, back. Lambeth MS. 84.<sup>2</sup> sic MS.



a worthi knyhte of Denmarke, þe whiche lovȝd wel þe fadyr of þe  
seide Curan. And whan this Curan was come thedyr, þe knyhte was  
glad to holde hym, because þis Curan was so hye a man of stature,  
4 & wel made *with-alle*; & þe knyght comaundid his serwauntis  
to make hym & his wife goode chere; for they semyd onest foke.  
And aftyr, whan þe nyght was come, þei were asyngned where þei  
shulde lye. And in þe dede tyme of þe nyght, whan alle folkis  
8 were a-bedde, & be lyklyode a-slepe, there was a gret lyght in þe  
chambre, whiche oon of þe knyghtis seruauntis aspied, & preuely  
went vnto þe chambre to wete what yt ment. & whan he come  
thedyr, he sye a wonder grete streȝme of lyhte com from þe mannys  
12 side, & also a-noȝer from þe womannys side, þei beyng fast aslepe,  
þat alle þe chambyr was lyght *þere-with*. And þis man yede softly  
vnto his maistyr þe knyht, & tolde hym what he sye. & þe knyht  
rose hym vp & yede thedyr, & fonde yt sothe as his man had seide.  
16 & þe knyht maruelyd sore what it shulde mene, & yede a-yen to his  
bed, & musid sore ther-on. ¶ And on þe morw þe knyht arose, & sent  
for this man Curan; and anon þe knyht axyd hym what man he  
was; who was his fadyr; & where he was born. Than Curan seyde:  
20 “syrrre, I wot nevyr where I was born, nor who was my fadyr, but  
be þe seyng of a man þat was a fissher, whiche kept me vp of  
yowthe; & I knew none oȝer but þat he was my fadyr. & whan I  
was growen moche, & vndirstode resoun, he seide to me that he  
24 was not my fadyr, but seyde þat þe Kyng of Denmark was my  
fadir, þat men callyd Hauelok, & Gildeburghe my modyr, whiche  
was þe Kyngis douhtir of Ingelond. & whan my fadyr shulde dye,  
he betoke me to kepe to a lorde of his, & prayde hym þat he shulde  
28 make me kyng, whan I come to lawful age. & that lorde betoke me  
to a man þat was a fissher, & gaue hym gret good, & also chargyd  
hem, vp payne of dethe, þat he shulde drowne me in þe see; but  
þe man, of pite, cowde not fynde it in his herte.” Thanne seyde  
32 þe knyht: “if it be thus, I shal knowe be sertayne fetures &  
tokenys þat is on youre body, þe whiche þat I & othyr knyhtis  
were comaundid to se & take hede of, when ye were ryht younge.”  
Than Curan stripte hym nakyd; & anon þe knyht sye þe markis  
36 on his body þat he knew ful wel. And than þe knyht knelyd  
doun & did hym worship, & seide, ‘forsothe he was þe sone of his  
wurshipful lorde Hauelok, & rihtful ayre of Denmarke.’ And in  
alle þe hast, þe knyght wrote vnto dyuerse lordis of þat lande,

seyng, þat 'Curan, þe sone of Haueloke, & rihtful eyre, was founde, & was *with* hym, in his place.' ¶ And whan þe lordys herde this, & vnderstode þe trowthe, anon thei assemblyd a gret power, & cam thedyr, & did homage & fewte vnto hym. and aftyr 4 þat, thei yede & gaue batayle vnto þe Kyng þat vsurpyd, whom þe seyde Curan slew, his own hondis. And aftyr þat, thei crownyd hym Kyng of Denmarke, & so he enyoyed his enheritaunce. ¶ And in þe nexte yere folwyng, this seid Curan cam in-to 8 Ingelonde, & conquestyd his wives lande, and slowe Kyng Edelke in þe xx. yere of his regne. In whois tyme deyde Seint Ethelburga, þe first abbes of Berkyng, In þe yere of oure Lorde v<sup>l</sup>xxviij. And this Edelk was þe last kyng of þe trewe Brytounis. 12

Anno domini v<sup>l</sup>xx: Regned Curan, þat was <sup>1</sup>Hauelokis son, Kyng of Denmark, whiche reynyd be his wives titel, & not be his owne. Capitulum lxxvij.

Aftyr Kyng Edelk, þat was þe laste kyng of þe trewe Brytounis, 16 Regned Curan In þe yere of oure Lorde. v<sup>l</sup>xx. & þis Curan was Hauelokis sone, Kyng of Denmark, þat was a Dane; & he regned be his wivis title, & nat be his owne; & he was a good man, & wel rewlyd þe lande. And he ne regned but 20 iiij. yeris, for þe Saxons & þe Danys slewe hym; & þat was gret hurte to alle Britayne; <sup>2</sup>& so he deyde *withoute* yssu; & þe Britounis bare his body to Stonehenge, & þere entered hym *with* moche solempnite. 24

## II.

[*The Quarrel between Richard II & his uncle, the Duke of Gloster.*]

<sup>3</sup>In þe xx<sup>ti</sup> yer Kyng Rychard heelde a grete feste at Westmenstre. At whiche feste arryued þe Sowdyours þat had kepte a tounne callyd Breste, & satte at dyner in þe halle, whiche tounne Kyng Rycharde had delyueryd by appoyntemente to þe Duke of 28 Brytayne, wherof bygan moche trouble & sorwe, whiche dured vnto Kyng Richardys dethe. And aftyr dyner þe Duke of Glouecetre, his vncle, Sir Thomas of Woodstoke, sayde to þe Kyng: "Syre! haue ye not seen tho felawes þat sate at dyner in youre halle?" 32 and þe Kyng demaunded who they were: and he sayde, "they been

<sup>1</sup> leaf 49, back.    <sup>2</sup> Rubric in margin: This kyng deyde *withoute* yssu.

<sup>3</sup> Slip of vellum between leaf 181 and 182, written on one side only. At the top of leaf 182 is "John Stoughton is a littel wantton."

your folke þat haue seruyd yow, & ben come from Breste, & now wote not what to doo, & haue ben enyl payde." Thenne þe Kyng sayde þat they shal be payde. Then seyde þe Duke in a grete  
4 furre: "Syre! ye oughte fyrste to put your body in denore to gete a tounne or a Castel be feet of warre vpon your enemyes, er ye shulde selle or delyuer ony townes þat your predecessours, Kynges of Englonð, haue gotten & conqueryd." To þe whiche þe Kyng  
8 answeyrd ryght angrely: "how saye ye that?" Thenne þe Duke sayd it ageyn. Then þe Kyng byganne to wex wrothe, & sayde: "wene ye þat I be a marchaunt or a foole, to selle my londe? by Saint Johan Baptist, nay! but trouthe it is, þat oure Cosyn of  
12 Brytayne hathe rendryd & payde to vs þe somme þat my predecessours hadde lente vpon þe sayde tounne of Breste; and sith he haue payed, it is reasoun þat this tounne be delyueryd to hym ageyne." Thus beganne þe wrathe bytwene þe Kyng & his vncl.  
16 And aftyrward, at Arondele, was a Counseylle of certeyne lordes, as þe Duke of Gloucetre, þe Archebisshop of Canterbury, þe Erles of Arondele, Warwyk & Marchalle, & oper, for to refourme þe rewle aboute þe Kyng; whyche lordes promysed eche to abyde by oper,  
20 & so departed. And anone aftyr, þe Erle Marchal, whiche was Captayne of Calays, bewrayed, & lete þe King haue knowleche of all þere counselle.

### III.

[*The Deposition of Richard II & Election of Henry IV. The Prophecy that Richard II should be destroyed by a Toad.*]

<sup>1</sup>Than in the begynnyng of þe xxiiij<sup>th</sup> yer, the lordys of þe  
24 reavme, with þe Comouns assent, chose this worthy lorde, Syr Herry Bolyngbrook, Erle of Derby, Duke of Herforde & Duke of Lancastre be ryht lyne & herytage, and for his myhtful manhood, þat þe peple fonde in hym before al othyr, they chose hym, &  
28 made hym Kyng of Engelonð amonges hem, And put asyde Richarde, Erle of Cambrygge, whiche was sone to Edmunde Langeley, Duke of York. And this sayde Richarde, Erle of Cambrygge, had weddyd Anne, þe doulhetyr & Ayre of Roger  
32 Mortymer, Erle of Marche & of Wulster, whiche was proclamyd, in þe ix. yer of þe regne of Kyng Richarde, heyre apparaunt to þe Crowne of Engelonð aftyr Kyng Richarde. For þe sayde Roger was sone & Ayre to Edmunde Mortymer, and to Philyppe,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 185, one-third down. Lambeth MS. 84.

douhetyr & Ayre of *Sir* Lyonel, þe .iij. sone of Kyng Edward þe .iij.; And thus was þe Ayre Ieneral put asyde. <sup>1</sup>Also ther was, yn Kyng Richardys courte, a worshipful clerke þat was an Astronomier, whiche knewe & vnderstode be his counnyng þat Kyng Richarde 4 shulde be slayne & destroyed be a Toode. And vpon a tyme, he warnyd þe Kyng therof, & bad hym 'be ware of Todys; for a Toode shulde destroye hym;' and than þe Kyng thouhte & mervayled in his mynde, how þat shulde be. And vpon a tyme he ordeyned 8 & made a ryal feest in Cristmasse, & comaundyd al his lordys to come thedyr. And they cam thedyr, euery lorde in þe gayest desgysyng þat they coude deuyse. And among hem alle, *Sir* Herry, Erle of Derby, cam in a Goume broyderyd <sup>2</sup>al abowte with Toody's. 12 & whan Kyng Richard syhe yt, he remembryd þe propheci of Toody's þat his clerke tolde hym, þat he shulde be destroyed by. And euer aftyr he had this Herry, Erle of Derby, yn Ielwsy & mystruste, supposyng þat yt shulde be he þat shulde destroy hym; 16 & fayne þe Kyng wolde an had hym destroyed; but at þe last he exiled hym for x yer.

## IV.

[*The Murder and Burial of King Richard II. His Vision and his Treasure.*]

<sup>3</sup>¶ In þe same yere, Syr Barnarde Brokeis, Sir Iohn Selly, Syr Iohn Mawdelyn, & Syr William Ferby, were takyn & sette in 20 þe Toure, & aftyr, by iugement, were hanged & by-hedyd, & ther hedys sette on London Brigge. ¶ And whan Kyng Herry sawe þat these lordys thus had rysen, & assemblyd grete peple to haue put hym to dethe, & for to restore Kyng Richard ageyne to 24 his crowne & to his Reame, he thoughte teshue suche peryls.<sup>4</sup> ¶ And a-none he commaunded *Sir* Pyers of Exston, þat he shulde goo streyte to Pounfreyte, & delyuer þe worlde of Kyng Rychard. ¶ And so he departed fro þe Kyng, and wente to þe Castel of 28 Pountfrete, where-as Kyng Richard was in prisoune, þe whiche was sette at table for to dyne. ¶ And anon aftyr, *Sir* Pyers cam in-to þe chambre where þe Kyng was; and he broughte viij. men with hym, & eche man an axe in his honde. ¶ And whan 32 þe Kyng sawe *Sir* Pyers with his felaushippe entre in-to þe chambre defensably arayed, he shoof þe table from hym, and

<sup>1</sup> Side rubric: A prophesi of Kyng Richards dethe. <sup>2</sup> leaf 185, back.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 186.

<sup>4</sup> Side rubric: How kyng Richard deyde.

sprange in-to þe myddys of them, & raughte an axe out of one  
theyr hondes, and sette hymself valyauntly at defence. ¶ And  
hym-self defendyng, he slewe foure of þe eyghte. And whanne þe  
4 sayde Peers sawe þe Kyng so defende hym, he was soore abashed  
& gretly aferde, and sterte vpon þe place where-as Kyng Richard  
was wonte to sytte. & as Kyng Richard foughte & defendyd  
hym-self goynge backwarde, the sayde Syr Peers smote hym on þe  
8 hede *with* his axe, *pat* he fylle to grounde. ¶ Than cryed Kyng  
Richard “God, mercy!” & thenne he gaue hym a-noþer stroke  
on þe hede, & soo he deyde. ¶ And thus was this noble Kyng  
slayne and murthred. And whan þe Kyng was deede, þe knyghte  
12 *pat* had thus slayne hym, sette hym down be þe deede bodye of  
Kyng Richard, & bygaune to wepe, saynge: “Allas! what thyng  
haue we doone? we haue putte to dethe hym *pat* hath been oure  
Kyng & souerayne lorde, two & twenty yere! Now haue I lost  
16 myn honoure! I shal neuer come in place, but I shal be  
reproched, for I haue doone ayenst myn honour.” ¶ After this,  
moche peeple in Englonde, & other countrees also, wolde not  
beleue *pat* Kyng Richard was deede, but sayde *pat* he was alyue  
20 many yerys aftyr. ¶ Wherefor Kyng Herry, whan he wist verryly  
*pat* he was deede, he leete cere hym in þe best maner, & *with*  
dyners spices and baumes, & in a fayre cheste, closyd alle in lynyn  
clothe, saaf his visage, whiche was lefte opyn, *pat* men myht see  
24 & know his persone from alle othir men. ¶ And thus he was  
broughte thurgh London to Powlus; & his body was leyd on a  
Charyotte coueryd *with* black, and iiij. baners, whereof ij. were of  
þe armes of Saint George, & ij. of þe armys of Seint Edward; &  
28 & þere were an C. men clothed in blak, eche beryng a torche;  
¶ And þe Cyte of London had thyrty men in whyte, eche beryng  
also a torche; and þe visage of þe dede body was leyde opyn, *pat*  
euery man myght see and knowe *pat* it was his body, & *pat* he  
32 was soo deede; for many men beleuyed it not. ¶ And from  
Powlus he was had to Westmenster, & þere he hadde his hole  
masse, & diryge also. ¶ And fro thens he was caryed to þe  
Frerys of Langley, & þere he was buried: on whois sowle God  
36 haue mercy! Amen! ¶ The comyn oppynyng of Englysshmen is,  
*pat* Kyng Richard deyde not <sup>1</sup> aftyr þe maner a-foresayde, but *pat*  
he deyde & was famynyed, & lakkyd bothe mete and drynke, & yet  
he was dayle seruyd þereof lyke a Kyng, but he myht not towche

<sup>1</sup> leaf 186, back.

yt, but only see hyt, & *perefor* his [hunger] was þe more. And on a tyme, as he lay on his bed of estaate, hym thouhte þere come a fayre womman vnto hym, and brought a kercher ful of white Rosys, & bestruyd aH his bed therwith; & he fed hym of the Rosys, þat his 4 gret hungre was withdrawe; & whan he woke, hym thoughte his apyted was wel satysfyed, & þerby his lyf contynuyd a day or tweyne the lenger. And some sayeth thus, That whan he herde saye þat his lordys, þe Duke of Excetre, þe Duke of Surrey, þe 8 Erle of Salysbury, & þe oþer lordis were deede, he was so angry & so sorowful þat he swore þat he wolde neuer ete mete, & soo abode iiij. dayes withoute etyng, as they saye. And whan Kyng Herry vndirstode þat he wolde not ete, he sente to hym ij prelatys for to 12 comforte hym; And whan they wære come, he confessyd hym to one of them, þe whiche gaue hym in penaunce, þat he shulde ete his mete. And whan he supposed to haue etyn, þe mete myght not goo downne ne anale in-to his stomake, ffor þe conduytys of 16 his bodye were shronken to-geder. And than sayde þe noble Kyng Rychard, 'þat it was doon, & þat he must nedis deye.' But certys, wheper he deyde this way or þat other, certaynly dede he is, & was buried at Langley: God haue mercy on his soule! 20 Amen! And then was Kyng Herry peasbly King. Then he fonde in Kyng Richardes tresory nyne honderde thousande noblys, withoute Iewellys and vessellys whiche was as moche worthie, or more. And þere was founden in þe Tresorers kepyng of Englonde, 24 an honderde and fyfty thousand noblys, & lewels & vessell as moche or more: and thus Kyng Herry had alle his goodys. Aboute this same tyme, þe Duke of Orleauunce sente an herode of armys with lettres vnto Kyng Herry, by which he chalengyd for 28 to fyght with hym withynne lystes at Burdeux, or in some oþer metely place, with an C gentylnen withoute reproche, ageynste as meny gentlemen withoute reproche. wherto þe <sup>1</sup> King answeyrd ageyne by lettres worshipfully, rehersyng þat at suche tyme as 32 it shulde plesse hym, he wolde come with suche nombre as it apperteyneth to a Kyng, and conquere his ryght; at whiche tyme he shulde be answeyrd atte fulle; & so þe mater fynnysshed.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup>— This is in the margin.

V.

[*The Causes of the Battle of Shrewsbury, A.D. 1403.*]

<sup>1</sup> ¶ And than Syr Thomas Percy was Iugged to be dede, *pat* is to sey, drawe & hangyd, and his hede smytyn of, at Shrewesbury, & his hede to be set on London Brygge, for his fals tresone; 4 for he causyd *pe* gret devisioun betwene the Kyng and Syr Herry Percy; for *pe* Kyng wolde an had pees, & so wolde Syr Herry Percy ful fayne; But Syr Thomas Percy went betwene them, & bare fals talys, othyrwyse than they sayde or ment, & causyd that 8 batayle. Vnde *versus*: *Praxedis taurius nomine campo Blewyk.*

*M. quetuor C. ter .I.<sup>2</sup> obit certamine Percy.*

¶ Also anoper princypal cause was: what tyme *pat* Syr Herry Derby was exilyd be Kyng Richarde, he cam ayen out of Fraunce, 12 & entryd vp in-to Engeland at Rauensport in Yorkshyre; & *pere* cam ayenst hym, to put hym of, Syr Herry Percy, othyrwise callyd Syr Herry Hote-spour. but Syr Herry Derby was sworyn *pere* to hym & to othyr lordys, *pat* he shulde make no chalange vnto *pe* 16 Crowne, but only vnto his enerytaunse, *pe* Dukedom of Lancastre; & vppon *pat* othe they suffryd hym to go fourthe. And than aftyr *pat*, Syr Herry Derby toke vppon hym *pe* Crowne. and whan they vndyrstode *pat*, Syr Herry Hotspur cam to *pe* Kyng to 20 Westmenstyr, and seyde: "Syr, this was not couienaunt nor promise." "What seyst thou, horsson?" *quod* the Kyng; & stert to hym, & gaue hym a gret buffet. "Wel," *quod* Syr Herry Hotspur, "this shal be *pe* shrewdest bofet *pat* euer thou yovyst." 24 & streyte he toke his horse, and rode home into his countre; & here-vpon began the batel of Srewesbury.

VI.

[*King Henry V: his Riot in his Youth: his Change when made King.*]

<sup>3</sup>[A]ftyr the dethe of Kyng Herry the Fourthe, Regnyd his sone Herry of Monmothe, whiche was born at Monmothe in 28 Walyes, whiche was Herry the Fyfte aftyr *pe* conquest. And he began to Regne on *pe* xxj<sup>ti</sup>. day of Marche, In *pe* yer of our lorde

<sup>1</sup> on leaf 187.

<sup>2</sup> ? for 1403, July 23. Battle fought on St. Praxed's day, near a manor house named Berwick.—J. H. Wylie, who suggests 'ter I,' thrice one, for the t .I. or t .I. of the MS.

<sup>3</sup> leaf 191. Lambeth MS. 84.

M. CCCC xij; And in þe same yer he was crownyd Kyng of Englon[d] at Westmenster on the nynthe day of ApriH; and he was a worthy kyng, & a gracious man, & a worthy conquerour. ¶ And before he was Kyng, what tyme he regnyd Prince of Walyes, he 4 fyllē & yntendyd gretly to ryot, and drew to wyldē company; & dyuers Ientylmen and Ientylwommen folwyd his wyllē & his desire at his commaundment; & lykewyse aH his meyne of his housolde was attendyng & plesyed with his gouernaunce, out-sept 8 iij. men of his howsolde, whiche were ful hevy and sory of his gouernaunce; and they counseyld hym euer contrary, and fayne wolde an had hym to doon wele, & forsake ryot. and perfor he hatyd them iij. most of al men in his house, vnto þe tyme þat his 12 fadyr was dede. And thanne he beganne to regne for Kyng, & he remembryd þe gret charge & wourship þat he shulde take vpon hym; And anon he comaundyd al his peple þat were attendaunt to his mysgouernaunce afore tyme, & al his housokle, to 16 come before hym. And whan they herde þat, they were ful glad, for they subposyd þat he wolde a promotyd them in-to gret offices, & þat they shulde a stonde in gret favyr & truste with hym, & neerest of counsel, as they were afore tyme. & trustyng here- 20 vpon, they were þe homlyer & bolder vnto hym, & nothyng dred hym; ynsomoche, þat whan they were come before hym, some of them wynkyd on hym, & some smyld, & thus they made nyse semblaunte vnto hym, meny one of them. But for al þat, þe 24 Prynce kept his countynaunce ful sadly vnto them, And sayde to them: "Syrys, ye are þe peple þat I haue cherysyd & mayntynyd in Ryot & wyldē gouernaunce; and here I geue yow aH in commaundment, & charge yow, þat from this day forward þat 28 ye forsake al mysgouernaunce, & lyve aftyr þe lawys of Almyhety God, & aftyr þe lawys of oure londe. And who þat doyth contrarye, I make feythful promys to God, þat he shal be trewly ponisid accordyng to þe lawe, withoute eny favour or grace." And 32 chargyd them, [on] payn of deth, þat they shulde neuer geve hym comforte nor counsel to falle to ryot no more; for he had takyn a charge on hym, þat alle his wittis & power were to lytyl, withoute þe helpe of God & good gouernaunce. And so he rewardyd 36 them richely with gold & syluer, & othyr Iuelys, and chargyd them alle to voyde his housolde, & lyve as good men, & neuer more to come in his presence, be-cause he wold haue noon occasioun nor remembraunce wherby he shulde falle to ryot ayen. And thus he 40



voydyd al his housolde, sayng tho iij. per<sup>l</sup>sonys pat he hatyd most, whiche were ful sory of his gouernaunce; & them he lovyd afterward best, for pere good counsaile and good gouernaunce, & made them afterward gret lordys; And thus was lefte in his housokle nomo but tho iij. men. And menyone of them pat were eydyng & consentyng to his wyldnes, fyl afterward to gret myschefe and sorw.

8 ¶ Than Kyng Herry sent to Dame Kateryn Swynfor, Countesse of Herforde, whiche was tho a wel-gouerned woman, & kept pe most worshipful housokle, & pe best rewlyd pat was within pe londe; and to her he sent for men pat were of good disposioun; 12 & she sent hym xij Ientylmen of sad gouernaunce. and so this gracious Kyng forsoke al wyldnes, and toke hym to good gouernaunce, and kept streytly his lawys with ryghtwisnes & Iustise. For, in pe first yere of his regne, ther were ij knyhtis at 16 gret debate: pe tone was of Lankestyr-shire, & pe tothyr of York-shire; & they made them as stronge of peeple as they cowde, & scarmysshid togedyr; and men were slayne & hurte on bothe partyes. ¶ And whan pe Kyng herde therof, he sent for 20 them: & they cam to pe Kyng to Wyndelysore, as he was goyng to his dyneer. and whan the Kyng vndirstode that they were come, he commaundyd them to come before him; And than he axyd them, ‘whois men they were.’ and they seyde, his lege men. 24 “and whois men be tho pat ye haue a-reysyd up to fyhte for youre quarel?” and they seyde, ‘his men.’ “& what awtoryte or comaundement had ye, to reyse vp my men or my peeple, to fyght & sle eche othyr for your quarel? yn this ye ar worthy to dye.” 28 And they coude not askewse them, but besowhte pe Kyng of his grace. And than pe Kyng seyde, “be pe feith pat he owte to God & to Seint George, but yf they agreyd & accordyd, be pat tyme pat he had etyn his owystrys, they shulde be hangyd bothe two or 32 evyr he sopyt.” And than they yede a-parte, & agreyd be themselfe, and cam in ayen whan pe Kyng had etyn his owistris. And than pe Kyng sayde: “Syr, how stondyth yt with yow?” And than they knelyd downe, and seyde: “yf it plesse your good 36 grace, we be agreyd & accordyd.” And than the Kyng seyde, ‘be the feythe pat he owte to God & to Seint George, pat & evyr they made eny more Insurreccioun or dethe of his lege peple, they, or ony othyr lordys withynne his reawme, withowte his

<sup>1</sup> leaf 191, back.

commaundment, whatsomeeuer they were, they shulde dye, acordyng to þe lawe.' And so, aftyr þat, ther durst no lorde make no party nor stryf; and thus he beganne to kepe his lawis and Iustise, & therfor he was belouyd & bedred. 4

## VII.

[*The Battle of Agincourt.*]

<sup>1</sup>¶ Than þe morwe roos, þe day gan sprynge, & þe Kyng be good ayce leet araye his batayle & his weengys; & chargyd every man to keepe hem hole to-gedrys, & preyde hem alle to been of good cheer. And whanne they were redy, he askyd what tyme of 8 þe day it was, & they sayde prime. Than seyde oure Kyng: "now is it good tyme, for alle Engelond prayeth for vs. And in remembraunce þat God dyed on þe Crosse for vs, let every man make a crosse on þe erthe, & kys hyt, & in tokenyng þat we wole 12 radyr dye on this erthe than flee." ¶ And whan þe King of Fraunce sawe oure Kyng & his peeple fal down to þe erthe, he axyd: "what meen they now?" & a Frenche knyght stode by, & seyde, "forsothe, Syre, they purpose hem this day to dey on þat 16 grounde, rathir than to flee." And than oure Kyng, with alle his peple, roos hym vp ayen; and than he seyde with an hye voyce, "In þe name of Almyhty God and of Seint George, Avaunt banee! & Seint George, this day thyn helpe!" And therwith þe 20 Trumppetys blew vp. ¶ And than þe Frenche men come prykyng down, as they wolde hane ovirryden alle oure meyne. But God & oure Archerys made hem sone to stomble. for oure archeris shot neuer oon arwe amys, but it persshid & brouht to grounde man or 24 hors; for they shottyn þat day for a waiour; And oure stakys made hem ouer-terve, eche on othyr, þat they lay on hepys. And oure Kyng, with his meyne & with men of armys, leyde on, for it behovyd hem to fyght þat day, his owne handys. & oure good 28 Archerys þat lakkyd <sup>2</sup>arwys, leyde on with stakys. And þat day þe Frenche men syhe Seint George in þe eyre ouer þe hoste of þe Englysshe men, fyghtyng ayenst þe Frenche men; and therfor they worship & holde of Seint George, in Engelond, more than in any 32 oper londe. ¶ And thus Almyhti God & Seint George brouht oure enemyes to grounde, & yaf us þe victory þat day. And þere were slayne of Frensshe men þat day in þe feelde of Agyncort xj. M<sup>t</sup>, withoute prysonerys þat were takyn. And ther were noumbryd 36

<sup>1</sup> leaf 194.<sup>2</sup> leaf 194, back.

pat day of Frensshe men yn pe feelde, mo than Sixti score Mt.,  
And of Englysshe men but vij. M<sup>t</sup>; but God & Seint George pat  
day favt for vs. But pe Frensshe men pat were in pe Cyte of  
4 Parys, had went pat oure Kyng had been ouer-throuhe a day  
before; for pe prekers of pe Frensshe men pat kept pe owte-wacche,  
met with some of oure Kyngis kartys, & ryfelyd them, & gat out  
oure Kyngis koronet, & bare it in-to Parys; & wenyng to them of  
8 pe Cite pat oure Kyng had been ouerthrouhe, & bare this coronet  
aboutt pe eyte in processoun for ioye. And aftyrward, whan they  
syhe pe Frensshemen come home sore woundyd, they marvayled  
sore, & askyd them ‘what chere?’ & they seyde, “No som to  
12 mors”: we be dede & ouerthrouhe. And than an hewge peeple of  
women & oper folke yede thedyr to pe feelde pere pe batayle was,  
to beholde whiche party were ouerthrouhe; and they stode vpon  
an hylle besydys pe feelde pere pe batayle was. ¶ And whan pe  
16 Englysshe hoste syhe this, they had wende pat tho peeple had been  
a-noper host of Frensshe men. And anon com tydyngis to oure  
Kyng pat pere was a newe batayle of Frensshemen, al in aray,  
ordeyned redy to stele on hym. And anon oure Kyng leet krye  
20 pat euery man shulde sle his prysoner pat he had take: & pat was  
a myghty losse to Engeland, & a gret sorw to Fraunce. and whan  
pat was doon, oure Kyng arayed his batayle ayen, redy to fhte  
with pe Frensshe men. ¶ And whan pe Frensshmen sawe pat oure  
24 men kyllyd her prysonerys, than they withdrew hem, & brak her  
batayle & here aray. And thus oure Kyng, as a worthy conquerour,  
had pat day pe victorie in pe feelde of Agyncourt in Pykkardye,  
thankyd be God!

28 And than oure Kyng retournyd ayen there pe batayle was, to  
se what peple were dede of Frensshe men, and also of Englysshe  
men, or yf ony were hurte pat myht be holpe. And pere were  
dede of Frensshe men in pe feelde: pe Duke of Barry, pe Duke  
32 of Launsom, pe Duke of Braban, pe Erle of Navern, pe Chief  
Counstable of Fraunce, & viij. othir Erlys; & pe Archebisshop of  
Saunce; & of good Barouns .C. & mo; & of worthy knyhtis of  
gret alliaunce of cote armures, a M & v<sup>c</sup>. ¶ And of Englysshe  
36 men was dede pat day: pe good Duke of Yorke,<sup>1</sup> Ser Edmunde, &  
deyde withoute yssu. And aftyr hym, was made Duke of Yorke  
his broderys sone, Richarde, pat <sup>2</sup>was sone to Richard, Erle of  
Caumbrygge, pat was behedyd at Southamptone, as aftyrward ye

<sup>1</sup> Rubric in margin: ‘there was slayne pe Duke of Yorke.’

<sup>2</sup> leaf 195.

shul here more opynly. And also there was dede, þe Erle of Suffolke; & of al oper of Englisshe men, were dede nat passyng xxvj. bodyes, thankyd be God! And this batayle was on a Friday, whiche was Crispines & Crispamanes day, in þe monthe of Octobre. 4

*versus*: an Mil C quatuor Synk Domini dato.

henrici termo Regis quin iure paterno.

harlet fest Maurik deuicta que prelia.

crispinum Agencourt nomen, vbi Cristus ei dedit omen. 8

### VIII.

[*The Siege of Rouen. Every eldest Son a King on St. Dennis' Eve.*]

<sup>1</sup>¶ And yn þat tyme þere was a custom in þe Cite of Rone, & also in þe Subarbys þere-of, that on Seint Denys evyn to make a kyng in euery house. And so þe grete heerys of þe subarbis cam to þe seyde Kyng Herry, & besouht hym to take noon displeure 12 of þere customable vsage. and þe Kyng askyd them what it was. And they answeyrd & seyde 'yt was þe vsage of Roon to make, in euery hous therof, þe eldest sone a kyng on þat nyht.' And anon þe Kyng grauntyd them ther askyng, so þat it were nat doon in 16 despyte of hym. And at Nyhte ther cam woorde to þe Kyng, þat þere were neuer seen so many kyngis to-gedyr in oon place. And anon þe Kyng comaundyd them to be brouht afore hym. And than spake an olde Frenche knyht, and seyde: "I trowe now is þe 20 tyme come þat Rone shalbe won, aftyr þe profecye." And when þe Kyng herd þe knyht thus sey, he askyd hym, 'what was þe profecie.' And þe knyht seyde, 'yf he woold pardon hym, he woold tel hym þe profecie perof.' And tho þe Kyng pardonid 24 hym. ¶ "Syr," quod þe knyht, "this toun of Roon shall neuer be womme, tyl ther come a Kyng þat shulde be boryn of a woman, And in a Nonmys habyte, & .xxx. kynggis at his retynew, to ley seege ther-to." And there-with þe Kyng seyde: "In verbo tuo relaxabo rethe." And anon he comaundyd everyche of þe kyngis to be set in dyuers garisons ayenst þe Toun. And on þe next day was þe Toun of Roon yolded vp vnto oure Kyng, as ye shul here.

### IX.

[*King Henry VI's youth, and the quarrel with the Flemings.*]

<sup>2</sup>a Nd yn þe yer of our Lorde, M<sup>t</sup> CCC & xxij, On þe last 32 day of August, Herry of Wyndelysore, þe sone of Herry þe Fyfthe,

<sup>1</sup> leaf 198, back. Rubric in margin: 'how xxx<sup>ti</sup> kyngis leyde seege to Roon.'  
<sup>2</sup> leaf 201.

began to Reyne, when he was but ix monthis of age. ¶ And as  
some men sey, on þat day of his byrthe, there sat a stronger with  
þe parsoun of Monmothe, þat prophesied at dyner, seyng on this  
4 wyse: "In these xxiiij. ourys passyd, othyr with-yn xxiiij. ourys  
to come, is born, or shalbe born, a new Kyng of Engelond, þe  
whiche shal begynne his reyne withynne þe first yer of his byrthe."  
¶ Than seyde þe tothyr: "þat is þe Erle of Marche." he seyde  
8 ayen: "nay, nat so." than seyde þe tothyr, "what troyst thou þat  
þere shal fal here-aftyr?" he seyde: "In þe fyrst vij yer of his  
Reyne, þere shalbe gret aboundaunce of al maner of ffrutys."  
"And what in þe next vij yerys?" he seyde: "þere shalbe thre  
12 wyse men þat shulbe able to gouerne eny reme." And in þe vj.  
yer aftyr, on þe vj day of A Nouembre, Herry þe vj<sup>te</sup> was  
crownyd at Westmenster, of Herry Chychile, Archebisshop of  
Cauntirbury, at whois Coronacioun þe sone of þe Duke of  
16 Hostryche, with many oper, were made knyhtis. ¶ And in þe  
x<sup>th</sup> yer of his reyne he was crownyd ayen at Parys in Fraunce, of  
his vncle þe CardinaH of Wynchestre. And in þe yer aftyr þat, on  
þe xx<sup>ti</sup> day of Maij, on a Weddenysday, fro þe oure of None to iij.  
20 on þe clok at aftyrnoon, ther aperyd a Blasyng sterre in þe firma-  
ment, toward þe est, fast be þe Mone.

And in þe yer folwyng, the Dewke of Burgoyne began to meve  
werre ayenst Engelond, & wolde an had Caleyis. And thedyr was  
24 sent in bassetre, þe Duke of Exetyr, with oper lordys; & as he cam  
homward ayen, his hors doungyd in þe toune of Poperyng; and  
þe Flemyggis rysyn vp, & wolde nat suffyr hym to passe tyl his  
men were fayne to bere away his hors dounge, & make elene þe  
28 stretys. ¶ And whan þe Duke was come ayen in-to Engelond, he  
enformyd þe Kyng & his lordys þerof; and they were sore amevyd  
therwith. And anon Sir Humfray, Duke of Gloucestre, & Sir  
—Thomas Bewfounde, Duke of Exetyr, his brothyr, with oper lordys,  
32 made a gret power, and yede ayen in-to Flaundrys, & destroyed  
moche peple, and brent meny tounmys, & dyd moche harme; & þe  
Duke of Burgoyne fled with his peple. And þe Duke of Exetyr  
yede & brent vp Popryng & meny mo tounmys þere aboute, & dyd  
36 moche harme, ynsomuche þat they brent þe whete & corne þat  
grewe in þe feelde: & þat was an evyl deede, ffor, sen þat tyme  
hydyrward, our whete & corn haue be brent in Engelond, yn on  
place or in othyr, as it growyth in þe feelde, be þe hande of God;  
40 whiche brennyng, men callyth 'Ablastid or seynte.' ¶ And at þe

last, þe Duke of Burgoyne was fayne to mede þe Duke of Gloucestre & oure lordis, & gave them a myty thyng of good to turne ayen & seese ther warre, & do no more harme. & than þey turny[d] ayen in-to Engeland. And in despyte of þe Flemynges, an Englysshe 4 man made this Englyshe, yn Baladdys :

## (1)

<sup>1</sup>o ff stryvys new, & fraudulent falsnesse,  
 Who-so lyst to seek out þe cheef occasioun,  
 Late hym resorte, & his wey dresse  
 In-to Flaundrys, streyght to the Blak Lyoun, 9  
 Whiche hathe compassed, be fals collusioun,—  
 Lyk in his standard as betyn is the signe,—  
 That meved his countre of presumpcioun,  
 Ageyn Ingelond frowardly to malygne. 13

## (2)

Fyrst to remembre, the deede beryth wytnesse,  
 Of his fadyr mowrdred be tresoun,  
 How Herry the Fyfthe, of knyghtly gentylnesse,  
 Had of his dethe manly compassioun, 17  
 Leete digge hym vp, stank for corrupeioun,  
 Of a prynce a mercyable sygne.  
 But thou ageynward, be fals decepcioun,  
 Madest Flaundrys ageyn Ingelond to malygne. 21

## (3)

Thou madist an oothe, be gret avisynesse,  
 Vppon the sacrament at Amyas, in that toun,  
 Ay to be trewe, voyde of dobylnesse.  
 But vndyr the courteyne of fals collusioun, 25  
 Thou gat at Araas an absolucioun,  
 Thy feyned feythe vp falsly to resygne,  
 Causyng Flaundrys, to ther confusioun,  
 Ageyn Ingelond prowdly to malygne. 29

## (4)

The pees purposyd at Araas in soothnesse,  
 Whan our embassatourys, of hool affeccioun,  
 Cam goodly thiedyr, dyd ther bysinesse,  
 To haue concluded a parfynt vnyoun 33

Twyxt to reavmus, for ful conclusioun,  
Thou, shewyng there a face ful benyg[n]e,  
Vndyr a veyle of fals decepcioun,  
Record of Flaundrys, whiche falsly dothe malygne. 4

(5)

What hast thou wonne *with* al thy bynesse  
And alle thy tentys to Caleys caryed down,  
Thyn ordynauncys, whiche cost gret rychesse,  
Bastyle, and cartys of fagot gret foyssoun, 8  
Of thy gownys the dredful noyse and soun?  
Peyse al to-gedyr, *with* many anothyr sygne,  
Thy cowardly flyght, cokeney of a chaumpyoun,  
Whyche darst not fyght, and canst so wel malygne. 12

X.

[*The Battles of St. Alban's I and II, of Blore Heath, Ludlow,  
Northampton, Wakefield, and Wigmore.*]

<sup>1</sup> They dyd moche harme, & many a man was slayne; & they  
woolde neuer sese, tyl þe drawbrygge was set on fyre betwene hem.  
And aftyrward þere captayn was take in a gardyn in Kent, & þere  
16 he was slayne; & aftyr þat, his body was quarteryd; & his hede  
smytyn of, & set on Londen Brygge. ¶ And in þe xxiiij. yer of  
his regne was þe first batel of Seint Albons; & þere Kyng Herry  
was shotte in þe nekke *with* an Arrwe. And ayenst hym cam  
20 Rycherde Plantagynet, Duke of Yorke, & Richard Nevel, Erle of  
Salisbury, & his sone Richard Nevel, Erle of Warwyk. And þere  
was slayne of þe Kingis party, Sir Edmund, Duke of Somyrset,  
þe Erle of Northombyrland, & Lord Clyfford; & Humfray, Duke  
24 of Bokyngham, was sore hurte, whom they caryed *with* hem to  
Londen.

And in þe xxxvij yer was þe batel at Bloorheth, & of Ludlowe;  
& þere was slayne be þe Erle of Salisbury, Lord Avdele, & xiiij.  
28 knyghtes new made; & þe Baroun of Dudle was take & led *with*  
hem. ¶ And in þe .xxxviiij. yer was þe batayle of Northamptoun;  
where cam on þe ton party, Edward þe Erle of Marche, þe eldest  
sone of þe Duke of Yorke, & þe Duke of Northfolke, & Richard

<sup>1</sup> leaf 202. It follows the Ballad.

Nevyle, Erle of Warwyk. And þere was slayne of þe Kyngis party be them : Sir Humfray, Duke of Bokyngham, & Sir Iohn Talbot, Erle of S[h]rewisbury, & Vicount Bemounde ; & þere was take Kyng Herry, & brouht *with* them to Londen. 4

And in þe same yer was þe batayle of Wakefeelde, whiche was on þe ton party, þe Duke of Somyrset, þe Erle of Northumbirlond, Lord Clifford, & Sir John Nevyl of Westmerland, which was þe Erles sone of Westmerland. And þere was slayne be them : 8 Richard, Duke of Yorke, Edmund, Erle of Rutlond, his sone ; & Richarde Nevyle, Erle of Salysbury, was take þere, & behedyd at Pounfret. ¶ And in þe same yer was þe ij<sup>de</sup> batayle of Seint Albonis : & þere com in on þe ton party : Kyng Herry, þe Duke of 12 Northfolke, þe Erle of Warwyk, Lord Facounbryge, & Vicount Bowser. And ayenst them cam Queen Margeryt, & Prince Edward her sone, [L]ord Wellis, Lord [C]lyfford, & ouerthrewe þe tothyr party, & toke away King Herry from þem ; and, be the commaund- 16 ment of þe young Prince, þere was behedyd þere, Lord Bonvylde, & Thomas Kyrel, knyht of Kent ; & they led *with* hem in-to þe Northe, Lord Mountegew, [a]nd toke hym to [p]e Mayre of [Y]orke to kepe. 20

And in þe same yer was þe bateyle of Wygmore, be Edward, Erle of Marche ; wher fled, Sir Herry Bewforde, Duke of Exestyr, & Iamys Ormond, Erle of Wylshyre, & Iasper, Erle of Penbrook ; & his fadyr, Owen Tedder, was takyn, & behedyd at Herforde ; 24 and ther was takyn þe Baroun of Burforde ; & pardounde of his lyfe. An[d] after this, Edward, Erle of Marche, *with* þe lordys on his party, yede to Londen ; and on þe iiij. day of Marche he toke vpon hym þe Regimen, *with* þe wyll of þe lordys & þe comouns 28 bothe.

## XI.

[*K. Edward IV (1461) : the Battle of Barnet (14 April, 1471) ; and the Death of Henry VI (20 June, 1471).*]

<sup>1</sup> a Nd after this, In þe yer of our Lord Mt. CCCC lx, And in þe regne of Kyng Herry .xxxix. ; Edward, Erle of Marche, *with* þe lordys *pat* were on his party, yede to Londen ; and on þe .iiij. 32 day of Marche he took vpon hym þe Regimen, *with* þe wyll of þe lordys & þe commouns also. ¶ And after *pat*, Kyng Edward toke

<sup>1</sup> leaf 202, back.



his lordys, & yede Northeward; and on Palmisson evyn was Tauntoun feelde, callyd York feelde. And pere was on Kyng Edwardys party, pe Duke of Northfolke, pe Erle of Warwyk, Lord  
4 Acrys of pe southe, Lord Fauconbrygge, & many oper lordys & knyhtis moo. And ayenst hym cam Prynce Edward, Kyng Herries sone, pe Duke of Somyrset, pe Erle of Northumbyrlond, whiche was slayne pere, & many oper lordis & knyhtes also. And  
8 King Herry, with Queen Mergeret, lay in York; & pey toke pe Prince her sone, & be mydnyght they were fledde to Berewyk; & they yaf pat toum to pe Scottis, to haue socour & helpe of them, whiche toum was Englisshe befor. ¶ And thus Kyng Edward, pe  
12 sone of Richard Plantagenet, Duke of York, ouercam his enemyes, & put them to flyght, & returnyd ayen to Londen, & pere he was crownyd at Westmester, ryghtful Kyng of Engeland & of Fraunce, Castylle, & Legyoun. ¶ And sone aftyr, he weddyd Dame Elysa-  
16 beth, pe Erle Ryuers douhtyr, on whom he begat, Elysabeth, Marie, Cicile, Edward Prince, Margarete, Richard, Duke of York & of Northfolke, Anne, George.

And aftyr this, Herry, pat was Kyng, was take in Yorkshire,  
20 in pe Abbey of Furnes; & put in pe Toure of Londen. ¶ And aftyr pat, pere aperyd in pe firmament a gret sterre, pat yaf out vij stremys, whiche synified gret sorw, & mysche[f] pat fylle aftyrward; & also ther wer sene in pe Temys at Londen, many whyrlepolys, &  
24 anoper tyme a whale, pat signyfyed not good. For aftyrward fylle gret devisyoun betwene pe Kyng & his lordys; & pey kept a gret batayle on Estyr day, whiche is callyd 'Barnet Feeld.' & pere was slayne Richard Nevyle, Erle of Warwik, & Markys Montegew, his  
28 brothir; & pe Erle of Oxynford fled. And from thens pe Kyng yede to Tewkysbery; & pere was slayn, Edward, pe sone of Kyng Herry; & Queen Margarete, his modyr, was take, whiche were come out of Fraunce. And thus Kyng Edward ouercam all his enemyes,  
32 thankyd be God! And in alle pese batayles, was pe sone ayenst pe fadyr, and brother aye[n]st brother. ¶ And anon aftyr, deyde Kyng Herry in pe Toure of Londen; & is beryed at Chercheshey. And he foundyd pe Coleges of Etoun & of Cambrygge, callyd pe  
36 'newe Colege': on whois soule, God haue mercy! Amen!

And aftyr this, Kyng Edward yed ouer beyon the se into Fraunce, & chalengyd Gascoyne & Gyen. And pe Kyng of Fraunce was fayne to desyre trewys with hym, & agreyd to pay yerly to  
40 oure Kyng, X M<sup>l</sup>. li. for Gascoyne & Gyen: & he payd it long

after. And in þat Iorney our Kyng lost many a man þat fylle to þe lust of women, & wer brent be them; & pere membrys rottyd away, & þey dyed. ¶ And aftyr þat, ther fylle a gret dissese in Engeland callyd þe ‘styche,’ þat moche peeple deyde sodeynly þat þerof. And also anoþer dissese reyned aftyr þat, callyd þe ‘filyx,’ þat neuer was seen in Engeland before; & peeple deyde hogely therof iij yer togedyr, in on place or oþer. And aftyr þat, ther bred a Raven on Charyng Crosse at Londen; & neuer was seen 8 noone brede pere before. & aftyr þat, cam a gret dethe of Pestilence, þat lastyd iij. yer; & peeple dyed myhtely in euery p[la]ce, man, woman & chylde: on whois soullys, God haue mercy! Amen! [end.]

## APPENDIX TO H.

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF THE BATTLE ABBEY ROLL OF 371  
NAMES OF NORMAN KNIGHTS. [See p. 535-537].

[*Harl. MS. 53, collated with Lambeth 6.*]

	Abvile	BaywaH (29) <sup>1</sup>	Bruce (58)	Colvile (86)
	Achard	Beauchamp	Budler	Comyn
	Akeny	Beaumeis	Buket	Corbet
4	Amondevile	Belcr	Burdet	Cornor
	Anney	Belet	Burle	Costentyn
	Arcy	Berard	BurneH	Cosyn
	Arvile	Berevile	BusseH	CoudreH
8	Ascher <sup>1</sup>	Bereward	Bussey	Courthouse
	Aspreville	Bernevile	Butevile	Crecy
	Aubeny	Berry	Butteler	CrieH
	Aubray	Beygnard <sup>3</sup>	Butvileyn (68)	Cunly
12	Audeny	Bigot		Curecy
	Audevile	Birset	Camois	Curly
	AueneH	Bleis	Candrey	Curteis
	Auerenges	BloundeH	Canneville	Curteneis <sup>4</sup>
16	Ayelard (16)	Bluet	Cardevile	Curthose
		Boner	Carevile	Curty (102)
	Bagot	Bontvile	Chalenges	
	Banaster	Boynet	Chalurs	Dalamare
20	Bardulf	Brachet	Chambreleyn	Danster <sup>1</sup> vile
	Baret	Bracy	ChaneH	Darcy
	Barevile	Brassard	CharneH	DariH
	Barry	Bratet	Chastelleyn	Despenser
24	Bars	Bret	Chaucer *	Deynecourt
	Baskervile	Breuse	Chaundos	DrutaH
	Basset	Brian	Chene <sup>1</sup>	DucereH
	Bastard	Bricourt	Cheyne	Duket
28	Baucan	Britoun	Clare	Dulapenne
	Baynard <sup>2</sup> (28)	Brok (57)	ClareH (85)	Duredent (113)

<sup>1</sup> *om.* L.

<sup>2</sup> Barnard L.

<sup>3</sup> Boigmard L.

<sup>4</sup> Carteneis L.

Escot (114)	Gorger (150)	Lescey (184)	Moreus <sup>6</sup> (220)
Eurons	Gorunvile <sup>3</sup>	Leverer	Morley
	Gower	Lincot	Morteyn
Ferebrace	Grace	Lonetot	Mortymmer 4
Ferrer	Grauntsoun <sup>2</sup>	Longchampe	Morvile
Ferrers	Graynvile	Longevile	Motoun <sup>2</sup>
Feschampe	Greis	LoveH	Moubray
Fetepace	Grenevile	Lucy	Mounfichet 8
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Brian	Gunter	Lunar	Mountanasy
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Garin	Gurnay (159)	Luncy	Mountegu
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Geffray		Lyard	Mounteny
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Herbert	Harecourt	Lynet	Mulet 12
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Hu	Hachet	Lysle (196)	Murdak
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Piers	Haket		Musard (233)
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Symond	Hamelyn	Maignard <sup>4</sup>	
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Vise	Hanet	Malemayn	Neomarch 16
Fitz <sup>1</sup> Water	Hansard	Malet	Nepount
Foleyn	Hanvile	Malynoler	Nevile
Foliambe <sup>2</sup>	Hasard	Mamelbarin <sup>2</sup>	Neyrout
Folvile	Hautevile	Mansey	Niuelent(238) 20
Formentyn	Hay	Manus ( <i>or</i>	Nun Champe
Fossard	Heiroun	Manns)	
FreseH	Hercy	Manyn <sup>2</sup>	Ofvile
Fresvile	Heris	Marcimas	OreH <sup>7</sup> 24
Freynes	Hubert	Mareis	OrivaH
Frisoun	Hurfer	MarteH	Orrewar (243)
Frivile	Huscharles	Massy	
FurnyvaH		Matroners	Pachet 28
Fyneux (141)	Iardyn (176)	MaunceH	Palet
		Maundevile	PameH
Gamager	Keynes	Maureward	Panely
Gantlou	Kirlecot (178)	Meisy <sup>5</sup>	Pantulf 32
Gaugy		Meyne	Parles
Gaunt	Lacy	MeyniH	Passamere
Gauter	La Heuse	Miler	Passauant
Gerard	Lambert	Mire	Peisoun <sup>8</sup> 36
Giffard	Ledet	Mongomery	Penire ( <i>or</i>
Gorge (149)	Leoun (183)	MoreH (219)	Pemre)(253)

<sup>1</sup> Filz L.<sup>5</sup> Mersy L.<sup>2</sup> om. L.<sup>6</sup> Morens ? L.<sup>3</sup> Gonurville L.<sup>7</sup> Torell L.<sup>4</sup> Maynard L.<sup>8</sup> Tyson L.

	Percy (254)	Rosynis <sup>2</sup> (284)	Soldeny (316)	Tuchet (347)
	Perly	Roter	Somervile	Tuny
	Pevereh	Rusak	Sonevile	Tupet <sup>7</sup>
4	Phanecourt	RusseH (287)	SouppiH ( <i>or</i> SoupeiH)	Turbevile [Tyson, <i>see</i> Pei- soun]
	Picard	SaintbreneH	SpigurneH	
	Pigot	Saintelus	Spynevile	
8	Pilet <sup>1</sup>	Sainteler	Sunely	Valeus <sup>8</sup> (351)
	PineH	Sainterois	SurdevaH	Vauesour
	Pipard	Saintgorge <sup>2</sup>	Swyward <sup>6</sup> (324)	VeeH
	Piroun <sup>2</sup>	Sainthelyn		Veer
12	Pleisy	SaintIohn	Tabot	Veisyn
	Plevien	Saintleger	Tailepas	Venour
	Poer	Saintmore	Taillois	Verly
	Pouchet	Saintmoris	Tallebot	Vernoun
16	Pountfract	Saintnoyre	Tanet	Vesey
	Prers <sup>2</sup>	Saintomer	Taryn	Vilers
	Punegis	Saintquintyn	Tenere	Vmframvile
	PurceH	Sancey (301)	Tibot	
20	Pus	Sanctelou	Tiptot	WadeH (362)
	[Putnell] <sup>3</sup>	Sandervile	TireH (334)	Warrenne
	Putrell (274)	Santemareis <sup>4</sup>	TorchappeH	Wasteneis
		Saucer	ToreH	Welby
24	Quatremars	Saunzaner	Toret	Widvile
	Quincy (276)	Saunzire	Torevile	Wildbef
		Savage	Tracy	Wishard
	Raynes	Say	TrameH	Wivile
28	Renger	Saylard	Trauers <sup>2</sup>	
	Richemount	Scutevile	Trevet	Ynogre
	RideH	Sechevile	Truan	
	RocheH	Semery	Truret	Zoochh <sup>9</sup> (371)
32	Roos	Setvaus <sup>5</sup>	Trusbut	
	Rosyn (283)	Seygues (315)	TrusseH (346)	

<sup>1</sup> Pelet L.    <sup>2</sup> *om.* L.    <sup>3</sup> *only in* L.    <sup>4</sup> Saintrioris ? L.  
<sup>5</sup> Setvans ? L.    <sup>6</sup> Swyand L.    <sup>7</sup> Tapet L.    <sup>8</sup> Valens ? L.  
<sup>9</sup> [?] *om.* L.









PR Early English Text  
1119 Society  
A2 [Publications]  
no.131 Original series. no. 131,136

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH

